Draft Standard for Information Technology— Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX®)

Draft Technical Standard: Shell and Utilities, Issue 7

Prepared by the Austin Group (www.opengroup.org/austin)

Abstract

This standard defines a standard operating system interface and environment, including a command interpreter (or "shell"), and common utility programs to support applications portability at the source code level. This standard is intended to be used by both applications developers and system implementors and comprises four major components (each in an associated volume):

- General terms, concepts, and interfaces common to all volumes of this standard, including utility conventions and C-language header definitions, are included in the Base Definitions volume.
- Definitions for system service functions and subroutines, language-specific system services for the C programming language, function issues, including portability, error handling, and error recovery, are included in the System Interfaces volume.
- Definitions for a standard source code-level interface to command interpretation services (a "shell") and common utility programs for application programs are included in the Shell and Utilities volume.
- Extended rationale that did not fit well into the rest of the document structure, which contains historical information concerning the contents of this standard and why features were included or discarded by the standard developers, is included in the Rationale (Informative) volume.

The following areas are outside the scope of this standard:

- Graphics interfaces
- Database management system interfaces
- Record I/O considerations
- Object or binary code portability
- System configuration and resource availability

This standard describes the external characteristics and facilities that are of importance to applications developers, rather than the internal construction techniques employed to achieve these capabilities. Special emphasis is placed on those functions and facilities that are needed in a wide variety of commercial applications.

Keywords

application program interface (API), argument, asynchronous, basic regular expression (BRE), batch job, batch system, built-in utility, byte, child, command language interpreter, CPU, extended regular expression (ERE), FIFO, file access control mechanism, input/output (I/O), job control, network, portable operating system interface (POSIX®), parent, shell, stream, string, synchronous, system, thread, X/Open System Interface (XSI)

Feedback

This standard has been prepared by the Austin Group. Feedback relating to the material contained in this standard may be submitted using the Austin Group web site at www.opengroup.org/austin/bugreport.html.

Contents

Contents

Contents

Contents

List of Figures

List of Tables

Contents

Foreword

Structure of the Standard

Notes to Reviewers

This section with side shading will not appear in the final copy. - Ed.

This section will be completed in a later draft.

Introduction

Note: This introduction is not part of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX).

This draft standard was developed, and is maintained, by a joint working group of members of the IEEE Portable Applications Standards Committee, members of The Open Group, and members of ISO/IEC Joint Technical Committee 1. This joint working group is known as the Austin Group.[1]

The Austin Group arose out of discussions amongst the parties which started in early 1998, leading to an initial meeting and formation of the group in September 1998. The purpose of the Austin Group is to develop and maintain the core open systems interfaces that are the POSIX® 1003.1 (and former 1003.2) standards, ISO/IEC 9945 Parts 1 to 4, and the core of the Single UNIX Specification.

The approach to specification development has been one of "write once, adopt everywhere", with the deliverables being a set of specifications that carry the IEEE POSIX designation, The Open Group's Technical Standard designation, and an ISO/IEC designation.

This unique development has combined both the industry-led efforts and the formal standardization activities into a single initiative, and included a wide spectrum of participants. The Austin Group continues as the maintenance body for this document.

Anyone wishing to participate in the Austin Group should contact the chair with their request. There are no fees for participation or membership. You may participate as an observer or as a contributor. You do not have to attend face-to-face meetings to participate; electronic participation is most welcome. For more information on the Austin Group and how to participate, see www.opengroup.org/austin.

Background

The developers of this standard represent a cross section of hardware manufacturers, vendors of operating systems and other software development tools, software designers, consultants, academics, authors, applications programmers, and others.

Conceptually, this standard describes a set of fundamental services needed for the efficient construction of application programs. Access to these services has been provided by defining an interface, using the C programming language, a command interpreter, and common utility programs that establish standard semantics and syntax. Since this interface enables application writers to write portable applications—it was developed with that goal in mind—it has been designated POSIX,[2] an acronym for Portable Operating System Interface.

Although originated to refer to the original IEEE Std 1003.1-1988, the name POSIX more correctly refers to a *family* of related standards: IEEE Std 1003.*n* and the parts of ISO/IEC 9945. In earlier editions of the IEEE standard, the term POSIX was used as a synonym for IEEE Std 1003.1-1988. A preferred term, POSIX.1, emerged. This maintained the advantages of readability of the symbol "POSIX" without being ambiguous with the POSIX family of

---

1. The Austin Group is named after the location of the inaugural meeting held at the IBM facility in Austin, Texas in September 1998.

2. The name POSIX was suggested by Richard Stallman. It is expected to be pronounced *pahz-icks*, as in *positive*, not *poh-six*, or other variations. The pronunciation has been published in an attempt to promulgate a standardized way of referring to a standard operating system interface.

standards.

Audience

The intended audience for this standard is all persons concerned with an industry-wide standard operating system based on the UNIX system. This includes at least four groups of people:

1. Persons buying hardware and software systems
2. Persons managing companies that are deciding on future corporate computing directions
3. Persons implementing operating systems, and especially
4. Persons developing applications where portability is an objective

Purpose

Several principles guided the development of this standard:

- Application-Oriented

  The basic goal was to promote portability of application programs across UNIX system environments by developing a clear, consistent, and unambiguous standard for the interface specification of a portable operating system based on the UNIX system documentation. This standard codifies the common, existing definition of the UNIX system.

- Interface, Not Implementation

  This standard defines an interface, not an implementation. No distinction is made between library functions and system calls; both are referred to as functions. No details of the implementation of any function are given (although historical practice is sometimes indicated in the RATIONALE section). Symbolic names are given for constants (such as signals and error numbers) rather than numbers.

- Source, Not Object, Portability

  This standard has been written so that a program written and translated for execution on one conforming implementation may also be translated for execution on another conforming implementation. This standard does not guarantee that executable (object or binary) code will execute under a different conforming implementation than that for which it was translated, even if the underlying hardware is identical.

- The C Language

  The system interfaces and header definitions are written in terms of the standard C language as specified in the ISO C standard.

- No Superuser, No System Administration

  There was no intention to specify all aspects of an operating system. System administration facilities and functions are excluded from this standard, and functions usable only by the superuser have not been included. Still, an implementation of the standard interface may also implement features not in this standard. This standard is also not concerned with hardware constraints or system maintenance.

- Minimal Interface, Minimally Defined

  In keeping with the historical design principles of the UNIX system, the mandatory core facilities of this standard have been kept as minimal as possible. Additional capabilities have been added as optional extensions.

- Broadly Implementable

  The developers of this standard endeavored to make all specified functions implementable across a wide range of existing and potential systems, including:

  1. All of the current major systems that are ultimately derived from the original UNIX system code (Version 7 or later)
  2. Compatible systems that are not derived from the original UNIX system code
  3. Emulations hosted on entirely different operating systems
  4. Networked systems
  5. Distributed systems
  6. Systems running on a broad range of hardware

  No direct references to this goal appear in this standard, but some results of it are mentioned in the Rationale (Informative) volume.

- Minimal Changes to Historical Implementations

  When the original version—IEEE Std 1003.1-1988—was published, there were no known historical implementations that did not have to change. However, there was a broad consensus on a set of functions, types, definitions, and concepts that formed an interface that was common to most historical implementations.

  The adoption of the 1988 and 1990 IEEE system interface standards, the 1992 IEEE shell and utilities standard, the various Open Group (formerly X/Open) specifications, and the 2001 Edition of this standard and its technical corrigenda have have consolidated this consensus, and this revision reflects the significantly increased level of consensus arrived at since the original versions. The authors of the original versions tried, as much as possible, to follow the principles below when creating new specifications:

  1. By standardizing an interface like one in an historical implementation; for example, directories
  2. By specifying an interface that is readily implementable in terms of, and backwards-compatible with, historical implementations, such as the extended *tar* format defined in the *pax* utility
  3. By specifying an interface that, when added to an historical implementation, will not conflict with it; for example, the *sigaction*( ) function

  This standard is specifically not a codification of a particular vendor's product.

  It should be noted that implementations will have different kinds of extensions. Some will reflect "historical usage" and will be preserved for execution of pre-existing applications. These functions should be considered "obsolescent" and the standard functions used for new applications. Some extensions will represent functions beyond the scope of this standard. These need to be used with careful management to be able to adapt to future extensions of this standard and/or port to implementations that provide these services in a different manner.

- Minimal Changes to Existing Application Code

  A goal of this standard was to minimize additional work for the developers of applications. However, because every known historical implementation will have to change at least slightly to conform, some applications will have to change.

This Standard

This standard defines the Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) requirements and consists of the following volumes:

- Base Definitions
- Shell and Utilities (this volume)
- System Interfaces
- Rationale (Informative)

This Volume

The Shell and Utilities volume describes the commands and utilities offered to application programs on POSIX-conformant systems. Readers are expected to be familiar with the Base Definitions volume.

This volume is structured as follows:

- Chapter 1 explains the status of this volume and its relationship to other formal standards. It also describes the defaults used by the utility descriptions in Chapter 4.
- Chapter 2 describes the command language used in POSIX-conformant systems.
- Chapter 3 describes a set of services and utilities that are implemented on systems supporting the Batch Environment Services and Utilities option.
- Chapter 4 consists of reference pages for all utilities available on POSIX-conformant systems.

Comprehensive references are available in the index.

Typographical Conventions The following typographical conventions are used throughout this standard. In the text, this standard is referred to as IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, which is technically identical to The Open Group Base Specifications, Issue 7.

The typographical conventions listed here are for ease of reading only. Editorial inconsistencies in the use of typography are unintentional and have no normative meaning in this standard.

Reference	Example	Notes
C-Language Data Structure	**aiocb**	
C-Language Data Structure Member	*aio_lio_opcode*	
C-Language Data Type	**long**	
C-Language External Variable	*errno*	
C-Language Function	*system*( )	
C-Language Function Argument	*arg1*	
C-Language Function Family	*exec*	
C-Language Header	**<sys/stat.h>**	
C-Language Keyword	**return**	
C-Language Macro with Argument	*assert*( )	
C-Language Macro with No Argument	INET_ADDRSTRLEN	
C-Language Preprocessing Directive	**#define**	
Commands within a Utility	**a**, **c**	
Conversion Specification, Specifier/Modifier Character	%A, g, E	1
Environment Variable	*PATH*	
Error Number	[EINTR]	

Reference	Example	Notes
Example Output	**`Hello, World`**	
Filename	**/tmp**	
Literal Character	`'c','\r','\'`	2
Literal String	`"abcde"`	2
Optional Items in Utility Syntax	**[ ]**	
Parameter	*<directory pathname>*	
Special Character	<newline>	3
Symbolic Constant	_POSIX_VDISABLE	
Symbolic Limit, Configuration Value	{LINE_MAX}	4
Syntax	`#include <sys/stat.h>`	
User Input and Example Code	`echo Hello, World`	5
Utility Name	*awk*	
Utility Operand	*file_name*	
Utility Option	**–c**	
Utility Option with Option-Argument	**–w** *width*	

Notes:

1. Conversion specifications, specifier characters, and modifier characters are used primarily in date-related functions and utilities and the *fprintf* and *fscanf* formatting functions.
2. Unless otherwise noted, the quotes shall not be used as input or output. When used in a list item, the quotes are omitted. For literal characters, `'\'` (or any of the other sequences such as `'''`) is the same as the C constant `'\\'` (or `'\''`).
3. The style selected for some of the special characters, such as <newline>, matches the form of the input given to the *localedef* utility. Generally, the characters selected for this special treatment are those that are not visually distinct, such as the control characters <tab> or <newline>.
4. Names surrounded by braces represent symbolic limits or configuration values which may be declared in appropriate headers by means of the C **#define** construct.
5. Brackets shown in this font, `"[ ]"`, are part of the syntax and do *not* indicate optional items. In syntax the `'|'` symbol is used to separate alternatives, and ellipses (`"..."`) are used to show that additional arguments are optional.

Shading is used to identify extensions and options; see Section 1.8.1 (on page 9).

Footnotes and notes within the body of the normative text are for information only (informative).

Informative sections (such as Rationale, Change History, Application Usage, and so on) are denoted by continuous shading bars in the margins.

Ranges of values are indicated with parentheses or brackets as follows:

- (*a*,*b*) means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including neither *a* nor *b*.
- [*a*,*b*] means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including *a* and *b*.
- [*a*,*b*) means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including *a*, but not *b*.
- (*a*,*b*] means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including *b*, but not *a*.

Participants

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x was prepared by the Austin Group, sponsored by the Portable Applications Standards Committee of the IEEE Computer Society, The Open Group, and ISO/SC22.

Notes to Reviewers

This section with side shading will not appear in the final copy. - Ed.

This section will be completed once the standard is approved.

Trademarks

The following information is given for the convenience of users of this standard and does not constitute endorsement of these products by The Open Group or the IEEE. There may be other products mentioned in the text that might be covered by trademark protection and readers are advised to verify them independently.

1003.1™ is a trademark of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.

AIX® is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation.

AT&T® is a registered trademark of AT&T in the U.S.A. and other countries.

BSD™ is a trademark of the University of California, Berkeley, U.S.A.

Hewlett-Packard®, HP®, and HP-UX® are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.

IBM® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Boundaryless Information Flow™ and TOGAF™ are trademarks and Motif®, Making Standards Work®, OSF/1®, The Open Group®, UNIX®, and the "X" device are registered trademarks of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

POSIX® is a registered trademark of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.

Sun® and Sun Microsystems® are registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

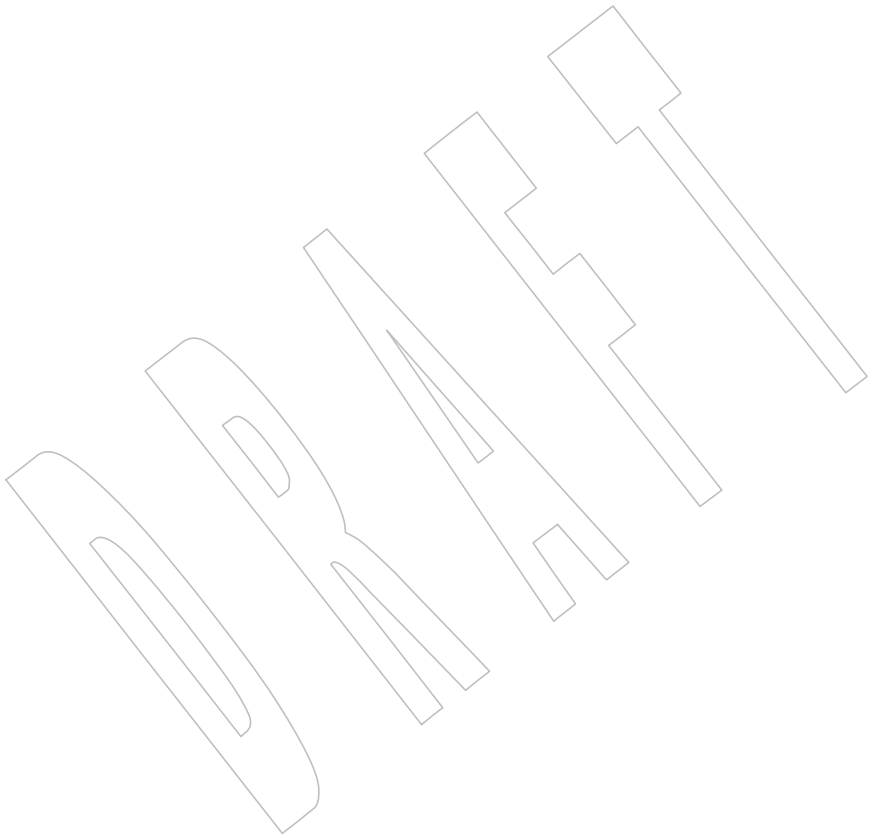
/usr/group® is a registered trademark of UniForum, the International Network of UNIX System Users.

Acknowledgements

The contributions of the following organizations to the development of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are gratefully acknowledged:

- AT&T for permission to reproduce portions of its copyrighted System V Interface Definition (SVID) and material from the UNIX System V Release 2.0 documentation.
- ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 22/WG 14 C Language Committee

This standard was prepared by the Austin Group, a joint working group of the IEEE, The Open Group, and ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 22.



Referenced Documents

IEEE Std 854-1987
IEEE Std 854-1987, IEEE Standard for Radix-Independent Floating-Point Arithmetic.

IEEE Std 1003.9-1992
IEEE Std 1003.9-1992, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — POSIX FORTRAN 77 Language Interfaces — Part 1: Binding for System Application Program Interface API.

IETF RFC 791
Internet Protocol, Version 4 (IPv4), September 1981.

IETF RFC 819
The Domain Naming Convention for Internet User Applications, Z. Su, J. Postel, August 1982.

IETF RFC 822
Standard for the Format of ARPA Internet Text Messages, D.H. Crocker, August 1982.

IETF RFC 919
Broadcasting Internet Datagrams, J. Mogul, October 1984.

IETF RFC 920
Domain Requirements, J. Postel, J. Reynolds, October 1984.

IETF RFC 921
Domain Name System Implementation Schedule, J. Postel, October 1984.

IETF RFC 922
Broadcasting Internet Datagrams in the Presence of Subnets, J. Mogul, October 1984.

IETF RFC 1034
Domain Names — Concepts and Facilities, P. Mockapetris, November 1987.

IETF RFC 1035
Domain Names — Implementation and Specification, P. Mockapetris, November 1987.

IETF RFC 1123
Requirements for Internet Hosts — Application and Support, R. Braden, October 1989.

IETF RFC 1886
DNS Extensions to Support Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6), C. Huitema, S. Thomson, December 1995.

IETF RFC 2045
Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME), Part 1: Format of Internet Message Bodies, N. Freed, N. Borenstein, November 1996.

IETF RFC 2181
Clarifications to the DNS Specification, R. Elz, R. Bush, July 1997.

IETF RFC 2373
Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6) Addressing Architecture, S. Deering, R. Hinden, July 1998.

IETF RFC 2460
Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6), S. Deering, R. Hinden, December 1998.

Internationalisation Guide
Guide, July 1993, Internationalisation Guide, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-859120-02-4, G304), published by The Open Group.

ISO C (1990)
ISO/IEC 9899: 1990, Programming Languages — C, including Amendment 1: 1995 (E), C Integrity (Multibyte Support Extensions (MSE) for ISO C).

ISO 2375: 1985
ISO 2375: 1985, Data Processing — Procedure for Registration of Escape Sequences.

ISO 8652: 1987
ISO 8652: 1987, Programming Languages — Ada (technically identical to ANSI standard 1815A-1983).

ISO/IEC 1539: 1990
ISO/IEC 1539: 1990, Information Technology — Programming Languages — Fortran (technically identical to the ANSI X3.9-1978 standard [FORTRAN 77]).

ISO/IEC 4873: 1991
ISO/IEC 4873: 1991, Information Technology — ISO 8-bit Code for Information Interchange — Structure and Rules for Implementation.

ISO/IEC 6429: 1992
ISO/IEC 6429: 1992, Information Technology — Control Functions for Coded Character Sets.

ISO/IEC 6937: 1994
ISO/IEC 6937: 1994, Information Technology — Coded Character Set for Text Communication — Latin Alphabet.

ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1996
ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1996, Information Technology — Telecommunications and Information Exchange Between Systems — Local and Metropolitan Area Networks — Specific Requirements — Part 3: Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications.

ISO/IEC 8859
ISO/IEC 8859, Information Technology — 8-Bit Single-Byte Coded Graphic Character Sets:

Part 1: Latin Alphabet No. 1
Part 2: Latin Alphabet No. 2
Part 3: Latin Alphabet No. 3
Part 4: Latin Alphabet No. 4
Part 5: Latin/Cyrillic Alphabet
Part 6: Latin/Arabic Alphabet
Part 7: Latin/Greek Alphabet
Part 8: Latin/Hebrew Alphabet
Part 9: Latin Alphabet No. 5
Part 10: Latin Alphabet No. 6
Part 11: Latin/Thai Alphabet
Part 13: Latin Alphabet No. 7
Part 14: Latin Alphabet No. 8
Part 15: Latin Alphabet No. 9
Part 16: Latin Alphabet No. 10

ISO POSIX-1: 1996
ISO/IEC 9945-1: 1996, Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language] (identical to ANSI/IEEE Std 1003.1-1996). Incorporating ANSI/IEEE Stds 1003.1-1990, 1003.1b-1993, 1003.1c-1995, and 1003.1i-1995.

Referenced Documents

ISO POSIX-2: 1993

ISO/IEC 9945-2: 1993, Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 2: Shell and Utilities (identical to ANSI/IEEE Std 1003.2-1992, as amended by ANSI/IEEE Std 1003.2a-1992).

Issue 1

X/Open Portability Guide, July 1985 (ISBN: 0-444-87839-4).

Issue 2

X/Open Portability Guide, January 1987:

- Volume 1: XVS Commands and Utilities (ISBN: 0-444-70174-5)
- Volume 2: XVS System Calls and Libraries (ISBN: 0-444-70175-3)

Issue 3

X/Open Specification, 1988, 1989, February 1992:

- Commands and Utilities, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-36-7, C211); this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide, Issue 3, Volume 1, January 1989, XSI Commands and Utilities (ISBN: 0-13-685835-X, XO/XPG/89/002)
- System Interfaces and Headers, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-37-5, C212); this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide, Issue 3, Volume 2, January 1989, XSI System Interface and Headers (ISBN: 0-13-685843-0, XO/XPG/89/003)
- Curses Interface, Issue 3, contained in Supplementary Definitions, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-38-3, C213), Chapters 9 to 14 inclusive; this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide, Issue 3, Volume 3, January 1989, XSI Supplementary Definitions (ISBN: 0-13-685850-3, XO/XPG/89/004)
- Headers Interface, Issue 3, contained in Supplementary Definitions, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-38-3, C213), Chapter 19, Cpio and Tar Headers; this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide Issue 3, Volume 3, January 1989, XSI Supplementary Definitions (ISBN: 0-13-685850-3, XO/XPG/89/004)

Issue 4

CAE Specification, July 1992, published by The Open Group:

- System Interface Definitions (XBD), Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-872630-46-4, C204)
- Commands and Utilities (XCU), Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-872630-48-0, C203)
- System Interfaces and Headers (XSH), Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-872630-47-2, C202)

Issue 4, Version 2

CAE Specification, August 1994, published by The Open Group:

- System Interface Definitions (XBD), Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-036-9, C434)
- Commands and Utilities (XCU), Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-034-2, C436)
- System Interfaces and Headers (XSH), Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-037-7, C435)

Issue 5

Technical Standard, February 1997, published by The Open Group:

- System Interface Definitions (XBD), Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-186-1, C605)
- Commands and Utilities (XCU), Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-191-8, C604)

- System Interfaces and Headers (XSH), Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-181-0, C606)

Issue 6

Technical Standard, April 2004, published by The Open Group:

- Base Definitions (XBD), Issue 6 (ISBN: 1-931624-43-7, C046)
- System Interfaces (XSH), Issue 6 (ISBN: 1-931624-44-5, C047)
- Shell and Utilities (XCU), Issue 6 (ISBN: 1-931624-45-3, C048)

Knuth Article

Knuth, Donald E., *On the Translation of Languages from Left to Right*, Information and Control, Volume 8, No. 6, October 1965.

KornShell

Bolsky, Morris I. and Korn, David G., *The New KornShell Command and Programming Language*, March 1995, Prentice Hall.

MSE Working Draft

Working draft of ISO/IEC 9899:1990/Add3:Draft, Addendum 3 — Multibyte Support Extensions (MSE) as documented in the ISO Working Paper SC22/WG14/N205 dated 31 March 1992.

POSIX.0:1995

IEEE Std 1003.0-1995, IEEE Guide to the POSIX Open System Environment (OSE) (identical to ISO/IEC TR 14252).

POSIX.1:1988

IEEE Std 1003.1-1988, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language].

POSIX.1:1990

IEEE Std 1003.1-1990, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language].

POSIX.1a

P1003.1a, Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — (C Language) Amendment.

POSIX.1d:1999

IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 4: Additional Realtime Extensions [C Language].

POSIX.1g:2000

IEEE Std 1003.1g-2000, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 6: Protocol-Independent Interfaces (PII).

POSIX.1j:2000

IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 5: Advanced Realtime Extensions [C Language].

Referenced Documents

POSIX.1q: 2000
IEEE Std 1003.1q-2000, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 7: Tracing [C Language].

POSIX.2b
P1003.2b, Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 2: Shell and Utilities — Amendment.

POSIX.2d:-1994
IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 2: Shell and Utilities — Amendment 1: Batch Environment.

POSIX.13:-1998
IEEE Std 1003.13: 1998, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Standardized Application Environment Profile (AEP) — POSIX Realtime Application Support.

Sarwate Article
Sarwate, Dilip V., *Computation of Cyclic Redundancy Checks via Table Lookup*, Communications of the ACM, Volume 30, No. 8, August 1988.

Sprunt, Sha, and Lehoczky
Sprunt, B., Sha, L., and Lehoczky, J.P., *Aperiodic Task Scheduling for Hard Real-Time Systems*, The Journal of Real-Time Systems, Volume 1, 1989, Pages 27-60.

SVID, Issue 1
American Telephone and Telegraph Company, System V Interface Definition (SVID), Issue 1; Morristown, NJ, UNIX Press, 1985.

SVID, Issue 2
American Telephone and Telegraph Company, System V Interface Definition (SVID), Issue 2; Morristown, NJ, UNIX Press, 1986.

SVID, Issue 3
American Telephone and Telegraph Company, System V Interface Definition (SVID), Issue 3; Morristown, NJ, UNIX Press, 1989.

The AWK Programming Language
Aho, Alfred V., Kernighan, Brian W., and Weinberger, Peter J., *The AWK Programming Language*, Reading, MA, Addison-Wesley 1988.

UNIX Programmer's Manual
American Telephone and Telegraph Company, *UNIX Time-Sharing System: UNIX Programmer's Manual*, 7th Edition, Murray Hill, NJ, Bell Telephone Laboratories, January 1979.

XNS, Issue 4
CAE Specification, August 1994, Networking Services, Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-85912-049-0, C438), published by The Open Group.

XNS, Issue 5
CAE Specification, February 1997, Networking Services, Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-165-9, C523), published by The Open Group.

XNS, Issue 5.2
Technical Standard, January 2000, Networking Services (XNS), Issue 5.2 (ISBN: 1-85912-241-8, C808), published by The Open Group.

X/Open Curses, Issue 4, Version 2

CAE Specification, May 1996, X/Open Curses, Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-171-3, C610), published by The Open Group.

Yacc

Yacc: Yet Another Compiler Compiler, Stephen C. Johnson, 1978.

Source Documents

Parts of the following documents were used to create the base documents for this standard:

AIX 3.2 Manual

AIX Version 3.2 For RISC System/6000, Technical Reference: Base Operating System and Extensions, 1990, 1992 (Part No. SC23-2382-00).

OSF/1

OSF/1 Programmer's Reference, Release 1.2 (ISBN: 0-13-020579-6).

OSF AES

Application Environment Specification (AES) Operating System Programming Interfaces Volume, Revision A (ISBN: 0-13-043522-8).

System V Release 2.0

— UNIX System V Release 2.0 Programmer's Reference Manual (April 1984 - Issue 2).

— UNIX System V Release 2.0 Programming Guide (April 1984 - Issue 2).

System V Release 4.2

Operating System API Reference, UNIX® SVR4.2 (1992) (ISBN: 0-13-017658-3).

Chapter 1

Introduction

1.1 Scope

The scope of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

1.2 Conformance

Conformance requirements for IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 2, Conformance.

1.3 Normative References

Normative references for IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

1.4 Change History

Change history is described in the Rationale (Informative) volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, and in the CHANGE HISTORY section of reference pages.

1.5 Terminology

This section appears in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, but is repeated here for convenience:

For the purposes of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the following terminology definitions apply:

can

Describes a permissible optional feature or behavior available to the user or application. The feature or behavior is mandatory for an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. An application can rely on the existence of the feature or behavior.

implementation-defined

Describes a value or behavior that is not defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x but is selected by an implementor. The value or behavior may vary among implementations that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. An application should not rely on the existence of the value or behavior. An application that relies on such a value or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

The implementor shall document such a value or behavior so that it can be used correctly by an application.

legacy
Describes a feature or behavior that is being retained for compatibility with older applications, but which has limitations which make it inappropriate for developing portable applications. New applications should use alternative means of obtaining equivalent functionality.

may
Describes a feature or behavior that is optional for an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. An application should not rely on the existence of the feature or behavior. An application that relies on such a feature or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

To avoid ambiguity, the opposite of *may* is expressed as *need not*, instead of *may not*.

shall
For an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, describes a feature or behavior that is mandatory. An application can rely on the existence of the feature or behavior.

For an application or user, describes a behavior that is mandatory.

should
For an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, describes a feature or behavior that is recommended but not mandatory. An application should not rely on the existence of the feature or behavior. An application that relies on such a feature or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

For an application, describes a feature or behavior that is recommended programming practice for optimum portability.

undefined
Describes the nature of a value or behavior not defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x which results from use of an invalid program construct or invalid data input.

The value or behavior may vary among implementations that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. An application should not rely on the existence or validity of the value or behavior. An application that relies on any particular value or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

unspecified
Describes the nature of a value or behavior not specified by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x which results from use of a valid program construct or valid data input.

The value or behavior may vary among implementations that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. An application should not rely on the existence or validity of the value or behavior. An application that relies on any particular value or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

1.6 Definitions

Concepts and definitions are defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

1.7 Relationship to Other Documents

1.7.1 System Interfaces

This subsection describes some of the features provided by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that are assumed to be globally available on all systems conforming to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. This subsection does not attempt to detail all of the features defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that are required by all of the utilities defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; the utility and function descriptions point out additional functionality required to provide the corresponding specific features needed by each.

The following subsections describe frequently used concepts. Many of these concepts are described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Utility and function description statements override these defaults when appropriate.

1.7.1.1 Process Attributes

The following process attributes, as described in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, are assumed to be supported for all processes in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x:

Controlling Terminal	Real Group ID
Current Working Directory	Real User ID
Effective Group ID	Root Directory
Effective User ID	Saved Set-Group-ID
File Descriptors	Saved Set-User-ID
File Mode Creation Mask	Session Membership
Process Group ID	Supplementary Group IDs
Process ID	

A conforming implementation may include additional process attributes.

1.7.1.2 Concurrent Execution of Processes

The following functionality of the *fork*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be available on all systems conforming to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x:

1. Independent processes shall be capable of executing independently without either process terminating.
2. A process shall be able to create a new process with all of the attributes referenced in Section 1.7.1.1 (on page 3), determined according to the semantics of a call to the *fork*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x followed by a call in the child process to one of the *exec* functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

1.7.1.3 *File Access Permissions*

The file access control mechanism described by the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.4, File Access Permissions shall apply to all files on an implementation conforming to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

1.7.1.4 *File Read, Write, and Creation*

If a file that does not exist is to be written, it shall be created as described below, unless the utility description states otherwise.

When a file that does not exist is created, the following features defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall apply unless the utility or function description states otherwise:

1. The user ID of the file shall be set to the effective user ID of the calling process.
2. The group ID of the file shall be set to the effective group ID of the calling process or the group ID of the directory in which the file is being created.
3. If the file is a regular file, the permission bits of the file shall be set to:

   S_IROTH | S_IWOTH | S_IRGRP | S_IWGRP | S_IRUSR | S_IWUSR

   (see the description of *File Modes* in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers, **<sys/stat.h>**) except that the bits specified by the file mode creation mask of the process shall be cleared. If the file is a directory, the permission bits shall be set to:

   S_IRWXU | S_IRWXG | S_IRWXO

   except that the bits specified by the file mode creation mask of the process shall be cleared.
4. The *st_atime*, *st_ctime*, and *st_mtime* fields of the file shall be updated as specified in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 2.5, Standard I/O Streams.
5. If the file is a directory, it shall be an empty directory; otherwise, the file shall have length zero.
6. If the file is a symbolic link, the effect shall be undefined unless the {POSIX2_SYMLINKS} variable is in effect for the directory in which the symbolic link would be created.
7. Unless otherwise specified, the file created shall be a regular file.

When an attempt is made to create a file that already exists, the utility shall take the action indicated in Table 1-1 corresponding to the type of the file the utility is trying to create and the type of the existing file, unless the utility description states otherwise.

Table 1-1 Actions when Creating a File that Already Exists

Existing Type	New Type B	C	D	F	L	M	P	Q	R	S	T	Function Creating New
A *fattach*()-ed STREAM	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	OF	—	U	N/A
B Block Special	F	F	F	F	F	U	U	U	OF	U	U	*mknod*()**
C Character Special	F	F	F	F	F	U	U	U	OF	U	U	*mknod*()**
D Directory	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	F	—	U	*mkdir*()
F FIFO Special File	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	O	—	U	*mkfifo*()
L Symbolic Link	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	FL	—	U	*symlink*()
M Shared Memory	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	—	—	U	*shm_open*()
P Semaphore	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	—	—	U	*sem_open*()
Q Message Queue	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	—	—	U	*mq_open*()
R Regular File	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	RF	—	U	*open*()
S Socket	F	F	F	F	F	—	—	—	—	—	U	*bind*()
T Typed Memory	F	F	F	F	F	U	U	U	U	U	U	*

The following codes are used in Table 1-1 (on page 5):

F Fail. The attempt to create the new file shall fail and the utility shall either continue with its operation or exit immediately with a non-zero exit status, depending on the description of the utility.

FL Follow link. Unless otherwise specified, the symbolic link shall be followed as specified for pathname resolution, and the operation performed shall be as if the target of the symbolic link (after all resolution) had been named. If the target of the symbolic link does not exist, it shall be as if that nonexistent target had been named directly.

O Open FIFO. When attempting to create a regular file, and the existing file is a FIFO special file:

1. If the FIFO is not already open for reading, the attempt shall block until the FIFO is opened for reading.
2. Once the FIFO is open for reading, the utility shall open the FIFO for writing and continue with its operation.

OF The named file shall be opened with the consequences defined for that file type.

RF Regular file. When attempting to create a regular file, and the existing file is a regular file:

1. The user ID, group ID, and permission bits of the file shall not be changed.
2. The file shall be truncated to zero length.
3. The *st_ctime* and *st_mtime* fields shall be marked for update.

— The effect is implementation-defined unless specified by the utility description.

U The effect is unspecified unless specified by the utility description.

* There is no portable way to create a file of this type.

** Not portable.

When a file is to be appended, the file shall be opened in a manner equivalent to using the O_APPEND flag, without the O_TRUNC flag, in the *open*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

When a file is to be read or written, the file shall be opened with an access mode corresponding

to the operation to be performed. If file access permissions deny access, the requested operation shall fail.

1.7.1.5 File Removal

When a directory that is the root directory or current working directory of any process is removed, the effect is implementation-defined. If file access permissions deny access, the requested operation shall fail. Otherwise, when a file is removed:

1. Its directory entry shall be removed from the file system.
2. The link count of the file shall be decremented.
3. If the file is an empty directory (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.143, Empty Directory):
    a. If no process has the directory open, the space occupied by the directory shall be freed and the directory shall no longer be accessible.
    b. If one or more processes have the directory open, the directory contents shall be preserved until all references to the file have been closed.
4. If the file is a directory that is not empty, the *st_ctime* field shall be marked for update.
5. If the file is not a directory:
    a. If the link count becomes zero:
        i. If no process has the file open, the space occupied by the file shall be freed and the file shall no longer be accessible.
        ii. If one or more processes have the file open, the file contents shall be preserved until all references to the file have been closed.
    b. If the link count is not reduced to zero, the *st_ctime* field shall be marked for update.
6. The *st_ctime* and *st_mtime* fields of the containing directory shall be marked for update.

1.7.1.6 File Time Values

All files shall have the three time values described by the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.7, File Times Update.

1.7.1.7 File Contents

When a reference is made to the contents of a file, *pathname*, this means the equivalent of all of the data placed in the space pointed to by *buf* when performing the *read*() function calls in the following operations defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x:

```
while (read (fildes, buf, nbytes) > 0)
    ;
```

If the file is indicated by a pathname *pathname*, the file descriptor shall be determined by the equivalent of the following operation defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x:

```
fildes = open (pathname, O_RDONLY);
```

The value of *nbytes* in the above sequence is unspecified; if the file is of a type where the data returned by *read*() would vary with different values, the value shall be one that results in the most data being returned.

If the *read*() function calls would return an error, it is unspecified whether the contents of the file

are considered to include any data from offsets in the file beyond where the error would be returned.

1.7.1.8 *Pathname Resolution*

The pathname resolution algorithm, described by the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.11, Pathname Resolution, shall be used by implementations conforming to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; see also the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.5, File Hierarchy.

1.7.1.9 *Changing the Current Working Directory*

When the current working directory (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.436, Working Directory) is to be changed, unless the utility or function description states otherwise, the operation shall succeed unless a call to the *chdir*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x would fail when invoked with the new working directory pathname as its argument.

1.7.1.10 *Establish the Locale*

The functionality of the *setlocale*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be available on all systems conforming to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; that is, utilities that require the capability of establishing an international operating environment shall be permitted to set the specified category of the international environment.

1.7.1.11 *Actions Equivalent to Functions*

Some utility descriptions specify that a utility performs actions equivalent to a function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Such specifications require only that the external effects be equivalent, not that any effect within the utility and visible only to the utility be equivalent.

1.7.2 Concepts Derived from the ISO C Standard

Some of the standard utilities perform complex data manipulation using their own procedure and arithmetic languages, as defined in their EXTENDED DESCRIPTION or OPERANDS sections. Unless otherwise noted, the arithmetic and semantic concepts (precision, type conversion, control flow, and so on) shall be equivalent to those defined in the ISO C standard, as described in the following sections. Note that there is no requirement that the standard utilities be implemented in any particular programming language.

1.7.2.1 *Arithmetic Precision and Operations*

Integer variables and constants, including the values of operands and option-arguments, used by the standard utilities listed in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be implemented as equivalent to the ISO C standard **signed long** data type; floating point shall be implemented as equivalent to the ISO C standard **double** type. Conversions between types shall be as described in the ISO C standard. All variables shall be initialized to zero if they are not otherwise assigned by the input to the application.

Arithmetic operators and control flow keywords shall be implemented as equivalent to those in the cited ISO C standard section, as listed in Table 1-2 (on page 8).

Table 1-2 Selected ISO C Standard Operators and Control Flow Keywords

Operation	ISO C Standard Equivalent Reference
( )	Section 6.5.1, Primary Expressions
postfix ++ postfix --	Section 6.5.2, Postfix Operators
unary + unary - prefix ++ prefix -- ~ ! *sizeof*( )	Section 6.5.3, Unary Operators
* / %	Section 6.5.5, Multiplicative Operators
+ -	Section 6.5.6, Additive Operators
<< >>	Section 6.5.7, Bitwise Shift Operators
<, <= >, >=	Section 6.5.8, Relational Operators
= = !=	Section 6.5.9, Equality Operators
&	Section 6.5.10, Bitwise AND Operator
^	Section 6.5.11, Bitwise Exclusive OR Operator
|	Section 6.5.12, Bitwise Inclusive OR Operator
&&	Section 6.5.13, Logical AND Operator
| |	Section 6.5.14, Logical OR Operator
expr?*expr*:*expr*	Section 6.5.15, Conditional Operator
=, *=, /=, %=, +=, -= <<=, >>=, &=, ^=, |=	Section 6.5.16, Assignment Operators
if ( ) **if** ( ) ... **else** **switch** ( )	Section 6.8.4, Selection Statements
while ( ) **do** ... **while** ( ) **for** ( )	Section 6.8.5, Iteration Statements
goto **continue** **break** **return**	Section 6.8.6, Jump Statements

The evaluation of arithmetic expressions shall be equivalent to that described in Section 6.5, Expressions, of the ISO C standard.

1.7.2.2 *Mathematical Functions*

Any mathematical functions with the same names as those in the following sections of the ISO C standard:

- Section 7.12, Mathematics, `<math.h>`
- Section 7.20.2, Pseudo-Random Sequence Generation Functions

shall be implemented to return the results equivalent to those returned from a call to the corresponding function described in the ISO C standard.

1.8 Portability

Some of the utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x describe functionality that might not be fully portable to systems meeting the requirements for POSIX conformance (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 2, Conformance).

Where optional, enhanced, or reduced functionality is specified, the text is shaded and a code in the margin identifies the nature of the option, extension, or warning (see Section 1.8.1 (on page 9)). For maximum portability, an application should avoid such functionality.

Unless the primary task of a utility is to produce textual material on its standard output, application developers should not rely on the format or content of any such material that may be produced. Where the primary task *is* to provide such material, but the output format is incompletely specified, the description is marked with the OF margin code and shading. Application developers are warned not to expect that the output of such an interface on one system is any guide to its behavior on another system.

1.8.1 Codes

Codes and their meanings are listed in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, but are repeated here for convenience:

ADV Advisory Information
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the ADV margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the ADV margin legend.

BE Batch Environment Services and Utilities
The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the BE margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the BE margin legend.

CD C-Language Development Utilities
The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the CD margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the CD margin legend.

CPT Process CPU-Time Clocks
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the

ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the CPT margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the CPT margin legend.

CX Extension to the ISO C standard

The functionality described is an extension to the ISO C standard. Application writers may make use of an extension as it is supported on all IEEE Std 1003.1-200x-conforming systems.

With each function or header from the ISO C standard, a statement to the effect that ''any conflict is unintentional'' is included. That is intended to refer to a direct conflict. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x acts in part as a profile of the ISO

Refer to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 1.5.2, Margin Code Notation.

ML Process Memory Locking
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the ML margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the ML margin legend.

MLR Range Memory Locking
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MLR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MLR margin legend.

MON Monotonic Clock
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MON margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MON margin legend.

MSG Message Passing
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MSG margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MSG margin legend.

MX IEC 60559 Floating-Point
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MX margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MX margin legend.

OB Obsolescent
The functionality described may be withdrawn in a future version of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Strictly Conforming POSIX Applications and Strictly Conforming XSI Applications shall not use obsolescent features.

Where applicable, the material is identified by use of the OB margin legend.

OF Output Format Incompletely Specified
The functionality described is an XSI extension. The format of the output produced by the utility is not fully specified. It is therefore not possible to post-process this output in a consistent fashion. Typical problems include unknown length of strings and unspecified field delimiters.

Where applicable, the material is identified by use of the OF margin legend.

OH Optional Header
In the SYNOPSIS section of some interfaces in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x an included header is marked as in the following example:

OH
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <grp.h>
struct group *getgrnam(const char *name);
```

The OH margin legend indicates that the marked header is not required on XSI-conformant systems.

PIO Prioritized Input and Output

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the PIO margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the PIO margin legend.

PS Process Scheduling

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the PS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the PS margin legend.

RPI Robust Mutex Priority Inheritance

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the RPI margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the RPI margin legend.

RPP Robust Mutex Priority Protection

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the RPP margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the RPP margin legend.

RS Raw Sockets

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the RS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the RS margin legend.

SD Software Development Utilities

The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the SD margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the SD margin legend.

SHM Shared Memory Objects

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SHM margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SHM

margin legend.

SIO Synchronized Input and Output
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SIO margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SIO margin legend.

SPN Spawn
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SPN margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SPN margin legend.

SS Process Sporadic Server
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SS margin legend.

TCT Thread CPU-Time Clocks
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TCT margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TCT margin legend.

TEF Trace Event Filter
The functionality described is optional. This functionality is dependent on support for the Trace option. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TEF margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TEF margin legend.

TPI Non-Robust Mutex Priority Inheritance
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TPI margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TPI margin legend.

TPP Non-Robust Mutex Priority Protection
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TPP margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TPP margin legend.

TPS Thread Execution Scheduling
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the

ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TPS margin legend for the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TPS margin legend.

TRC Trace
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TRC margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TRC margin legend.

TRI Trace Inherit
The functionality described is optional. This functionality is dependent on support for the Trace option. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TRI margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TRI margin legend.

TRL Trace Log
The functionality described is optional. This functionality is dependent on support for the Trace option. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TRL margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TRL margin legend.

TSA Thread Stack Address Attribute
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSA margin legend for the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSA margin legend.

TSH Thread Process-Shared Synchronization
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSH margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSH margin legend.

TSP Thread Sporadic Server
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSP margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSP margin legend.

TSS Thread Stack Size Attribute
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSS

margin legend.

TYM Typed Memory Objects
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TYM margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TYM margin legend.

UP User Portability Utilities
The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the UP margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the UP margin legend.

UU UUCP Utilities
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the UU margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the UU margin legend.

XSI X/Open System Interfaces
The functionality described is part of the X/Open Systems Interfaces option. Functionality marked XSI is an extension to the ISO C standard. Application writers may confidently make use of such extensions on all systems supporting the X/Open System Interfaces option.

If an entire SYNOPSIS section is shaded and marked XSI, all the functionality described in that reference page is an extension. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.439, XSI.

XSR XSI STREAMS
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the XSR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the XSR margin legend.

1.9 Utility Limits

This section lists magnitude limitations imposed by a specific implementation. The braces notation, {LIMIT}, is used in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to indicate these values, but the braces are not part of the name.

Table 1-3 Utility Limit Minimum Values

Name	Description	Value
{POSIX2_BC_BASE_MAX}	The maximum *obase* value allowed by the *bc* utility.	99
{POSIX2_BC_DIM_MAX}	The maximum number of elements permitted in an array by the *bc* utility.	2 048
{POSIX2_BC_SCALE_MAX}	The maximum *scale* value allowed by the *bc* utility.	99
{POSIX2_BC_STRING_MAX}	The maximum length of a string constant accepted by the *bc* utility.	1 000
{POSIX2_COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}	The maximum number of weights that can be assigned to an entry of the *LC_COLLATE* **order** keyword in the locale definition file; see the **border_start** keyword in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3.2, LC_COLLATE.	2
{POSIX2_EXPR_NEST_MAX}	The maximum number of expressions that can be nested within parentheses by the *expr* utility.	32
{POSIX2_LINE_MAX}	Unless otherwise noted, the maximum length, in bytes, of the input line of a utility (either standard input or another file), when the utility is described as processing text files. The length includes room for the trailing <newline>.	2 048
{POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX}	The maximum number of repeated occurrences of a BRE permitted when using the interval notation \{*m*,*n*\}; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3.6, BREs Matching Multiple Characters.	255

The values specified in Table 1-3 represent the lowest values conforming implementations shall provide and, consequently, the largest values on which an application can rely without further enquiries, as described below. These values shall be accessible to applications via the *getconf* utility (see *getconf* (on page 484)).

Implementations may provide more liberal, or less restrictive, values than shown in Table 1-3 (on page 16). These possibly more liberal values are accessible using the symbols in Table 1-4 (on page 17).

The *sysconf*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x or the *getconf* utility return the value of each symbol on each specific implementation. The value so retrieved is the largest, or most liberal, value that is available throughout the session lifetime, as determined at session creation. The literal names shown in the table apply only to the *getconf* utility; the high-level language binding describes the exact form of each name to be used by the interfaces in that binding.

All numeric limits defined by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, such as {PATH_MAX}, shall also apply to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. All the utilities defined by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are implicitly limited by these values, unless otherwise noted in the utility descriptions.

It is not guaranteed that the application can actually reach the specified limit of an implementation in any given case, or at all, as a lack of virtual memory or other resources may prevent this. The limit value indicates only that the implementation does not specifically impose

any arbitrary, more restrictive limit.

Table 1-4 Symbolic Utility Limits

Name	Description	Minimum Value
{BC_BASE_MAX}	The maximum *obase* value allowed by the *bc* utility.	{POSIX2_BC_BASE_MAX}
{BC_DIM_MAX}	The maximum number of elements permitted in an array by the *bc* utility.	{POSIX2_BC_DIM_MAX}
{BC_SCALE_MAX}	The maximum *scale* value allowed by the *bc* utility.	{POSIX2_BC_SCALE_MAX}
{BC_STRING_MAX}	The maximum length of a string constant accepted by the *bc* utility.	{POSIX2_BC_STRING_MAX}
{COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}	The maximum number of weights that can be assigned to an entry of the *LC_COLLATE* **order** keyword in the locale definition file; see the **order_start** keyword in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3.2, LC_COLLATE.	{POSIX2_COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}
{EXPR_NEST_MAX}	The maximum number of expressions that can be nested within parentheses by the *expr* utility.	{POSIX2_EXPR_NEST_MAX}
{LINE_MAX}	Unless otherwise noted, the maximum length, in bytes, of the input line of a utility (either standard input or another file), when the utility is described as processing text files. The length includes room for the trailing <newline>.	{POSIX2_LINE_MAX}
{RE_DUP_MAX}	The maximum number of repeated occurrences of a BRE permitted when using the interval notation \{*m*,*n*\}; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3.6, BREs Matching Multiple Characters.	{POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX}

The following value may be a constant within an implementation or may vary from one pathname to another.

{POSIX2_SYMLINKS}
When referring to a directory, the system supports the creation of symbolic links within that directory; for non-directory files, the meaning of {POSIX2_SYMLINKS} is undefined.

1.10 Grammar Conventions

Portions of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are expressed in terms of a special grammar notation. It is used to portray the complex syntax of certain program input. The grammar is based on the syntax used by the *yacc* utility. However, it does not represent fully functional *yacc* input, suitable for program use; the lexical processing and all semantic requirements are described only in textual form. The grammar is not based on source used in any traditional implementation and has not been tested with the semantic code that would normally be required to accompany it. Furthermore, there is no implication that the partial *yacc* code presented represents the most efficient, or only, means of supporting the complex syntax within the utility. Implementations may use other programming languages or algorithms, as long as the syntax supported is the same as that represented by the grammar.

The following typographical conventions are used in the grammar; they have no significance except to aid in reading.

- The identifiers for the reserved words of the language are shown with a leading capital letter. (These are terminals in the grammar; for example, **While**, **Case**.)
- The identifiers for terminals in the grammar are all named with uppercase letters and underscores; for example, **NEWLINE**, **ASSIGN_OP**, **NAME**.
- The identifiers for non-terminals are all lowercase.

1.11 Utility Description Defaults

This section describes all of the subsections used within the utility descriptions, including:

- Intended usage of the section
- Global defaults that affect all the standard utilities
- The meanings of notations used in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that are specific to individual utility sections

NAME
This section gives the name or names of the utility and briefly states its purpose.

SYNOPSIS
The SYNOPSIS section summarizes the syntax of the calling sequence for the utility, including options, option-arguments, and operands. Standards for utility naming are described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines; for describing the utility's arguments in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.1, Utility Argument Syntax.

DESCRIPTION
The DESCRIPTION section describes the actions of the utility. If the utility has a very complex set of subcommands or its own procedural language, an EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section is also provided. Most explanations of optional functionality are omitted here, as they are usually explained in the OPTIONS section.

As stated in Section 1.7.1.11 (on page 7), some functions are described in terms of equivalent functionality. When specific functions are cited, the implementation shall

provide equivalent functionality including side effects associated with successful execution of the function. The treatment of errors and intermediate results from the individual functions cited is generally not specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. See the utility's EXIT STATUS and CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS sections for all actions associated with errors encountered by the utility.

OPTIONS

The OPTIONS section describes the utility options and option-arguments, and how they modify the actions of the utility. Standard utilities that have options either fully comply with the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines or describe all deviations. Apparent disagreements between functionality descriptions in the OPTIONS and DESCRIPTION (or EXTENDED DESCRIPTION) sections are always resolved in favor of the OPTIONS section.

Each OPTIONS section that uses the phrase "The ... utility shall conform to the Utility Syntax Guidelines ..." refers only to the use of the utility as specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; implementation extensions should also conform to the guidelines, but may allow exceptions for historical practice.

Unless otherwise stated in the utility description, when given an option unrecognized by the implementation, or when a required option-argument is not provided, standard utilities shall issue a diagnostic message to standard error and exit with a non-zero exit status.

All utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be capable of processing arguments using eight-bit transparency.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "None.", it means that the implementation need not support any options. Standard utilities that do not accept options, but that do accept operands, shall recognize `"--"` as a first argument to be discarded.

The requirement for recognizing `"--"` is because conforming applications need a way to shield their operands from any arbitrary options that the implementation may provide as an extension. For example, if the standard utility *foo* is listed as taking no options, and the application needed to give it a pathname with a leading hyphen, it could safely do it as:

```
foo -- -myfile
```

and avoid any problems with **–m** used as an extension.

OPERANDS

The OPERANDS section describes the utility operands, and how they affect the actions of the utility. Apparent disagreements between functionality descriptions in the OPERANDS and DESCRIPTION (or EXTENDED DESCRIPTION) sections shall be resolved in favor of the OPERANDS section.

If an operand naming a file can be specified as `'-'`, which means to use the standard input instead of a named file, this is explicitly stated in this section. Unless otherwise stated, the use of multiple instances of `'-'` to mean standard input in a single command produces unspecified results.

Unless otherwise stated, the standard utilities that accept operands shall process those operands in the order specified in the command line.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "None.", it means that the implementation need not support any operands.

STDIN

The STDIN section describes the standard input of the utility. This section is frequently merely a reference to the following section, as many utilities treat standard input and input files in the same manner. Unless otherwise stated, all restrictions described in the INPUT FILES section shall apply to this section as well.

Use of a terminal for standard input can cause any of the standard utilities that read standard input to stop when used in the background. For this reason, applications should not use interactive features in scripts to be placed in the background.

The specified standard input format of the standard utilities shall not depend on the existence or value of the environment variables defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, except as provided by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "Not used.", it means that the standard input shall not be read when the utility is used as described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

INPUT FILES

The INPUT FILES section describes the files, other than the standard input, used as input by the utility. It includes files named as operands and option-arguments as well as other files that are referred to, such as start-up and initialization files, databases, and so on. Commonly-used files are generally described in one place and cross-referenced by other utilities.

All utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be capable of processing input files using eight-bit transparency.

When a standard utility reads a seekable input file and terminates without an error before it reaches end-of-file, the utility shall ensure that the file offset in the open file description is properly positioned just past the last byte processed by the utility. For files that are not seekable, the state of the file offset in the open file description for that file is unspecified. A conforming application shall not assume that the following three commands are equivalent:

```
tail –n +2 file
(sed –n 1q; cat) < file
cat file | (sed –n 1q; cat)
```

The second command is equivalent to the first only when the file is seekable. The third command leaves the file offset in the open file description in an unspecified state. Other utilities, such as *head*, *read*, and *sh*, have similar properties.

Some of the standard utilities, such as filters, process input files a line or a block at a time and have no restrictions on the maximum input file size. Some utilities may have size limitations that are not as obvious as file space or memory limitations. Such limitations should reflect resource limitations of some sort, not arbitrary limits set by implementors. Implementations shall document those utilities that are limited by constraints other than file system space, available memory, and other limits specifically cited by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, and identify what the constraint is and indicate a way of estimating when the constraint would be reached. Similarly, some utilities descend the directory tree (recursively). Implementations shall also document any limits that they may have in descending the directory tree that are beyond limits cited by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

When an input file is described as a "text file", the utility produces undefined results if given input that is not from a text file, unless otherwise stated. Some utilities (for example, *make*, *read*, *sh*) allow for continued input lines using an escaped <newline>

convention; unless otherwise stated, the utility need not be able to accumulate more than {LINE_MAX} bytes from a set of multiple, continued input lines. Thus, for a conforming application the total of all the continued lines in a set cannot exceed {LINE_MAX}. If a utility using the escaped <newline> convention detects an end-of-file condition immediately after an escaped <newline>, the results are unspecified.

Record formats are described in a notation similar to that used by the C-language function, *printf*( ). See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation for a description of this notation. The format description is intended to be sufficiently rigorous to allow other applications to generate these input files. However, since <blank>s can legitimately be included in some of the fields described by the standard utilities, particularly in locales other than the POSIX locale, this intent is not always realized.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "None.", it means that no input files are required to be supplied when the utility is used as described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section lists what variables affect the utility's execution.

The entire manner in which environment variables described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x affect the behavior of each utility is described in the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section for that utility, in conjunction with the global
XSI effects of the *LANG*, *LC_ALL*, and *NLSPATH* environment variables described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables. The existence or value of environment variables described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall not otherwise affect the specified behavior of the standard utilities. Any effects of the existence or value of environment variables not described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x upon the standard utilities are unspecified.

For those standard utilities that use environment variables as a means for selecting a utility to execute (such as *CC* in *make*), the string provided to the utility is subjected to the path search described for *PATH* in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

All utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be capable of processing environment variable names and values using eight-bit transparency.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "None.", it means that the behavior of the utility is not directly affected by environment variables described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x when the utility is used as described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

The ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section lists how the utility reacts to such events as signals and what signals are caught.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "Default.", or it refers to "the standard action for all other signals; see Section 1.11 (on page 18)" it means that the action taken as a result of the signal shall be one of the following:

1. The action shall be that inherited from the parent according to the rules of inheritance of signal actions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

2. When no action has been taken to change the default, the default action shall be that specified by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

3. The result of the utility's execution is as if default actions had been taken.

A utility is permitted to catch a signal, perform some additional processing (such as deleting temporary files), restore the default signal action (or action inherited from the parent process), and resignal itself.

STDOUT

The STDOUT section completely describes the standard output of the utility. This section is frequently merely a reference to the following section, OUTPUT FILES, because many utilities treat standard output and output files in the same manner.

Use of a terminal for standard output may cause any of the standard utilities that write standard output to stop when used in the background. For this reason, applications should not use interactive features in scripts to be placed in the background.

Record formats are described in a notation similar to that used by the C-language function, *printf*( ). See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation for a description of this notation.

The specified standard output of the standard utilities shall not depend on the existence or value of the environment variables defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, except as provided by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Some of the standard utilities describe their output using the verb *display*, defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.132, Display. Output described in the STDOUT sections of such utilities may be produced using means other than standard output. When standard output is directed to a terminal, the output described shall be written directly to the terminal. Otherwise, the results are undefined.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "Not used.", it means that the standard output shall not be written when the utility is used as described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

STDERR

The STDERR section describes the standard error output of the utility. Only those messages that are purposely sent by the utility are described.

Use of a terminal for standard error may cause any of the standard utilities that write standard error output to stop when used in the background. For this reason, applications should not use interactive features in scripts to be placed in the background.

The format of diagnostic messages for most utilities is unspecified, but the language and cultural conventions of diagnostic and informative messages whose format is unspecified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x should be affected by the setting of *LC_MESSAGES* and *NLSPATH*. XSI

The specified standard error output of standard utilities shall not depend on the existence or value of the environment variables defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, except as provided by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.", it means that, unless otherwise stated, the diagnostic messages shall be sent to the standard error only when the exit status is non-zero and the utility is used as described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

When this section is listed as "Not used.", it means that the standard error shall not be

used when the utility is used as described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

OUTPUT FILES

The OUTPUT FILES section completely describes the files created or modified by the utility. Temporary or system files that are created for internal usage by this utility or other parts of the implementation (for example, spool, log, and audit files) are not described in this, or any, section. The utilities creating such files and the names of such files are unspecified. If applications are written to use temporary or intermediate files, they should use the *TMPDIR* environment variable, if it is set and represents an accessible directory, to select the location of temporary files.

Implementations shall ensure that temporary files, when used by the standard utilities, are named so that different utilities or multiple instances of the same utility can operate simultaneously without regard to their working directories, or any other process characteristic other than process ID. There are two exceptions to this rule:

1. Resources for temporary files other than the name space (for example, disk space, available directory entries, or number of processes allowed) are not guaranteed.
2. Certain standard utilities generate output files that are intended as input for other utilities (for example, *lex* generates **lex.yy.c**), and these cannot have unique names. These cases are explicitly identified in the descriptions of the respective utilities.

Any temporary file created by the implementation shall be removed by the implementation upon a utility's successful exit, exit because of errors, or before termination by any of the SIGHUP, SIGINT, or SIGTERM signals, unless specified otherwise by the utility description.

Receipt of the SIGQUIT signal should generally cause termination (unless in some debugging mode) that would bypass any attempted recovery actions.

Record formats are described in a notation similar to that used by the C-language function, *printf*( ); see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation for a description of this notation.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "None.", it means that no files are created or modified as a consequence of direct action on the part of the utility when the utility is used as described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. However, the utility may create or modify system files, such as log files, that are outside the utility's normal execution environment.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

The EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section provides a place for describing the actions of very complicated utilities, such as text editors or language processors, which typically have elaborate command languages.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "None.", no further description is necessary.

EXIT STATUS

The EXIT STATUS section describes the values the utility shall return to the calling program, or shell, and the conditions that cause these values to be returned. Usually, utilities return zero for successful completion and values greater than zero for various error conditions. If specific numeric values are listed in this section, the system shall use those values for the errors described. In some cases, status values are listed more loosely, such as >0. A strictly conforming application shall not rely on any specific

value in the range shown and shall be prepared to receive any value in the range.

For example, a utility may list zero as a successful return, 1 as a failure for a specific reason, and >1 as "an error occurred". In this case, unspecified conditions may cause a 2 or 3, or other value, to be returned. A conforming application should be written so that it tests for successful exit status values (zero in this case), rather than relying upon the single specific error value listed in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. In that way, it has maximum portability, even on implementations with extensions.

Unspecified error conditions may be represented by specific values not listed in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

The CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS section describes the effects on the environment, file systems, process state, and so on, when error conditions occur. It does not describe error messages produced or exit status values used.

The many reasons for failure of a utility are generally not specified by the utility descriptions. Utilities may terminate prematurely if they encounter: invalid usage of options, arguments, or environment variables; invalid usage of the complex syntaxes expressed in EXTENDED DESCRIPTION sections; difficulties accessing, creating, reading, or writing files; or difficulties associated with the privileges of the process.

The following shall apply to each utility, unless otherwise stated:

- If the requested action cannot be performed on an operand representing a file, directory, user, process, and so on, the utility shall issue a diagnostic message to standard error and continue processing the next operand in sequence, but the final exit status shall be returned as non-zero.

  For a utility that recursively traverses a file hierarchy (such as *find* or *chown* **–R**), if the requested action cannot be performed on a file or directory encountered in the hierarchy, the utility shall issue a diagnostic message to standard error and continue processing the remaining files in the hierarchy, but the final exit status shall be returned as non-zero.

- If the requested action characterized by an option or option-argument cannot be performed, the utility shall issue a diagnostic message to standard error and the exit status returned shall be non-zero.

- When an unrecoverable error condition is encountered, the utility shall exit with a non-zero exit status.

- A diagnostic message shall be written to standard error whenever an error condition occurs.

When a utility encounters an error condition several actions are possible, depending on the severity of the error and the state of the utility. Included in the possible actions of various utilities are: deletion of temporary or intermediate work files; deletion of incomplete files; validity checking of the file system or directory.

Default Behavior: When this section is listed as "Default.", it means that any changes to the environment are unspecified.

APPLICATION USAGE

This section is informative.

The APPLICATION USAGE section gives advice to the application programmer or user about the way the utility should be used.

EXAMPLES

This section is informative.

The EXAMPLES section gives one or more examples of usage, where appropriate. In the event of conflict between an example and a normative part of the specification, the normative material is to be taken as correct.

In all examples, quoting has been used, showing how sample commands (utility names combined with arguments) could be passed correctly to a shell (see *sh*) or as a string to the *system*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Such quoting would not be used if the utility is invoked using one of the *exec* functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

RATIONALE

This section is informative.

This section contains historical information concerning the contents of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and why features were included or discarded by the standard developers.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

This section is informative.

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section should be used as a guide to current thinking; there is not necessarily a commitment to implement all of these future directions in their entirety.

SEE ALSO

This section is informative.

The SEE ALSO section lists related entries.

CHANGE HISTORY

This section is informative.

This section shows the derivation of the entry and any significant changes that have been made to it.

Certain of the standard utilities describe how they can invoke other utilities or applications, such as by passing a command string to the command interpreter. The external influences (STDIN, ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES, and so on) and external effects (STDOUT, CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS, and so on) of such invoked utilities are not described in the section concerning the standard utility that invokes them.

1.12 Considerations for Utilities in Support of Files of Arbitrary Size

The following utilities support files of any size up to the maximum that can be created by the implementation. This support includes correct writing of file size-related values (such as file sizes and offsets, line numbers, and block counts) and correct interpretation of command line arguments that contain such values.

basename Return non-directory portion of pathname.

cat Concatenate and print files.

cd Change working directory.

chgrp Change file group ownership.

chmod Change file modes.

chown Change file ownership.

cksum Write file checksums and sizes.

cmp Compare two files.

cp Copy files.

dd Convert and copy a file.

df Report free disk space.

dirname Return directory portion of pathname.

du Estimate file space usage.

find Find files.

ln Link files.

ls List directory contents.

mkdir Make directories.

mv Move files.

pathchk Check pathnames.

pwd Return working directory name.

rm Remove directory entries.

rmdir Remove directories.

sh Shell, the standard command language interpreter.

sum Print checksum and block or byte count of a file.

test Evaluate expression.

touch Change file access and modification times.

ulimit Set or report file size limit.

Exceptions to the requirement that utilities support files of any size up to the maximum are as follows:

1. Uses of files as command scripts, or for configuration or control, are exempt. For example, it is not required that *sh* be able to read an arbitrarily large **.profile**.

2. Shell input and output redirection are exempt. For example, it is not required that the redirections *sum* < *file* or *echo foo* > *file* succeed for an arbitrarily large existing file.

1.13 Built-In Utilities

Any of the standard utilities may be implemented as regular built-in utilities within the command language interpreter. This is usually done to increase the performance of frequently used utilities or to achieve functionality that would be more difficult in a separate environment. The utilities named in Table 1-5 are frequently provided in built-in form. All of the utilities named in the table have special properties in terms of command search order within the shell, as described in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48).

Table 1-5 Regular Built-In Utilities

alias	*false*	*jobs*	*read*	*wait*
bg	*fc*	*kill*	*true*	
cd	*fg*	*newgrp*	*umask*	
command	*getopts*	*pwd*	*unalias*	

However, all of the standard utilities, including the regular built-ins in the table, but not the special built-ins described in Section 2.14 (on page 64), shall be implemented in a manner so that they can be accessed via the *exec* family of functions as defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and can be invoked directly by those standard utilities that require it (*env*, *find*, *nice*, *nohup*, *time*, *xargs*).

1108 *Chapter 2*

1109 # *Shell Command Language*

1110 This chapter contains the definition of the Shell Command Language.

1111 ## 2.1 Shell Introduction

1112 The shell is a command language interpreter. This chapter describes the syntax of that command
1113 language as it is used by the *sh* utility and the *system*( ) and *popen*( ) functions defined in the
1114 System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

1115 The shell operates according to the following general overview of operations. The specific
1116 details are included in the cited sections of this chapter.

1117 1. The shell reads its input from a file (see *sh*), from the **–c** option or from the *system*( ) and
1118 *popen*( ) functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If the
1119 first line of a file of shell commands starts with the characters "#!", the results are
1120 unspecified.

1121 2. The shell breaks the input into tokens: words and operators; see Section 2.3 (on page 31).

1122 3. The shell parses the input into simple commands (see Section 2.9.1 (on page 47)) and
1123 compound commands (see Section 2.9.4 (on page 52)).

1124 4. The shell performs various expansions (separately) on different parts of each command,
1125 resulting in a list of pathnames and fields to be treated as a command and arguments; see
1126 Section 2.6 (on page 37).

1127 5. The shell performs redirection (see Section 2.7 (on page 43)) and removes redirection
1128 operators and their operands from the parameter list.

1129 6. The shell executes a function (see Section 2.9.5 (on page 54)), built-in (see Section 2.14 (on
1130 page 64)), executable file, or script, giving the names of the arguments as positional
1131 parameters numbered 1 to *n*, and the name of the command (or in the case of a function
1132 within a script, the name of the script) as the positional parameter numbered 0 (see
1133 Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48)).

1134 7. The shell optionally waits for the command to complete and collects the exit status (see
1135 Section 2.8.2 (on page 46)).

2.2 Quoting

Quoting is used to remove the special meaning of certain characters or words to the shell. Quoting can be used to preserve the literal meaning of the special characters in the next paragraph, prevent reserved words from being recognized as such, and prevent parameter expansion and command substitution within here-document processing (see Section 2.7.4 (on page 44)).

The application shall quote the following characters if they are to represent themselves:

```
|  &  ;  <  >  (  )  $  `  \  "  '  <space>  <tab>  <newline>
```

and the following may need to be quoted under certain circumstances. That is, these characters may be special depending on conditions described elsewhere in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x:

```
*  ?  [  #  ~  =  %
```

The various quoting mechanisms are the escape character, single-quotes, and double-quotes. The here-document represents another form of quoting; see Section 2.7.4 (on page 44).

2.2.1 Escape Character (Backslash)

A backslash that is not quoted shall preserve the literal value of the following character, with the exception of a <newline>. If a <newline> follows the backslash, the shell shall interpret this as line continuation. The backslash and <newline>s shall be removed before splitting the input into tokens. Since the escaped <newline> is removed entirely from the input and is not replaced by any white space, it cannot serve as a token separator.

2.2.2 Single-Quotes

Enclosing characters in single-quotes (`''`) shall preserve the literal value of each character within the single-quotes. A single-quote cannot occur within single-quotes.

2.2.3 Double-Quotes

Enclosing characters in double-quotes (`""`) shall preserve the literal value of all characters within the double-quotes, with the exception of the characters dollar sign, backquote, and backslash, as follows:

`$` The dollar sign shall retain its special meaning introducing parameter expansion (see Section 2.6.2 (on page 38)), a form of command substitution (see Section 2.6.3 (on page 40)), and arithmetic expansion (see Section 2.6.4 (on page 41)).

The input characters within the quoted string that are also enclosed between `"$("` and the matching `')'` shall not be affected by the double-quotes, but rather shall define that command whose output replaces the `"$(...)"` when the word is expanded. The tokenizing rules in Section 2.3 (on page 31), not including the alias substitutions in Section 2.3.1 (on page 32), shall be applied recursively to find the matching `')'`.

Within the string of characters from an enclosed `"${"` to the matching `'}'`, an even number of unescaped double-quotes or single-quotes, if any, shall occur. A preceding backslash character shall be used to escape a literal `'{'` or `'}'`. The rule in Section 2.6.2 shall be used to determine the matching `'}'`.

`` ` `` The backquote shall retain its special meaning introducing the other form of command substitution (see Section 2.6.3 (on page 40)). The portion of the quoted string from the initial backquote and the characters up to the next backquote that is not preceded by a backslash, having escape characters removed, defines that command whose output replaces `` "`...`" `` when the word is expanded. Either of the following cases produces undefined results:

- A single-quoted or double-quoted string that begins, but does not end, within the "'...'" sequence
- A "'...'" sequence that begins, but does not end, within the same double-quoted string

\ The backslash shall retain its special meaning as an escape character (see Section 2.2.1 (on page 30)) only when followed by one of the following characters when considered special:

```
$   '   "   \   <newline>
```

The application shall ensure that a double-quote is preceded by a backslash to be included within double-quotes. The parameter '@' has special meaning inside double-quotes and is described in Section 2.5.2 (on page 34).

2.3 Token Recognition

The shell shall read its input in terms of lines from a file, from a terminal in the case of an interactive shell, or from a string in the case of *sh* **−c** or *system*( ). The input lines can be of unlimited length. These lines shall be parsed using two major modes: ordinary token recognition and processing of here-documents.

When an **io_here** token has been recognized by the grammar (see Section 2.10 (on page 55)), one or more of the subsequent lines immediately following the next **NEWLINE** token form the body of one or more here-documents and shall be parsed according to the rules of Section 2.7.4 (on page 44).

When it is not processing an **io_here**, the shell shall break its input into tokens by applying the first applicable rule below to the next character in its input. The token shall be from the current position in the input until a token is delimited according to one of the rules below; the characters forming the token are exactly those in the input, including any quoting characters. If it is indicated that a token is delimited, and no characters have been included in a token, processing shall continue until an actual token is delimited.

1. If the end of input is recognized, the current token shall be delimited. If there is no current token, the end-of-input indicator shall be returned as the token.
2. If the previous character was used as part of an operator and the current character is not quoted and can be used with the current characters to form an operator, it shall be used as part of that (operator) token.
3. If the previous character was used as part of an operator and the current character cannot be used with the current characters to form an operator, the operator containing the previous character shall be delimited.
4. If the current character is backslash, single-quote, or double-quote ('\', ''', or '"') and it is not quoted, it shall affect quoting for subsequent characters up to the end of the quoted text. The rules for quoting are as described in Section 2.2 (on page 30). During token recognition no substitutions shall be actually performed, and the result token shall contain exactly the characters that appear in the input (except for <newline> joining), unmodified, including any embedded or enclosing quotes or substitution operators, between the quote mark and the end of the quoted text. The token shall not be delimited by the end of the quoted field.
5. If the current character is an unquoted '$' or ''', the shell shall identify the start of any candidates for parameter expansion (Section 2.6.2 (on page 38)), command substitution (Section 2.6.3 (on page 40)), or arithmetic expansion (Section 2.6.4 (on page 41)) from their introductory unquoted character sequences: '$' or "${", "$(" or ''', and "$((",

respectively. The shell shall read sufficient input to determine the end of the unit to be expanded (as explained in the cited sections). While processing the characters, if instances of expansions or quoting are found nested within the substitution, the shell shall recursively process them in the manner specified for the construct that is found. The characters found from the beginning of the substitution to its end, allowing for any recursion necessary to recognize embedded constructs, shall be included unmodified in the result token, including any embedded or enclosing substitution operators or quotes. The token shall not be delimited by the end of the substitution.

6. If the current character is not quoted and can be used as the first character of a new operator, the current token (if any) shall be delimited. The current character shall be used as the beginning of the next (operator) token.
7. If the current character is an unquoted <newline>, the current token shall be delimited.
8. If the current character is an unquoted <blank>, any token containing the previous character is delimited and the current character shall be discarded.
9. If the previous character was part of a word, the current character shall be appended to that word.
10. If the current character is a '#', it and all subsequent characters up to, but excluding, the next <newline> shall be discarded as a comment. The <newline> that ends the line is not considered part of the comment.
11. The current character is used as the start of a new word.

Once a token is delimited, it is categorized as required by the grammar in Section 2.10 (on page 55).

2.3.1 Alias Substitution

After a token has been delimited, but before applying the grammatical rules in Section 2.10 (on page 55), a resulting word that is identified to be the command name word of a simple command shall be examined to determine whether it is an unquoted, valid alias name. However, reserved words in correct grammatical context shall not be candidates for alias substitution. A valid alias name (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.10, Alias Name) shall be one that has been defined by the *alias* utility and not subsequently undefined using *unalias*. Implementations also may provide predefined valid aliases that are in effect when the shell is invoked. To prevent infinite loops in recursive aliasing, if the shell is not currently processing an alias of the same name, the word shall be replaced by the value of the alias; otherwise, it shall not be replaced.

If the value of the alias replacing the word ends in a <blank>, the shell shall check the next command word for alias substitution; this process shall continue until a word is found that is not a valid alias or an alias value does not end in a <blank>.

When used as specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, alias definitions shall not be inherited by separate invocations of the shell or by the utility execution environments invoked by the shell; see Section 2.12 (on page 61).

2.4 Reserved Words

Reserved words are words that have special meaning to the shell; see Section 2.9 (on page 47). The following words shall be recognized as reserved words:

!	**do**	**esac**	**in**
{	**done**	**fi**	**then**
}	**elif**	**for**	**until**
case	**else**	**if**	**while**

This recognition shall only occur when none of the characters is quoted and when the word is used as:

- The first word of a command
- The first word following one of the reserved words other than **case**, **for**, or **in**
- The third word in a **case** command (only **in** is valid in this case)
- The third word in a **for** command (only **in** and **do** are valid in this case)

See the grammar in Section 2.10 (on page 55).

The following words may be recognized as reserved words on some implementations (when none of the characters are quoted), causing unspecified results:

[[	**]]**	**function**	**select**

Words that are the concatenation of a name and a colon (`':'`) are reserved; their use produces unspecified results.

2.5 Parameters and Variables

A parameter can be denoted by a name, a number, or one of the special characters listed in Section 2.5.2 (on page 34). A variable is a parameter denoted by a name.

A parameter is set if it has an assigned value (null is a valid value). Once a variable is set, it can only be unset by using the *unset* special built-in command.

2.5.1 Positional Parameters

A positional parameter is a parameter denoted by the decimal value represented by one or more digits, other than the single digit 0. The digits denoting the positional parameters shall always be interpreted as a decimal value, even if there is a leading zero. When a positional parameter with more than one digit is specified, the application shall enclose the digits in braces (see Section 2.6.2 (on page 38)). Positional parameters are initially assigned when the shell is invoked (see *sh*), temporarily replaced when a shell function is invoked (see Section 2.9.5 (on page 54)), and can be reassigned with the *set* special built-in command.

2.5.2 Special Parameters

Listed below are the special parameters and the values to which they shall expand. Only the values of the special parameters are listed; see Section 2.6 for a detailed summary of all the stages involved in expanding words.

@ Expands to the positional parameters, starting from one. When the expansion occurs within double-quotes, and where field splitting (see Section 2.6.5 (on page 42)) is performed, each positional parameter shall expand as a separate field, with the provision that the expansion of the first parameter shall still be joined with the beginning part of the original word (assuming that the expanded parameter was embedded within a word), and the expansion of the last parameter shall still be joined with the last part of the original word. If there are no positional parameters, the expansion of `'@'` shall generate zero fields, even when `'@'` is double-quoted.

* Expands to the positional parameters, starting from one. When the expansion occurs within a double-quoted string (see Section 2.2.3 (on page 30)), it shall expand to a single field with the value of each parameter separated by the first character of the *IFS* variable, or by a <space> if *IFS* is unset. If *IFS* is set to a null string, this is not equivalent to unsetting it; its first character does not exist, so the parameter values are concatenated.

Expands to the decimal number of positional parameters. The command name (parameter 0) shall not be counted in the number given by `'#'` because it is a special parameter, not a positional parameter.

? Expands to the decimal exit status of the most recent pipeline (see Section 2.9.2 (on page 49)).

– (Hyphen.) Expands to the current option flags (the single-letter option names concatenated into a string) as specified on invocation, by the *set* special built-in command, or implicitly by the shell.

$ Expands to the decimal process ID of the invoked shell. In a subshell (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)), `'$'` shall expand to the same value as that of the current shell.

! Expands to the decimal process ID of the most recent background command (see Section 2.9.3 (on page 50)) executed from the current shell. (For example, background commands executed from subshells do not affect the value of `"$!"` in the current shell environment.) For a pipeline, the process ID is that of the last command in the pipeline.

0 (Zero.) Expands to the name of the shell or shell script. See *sh* for a detailed description of how this name is derived.

See the description of the *IFS* variable in Section 2.5.3 (on page 34).

2.5.3 Shell Variables

Variables shall be initialized from the environment (as defined by the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables and the *exec* function in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x) and can be given new values with variable assignment commands. If a variable is initialized from the environment, it shall be marked for export immediately; see the *export* special built-in. New variables can be defined and initialized with variable assignments, with the *read* or *getopts* utilities, with the *name* parameter in a **for** loop, with the ${*name*=*word*} expansion, or with other mechanisms provided as implementation extensions.

The following variables shall affect the execution of the shell:

UP XSI *ENV* The processing of the *ENV* shell variable shall be supported on all XSI-conformant systems or if the system supports the User Portability Utilities option.

This variable, when and only when an interactive shell is invoked, shall be subjected to parameter expansion (see Section 2.6.2 (on page 38)) by the shell and the resulting value shall be used as a pathname of a file containing shell commands to execute in the current environment. The file need not be executable. If the expanded value of *ENV* is not an absolute pathname, the results are unspecified. *ENV* shall be ignored if the user's real and effective user IDs or real and effective group IDs are different.

HOME The pathname of the user's home directory. The contents of *HOME* are used in tilde expansion (see Section 2.6.1 (on page 37)).

IFS A string treated as a list of characters that is used for field splitting and to split lines into fields with the *read* command.

If *IFS* is not set, it shall behave as normal for an unset variable, except that field splitting by the shell and line splitting by the *read* command shall be performed as if the value of *IFS* is <space><tab><newline>; see Section 2.6.5 (on page 42).

Implementations may ignore the value of *IFS* in the environment, or the absence of *IFS* from the environment, at the time the shell is invoked, in which case the shell shall set *IFS* to <space><tab><newline> when it is invoked.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL The value of this variable overrides the *LC_** variables and *LANG*, as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

LC_COLLATE Determine the behavior of range expressions, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within pattern matching.

LC_CTYPE Determine the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters), which characters are defined as letters (character class **alpha**) and <blank>s (character class **blank**), and the behavior of character classes within pattern matching. Changing the value of *LC_CTYPE* after the shell has started shall not affect the lexical processing of shell commands in the current shell execution environment or its subshells. Invoking a shell script or performing *exec sh* subjects the new shell to the changes in *LC_CTYPE*.

LC_MESSAGES Determine the language in which messages should be written.

LINENO Set by the shell to a decimal number representing the current sequential line number (numbered starting with 1) within a script or function before it executes each command. If the user unsets or resets *LINENO*, the variable may lose its special meaning for the life of the shell. If the shell is not currently executing a script or function, the value of *LINENO* is unspecified. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies the effects of the variable only for systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PATH A string formatted as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables, used to effect command interpretation; see Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48).

PPID Set by the shell to the decimal process ID of the process that invoked this shell. In a subshell (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)), *PPID* shall be set to the same value as that of the parent of the current shell. For example, *echo* $*PPID* and (*echo* $*PPID*) would produce the same value. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies the effects of the variable only for systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option.

PS1 Each time an interactive shell is ready to read a command, the value of this variable shall be subjected to parameter expansion and written to standard error. The default value shall be `"$ "`. For users who have specific additional implementation-defined privileges, the default may be another, implementation-defined value. The shell shall replace each instance of the character `'!'` in *PS1* with the history file number of the next command to be typed. Escaping the `'!'` with another `'!'` (that is, `"!!"`) shall place the literal character `'!'` in the prompt. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies the effects of the variable only for systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option.

PS2 Each time the user enters a <newline> prior to completing a command line in an interactive shell, the value of this variable shall be subjected to parameter expansion and written to standard error. The default value is `"> "`. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies the effects of the variable only for systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option.

PS4 When an execution trace (*set* **−x**) is being performed in an interactive shell, before each line in the execution trace, the value of this variable shall be subjected to parameter expansion and written to standard error. The default value is `"+ "`. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies the effects of the variable only for systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option.

PWD Set by the shell to be an absolute pathname of the current working directory, containing no components of type symbolic link, no components that are dot, and no components that are dot-dot when the shell is initialized. If an application sets or unsets the value of *PWD*, the behaviors of the *cd* and *pwd* utilities are unspecified.

2.6 Word Expansions

This section describes the various expansions that are performed on words. Not all expansions are performed on every word, as explained in the following sections.

Tilde expansions, parameter expansions, command substitutions, arithmetic expansions, and quote removals that occur within a single word expand to a single field. It is only field splitting or pathname expansion that can create multiple fields from a single word. The single exception to this rule is the expansion of the special parameter `'@'` within double-quotes, as described in Section 2.5.2 (on page 34).

The order of word expansion shall be as follows:

1. Tilde expansion (see Section 2.6.1 (on page 37)), parameter expansion (see Section 2.6.2 (on page 38)), command substitution (see Section 2.6.3 (on page 40)), and arithmetic expansion (see Section 2.6.4 (on page 41)) shall be performed, beginning to end. See item 5 in Section 2.3 (on page 31).
2. Field splitting (see Section 2.6.5 (on page 42)) shall be performed on the portions of the fields generated by step 1, unless *IFS* is null.
3. Pathname expansion (see Section 2.6.6 (on page 43)) shall be performed, unless *set* **–f** is in effect.
4. Quote removal (see Section 2.6.7 (on page 43)) shall always be performed last.

The expansions described in this section shall occur in the same shell environment as that in which the command is executed.

If the complete expansion appropriate for a word results in an empty field, that empty field shall be deleted from the list of fields that form the completely expanded command, unless the original word contained single-quote or double-quote characters.

The `'$'` character is used to introduce parameter expansion, command substitution, or arithmetic evaluation. If an unquoted `'$'` is followed by a character that is either not numeric, the name of one of the special parameters (see Section 2.5.2 (on page 34)), a valid first character of a variable name, a left curly brace (`'{'`) or a left parenthesis, the result is unspecified.

2.6.1 Tilde Expansion

A "tilde-prefix" consists of an unquoted tilde character at the beginning of a word, followed by all of the characters preceding the first unquoted slash in the word, or all the characters in the word if there is no slash. In an assignment (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.21, Variable Assignment), multiple tilde-prefixes can be used: at the beginning of the word (that is, following the equal sign of the assignment), following any unquoted colon, or both. A tilde-prefix in an assignment is terminated by the first unquoted colon or slash. If none of the characters in the tilde-prefix are quoted, the characters in the tilde-prefix following the tilde are treated as a possible login name from the user database. A portable login name cannot contain characters outside the set given in the description of the *LOGNAME* environment variable in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.3, Other Environment Variables. If the login name is null (that is, the tilde-prefix contains only the tilde), the tilde-prefix is replaced by the value of the variable *HOME*. If *HOME* is unset, the results are unspecified. Otherwise, the tilde-prefix shall be replaced by a pathname of the initial working directory associated with the login name obtained using the *getpwnam*() function as defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If the system does not recognize the login name, the results are undefined.

2.6.2 Parameter Expansion

The format for parameter expansion is as follows:

`${`*`expression`*`}`

where *expression* consists of all characters until the matching `'}'`. Any `'}'` escaped by a backslash or within a quoted string, and characters in embedded arithmetic expansions, command substitutions, and variable expansions, shall not be examined in determining the matching `'}'`.

The simplest form for parameter expansion is:

`${`*`parameter`*`}`

The value, if any, of *parameter* shall be substituted.

The parameter name or symbol can be enclosed in braces, which are optional except for positional parameters with more than one digit or when *parameter* is followed by a character that could be interpreted as part of the name. The matching closing brace shall be determined by counting brace levels, skipping over enclosed quoted strings, and command substitutions.

If the parameter name or symbol is not enclosed in braces, the expansion shall use the longest valid name (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.230, Name), whether or not the symbol represented by that name exists.

If a parameter expansion occurs inside double-quotes:

- Pathname expansion shall not be performed on the results of the expansion.
- Field splitting shall not be performed on the results of the expansion, with the exception of `'@'`; see Section 2.5.2 (on page 34).

In addition, a parameter expansion can be modified by using one of the following formats. In each case that a value of *word* is needed (based on the state of *parameter*, as described below), *word* shall be subjected to tilde expansion, parameter expansion, command substitution, and arithmetic expansion. If *word* is not needed, it shall not be expanded. The `'}'` character that delimits the following parameter expansion modifications shall be determined as described previously in this section and in Section 2.2.3 (on page 30). (For example, ${**foo-bar**}**xyz**} would result in the expansion of **foo** followed by the string **xyz**} if **foo** is set, else the string `"barxyz}"`).

${*parameter*:–*word*}
: **Use Default Values**. If *parameter* is unset or null, the expansion of *word* shall be substituted; otherwise, the value of *parameter* shall be substituted.

${*parameter*:=*word*}
: **Assign Default Values**. If *parameter* is unset or null, the expansion of *word* shall be assigned to *parameter*. In all cases, the final value of *parameter* shall be substituted. Only variables, not positional parameters or special parameters, can be assigned in this way.

${*parameter*:?[*word*]}
: **Indicate Error if Null or Unset**. If *parameter* is unset or null, the expansion of *word* (or a message indicating it is unset if *word* is omitted) shall be written to standard error and the shell exits with a non-zero exit status. Otherwise, the value of *parameter* shall be substituted. An interactive shell need not exit.

${*parameter*:+*word*}
: **Use Alternative Value**. If *parameter* is unset or null, null shall be substituted; otherwise, the expansion of *word* shall be substituted.

In the parameter expansions shown previously, use of the colon in the format shall result in a test for a parameter that is unset or null; omission of the colon shall result in a test for a

parameter that is only unset. The following table summarizes the effect of the colon:

	parameter **Set and Not Null**	*parameter* **Set But Null**	*parameter* **Unset**
${*parameter***:–***word***}**	substitute *parameter*	substitute *word*	substitute *word*
${*parameter***–***word***}**	substitute *parameter*	substitute null	substitute *word*
${*parameter***:=***word***}**	substitute *parameter*	assign *word*	assign *word*
${*parameter***=***word***}**	substitute *parameter*	substitute null	assign *word*
${*parameter***:?***word***}**	substitute *parameter*	error, exit	error, exit
${*parameter***?***word***}**	substitute *parameter*	substitute null	error, exit
${*parameter***:+***word***}**	substitute *word*	substitute null	substitute null
${*parameter***+***word***}**	substitute *word*	substitute *word*	substitute null

In all cases shown with "substitute", the expression is replaced with the value shown. In all cases shown with "assign", *parameter* is assigned that value, which also replaces the expression.

${#*parameter*} **String Length**. The length in characters of the value of *parameter* shall be substituted. If *parameter* is `'*'` or `'@'`, the result of the expansion is unspecified.

The following four varieties of parameter expansion provide for substring processing. In each case, pattern matching notation (see Section 2.13 (on page 62)), rather than regular expression notation, shall be used to evaluate the patterns. If *parameter* is `'*'` or `'@'`, the result of the expansion is unspecified. Enclosing the full parameter expansion string in double-quotes shall not cause the following four varieties of pattern characters to be quoted, whereas quoting characters within the braces shall have this effect.

${*parameter*%*word*} **Remove Smallest Suffix Pattern**. The *word* shall be expanded to produce a pattern. The parameter expansion shall then result in *parameter*, with the smallest portion of the suffix matched by the *pattern* deleted.

${*parameter*%%*word*} **Remove Largest Suffix Pattern**. The *word* shall be expanded to produce a pattern. The parameter expansion shall then result in *parameter*, with the largest portion of the suffix matched by the *pattern* deleted.

${*parameter*#*word*} **Remove Smallest Prefix Pattern**. The *word* shall be expanded to produce a pattern. The parameter expansion shall then result in *parameter*, with the smallest portion of the prefix matched by the *pattern* deleted.

${*parameter*##*word*} **Remove Largest Prefix Pattern**. The *word* shall be expanded to produce a pattern. The parameter expansion shall then result in *parameter*, with the largest portion of the prefix matched by the *pattern* deleted.

Examples

${*parameter*:–*word*}

In this example, *ls* is executed only if *x* is null or unset. (The $(*ls*) command substitution notation is explained in Section 2.6.3 (on page 40).)

```
${x:-$(ls)}
```

${*parameter*:=*word*}

```
unset X
echo ${X:=abc}
abc
```


${*parameter*:?*word*}

```
unset posix
echo ${posix:?}
sh: posix: parameter null or not set
```

${*parameter*:+*word*}

```
set a b c
echo ${3:+posix}
posix
```

${#*parameter*}

```
HOME=/usr/posix
echo ${#HOME}
10
```

${*parameter*%*word*}

```
x=file.c
echo ${x%.c}.o
file.o
```

${*parameter*%%*word*}

```
x=posix/src/std
echo ${x%%/*}
posix
```

${*parameter*#*word*}

```
x=$HOME/src/cmd
echo ${x#$HOME}
/src/cmd
```

${*parameter*##*word*}

```
x=/one/two/three
echo ${x##*/}
three
```

The double-quoting of patterns is different depending on where the double-quotes are placed:

`"${x#*}"` The asterisk is a pattern character.

`${x#"*"}` The literal asterisk is quoted and not special.

2.6.3 Command Substitution

Command substitution allows the output of a command to be substituted in place of the command name itself. Command substitution shall occur when the command is enclosed as follows:

`$(`*command*`)`

or (backquoted version):

`‘`*command*`‘`

The shell shall expand the command substitution by executing *command* in a subshell environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)) and replacing the command substitution (the text of *command* plus the enclosing `"$()"` or backquotes) with the standard output of the command, removing sequences of one or more <newline>s at the end of the substitution. Embedded <newline>s before the end of the output shall not be removed; however, they may be treated as field delimiters and eliminated during field splitting, depending on the value of *IFS* and quoting

that is in effect.

Within the backquoted style of command substitution, backslash shall retain its literal meaning, except when followed by: `'$'`, `'‘'`, or `'\'` (dollar sign, backquote, backslash). The search for the matching backquote shall be satisfied by the first unquoted non-escaped backquote; during this search, if a non-escaped backquote is encountered within a shell comment, a here-document, an embedded command substitution of the $(*command*) form, or a quoted string, undefined results occur. A single-quoted or double-quoted string that begins, but does not end, within the `"‘...‘"` sequence produces undefined results.

With the $(*command*) form, all characters following the open parenthesis to the matching closing parenthesis constitute the *command*. Any valid shell script can be used for *command*, except a script consisting solely of redirections which produces unspecified results.

The results of command substitution shall not be processed for further tilde expansion, parameter expansion, command substitution, or arithmetic expansion. If a command substitution occurs inside double-quotes, field splitting and pathname expansion shall not be performed on the results of the substitution.

Command substitution can be nested. To specify nesting within the backquoted version, the application shall precede the inner backquotes with backslashes, for example:

`\‘`*`command`*`\‘`

If the command substitution consists of a single subshell, such as:

`$( (`*`command`*`) )`

a conforming application shall separate the `"$("` and `'('` into two tokens (that is, separate them with white space). This is required to avoid any ambiguities with arithmetic expansion.

2.6.4 Arithmetic Expansion

Arithmetic expansion provides a mechanism for evaluating an arithmetic expression and substituting its value. The format for arithmetic expansion shall be as follows:

`$((`*`expression`*`))`

The expression shall be treated as if it were in double-quotes, except that a double-quote inside the expression is not treated specially. The shell shall expand all tokens in the expression for parameter expansion, command substitution, and quote removal.

Next, the shell shall treat this as an arithmetic expression and substitute the value of the expression. The arithmetic expression shall be processed according to the rules given in Section 1.7.2.1 (on page 7), with the following exceptions:

- Only signed long integer arithmetic is required.
- Only the decimal-constant, octal-constant, and hexadecimal-constant constants specified in the ISO C standard, Section 6.4.4.1 are required to be recognized as constants.
- The *sizeof*( ) operator and the prefix and postfix `"++"` and `"--"` operators are not required.
- Selection, iteration, and jump statements are not supported.

All changes to variables in an arithmetic expression shall be in effect after the arithmetic expansion, as in the parameter expansion `"${x=value}"`.

If the shell variable *x* contains a value that forms a valid integer constant, then the arithmetic expansions `"$((x))"` and `"$(($x))"` shall return the same value.

As an extension, the shell may recognize arithmetic expressions beyond those listed. The shell may use a signed integer type with a rank larger than the rank of **signed long**. The shell may

use a real-floating type instead of **signed long** as long as it does not affect the results in cases where there is no overflow. If the expression is invalid, the expansion fails and the shell shall write a message to standard error indicating the failure.

Examples

A simple example using arithmetic expansion:

```
# repeat a command 100 times
x=100
while [ $x –gt 0 ]
do
    command
    x=$(($x–1))
done
```

2.6.5 Field Splitting

After parameter expansion (Section 2.6.2 (on page 38)), command substitution (Section 2.6.3 (on page 40)), and arithmetic expansion (Section 2.6.4 (on page 41)), the shell shall scan the results of expansions and substitutions that did not occur in double-quotes for field splitting and multiple fields can result.

The shell shall treat each character of the *IFS* as a delimiter and use the delimiters as field terminators to split the results of parameter expansion and command substitution into fields.

1. If the value of *IFS* is a <space>, <tab>, and <newline>, or if it is unset, any sequence of <space>s, <tab>s, or <newline>s at the beginning or end of the input shall be ignored and any sequence of those characters within the input shall delimit a field. For example, the input:

   ```
   <newline><space><tab>foo<tab><tab>bar<space>
   ```

   yields two fields, **foo** and **bar**.

2. If the value of *IFS* is null, no field splitting shall be performed.

3. Otherwise, the following rules shall be applied in sequence. The term "*IFS* white space" is used to mean any sequence (zero or more instances) of white space characters that are in the *IFS* value (for example, if *IFS* contains <space>/<comma>/<tab>, any sequence of <space>s and <tab>s is considered *IFS* white space).

   a. *IFS* white space shall be ignored at the beginning and end of the input.

   b. Each occurrence in the input of an *IFS* character that is not *IFS* white space, along with any adjacent *IFS* white space, shall delimit a field, as described previously.

   c. Non-zero-length *IFS* white space shall delimit a field.

2.6.6 Pathname Expansion

After field splitting, if *set* **−f** is not in effect, each field in the resulting command line shall be expanded using the algorithm described in Section 2.13 (on page 62), qualified by the rules in Section 2.13.3 (on page 63).

2.6.7 Quote Removal

The quote characters: `'\'`, `'''`, and `'"'` (backslash, single-quote, double-quote) that were present in the original word shall be removed unless they have themselves been quoted.

2.7 Redirection

Redirection is used to open and close files for the current shell execution environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)) or for any command. Redirection operators can be used with numbers representing file descriptors (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.165, File Descriptor) as described below.

The overall format used for redirection is:

`[`*n*`]`*redir-op word*

The number *n* is an optional decimal number designating the file descriptor number; the application shall ensure it is delimited from any preceding text and immediately precede the redirection operator *redir-op*. If *n* is quoted, the number shall not be recognized as part of the redirection expression. For example:

```
echo \2>a
```

writes the character 2 into file **a**. If any part of *redir-op* is quoted, no redirection expression is recognized. For example:

```
echo 2\>a
```

writes the characters 2>*a* to standard output. The optional number, redirection operator, and *word* shall not appear in the arguments provided to the command to be executed (if any).

Open files are represented by decimal numbers starting with zero. The largest possible value is implementation-defined; however, all implementations shall support at least 0 to 9, inclusive, for use by the application. These numbers are called "file descriptors". The values 0, 1, and 2 have special meaning and conventional uses and are implied by certain redirection operations; they are referred to as *standard input*, *standard output*, and *standard error*, respectively. Programs usually take their input from standard input, and write output on standard output. Error messages are usually written on standard error. The redirection operators can be preceded by one or more digits (with no intervening <blank>s allowed) to designate the file descriptor number.

If the redirection operator is `"<<"` or `"<<−"`, the word that follows the redirection operator shall be subjected to quote removal; it is unspecified whether any of the other expansions occur. For the other redirection operators, the word that follows the redirection operator shall be subjected to tilde expansion, parameter expansion, command substitution, arithmetic expansion, and quote removal. Pathname expansion shall not be performed on the word by a non-interactive shell; an interactive shell may perform it, but shall do so only when the expansion would result in one word.

If more than one redirection operator is specified with a command, the order of evaluation is from beginning to end.

A failure to open or create a file shall cause a redirection to fail.

2.7.1 Redirecting Input

Input redirection shall cause the file whose name results from the expansion of *word* to be opened for reading on the designated file descriptor, or standard input if the file descriptor is not specified.

The general format for redirecting input is:

```
[n]<word
```

where the optional *n* represents the file descriptor number. If the number is omitted, the redirection shall refer to standard input (file descriptor 0).

2.7.2 Redirecting Output

The two general formats for redirecting output are:

```
[n]>word
[n]>|word
```

where the optional *n* represents the file descriptor number. If the number is omitted, the redirection shall refer to standard output (file descriptor 1).

Output redirection using the '>' format shall fail if the *noclobber* option is set (see the description of *set* –**C**) and the file named by the expansion of *word* exists and is a regular file. Otherwise, redirection using the '>' or ">|" formats shall cause the file whose name results from the expansion of *word* to be created and opened for output on the designated file descriptor, or standard output if none is specified. If the file does not exist, it shall be created; otherwise, it shall be truncated to be an empty file after being opened.

2.7.3 Appending Redirected Output

Appended output redirection shall cause the file whose name results from the expansion of word to be opened for output on the designated file descriptor. The file is opened as if the *open*( ) function as defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x was called with the O_APPEND flag. If the file does not exist, it shall be created.

The general format for appending redirected output is as follows:

```
[n]>>word
```

where the optional *n* represents the file descriptor number. If the number is omitted, the redirection refers to standard output (file descriptor 1).

2.7.4 Here-Document

The redirection operators "<<" and "<<–" both allow redirection of lines contained in a shell input file, known as a "here-document", to the input of a command.

The here-document shall be treated as a single word that begins after the next <newline> and continues until there is a line containing only the delimiter and a <newline>, with no <blank>s in between. Then the next here-document starts, if there is one. The format is as follows:

```
[n]<<word
    here-document
delimiter
```

where the optional *n* represents the file descriptor number. If the number is omitted, the here-document refers to standard input (file descriptor 0).

If any character in *word* is quoted, the delimiter shall be formed by performing quote removal on *word*, and the here-document lines shall not be expanded. Otherwise, the delimiter shall be the

word itself.

If no characters in *word* are quoted, all lines of the here-document shall be expanded for parameter expansion, command substitution, and arithmetic expansion. In this case, the backslash in the input behaves as the backslash inside double-quotes (see Section 2.2.3 (on page 30)). However, the double-quote character (`'"'`) shall not be treated specially within a here-document, except when the double-quote appears within `"$()"`, `"``"`, or `"${}"`.

If the redirection symbol is `"<<–"`, all leading <tab>s shall be stripped from input lines and the line containing the trailing delimiter. If more than one `"<<"` or `"<<–"` operator is specified on a line, the here-document associated with the first operator shall be supplied first by the application and shall be read first by the shell.

Examples

An example of a here-document follows:

```
cat <<eof1; cat <<eof2
Hi,
eof1
Helene.
eof2
```

2.7.5 Duplicating an Input File Descriptor

The redirection operator:

[*n***]<&***word*

shall duplicate one input file descriptor from another, or shall close one. If *word* evaluates to one or more digits, the file descriptor denoted by *n*, or standard input if *n* is not specified, shall be made to be a copy of the file descriptor denoted by *word*; if the digits in *word* do not represent a file descriptor already open for input, a redirection error shall result; see Section 2.8.1 (on page 46). If *word* evaluates to `'–'`, file descriptor *n*, or standard input if *n* is not specified, shall be closed. Attempts to close a file descriptor that is not open shall not constitute an error. If *word* evaluates to something else, the behavior is unspecified.

2.7.6 Duplicating an Output File Descriptor

The redirection operator:

[*n***]>&***word*

shall duplicate one output file descriptor from another, or shall close one. If *word* evaluates to one or more digits, the file descriptor denoted by *n*, or standard output if *n* is not specified, shall be made to be a copy of the file descriptor denoted by *word*; if the digits in *word* do not represent a file descriptor already open for output, a redirection error shall result; see Section 2.8.1 (on page 46). If *word* evaluates to `'–'`, file descriptor *n*, or standard output if *n* is not specified, is closed. Attempts to close a file descriptor that is not open shall not constitute an error. If *word* evaluates to something else, the behavior is unspecified.

2.7.7 Open File Descriptors for Reading and Writing

The redirection operator:

`[n]<>word`

shall cause the file whose name is the expansion of *word* to be opened for both reading and writing on the file descriptor denoted by *n*, or standard input if *n* is not specified. If the file does not exist, it shall be created.

2.8 Exit Status and Errors

2.8.1 Consequences of Shell Errors

For a non-interactive shell, an error condition encountered by a special built-in (see Section 2.14 (on page 64)) or other type of utility shall cause the shell to write a diagnostic message to standard error and exit as shown in the following table:

Error	Special Built-In	Other Utilities
Shell language syntax error	Shall exit	Shall exit
Utility syntax error (option or operand error)	Shall exit	Shall not exit
Redirection error	Shall exit	Shall not exit
Variable assignment error	Shall exit	Shall not exit
Expansion error	Shall exit	Shall exit
Command not found	N/A	May exit
Dot script not found	Shall exit	N/A

An expansion error is one that occurs when the shell expansions defined in Section 2.6 are carried out (for example, `"${x!y}"`, because `'!'` is not a valid operator); an implementation may treat these as syntax errors if it is able to detect them during tokenization, rather than during expansion.

If any of the errors shown as "shall exit" or "(may) exit" occur in a subshell, the subshell shall (respectively may) exit with a non-zero status, but the script containing the subshell shall not exit because of the error.

In all of the cases shown in the table, an interactive shell shall write a diagnostic message to standard error without exiting.

2.8.2 Exit Status for Commands

Each command has an exit status that can influence the behavior of other shell commands. The exit status of commands that are not utilities is documented in this section. The exit status of the standard utilities is documented in their respective sections.

If a command is not found, the exit status shall be 127. If the command name is found, but it is not an executable utility, the exit status shall be 126. Applications that invoke utilities without using the shell should use these exit status values to report similar errors.

If a command fails during word expansion or redirection, its exit status shall be greater than zero.

Internally, for purposes of deciding whether a command exits with a non-zero exit status, the shell shall recognize the entire status value retrieved for the command by the equivalent of the *wait*() function WEXITSTATUS macro (as defined in the System Interfaces volume of

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x). When reporting the exit status with the special parameter '?', the shell shall report the full eight bits of exit status available. The exit status of a command that terminated because it received a signal shall be reported as greater than 128.

2.9 Shell Commands

This section describes the basic structure of shell commands. The following command descriptions each describe a format of the command that is only used to aid the reader in recognizing the command type, and does not formally represent the syntax. Each description discusses the semantics of the command; for a formal definition of the command language, consult Section 2.10 (on page 55).

A *command* is one of the following:

- Simple command (see Section 2.9.1 (on page 47))
- Pipeline (see Section 2.9.2 (on page 49))
- List compound-list (see Section 2.9.3 (on page 50))
- Compound command (see Section 2.9.4 (on page 52))
- Function definition (see Section 2.9.5 (on page 54))

Unless otherwise stated, the exit status of a command shall be that of the last simple command executed by the command. There shall be no limit on the size of any shell command other than that imposed by the underlying system (memory constraints, {ARG_MAX}, and so on).

2.9.1 Simple Commands

A "simple command" is a sequence of optional variable assignments and redirections, in any sequence, optionally followed by words and redirections, terminated by a control operator.

When a given simple command is required to be executed (that is, when any conditional construct such as an AND-OR list or a **case** statement has not bypassed the simple command), the following expansions, assignments, and redirections shall all be performed from the beginning of the command text to the end:

1. The words that are recognized as variable assignments or redirections according to Section 2.10.2 are saved for processing in steps 3 and 4.
2. The words that are not variable assignments or redirections shall be expanded. If any fields remain following their expansion, the first field shall be considered the command name and remaining fields are the arguments for the command.
3. Redirections shall be performed as described in Section 2.7 (on page 43).
4. Each variable assignment shall be expanded for tilde expansion, parameter expansion, command substitution, arithmetic expansion, and quote removal prior to assigning the value.

In the preceding list, the order of steps 3 and 4 may be reversed for the processing of special built-in utilities; see Section 2.14 (on page 64).

If no command name results, variable assignments shall affect the current execution environment. Otherwise, the variable assignments shall be exported for the execution environment of the command and shall not affect the current execution environment (except for special built-ins). If any of the variable assignments attempt to assign a value to a read-only variable, a variable assignment error shall occur. See Section 2.8.1 for the consequences of these errors.

If there is no command name, any redirections shall be performed in a subshell environment; it is unspecified whether this subshell environment is the same one as that used for a command substitution within the command. (To affect the current execution environment, see the *exec* special built-in.) If any of the redirections performed in the current shell execution environment fail, the command shall immediately fail with an exit status greater than zero, and the shell shall write an error message indicating the failure. See Section 2.8.1 for the consequences of these failures on interactive and non-interactive shells.

If there is a command name, execution shall continue as described in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48). If there is no command name, but the command contained a command substitution, the command shall complete with the exit status of the last command substitution performed. Otherwise, the command shall complete with a zero exit status.

2.9.1.1 *Command Search and Execution*

If a simple command results in a command name and an optional list of arguments, the following actions shall be performed:

1. If the command name does not contain any slashes, the first successful step in the following sequence shall occur:
   a. If the command name matches the name of a special built-in utility, that special built-in utility shall be invoked.
   b. If the command name matches the name of a function known to this shell, the function shall be invoked as described in Section 2.9.5 (on page 54). If the implementation has provided a standard utility in the form of a function, it shall not be recognized at this point. It shall be invoked in conjunction with the path search in step 1d.
   c. If the command name matches the name of a utility listed in the following table, that utility shall be invoked.

alias	*false*	*jobs*	*read*	*wait*
bg	*fc*	*kill*	*true*	
cd	*fg*	*newgrp*	*umask*	
command	*getopts*	*pwd*	*unalias*	

   d. Otherwise, the command shall be searched for using the *PATH* environment variable as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables:
      i. If the search is successful:
         a. If the system has implemented the utility as a regular built-in or as a shell function, it shall be invoked at this point in the path search.
         b. Otherwise, the shell executes the utility in a separate utility environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)) with actions equivalent to calling the *execve*( ) function as defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x with the *path* argument set to the pathname resulting from the search, *arg*0 set to the command name, and the remaining arguments set to the operands, if any.

            If the *execve*( ) function fails due to an error equivalent to the [ENOEXEC] error defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the shell shall execute a command equivalent to having a shell invoked with the pathname resulting from the search as its first operand, with any remaining arguments passed to

the new shell, except that the value of `"$0"` in the new shell may be set to the command name. If the executable file is not a text file, the shell may bypass this command execution. In this case, it shall write an error message, and shall return an exit status of 126.

Once a utility has been searched for and found (either as a result of this specific search or as part of an unspecified shell start-up activity), an implementation may remember its location and need not search for the utility again unless the *PATH* variable has been the subject of an assignment. If the remembered location fails for a subsequent invocation, the shell shall repeat the search to find the new location for the utility, if any.

ii. If the search is unsuccessful, the command shall fail with an exit status of 127 and the shell shall write an error message.

2. If the command name contains at least one slash, the shell shall execute the utility in a separate utility environment with actions equivalent to calling the *execve*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x with the *path* and *arg*0 arguments set to the command name, and the remaining arguments set to the operands, if any.

   If the *execve*() function fails due to an error equivalent to the [ENOEXEC] error, the shell shall execute a command equivalent to having a shell invoked with the command name as its first operand, with any remaining arguments passed to the new shell. If the executable file is not a text file, the shell may bypass this command execution. In this case, it shall write an error message and shall return an exit status of 126.

2.9.2 Pipelines

A *pipeline* is a sequence of one or more commands separated by the control operator `'|'`. The standard output of all but the last command shall be connected to the standard input of the next command.

The format for a pipeline is:

[!] *command1* **[** | *command2* **...]**

The standard output of *command1* shall be connected to the standard input of *command2*. The standard input, standard output, or both of a command shall be considered to be assigned by the pipeline before any redirection specified by redirection operators that are part of the command (see Section 2.7 (on page 43)).

If the pipeline is not in the background (see Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50)), the shell shall wait for the last command specified in the pipeline to complete, and may also wait for all commands to complete.

Exit Status

If the reserved word **!** does not precede the pipeline, the exit status shall be the exit status of the last command specified in the pipeline. Otherwise, the exit status shall be the logical NOT of the exit status of the last command. That is, if the last command returns zero, the exit status shall be 1; if the last command returns greater than zero, the exit status shall be zero.

2.9.3 Lists

An *AND-OR list* is a sequence of one or more pipelines separated by the operators "&&" and "||".

A *list* is a sequence of one or more AND-OR lists separated by the operators ';' and '&' and optionally terminated by ';', '&', or <newline>.

The operators "&&" and "||" shall have equal precedence and shall be evaluated with left associativity. For example, both of the following commands write solely **bar** to standard output:

```
false && echo foo || echo bar
true || echo foo && echo bar
```

A ';' or <newline> terminator shall cause the preceding AND-OR list to be executed sequentially; an '&' shall cause asynchronous execution of the preceding AND-OR list.

The term "compound-list" is derived from the grammar in Section 2.10 (on page 55); it is equivalent to a sequence of *lists*, separated by <newline>s, that can be preceded or followed by an arbitrary number of <newline>s.

Examples

The following is an example that illustrates <newline>s in compound-lists:

```
while
    # a couple of <newline>s

    # a list
    date && who || ls; cat file
    # a couple of <newline>s

    # another list
    wc file > output & true
do
    # 2 lists
    ls
    cat file
done
```

2.9.3.1 *Asynchronous Lists*

If a command is terminated by the control operator ampersand ('&'), the shell shall execute the command asynchronously in a subshell. This means that the shell shall not wait for the command to finish before executing the next command.

The format for running a command in the background is:

command1 & [*command2* & ...]

The standard input for an asynchronous list, before any explicit redirections are performed, shall be considered to be assigned to a file that has the same properties as **/dev/null**. If it is an interactive shell, this need not happen. In all cases, explicit redirection of standard input shall override this activity.

When an element of an asynchronous list (the portion of the list ended by an ampersand, such as *command1*, above) is started by the shell, the process ID of the last command in the asynchronous list element shall become known in the current shell execution environment; see Section 2.12 (on

page 61). This process ID shall remain known until:

1. The command terminates and the application waits for the process ID.
2. Another asynchronous list is invoked before "$!" (corresponding to the previous asynchronous list) is expanded in the current execution environment.

The implementation need not retain more than the {CHILD_MAX} most recent entries in its list of known process IDs in the current shell execution environment.

Exit Status

The exit status of an asynchronous list shall be zero.

2.9.3.2 *Sequential Lists*

Commands that are separated by a semicolon (';') shall be executed sequentially.

The format for executing commands sequentially shall be:

command1 **[;** *command2***]** **...**

Each command shall be expanded and executed in the order specified.

Exit Status

The exit status of a sequential list shall be the exit status of the last command in the list.

2.9.3.3 *AND Lists*

The control operator "&&" denotes an AND list. The format shall be:

command1 **[** *&& command2***]** **...**

First *command1* shall be executed. If its exit status is zero, *command2* shall be executed, and so on, until a command has a non-zero exit status or there are no more commands left to execute. The commands are expanded only if they are executed.

Exit Status

The exit status of an AND list shall be the exit status of the last command that is executed in the list.

2.9.3.4 *OR Lists*

The control operator "||" denotes an OR List. The format shall be:

command1 **[** *|| command2***]** **...**

First, *command1* shall be executed. If its exit status is non-zero, *command2* shall be executed, and so on, until a command has a zero exit status or there are no more commands left to execute.

Exit Status

The exit status of an OR list shall be the exit status of the last command that is executed in the list.

2.9.4 Compound Commands

The shell has several programming constructs that are "compound commands", which provide control flow for commands. Each of these compound commands has a reserved word or control operator at the beginning, and a corresponding terminator reserved word or operator at the end. In addition, each can be followed by redirections on the same line as the terminator. Each redirection shall apply to all the commands within the compound command that do not explicitly override that redirection.

2.9.4.1 *Grouping Commands*

The format for grouping commands is as follows:

(*compound-list*) Execute *compound-list* in a subshell environment; see Section 2.12 (on page 61). Variable assignments and built-in commands that affect the environment shall not remain in effect after the list finishes.

{ *compound-list*;} Execute *compound-list* in the current process environment. The semicolon shown here is an example of a control operator delimiting the } reserved word. Other delimiters are possible, as shown in Section 2.10 (on page 55); a <newline> is frequently used.

Exit Status

The exit status of a grouping command shall be the exit status of *compound-list*.

2.9.4.2 *The for Loop*

The **for** loop shall execute a sequence of commands for each member in a list of *items*. The **for** loop requires that the reserved words **do** and **done** be used to delimit the sequence of commands.

The format for the **for** loop is as follows:

```
for name [ in [word ... ]]
do
    compound-list
done
```

First, the list of words following **in** shall be expanded to generate a list of items. Then, the variable *name* shall be set to each item, in turn, and the *compound-list* executed each time. If no items result from the expansion, the *compound-list* shall not be executed. Omitting:

`in word ...`

shall be equivalent to:

`in "$@"`

Exit Status

The exit status of a **for** command shall be the exit status of the last command that executes. If there are no items, the exit status shall be zero.

2073 ### 2.9.4.3 *Case Conditional Construct*

2074 The conditional construct **case** shall execute the *compound-list* corresponding to the first one of
2075 several *patterns* (see Section 2.13 (on page 62)) that is matched by the string resulting from the
2076 tilde expansion, parameter expansion, command substitution, arithmetic expansion, and quote
2077 removal of the given word. The reserved word **in** shall denote the beginning of the patterns to
2078 be matched. Multiple patterns with the same *compound-list* shall be delimited by the '|'
2079 symbol. The control operator ')' terminates a list of patterns corresponding to a given action.
2080 The *compound-list* for each list of patterns, with the possible exception of the last, shall be
2081 terminated with ";;". The **case** construct terminates with the reserved word **esac** (**case**
2082 reversed).

2083 The format for the **case** construct is as follows:

2084 ```
2085   [(]pattern1) compound-list;;
2086   [[(]pattern[| pattern] ...) compound-list;;] ...
2087   [[(]pattern[| pattern] ...) compound-list]
2088 esac
```

2089 The ";;" is optional for the last *compound-list*.

2090 In order from the beginning to the end of the **case** statement, each *pattern* that labels a *compound-*
2091 *list* shall be subjected to tilde expansion, parameter expansion, command substitution, and
2092 arithmetic expansion, and the result of these expansions shall be compared against the
2093 expansion of *word*, according to the rules described in Section 2.13 (which also describes the
2094 effect of quoting parts of the pattern). After the first match, no more patterns shall be expanded,
2095 and the *compound-list* shall be executed. The order of expansion and comparison of multiple
2096 *patterns* that label a *compound-list* statement is unspecified.

2097 **Exit Status**

2098 The exit status of **case** shall be zero if no patterns are matched. Otherwise, the exit status shall be
2099 the exit status of the last command executed in the *compound-list*.

2100 ### 2.9.4.4 *The if Conditional Construct*

2101 The **if** command shall execute a *compound-list* and use its exit status to determine whether to
2102 execute another *compound-list*.

2103 The format for the **if** construct is as follows:

2104 ```
2105 if compound-list
2106 then
2107     compound-list
2108 [elif compound-list
2109 then
2110     compound-list] ...
2111 [else
2112     compound-list]
2113 fi
```

2113 The **if** *compound-list* shall be executed; if its exit status is zero, the **then** *compound-list* shall be
2114 executed and the command shall complete. Otherwise, each **elif** *compound-list* shall be executed,
2115 in turn, and if its exit status is zero, the **then** *compound-list* shall be executed and the command
2116 shall complete. Otherwise, the **else** *compound-list* shall be executed.

Exit Status

The exit status of the **if** command shall be the exit status of the **then** or **else** *compound-list* that was executed, or zero, if none was executed.

2.9.4.5 *The while Loop*

The **while** loop shall continuously execute one *compound-list* as long as another *compound-list* has a zero exit status.

The format of the **while** loop is as follows:

```
while compound-list-1
do
    compound-list-2
done
```

The *compound-list-1* shall be executed, and if it has a non-zero exit status, the **while** command shall complete. Otherwise, the *compound-list-2* shall be executed, and the process shall repeat.

Exit Status

The exit status of the **while** loop shall be the exit status of the last *compound-list-2* executed, or zero if none was executed.

2.9.4.6 *The until Loop*

The **until** loop shall continuously execute one *compound-list* as long as another *compound-list* has a non-zero exit status.

The format of the **until** loop is as follows:

```
until compound-list-1
do
    compound-list-2
done
```

The *compound-list-1* shall be executed, and if it has a zero exit status, the **until** command completes. Otherwise, the *compound-list-2* shall be executed, and the process repeats.

Exit Status

The exit status of the **until** loop shall be the exit status of the last *compound-list-2* executed, or zero if none was executed.

2.9.5 Function Definition Command

A function is a user-defined name that is used as a simple command to call a compound command with new positional parameters. A function is defined with a "function definition command".

The format of a function definition command is as follows:

```
fname() compound-command[io-redirect ...]
```

The function is named *fname*; the application shall ensure that it is a name (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.230, Name). An implementation may allow other characters in a function name as an extension. The implementation shall maintain separate name spaces for functions and variables.

The argument *compound-command* represents a compound command, as described in Section 2.9.4 (on page 52).

When the function is declared, none of the expansions in Section 2.6 shall be performed on the text in *compound-command* or *io-redirect*; all expansions shall be performed as normal each time the function is called. Similarly, the optional *io-redirect* redirections and any variable assignments within *compound-command* shall be performed during the execution of the function itself, not the function definition. See Section 2.8.1 for the consequences of failures of these operations on interactive and non-interactive shells.

When a function is executed, it shall have the syntax-error and variable-assignment properties described for special built-in utilities in the enumerated list at the beginning of Section 2.14 (on page 64).

The *compound-command* shall be executed whenever the function name is specified as the name of a simple command (see Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48)). The operands to the command temporarily shall become the positional parameters during the execution of the *compound-command*; the special parameter `'#'` also shall be changed to reflect the number of operands. The special parameter 0 shall be unchanged. When the function completes, the values of the positional parameters and the special parameter `'#'` shall be restored to the values they had before the function was executed. If the special built-in *return* is executed in the *compound-command*, the function completes and execution shall resume with the next command after the function call.

Exit Status

The exit status of a function definition shall be zero if the function was declared successfully; otherwise, it shall be greater than zero. The exit status of a function invocation shall be the exit status of the last command executed by the function.

2.10 Shell Grammar

The following grammar defines the Shell Command Language. This formal syntax shall take precedence over the preceding text syntax description.

2.10.1 Shell Grammar Lexical Conventions

The input language to the shell must be first recognized at the character level. The resulting tokens shall be classified by their immediate context according to the following rules (applied in order). These rules shall be used to determine what a "token" is that is subject to parsing at the token level. The rules for token recognition in Section 2.3 shall apply.

1. A <newline> shall be returned as the token identifier **NEWLINE**.
2. If the token is an operator, the token identifier for that operator shall result.
3. If the string consists solely of digits and the delimiter character is one of `'<'` or `'>'`, the token identifier **IO_NUMBER** shall be returned.
4. Otherwise, the token identifier **TOKEN** results.

Further distinction on **TOKEN** is context-dependent. It may be that the same **TOKEN** yields **WORD**, a **NAME**, an **ASSIGNMENT**, or one of the reserved words below, dependent upon the context. Some of the productions in the grammar below are annotated with a rule number from the following list. When a **TOKEN** is seen where one of those annotated productions could be used to reduce the symbol, the applicable rule shall be applied to convert the token identifier type of the **TOKEN** to a token identifier acceptable at that point in the grammar. The reduction shall then proceed based upon the token identifier type yielded by the rule applied. When more than one rule applies, the highest numbered rule shall apply (which in turn may refer to another rule). (Note that except in rule 7, the presence of an `'='` in the token has no effect.)

The **WORD** tokens shall have the word expansion rules applied to them immediately before the associated command is executed, not at the time the command is parsed.

2.10.2 Shell Grammar Rules

1. [Command Name]

   When the **TOKEN** is exactly a reserved word, the token identifier for that reserved word shall result. Otherwise, the token **WORD** shall be returned. Also, if the parser is in any state where only a reserved word could be the next correct token, proceed as above.

   Note: Because at this point quote marks are retained in the token, quoted strings cannot be recognized as reserved words. This rule also implies that reserved words are not recognized except in certain positions in the input, such as after a <newline> or semicolon; the grammar presumes that if the reserved word is intended, it is properly delimited by the user, and does not attempt to reflect that requirement directly. Also note that line joining is done before tokenization, as described in Section 2.2.1 (on page 30), so escaped <newline>s are already removed at this point.

   Rule 1 is not directly referenced in the grammar, but is referred to by other rules, or applies globally.

2. [Redirection to or from filename]

   The expansions specified in Section 2.7 shall occur. As specified there, exactly one field can result (or the result is unspecified), and there are additional requirements on pathname expansion.

3. [Redirection from here-document]

   Quote removal shall be applied to the word to determine the delimiter that is used to find the end of the here-document that begins after the next <newline>.

4. [Case statement termination]

   When the **TOKEN** is exactly the reserved word **esac**, the token identifier for **esac** shall result. Otherwise, the token **WORD** shall be returned.

5. [**NAME** in **for**]

   When the **TOKEN** meets the requirements for a name (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.230, Name), the token identifier **NAME** shall result. Otherwise, the token **WORD** shall be returned.

6. [Third word of **for** and **case**]

   a. [**case** only]

      When the **TOKEN** is exactly the reserved word **in**, the token identifier for **in** shall result. Otherwise, the token **WORD** shall be returned.

   b. [**for** only]

      When the **TOKEN** is exactly the reserved word **in** or **do**, the token identifier for **in** or **do** shall result, respectively. Otherwise, the token **WORD** shall be returned.

   (For a. and b.: As indicated in the grammar, a *linebreak* precedes the tokens **in** and **do**. If <newline>s are present at the indicated location, it is the token after them that is treated in this fashion.)

7. [Assignment preceding command name]

   a. [When the first word]

      If the **TOKEN** does not contain the character `'='`, rule 1 is applied. Otherwise, 7b shall be applied.

   b. [Not the first word]

      If the **TOKEN** contains the equal sign character:

      — If it begins with `'='`, the token **WORD** shall be returned.

      — If all the characters preceding `'='` form a valid name (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.230, Name), the token **ASSIGNMENT_WORD** shall be returned. (Quoted characters cannot participate in forming a valid name.)

      — Otherwise, it is unspecified whether it is **ASSIGNMENT_WORD** or **WORD** that is returned.

   Assignment to the **NAME** shall occur as specified in Section 2.9.1 (on page 47).

8. [**NAME** in function]

   When the **TOKEN** is exactly a reserved word, the token identifier for that reserved word shall result. Otherwise, when the **TOKEN** meets the requirements for a name, the token identifier **NAME** shall result. Otherwise, rule 7 applies.

9. [Body of function]

   Word expansion and assignment shall never occur, even when required by the rules above, when this rule is being parsed. Each **TOKEN** that might either be expanded or have assignment applied to it shall instead be returned as a single **WORD** consisting only of characters that are exactly the token described in Section 2.3 (on page 31).

```
/* ---------------------------------------------------------
   The grammar symbols
   --------------------------------------------------------- */

%token  WORD
%token  ASSIGNMENT_WORD
%token  NAME
%token  NEWLINE
%token  IO_NUMBER

/* The following are the operators mentioned above. */

%token  AND_IF    OR_IF    DSEMI
/*      '&&'      '||'     ';;'    */

%token  DLESS  DGREAT  LESSAND  GREATAND  LESSGREAT  DLESSDASH
/*      '<<'   '>>'    '<&'     '>&'      '<>'       '<<-'   */

%token  CLOBBER
/*      '>|'   */

/* The following are the reserved words. */

%token  If    Then    Else    Elif    Fi    Do    Done
/*      'if'  'then'  'else'  'elif'  'fi'  'do'  'done'   */

%token  Case    Esac    While    Until    For
```



```
2284        /*      'case'  'esac'  'while'  'until'  'for'   */
2285        /* These are reserved words, not operator tokens, and are
2286           recognized when reserved words are recognized. */
2287        %token  Lbrace    Rbrace    Bang
2288        /*      '{'       '}'       '!'   */
2289        %token  In
2290        /*      'in'   */
2291        /* -----------------------------------------------------
2292           The Grammar
2293           ----------------------------------------------------- */
2294        %start  complete_command
2295        %%
2296        complete_command : list separator
2297                         | list
2298                         ;
2299        list             : list separator_op and_or
2300                         |                   and_or
2301                         ;
2302        and_or           :                         pipeline
2303                         | and_or AND_IF linebreak pipeline
2304                         | and_or OR_IF  linebreak pipeline
2305                         ;
2306        pipeline         :      pipe_sequence
2307                         | Bang pipe_sequence
2308                         ;
2309        pipe_sequence    :                             command
2310                         | pipe_sequence '|' linebreak command
2311                         ;
2312        command          : simple_command
2313                         | compound_command
2314                         | compound_command redirect_list
2315                         | function_definition
2316                         ;
2317        compound_command : brace_group
2318                         | subshell
2319                         | for_clause
2320                         | case_clause
2321                         | if_clause
2322                         | while_clause
2323                         | until_clause
2324                         ;
2325        subshell         : '(' compound_list ')'
2326                         ;
2327        compound_list    :              term
2328                         | newline_list term
2329                         |              term separator
2330                         | newline_list term separator
2331                         ;
2332        term             : term separator and_or
2333                         |                and_or
```



```
                        ;
for_clause              : For name linebreak                                do_group
                        | For name linebreak in          sequential_sep do_group
                        | For name linebreak in wordlist sequential_sep do_group
                        ;
name                    : NAME                     /* Apply rule 5 */
                        ;
in                      : In                       /* Apply rule 6 */
                        ;
wordlist                : wordlist WORD
                        |          WORD
                        ;
case_clause             : Case WORD linebreak in linebreak case_list    Esac
                        | Case WORD linebreak in linebreak case_list_ns Esac
                        | Case WORD linebreak in linebreak              Esac
                        ;
case_list_ns            : case_list case_item_ns
                        |           case_item_ns
                        ;
case_list               : case_list case_item
                        |           case_item
                        ;
case_item_ns            :     pattern ')'               linebreak
                        |     pattern ')' compound_list linebreak
                        | '(' pattern ')'               linebreak
                        | '(' pattern ')' compound_list linebreak
                        ;
case_item               :     pattern ')' linebreak     DSEMI linebreak
                        |     pattern ')' compound_list DSEMI linebreak
                        | '(' pattern ')' linebreak     DSEMI linebreak
                        | '(' pattern ')' compound_list DSEMI linebreak
                        ;
pattern                 :           WORD         /* Apply rule 4 */
                        | pattern '|' WORD       /* Do not apply rule 4 */
                        ;
if_clause               : If compound_list Then compound_list else_part Fi
                        | If compound_list Then compound_list           Fi
                        ;
else_part               : Elif compound_list Then else_part
                        | Else compound_list
                        ;
while_clause            : While compound_list do_group
                        ;
until_clause            : Until compound_list do_group
                        ;
function_definition : fname '(' ')' linebreak function_body
                        ;
function_body           : compound_command                /* Apply rule 9 */
                        | compound_command redirect_list  /* Apply rule 9 */
                        ;
fname                   : NAME                            /* Apply rule 8 */
                        ;
brace_group             : Lbrace compound_list Rbrace
```

```
                    ;
do_group            : Do compound_list Done           /* Apply rule 6 */
                    ;
simple_command      : cmd_prefix cmd_word cmd_suffix
                    | cmd_prefix cmd_word
                    | cmd_prefix
                    | cmd_name cmd_suffix
                    | cmd_name
                    ;
cmd_name            : WORD                   /* Apply rule 7a */
                    ;
cmd_word            : WORD                   /* Apply rule 7b */
                    ;
cmd_prefix          :            io_redirect
                    | cmd_prefix io_redirect
                    |            ASSIGNMENT_WORD
                    | cmd_prefix ASSIGNMENT_WORD
                    ;
cmd_suffix          :            io_redirect
                    | cmd_suffix io_redirect
                    |            WORD
                    | cmd_suffix WORD
                    ;
redirect_list       :              io_redirect
                    | redirect_list io_redirect
                    ;
io_redirect         :           io_file
                    | IO_NUMBER io_file
                    |           io_here
                    | IO_NUMBER io_here
                    ;
io_file             : '<'       filename
                    | LESSAND   filename
                    | '>'       filename
                    | GREATAND  filename
                    | DGREAT    filename
                    | LESSGREAT filename
                    | CLOBBER   filename
                    ;
filename            : WORD                      /* Apply rule 2 */
                    ;
io_here             : DLESS     here_end
                    | DLESSDASH here_end
                    ;
here_end            : WORD                      /* Apply rule 3 */
                    ;
newline_list        :              NEWLINE
                    | newline_list NEWLINE
                    ;
linebreak           : newline_list
                    | /* empty */
                    ;
separator_op        : '&'
```



```
                        | ';'
                        ;
separator               : separator_op linebreak
                        | newline_list
                        ;
sequential_sep          : ';' linebreak
                        | newline_list
                        ;
```

2.11 Signals and Error Handling

When a command is in an asynchronous list, it shall inherit from the shell a signal action of ignored (SIG_IGN) for the SIGQUIT and SIGINT signals, and may inherit a signal mask in which SIGQUIT and SIGINT are blocked. Otherwise, the signal actions and signal mask inherited by the command shall be the same as those inherited by the shell from its parent unless a signal action is modified by the *trap* special built-in (see *trap*)

When a signal for which a trap has been set is received while the shell is waiting for the completion of a utility executing a foreground command, the trap associated with that signal shall not be executed until after the foreground command has completed. When the shell is waiting, by means of the *wait* utility, for asynchronous commands to complete, the reception of a signal for which a trap has been set shall cause the *wait* utility to return immediately with an exit status >128, immediately after which the trap associated with that signal shall be taken.

If multiple signals are pending for the shell for which there are associated trap actions, the order of execution of trap actions is unspecified.

2.12 Shell Execution Environment

A shell execution environment consists of the following:

- Open files inherited upon invocation of the shell, plus open files controlled by *exec*
- Working directory as set by *cd*
- File creation mask set by *umask*
- Current traps set by *trap*
- Shell parameters that are set by variable assignment (see the *set* special built-in) or from the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x environment inherited by the shell when it begins (see the *export* special built-in)
- Shell functions; see Section 2.9.5
- Options turned on at invocation or by *set*
- Process IDs of the last commands in asynchronous lists known to this shell environment; see Section 2.9.3.1
- Shell aliases; see Section 2.3.1

Utilities other than the special built-ins (see Section 2.14 (on page 64)) shall be invoked in a separate environment that consists of the following. The initial value of these objects shall be the same as that for the parent shell, except as noted below.

- Open files inherited on invocation of the shell, open files controlled by the *exec* special built-in plus any modifications, and additions specified by any redirections to the utility
- Current working directory
- File creation mask
- If the utility is a shell script, traps caught by the shell shall be set to the default values and traps ignored by the shell shall be set to be ignored by the utility; if the utility is not a shell script, the trap actions (default or ignore) shall be mapped into the appropriate signal handling actions for the utility
- Variables with the *export* attribute, along with those explicitly exported for the duration of the command, shall be passed to the utility environment variables

The environment of the shell process shall not be changed by the utility unless explicitly specified by the utility description (for example, *cd* and *umask*).

A subshell environment shall be created as a duplicate of the shell environment, except that signal traps set by that shell environment shall be set to the default values. Changes made to the subshell environment shall not affect the shell environment. Command substitution, commands that are grouped with parentheses, and asynchronous lists shall be executed in a subshell environment. Additionally, each command of a multi-command pipeline is in a subshell environment; as an extension, however, any or all commands in a pipeline may be executed in the current environment. All other commands shall be executed in the current shell environment.

2.13 Pattern Matching Notation

The pattern matching notation described in this section is used to specify patterns for matching strings in the shell. Historically, pattern matching notation is related to, but slightly different from, the regular expression notation described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 9, Regular Expressions. For this reason, the description of the rules for this pattern matching notation are based on the description of regular expression notation, modified to include backslash escape processing.

2.13.1 Patterns Matching a Single Character

The following patterns matching a single character shall match a single character: ordinary characters, special pattern characters, and pattern bracket expressions. The pattern bracket expression also shall match a single collating element. A backslash character shall escape the following character. The escaping backslash shall be discarded.

An ordinary character is a pattern that shall match itself. It can be any character in the supported character set except for NUL, those special shell characters in Section 2.2 that require quoting, and the following three special pattern characters. Matching shall be based on the bit pattern used for encoding the character, not on the graphic representation of the character. If any character (ordinary, shell special, or pattern special) is quoted, that pattern shall match the character itself. The shell special characters always require quoting.

When unquoted and outside a bracket expression, the following three characters shall have special meaning in the specification of patterns:

? A question-mark is a pattern that shall match any character.

* An asterisk is a pattern that shall match multiple characters, as described in Section 2.13.2 (on page 63).

2522 `[` The open bracket shall introduce a pattern bracket expression.

2523 The description of basic regular expression bracket expressions in the Base Definitions volume
2524 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3.5, RE Bracket Expression shall also apply to the pattern
2525 bracket expression, except that the exclamation mark character (`'!'`) shall replace the circumflex
2526 character (`'^'`) in its role in a "non-matching list" in the regular expression notation. A bracket
2527 expression starting with an unquoted circumflex character produces unspecified results.

2528 When pattern matching is used where shell quote removal is not performed (such as in the
2529 argument to the *find* *–name* primary when *find* is being called using one of the *exec* functions as
2530 defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, or in the *pattern* argument to
2531 the *fnmatch*() function), special characters can be escaped to remove their special meaning by
2532 preceding them with a backslash character. This escaping backslash is discarded. The sequence
2533 `"\\"` represents one literal backslash. All of the requirements and effects of quoting on ordinary,
2534 shell special, and special pattern characters shall apply to escaping in this context.

2535 ### 2.13.2 Patterns Matching Multiple Characters

2536 The following rules are used to construct patterns matching multiple characters from patterns
2537 matching a single character:

2538 1. The asterisk (`'*'`) is a pattern that shall match any string, including the null string.

2539 2. The concatenation of patterns matching a single character is a valid pattern that shall
2540 match the concatenation of the single characters or collating elements matched by each of
2541 the concatenated patterns.

2542 3. The concatenation of one or more patterns matching a single character with one or more
2543 asterisks is a valid pattern. In such patterns, each asterisk shall match a string of zero or
2544 more characters, matching the greatest possible number of characters that still allows the
2545 remainder of the pattern to match the string.

2546 ### 2.13.3 Patterns Used for Filename Expansion

2547 The rules described so far in Section 2.13.1 and Section 2.13.2 are qualified by the following rules
2548 that apply when pattern matching notation is used for filename expansion:

2549 1. The slash character in a pathname shall be explicitly matched by using one or more
2550 slashes in the pattern; it shall neither be matched by the asterisk or question-mark special
2551 characters nor by a bracket expression. Slashes in the pattern shall be identified before
2552 bracket expressions; thus, a slash cannot be included in a pattern bracket expression used
2553 for filename expansion. If a slash character is found following an unescaped open square
2554 bracket character before a corresponding closing square bracket is found, the open
2555 bracket shall be treated as an ordinary character. For example, the pattern `"a[b/c]d"`
2556 does not match such pathnames as **abd** or **a/d**. It only matches a pathname of literally
2557 **a[b/c]d**.

2558 2. If a filename begins with a period (`'.'`), the period shall be explicitly matched by using a
2559 period as the first character of the pattern or immediately following a slash character. The
2560 leading period shall not be matched by:

2561 - The asterisk or question-mark special characters

2562 - A bracket expression containing a non-matching list, such as `"[!a]"`, a range
2563 expression, such as `"[%–0]"`, or a character class expression, such as
2564 `"[[:punct:]]"`

2565 It is unspecified whether an explicit period in a bracket expression matching list, such as
2566 `"[.abc]"`, can match a leading period in a filename.

3. Specified patterns shall be matched against existing filenames and pathnames, as appropriate. Each component that contains a pattern character shall require read permission in the directory containing that component. Any component, except the last, that does not contain a pattern character shall require search permission. For example, given the pattern:

   ```
   /foo/bar/x*/bam
   ```

   search permission is needed for directories **/** and **foo**, search and read permissions are needed for directory **bar**, and search permission is needed for each **x*** directory. If the pattern matches any existing filenames or pathnames, the pattern shall be replaced with those filenames and pathnames, sorted according to the collating sequence in effect in the current locale. If the pattern contains an invalid bracket expression or does not match any existing filenames or pathnames, the pattern string shall be left unchanged.

2.14 Special Built-In Utilities

The following "special built-in" utilities shall be supported in the shell command language. The output of each command, if any, shall be written to standard output, subject to the normal redirection and piping possible with all commands.

The term "built-in" implies that the shell can execute the utility directly and does not need to search for it. An implementation may choose to make any utility a built-in; however, the special built-in utilities described here differ from regular built-in utilities in two respects:

1. A syntax error in a special built-in utility may cause a shell executing that utility to abort, while a syntax error in a regular built-in utility shall not cause a shell executing that utility to abort. (See Section 2.8.1 for the consequences of errors on interactive and non-interactive shells.) If a special built-in utility encountering a syntax error does not abort the shell, its exit value shall be non-zero.
2. Variable assignments specified with special built-in utilities remain in effect after the built-in completes; this shall not be the case with a regular built-in or other utility.

The special built-in utilities in this section need not be provided in a manner accessible via the *exec* family of functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Some of the special built-ins are described as conforming to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines. For those that are not, the requirement in Section 1.11 that "--" be recognized as a first argument to be discarded does not apply and a conforming application shall not use that argument.

NAME

break — exit from for, while, or until loop

SYNOPSIS

```
break [n]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *break* utility shall exit from the smallest enclosing **for**, **while**, or **until** loop, if any; or from the *n*th enclosing loop if *n* is specified. The value of *n* is an unsigned decimal integer greater than or equal to 1. The default shall be equivalent to *n*=1. If *n* is greater than the number of enclosing loops, the outermost enclosing loop shall be exited. Execution shall continue with the command immediately following the loop.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

0 Successful completion.

>0 The *n* value was not an unsigned decimal integer greater than or equal to 1.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

```
for i in * do
    if test –d "$i" then break fi done
```

RATIONALE

In early proposals, consideration was given to expanding the syntax of *break* and *continue* to refer to a label associated with the appropriate loop as a preferable alternative to the *n* method. However, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does reserve the name space of command names ending with a colon. It is anticipated that a future implementation could take advantage of this and provide something like:

```
outofloop: for i in a b c d e
do
    for j in 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
    do
        if test –r "${i}${j}"
        then break outofloop
        fi
    done
done
```

and that this might be standardized after implementation experience is achieved.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

NAME

colon — null utility

SYNOPSIS

```
: [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

This utility shall only expand command *argument*s. It is used when a command is needed, as in the **then** condition of an **if** command, but nothing is to be done by the command.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

Zero.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

```
: ${X=abc}
if     false
then   :
else   echo $X
fi
abc
```

As with any of the special built-ins, the null utility can also have variable assignments and redirections associated with it, such as:

```
x=y : > z
```


which sets variable *x* to the value *y* (so that it persists after the null utility completes) and creates or truncates file **z**.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

2722 **NAME**

2723 continue — continue for, while, or until loop

2724 **SYNOPSIS**

2725 `continue [`*n*`]`

2726 **DESCRIPTION**

2727 The *continue* utility shall return to the top of the smallest enclosing **for**, **while**, or **until** loop, or to
2728 the top of the *n*th enclosing loop, if *n* is specified. This involves repeating the condition list of a
2729 **while** or **until** loop or performing the next assignment of a **for** loop, and re-executing the loop if
2730 appropriate.

2731 The value of *n* is a decimal integer greater than or equal to 1. The default shall be equivalent to
2732 *n*=1. If *n* is greater than the number of enclosing loops, the outermost enclosing loop shall be
2733 used.

2734 **OPTIONS**

2735 None.

2736 **OPERANDS**

2737 See the DESCRIPTION.

2738 **STDIN**

2739 Not used.

2740 **INPUT FILES**

2741 None.

2742 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

2743 None.

2744 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

2745 Default.

2746 **STDOUT**

2747 Not used.

2748 **STDERR**

2749 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

2750 **OUTPUT FILES**

2751 None.

2752 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

2753 None.

2754 **EXIT STATUS**

2755 0 Successful completion.

2756 >0 The *n* value was not an unsigned decimal integer greater than or equal to 1.

2757 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

2758 Default.

2759 **APPLICATION USAGE**

2760 None.

2761 **EXAMPLES**

2762
```
for i in *
```
2763
```
do
```
2764
```
    if test –d "$i"
```
2765
```
    then continue
```
2766
```
    fi
```
2767
```
    echo "\"$i\"" is not a directory.
```
2768
```
done
```

2769 **RATIONALE**

2770 None.

2771 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

2772 None.

2773 **SEE ALSO**

2774 Section 2.14

2775 **CHANGE HISTORY**

2776 **Issue 6**

2777 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page
2778 sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in
2779 behavior is intended.

NAME

dot — execute commands in the current environment

SYNOPSIS

```
. file
```

DESCRIPTION

The shell shall execute commands from the *file* in the current environment.

If *file* does not contain a slash, the shell shall use the search path specified by *PATH* to find the directory containing *file*. Unlike normal command search, however, the file searched for by the *dot* utility need not be executable. If no readable file is found, a non-interactive shell shall abort; an interactive shell shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, but this condition shall not be considered a syntax error.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

See the DESCRIPTION.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

See the DESCRIPTION.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

Returns the value of the last command executed, or a zero exit status if no command is executed.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

```
cat foobar
foo=hello bar=world
. foobar
echo $foo $bar
hello world
```

RATIONALE

Some older implementations searched the current directory for the *file*, even if the value of *PATH* disallowed it. This behavior was omitted from this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x due to concerns about introducing the susceptibility to trojan horses that the user might be trying to avoid by leaving **dot** out of *PATH*.

The KornShell version of *dot* takes optional arguments that are set to the positional parameters. This is a valid extension that allows a *dot* script to behave identically to a function.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

NAME

eval — construct command by concatenating arguments

SYNOPSIS

```
eval [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *eval* utility shall construct a command by concatenating *argument*s together, separating each with a <space>. The constructed command shall be read and executed by the shell.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

If there are no *argument*s, or only null arguments, *eval* shall return a zero exit status; otherwise, it shall return the exit status of the command defined by the string of concatenated *argument*s separated by <space>s.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

```
foo=10 x=foo
y='$'$x
echo $y
$foo
eval y='$'$x
echo $y
10
```


RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

exec — execute commands and open, close, or copy file descriptors

SYNOPSIS

```
exec [command [argument...]]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *exec* utility shall open, close, and/or copy file descriptors as specified by any redirections as part of the command.

If *exec* is specified without *command* or *argument*s, and any file descriptors with numbers greater than 2 are opened with associated redirection statements, it is unspecified whether those file descriptors remain open when the shell invokes another utility. Scripts concerned that child shells could misuse open file descriptors can always close them explicitly, as shown in one of the following examples.

If *exec* is specified with *command*, it shall replace the shell with *command* without creating a new process. If *argument*s are specified, they shall be arguments to *command*. Redirection affects the current shell execution environment.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

If *command* is specified, *exec* shall not return to the shell; rather, the exit status of the process shall be the exit status of the program implementing *command*, which overlaid the shell. If *command* is not found, the exit status shall be 127. If *command* is found, but it is not an executable utility, the exit status shall be 126. If a redirection error occurs (see Section 2.8.1 (on page 46)), the shell shall exit with a value in the range 1–125. Otherwise, *exec* shall return a zero exit status.

2936 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
2937 Default.

2938 **APPLICATION USAGE**
2939 None.

2940 **EXAMPLES**
2941 Open *readfile* as file descriptor 3 for reading:

2942 ```
exec 3< readfile
```

2943 Open *writefile* as file descriptor 4 for writing:

2944 ```
exec 4> writefile
```

2945 Make file descriptor 5 a copy of file descriptor 0:

2946 ```
exec 5<&0
```

2947 Close file descriptor 3:

2948 ```
exec 3<&–
```

2949 Cat the file **maggie** by replacing the current shell with the *cat* utility:

2950 ```
exec cat maggie
```

2951 **RATIONALE**
2952 Most historical implementations were not conformant in that:

2953 ```
foo=bar exec cmd
```

2954 did not pass **foo** to **cmd**.

2955 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
2956 None.

2957 **SEE ALSO**
2958 Section 2.14

2959 **CHANGE HISTORY**

2960 **Issue 6**
2961 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page
2962 sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in
2963 behavior is intended.

2964 **Issue 7**
2965 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

2966 **NAME**

2967 exit — cause the shell to exit

2968 **SYNOPSIS**

2969 `exit [`*n*`]`

2970 **DESCRIPTION**

2971 The *exit* utility shall cause the shell to exit with the exit status specified by the unsigned decimal
2972 integer *n*. If *n* is specified, but its value is not between 0 and 255 inclusively, the exit status is
2973 undefined.

2974 A *trap* on **EXIT** shall be executed before the shell terminates, except when the *exit* utility is
2975 invoked in that *trap* itself, in which case the shell shall exit immediately.

2976 **OPTIONS**

2977 None.

2978 **OPERANDS**

2979 See the DESCRIPTION.

2980 **STDIN**

2981 Not used.

2982 **INPUT FILES**

2983 None.

2984 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

2985 None.

2986 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

2987 Default.

2988 **STDOUT**

2989 Not used.

2990 **STDERR**

2991 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

2992 **OUTPUT FILES**

2993 None.

2994 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

2995 None.

2996 **EXIT STATUS**

2997 The exit status shall be *n*, if specified. Otherwise, the value shall be the exit value of the last
2998 command executed, or zero if no command was executed. When *exit* is executed in a *trap* action,
2999 the last command is considered to be the command that executed immediately preceding the
3000 *trap* action.

3001 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

3002 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

Exit with a *true* value:

```
exit 0
```

Exit with a *false* value:

```
exit 1
```

RATIONALE

As explained in other sections, certain exit status values have been reserved for special uses and should be used by applications only for those purposes:

126 A file to be executed was found, but it was not an executable utility.

127 A utility to be executed was not found.

>128 A command was interrupted by a signal.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

3025 **NAME**

3026 export — set the export attribute for variables

3027 **SYNOPSIS**

3028 `export name[=word]...`

3029 `export –p`

3030 **DESCRIPTION**

3031 The shell shall give the *export* attribute to the variables corresponding to the specified *name*s,
3032 which shall cause them to be in the environment of subsequently executed commands. If the
3033 name of a variable is followed by =*word*, then the value of that variable shall be set to *word*.

3034 The *export* special built-in shall support the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
3035 Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

3036 When **–p** is specified, *export* shall write to the standard output the names and values of all
3037 exported variables, in the following format:

3038 `"export %s=%s\n", <name>, <value>`

3039 if *name* is set, and:

3040 `"export %s\n", <name>`

3041 if *name* is unset.

3042 The shell shall format the output, including the proper use of quoting, so that it is suitable for
3043 reinput to the shell as commands that achieve the same exporting results, except:

3044 1. Read-only variables with values cannot be reset.

3045 2. Variables that were unset at the time they were output need not be reset to the unset state
3046 if a value is assigned to the variable between the time the state was saved and the time at
3047 which the saved output is reinput to the shell.

3048 When no arguments are given, the results are unspecified.

3049 **OPTIONS**

3050 See the DESCRIPTION.

3051 **OPERANDS**

3052 See the DESCRIPTION.

3053 **STDIN**

3054 Not used.

3055 **INPUT FILES**

3056 None.

3057 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

3058 None.

3059 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

3060 Default.

3061 **STDOUT**

3062 See the DESCRIPTION.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

Zero.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

Export *PWD* and *HOME* variables:

```
export PWD HOME
```

Set and export the *PATH* variable:

```
export PATH=/local/bin:$PATH
```

Save and restore all exported variables:

```
export –p > temp-file
unset a lot of variables
... processing
. temp-file
```

RATIONALE

Some historical shells use the no-argument case as the functional equivalent of what is required here with **–p**. This feature was left unspecified because it is not historical practice in all shells, and some scripts may rely on the now-unspecified results on their implementations. Attempts to specify the **–p** output as the default case were unsuccessful in achieving consensus. The **–p** option was added to allow portable access to the values that can be saved and then later restored using; for example, a *dot* script.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #203 is applied, clarifying the format when a variable is unset.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/6 is applied, adding the following text to the end of the first paragraph of the DESCRIPTION: ''If the name of a variable is followed by *=word*, then the value of that variable shall be set to *word*.''. The reason for this change is that the SYNOPSIS for *export* includes:

```
export name[=word]...
```

3107 but the meaning of the optional "=*word*" is never explained in the text.

3108 **NAME**

3109 readonly — set the readonly attribute for variables

3110 **SYNOPSIS**

3111 `readonly name[=word]...`

3112 `readonly –p`

3113 **DESCRIPTION**

3114 The variables whose *name*s are specified shall be given the *readonly* attribute. The values of
3115 variables with the *readonly* attribute cannot be changed by subsequent assignment, nor can those
3116 variables be unset by the *unset* utility. If the name of a variable is followed by =*word*, then the
3117 value of that variable shall be set to *word*.

3118 The *readonly* special built-in shall support the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
3119 Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

3120 When **–p** is specified, *readonly* writes to the standard output the names and values of all read-
3121 only variables, in the following format:

3122 `"readonly %s=%s\n", <name>, <value>`

3123 if *name* is set, and

3124 `"readonly %s\n", <name>`

3125 if *name* is unset.

3126 The shell shall format the output, including the proper use of quoting, so that it is suitable for
3127 reinput to the shell as commands that achieve the same value and *readonly* attribute-setting
3128 results in a shell execution environment in which:

3129 1. Variables with values at the time they were output do not have the *readonly* attribute set.

3130 2. Variables that were unset at the time they were output do not have a value at the time at
3131 which the saved output is reinput to the shell.

3132 When no arguments are given, the results are unspecified.

3133 **OPTIONS**

3134 See the DESCRIPTION.

3135 **OPERANDS**

3136 See the DESCRIPTION.

3137 **STDIN**

3138 Not used.

3139 **INPUT FILES**

3140 None.

3141 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

3142 None.

3143 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

3144 Default.

3145 **STDOUT**

3146 See the DESCRIPTION.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

Zero.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

```
readonly HOME PWD
```

RATIONALE

Some historical shells preserve the *readonly* attribute across separate invocations. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x allows this behavior, but does not require it.

The **−p** option allows portable access to the values that can be saved and then later restored using, for example, a *dot* script. Also see the RATIONALE for *export* for a description of the no-argument and **−p** output cases and a related example.

Read-only functions were considered, but they were omitted as not being historical practice or particularly useful. Furthermore, functions must not be read-only across invocations to preclude "spoofing" (spoofing is the term for the practice of creating a program that acts like a well-known utility with the intent of subverting the real intent of the user) of administrative or security-relevant (or security-conscious) shell scripts.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #203 is applied, clarifying the format when a variable is unset.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/7 is applied, adding the following text to the end of the first paragraph of the DESCRIPTION: "If the name of a variable is followed by *=word*, then the value of that variable shall be set to *word*.". The reason for this change is that the SYNOPSIS for *readonly* includes:

```
readonly name[=word]...
```

but the meaning of the optional "*=word*" is never explained in the text.

3188 **NAME**

3189 return — return from a function

3190 **SYNOPSIS**

3191 `return [n]`

3192 **DESCRIPTION**

3193 The *return* utility shall cause the shell to stop executing the current function or *dot* script. If the
3194 shell is not currently executing a function or *dot* script, the results are unspecified.

3195 **OPTIONS**

3196 None.

3197 **OPERANDS**

3198 See the DESCRIPTION.

3199 **STDIN**

3200 Not used.

3201 **INPUT FILES**

3202 None.

3203 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

3204 None.

3205 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

3206 Default.

3207 **STDOUT**

3208 Not used.

3209 **STDERR**

3210 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

3211 **OUTPUT FILES**

3212 None.

3213 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

3214 None.

3215 **EXIT STATUS**

3216 The value of the special parameter `'?'` shall be set to *n*, an unsigned decimal integer, or to the
3217 exit status of the last command executed if *n* is not specified. If the value of *n* is greater than 255,
3218 the results are undefined. When *return* is executed in a *trap* action, the last command is
3219 considered to be the command that executed immediately preceding the *trap* action.

3220 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

3221 Default.

3222 **APPLICATION USAGE**

3223 None.

3224 **EXAMPLES**

3225 None.

3226 **RATIONALE**

3227 The behavior of *return* when not in a function or *dot* script differs between the System V shell
3228 and the KornShell. In the System V shell this is an error, whereas in the KornShell, the effect is
3229 the same as *exit*.

3230 The results of returning a number greater than 255 are undefined because of differing practices

in the various historical implementations. Some shells AND out all but the low-order 8 bits; others allow larger values, but not of unlimited size.

See the discussion of appropriate exit status values under *exit* (on page 77).

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

3243 **NAME**

3244 set — set or unset options and positional parameters

3245 **SYNOPSIS**

3246 XSI `set [–abCefmnuvx] [–h] [–o option] [argument...]`

3247 XSI `set [+abCefmnuvx] [+h] [+o option] [argument...]`

3248 `set –– [argument...]`

3249 `set –o`

3250 `set +o`

3251 **DESCRIPTION**

3252 If no *option*s or *argument*s are specified, *set* shall write the names and values of all shell variables
3253 in the collation sequence of the current locale. Each *name* shall start on a separate line, using the
3254 format:

3255 `"%s=%s\n", <name>, <value>`

3256 The *value* string shall be written with appropriate quoting; see the description of shell quoting in
3257 Section 2.2 (on page 30). The output shall be suitable for reinput to the shell, setting or resetting,
3258 as far as possible, the variables that are currently set; read-only variables cannot be reset.

3259 When options are specified, they shall set or unset attributes of the shell, as described below.
3260 When *argument*s are specified, they cause positional parameters to be set or unset, as described
3261 below. Setting or unsetting attributes and positional parameters are not necessarily related
3262 actions, but they can be combined in a single invocation of *set*.

3263 The *set* special built-in shall support the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
3264 Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines except that options can be specified with either a leading
3265 hyphen (meaning enable the option) or plus sign (meaning disable it) unless otherwise specified.

3266 Implementations shall support the options in the following list in both their hyphen and plus-
3267 sign forms. These options can also be specified as options to *sh*.

3268 **–a** When this option is on, the *export* attribute shall be set for each variable to which an
3269 assignment is performed; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
3270 4.21, Variable Assignment. If the assignment precedes a utility name in a command, the
3271 *export* attribute shall not persist in the current execution environment after the utility
3272 completes, with the exception that preceding one of the special built-in utilities causes the
3273 *export* attribute to persist after the built-in has completed. If the assignment does not
3274 precede a utility name in the command, or if the assignment is a result of the operation of
3275 the *getopts* or *read* utilities, the *export* attribute shall persist until the variable is unset.

3276 **–b** This option shall be supported if the implementation supports the User Portability Utilities
3277 option. It shall cause the shell to notify the user asynchronously of background job
3278 completions. The following message is written to standard error:

3279 `"[%d]%c %s%s\n", <job-number>, <current>, <status>, <job-name>`

3280 where the fields shall be as follows:

3281 <*current*> The character `'+'` identifies the job that would be used as a default for
3282 the *fg* or *bg* utilities; this job can also be specified using the *job_id* `"%+"` or
3283 `"%%"`. The character `'–'` identifies the job that would become the default
3284 if the current default job were to exit; this job can also be specified using
3285 the *job_id* `"%–"`. For other jobs, this field is a <space>. At most one job
3286 can be identified with `'+'` and at most one job can be identified with `'–'`.

If there is any suspended job, then the current job shall be a suspended job. If there are at least two suspended jobs, then the previous job also shall be a suspended job.

<*job-number*> A number that can be used to identify the process group to the *wait*, *fg*, *bg*, and *kill* utilities. Using these utilities, the job can be identified by prefixing the job number with '%'.

<*status*> Unspecified.

<*job-name*> Unspecified.

When the shell notifies the user a job has been completed, it may remove the job's process ID from the list of those known in the current shell execution environment; see Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50). Asynchronous notification shall not be enabled by default.

–C (Uppercase C.) Prevent existing files from being overwritten by the shell's '>' redirection operator (see Section 2.7.2 (on page 44)); the ">|" redirection operator shall override this *noclobber* option for an individual file.

–e When this option is on, if a simple command fails for any of the reasons listed in Section 2.8.1 or returns an exit status value >0, and is not part of the compound list following a **while**, **until**, or **if** keyword, and is not a part of an AND or OR list, and is not a pipeline preceded by the **!** reserved word, then the shell shall immediately exit.

–f The shell shall disable pathname expansion.

XSI **–h** Locate and remember utilities invoked by functions as those functions are defined (the utilities are normally located when the function is executed).

–m This option shall be supported if the implementation supports the User Portability Utilities option. All jobs shall be run in their own process groups. Immediately before the shell issues a prompt after completion of the background job, a message reporting the exit status of the background job shall be written to standard error. If a foreground job stops, the shell shall write a message to standard error to that effect, formatted as described by the *jobs* utility. In addition, if a job changes status other than exiting (for example, if it stops for input or output or is stopped by a SIGSTOP signal), the shell shall write a similar message immediately prior to writing the next prompt. This option is enabled by default for interactive shells.

–n The shell shall read commands but does not execute them; this can be used to check for shell script syntax errors. An interactive shell may ignore this option.

–o Write the current settings of the options to standard output in an unspecified format.

+o Write the current option settings to standard output in a format that is suitable for reinput to the shell as commands that achieve the same options settings.

–o *option*

This option is supported if the system supports the User Portability Utilities option. It shall set various options, many of which shall be equivalent to the single option letters. The following values of *option* shall be supported:

allexport Equivalent to **–a**.

errexit Equivalent to **–e**.

ignoreeof Prevent an interactive shell from exiting on end-of-file. This setting prevents accidental logouts when <control>-D is entered. A user shall explicitly *exit* to leave the interactive shell.

monitor Equivalent to **–m**. This option is supported if the system supports the User Portability Utilities option.

noclobber Equivalent to **–C** (uppercase C).

noglob Equivalent to **–f**.

noexec Equivalent to **–n**.

nolog Prevent the entry of function definitions into the command history; see Command History List (on page 856).

notify Equivalent to **–b**.

nounset Equivalent to **–u**.

verbose Equivalent to **–v**.

vi Allow shell command line editing using the built-in *vi* editor. Enabling *vi* mode shall disable any other command line editing mode provided as an implementation extension.

It need not be possible to set *vi* mode on for certain block-mode terminals.

xtrace Equivalent to **–x**.

–u The shell shall write a message to standard error when it tries to expand a variable that is not set and immediately exit. An interactive shell shall not exit.

–v The shell shall write its input to standard error as it is read.

–x The shell shall write to standard error a trace for each command after it expands the command and before it executes it. It is unspecified whether the command that turns tracing off is traced.

The default for all these options shall be off (unset) unless stated otherwise in the description of the option or unless the shell was invoked with them on; see *sh*.

The remaining arguments shall be assigned in order to the positional parameters. The special parameter `'#'` shall be set to reflect the number of positional parameters. All positional parameters shall be unset before any new values are assigned.

If the first argument is `'–'`, the results are unspecified.

The special argument `"––"` immediately following the *set* command name can be used to delimit the arguments if the first argument begins with `'+'` or `'–'`, or to prevent inadvertent listing of all shell variables when there are no arguments. The command *set* –– without *argument* shall unset all positional parameters and set the special parameter `'#'` to zero.

OPTIONS

See the DESCRIPTION.

OPERANDS

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

Zero.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

Write out all variables and their values:

```
set
```

Set $1, $2, and $3 and set "$#" to 3:

```
set c a b
```

Turn on the **–x** and **–v** options:

```
set -xv
```

Unset all positional parameters:

```
set --
```

Set $1 to the value of *x*, even if it begins with '–' or '+':

```
set -- "$x"
```

Set the positional parameters to the expansion of *x*, even if *x* expands with a leading '–' or '+':

```
set -- $x
```

RATIONALE

The *set* –– form is listed specifically in the SYNOPSIS even though this usage is implied by the Utility Syntax Guidelines. The explanation of this feature removes any ambiguity about whether the *set* –– form might be misinterpreted as being equivalent to *set* without any options or arguments. The functionality of this form has been adopted from the KornShell. In System V, *set* –– only unsets parameters if there is at least one argument; the only way to unset all parameters is to use *shift*. Using the KornShell version should not affect System V scripts because there should be no reason to issue it without arguments deliberately; if it were issued as, for example:

```
set -- "$@"
```

and there were in fact no arguments resulting from "$@", unsetting the parameters would have no result.

The *set* + form in early proposals was omitted as being an unnecessary duplication of *set* alone and not widespread historical practice.

The *noclobber* option was changed to allow *set* −**C** as well as the *set* −**o** *noclobber* option. The single-letter version was added so that the historical "$−" paradigm would not be broken; see Section 2.5.2 (on page 34).

The −**h** flag is related to command name hashing and is only required on XSI-conformant systems.

The following *set* flags were omitted intentionally with the following rationale:

−**k** The −**k** flag was originally added by the author of the Bourne shell to make it easier for users of pre-release versions of the shell. In early versions of the Bourne shell the construct *set name=value* had to be used to assign values to shell variables. The problem with −**k** is that the behavior affects parsing, virtually precluding writing any compilers. To explain the behavior of −**k**, it is necessary to describe the parsing algorithm, which is implementation-defined. For example:

```
set −k; echo name=value
```

and:

```
set −k
echo name=value
```

behave differently. The interaction with functions is even more complex. What is more, the −**k** flag is never needed, since the command line could have been reordered.

−**t** The −**t** flag is hard to specify and almost never used. The only known use could be done with here-documents. Moreover, the behavior with *ksh* and *sh* differs. The reference page says that it exits after reading and executing one command. What is one command? If the input is *date;date*, *sh* executes both *date* commands while *ksh* does only the first.

Consideration was given to rewriting *set* to simplify its confusing syntax. A specific suggestion was that the *unset* utility should be used to unset options instead of using the non-*getopt*( )-able *+option* syntax. However, the conclusion was reached that the historical practice of using *+option* was satisfactory and that there was no compelling reason to modify such widespread historical practice.

The −**o** option was adopted from the KornShell to address user needs. In addition to its generally friendly interface, −**o** is needed to provide the *vi* command line editing mode, for which historical practice yields no single-letter option name. (Although it might have been possible to invent such a letter, it was recognized that other editing modes would be developed and −**o** provides ample name space for describing such extensions.)

Historical implementations are inconsistent in the format used for −**o** option status reporting. The **+o** format without an option-argument was added to allow portable access to the options that can be saved and then later restored using, for instance, a dot script.

Historically, *sh* did trace the command *set* **+x**, but *ksh* did not.

The *ignoreeof* setting prevents accidental logouts when the end-of-file character (typically <control>-D) is entered. A user shall explicitly *exit* to leave the interactive shell.

The *set* −**m** option was added to apply only to the UPE because it applies primarily to interactive use, not shell script applications.

The ability to do asynchronous notification became available in the 1988 version of the KornShell. To have it occur, the user had to issue the command:

```
trap "jobs −n" CLD
```


The C shell provides two different levels of an asynchronous notification capability. The environment variable *notify* is analogous to what is done in *set* –**b** or *set* –**o** *notify*. When set, it notifies the user immediately of background job completions. When unset, this capability is turned off.

The other notification ability comes through the built-in utility *notify*. The syntax is:

```
notify [%job ... ]
```

By issuing *notify* with no operands, it causes the C shell to notify the user asynchronously when the state of the current job changes. If given operands, *notify* asynchronously informs the user of changes in the states of the specified jobs.

To add asynchronous notification to the POSIX shell, neither the KornShell extensions to *trap*, nor the C shell *notify* environment variable seemed appropriate (*notify* is not a proper POSIX environment variable name).

The *set* –**b** option was selected as a compromise.

The *notify* built-in was considered to have more functionality than was required for simple asynchronous notification.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

The obsolescent *set* command name followed by '–' has been removed.

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The *nolog* option is added to *set* –**o**.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #167 is applied, clarifying that the options default also takes into account the description of the option.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/8 is applied, changing the square brackets in the example in RATIONALE to be in bold, which is the typeface used for optional items.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying the behavior if the first argument is '–'.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

3494 **NAME**

3495 shift — shift positional parameters

3496 **SYNOPSIS**

3497 `shift [`*n*`]`

3498 **DESCRIPTION**

3499 The positional parameters shall be shifted. Positional parameter 1 shall be assigned the value of
3500 parameter (1+*n*), parameter 2 shall be assigned the value of parameter (2+*n*), and so on. The
3501 parameters represented by the numbers `"$#"` down to `"$#–n+1"` shall be unset, and the
3502 parameter `'#'` is updated to reflect the new number of positional parameters.

3503 The value *n* shall be an unsigned decimal integer less than or equal to the value of the special
3504 parameter `'#'`. If *n* is not given, it shall be assumed to be 1. If *n* is 0, the positional and special
3505 parameters are not changed.

3506 **OPTIONS**

3507 None.

3508 **OPERANDS**

3509 See the DESCRIPTION.

3510 **STDIN**

3511 Not used.

3512 **INPUT FILES**

3513 None.

3514 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

3515 None.

3516 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

3517 Default.

3518 **STDOUT**

3519 Not used.

3520 **STDERR**

3521 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

3522 **OUTPUT FILES**

3523 None.

3524 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

3525 None.

3526 **EXIT STATUS**

3527 The exit status is >0 if *n*>$#; otherwise, it is zero.

3528 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

3529 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

```
$ set a b c d e
$ shift 2
$ echo $*
c d e
```

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

NAME

times — write process times

SYNOPSIS

```
times
```

DESCRIPTION

The *times* utility shall write the accumulated user and system times for the shell and for all of its child processes, in the following POSIX locale format:

```
"%dm%fs %dm%fs\n%dm%fs %dm%fs\n", <shell user minutes>,
    <shell user seconds>, <shell system minutes>,
    <shell system seconds>, <children user minutes>,
    <children user seconds>, <children system minutes>,
    <children system seconds>
```

The four pairs of times shall correspond to the members of the **<sys/times.h> tms** structure (defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers) as returned by *times*( ): *tms_utime*, *tms_stime*, *tms_cutime*, and *tms_cstime*, respectively.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

Zero.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

```
$ times
0m0.43s 0m1.11s
8m44.18s 1m43.23s
```

RATIONALE

The *times* special built-in from the Single UNIX Specification is now required for all conforming shells.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/9 is applied, changing text in the DESCRIPTION from: "Write the accumulated user and system times for the shell and for all of its child processes ..." to: "The *times* utility shall write the accumulated user and system times for the shell and for all of its child processes ...".

NAME

trap — trap signals

SYNOPSIS

```
trap [action condition...]
```

DESCRIPTION

If *action* is `'-'`, the shell shall reset each *condition* to the default value. If *action* is null (`""`), the shell shall ignore each specified *condition* if it arises. Otherwise, the argument *action* shall be read and executed by the shell when one of the corresponding conditions arises. The action of *trap* shall override a previous action (either default action or one explicitly set). The value of `"$?"` after the *trap* action completes shall be the value it had before *trap* was invoked.

The condition can be EXIT, 0 (equivalent to EXIT), or a signal specified using a symbolic name, without the SIG prefix, as listed in the tables of signal names in the **<signal.h>** header defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers; for example, HUP, INT, QUIT, TERM. Implementations may permit names with the SIG prefix or ignore case in signal names as an extension. Setting a trap for SIGKILL or SIGSTOP produces undefined results.

The environment in which the shell executes a *trap* on EXIT shall be identical to the environment immediately after the last command executed before the *trap* on EXIT was taken.

Each time *trap* is invoked, the *action* argument shall be processed in a manner equivalent to:

```
eval action
```

Signals that were ignored on entry to a non-interactive shell cannot be trapped or reset, although no error need be reported when attempting to do so. An interactive shell may reset or catch signals ignored on entry. Traps shall remain in place for a given shell until explicitly changed with another *trap* command.

When a subshell is entered, traps that are not being ignored are set to the default actions. This does not imply that the *trap* command cannot be used within the subshell to set new traps.

The *trap* command with no arguments shall write to standard output a list of commands associated with each condition. The format shall be:

```
"trap -- %s %s ...\n", <action>, <condition> ...
```

The shell shall format the output, including the proper use of quoting, so that it is suitable for reinput to the shell as commands that achieve the same trapping results. For example:

```
save_traps=$(trap)
...
eval "$save_traps"
```

XSI XSI-conformant systems also allow numeric signal numbers for the conditions corresponding to the following signal names:

1 SIGHUP

2 SIGINT

3 SIGQUIT

6 SIGABRT

9 SIGKILL

14 SIGALRM

15 SIGTERM

The *trap* special built-in shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

See the DESCRIPTION.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

XSI If the trap name or number is invalid, a non-zero exit status shall be returned; otherwise, zero
XSI shall be returned. For both interactive and non-interactive shells, invalid signal names or numbers shall not be considered a syntax error and do not cause the shell to abort.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

Write out a list of all traps and actions:

```
trap
```

Set a trap so the *logout* utility in the directory referred to by the *HOME* environment variable executes when the shell terminates:

```
trap '$HOME/logout' EXIT
```

or:

```
trap '$HOME/logout' 0
```

Unset traps on INT, QUIT, TERM, and EXIT:

```
trap - INT QUIT TERM EXIT
```


RATIONALE

Implementations may permit lowercase signal names as an extension. Implementations may also accept the names with the SIG prefix; no known historical shell does so. The *trap* and *kill* utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are now consistent in their omission of the SIG prefix for signal names. Some *kill* implementations do not allow the prefix, and *kill* **–l** lists the signals without prefixes.

Trapping SIGKILL or SIGSTOP is syntactically accepted by some historical implementations, but it has no effect. Portable POSIX applications cannot attempt to trap these signals.

The output format is not historical practice. Since the output of historical *trap* commands is not portable (because numeric signal values are not portable) and had to change to become so, an opportunity was taken to format the output in a way that a shell script could use to save and then later reuse a trap if it wanted.

The KornShell uses an **ERR** trap that is triggered whenever *set* **–e** would cause an exit. This is allowable as an extension, but was not mandated, as other shells have not used it.

The text about the environment for the EXIT trap invalidates the behavior of some historical versions of interactive shells which, for example, close the standard input before executing a trap on 0. For example, in some historical interactive shell sessions the following trap on 0 would always print "––":

```
trap 'read foo; echo "–$foo–"' 0
```

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.14

CHANGE HISTORY

Issue 6

XSI-conforming implementations provide the mapping of signal names to numbers given above (previously this had been marked obsolescent). Other implementations need not provide this optional mapping.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in behavior is intended.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

3722 **NAME**

3723 unset — unset values and attributes of variables and functions

3724 **SYNOPSIS**

3725 `unset [–fv] name...`

3726 **DESCRIPTION**

3727 Each variable or function specified by *name* shall be unset.

3728 If **–v** is specified, *name* refers to a variable name and the shell shall unset it and remove it from
3729 the environment. Read-only variables cannot be unset.

3730 If **–f** is specified, *name* refers to a function and the shell shall unset the function definition.

3731 If neither **–f** nor **–v** is specified, *name* refers to a variable; if a variable by that name does not
3732 exist, it is unspecified whether a function by that name, if any, shall be unset.

3733 Unsetting a variable or function that was not previously set shall not be considered an error and
3734 does not cause the shell to abort.

3735 The *unset* special built-in shall support the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
3736 Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

3737 Note that:

3738 `VARIABLE=`

3739 is not equivalent to an *unset* of **VARIABLE**; in the example, **VARIABLE** is set to `""`. Also, the
3740 variables that can be *unset* should not be misinterpreted to include the special parameters (see
3741 Section 2.5.2 (on page 34)).

3742 **OPTIONS**

3743 See the DESCRIPTION.

3744 **OPERANDS**

3745 See the DESCRIPTION.

3746 **STDIN**

3747 Not used.

3748 **INPUT FILES**

3749 None.

3750 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

3751 None.

3752 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

3753 Default.

3754 **STDOUT**

3755 Not used.

3756 **STDERR**

3757 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

3758 **OUTPUT FILES**

3759 None.

3760 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

3761 None.

3762 **EXIT STATUS**

3763 0 All *name* operands were successfully unset.

3764 >0 At least one *name* could not be unset.

3765 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

3766 Default.

3767 **APPLICATION USAGE**

3768 None.

3769 **EXAMPLES**

3770 Unset *VISUAL* variable:

3771 ```
unset –v VISUAL
```

3772 Unset the functions **foo** and **bar**:

3773 ```
unset –f foo bar
```

3774 **RATIONALE**

3775 Consideration was given to omitting the **–f** option in favor of an *unfunction* utility, but the
3776 standard developers decided to retain historical practice.

3777 The **–v** option was introduced because System V historically used one name space for both
3778 variables and functions. When *unset* is used without options, System V historically unset either a
3779 function or a variable, and there was no confusion about which one was intended. A portable
3780 POSIX application can use *unset* without an option to unset a variable, but not a function; the **–f**
3781 option must be used.

3782 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

3783 None.

3784 **SEE ALSO**

3785 Section 2.14

3786 **CHANGE HISTORY**

3787 **Issue 6**

3788 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/5 is applied so that the reference page
3789 sections use terms as described in the Utility Description Defaults (Section 1.11). No change in
3790 behavior is intended.

3791 **Issue 7**

3792 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

3793 *Chapter 3*

3794 # *Batch Environment Services*

3795 OB BE This chapter describes the services and utilities that shall be implemented on all systems that
3796 claim conformance to the Batch Environment Services and Utilities option. The functionality
3797 described in this section shall be provided on implementations that support the Batch
3798 Environment Services and Utilities option (and the rest of this section is not further shaded for
3799 this option).

3800 Note that the Batch Environment Services and Utilities option is marked obsolescent in Issue 7.

3801 ## 3.1 General Concepts

3802 ### 3.1.1 Batch Client-Server Interaction

3803 Batch jobs are created and managed by batch servers. A batch client interacts with a batch server
3804 to access batch services on behalf of the user. In order to use batch services, a user must have
3805 access to a batch client.

3806 A batch server is a computational entity, such as a daemon process, that provides batch services.
3807 Batch servers route, queue, modify, and execute batch jobs on behalf of batch clients.

3808 The batch utilities described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (and listed in Table 3-1 (on
3809 page 101)) are clients of batch services; they allow users to perform actions on the job such as
3810 creating, modifying, and deleting batch jobs from a shell command line. Although these batch
3811 utilities may be said to accomplish certain services, they actually obtain services on behalf of a
3812 user by means of requests to batch servers.

3813 **Table 3-1** Batch Utilities

3814 *qalter* *qmove* *qrls* *qstat*
3815 *qdel* *qmsg* *qselect* *qsub*
3816 *qhold* *qrerun* *qsig*

3817 Client-server interaction takes place by means of the batch requests defined in this chapter.
3818 Because direct access to batch jobs and queues is limited to batch servers, clients and servers of
3819 different implementations can interoperate, since dependencies on private structures for batch
3820 jobs and queues are limited to batch servers. Also, batch servers may be clients of other batch
3821 servers.

3.1.2 Batch Queues

Two types of batch queue are described: routing queues and execution queues. When a batch job is placed in a routing queue, it is a candidate for routing. A batch job is removed from routing queues under the following conditions:

- The batch job has been routed to another queue.
- The batch job has been deleted from the batch queue.
- The batch job has been aborted.

When a batch job is placed in an execution queue, it is a candidate for execution.

A batch job is removed from an execution queue under the following conditions:

- The batch job has been executed and exited.
- The batch job has been aborted.
- The batch job has been deleted from the batch queue.
- The batch job has been moved to another queue.

Access to a batch queue is limited to the batch server that manages the batch queue. Clients never access a batch queue or a batch job directly, either to read or write information; all client access to batch queues or jobs takes place through batch servers.

3.1.3 Batch Job Creation

When a batch server creates a batch job on behalf of a client, it shall assign a batch job identifier to the job. A batch job identifier consists of both a sequence number that is unique among the sequence numbers issued by that server and the name of the server. Since the batch server name is unique within a name space, the job identifier is likewise unique within the name space.

The batch server that creates a batch job shall return the batch server-assigned job identifier to the client that requested the job creation. If the batch server routes or moves the job to another server, it sends the job identifier with the job. Once assigned, the job identifier of a batch job shall never change.

3.1.4 Batch Job Tracking

Since a batch job may be moved after creation, the batch server name component of the job identifier need not indicate the location of the job. An implementation may provide a batch job tracking mechanism, in which case the user generally does not need to know the location of the job. However, an implementation need not provide a batch job tracking mechanism, in which case the user must find routed jobs by probing the possible destinations.

3.1.5 Batch Job Routing

To route a batch job, a batch server either moves the job to some other queue that is managed by the batch server, or requests that some other batch server accept the job.

Each routing queue has one or more queues to which it can route batch jobs. The batch server administrator creates routing queues.

A batch server may route a batch job from a routing queue to another routing queue. Batch servers shall prevent or otherwise handle cases of circular routing paths. As a deferred service, a batch server routes jobs from the routing queues that it manages. The algorithm by which a batch server selects a batch queue to which to route a batch job is implementation-defined.

A batch job need not be eligible for routing to all the batch queues fed by the routing queue from

which it is routed. A batch server that has been asked to accept the job may reject the request if the job requires resources that are unavailable to that batch server, or if the client is not authorized to access the batch server.

Batch servers may route high-priority jobs before low-priority jobs, but, on other than overloaded systems, the effect may be imperceptible to the user. If all the batch servers fed by a routing queue reject requests to accept the job for reasons that are permanent, the batch server that manages the job shall abort the job. If all or some rejections are temporary, the batch server should try to route the job again at some later point.

The reasons for rejecting a batch job are implementation-defined.

The reasons for which the routing should be retried later and the reasons for which the job should be aborted are also implementation-defined.

3.1.6 Batch Job Execution

To execute a batch job is to create a session leader (a process) that runs the shell program indicated by the *Shell_Path* attribute of the job. The script shall be passed to the program as its standard input. An implementation may pass the script to the program by other implementation-defined means. At the time a batch job begins execution, it is defined to enter the RUNNING state. The primary program that is executed by a batch job is typically, though not necessarily, a shell program.

A batch server shall execute eligible jobs as a deferred service—no client request is necessary once the batch job is created and eligible. However, the attributes of a batch job, such as the job hold type, may render the job ineligible. A batch server shall scan the execution queues that it manages for jobs that are eligible for execution. The algorithm by which the batch server selects eligible jobs for execution is implementation-defined.

As part of creating the process for the batch job, the batch server shall open the standard output and standard error streams of the session.

The attributes of a batch job may indicate that the batch server executing the job shall send mail to a list of users at the time it begins execution of the job.

3.1.7 Batch Job Exit

When the session leader of an executing job terminates, the job exits. As part of exiting a batch job, the batch server that manages the job shall remove the job from the batch queue in which it resides. The server shall transfer output files of the job to a location described by the attributes of the job.

The attributes of a batch job may indicate that the batch server managing the job shall send mail to a list of users at the time the job exits.

3.1.8 Batch Job Abort

A batch server shall abort jobs for which a required deferred service cannot be performed. The attributes of a batch job may indicate that the batch server that aborts the job shall send mail to a list of users at the time it aborts the job.

3.1.9 Batch Authorization

Clients, such as the batch environment utilities (marked BE), access batch services by means of requests to one or more batch servers. To acquire the services of any given batch server, the user

Table 3-2 Environment Variable Summary

Variable	Description
PBS_DPREFIX	Defines the directive prefix (see *qsub*)
PBS_ENVIRONMENT	Batch Job is batch or interactive (see Section 3.2.2.1)
PBS_JOBID	The *job_identifier* attribute of job (see Section 3.2.3.8)
PBS_JOBNAME	The *job_name* attribute of job (see Section 3.2.3.8)
PBS_O_HOME	Defines the *HOME* of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_HOST	Defines the host name of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_LANG	Defines the *LANG* of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_LOGNAME	Defines the *LOGNAME* of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_MAIL	Defines the *MAIL* of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_PATH	Defines the *PATH* of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_QUEUE	Defines the submit queue of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_SHELL	Defines the *SHELL* of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_TZ	Defines the *TZ* of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_O_WORKDIR	Defines the working directory of the batch client (see *qsub*)
PBS_QUEUE	Defines the initial execution queue (see Section 3.2.2.1)

3.2.1 Batch Job States

A batch job shall always be in one of the following states: QUEUED, RUNNING, HELD, WAITING, EXITING, or TRANSITING. The state of a batch job determines the types of requests that the batch server that manages the batch job can accept for the batch job. A batch server shall change the state of a batch job either in response to service requests from clients or as a result of deferred services, such as job execution or job routing.

A batch job that is in the QUEUED state resides in a queue but is still pending either execution or routing, depending on the queue type.

A batch server that queues a batch job in a routing queue shall put the batch job in the QUEUED state. A batch server that puts a batch job in an execution queue, but has not yet executed the batch job, shall put the batch job in the QUEUED state. A batch job that resides in an execution queue and is executing is defined to be in the RUNNING state. While a batch job is in the RUNNING state, a session leader is associated with the batch job.

A batch job that resides in an execution queue, but is ineligible to run because of a hold attribute, is defined to be in the HELD state.

A batch job that is not held, but must wait until a future date and time before executing, is defined to be in the WAITING state.

When the session leader associated with a running job exits, the batch job shall be placed in the EXITING state.

A batch job for which the session leader has terminated is defined to be in the EXITING state, and the batch server that manages such a batch job cannot accept job modification requests that affect the batch job. While a batch job is in the EXITING state, the batch server that manages the batch job is staging output files and notifying clients of job completion. Once a batch job has exited, it no longer exists as an object managed by a batch server.

A batch job that is being moved from a routing queue to another queue is defined to be in the TRANSITING state.

When a batch job in a routing queue has been selected to be moved to a new destination, then the batch job shall be in either the QUEUED state or the TRANSITING state, depending on the

batch server implementation.

Batch jobs with either an *Execution_Time* attribute value set in the future or a *Hold_Types* attribute of value not equal to NO_HOLD, or both, may be routed or held in the routing queue. The treatment of jobs with the *Execution_Time* or *Hold_Types* attributes in a routing queue is implementation-defined.

When a batch job in a routing queue has not been selected to be moved to a new destination and the batch job has a *Hold_Types* attribute value of other than NO_HOLD, then the job should be in the HELD state.

Note: The effect of a hold upon a batch job in a routing queue is implementation-defined. The implementation should use the state that matches whether the batch job can route with a hold or not.

When a batch job in a routing queue has not been selected to be moved to a new destination and the batch job has:

- A *Hold_Types* attribute value of NO_HOLD
- An *Execution_Time* attribute in the past

then the batch job shall be in the QUEUED state.

When a batch job in a routing queue has not been selected to be moved to a new destination and the batch job has:

- A *Hold_Types* attribute value of NO_HOLD
- An *Execution_Time* attribute in the future

then the batch job may be in the WAITING state.

Note: The effect of a future execution time upon a batch job in a routing queue is implementation-defined. The implementation should use the state that matches whether the batch job can route with a hold or not.

Table 3-3 describes the next state of a batch job, given the current state of the batch job and the type of request. Table 3-4 describes the response of a batch server to a request, given the current state of the batch job and the type of request.

3.2.2 Deferred Batch Services

This section describes the deferred services performed by batch servers: job execution, job routing, job exit, job abort, and the rerunning of jobs after a restart.

3.2.2.1 Batch Job Execution

To execute a batch job is to create a session leader (a process) that runs the shell program indicated by the *Shell_Path_List* attribute of the batch job. The script is passed to the program as its standard input. An implementation may pass the script to the program by other implementation-defined means. At the time a batch job begins execution, it is defined to enter the RUNNING state.

Table 3-3 Next State Table

Request Type	Current State						
	X	**Q**	**R**	**H**	**W**	**E**	**T**
Queue Batch Job Request	Q	e	e	e	e	e	e
Modify Batch Job Request	e	Q	R	H	W	e	T
Delete Batch Job Request	e	X	E	X	X	E	X
Batch Job Message Request	e	Q	R	H	W	E	T
Rerun Batch Job Request	e	e	Q	e	e	e	e
Signal Batch Job Request	e	e	R	H	W	e	e
Batch Job Status Request	e	Q	R	H	W	E	T
Batch Queue Status Request	X	Q	R	H	W	E	T
Server Status Request	X	Q	R	H	W	E	T
Select Batch Jobs Request	X	Q	R	H	W	E	T
Move Batch Job Request	e	Q	R	H	W	e	T
Hold Batch Job Request	e	H	R/H	H	H	e	T
Release Batch Job Request	e	Q	R	Q/W/H	W	e	T
Server Shutdown Request	X	Q	Q	H	W	E	T
Locate Batch Job Request	e	Q	R	H	W	E	T

Legend

X Nonexistent

Q QUEUED

R RUNNING

H HELD

W WAITING

E EXITING

T TRANSITING

e Error

A batch server that has an execution queue containing jobs is said to own the queue and manage the batch jobs in that queue. A batch server that has been started shall execute the batch jobs in the execution queues owned by the batch server. The batch server shall schedule for execution those jobs in the execution queues that are in the QUEUED state. The algorithm for scheduling

execution.

Table 3-4 Results/Output Table

Request Type	Current State						
	X	**Q**	**R**	**H**	**W**	**E**	**T**
Queue Batch Job Request	O	e	e	e	e	e	e
Modify Batch Job Request	e	O	e	O	O	e	e
Delete Batch Job Request	e	O	O	O	O	e	O
Batch Job Message Request	e	e	O	e	e	e	e
Rerun Batch Job Request	e	e	O	e	e	e	e
Signal Batch Job Request	e	e	O	e	e	e	e
Batch Job Status Request	e	O	O	O	O	O	O
Batch Queue Status Request	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Server Status Request	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Select Batch Job Request	e	O	O	O	O	O	O
Move Batch Job Request	e	O	O	O	O	e	e
Hold Batch Job Request	e	O	O	O	O	e	e
Release Batch Job Request	e	O	e	O	O	e	e
Server Shutdown Request	O	O	e	O	O	e	e
Locate Batch Job Request	e	O	O	O	O	O	O

Legend

O OK

e Error message

The execution of a batch job by a batch server shall be controlled by job, queue, and server attributes, as defined in this section.

Account_Name Attribute

Batch accounting is an optional feature of batch servers. If a batch server implements accounting, the statements in this section apply and the configuration variable POSIX2_PBS_ACCOUNTING shall be set to 1.

A batch server that executes a batch job shall charge the account named in the *Account_Name* attribute of the batch job for resources consumed by the batch job.

If the *Account_Name* attribute of the batch job is absent from the batch job attribute list or is altered while the batch job is in execution, the batch server action is implementation-defined.

Checkpoint Attribute

Batch checkpointing is an optional feature of batch servers. If a batch server implements checkpointing, the statements in this section apply and the configuration variable POSIX2_PBS_CHECKPOINT shall be set to 1.

There are two attributes associated with the checkpointing feature: *Checkpoint* and *Minimum_Cpu_Interval*. *Checkpoint* is a batch job attribute, while *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* is a queue attribute. An implementation that does not support checkpointing shall support the *Checkpoint* job attribute to the extent that the batch server shall maintain and pass this attribute to other servers.

The behavior of a batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Checkpoint* attribute is CHECKPOINT_UNSPECIFIED is implementation-defined. A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Checkpoint* attribute is NO_CHECKPOINT shall not checkpoint the batch job.

A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Checkpoint* attribute is CHECKPOINT_AT_SHUTDOWN shall checkpoint the batch job only when the batch server accepts a request to shut down during the time when the batch job is in the RUNNING state.

A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Checkpoint* attribute is CHECKPOINT_AT_MIN_CPU_INTERVAL shall checkpoint the batch job at the interval specified by the *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* attribute of the queue for which the batch job has been selected. The *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* attribute shall be specified in units of CPU minutes.

A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Checkpoint* attribute is an unsigned integer shall checkpoint the batch job at an interval that is the value of either the *Checkpoint* attribute, or the *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* attribute of the queue for which the batch job has been selected, whichever is greater. Both intervals shall be in units of CPU minutes. When the *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* attribute is greater than the *Checkpoint* attribute, the batch job shall write a warning message to the standard error stream of the batch job.

Error_Path Attribute

The *Error_Path* attribute of a running job cannot be changed by a *Modify Batch Job Request*. When the *Join_Path* attribute of the batch job is set to the value FALSE and the *Keep_Files* attribute of the batch job does not contain the value KEEP_STD_ERROR, a batch server that executes a batch job shall perform one of the following actions:

- Set the standard error stream of the session leader of the batch job to the path described by the value of the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job.
- Buffer the standard error of the session leader of the batch job until completion of the batch job, and when the batch job exits return the contents to the destination described by the value of the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job.

Applications shall not rely on having access to the standard error of a batch job prior to the completion of the batch job.

When the *Error_Path* attribute does not specify a host name, then the batch server shall retain the standard error of the batch job on the host of execution.

When the *Error_Path* attribute does specify a host name and the *Keep_Files* attribute does not contain the value KEEP_STD_ERROR, then the final destination of the standard error of the batch job shall be on the host whose host name is specified.

If the path indicated by the value of the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job is a relative path, the batch server shall expand the path relative to the home directory of the user on the host to which the file is being returned.

When the batch server buffers the standard error of the batch job and the file cannot be opened for write upon completion of the batch job, then the server shall place the standard error in an implementation-defined location and notify the user of the location via mail. It shall be possible for the user to process this mail using the *mailx* utility.

If a batch server that does not buffer the standard error cannot open the standard error path of the batch job for write access, then the batch server shall abort the batch job.

4145 **Execution_Time Attribute**

4146 A batch server shall not execute a batch job before the time represented by the value of the
4147 *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch job. The *Execution_Time* attribute is defined in seconds since
4148 the Epoch.

4149 **Hold_Types Attribute**

4150 A batch server shall support the following hold types:

4151 s Can be set or released by a user with at least a privilege level of batch administrator
4152 (SYSTEM).

4153 o Can be set or released by a user with at least a privilege level of batch operator
4154 (OPERATOR).

4155 u Can be set or released by the user with at least a privilege level of user, where the user is
4156 defined in the *Job_Owner* attribute (USER).

4157 n Indicates that none of the *Hold_Types* attributes are set (NO_HOLD).

4158 An implementation may define other hold types. Any additional hold types, how they are
4159 specified, their internal representation, their behavior, and how they affect the behavior of other
4160 utilities are implementation-defined.

4161 The value of the *Hold_Types* attribute shall be the union of the valid hold types (`'s'`, `'o'`, `'u'`,
4162 and any implementation-defined hold types), or `'n'`.

4163 A batch server shall not execute a batch job if the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job has a
4164 value other than NO_HOLD. If the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job has a value other than
4165 NO_HOLD, the batch job shall be in the HELD state.

4166 **Job_Owner Attribute**

4167 The *Job_Owner* attribute consists of a pair of user name and host name values of the form:

4168 `username@hostname`

4169 A batch server that accepts a *Queue Batch Job Request* shall set the *Job_Owner* attribute to a string
4170 that is the *username@hostname* of the user who submitted the job.

4171 **Join_Path Attribute**

4172 A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Join_Path* attribute is TRUE
4173 shall ignore the value of the *Error_Path* attribute and merge the standard error of the batch job
4174 with the standard output of the batch job.

4175 **Keep_Files Attribute**

4176 A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Keep_Files* attribute includes
4177 the value KEEP_STD_OUTPUT shall retain the standard output of the batch job on the host
4178 where execution occurs. The standard output shall be retained in the home directory of the user
4179 under whose user ID the batch job is executed and the filename shall be the default filename for
4180 the standard output as defined under the **–o** option of the *qsub* utility. The *Output_Path* attribute
4181 is not modified.

4182 A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Keep_Files* attribute includes
4183 the value KEEP_STD_ERROR shall retain the standard error of the batch job on the host where
4184 execution occurs. The standard error shall be retained in the home directory of the user under
4185 whose user ID the batch job is executed and the filename shall be the default filename for

standard error as defined under the **–e** option of the *qsub* utility. The *Error_Path* attribute is not modified.

A batch server that executes a batch job for which the value of the *Keep_Files* attribute includes values other than KEEP_STD_OUTPUT and KEEP_STD_ERROR shall retain these other files on the host where execution occurs. These files (with implementation-defined names) shall be retained in the home directory of the user under whose user identifier the batch job is executed.

Mail_Points and Mail_Users Attributes

A batch server that executes a batch job for which one of the values of the *Mail_Points* attribute is the value MAIL_AT_BEGINNING shall send a mail message to each user account listed in the *Mail_Users* attribute of the batch job.

The mail message shall contain at least the batch job identifier, queue, and server at which the batch job currently resides, and the *Job_Owner* attribute.

Output_Path Attribute

The *Output_Path* attribute of a running job cannot be changed by a *Modify Batch Job Request*. When the *Keep_Files* attribute of the batch job does not contain the value KEEP_STD_OUTPUT, a batch server that executes a batch job shall either:

- Set the standard output stream of the session leader of the batch job to the destination described by the value of the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job.

  or:

- Buffer the standard output of the session leader of the batch job until completion of the batch job, and when the batch job exits return the contents to the destination described by the value of the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job.

When the *Output_Path* attribute does not specify a host name, then the batch server shall retain the standard output of the batch job on the host of execution.

When the *Keep_Files* attribute does not contain the value KEEP_STD_OUTPUT and the *Output_Path* attribute does specify a host name, then the final destination of the standard output of the batch job shall be on the host specified.

If the path specified in the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job is a relative path, the batch server shall expand the path relative to the home directory of the user on the host to which the file is being returned.

Whether or not the batch server buffers the standard output of the batch job until completion of the batch job is implementation-defined. Applications shall not rely on having access to the standard output of a batch job prior to the completion of the batch job.

When the batch server does buffer the standard output of the batch job and the file cannot be opened for write upon completion of the batch job, then the batch server shall place the standard output in an implementation-defined location and notify the user of the location via mail. It shall be possible for the user to process this mail using the *mailx* utility.

If a batch server that does not buffer the standard output cannot open the standard output path of the batch job for write access, then the batch server shall abort the batch job.

4225 **Priority Attribute**

4226 A batch server implementation may choose to preferentially execute a batch job based on the
4227 *Priority* attribute. The interpretation of the batch job *Priority* attribute by a batch server is
4228 implementation-defined. If an implementation uses the *Priority* attribute, it shall interpret larger
4229 values of the *Priority* attribute to mean the batch job shall be preferentially selected for execution.

4230 **Rerunable Attribute**

4231 A batch job that began execution but did not complete, because the batch server either shut
4232 down or terminated abnormally, shall be requeued if the *Rerunable* attribute of the batch job has
4233 the value TRUE.

4234 If a batch job, which was requeued after beginning execution but prior to completion, has a valid
4235 checkpoint file and the batch server supports checkpointing, then the batch job shall be restarted
4236 from the last valid checkpoint.

4237 If the batch job cannot be restarted from a checkpoint, then when a batch job has a *Rerunable*
4238 attribute value of TRUE and was requeued after beginning execution but prior to completion,
4239 the batch server shall place the batch job into execution at the beginning of the job.

4240 When a batch job has a *Rerunable* attribute value other than TRUE and was requeued after
4241 beginning execution but prior to completion, and the batch job cannot be restarted from a
4242 checkpoint, then the batch server shall abort the batch job.

4243 **Resource_List Attribute**

4244 A batch server that executes a batch job shall establish the resource limits of the session leader of
4245 the batch job according to the values of the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job. Resource
4246 limits shall be enforced by an implementation-defined method.

4247 **Shell_Path_List Attribute**

4248 The *Shell_Path_List* job attribute consists of a list of pairs of pathname and host name values. The
4249 host name component can be omitted, in which case the pathname serves as the default
4250 pathname when a batch server cannot find the name of the host on which it is running in the list.

4251 A batch server that executes a batch job shall select, from the value of the *Shell_Path_List*
4252 attribute of the batch job, a pathname where the shell to execute the batch job shall be found.
4253 The batch server shall select the pathname, in order of preference, according to the following
4254 methods:

4255 • Select the pathname that contains the name of the host on which the batch server is
4256 running.

4257 • Select the pathname for which the host name has been omitted.

4258 • Select the pathname for the login shell of the user under which the batch job is to execute.

4259 If the shell path value selected is an invalid pathname, the batch server shall abort the batch job.

4260 If the value of the selected pathname from the *Shell_Path_List* attribute of the batch job
4261 represents a partial path, the batch server shall expand the path relative to a path that is
4262 implementation-defined.

4263 The batch server that executes the batch job shall execute the program that was selected from the
4264 *Shell_Path_List* attribute of the batch job. The batch server shall pass the path to the script of the
4265 batch job as the first argument to the shell program.

User_List Attribute

The *User_List* job attribute consists of a list of pairs of user name and host name values. The host name component can be omitted, in which case the user name serves as a default when a batch server cannot find the name of the host on which it is running in the list.

A batch server that executes a batch job shall select, from the value of the *User_List* attribute of the batch job, a user name under which to create the session leader. The server shall select the user name, in order of preference, according to the following methods:

- Select the user name of a value that contains the name of the host on which the batch server executes.
- Select the user name of a value for which the host name has been omitted.
- Select the user name from the *Job_Owner* attribute of the batch job.

Variable_List Attribute

A batch server that executes a batch job shall create, in the environment of the session leader of the batch job, each environment variable listed in the *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job, and set the value of each such environment variable to that of the corresponding variable in the variable list.

3.2.2.2 *Batch Job Routing*

To route a batch job is to select a queue from a list and move the batch job to that queue.

A batch server that has routing queues, which have been started, shall route the jobs in the routing queues owned by the batch server. A batch server may delay the routing of a batch job. The algorithm for selecting a batch job and the queue to which it will be routed is implementation-defined.

When a routing queue has multiple possible destinations specified, then the precedence of the destinations is implementation-defined.

A batch server that routes a batch job to a queue at another server shall move the batch job into the target queue with a *Queue Batch Job Request*.

If the target server rejects the *Queue Batch Job Request*, the routing server shall retry routing the batch job or abort the batch job. A batch server that retries failed routings shall provide a means for the batch administrator to specify the number of retries and the minimum period of time between retries. The means by which an administrator specifies the number of retries and the delay between retries is implementation-defined. When the number of retries specified by the batch administrator has been exhausted, the batch server shall abort the batch job and perform the functions of *Batch Job Exit*; see Section 3.2.2.3 (on page 113).

3.2.2.3 *Batch Job Exit*

For each job in the EXITING state, the batch server that exited the batch job shall perform the following deferred services in the order specified:

1. If buffering standard error, move that file into the location specified by the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job.
2. If buffering standard output, move that file into the location specified by the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job.
3. If the *Mail_Points* attribute of the batch job includes MAIL_AT_EXIT, send mail to the users listed in the *Mail_Users* attribute of the batch job. The mail message shall contain at least the batch job identifier, queue, and server at which the batch job currently resides,

and the *Job_Owner* attribute.

4. Remove the batch job from the queue.

If a batch server that buffers the standard error output cannot return the standard error file to the standard error path at the time the batch job exits, the batch server shall do one of the following:

- Mail the standard error file to the batch job owner.
- Save the standard error file and mail the location and name of the file where the standard error is stored to the batch job owner.
- Save the standard error file and notify the user by other implementation-defined means.

If a batch server that buffers the standard output cannot return the standard output file to the standard output path at the time the batch job exits, the batch server shall do one of the following:

- Mail the standard output file to the batch job owner.
- Save the standard output file and mail the location and name of the file where the standard output is stored to the batch job owner.
- Save the standard output file and notify the user by other implementation-defined means.

At the conclusion of job exit processing, the batch job is no longer managed by a batch server.

3.2.2.4 *Batch Server Restart*

A batch server that has been either shutdown or terminated abnormally, and has returned to operation, is said to have "restarted".

Upon restarting, a batch server shall requeue those jobs managed by the batch server that were in the RUNNING state at the time the batch server shut down and for which the *Rerunable* attribute of the batch job has the value TRUE.

Queues are defined to be non-volatile. A batch server shall store the content of queues that it controls in such a way that server and system shutdowns do not erase the content of the queues.

3.2.2.5 *Batch Job Abort*

A batch server that cannot perform a deferred service for a batch job shall abort the batch job.

A batch server that aborts a batch job shall perform the following services:

- Delete the batch job from the queue in which it resides.
- If the *Mail_Points* attribute of the batch job includes the value MAIL_AT_ABORT, send mail to the users listed in the value of the *Mail_Users* attribute of the job. The mail message shall contain at least the batch job identifier, queue, and server at which the batch job currently resides, the *Job_Owner* attribute, and the reason for the abort.
- If the batch job was in the RUNNING state, terminate the session leader of the executing job by sending the session leader a SIGKILL, place the batch job in the EXITING state, and perform the actions of *Batch Job Exit*.

3.2.3 Requested Batch Services

This section describes the services provided by batch servers in response to requests from clients. Table 3-5 summarizes the current set of batch service requests and for each gives its type (deferred or not) and whether it is an optional function.

Table 3-5 Batch Services Summary

Batch Service	Deferred	Optional
Batch Job Execution	Yes	No
Batch Job Routing	Yes	No
Batch Job Exit	Yes	No
Batch Server Restart	Yes	No
Batch Job Abort	Yes	No
Delete Batch Job Request	No	No
Hold Batch Job Request	No	No
Batch Job Message Request	No	Yes
Batch Job Status Request	No	No
Locate Batch Job Request	No	Yes
Modify Batch Job Request	No	No
Move Batch Job Request	No	No
Queue Batch Job Request	No	No
Batch Queue Status Request	No	No
Release Batch Job Request	No	No
Rerun Batch Job Request	No	No
Select Batch Jobs Request	No	No
Server Shutdown Request	No	No
Server Status Request	No	No
Signal Batch Job Request	No	No
Track Batch Job Request	No	Yes

If a request is rejected because the batch client is not authorized to perform the action, the batch server shall return the same status as when the batch job does not exist.

3.2.3.1 *Delete Batch Job Request*

A batch job is defined to have been deleted when it has been removed from the queue in which it resides and not instantiated in another queue. A client requests that the server that manages a batch job delete the batch job. Such a request is called a *Delete Batch Job Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Delete Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The user of the batch client is not authorized to delete the designated job.
- The designated job is not managed by the batch server.
- The designated job is in a state inconsistent with the delete request.

A batch server may reject a *Delete Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server requested to delete a batch job shall delete the batch job if the batch job exists and is not in the EXITING state.

A batch server that deletes a batch job in the RUNNING state shall send a SIGKILL signal to the

session leader of the batch job. It is implementation-defined whether additional signals are sent to the session leader of the job prior to sending the SIGKILL signal.

A batch server that deletes a batch job in the RUNNING state shall place the batch job in the EXITING state after it has killed the session leader of the batch job and shall perform the actions of *Batch Job Exit*.

3.2.3.2 *Hold Batch Job Request*

A batch client can request that the batch server add one or more holds to a batch job. Such a request is called a *Hold Batch Job Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Hold Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The batch server does not support one or more of the requested holds to be added to the batch job.
- The user of the batch client is not authorized to add one or more of the requested holds to the batch job.
- The batch server does not manage the specified job.
- The designated job is in the EXITING state.

A batch server may reject a *Hold Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a *Hold Batch Job Request* for a batch job in the RUNNING state shall place a hold on the batch job. The effects, if any, the hold will have on a batch job in the RUNNING state are implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a *Hold Batch Job Request* shall add each type of hold listed in the *Hold Batch Job Request*, that is not already present, to the value of the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job.

3.2.3.3 *Batch Job Message Request*

Batch Job Message Request is an optional feature of batch servers. If an implementation supports *Batch Job Message Request*, the statements in this section apply and the configuration variable POSIX2_PBS_MESSAGE shall be set to 1.

A batch client can request that a batch server write a message into certain output files of a batch job. Such a request is called a *Batch Job Message Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Batch Job Message Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The batch server does not support sending messages to jobs.
- The user of the batch client is not authorized to post a message to the designated job.
- The designated job does not exist on the batch server.
- The designated job is not in the RUNNING state.

A batch server may reject a *Batch Job Message Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a *Batch Job Message Request* shall write the message sent by the batch client into the files indicated by the batch client.

4428 ### 3.2.3.4 *Batch Job Status Request*

4429 A batch client can request that a batch server respond with the status and attributes of a batch
4430 job. Such a request is called a *Batch Job Status Request*.

4431 A batch server shall reject a *Batch Job Status Request* if any of the following statements are true:

4432 • The user of the batch client is not authorized to query the status of the designated job.

4433 • The designated job is not managed by the batch server.

4434 A batch server may reject a *Batch Job Status Request* for other implementation-defined reasons.
4435 The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the
4436 requested action is implementation-defined.

4437 A batch server that accepts a *Batch Job Status Request* shall return a *Batch Job Status Message* to the
4438 batch client.

4439 A batch server may return other information in response to a *Batch Job Status Request*.

4440 ### 3.2.3.5 *Locate Batch Job Request*

4441 *Locate Batch Job Request* is an optional feature of batch servers. If an implementation supports
4442 *Locate Batch Job Request*, the statements in this section apply and the configuration variable
4443 POSIX2_PBS_LOCATE shall be set to 1.

4444 A batch client can ask a batch server to respond with the location of a batch job that was created
4445 by the batch server. Such a request is called a *Locate Batch Job Request*.

4446 A batch server that accepts a *Locate Batch Job Request* shall return a *Batch Job Location Message* to
4447 the batch client.

4448 A batch server may reject a *Locate Batch Job Request* for a batch job that was not created by that
4449 server.

4450 A batch server may reject a *Locate Batch Job Request* for a batch job that is no longer managed by
4451 that server; that is, for a batch job that is not in a queue owned by that server.

4452 A batch server may reject a *Locate Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons.

4453 ### 3.2.3.6 *Modify Batch Job Request*

4454 Batch clients modify (alter) the attributes of a batch job by making a request to the server that
4455 manages the batch job. Such a request is called a *Modify Batch Job Request*.

4456 A batch server shall reject a *Modify Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

4457 • The user of the batch client is not authorized to make the requested modification to the
4458 batch job.

4459 • The designated job is not managed by the batch server.

4460 • The requested modification is inconsistent with the state of the batch job.

4461 • An unrecognized resource is requested for a batch job in an execution queue.

4462 A batch server may reject a *Modify Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons.
4463 The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the
4464 requested action is implementation-defined.

4465 A batch server that accepts a *Modify Batch Job Request* shall modify all the specified attributes of
4466 the batch job. A batch server that rejects a *Modify Batch Job Request* shall modify none of the
4467 attributes of the batch job.

4468 If the servicing by a batch server of an otherwise valid request would result in no change, then

the batch server shall indicate successful completion of the request.

3.2.3.7 *Move Batch Job Request*

A batch client can request that a batch server move a batch job to another destination. Such a request is called a *Move Batch Job Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Move Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The user of the batch client is not authorized to remove the designated job from the queue in which the batch job resides.
- The user of the batch client is not authorized to move the designated job to the destination.
- The designated job is not managed by the batch server.
- The designated job is in the EXITING state.
- The destination is inaccessible.

A batch server can reject a *Move Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a *Move Batch Job Request* shall perform the following services:

- Queue the designated job at the destination.
- Remove the designated job from the queue in which the batch job resides.

If the destination resides on another batch server, the batch server shall queue the batch job at the destination by sending a *Queue Batch Job Request* to the other server. If the *Queue Batch Job Request* fails, the batch server shall reject the *Move Batch Job Request*. If the *Queue Batch Job Request* succeeds, the batch server shall remove the batch job from its queue.

The batch server shall not modify any attributes of the batch job.

3.2.3.8 *Queue Batch Job Request*

A batch queue is controlled by one and only one batch server. A batch server is said to own the queues that it controls. Batch clients make requests of batch servers to have jobs queued. Such a request is called a *Queue Batch Job Request*.

A batch server requested to queue a batch job for which the queue is not specified shall select an implementation-defined queue for the batch job. Such a queue is called the "default queue" of the batch server. The implementation shall provide the means for a batch administrator to specify the default queue. The queue, whether specified or defaulted, is called the "target queue".

A batch server shall reject a *Queue Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The client is not authorized to create a batch job in the target queue.
- The request specifies a queue that does not exist on the batch server.
- The target queue is an execution queue and the batch server cannot satisfy a resource requirement of the batch job.
- The target queue is an execution queue and an unrecognized resource is requested.
- The target queue is an execution queue, the batch server does not support checkpointing, and the value of the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job is not NO_CHECKPOINT.

- The job requires access to a user identifier that the batch client is not authorized to access.

A batch server may reject a *Queue Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons.

A batch server that accepts a *Queue Batch Job Request* for a batch job for which the PBS_O_QUEUE value is missing from the value of the *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job shall add that variable to the list and set the value to the name of the target queue. Once set, no server shall change the value of PBS_O_QUEUE, even if the batch job is moved to another queue.

A batch server that accepts a *Queue Batch Job Request* for a batch job for which the PBS_JOBID value is missing from the value of the *Variable_List* attribute shall add that variable to the list and set the value to the batch job identifier assigned by the server in the format:

```
sequence_number.server
```

A batch server that accepts a *Queue Batch Job Request* for a batch job for which the PBS_JOBNAME value is missing from the value of the *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job shall add that variable to the list and set the value to the *Job_Name* attribute of the batch job.

3.2.3.9 *Batch Queue Status Request*

A batch client can request that a batch server respond with the status and attributes of a queue. Such a request is called a *Batch Queue Status Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Batch Queue Status Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The user of the batch client is not authorized to query the status of the designated queue.
- The designated queue does not exist on the batch server.

A batch server may reject a *Batch Queue Status Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a *Batch Queue Status Request* shall return a *Batch Queue Status Reply* to the batch client.

3.2.3.10 *Release Batch Job Request*

A batch client can request that the server remove one or more holds from a batch job. Such a request is called a *Release Batch Job Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Release Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The user of the batch client is not authorized to remove one or more of the requested holds from the batch job.
- The batch server does not manage the specified job.

A batch server may reject a *Release Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a *Release Batch Job Request* shall remove each type of hold listed in the *Release Batch Job Request*, that is present, from the value of the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job.

4547 *3.2.3.11 Rerun Batch Job Request*

4548 To rerun a batch job is to kill the session leader of the batch job and leave the batch job eligible
4549 for re-execution. A batch client can request that a batch server rerun a batch job. Such a request
4550 is called *Rerun Batch Job Request*.

4551 A batch server shall reject a *Rerun Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

4552 • The user of the batch client is not authorized to rerun the designated job.

4553 • The *Rerunable* attribute of the designated job has the value FALSE.

4554 • The designated job is not in the RUNNING state.

4555 • The batch server does not manage the designated job.

4556 A batch server may reject a *Rerun Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons.
4557 The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the
4558 requested action is implementation-defined.

4559 A batch server that rejects a *Rerun Batch Job Request* shall in no way modify the execution of the
4560 batch job.

4561 A batch server that accepts a request to rerun a batch job shall perform the following services:

4562 • Requeue the batch job in the execution queue in which it was executing.

4563 • Send a SIGKILL signal to the process group of the session leader of the batch job.

4564 An implementation may indicate to the batch job owner that the batch job has been rerun.
4565 Whether and how the batch job owner is notified that a batch job is rerun is implementation-
4566 defined.

4567 A batch server that reruns a batch job may send other implementation-defined signals to the
4568 session leader of the batch job prior to sending the SIGKILL signal.

4569 A batch server may preferentially select a rerun job for execution. Whether rerun jobs shall be
4570 selected for execution before other jobs is implementation-defined.

4571 *3.2.3.12 Select Batch Jobs Request*

4572 A batch client can request from a batch server a list of jobs managed by that server that match a
4573 list of selection criteria. Such a request is called a *Select Batch Jobs Request*. All the batch jobs
4574 managed by the batch server that receives the request are candidates for selection.

4575 A batch server that accepts a *Select Batch Jobs Request* shall return a list of zero or more job
4576 identifiers that correspond to jobs that meet the selection criteria.

4577 If the batch client is not authorized to query the status of a batch job, the batch server shall not
4578 select the batch job.

4579 *3.2.3.13 Server Shutdown Request*

4580 A batch server is defined to have shut down when it does not respond to requests from clients
4581 and does not perform deferred services for jobs. A batch client can request that a batch server
4582 shut down. Such a request is called a *Server Shutdown Request*.

4583 A batch server shall reject a *Server Shutdown Request* from a client that is not authorized to shut
4584 down the batch server. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized
4585 to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

4586 A batch server may reject a *Server Shutdown Request* for other implementation-defined reasons.
4587 The reasons for which a *Server Shutdown Request* may be rejected are implementation-defined.

At server shutdown, a batch server shall do, in order of preference, one of the following:

- If checkpointing is implemented and the batch job is checkpointable, then checkpoint the batch job and requeue it.
- If the batch job is rerunnable, then requeue the batch job to be rerun (restarted from the beginning).
- Abort the batch job.

3.2.3.14 *Server Status Request*

A batch client can request that a batch server respond with the status and attributes of the batch server. Such a request is called a *Server Status Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Server Status Request* if the following statement is true:

- The user of the batch client is not authorized to query the status of the designated server.

A batch server may reject a *Server Status Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a *Server Status Request* shall return a *Server Status Reply* to the batch client.

3.2.3.15 *Signal Batch Job Request*

A batch client can request that a batch server signal the session leader of a batch job. Such a request is called a *Signal Batch Job Request*.

A batch server shall reject a *Signal Batch Job Request* if any of the following statements are true:

- The user of the batch client is not authorized to signal the batch job.
- The job is not in the RUNNING state.
- The batch server does not manage the designated job.
- The requested signal is not supported by the implementation.

A batch server may reject a *Signal Batch Job Request* for other implementation-defined reasons. The method used to determine whether the user of a client is authorized to perform the requested action is implementation-defined.

A batch server that accepts a request to signal a batch job shall send the signal requested by the batch client to the process group of the session leader of the batch job.

3.2.3.16 *Track Batch Job Request*

Track Batch Job Request is an optional feature of batch servers. If an implementation supports *Track Batch Job Request*, the statements in this section apply and the configuration variable POSIX2_PBS_TRACK shall be set to 1.

Track Batch Job Request provides a method for tracking the current location of a batch job. Clients may use the tracking information to determine the batch server that should receive a batch server request.

If *Track Batch Job Request* is supported by a batch server, then when the batch server queues a batch job as a result of a *Queue Batch Job Request*, and the batch server is not the batch server that created the batch job, the batch server shall send a *Track Batch Job Request* to the batch server that created the job.

If *Track Batch Job Request* is supported by a batch server, then the *Track Batch Job Request* may also

be sent to other servers as a backup to the primary server. The method by which backup servers are specified is implementation-defined.

If *Track Batch Job Request* is supported by a batch server that receives a *Track Batch Job Request*, then the batch server shall record the current location of the batch job as contained in the request.

3.3 Common Behavior for Batch Environment Utilities

3.3.1 Batch Job Identifier

A utility shall recognize *job_identifier*s of the format:

```
[sequence_number][.server_name][@server]
```

where:

sequence_number An integer that, when combined with *server_name*, provides a batch job identifier that is unique within the batch system.

server_name The name of the batch server to which the batch job was originally submitted.

server The name of the batch server that is currently managing the batch job.

If the application omits the batch *server_name* portion of a batch job identifier, a utility shall use the name of a default batch server.

If the application omits the batch *server* portion of a batch job identifier, a utility shall use:

- The batch server indicated by *server_name*, if present
- The name of the default batch server
- The name of the batch server that is currently managing the batch job

If only *@server* is specified, then the status of all jobs owned by the user on the requested server is listed.

The means by which a utility determines the default batch server is implementation-defined.

If the application presents the batch *server* portion of a batch job identifier to a utility, the utility shall send the request to the specified server.

A strictly conforming application shall use the syntax described for the job identifier. Whenever a batch job identifier is specified whose syntax is not recognized by an implementation, then a message for each error that occurs shall be written to standard error and the utility shall exit with an exit status greater than zero.

When a batch job identifier is supplied as an argument to a batch utility and the *server_name* portion of the batch job identifier is omitted, then the utility shall use the name of the default batch server.

When a batch job identifier is supplied as an argument to a batch utility and the batch *server* portion of the batch job identifier is omitted, then the utility shall use either:

- The name of the default batch server

  or:

- The name of the batch server that is currently managing the batch job

When a batch job identifier is supplied as an argument to a batch utility and the batch *server* portion of the batch job identifier is specified, then the utility shall send the required *Batch Server Request* to the specified server.

3.3.2 Destination

The utility shall recognize a *destination* of the format:

```
[queue][@server]
```

where:

queue The name of a valid execution or routing queue at the batch server denoted by *@server*, defined as a string of up to 15 alphanumeric characters in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set) where the first character is alphabetic.

server The name of a batch server, defined as a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set.

If the application omits the batch *server* portion of a destination, then the utility shall use either:

- The name of the default batch server

or:

- The name of the batch server that is currently managing the batch job

The means by which a utility determines the default batch server is implementation-defined.

If the application omits the *queue* portion of a destination, then the utility shall use the name of the default queue at the batch server chosen. The means by which a batch server determines its default queue is implementation-defined. If a destination is specified in the *queue@server* form, then the utility shall use the specified queue at the specified server.

A strictly conforming application shall use the syntax described for a destination. Whenever a destination is specified whose syntax is not recognized by an implementation, then a message shall be written to standard error and the utility shall exit with an exit status greater than zero.

3.3.3 Multiple Keyword-Value Pairs

For each option that can have multiple keyword-value pair arguments, the following rules shall apply. Examples of options that can have list-oriented option-arguments are **–u** *value@keyword* and **–l** *keyword=value*.

1. If a batch utility is presented with a list-oriented option-argument for which a keyword has a corresponding value that begins with a single or double quote, then the utility shall stop interpreting the input stream for delimiters until a second single or double quote, respectively, is encountered. This feature allows some flexibility for a comma (`','`) or equals sign (`'='`) to be part of the value string for a particular keyword; for example:

   ```
   keywd1='val1,val2',keywd2="val3,val4"
   ```

   Note: This may require the user to escape the quotes as in the following command:

   ```
   foo –xkeywd1=\'val1,val2\',keywd2=\"val3,val4\"
   ```

2. If a batch server is presented with a list-oriented attribute that has a keyword that was encountered earlier in the list, then the later entry for that keyword shall replace the earlier entry.

3. If a batch server is presented with a list-oriented attribute that has a keyword without any corresponding value of the form *keyword*= or *@keyword* and the same keyword was encountered earlier in the list, then the prior entry for that keyword shall be ignored by the batch server.

4. If a batch utility is expecting a list-oriented option-argument entry of the form *keyword=value*, but is presented with an entry of the form *keyword* without any corresponding *value*, then the entry shall be treated as though a default value of NULL was assigned (that is, *keyword*=NULL) for entry parsing purposes. The utility shall include only the keyword, not the NULL value, in the associated job attribute.

5. If a batch utility is expecting a list-oriented option-argument entry of the form *value@keyword*, but is presented with an entry of the form *value* without any corresponding *keyword*, then the entry shall be treated as though a keyword of NULL was assigned (that is, *value*@NULL) for entry parsing purposes. The utility shall include only the value, not the NULL keyword, in the associated job attribute.

6. A batch server shall accept a list-oriented attribute that has multiple occurrences of the same keyword, interpreting the keywords, in order, with the last value encountered taking precedence over prior instances of the same keyword. This rule allows, but does not require, a batch utility to preprocess the attribute to remove duplicate keywords.

7. If a batch utility is presented with multiple list-oriented option-arguments on the command line or in script directives, or both, for a single option, then the utility shall concatenate, in order, any command line keyword and value pairs to the end of any directive keyword and value pairs separated by a single comma to produce a single string that is an equivalent, valid option-argument. The resulting string shall be assigned to the associated attribute of the batch job (after optionally removing duplicate entries as described in item 6).

4731 *Chapter 4*

4732 # *Utilities*

4733 This chapter contains the definitions of the utilities, as follows:

4734 • Mandatory utilities that are present on every conformant system

4735 • Optional utilities that are present only on systems supporting the associated option; see
4736 Section 1.8.1 for information on the options in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x

NAME

admin — create and administer SCCS files (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI

```
admin –i[name] [–n] [–a login] [–d flag] [–e login] [–f flag] [–m mrlist]
    [–r rel] [–t[name] [–y[comment]] newfile

admin –n[–a login] [–d flag] [–e login] [–f flag] [–m mrlist] [–t[name]]
    [–y[comment]] newfile...

admin [–a login] [–d flag] [–m mrlist] [–r rel] [–t[name]] file...

admin –h file...

admin –z file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *admin* utility shall create new SCCS files or change parameters of existing ones. If a named file does not exist, it shall be created, and its parameters shall be initialized according to the specified options. Parameters not initialized by an option shall be assigned a default value. If a named file does exist, parameters corresponding to specified options shall be changed, and other parameters shall be left as is.

All SCCS filenames supplied by the application shall be of the form s.*filename*. New SCCS files shall be given read-only permission mode. Write permission in the parent directory is required to create a file. All writing done by *admin* shall be to a temporary *x-file*, named x.*filename* (see *get*) created with read-only mode if *admin* is creating a new SCCS file, or created with the same mode as that of the SCCS file if the file already exists. After successful execution of *admin*, the SCCS file shall be removed (if it exists), and the *x-file* shall be renamed with the name of the SCCS file. This ensures that changes are made to the SCCS file only if no errors occur.

The *admin* utility shall also use a transient lock file (named z.*filename*), which is used to prevent simultaneous updates to the SCCS file; see *get*.

OPTIONS

The *admin* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the **–i**, **–t**, and **–y** options have optional option-arguments. These optional option-arguments shall not be presented as separate arguments. The following options are supported:

–n Create a new SCCS file. When **–n** is used without **–i**, the SCCS file shall be created with control information but without any file data.

–i[*name*] Specify the *name* of a file from which the text for a new SCCS file shall be taken. The text constitutes the first delta of the file (see the **–r** option for the delta numbering scheme). If the **–i** option is used, but the *name* option-argument is omitted, the text shall be obtained by reading the standard input. If this option is omitted, the SCCS file shall be created with control information but without any file data. The **–i** option implies the **–n** option.

–r *SID* Specify the SID of the initial delta to be inserted. This SID shall be a trunk SID; that is, the branch and sequence numbers shall be zero or missing. The level number is optional, and defaults to 1.

–t[*name*] Specify the *name* of a file from which descriptive text for the SCCS file shall be taken. In the case of existing SCCS files (neither **–i** nor **–n** is specified):

- A **–t** option without a *name* option-argument shall cause the removal of descriptive text (if any) currently in the SCCS file.
- A **–t** option with a *name* option-argument shall cause the text (if any) in the named file to replace the descriptive text (if any) currently in the SCCS file.

–f *flag* Specify a *flag*, and, possibly, a value for the *flag*, to be placed in the SCCS file. Several **–f** options may be supplied on a single *admin* command line. Implementations shall recognize the following flags and associated values:

b Allow use of the **–b** option on a *get* command to create branch deltas.

c*ceil* Specify the highest release (that is, ceiling), a number less than or equal to 9 999, which may be retrieved by a *get* command for editing. The default value for an unspecified **c** flag shall be 9 999.

f*floor* Specify the lowest release (that is, floor), a number greater than 0 but less than 9 999, which may be retrieved by a *get* command for editing. The default value for an unspecified **f** flag shall be 1.

d*SID* Specify the default delta number (SID) to be used by a *get* command.

i*str* Treat the "No ID keywords" message issued by *get* or *delta* as a fatal error. In the absence of this flag, the message is only a warning. The message is issued if no SCCS identification keywords (see *get*) are found in the text retrieved or stored in the SCCS file. If a value is supplied, the application shall ensure that the keywords exactly match the given string; however, the string shall contain a keyword, and no embedded <newline>s.

j Allow concurrent *get* commands for editing on the same SID of an SCCS file. This allows multiple concurrent updates to the same version of the SCCS file.

l*list* Specify a *list* of releases to which deltas can no longer be made (that is, *get* **–e** against one of these locked releases fails). Conforming applications shall use the following syntax to specify a *list*. Implementations may accept additional forms as an extension:

```
<list> ::= a | <range-list>
<range-list> ::= <range> | <range-list>, <range>
<range> ::= <SID>
```

The character *a* in the *list* shall be equivalent to specifying all releases for the named SCCS file. The non-terminal <*SID*> in range shall be the delta number of an existing delta associated with the SCCS file.

n Cause *delta* to create a null delta in each of those releases (if any) being skipped when a delta is made in a new release (for example, in making delta 5.1 after delta 2.7, releases 3 and 4 are skipped). These null deltas shall serve as anchor points so that branch deltas may later be created from them. The absence of this flag shall cause skipped releases to be nonexistent in the SCCS file, preventing branch deltas from being created from them in the future. During the initial creation of an SCCS file, the **n** flag may be ignored; that is, if the **–r** option is used to set the release number of the initial SID to a value greater than 1, null deltas need not be created for the "skipped" releases.

q*text* Substitute user-definable *text* for all occurrences of the %**Q**% keyword in the SCCS file text retrieved by *get*.

m*mod* Specify the module name of the SCCS file substituted for all occurrences of the %**M**% keyword in the SCCS file text retrieved by *get*. If the **m** flag is not specified, the value assigned shall be the name of the SCCS file with the leading `'.'` removed.

t*type* Specify the *type* of module in the SCCS file substituted for all occurrences of the %**Y**% keyword in the SCCS file text retrieved by *get*.

v*pgm* Cause *delta* to prompt for modification request (MR) numbers as the reason for creating a delta. The optional value specifies the name of an MR number validation program. (If this flag is set when creating an SCCS file, the application shall ensure that the **m** option is also used even if its value is null.)

–d *flag* Remove (delete) the specified *flag* from an SCCS file. Several **–d** options may be supplied on a single *admin* command. See the **–f** option for allowable *flag* names. (The **l***list* flag gives a *list* of releases to be unlocked. See the **–f** option for further description of the **l** flag and the syntax of a *list*.)

–a *login* Specify a *login* name, or numerical group ID, to be added to the list of users who may make deltas (changes) to the SCCS file. A group ID shall be equivalent to specifying all *login* names common to that group ID. Several **–a** options may be used on a single *admin* command line. As many *login*s, or numerical group IDs, as desired may be on the list simultaneously. If the list of users is empty, then anyone may add deltas. If *login* or group ID is preceded by a `'!'`, the users so specified shall be denied permission to make deltas.

–e *login* Specify a *login* name, or numerical group ID, to be erased from the list of users allowed to make deltas (changes) to the SCCS file. Specifying a group ID is equivalent to specifying all *login* names common to that group ID. Several **–e** options may be used on a single *admin* command line.

–y[*comment***]** Insert the *comment* text into the SCCS file as a comment for the initial delta in a manner identical to that of *delta*. In the POSIX locale, omission of the **–y** option shall result in a default comment line being inserted in the form:

`"date and time created %s %s by %s", <date>, <time>, <login>`

where <*date*> is expressed in the format of the *date* utility's `%y/%m/%d` conversion specification, <*time*> in the format of the *date* utility's `%T` conversion specification format, and <*login*> is the login name of the user creating the file.

–m *mrlist* Insert the list of modification request (MR) numbers into the SCCS file as the reason for creating the initial delta in a manner identical to *delta*. The application shall ensure that the **v** flag is set and the MR numbers are validated if the **v** flag has a value (the name of an MR number validation program). A diagnostic message shall be written if the **v** flag is not set or MR validation fails.

–h Check the structure of the SCCS file and compare the newly computed checksum with the checksum that is stored in the SCCS file. If the newly computed checksum does not match the checksum in the SCCS file, a diagnostic message shall be written.

–z Recompute the SCCS file checksum and store it in the first line of the SCCS file (see the **–h** option above). Note that use of this option on a truly corrupted file may prevent future detection of the corruption.

4871 **OPERANDS**

4872 The following operands shall be supported:

4873 *file* A pathname of an existing SCCS file or a directory. If *file* is a directory, the *admin*
4874 utility shall behave as though each file in the directory were specified as a named
4875 file, except that non-SCCS files (last component of the pathname does not begin
4876 with **s.**) and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

4877 *newfile* A pathname of an SCCS file to be created.

4878 If exactly one *file* or *newfile* operand appears, and it is `'-'`, the standard input shall be read; each
4879 line of the standard input shall be taken to be the name of an SCCS file to be processed. Non-
4880 SCCS files and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

4881 **STDIN**

4882 The standard input shall be a text file used only if **-i** is specified without an option-argument or
4883 if a *file* or *newfile* operand is specified as `'-'`. If the first character of any standard input line is
4884 <SOH> in the POSIX locale, the results are unspecified.

4885 **INPUT FILES**

4886 The existing SCCS files shall be text files of an unspecified format.

4887 The application shall ensure that the file named by the **-i** option's *name* option-argument shall
4888 be a text file; if the first character of any line in this file is <SOH> in the POSIX locale, the results
4889 are unspecified. If this file contains more than 99 999 lines, the number of lines recorded in the
4890 header for this file shall be 99 999 for this delta.

4891 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

4892 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *admin*:

4893 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
4894 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
4895 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
4896 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

4897 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
4898 internationalization variables.

4899 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
4900 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
4901 arguments and input files).

4902 *LC_MESSAGES*
4903 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
4904 diagnostic messages written to standard error and the contents of the default **-y**
4905 comment.

4906 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

4907 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

4908 Default.

4909 **STDOUT**

4910 Not used.

4911 **STDERR**

4912 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

Any SCCS files created shall be text files of an unspecified format. During processing of a *file*, a locking *z-file*, as described in *get* (on page 476), may be created and deleted.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

It is recommended that directories containing SCCS files be writable by the owner only, and that SCCS files themselves be read-only. The mode of the directories should allow only the owner to modify SCCS files contained in the directories. The mode of the SCCS files prevents any modification at all except by SCCS commands.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

delta, *get*, *prs*, *what*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements, and to emphasize the term "shall" for implementation requirements.

The grammar is updated.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-007 is applied, adding new text to the INPUT FILES section warning that the maximum lines recorded in the file is 99 999.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-009 is applied, amending the description of the **–h** option.

NAME

alias — define or display aliases

SYNOPSIS

```
alias [alias-name[=string]...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *alias* utility shall create or redefine alias definitions or write the values of existing alias definitions to standard output. An alias definition provides a string value that shall replace a command name when it is encountered; see Section 2.3.1 (on page 32).

An alias definition shall affect the current shell execution environment and the execution environments of the subshells of the current shell. When used as specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the alias definition shall not affect the parent process of the current shell nor any utility environment invoked by the shell; see Section 2.12 (on page 61).

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

alias-name Write the alias definition to standard output.

alias-name=string
Assign the value of *string* to the alias *alias-name*.

If no operands are given, all alias definitions shall be written to standard output.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *alias*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The format for displaying aliases (when no operands or only *name* operands are specified) shall be:

```
"%s=%s\n", name, value
```

The *value* string shall be written with appropriate quoting so that it is suitable for reinput to the shell. See the description of shell quoting in Section 2.2 (on page 30).

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 One of the *name* operands specified did not have an alias definition, or an error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

1. Change *ls* to give a columnated, more annotated output:

   ```
   alias ls="ls -CF"
   ```

2. Create a simple "redo" command to repeat previous entries in the command history file:

   ```
   alias r='fc -s'
   ```

3. Use 1K units for *du*:

   ```
   alias du=du\ -k
   ```

4. Set up *nohup* so that it can deal with an argument that is itself an alias name:

   ```
   alias nohup="nohup "
   ```

RATIONALE

The *alias* description is based on historical KornShell implementations. Known differences exist between that and the C shell. The KornShell version was adopted to be consistent with all the other KornShell features in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, such as command line editing.

Since *alias* affects the current shell execution environment, it is generally provided as a shell regular built-in.

Historical versions of the KornShell have allowed aliases to be exported to scripts that are invoked by the same shell. This is triggered by the *alias* **-x** flag; it is allowed by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x only when an explicit extension such as **-x** is used. The standard developers considered that aliases were of use primarily to interactive users and that they should normally not affect shell scripts called by those users; functions are available to such scripts.

Historical versions of the KornShell had not written aliases in a quoted manner suitable for reentry to the shell, but this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x has made this a requirement for all similar output. Therefore, consistency was chosen over this detail of historical practice.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.9.5

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

Issue 7

The *alias* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

ar — create and maintain library archives

SYNOPSIS

SD
```
ar –d[–v] archive file...
```

XSI
```
ar –m [–v] archive file...
ar –m –a[–v] posname archive file...
ar –m –b[–v] posname archive file...
ar –m –i[–v] posname archive file...
```

XSI
```
ar –p[–v] [–s] archive [file...]
```

XSI
```
ar –q[–cv] archive file...
```

```
ar –r[–cuv] archive file...
```

XSI
```
ar –r –a[–cuv] posname archive file...
ar –r –b[–cuv] posname archive file...
ar –r –i[–cuv] posname archive file...
```

XSI
```
ar –t[–v] [–s] archive [file...]
```

XSI
```
ar –x[–v] [–sCT] archive [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *ar* utility is part of the Software Development Utilities option.

The *ar* utility can be used to create and maintain groups of files combined into an archive. Once an archive has been created, new files can be added, and existing files in an archive can be extracted, deleted, or replaced. When an archive consists entirely of valid object files, the implementation shall format the archive so that it is usable as a library for link editing (see *c99* and *fort77*). When some of the archived files are not valid object files, the suitability of the XSI archive for library use is undefined. If an archive consists entirely of printable files, the entire archive shall be printable.

When *ar* creates an archive, it creates administrative information indicating whether a symbol table is present in the archive. When there is at least one object file that *ar* recognizes as such in the archive, an archive symbol table shall be created in the archive and maintained by *ar*; it is used by the link editor to search the archive. Whenever the *ar* utility is used to create or update the contents of such an archive, the symbol table shall be rebuilt. The **–s** option shall force the symbol table to be rebuilt.

All *file* operands can be pathnames. However, files within archives shall be named by a filename, which is the last component of the pathname used when the file was entered into the archive. The comparison of *file* operands to the names of files in archives shall be performed by comparing the last component of the operand to the name of the file in the archive.

It is unspecified whether multiple files in the archive may be identically named. In the case of XSI such files, however, each *file* and *posname* operand shall match only the first file in the archive having a name that is the same as the last component of the operand.

OPTIONS

The *ar* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for Guideline 9.

The following options shall be supported:

XSI **−a** Position new files in the archive after the file named by the *posname* operand.

XSI **−b** Position new files in the archive before the file named by the *posname* operand.

−c Suppress the diagnostic message that is written to standard error by default when the archive *archive* is created.

XSI **−C** Prevent extracted files from replacing like-named files in the file system. This option is useful when **−T** is also used, to prevent truncated filenames from replacing files with the same prefix.

−d Delete one or more *file*s from *archive*.

XSI **−i** Position new files in the archive before the file in the archive named by the *posname* operand (equivalent to **−b**).

XSI **−m** Move the named files in the archive. The **−a**, **−b**, or **−i** options with the *posname* operand indicate the position; otherwise, move the names files in the archive to the end of the archive.

−p Write the contents of the *file*s in the archive named by *file* operands from *archive* to the standard output. If no *file* operands are specified, the contents of all files in the archive shall be written in the order of the archive.

XSI **−q** Append the named files to the end of the archive. In this case *ar* does not check whether the added files are already in the archive. This is useful to bypass the searching otherwise done when creating a large archive piece by piece.

−r Replace or add *file*s to *archive*. If the archive named by *archive* does not exist, a new archive shall be created and a diagnostic message shall be written to standard error (unless the **−c** option is specified). If no *file*s are specified and the *archive* exists, the results are undefined. Files that replace existing files in the archive shall not change the order of the archive. Files that do not replace existing files in the archive shall be appended to the archive XSI unless a **−a**, **−b**, or **−i** option specifies another position.

XSI **−s** Force the regeneration of the archive symbol table even if *ar* is not invoked with an option that modifies the archive contents. This option is useful to restore the archive symbol table after it has been stripped; see *strip*.

−t Write a table of contents of *archive* to the standard output. The files specified by the *file* operands shall be included in the written list. If no *file* operands are specified, all files in *archive* shall be included in the order of the archive.

XSI **−T** Allow filename truncation of extracted files whose archive names are longer than the file system can support. By default, extracting a file with a name that is too long shall be an error; a diagnostic message shall be written and the file shall not be extracted.

−u Update older files in the archive. When used with the **−r** option, files in the archive shall be replaced only if the corresponding *file* has a modification time that is at least as new as the modification time of the file in the archive.

−v Give verbose output. When used with the option characters **−d**, **−r**, or **−x**, write a detailed file-by-file description of the archive creation and maintenance activity, as described in the STDOUT section.

When used with **–p**, write the name of the file in the archive to the standard output before writing the file in the archive itself to the standard output, as described in the STDOUT section.

When used with **–t**, include a long listing of information about the files in the archive, as described in the STDOUT section.

–x Extract the files in the archive named by the *file* operands from *archive*. The contents of the archive shall not be changed. If no *file* operands are given, all files in the archive shall be extracted. The modification time of each file extracted shall be set to the time the file is extracted from the archive.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

archive A pathname of the archive.

file A pathname. Only the last component shall be used when comparing against the names of files in the archive. If two or more *file* operands have the same last pathname component (basename), the results are unspecified. The implementation's archive format shall not truncate valid filenames of files added to or replaced in the archive.

XSI *posname* The name of a file in the archive, used for relative positioning; see options **–m** and **–r**.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

The archive named by *archive* shall be a file in the format created by *ar* **–r**.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ar*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LC_TIME Determine the format and content for date and time strings written by *ar* **–tv**.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

TMPDIR Determine the pathname that overrides the default directory for temporary files, if any.

TZ Determine the timezone used to calculate date and time strings written by *ar* **–tv**. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

If the **–d** option is used with the **–v** option, the standard output format shall be:

```
"d – %s\n", <file>
```

where *file* is the operand specified on the command line.

If the **–p** option is used with the **–v** option, *ar* shall precede the contents of each file with:

```
"\n<%s>\n\n", <file>
```

where *file* is the operand specified on the command line, if *file* operands were specified, and the name of the file in the archive if they were not.

If the **–r** option is used with the **–v** option:

- If *file* is already in the archive, the standard output format shall be:

  ```
  "r – %s\n", <file>
  ```

  where <*file*> is the operand specified on the command line.

- If *file* is not already in the archive, the standard output format shall be:

  ```
  "a – %s\n", <file>
  ```

  where <*file*> is the operand specified on the command line.

If the **–t** option is used, *ar* shall write the names of the files in the archive to the standard output in the format:

```
"%s\n", <file>
```

where *file* is the operand specified on the command line, if *file* operands were specified, or the name of the file in the archive if they were not.

If the **–t** option is used with the **–v** option, the standard output format shall be:

```
"%s %u/%u %u %s %d %d:%d %d %s\n", <member mode>, <user ID>,
    <group ID>, <number of bytes in member>,
    <abbreviated month>, <day-of-month>, <hour>,
    <minute>, <year>, <file>
```

where:

<*file*> Shall be the operand specified on the command line, if *file* operands were specified, or the name of the file in the archive if they were not.

<*member mode*>
Shall be formatted the same as the <*file mode*> string defined in the STDOUT section of *ls*, except that the first character, the <*entry type*>, is not used; the string represents the file mode of the file in the archive at the time it was added to or replaced in the archive.

The following represent the last-modification time of a file when it was most recently added to or replaced in the archive:

<*abbreviated month*>
Equivalent to the format of the `%b` conversion specification format in *date*.

<*day-of-month*>
Equivalent to the format of the `%e` conversion specification format in *date*.

5212 <*hour*> Equivalent to the format of the %H conversion specification format in *date*.

5213 <*minute*> Equivalent to the format of the %M conversion specification format in *date*.

5214 <*year*> Equivalent to the format of the %Y conversion specification format in *date*.

5215 When *LC_TIME* does not specify the POSIX locale, a different format and order of presentation
5216 of these fields relative to each other may be used in a format appropriate in the specified locale.

5217 If the **–x** option is used with the **–v** option, the standard output format shall be:

5218 `"x – %s\n", <file>`

5219 where *file* is the operand specified on the command line, if *file* operands were specified, or the
5220 name of the file in the archive if they were not.

5221 **STDERR**

5222 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages. The diagnostic message about
5223 creating a new archive when **–c** is not specified shall not modify the exit status.

5224 **OUTPUT FILES**

5225 Archives are files with unspecified formats.

5226 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

5227 None.

5228 **EXIT STATUS**

5229 The following exit values shall be returned:

5230 0 Successful completion.

5231 >0 An error occurred.

5232 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

5233 Default.

5234 **APPLICATION USAGE**

5235 None.

5236 **EXAMPLES**

5237 None.

5238 **RATIONALE**

5239 The archive format is not described. It is recognized that there are several known *ar* formats,
5240 which are not compatible. The *ar* utility is included, however, to allow creation of archives that
5241 are intended for use only on one machine. The archive is specified as a file, and it can be moved
5242 as a file. This does allow an archive to be moved from one machine to another machine that uses
5243 the same implementation of *ar*.

5244 Utilities such as *pax* (and its forebears *tar* and *cpio*) also provide portable "archives". This is a not
5245 a duplication; the *ar* utility is included to provide an interface primarily for *make* and the
5246 compilers, based on a historical model.

5247 In historical implementations, the **–q** option (available on XSI-conforming systems) is known to
5248 execute quickly because *ar* does not check on whether the added members are already in the
5249 archive. This is useful to bypass the searching otherwise done when creating a large archive
5250 piece-by-piece. These remarks may but need not remain true for a brand new implementation of
5251 this utility; hence, these remarks have been moved into the RATIONALE.

5252 BSD implementations historically required applications to provide the **–s** option whenever the
5253 archive was supposed to contain a symbol table. As in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
5254 System V historically creates or updates an archive symbol table whenever an object file is
5255 removed from, added to, or updated in the archive.

The OPERANDS section requires what might seem to be true without specifying it: the archive cannot truncate the filenames below {NAME_MAX}. Some historical implementations do so, however, causing unexpected results for the application. Therefore, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x makes the requirement explicit to avoid misunderstandings.

According to the System V documentation, the options –**dmpqrtx** are not required to begin with a hyphen (`'–'`). This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that a conforming application use the leading hyphen.

The archive format used by the 4.4 BSD implementation is documented in this RATIONALE as an example:

> A file created by *ar* begins with the "magic" string `"!<arch>\n"`. The rest of the archive is made up of objects, each of which is composed of a header for a file, a possible filename, and the file contents. The header is portable between machine architectures, and, if the file contents are printable, the archive is itself printable.
>
> The header is made up of six ASCII fields, followed by a two-character trailer. The fields are the object name (16 characters), the file last modification time (12 characters), the user and group IDs (each 6 characters), the file mode (8 characters), and the file size (10 characters). All numeric fields are in decimal, except for the file mode, which is in octal.
>
> The modification time is the file *st_mtime* field. The user and group IDs are the file *st_uid* and *st_gid* fields. The file mode is the file *st_mode* field. The file size is the file *st_size* field. The two-byte trailer is the string `"'<newline>"`.
>
> Only the name field has any provision for overflow. If any filename is more than 16 characters in length or contains an embedded space, the string `"#1/"` followed by the ASCII length of the name is written in the name field. The file size (stored in the archive header) is incremented by the length of the name. The name is then written immediately following the archive header.
>
> Any unused characters in any of these fields are written as <space>s. If any fields are their particular maximum number of characters in length, there is no separation between the fields.
>
> Objects in the archive are always an even number of bytes long; files that are an odd number of bytes long are padded with a <newline>, although the size in the header does not reflect this.

The *ar* utility description requires that (when all its members are valid object files) *ar* produce an object code library, which the linkage editor can use to extract object modules. If the linkage editor needs a symbol table to permit random access to the archive, *ar* must provide it; however, *ar* does not require a symbol table.

The BSD –**o** option was omitted. It is a rare conforming application that uses *ar* to extract object code from a library with concern for its modification time, since this can only be of importance to *make*. Hence, since this functionality is not deemed important for applications portability, the modification time of the extracted files is set to the current time.

There is at least one known implementation (for a small computer) that can accommodate only object files for that system, disallowing mixed object and other files. The ability to handle any type of file is not only historical practice for most implementations, but is also a reasonable expectation.

Consideration was given to changing the output format of *ar* –**tv** to the same format as the output of *ls* –**l**. This would have made parsing the output of *ar* the same as that of *ls*. This was rejected in part because the current *ar* format is commonly used and changes would break historical usage. Second, *ar* gives the user ID and group ID in numeric format separated by a slash. Changing this to be the user name and group name would not be correct if the archive

were moved to a machine that contained a different user database. Since *ar* cannot know whether the archive was generated on the same machine, it cannot tell what to report.

The text on the **–ur** option combination is historical practice—since one filename can easily represent two different files (for example, **/a/foo** and **/b/foo**), it is reasonable to replace the file in the archive even when the modification time in the archive is identical to that in the file system.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

c99, *date*, *fort77*, *pax*, *strip* the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers, **<unistd.h>** description of {POSIX_NO_TRUNC}

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the Software Development Utilities option.

The STDOUT description is changed for the **–v** option to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The *TZ* entry is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #198 is applied, changing the description to consistently use "file" to refer to a file in the file system hierarchy, "archive" to refer to the archive being operated upon by the *ar* utility, and "file in the archive" to refer to a copy of a file that is contained in the archive.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/10 is applied, making corrections to the SYNOPSIS. The change was needed since the **–a**, **–b**, and **–i** options are mutually-exclusive, and *posname* is required if any of these options is specified.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/11 is applied, correcting the description of the two-byte trailer in RATIONALE which had missed out a backquote. The correct trailer is a backquote followed by a <newline>.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-6 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

asa — interpret carriage-control characters

SYNOPSIS

FR
```
asa [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *asa* utility shall write its input files to standard output, mapping carriage-control characters from the text files to line-printer control sequences in an implementation-defined manner.

The first character of every line shall be removed from the input, and the following actions are performed.

If the character removed is:

<space> The rest of the line is output without change.

0 A <newline> is output, then the rest of the input line.

1 One or more implementation-defined characters that causes an advance to the next page shall be output, followed by the rest of the input line.

+ The <newline> of the previous line shall be replaced with one or more implementation-defined characters that causes printing to return to column position 1, followed by the rest of the input line. If the '+' is the first character in the input, it shall be equivalent to <space>.

The action of the *asa* utility is unspecified upon encountering any character other than those listed above as the first character in a line.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

file A pathname of a text file used for input. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input shall be used.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified; see the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *asa*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall be the text from the input file modified as described in the DESCRIPTION section.

STDERR

None.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were output successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

1. The following command:

   ```
   asa file
   ```

   permits the viewing of *file* (created by a program using FORTRAN-style carriage-control characters) on a terminal.

2. The following command:

   ```
   a.out | asa | lp
   ```

   formats the FORTRAN output of **a.out** and directs it to the printer.

RATIONALE

The *asa* utility is needed to map "standard" FORTRAN 77 output into a form acceptable to contemporary printers. Usually, *asa* is used to pipe data to the *lp* utility; see *lp*.

This utility is generally used only by FORTRAN programs. The standard developers decided to retain *asa* to avoid breaking the historical large base of FORTRAN applications that put carriage-control characters in their output files. There is no requirement that a system have a FORTRAN compiler in order to run applications that need *asa*.

Historical implementations have used an ASCII <form-feed> in response to a 1 and an ASCII <carriage-return> in response to a `'+'`. It is suggested that implementations treat characters other than 0, 1, and `'+'` as <space> in the absence of any compelling reason to do otherwise. However, the action is listed here as "unspecified", permitting an implementation to provide extensions to access fast multiple-line slewing and channel seeking in a non-portable manner.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

fort77, *lp*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the FORTRAN Runtime Utilities option.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

at — execute commands at a later time

SYNOPSIS

```
at [–m] [–f file] [–q queuename] –t time_arg
at [–m] [–f file] [–q queuename] timespec...
at –r at_job_id...
at –l –q queuename
at –l [at_job_id...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *at* utility shall read commands from standard input and group them together as an *at-job*, to be executed at a later time.

The at-job shall be executed in a separate invocation of the shell, running in a separate process group with no controlling terminal, except that the environment variables, current working directory, file creation mask, and other implementation-defined execution-time attributes in effect when the *at* utility is executed shall be retained and used when the at-job is executed.

When the at-job is submitted, the *at_job_id* and scheduled time shall be written to standard error. The *at_job_id* is an identifier that shall be a string consisting solely of alphanumeric characters and the period character. The *at_job_id* shall be assigned by the system when the job is scheduled such that it uniquely identifies a particular job.

User notification and the processing of the job's standard output and standard error are described under the **–m** option.

XSI Users shall be permitted to use *at* if their name appears in the file **at.allow** which is located in an implementation-defined directory. If that file does not exist, the file **at.deny**, which is located in an implementation-defined directory, shall be checked to determine whether the user shall be denied access to *at*. If neither file exists, only a process with the appropriate privileges shall be allowed to submit a job. If only **at.deny** exists and is empty, global usage shall be permitted. The **at.allow** and **at.deny** files shall consist of one user name per line.

OPTIONS

The *at* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–f *file* Specify the pathname of a file to be used as the source of the at-job, instead of standard input.

–l (The letter ell.) Report all jobs scheduled for the invoking user if no *at_job_id* operands are specified. If *at_job_id*s are specified, report only information for these jobs. The output shall be written to standard output.

–m Send mail to the invoking user after the at-job has run, announcing its completion. Standard output and standard error produced by the at-job shall be mailed to the user as well, unless redirected elsewhere. Mail shall be sent even if the job produces no output.

If **–m** is not used, the job's standard output and standard error shall be provided to the user by means of mail, unless they are redirected elsewhere; if there is no such output to provide, the implementation need not notify the user of the job's completion.

–q *queuename*
Specify in which queue to schedule a job for submission. When used with the **–l** option, limit the search to that particular queue. By default, at-jobs shall be scheduled in queue *a*. In contrast, queue *b* shall be reserved for batch jobs; see *batch*. The meanings of all other *queuename*s are implementation-defined. If **–q** is specified along with either of the **–t** *time_arg* or *timespec* arguments, the results are unspecified.

–r
Remove the jobs with the specified *at_job_id* operands that were previously scheduled by the *at* utility.

–t *time_arg*
Submit the job to be run at the time specified by the *time* option-argument, which the application shall ensure has the format as specified by the *touch* **–t** *time* utility.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

at_job_id
The name reported by a previous invocation of the *at* utility at the time the job was scheduled.

timespec
Submit the job to be run at the date and time specified. All of the *timespec* operands are interpreted as if they were separated by <space>s and concatenated, and shall be parsed as described in the grammar at the end of this section. The date and time shall be interpreted as being in the timezone of the user (as determined by the *TZ* variable), unless a timezone name appears as part of *time*, below.

In the POSIX locale, the following describes the three parts of the time specification string. All of the values from the *LC_TIME* categories in the POSIX locale shall be recognized in a case-insensitive manner.

time
The time can be specified as one, two, or four digits. One-digit and two-digit numbers shall be taken to be hours; four-digit numbers to be hours and minutes. The time can alternatively be specified as two numbers separated by a colon, meaning *hour*:*minute*. An AM/PM indication (one of the values from the **am_pm** keywords in the *LC_TIME* locale category) can follow the time; otherwise, a 24-hour clock time shall be understood. A timezone name can also follow to further qualify the time. The acceptable timezone names are implementation-defined, except that they shall be case-insensitive and the string **utc** is supported to indicate the time is in Coordinated Universal Time. In the POSIX locale, the *time* field can also be one of the following tokens:

midnight Indicates the time 12:00 am (00:00).

noon Indicates the time 12:00 pm.

now Indicates the current day and time. Invoking *at* <**now**> shall submit an at-job for potentially immediate execution (that is, subject only to unspecified scheduling delays).

date
An optional *date* can be specified as either a month name (one of the values from the **mon** or **abmon** keywords in the *LC_TIME* locale category) followed by a day number (and possibly year number preceded by a comma), or a day of the week (one of the values from the **day** or **abday** keywords in the *LC_TIME* locale category). In the POSIX locale, two special days shall be recognized:

today Indicates the current day.

tomorrow Indicates the day following the current day.

If no *date* is given, **today** shall be assumed if the given time is greater than the current time, and **tomorrow** shall be assumed if it is less. If the given month is less than the current month (and no year is given), next year shall be assumed.

increment The optional *increment* shall be a number preceded by a plus sign ('+') and suffixed by one of the following: **minutes**, **hours**, **days**, **weeks**, **months**, or **years**. (The singular forms shall also be accepted.) The keyword **next** shall be equivalent to an increment number of +1. For example, the following are equivalent commands:

```
at 2pm + 1 week
at 2pm next week
```

The following grammar describes the precise format of *timespec* in the POSIX locale. The general conventions for this style of grammar are described in Section 1.10 (on page 18). This formal syntax shall take precedence over the preceding text syntax description. The longest possible token or delimiter shall be recognized at a given point. When used in a *timespec*, white space shall also delimit tokens.

```
%token hr24clock_hr_min
%token hr24clock_hour
/*
  An hr24clock_hr_min is a one, two, or four-digit number. A one-digit
  or two-digit number constitutes an hr24clock_hour. An hr24clock_hour
  may be any of the single digits [0,9], or may be double digits, ranging
  from [00,23]. If an hr24clock_hr_min is a four-digit number, the
  first two digits shall be a valid hr24clock_hour, while the last two
  represent the number of minutes, from [00,59].
*/

%token wallclock_hr_min
%token wallclock_hour
/*
  A wallclock_hr_min is a one, two-digit, or four-digit number.
  A one-digit or two-digit number constitutes a wallclock_hour.
  A wallclock_hour may be any of the single digits [1,9], or may
  be double digits, ranging from [01,12]. If a wallclock_hr_min
  is a four-digit number, the first two digits shall be a valid
  wallclock_hour, while the last two represent the number of
  minutes, from [00,59].
*/

%token minute
/*
  A minute is a one or two-digit number whose value can be [0,9]
  or [00,59].
*/

%token day_number
/*
  A day_number is a number in the range appropriate for the particular
  month and year specified by month_name and year_number, respectively.
  If no year_number is given, the current year is assumed if the given
  date and time are later this year. If no year_number is given and
```



```
5574          the date and time have already occurred this year and the month is
5575          not the current month, next year is the assumed year.
5576        */
5577        %token year_number
5578        /*
5579          A year_number is a four-digit number representing the year A.D., in
5580          which the at_job is to be run.
5581        */
5582        %token inc_number
5583        /*
5584          The inc_number is the number of times the succeeding increment
5585          period is to be added to the specified date and time.
5586        */
5587        %token timezone_name
5588        /*
5589          The name of an optional timezone suffix to the time field, in an
5590          implementation-defined format.
5591        */
5592        %token month_name
5593        /*
5594          One of the values from the mon or abmon keywords in the LC_TIME
5595          locale category.
5596        */
5597        %token day_of_week
5598        /*
5599          One of the values from the day or abday keywords in the LC_TIME
5600          locale category.
5601        */
5602        %token am_pm
5603        /*
5604          One of the values from the am_pm keyword in the LC_TIME locale
5605          category.
5606        */
5607        %start timespec
5608        %%
5609        timespec    : time
5610                    | time date
5611                    | time increment
5612                    | time date increment
5613                    | nowspec
5614                    ;
5615        nowspec     : "now"
5616                    | "now" increment
5617                    ;
5618        time        : hr24clock_hr_min
5619                    | hr24clock_hr_min timezone_name
5620                    | hr24clock_hour ":" minute
5621                    | hr24clock_hour ":" minute timezone_name
5622                    | wallclock_hr_min am_pm
5623                    | wallclock_hr_min am_pm timezone_name
```

```
                | wallclock_hour ":" minute am_pm
                | wallclock_hour ":" minute am_pm timezone_name
                | "noon"
                | "midnight"
                ;

date            : month_name day_number
                | month_name day_number "," year_number
                | day_of_week
                | "today"
                | "tomorrow"
                ;

increment       : "+" inc_number inc_period
                | "next" inc_period
                ;

inc_period      : "minute" | "minutes"
                | "hour" | "hours"
                | "day" | "days"
                | "week" | "weeks"
                | "month" | "months"
                | "year" | "years"
                ;
```

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file consisting of commands acceptable to the shell command language described in Chapter 2 (on page 29). The standard input shall only be used if no **–f** *file* option is specified.

INPUT FILES

See the STDIN section.

XSI The text files **at.allow** and **at.deny**, which are located in an implementation-defined directory, shall contain zero or more user names, one per line, of users who are, respectively, authorized or denied access to the *at* and *batch* utilities.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *at*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

LC_TIME Determine the format and contents for date and time strings written and accepted by *at*.

SHELL Determine a name of a command interpreter to be used to invoke the at-job. If the variable is unset or null, *sh* shall be used. If it is set to a value other than a name for *sh*, the implementation shall do one of the following: use that shell; use *sh*; use the login shell from the user database; or any of the preceding accompanied by a warning diagnostic about which was chosen.

TZ Determine the timezone. The job shall be submitted for execution at the time specified by *timespec* or **–t** *time* relative to the timezone specified by the *TZ* variable. If *timespec* specifies a timezone, it shall override *TZ*. If *timespec* does not specify a timezone and *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

When standard input is a terminal, prompts of unspecified format for each line of the user input described in the STDIN section may be written to standard output.

In the POSIX locale, the following shall be written to the standard output for each job when jobs are listed in response to the **–l** option:

```
"%s\t%s\n", at_job_id, <date>
```

where *date* shall be equivalent in format to the output of:

```
date +"%a %b %e %T %Y"
```

The date and time written shall be adjusted so that they appear in the timezone of the user (as determined by the *TZ* variable).

STDERR

In the POSIX locale, the following shall be written to standard error when a job has been successfully submitted:

```
"job %s at %s\n", at_job_id, <date>
```

where *date* has the same format as that described in the STDOUT section. Neither this, nor warning messages concerning the selection of the command interpreter, shall be considered a diagnostic that changes the exit status.

Diagnostic messages, if any, shall be written to standard error.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The *at* utility successfully submitted, removed, or listed a job or jobs.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

The job shall not be scheduled, removed, or listed.

APPLICATION USAGE

The format of the *at* command line shown here is guaranteed only for the POSIX locale. Other cultures may be supported with substantially different interfaces, although implementations are encouraged to provide comparable levels of functionality.

Since the commands run in a separate shell invocation, running in a separate process group with no controlling terminal, open file descriptors, traps, and priority inherited from the invoking environment are lost.

Some implementations do not allow substitution of different shells using *SHELL*. System V systems, for example, have used the login shell value for the user in **/etc/passwd**. To select reliably another command interpreter, the user must include it as part of the script, such as:

```
$ at 1800
myshell myscript
EOT
job ... at ...
$
```

EXAMPLES

1. This sequence can be used at a terminal:

   ```
   at –m 0730 tomorrow
   sort < file >outfile
   EOT
   ```

2. This sequence, which demonstrates redirecting standard error to a pipe, is useful in a command procedure (the sequence of output redirection specifications is significant):

   ```
   at now + 1 hour <<!
   diff file1 file2 2>&1 >outfile | mailx mygroup
   !
   ```

3. To have a job reschedule itself, *at* can be invoked from within the at-job. For example, this daily processing script named **my.daily** runs every day (although *crontab* is a more appropriate vehicle for such work):

   ```
   # my.daily runs every day
   daily processing
   at now tomorrow < my.daily
   ```

4. The spacing of the three portions of the POSIX locale *timespec* is quite flexible as long as there are no ambiguities. Examples of various times and operand presentation include:

   ```
   at 0815am Jan 24
   at 8 :15amjan24
   at now "+ 1day"
   at 5 pm FRIday
   at ’17
       utc+
       30minutes’
   ```

RATIONALE

The *at* utility reads from standard input the commands to be executed at a later time. It may be useful to redirect standard output and standard error within the specified commands.

The **–t** *time* option was added as a new capability to support an internationalized way of specifying a time for execution of the submitted job.

Early proposals added a “jobname” concept as a way of giving submitted jobs names that are meaningful to the user submitting them. The historical, system-specified *at_job_id* gives no

indication of what the job is. Upon further reflection, it was decided that the benefit of this was not worth the change in historical interface. The *at* functionality is useful in simple environments, but in large or complex situations, the functionality provided by the Batch Services option is more suitable.

The **−q** option historically has been an undocumented option, used mainly by the *batch* utility.

The System V **−m** option was added to provide a method for informing users that an at-job had completed. Otherwise, users are only informed when output to standard error or standard output are not redirected.

The behavior of *at* <**now**> was changed in an early proposal from being unspecified to submitting a job for potentially immediate execution. Historical BSD *at* implementations support this. Historical System V implementations give an error in that case, but a change to the System V versions should have no backwards-compatibility ramifications.

On BSD-based systems, a **−u** *user* option has allowed those with appropriate privileges to access the work of other users. Since this is primarily a system administration feature and is not universally implemented, it has been omitted. Similarly, a specification for the output format for a user with appropriate privileges viewing the queues of other users has been omitted.

The **−f** *file* option from System V is used instead of the BSD method of using the last operand as the pathname. The BSD method is ambiguous—does:

```
at 1200 friday
```

mean the same thing if there is a file named **friday** in the current directory?

The *at_job_id* is composed of a limited character set in historical practice, and it is mandated here to invalidate systems that might try using characters that require shell quoting or that could not be easily parsed by shell scripts.

The *at* utility varies between System V and BSD systems in the way timezones are used. On System V systems, the *TZ* variable affects the at-job submission times and the times displayed for the user. On BSD systems, *TZ* is not taken into account. The BSD behavior is easily achieved with the current specification. If the user wishes to have the timezone default to that of the system, they merely need to issue the *at* command immediately following an unsetting or null assignment to *TZ*. For example:

```
TZ= at noon ...
```

gives the desired BSD result.

While the *yacc*-like grammar specified in the OPERANDS section is lexically unambiguous with respect to the digit strings, a lexical analyzer would probably be written to look for and return digit strings in those cases. The parser could then check whether the digit string returned is a valid *day_number*, *year_number*, and so on, based on the context.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

batch, *crontab*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- If **−m** is not used, the job's standard output and standard error are provided to the user by mail.

The effects of using the **−q** and **−t** options as defined in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard are specified.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

The *at* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-95 is applied, removing the references to fixed locations for the files referenced by the *at* utility.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

awk — pattern scanning and processing language

SYNOPSIS

```
awk [–F ERE] [–v assignment]... program [argument...]
awk [–F ERE] –f progfile [–f progfile]... [–v assignment]...
    [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *awk* utility shall execute programs written in the *awk* programming language, which is specialized for textual data manipulation. An *awk* program is a sequence of patterns and corresponding actions. When input is read that matches a pattern, the action associated with that pattern is carried out.

Input shall be interpreted as a sequence of records. By default, a record is a line, less its terminating <newline>, but this can be changed by using the **RS** built-in variable. Each record of input shall be matched in turn against each pattern in the program. For each pattern matched, the associated action shall be executed.

The *awk* utility shall interpret each input record as a sequence of fields where, by default, a field is a string of non-<blank>s. This default white-space field delimiter can be changed by using the **FS** built-in variable or **–F** *ERE*. The *awk* utility shall denote the first field in a record $1, the second $2, and so on. The symbol $0 shall refer to the entire record; setting any other field causes the re-evaluation of $0. Assigning to $0 shall reset the values of all other fields and the **NF** built-in variable.

OPTIONS

The *awk* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–F *ERE* Define the input field separator to be the extended regular expression *ERE*, before any input is read; see Regular Expressions (on page 161).

–f *progfile* Specify the pathname of the file *progfile* containing an *awk* program. If multiple instances of this option are specified, the concatenation of the files specified as *progfile* in the order specified shall be the *awk* program. The *awk* program can alternatively be specified in the command line as a single argument.

–v *assignment*
The application shall ensure that the *assignment* argument is in the same form as an *assignment* operand. The specified variable assignment shall occur prior to executing the *awk* program, including the actions associated with **BEGIN** patterns (if any). Multiple occurrences of this option can be specified.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

program If no **–f** option is specified, the first operand to *awk* shall be the text of the *awk* program. The application shall supply the *program* operand as a single argument to *awk*. If the text does not end in a <newline>, *awk* shall interpret the text as if it did.

argument Either of the following two types of *argument* can be intermixed:

file A pathname of a file that contains the input to be read, which is matched against the set of patterns in the program. If no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`, the standard input shall be

used.

assignment An operand that begins with an underscore or alphabetic character from the portable character set (see the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set), followed by a sequence of underscores, digits, and alphabetics from the portable character set, followed by the `'='` character, shall specify a variable assignment rather than a pathname. The characters before the `'='` represent the name of an *awk* variable; if that name is an *awk* reserved word (see Grammar (on page 169)) the behavior is undefined. The characters following the equal sign shall be interpreted as if they appeared in the *awk* program preceded and followed by a double-quote (`'"'`) character, as a **STRING** token (see Grammar (on page 169)), except that if the last character is an unescaped backslash, it shall be interpreted as a literal backslash rather than as the first character of the sequence `"\""`. The variable shall be assigned the value of that **STRING** token and, if appropriate, shall be considered a *numeric string* (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)), the variable shall also be assigned its numeric value. Each such variable assignment shall occur just prior to the processing of the following *file*, if any. Thus, an assignment before the first *file* argument shall be executed after the **BEGIN** actions (if any), while an assignment after the last *file* argument shall occur before the **END** actions (if any). If there are no *file* arguments, assignments shall be executed before processing the standard input.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'-'`; see the INPUT FILES section. If the *awk* program contains no actions and no patterns, but is otherwise a valid *awk* program, standard input and any *file* operands shall not be read and *awk* shall exit with a return status of zero.

INPUT FILES

Input files to the *awk* program from any of the following sources shall be text files:

- Any *file* operands or their equivalents, achieved by modifying the *awk* variables **ARGV** and **ARGC**
- Standard input in the absence of any *file* operands
- Arguments to the **getline** function

Whether the variable **RS** is set to a value other than a <newline> or not, for these files, implementations shall support records terminated with the specified separator up to {LINE_MAX} bytes and may support longer records.

If **–f** *progfile* is specified, the application shall ensure that the files named by each of the *progfile* option-arguments are text files and their concatenation, in the same order as they appear in the arguments, is an *awk* program.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *awk*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions and in comparisons of string values.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files), the behavior of character classes within regular expressions, the identification of characters as letters, and the mapping of uppercase and lowercase characters for the **toupper** and **tolower** functions.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LC_NUMERIC
Determine the radix character used when interpreting numeric input, performing conversions between numeric and string values, and formatting numeric output. Regardless of locale, the period character (the decimal-point character of the POSIX locale) is the decimal-point character recognized in processing *awk* programs (including assignments in command line arguments).

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PATH Determine the search path when looking for commands executed by *system*(*expr*), or input and output pipes; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

In addition, all environment variables shall be visible via the *awk* variable **ENVIRON**.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The nature of the output files depends on the *awk* program.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The nature of the output files depends on the *awk* program.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

Overall Program Structure

An *awk* program is composed of pairs of the form:

```
pattern { action }
```

Either the pattern or the action (including the enclosing brace characters) can be omitted.

A missing pattern shall match any record of input, and a missing action shall be equivalent to:

```
{ print }
```

Execution of the *awk* program shall start by first executing the actions associated with all **BEGIN** patterns in the order they occur in the program. Then each *file* operand (or standard input if no files were specified) shall be processed in turn by reading data from the file until a record separator is seen (<newline> by default). Before the first reference to a field in the record is

evaluated, the record shall be split into fields, according to the rules in Regular Expressions (on page 161), using the value of **FS** that was current at the time the record was read. Each pattern in the program then shall be evaluated in the order of occurrence, and the action associated with each pattern that matches the current record executed. The action for a matching pattern shall be executed before evaluating subsequent patterns. Finally, the actions associated with all **END** patterns shall be executed in the order they occur in the program.

Expressions in awk

Expressions describe computations used in *patterns* and *actions*. In the following table, valid expression operations are given in groups from highest precedence first to lowest precedence last, with equal-precedence operators grouped between horizontal lines. In expression evaluation, where the grammar is formally ambiguous, higher precedence operators shall be evaluated before lower precedence operators. In this table *expr*, *expr1*, *expr2*, and *expr3* represent any expression, while lvalue represents any entity that can be assigned to (that is, on the left side of an assignment operator). The precise syntax of expressions is given in Grammar (on page 169).

Table 4-1 Expressions in Decreasing Precedence in *awk*

Syntax	Name	Type of Result	Associativity
`( expr )`	Grouping	Type of *expr*	N/A
`$expr`	Field reference	String	N/A
`lvalue ++`	Post-increment	Numeric	N/A
`lvalue --`	Post-decrement	Numeric	N/A
`++ lvalue`	Pre-increment	Numeric	N/A
`-- lvalue`	Pre-decrement	Numeric	N/A
`expr ^ expr`	Exponentiation	Numeric	Right
`! expr`	Logical not	Numeric	N/A
`+ expr`	Unary plus	Numeric	N/A
`- expr`	Unary minus	Numeric	N/A
`expr * expr`	Multiplication	Numeric	Left
`expr / expr`	Division	Numeric	Left
`expr % expr`	Modulus	Numeric	Left
`expr + expr`	Addition	Numeric	Left
`expr - expr`	Subtraction	Numeric	Left
`expr expr`	String concatenation	String	Left
`expr < expr`	Less than	Numeric	None
`expr <= expr`	Less than or equal to	Numeric	None
`expr != expr`	Not equal to	Numeric	None
`expr == expr`	Equal to	Numeric	None
`expr > expr`	Greater than	Numeric	None
`expr >= expr`	Greater than or equal to	Numeric	None
`expr ~ expr`	ERE match	Numeric	None
`expr !~ expr`	ERE non-match	Numeric	None
`expr in array`	Array membership	Numeric	Left
`( index ) in array`	Multi-dimension array membership	Numeric	Left
`expr && expr`	Logical AND	Numeric	Left
`expr || expr`	Logical OR	Numeric	Left

Syntax	Name	Type of Result	Associativity
expr1 ? *expr2* : *expr3*	Conditional expression	Type of selected *expr2* or *expr3*	Right
lvalue ^= *expr*	Exponentiation assignment	Numeric	Right
lvalue %= *expr*	Modulus assignment	Numeric	Right
lvalue *= *expr*	Multiplication assignment	Numeric	Right
lvalue /= *expr*	Division assignment	Numeric	Right
lvalue += *expr*	Addition assignment	Numeric	Right
lvalue –= *expr*	Subtraction assignment	Numeric	Right
lvalue = *expr*	Assignment	Type of *expr*	Right

Each expression shall have either a string value, a numeric value, or both. Except as stated for specific contexts, the value of an expression shall be implicitly converted to the type needed for the context in which it is used. A string value shall be converted to a numeric value by the equivalent of the following calls to functions defined by the ISO C standard:

```
setlocale(LC_NUMERIC, "");
numeric_value = atof(string_value);
```

A numeric value that is exactly equal to the value of an integer (see Section 1.7.2 (on page 7)) shall be converted to a string by the equivalent of a call to the **sprintf** function (see String Functions (on page 166)) with the string `"%d"` as the *fmt* argument and the numeric value being converted as the first and only *expr* argument. Any other numeric value shall be converted to a string by the equivalent of a call to the **sprintf** function with the value of the variable **CONVFMT** as the *fmt* argument and the numeric value being converted as the first and only *expr* argument. The result of the conversion is unspecified if the value of **CONVFMT** is not a floating-point format specification. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies no explicit conversions between numbers and strings. An application can force an expression to be treated as a number by adding zero to it, or can force it to be treated as a string by concatenating the null string (`""`) to it.

A string value shall be considered a *numeric string* if it comes from one of the following:

1. Field variables
2. Input from the *getline*( ) function
3. **FILENAME**
4. **ARGV** array elements
5. **ENVIRON** array elements
6. Array elements created by the *split*( ) function
7. A command line variable assignment
8. Variable assignment from another numeric string variable

and after all the following conversions have been applied, the resulting string would lexically be recognized as a **NUMBER** token as described by the lexical conventions in Grammar (on page 169):

- All leading and trailing <blank>s are discarded.
- If the first non-<blank> is `'+'` or `'–'`, it is discarded.
- Changing each occurrence of the decimal point character from the current locale to a period.

If a `'–'` character is ignored in the preceding description, the numeric value of the *numeric string* shall be the negation of the numeric value of the recognized **NUMBER** token. Otherwise, the

numeric value of the *numeric string* shall be the numeric value of the recognized **NUMBER** token. Whether or not a string is a *numeric string* shall be relevant only in contexts where that term is used in this section.

When an expression is used in a Boolean context, if it has a numeric value, a value of zero shall be treated as false and any other value shall be treated as true. Otherwise, a string value of the null string shall be treated as false and any other value shall be treated as true. A Boolean context shall be one of the following:

- The first subexpression of a conditional expression
- An expression operated on by logical NOT, logical AND, or logical OR
- The second expression of a **for** statement
- The expression of an **if** statement
- The expression of the **while** clause in either a **while** or **do**...**while** statement
- An expression used as a pattern (as in Overall Program Structure)

All arithmetic shall follow the semantics of floating-point arithmetic as specified by the ISO C standard (see Section 1.7.2 (on page 7)).

The value of the expression:

```
expr1 ^ expr2
```

shall be equivalent to the value returned by the ISO C standard function call:

```
pow(expr1, expr2)
```

The expression:

```
lvalue ^= expr
```

shall be equivalent to the ISO C standard expression:

```
lvalue = pow(lvalue, expr)
```

except that lvalue shall be evaluated only once. The value of the expression:

```
expr1 % expr2
```

shall be equivalent to the value returned by the ISO C standard function call:

```
fmod(expr1, expr2)
```

The expression:

```
lvalue %= expr
```

shall be equivalent to the ISO C standard expression:

```
lvalue = fmod(lvalue, expr)
```

except that lvalue shall be evaluated only once.

Variables and fields shall be set by the assignment statement:

```
lvalue = expression
```

and the type of *expression* shall determine the resulting variable type. The assignment includes the arithmetic assignments ("+=", "−=", "*=", "/=", "%=", "^=", "++", "−−") all of which shall produce a numeric result. The left-hand side of an assignment and the target of increment and decrement operators can be one of a variable, an array with index, or a field selector.

The *awk* language supplies arrays that are used for storing numbers or strings. Arrays need not be declared. They shall initially be empty, and their sizes shall change dynamically. The

subscripts, or element identifiers, are strings, providing a type of associative array capability. An array name followed by a subscript within square brackets can be used as an lvalue and thus as an expression, as described in the grammar; see Grammar (on page 169). Unsubscripted array names can be used in only the following contexts:

- A parameter in a function definition or function call
- The **NAME** token following any use of the keyword **in** as specified in the grammar (see Grammar (on page 169)); if the name used in this context is not an array name, the behavior is undefined

A valid array *index* shall consist of one or more comma-separated expressions, similar to the way in which multi-dimensional arrays are indexed in some programming languages. Because *awk* arrays are really one-dimensional, such a comma-separated list shall be converted to a single string by concatenating the string values of the separate expressions, each separated from the other by the value of the **SUBSEP** variable. Thus, the following two index operations shall be equivalent:

```
var[expr1, expr2, ... exprn]
var[expr1 SUBSEP expr2 SUBSEP ... SUBSEP exprn]
```

The application shall ensure that a multi-dimensioned *index* used with the **in** operator is parenthesized. The **in** operator, which tests for the existence of a particular array element, shall not cause that element to exist. Any other reference to a nonexistent array element shall automatically create it.

Comparisons (with the '<', "<=", "!=", "==", '>', and ">=" operators) shall be made numerically if both operands are numeric, if one is numeric and the other has a string value that is a numeric string, or if one is numeric and the other has the uninitialized value. Otherwise, operands shall be converted to strings as required and a string comparison shall be made using the locale-specific collation sequence. The value of the comparison expression shall be 1 if the relation is true, or 0 if the relation is false.

Variables and Special Variables

Variables can be used in an *awk* program by referencing them. With the exception of function parameters (see User-Defined Functions (on page 169)), they are not explicitly declared. Function parameter names shall be local to the function; all other variable names shall be global. The same name shall not be used as both a function parameter name and as the name of a function or a special *awk* variable. The same name shall not be used both as a variable name with global scope and as the name of a function. The same name shall not be used within the same scope both as a scalar variable and as an array. Uninitialized variables, including scalar variables, array elements, and field variables, shall have an uninitialized value. An uninitialized value shall have both a numeric value of zero and a string value of the empty string. Evaluation of variables with an uninitialized value, to either string or numeric, shall be determined by the context in which they are used.

Field variables shall be designated by a '$' followed by a number or numerical expression. The effect of the field number *expression* evaluating to anything other than a non-negative integer is unspecified; uninitialized variables or string values need not be converted to numeric values in this context. New field variables can be created by assigning a value to them. References to nonexistent fields (that is, fields after $**NF**), shall evaluate to the uninitialized value. Such references shall not create new fields. However, assigning to a nonexistent field (for example, $(**NF**+2)=5) shall increase the value of **NF**; create any intervening fields with the uninitialized value; and cause the value of $0 to be recomputed, with the fields being separated by the value of **OFS**. Each field variable shall have a string value or an uninitialized value when created. Field variables shall have the uninitialized value when created from $0 using **FS** and the variable does not contain any characters. If appropriate, the field variable shall be considered a numeric

string (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)).

Implementations shall support the following other special variables that are set by *awk*:

ARGC The number of elements in the **ARGV** array.

ARGV An array of command line arguments, excluding options and the *program* argument, numbered from zero to **ARGC**–1.

The arguments in **ARGV** can be modified or added to; **ARGC** can be altered. As each input file ends, *awk* shall treat the next non-null element of **ARGV**, up to the current value of **ARGC**–1, inclusive, as the name of the next input file. Thus, setting an element of **ARGV** to null means that it shall not be treated as an input file. The name `'-'` indicates the standard input. If an argument matches the format of an *assignment* operand, this argument shall be treated as an *assignment* rather than a *file* argument.

CONVFMT The **printf** format for converting numbers to strings (except for output statements, where **OFMT** is used); `"%.6g"` by default.

ENVIRON An array representing the value of the environment, as described in the *exec* functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The indices of the array shall be strings consisting of the names of the environment variables, and the value of each array element shall be a string consisting of the value of that variable. If appropriate, the environment variable shall be considered a *numeric string* (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)); the array element shall also have its numeric value.

In all cases where the behavior of *awk* is affected by environment variables (including the environment of any commands that *awk* executes via the **system** function or via pipeline redirections with the **print** statement, the **printf** statement, or the **getline** function), the environment used shall be the environment at the time *awk* began executing; it is implementation-defined whether any modification of **ENVIRON** affects this environment.

FILENAME A pathname of the current input file. Inside a **BEGIN** action the value is undefined. Inside an **END** action the value shall be the name of the last input file processed.

FNR The ordinal number of the current record in the current file. Inside a **BEGIN** action the value shall be zero. Inside an **END** action the value shall be the number of the last record processed in the last file processed.

FS Input field separator regular expression; a <space> by default.

NF The number of fields in the current record. Inside a **BEGIN** action, the use of **NF** is undefined unless a **getline** function without a *var* argument is executed previously. Inside an **END** action, **NF** shall retain the value it had for the last record read, unless a subsequent, redirected, **getline** function without a *var* argument is performed prior to entering the **END** action.

NR The ordinal number of the current record from the start of input. Inside a **BEGIN** action the value shall be zero. Inside an **END** action the value shall be the number of the last record processed.

OFMT The **printf** format for converting numbers to strings in output statements (see Output Statements (on page 164)); `"%.6g"` by default. The result of the conversion is unspecified if the value of **OFMT** is not a floating-point format specification.

OFS The **print** statement output field separator; <space> by default.

ORS The **print** statement output record separator; a <newline> by default.

RLENGTH The length of the string matched by the **match** function.

RS The first character of the string value of **RS** shall be the input record separator; a <newline> by default. If **RS** contains more than one character, the results are unspecified. If **RS** is null, then records are separated by sequences consisting of a <newline> plus one or more blank lines, leading or trailing blank lines shall not result in empty records at the beginning or end of the input, and a <newline> shall always be a field separator, no matter what the value of **FS** is.

RSTART The starting position of the string matched by the **match** function, numbering from 1. This shall always be equivalent to the return value of the **match** function.

SUBSEP The subscript separator string for multi-dimensional arrays; the default value is implementation-defined.

Regular Expressions

The *awk* utility shall make use of the extended regular expression notation (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.4, Extended Regular Expressions) except that it shall allow the use of C-language conventions for escaping special characters within the EREs, as specified in the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`) and the following table; these escape sequences shall be recognized both inside and outside bracket expressions. Note that records need not be separated by <newline>s and string constants can contain <newline>s, so even the `"\n"` sequence is valid in *awk* EREs. Using a slash character within an ERE requires the escaping shown in the following table.

6199 **Table 4-2** Escape Sequences in *awk*

Escape Sequence	Description	Meaning
`\"`	Backslash quotation-mark	Quotation-mark character
`\/`	Backslash slash	Slash character
`\ddd`	A backslash character followed by the longest sequence of one, two, or three octal-digit characters (01234567). If all of the digits are 0 (that is, representation of the NUL character), the behavior is undefined.	The character whose encoding is represented by the one, two, or three-digit octal integer. Multi-byte characters require multiple, concatenated escape sequences of this type, including the leading `'\'` for each byte.
`\c`	A backslash character followed by any character not described in this table or in the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`).	Undefined

A regular expression can be matched against a specific field or string by using one of the two regular expression matching operators, `'~'` and `"!~"`. These operators shall interpret their right-hand operand as a regular expression and their left-hand operand as a string. If the regular expression matches the string, the `'~'` expression shall evaluate to a value of 1, and the `"!~"` expression shall evaluate to a value of 0. (The regular expression matching operation is as defined by the term matched in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.1, Regular Expression Definitions, where a match occurs on any part of the string unless the regular expression is limited with the circumflex or dollar sign special characters.) If the regular expression does not match the string, the `'~'` expression shall evaluate to a value of 0, and the `"!~"` expression shall evaluate to a value of 1. If the right-hand operand is any expression other than the lexical token **ERE**, the string value of the expression shall be interpreted as an extended regular expression, including the escape conventions described above. Note that these same escape conventions shall also be applied in determining the value of a string literal (the lexical token **STRING**), and thus shall be applied a second time when a string literal is used in this context.

When an **ERE** token appears as an expression in any context other than as the right-hand of the `'~'` or `"!~"` operator or as one of the built-in function arguments described below, the value of the resulting expression shall be the equivalent of:

```
$0 ~ /ere/
```

The *ere* argument to the **gsub**, **match**, **sub** functions, and the *fs* argument to the **split** function (see String Functions (on page 166)) shall be interpreted as extended regular expressions. These can be either **ERE** tokens or arbitrary expressions, and shall be interpreted in the same manner as the right-hand side of the `'~'` or `"!~"` operator.

An extended regular expression can be used to separate fields by using the –**F** *ERE* option or by assigning a string containing the expression to the built-in variable **FS**. The default value of the **FS** variable shall be a single <space>. The following describes **FS** behavior:

1. If **FS** is a null string, the behavior is unspecified.

2. If **FS** is a single character:
   a. If **FS** is <space>, skip leading and trailing <blank>s; fields shall be delimited by sets of one or more <blank>s.
   b. Otherwise, if **FS** is any other character *c*, fields shall be delimited by each single occurrence of *c*.
3. Otherwise, the string value of **FS** shall be considered to be an extended regular expression. Each occurrence of a sequence matching the extended regular expression shall delimit fields.

Except for the '~' and "!~" operators, and in the **gsub**, **match**, **split**, and **sub** built-in functions, ERE matching shall be based on input records; that is, record separator characters (the first character of the value of the variable **RS**, <newline> by default) cannot be embedded in the expression, and no expression shall match the record separator character. If the record separator is not <newline>, <newline>s embedded in the expression can be matched. For the '~' and "!~" operators, and in those four built-in functions, ERE matching shall be based on text strings; that is, any character (including <newline> and the record separator) can be embedded in the pattern, and an appropriate pattern shall match any character. However, in all *awk* ERE matching, the use of one or more NUL characters in the pattern, input record, or text string produces undefined results.

Patterns

A *pattern* is any valid *expression*, a range specified by two expressions separated by a comma, or one of the two special patterns **BEGIN** or **END**.

Special Patterns

The *awk* utility shall recognize two special patterns, **BEGIN** and **END**. Each **BEGIN** pattern shall be matched once and its associated action executed before the first record of input is read (except possibly by use of the **getline** function—see Input/Output and General Functions (on page 168)—in a prior **BEGIN** action) and before command line assignment is done. Each **END** pattern shall be matched once and its associated action executed after the last record of input has been read. These two patterns shall have associated actions.

BEGIN and **END** shall not combine with other patterns. Multiple **BEGIN** and **END** patterns shall be allowed. The actions associated with the **BEGIN** patterns shall be executed in the order specified in the program, as are the **END** actions. An **END** pattern can precede a **BEGIN** pattern in a program.

If an *awk* program consists of only actions with the pattern **BEGIN**, and the **BEGIN** action contains no **getline** function, *awk* shall exit without reading its input when the last statement in the last **BEGIN** action is executed. If an *awk* program consists of only actions with the pattern **END** or only actions with the patterns **BEGIN** and **END**, the input shall be read before the statements in the **END** actions are executed.

Expression Patterns

An expression pattern shall be evaluated as if it were an expression in a Boolean context. If the result is true, the pattern shall be considered to match, and the associated action (if any) shall be executed. If the result is false, the action shall not be executed.

Pattern Ranges

A pattern range consists of two expressions separated by a comma; in this case, the action shall be performed for all records between a match of the first expression and the following match of the second expression, inclusive. At this point, the pattern range can be repeated starting at input records subsequent to the end of the matched range.

Actions

An action is a sequence of statements as shown in the grammar in Grammar (on page 169). Any single statement can be replaced by a statement list enclosed in braces. The application shall ensure that statements in a statement list are separated by <newline>s or semicolons. Statements in a statement list shall be executed sequentially in the order that they appear.

The *expression* acting as the conditional in an **if** statement shall be evaluated and if it is non-zero or non-null, the following statement shall be executed; otherwise, if **else** is present, the statement following the **else** shall be executed.

The **if**, **while**, **do**...**while**, **for**, **break**, and **continue** statements are based on the ISO C standard (see Section 1.7.2 (on page 7)), except that the Boolean expressions shall be treated as described in Expressions in awk (on page 156), and except in the case of:

```
for (variable in array)
```

which shall iterate, assigning each *index* of *array* to *variable* in an unspecified order. The results of adding new elements to *array* within such a **for** loop are undefined. If a **break** or **continue** statement occurs outside of a loop, the behavior is undefined.

The **delete** statement shall remove an individual array element. Thus, the following code deletes an entire array:

```
for (index in array)
    delete array[index]
```

The **next** statement shall cause all further processing of the current input record to be abandoned. The behavior is undefined if a **next** statement appears or is invoked in a **BEGIN** or **END** action.

The **exit** statement shall invoke all **END** actions in the order in which they occur in the program source and then terminate the program without reading further input. An **exit** statement inside an **END** action shall terminate the program without further execution of **END** actions. If an expression is specified in an **exit** statement, its numeric value shall be the exit status of *awk*, unless subsequent errors are encountered or a subsequent **exit** statement with an expression is executed.

Output Statements

Both **print** and **printf** statements shall write to standard output by default. The output shall be written to the location specified by *output_redirection* if one is supplied, as follows:

```
> expression
>> expression
| expression
```

In all cases, the *expression* shall be evaluated to produce a string that is used as a pathname into which to write (for `'>'` or `">>"`) or as a command to be executed (for `'|'`). Using the first two forms, if the file of that name is not currently open, it shall be opened, creating it if necessary and using the first form, truncating the file. The output then shall be appended to the file. As long as the file remains open, subsequent calls in which *expression* evaluates to the same string value shall simply append output to the file. The file remains open until the **close** function (see Input/Output and General Functions (on page 168)) is called with an expression that evaluates

to the same string value.

The third form shall write output onto a stream piped to the input of a command. The stream shall be created if no stream is currently open with the value of *expression* as its command name. The stream created shall be equivalent to one created by a call to the *popen*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x with the value of *expression* as the *command* argument and a value of *w* as the *mode* argument. As long as the stream remains open, subsequent calls in which *expression* evaluates to the same string value shall write output to the existing stream. The stream shall remain open until the **close** function (see Input/Output and General Functions (on page 168)) is called with an expression that evaluates to the same string value. At that time, the stream shall be closed as if by a call to the *pclose*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

As described in detail by the grammar in Grammar (on page 169), these output statements shall take a comma-separated list of *expression*s referred to in the grammar by the non-terminal symbols **expr_list**, **print_expr_list**, or **print_expr_list_opt**. This list is referred to here as the *expression list*, and each member is referred to as an *expression argument*.

The **print** statement shall write the value of each expression argument onto the indicated output stream separated by the current output field separator (see variable **OFS** above), and terminated by the output record separator (see variable **ORS** above). All expression arguments shall be taken as strings, being converted if necessary; this conversion shall be as described in Expressions in awk (on page 156), with the exception that the **printf** format in **OFMT** shall be used instead of the value in **CONVFMT**. An empty expression list shall stand for the whole input record ($0).

The **printf** statement shall produce output based on a notation similar to the File Format Notation used to describe file formats in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation). Output shall be produced as specified with the first *expression* argument as the string *format* and subsequent *expression* arguments as the strings *arg1* to *argn*, inclusive, with the following exceptions:

1. The *format* shall be an actual character string rather than a graphical representation. Therefore, it cannot contain empty character positions. The <space> in the *format* string, in any context other than a *flag* of a conversion specification, shall be treated as an ordinary character that is copied to the output.
2. If the character set contains a '∆' character and that character appears in the *format* string, it shall be treated as an ordinary character that is copied to the output.
3. The *escape sequences* beginning with a backslash character shall be treated as sequences of ordinary characters that are copied to the output. Note that these same sequences shall be interpreted lexically by *awk* when they appear in literal strings, but they shall not be treated specially by the **printf** statement.
4. A *field width* or *precision* can be specified as the '*' character instead of a digit string. In this case the next argument from the expression list shall be fetched and its numeric value taken as the field width or precision.
5. The implementation shall not precede or follow output from the d or u conversion specifier characters with <blank>s not specified by the *format* string.
6. The implementation shall not precede output from the o conversion specifier character with leading zeros not specified by the *format* string.
7. For the c conversion specifier character: if the argument has a numeric value, the character whose encoding is that value shall be output. If the value is zero or is not the encoding of any character in the character set, the behavior is undefined. If the argument does not have a numeric value, the first character of the string value shall be output; if the string does not contain any characters, the behavior is undefined.

8. For each conversion specification that consumes an argument, the next expression argument shall be evaluated. With the exception of the `c` conversion specifier character, the value shall be converted (according to the rules specified in Expressions in awk (on page 156)) to the appropriate type for the conversion specification.
9. If there are insufficient expression arguments to satisfy all the conversion specifications in the *format* string, the behavior is undefined.
10. If any character sequence in the *format* string begins with a `'%'` character, but does not form a valid conversion specification, the behavior is unspecified.

Both **print** and **printf** can output at least {LINE_MAX} bytes.

Functions

The *awk* language has a variety of built-in functions: arithmetic, string, input/output, and general.

Arithmetic Functions

The arithmetic functions, except for **int**, shall be based on the ISO C standard (see Section 1.7.2 (on page 7)). The behavior is undefined in cases where the ISO C standard specifies that an error be returned or that the behavior is undefined. Although the grammar (see Grammar (on page 169)) permits built-in functions to appear with no arguments or parentheses, unless the argument or parentheses are indicated as optional in the following list (by displaying them within the `"[]"` brackets), such use is undefined.

atan2(*y*,*x*) Return arctangent of y/x in radians in the range $[-\pi,\pi]$.

cos(*x*) Return cosine of *x*, where *x* is in radians.

sin(*x*) Return sine of *x*, where *x* is in radians.

exp(*x*) Return the exponential function of *x*.

log(*x*) Return the natural logarithm of *x*.

sqrt(*x*) Return the square root of *x*.

int(*x*) Return the argument truncated to an integer. Truncation shall be toward 0 when $x>0$.

rand( ) Return a random number *n*, such that $0 \le n < 1$.

srand([*expr*]) Set the seed value for *rand* to *expr* or use the time of day if *expr* is omitted. The previous seed value shall be returned.

String Functions

The string functions in the following list shall be supported. Although the grammar (see Grammar (on page 169)) permits built-in functions to appear with no arguments or parentheses, unless the argument or parentheses are indicated as optional in the following list (by displaying them within the `"[]"` brackets), such use is undefined.

gsub(*ere*, *repl*[, *in*])
Behave like **sub** (see below), except that it shall replace all occurrences of the regular expression (like the *ed* utility global substitute) in $0 or in the *in* argument, when specified.

index(*s*, *t*) Return the position, in characters, numbering from 1, in string *s* where string *t* first occurs, or zero if it does not occur at all.

length[([*s*])] Return the length, in characters, of its argument taken as a string, or of the whole record, $0, if there is no argument.

match(*s*, *ere*) Return the position, in characters, numbering from 1, in string *s* where the extended regular expression *ere* occurs, or zero if it does not occur at all. RSTART shall be set to the starting position (which is the same as the returned value), zero if no match is found; RLENGTH shall be set to the length of the matched string, –1 if no match is found.

split(*s*, *a*[, *fs*])
Split the string *s* into array elements *a*[1], *a*[2], ..., *a*[*n*], and return *n*. All elements of the array shall be deleted before the split is performed. The separation shall be done with the ERE *fs* or with the field separator **FS** if *fs* is not given. Each array element shall have a string value when created and, if appropriate, the array element shall be considered a numeric string (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)). The effect of a null string as the value of *fs* is unspecified.

sprintf(*fmt*, *expr*, *expr*, ...)
Format the expressions according to the **printf** format given by *fmt* and return the resulting string.

sub(*ere*, *repl*[, *in*])
Substitute the string *repl* in place of the first instance of the extended regular expression *ERE* in string *in* and return the number of substitutions. An ampersand (`'&'`) appearing in the string *repl* shall be replaced by the string from *in* that matches the ERE. An ampersand preceded with a backslash (`'\'`) shall be interpreted as the literal ampersand character. An occurrence of two consecutive backslashes shall be interpreted as just a single literal backslash character. Any other occurrence of a backslash (for example, preceding any other character) shall be treated as a literal backslash character. Note that if *repl* is a string literal (the lexical token **STRING**; see Grammar (on page 169)), the handling of the ampersand character occurs after any lexical processing, including any lexical backslash escape sequence processing. If *in* is specified and it is not an lvalue (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)), the behavior is undefined. If *in* is omitted, *awk* shall use the current record ($0) in its place.

substr(*s*, *m*[, *n*])
Return the at most *n*-character substring of *s* that begins at position *m*, numbering from 1. If *n* is omitted, or if *n* specifies more characters than are left in the string, the length of the substring shall be limited by the length of the string *s*.

tolower(*s*) Return a string based on the string *s*. Each character in *s* that is an uppercase letter specified to have a **tolower** mapping by the *LC_CTYPE* category of the current locale shall be replaced in the returned string by the lowercase letter specified by the mapping. Other characters in *s* shall be unchanged in the returned string.

toupper(*s*) Return a string based on the string *s*. Each character in *s* that is a lowercase letter specified to have a **toupper** mapping by the *LC_CTYPE* category of the current locale is replaced in the returned string by the uppercase letter specified by the mapping. Other characters in *s* are unchanged in the returned string.

All of the preceding functions that take *ERE* as a parameter expect a pattern or a string valued expression that is a regular expression as defined in Regular Expressions (on page 161).

Input/Output and General Functions

The input/output and general functions are:

close(*expression*)
: Close the file or pipe opened by a **print** or **printf** statement or a call to **getline** with the same string-valued *expression*. The limit on the number of open *expression* arguments is implementation-defined. If the close was successful, the function shall return zero; otherwise, it shall return non-zero.

expression | **getline** [*var*]
: Read a record of input from a stream piped from the output of a command. The stream shall be created if no stream is currently open with the value of *expression* as its command name. The stream created shall be equivalent to one created by a call to the *popen*( ) function with the value of *expression* as the *command* argument and a value of *r* as the *mode* argument. As long as the stream remains open, subsequent calls in which *expression* evaluates to the same string value shall read subsequent records from the stream. The stream shall remain open until the **close** function is called with an expression that evaluates to the same string value. At that time, the stream shall be closed as if by a call to the *pclose*( ) function. If *var* is omitted, $0 and **NF** shall be set; otherwise, *var* shall be set and, if appropriate, it shall be considered a numeric string (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)).

  The **getline** operator can form ambiguous constructs when there are unparenthesized operators (including concatenate) to the left of the `'|'` (to the beginning of the expression containing **getline**). In the context of the `'$'` operator, `'|'` shall behave as if it had a lower precedence than `'$'`. The result of evaluating other operators is unspecified, and conforming applications shall parenthesize properly all such usages.

getline
: Set $0 to the next input record from the current input file. This form of **getline** shall set the **NF**, **NR**, and **FNR** variables.

getline *var*
: Set variable *var* to the next input record from the current input file and, if appropriate, *var* shall be considered a numeric string (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)). This form of **getline** shall set the **FNR** and **NR** variables.

getline [*var*] < *expression*
: Read the next record of input from a named file. The *expression* shall be evaluated to produce a string that is used as a pathname. If the file of that name is not currently open, it shall be opened. As long as the stream remains open, subsequent calls in which *expression* evaluates to the same string value shall read subsequent records from the file. The file shall remain open until the **close** function is called with an expression that evaluates to the same string value. If *var* is omitted, $0 and **NF** shall be set; otherwise, *var* shall be set and, if appropriate, it shall be considered a numeric string (see Expressions in awk (on page 156)).

  The **getline** operator can form ambiguous constructs when there are unparenthesized binary operators (including concatenate) to the right of the `'<'` (up to the end of the expression containing the **getline**). The result of evaluating such a construct is unspecified, and conforming applications shall parenthesize properly all such usages.

system(*expression*)
: Execute the command given by *expression* in a manner equivalent to the *system*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and return the exit status of the command.

All forms of **getline** shall return 1 for successful input, zero for end-of-file, and –1 for an error.

Where strings are used as the name of a file or pipeline, the application shall ensure that the strings are textually identical. The terminology "same string value" implies that "equivalent strings", even those that differ only by <space>s, represent different files.

User-Defined Functions

The *awk* language also provides user-defined functions. Such functions can be defined as:

```
function name([parameter, ...]) { statements }
```

A function can be referred to anywhere in an *awk* program; in particular, its use can precede its definition. The scope of a function is global.

Function parameters, if present, can be either scalars or arrays; the behavior is undefined if an array name is passed as a parameter that the function uses as a scalar, or if a scalar expression is passed as a parameter that the function uses as an array. Function parameters shall be passed by value if scalar and by reference if array name.

The number of parameters in the function definition need not match the number of parameters in the function call. Excess formal parameters can be used as local variables. If fewer arguments are supplied in a function call than are in the function definition, the extra parameters that are used in the function body as scalars shall evaluate to the uninitialized value until they are otherwise initialized, and the extra parameters that are used in the function body as arrays shall be treated as uninitialized arrays where each element evaluates to the uninitialized value until otherwise initialized.

When invoking a function, no white space can be placed between the function name and the opening parenthesis. Function calls can be nested and recursive calls can be made upon functions. Upon return from any nested or recursive function call, the values of all of the calling function's parameters shall be unchanged, except for array parameters passed by reference. The **return** statement can be used to return a value. If a **return** statement appears outside of a function definition, the behavior is undefined.

In the function definition, <newline>s shall be optional before the opening brace and after the closing brace. Function definitions can appear anywhere in the program where a *pattern-action* pair is allowed.

Grammar

The grammar in this section and the lexical conventions in the following section shall together describe the syntax for *awk* programs. The general conventions for this style of grammar are described in Section 1.10 (on page 18). A valid program can be represented as the non-terminal symbol *program* in the grammar. This formal syntax shall take precedence over the preceding text syntax description.

```
%token NAME NUMBER STRING ERE
%token FUNC_NAME   /* Name followed by '(' without white space. */

/* Keywords  */
%token       Begin   End
/*         'BEGIN' 'END'                          */

%token       Break   Continue   Delete   Do   Else
/*         'break' 'continue' 'delete' 'do' 'else'  */

%token       Exit   For   Function   If   In
/*         'exit' 'for' 'function' 'if' 'in'        */

%token       Next   Print   Printf   Return   While
/*         'next' 'print' 'printf' 'return' 'while' */
```



```
6561        /* Reserved function names */
6562        %token BUILTIN_FUNC_NAME
6563                    /* One token for the following:
6564                     * atan2 cos sin exp log sqrt int rand srand
6565                     * gsub index length match split sprintf sub
6566                     * substr tolower toupper close system
6567                     */
6568        %token GETLINE
6569                    /* Syntactically different from other built-ins. */
6570        /* Two-character tokens. */
6571        %token ADD_ASSIGN SUB_ASSIGN MUL_ASSIGN DIV_ASSIGN MOD_ASSIGN POW_ASSIGN
6572        /*     '+='       '-='       '*='       '/='       '%='       '^=' */
6573        %token OR   AND  NO_MATCH   EQ   LE   GE   NE   INCR  DECR  APPEND
6574        /*     '||' '&&' '!~' '==' '<=' '>=' '!=' '++'  '--'  '>>'   */
6575        /* One-character tokens. */
6576        %token '{' '}' '(' ')' '[' ']' ',' ';' NEWLINE
6577        %token '+' '-' '*' '%' '^' '!' '>' '<' '|' '?' ':' '~' '$' '='
6578        %start program
6579        %%
6580        program          : item_list
6581                         | actionless_item_list
6582                         ;
6583        item_list        : newline_opt
6584                         | actionless_item_list item terminator
6585                         | item_list           item terminator
6586                         | item_list         action terminator
6587                         ;
6588        actionless_item_list : item_list           pattern terminator
6589                         | actionless_item_list pattern terminator
6590                         ;
6591        item             : pattern action
6592                         | Function NAME      '(' param_list_opt ')'
6593                             newline_opt action
6594                         | Function FUNC_NAME '(' param_list_opt ')'
6595                             newline_opt action
6596                         ;
6597        param_list_opt   : /* empty */
6598                         | param_list
6599                         ;
6600        param_list       : NAME
6601                         | param_list ',' NAME
6602                         ;
6603        pattern          : Begin
6604                         | End
6605                         | expr
6606                         | expr ',' newline_opt expr
6607                         ;
6608        action           : '{' newline_opt                          '}'
```

```
                        | '{' newline_opt terminated_statement_list   '}'
                        | '{' newline_opt unterminated_statement_list '}'
                        ;

terminator              : terminator ';'
                        | terminator NEWLINE
                        |            ';'
                        |            NEWLINE
                        ;

terminated_statement_list : terminated_statement
                        | terminated_statement_list terminated_statement
                        ;

unterminated_statement_list : unterminated_statement
                        | terminated_statement_list unterminated_statement
                        ;

terminated_statement : action newline_opt
                        | If '(' expr ')' newline_opt terminated_statement
                        | If '(' expr ')' newline_opt terminated_statement
                             Else newline_opt terminated_statement
                        | While '(' expr ')' newline_opt terminated_statement
                        | For '(' simple_statement_opt ';'
                            expr_opt ';' simple_statement_opt ')' newline_opt
                            terminated_statement
                        | For '(' NAME In NAME ')' newline_opt
                            terminated_statement
                        | ';' newline_opt
                        | terminatable_statement NEWLINE newline_opt
                        | terminatable_statement ';'     newline_opt
                        ;

unterminated_statement : terminatable_statement
                        | If '(' expr ')' newline_opt unterminated_statement
                        | If '(' expr ')' newline_opt terminated_statement
                            Else newline_opt unterminated_statement
                        | While '(' expr ')' newline_opt unterminated_statement
                        | For '(' simple_statement_opt ';'
                          expr_opt ';' simple_statement_opt ')' newline_opt
                            unterminated_statement
                        | For '(' NAME In NAME ')' newline_opt
                            unterminated_statement
                        ;

terminatable_statement : simple_statement
                        | Break
                        | Continue
                        | Next
                        | Exit expr_opt
                        | Return expr_opt
                        | Do newline_opt terminated_statement While '(' expr ')'
                        ;

simple_statement_opt : /* empty */
                        | simple_statement
                        ;
```



```
6659        simple_statement : Delete NAME '[' expr_list ']'
6660                         | expr
6661                         | print_statement
6662                         ;
6663        print_statement  : simple_print_statement
6664                         | simple_print_statement output_redirection
6665                         ;
6666        simple_print_statement : Print  print_expr_list_opt
6667                         | Print  '(' multiple_expr_list ')'
6668                         | Printf print_expr_list
6669                         | Printf '(' multiple_expr_list ')'
6670                         ;
6671        output_redirection : '>'    expr
6672                         | APPEND expr
6673                         | '|'    expr
6674                         ;
6675        expr_list_opt    : /* empty */
6676                         | expr_list
6677                         ;
6678        expr_list        : expr
6679                         | multiple_expr_list
6680                         ;
6681        multiple_expr_list : expr ',' newline_opt expr
6682                         | multiple_expr_list ',' newline_opt expr
6683                         ;
6684        expr_opt         : /* empty */
6685                         | expr
6686                         ;
6687        expr             : unary_expr
6688                         | non_unary_expr
6689                         ;
6690        unary_expr       : '+' expr
6691                         | '-' expr
6692                         | unary_expr '^'      expr
6693                         | unary_expr '*'      expr
6694                         | unary_expr '/'      expr
6695                         | unary_expr '%'      expr
6696                         | unary_expr '+'      expr
6697                         | unary_expr '-'      expr
6698                         | unary_expr          non_unary_expr
6699                         | unary_expr '<'      expr
6700                         | unary_expr LE       expr
6701                         | unary_expr NE       expr
6702                         | unary_expr EQ       expr
6703                         | unary_expr '>'      expr
6704                         | unary_expr GE       expr
6705                         | unary_expr '~'      expr
6706                         | unary_expr NO_MATCH expr
6707                         | unary_expr In NAME
6708                         | unary_expr AND newline_opt expr
```

```
                        | unary_expr OR  newline_opt expr
                        | unary_expr '?' expr ':' expr
                        | unary_input_function
                        ;

non_unary_expr      : '(' expr ')'
                        | '!' expr
                        | non_unary_expr '^'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr '*'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr '/'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr '%'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr '+'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr '-'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr          non_unary_expr
                        | non_unary_expr '<'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr LE       expr
                        | non_unary_expr NE       expr
                        | non_unary_expr EQ       expr
                        | non_unary_expr '>'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr GE       expr
                        | non_unary_expr '~'      expr
                        | non_unary_expr NO_MATCH expr
                        | non_unary_expr In NAME
                        | '(' multiple_expr_list ')' In NAME
                        | non_unary_expr AND newline_opt expr
                        | non_unary_expr OR  newline_opt expr
                        | non_unary_expr '?' expr ':' expr
                        | NUMBER
                        | STRING
                        | lvalue
                        | ERE
                        | lvalue INCR
                        | lvalue DECR
                        | INCR lvalue
                        | DECR lvalue
                        | lvalue POW_ASSIGN expr
                        | lvalue MOD_ASSIGN expr
                        | lvalue MUL_ASSIGN expr
                        | lvalue DIV_ASSIGN expr
                        | lvalue ADD_ASSIGN expr
                        | lvalue SUB_ASSIGN expr
                        | lvalue '=' expr
                        | FUNC_NAME '(' expr_list_opt ')'
                             /* no white space allowed before '(' */
                        | BUILTIN_FUNC_NAME '(' expr_list_opt ')'
                        | BUILTIN_FUNC_NAME
                        | non_unary_input_function
                        ;

print_expr_list_opt : /* empty */
                        | print_expr_list
                        ;

print_expr_list  : print_expr
                        | print_expr_list ',' newline_opt print_expr
                        ;
```



```
6762        print_expr       : unary_print_expr
6763                         | non_unary_print_expr
6764                         ;
6765        unary_print_expr : '+' print_expr
6766                         | '-' print_expr
6767                         | unary_print_expr '^'      print_expr
6768                         | unary_print_expr '*'      print_expr
6769                         | unary_print_expr '/'      print_expr
6770                         | unary_print_expr '%'      print_expr
6771                         | unary_print_expr '+'      print_expr
6772                         | unary_print_expr '-'      print_expr
6773                         | unary_print_expr          non_unary_print_expr
6774                         | unary_print_expr '~'      print_expr
6775                         | unary_print_expr NO_MATCH print_expr
6776                         | unary_print_expr In NAME
6777                         | unary_print_expr AND newline_opt print_expr
6778                         | unary_print_expr OR  newline_opt print_expr
6779                         | unary_print_expr '?' print_expr ':' print_expr
6780                         ;
6781        non_unary_print_expr : '(' expr ')'
6782                         | '!' print_expr
6783                         | non_unary_print_expr '^'      print_expr
6784                         | non_unary_print_expr '*'      print_expr
6785                         | non_unary_print_expr '/'      print_expr
6786                         | non_unary_print_expr '%'      print_expr
6787                         | non_unary_print_expr '+'      print_expr
6788                         | non_unary_print_expr '-'      print_expr
6789                         | non_unary_print_expr          non_unary_print_expr
6790                         | non_unary_print_expr '~'      print_expr
6791                         | non_unary_print_expr NO_MATCH print_expr
6792                         | non_unary_print_expr In NAME
6793                         | '(' multiple_expr_list ')' In NAME
6794                         | non_unary_print_expr AND newline_opt print_expr
6795                         | non_unary_print_expr OR  newline_opt print_expr
6796                         | non_unary_print_expr '?' print_expr ':' print_expr
6797                         | NUMBER
6798                         | STRING
6799                         | lvalue
6800                         | ERE
6801                         | lvalue INCR
6802                         | lvalue DECR
6803                         | INCR lvalue
6804                         | DECR lvalue
6805                         | lvalue POW_ASSIGN print_expr
6806                         | lvalue MOD_ASSIGN print_expr
6807                         | lvalue MUL_ASSIGN print_expr
6808                         | lvalue DIV_ASSIGN print_expr
6809                         | lvalue ADD_ASSIGN print_expr
6810                         | lvalue SUB_ASSIGN print_expr
6811                         | lvalue '=' print_expr
6812                         | FUNC_NAME '(' expr_list_opt ')'
6813                             /* no white space allowed before '(' */
6814                         | BUILTIN_FUNC_NAME '(' expr_list_opt ')'
```

```
                    | BUILTIN_FUNC_NAME
                    ;

lvalue              : NAME
                    | NAME '[' expr_list ']'
                    | '$' expr
                    ;

non_unary_input_function : simple_get
                    | simple_get '<' expr
                    | non_unary_expr '|' simple_get
                    ;

unary_input_function : unary_expr '|' simple_get
                    ;

simple_get          : GETLINE
                    | GETLINE lvalue
                    ;

newline_opt         : /* empty */
                    | newline_opt NEWLINE
                    ;
```

This grammar has several ambiguities that shall be resolved as follows:

- Operator precedence and associativity shall be as described in Table 4-1 (on page 156).
- In case of ambiguity, an **else** shall be associated with the most immediately preceding **if** that would satisfy the grammar.
- In some contexts, a slash (`'/'`) that is used to surround an ERE could also be the division operator. This shall be resolved in such a way that wherever the division operator could appear, a slash is assumed to be the division operator. (There is no unary division operator.)

Each expression in an *awk* program shall conform to the precedence and associativity rules, even when this is not needed to resolve an ambiguity. For example, because `'$'` has higher precedence than `'++'`, the string `"$x++--"` is not a valid *awk* expression, even though it is unambiguously parsed by the grammar as `"$(x++)--"`.

One convention that might not be obvious from the formal grammar is where <newline>s are acceptable. There are several obvious placements such as terminating a statement, and a backslash can be used to escape <newline>s between any lexical tokens. In addition, <newline>s without backslashes can follow a comma, an open brace, logical AND operator (`"&&"`), logical OR operator (`"||"`), the **do** keyword, the **else** keyword, and the closing parenthesis of an **if**, **for**, or **while** statement. For example:

```
{ print  $1,
         $2 }
```

Lexical Conventions

The lexical conventions for *awk* programs, with respect to the preceding grammar, shall be as follows:

1. Except as noted, *awk* shall recognize the longest possible token or delimiter beginning at a given point.

2. A comment shall consist of any characters beginning with the number sign character and terminated by, but excluding the next occurrence of, a <newline>. Comments shall have no effect, except to delimit lexical tokens.

3. The <newline> shall be recognized as the token **NEWLINE**.

4. A backslash character immediately followed by a <newline> shall have no effect.

5. The token **STRING** shall represent a string constant. A string constant shall begin with the character `'"'`. Within a string constant, a backslash character shall be considered to begin an escape sequence as specified in the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`). In addition, the escape sequences in Table 4-2 shall be recognized. A <newline> shall not occur within a string constant. A string constant shall be terminated by the first unescaped occurrence of the character `'"'` after the one that begins the string constant. The value of the string shall be the sequence of all unescaped characters and values of escape sequences between, but not including, the two delimiting `'"'` characters.

6. The token **ERE** represents an extended regular expression constant. An ERE constant shall begin with the slash character. Within an ERE constant, a backslash character shall be considered to begin an escape sequence as specified in the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation. In addition, the escape sequences in Table 4-2 shall be recognized. The application shall ensure that a <newline> does not occur within an ERE constant. An ERE constant shall be terminated by the first unescaped occurrence of the slash character after the one that begins the ERE constant. The extended regular expression represented by the ERE constant shall be the sequence of all unescaped characters and values of escape sequences between, but not including, the two delimiting slash characters.

7. A <blank> shall have no effect, except to delimit lexical tokens or within **STRING** or **ERE** tokens.

8. The token **NUMBER** shall represent a numeric constant. Its form and numeric value shall be equivalent to either of the tokens **floating-constant** or **integer-constant** as specified by the ISO C standard, with the following exceptions:

   a. An integer constant cannot begin with 0x or include the hexadecimal digits `'a'`, `'b'`, `'c'`, `'d'`, `'e'`, `'f'`, `'A'`, `'B'`, `'C'`, `'D'`, `'E'`, or `'F'`.

   b. The value of an integer constant beginning with 0 shall be taken in decimal rather than octal.

   c. An integer constant cannot include a suffix (`'u'`, `'U'`, `'l'`, or `'L'`).

   d. A floating constant cannot include a suffix (`'f'`, `'F'`, `'l'`, or `'L'`).

   If the value is too large or too small to be representable (see Section 1.7.2 (on page 7)), the behavior is undefined.

9. A sequence of underscores, digits, and alphabetics from the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set), beginning with an underscore or alphabetic, shall be considered a word.

10. The following words are keywords that shall be recognized as individual tokens; the name of the token is the same as the keyword:

BEGIN	**delete**	**END**	**function**	**in**	**printf**
break	**do**	**exit**	**getline**	**next**	**return**
continue	**else**	**for**	**if**	**print**	**while**

11. The following words are names of built-in functions and shall be recognized as the token **BUILTIN_FUNC_NAME**:

atan2	**gsub**	**log**	**split**	**sub**	**toupper**
close	**index**	**match**	**sprintf**	**substr**	
cos	**int**	**rand**	**sqrt**	**system**	
exp	**length**	**sin**	**srand**	**tolower**	

The above-listed keywords and names of built-in functions are considered reserved words.

12. The token **NAME** shall consist of a word that is not a keyword or a name of a built-in function and is not followed immediately (without any delimiters) by the `'('` character.

13. The token **FUNC_NAME** shall consist of a word that is not a keyword or a name of a built-in function, followed immediately (without any delimiters) by the `'('` character. The `'('` character shall not be included as part of the token.

14. The following two-character sequences shall be recognized as the named tokens:

Token Name	Sequence	Token Name	Sequence
ADD_ASSIGN	+=	**NO_MATCH**	!~
SUB_ASSIGN	-=	**EQ**	==
MUL_ASSIGN	*=	**LE**	<=
DIV_ASSIGN	/=	**GE**	>=
MOD_ASSIGN	%=	**NE**	!=
POW_ASSIGN	^=	**INCR**	++
OR	||	**DECR**	--
AND	&&	**APPEND**	>>

15. The following single characters shall be recognized as tokens whose names are the character:

```
<newline> { } ( ) [ ] , ; + - * % ^ ! > < | ? : ~ $ =
```

There is a lexical ambiguity between the token **ERE** and the tokens `'/'` and **DIV_ASSIGN**. When an input sequence begins with a slash character in any syntactic context where the token `'/'` or **DIV_ASSIGN** could appear as the next token in a valid program, the longer of those two tokens that can be recognized shall be recognized. In any other syntactic context where the token **ERE** could appear as the next token in a valid program, the token **ERE** shall be recognized.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were processed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

The exit status can be altered within the program by using an **exit** expression.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If any *file* operand is specified and the named file cannot be accessed, *awk* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and terminate without any further action.

If the program specified by either the *program* operand or a *progfile* operand is not a valid *awk* program (as specified in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section), the behavior is undefined.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **index**, **length**, **match**, and **substr** functions should not be confused with similar functions in the ISO C standard; the *awk* versions deal with characters, while the ISO C standard deals with bytes.

Because the concatenation operation is represented by adjacent expressions rather than an explicit operator, it is often necessary to use parentheses to enforce the proper evaluation precedence.

EXAMPLES

The *awk* program specified in the command line is most easily specified within single-quotes (for example, *'program'*) for applications using *sh*, because *awk* programs commonly contain characters that are special to the shell, including double-quotes. In the cases where an *awk* program contains single-quote characters, it is usually easiest to specify most of the program as strings within single-quotes concatenated by the shell with quoted single-quote characters. For example:

```
awk '/'\''/ { print "quote:", $0 }'
```

prints all lines from the standard input containing a single-quote character, prefixed with *quote*:.

The following are examples of simple *awk* programs:

1. Write to the standard output all input lines for which field 3 is greater than 5:

   ```
   $3 > 5
   ```

2. Write every tenth line:

   ```
   (NR % 10) == 0
   ```

3. Write any line with a substring matching the regular expression:

   ```
   /(G|D)(2[0–9][[:alpha:]]*)/
   ```

4. Print any line with a substring containing a `'G'` or `'D'`, followed by a sequence of digits and characters. This example uses character classes **digit** and **alpha** to match language-independent digit and alphabetic characters respectively:

   ```
   /(G|D)([[:digit:][:alpha:]]*)/
   ```

5. Write any line in which the second field matches the regular expression and the fourth field does not:

   ```
   $2 ~ /xyz/ && $4 !~ /xyz/
   ```

6. Write any line in which the second field contains a backslash:

   ```
   $2 ~ /\\/
   ```

7. Write any line in which the second field contains a backslash. Note that backslash escapes are interpreted twice; once in lexical processing of the string and once in processing the regular expression:

   ```
   $2 ~ "\\\\"
   ```

8. Write the second to the last and the last field in each line. Separate the fields by a colon:

   ```
   {OFS=":";print $(NF–1), $NF}
   ```

9. Write the line number and number of fields in each line. The three strings representing the line number, the colon, and the number of fields are concatenated and that string is written to standard output:

   ```
   {print NR ":" NF}
   ```


10. Write lines longer than 72 characters:

```
length($0) > 72
```

11. Write the first two fields in opposite order separated by **OFS**:

```
{ print $2, $1 }
```

12. Same, with input fields separated by a comma or <space>s and <tab>s, or both:

```
BEGIN { FS = ",[ \t]*|[ \t]+" }
      { print $2, $1 }
```

13. Add up the first column, print sum, and average:

```
      {s += $1 }
END   {print "sum is ", s, " average is", s/NR}
```

14. Write fields in reverse order, one per line (many lines out for each line in):

```
{ for (i = NF; i > 0; --i) print $i }
```

15. Write all lines between occurrences of the strings **start** and **stop**:

```
/start/, /stop/
```

16. Write all lines whose first field is different from the previous one:

```
$1 != prev { print; prev = $1 }
```

17. Simulate *echo*:

```
BEGIN  {
        for (i = 1; i < ARGC; ++i)
        printf("%s%s", ARGV[i], i==ARGC-1?"\n":" ")
}
```

18. Write the path prefixes contained in the *PATH* environment variable, one per line:

```
BEGIN  {
        n = split (ENVIRON["PATH"], path, ":")
        for (i = 1; i <= n; ++i)
        print path[i]
}
```

19. If there is a file named **input** containing page headers of the form:

    Page #

    and a file named **program** that contains:

```
/Page/   { $2 = n++; }
         { print }
```

    then the command line:

```
awk -f program n=5 input
```

    prints the file **input**, filling in page numbers starting at 5.

RATIONALE

This description is based on the new *awk*, "nawk", (see the referenced *The AWK Programming Language*), which introduced a number of new features to the historical *awk*:

1. New keywords: **delete**, **do**, **function**, **return**

2. New built-in functions: **atan2**, **close**, **cos**, **gsub**, **match**, **rand**, **sin**, **srand**, **sub**, **system**
3. New predefined variables: **FNR**, **ARGC**, **ARGV**, **RSTART**, **RLENGTH**, **SUBSEP**
4. New expression operators: **?**, **:**, **,,** **^**
5. The **FS** variable and the third argument to **split**, now treated as extended regular expressions.
6. The operator precedence, changed to more closely match the C language. Two examples of code that operate differently are:

```
while ( n /= 10 > 1) ...
if (!"wk" ~ /bwk/) ...
```

Several features have been added based on newer implementations of *awk*:

- Multiple instances of **–f** *progfile* are permitted.
- The new option **–v** *assignment*.
- The new predefined variable **ENVIRON**.
- New built-in functions **toupper** and **tolower**.
- More formatting capabilities are added to **printf** to match the ISO C standard.

The overall *awk* syntax has always been based on the C language, with a few features from the shell command language and other sources. Because of this, it is not completely compatible with any other language, which has caused confusion for some users. It is not the intent of the standard developers to address such issues. A few relatively minor changes toward making the language more compatible with the ISO C standard were made; most of these changes are based on similar changes in recent implementations, as described above. There remain several C-language conventions that are not in *awk*. One of the notable ones is the comma operator, which is commonly used to specify multiple expressions in the C language **for** statement. Also, there are various places where *awk* is more restrictive than the C language regarding the type of expression that can be used in a given context. These limitations are due to the different features that the *awk* language does provide.

Regular expressions in *awk* have been extended somewhat from historical implementations to make them a pure superset of extended regular expressions, as defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.4, Extended Regular Expressions). The main extensions are internationalization features and interval expressions. Historical implementations of *awk* have long supported backslash escape sequences as an extension to extended regular expressions, and this extension has been retained despite inconsistency with other utilities. The number of escape sequences recognized in both extended regular expressions and strings has varied (generally increasing with time) among implementations. The set specified by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x includes most sequences known to be supported by popular implementations and by the ISO C standard. One sequence that is not supported is hexadecimal value escapes beginning with `'\x'`. This would allow values expressed in more than 9 bits to be used within *awk* as in the ISO C standard. However, because this syntax has a non-deterministic length, it does not permit the subsequent character to be a hexadecimal digit. This limitation can be dealt with in the C language by the use of lexical string concatenation. In the *awk* language, concatenation could also be a solution for strings, but not for extended regular expressions (either lexical ERE tokens or strings used dynamically as regular expressions). Because of this limitation, the feature has not been added to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

When a string variable is used in a context where an extended regular expression normally appears (where the lexical token ERE is used in the grammar) the string does not contain the literal slashes.

Some versions of *awk* allow the form:

```
func name(args, ... ) { statements }
```

This has been deprecated by the authors of the language, who asked that it not be specified.

Historical implementations of *awk* produce an error if a **next** statement is executed in a **BEGIN** action, and cause *awk* to terminate if a **next** statement is executed in an **END** action. This behavior has not been documented, and it was not believed that it was necessary to standardize it.

The specification of conversions between string and numeric values is much more detailed than in the documentation of historical implementations or in the referenced *The AWK Programming Language*. Although most of the behavior is designed to be intuitive, the details are necessary to ensure compatible behavior from different implementations. This is especially important in relational expressions since the types of the operands determine whether a string or numeric comparison is performed. From the perspective of an application writer, it is usually sufficient to expect intuitive behavior and to force conversions (by adding zero or concatenating a null string) when the type of an expression does not obviously match what is needed. The intent has been to specify historical practice in almost all cases. The one exception is that, in historical implementations, variables and constants maintain both string and numeric values after their original value is converted by any use. This means that referencing a variable or constant can have unexpected side effects. For example, with historical implementations the following program:

```
{
    a = "+2"
    b = 2
    if (NR % 2)
        c = a + b
    if (a == b)
        print "numeric comparison"
    else
        print "string comparison"
}
```

would perform a numeric comparison (and output numeric comparison) for each odd-numbered line, but perform a string comparison (and output string comparison) for each even-numbered line. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x ensures that comparisons will be numeric if necessary. With historical implementations, the following program:

```
BEGIN {
    OFMT = "%e"
    print 3.14
    OFMT = "%f"
    print 3.14
}
```

would output `"3.140000e+00"` twice, because in the second **print** statement the constant `"3.14"` would have a string value from the previous conversion. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the output of the second **print** statement be `"3.140000"`. The behavior of historical implementations was seen as too unintuitive and unpredictable.

It was pointed out that with the rules contained in early drafts, the following script would print nothing:

```
BEGIN {
    y[1.5] = 1
    OFMT = "%e"
    print y[1.5]
}
```

Therefore, a new variable, **CONVFMT**, was introduced. The **OFMT** variable is now restricted to affecting output conversions of numbers to strings and **CONVFMT** is used for internal conversions, such as comparisons or array indexing. The default value is the same as that for **OFMT**, so unless a program changes **CONVFMT** (which no historical program would do), it will receive the historical behavior associated with internal string conversions.

The POSIX *awk* lexical and syntactic conventions are specified more formally than in other sources. Again the intent has been to specify historical practice. One convention that may not be obvious from the formal grammar as in other verbal descriptions is where <newline>s are acceptable. There are several obvious placements such as terminating a statement, and a backslash can be used to escape <newline>s between any lexical tokens. In addition, <newline>s without backslashes can follow a comma, an open brace, a logical AND operator ("&&"), a logical OR operator ("||"), the **do** keyword, the **else** keyword, and the closing parenthesis of an **if**, **for**, or **while** statement. For example:

```
{ print $1,
        $2 }
```

The requirement that *awk* add a trailing <newline> to the program argument text is to simplify the grammar, making it match a text file in form. There is no way for an application or test suite to determine whether a literal <newline> is added or whether *awk* simply acts as if it did.

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires several changes from historical implementations in order to support internationalization. Probably the most subtle of these is the use of the decimal-point character, defined by the *LC_NUMERIC* category of the locale, in representations of floating-point numbers. This locale-specific character is used in recognizing numeric input, in converting between strings and numeric values, and in formatting output. However, regardless of locale, the period character (the decimal-point character of the POSIX locale) is the decimal-point character recognized in processing *awk* programs (including assignments in command line arguments). This is essentially the same convention as the one used in the ISO C standard. The difference is that the C language includes the *setlocale*( ) function, which permits an application to modify its locale. Because of this capability, a C application begins executing with its locale set to the C locale, and only executes in the environment-specified locale after an explicit call to *setlocale*( ). However, adding such an elaborate new feature to the *awk* language was seen as inappropriate for IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. It is possible to execute an *awk* program explicitly in any desired locale by setting the environment in the shell.

The undefined behavior resulting from NULs in extended regular expressions allows future extensions for the GNU *gawk* program to process binary data.

The behavior in the case of invalid *awk* programs (including lexical, syntactic, and semantic errors) is undefined because it was considered overly limiting on implementations to specify. In most cases such errors can be expected to produce a diagnostic and a non-zero exit status. However, some implementations may choose to extend the language in ways that make use of certain invalid constructs. Other invalid constructs might be deemed worthy of a warning, but otherwise cause some reasonable behavior. Still other constructs may be very difficult to detect in some implementations. Also, different implementations might detect a given error during an initial parsing of the program (before reading any input files) while others might detect it when executing the program after reading some input. Implementors should be aware that diagnosing errors as early as possible and producing useful diagnostics can ease debugging of applications, and thus make an implementation more usable.

The unspecified behavior from using multi-character **RS** values is to allow possible future extensions based on extended regular expressions used for record separators. Historical implementations take the first character of the string and ignore the others.

Unspecified behavior when *split*(*string*,*array*,<null>) is used is to allow a proposed future extension that would split up a string into an array of individual characters.

In the context of the **getline** function, equally good arguments for different precedences of the `|` and **<** operators can be made. Historical practice has been that:

```
getline < "a" "b"
```

is parsed as:

```
( getline < "a" ) "b"
```

although many would argue that the intent was that the file **ab** should be read. However:

```
getline < "x" + 1
```

parses as:

```
getline < ( "x" + 1 )
```

Similar problems occur with the `|` version of **getline**, particularly in combination with **$**. For example:

```
$"echo hi" | getline
```

(This situation is particularly problematic when used in a **print** statement, where the **|getline** part might be a redirection of the **print**.)

Since in most cases such constructs are not (or at least should not) be used (because they have a natural ambiguity for which there is no conventional parsing), the meaning of these constructs has been made explicitly unspecified. (The effect is that a conforming application that runs into the problem must parenthesize to resolve the ambiguity.) There appeared to be few if any actual uses of such constructs.

Grammars can be written that would cause an error under these circumstances. Where backwards-compatibility is not a large consideration, implementors may wish to use such grammars.

Some historical implementations have allowed some built-in functions to be called without an argument list, the result being a default argument list chosen in some "reasonable" way. Use of **length** as a synonym for **length($0)** is the only one of these forms that is thought to be widely known or widely used; this particular form is documented in various places (for example, most historical *awk* reference pages, although not in the referenced *The AWK Programming Language*) as legitimate practice. With this exception, default argument lists have always been undocumented and vaguely defined, and it is not at all clear how (or if) they should be generalized to user-defined functions. They add no useful functionality and preclude possible future extensions that might need to name functions without calling them. Not standardizing them seems the simplest course. The standard developers considered that **length** merited special treatment, however, since it has been documented in the past and sees possibly substantial use in historical programs. Accordingly, this usage has been made legitimate, but Issue 5 removed the obsolescent marking for XSI-conforming implementations and many otherwise conforming applications depend on this feature.

In **sub** and **gsub**, if *repl* is a string literal (the lexical token **STRING**), then two consecutive backslash characters should be used in the string to ensure a single backslash will precede the ampersand when the resultant string is passed to the function. (For example, to specify one literal ampersand in the replacement string, use **gsub**(**ERE**, `"\\&"`).)

Historically the only special character in the *repl* argument of **sub** and **gsub** string functions was the ampersand (`'&'`) character and preceding it with the backslash character was used to turn off its special meaning.

The description in the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard introduced behavior such that the backslash character was another special character and it was unspecified whether there were any other special characters. This description introduced several portability problems, some of which are

described below, and so it has been replaced with the more historical description. Some of the problems include:

- Historically, to create the replacement string, a script could use **gsub**(**ERE**, `"\\&"`), but with the ISO POSIX-2:1993 standard wording, it was necessary to use **gsub**(**ERE**, `"\\\\&"`). Backslash characters are doubled here because all string literals are subject to lexical analysis, which would reduce each pair of backslash characters to a single backslash before being passed to **gsub**.
- Since it was unspecified what the special characters were, for portable scripts to guarantee that characters are printed literally, each character had to be preceded with a backslash. (For example, a portable script had to use **gsub**(**ERE**, `"\\h\\i"`) to produce a replacement string of `"hi"`.)

The description for comparisons in the ISO POSIX-2:1993 standard did not properly describe historical practice because of the way numeric strings are compared as numbers. The current rules cause the following code:

```
if (0 == "000")
    print "strange, but true"
else
    print "not true"
```

to do a numeric comparison, causing the **if** to succeed. It should be intuitively obvious that this is incorrect behavior, and indeed, no historical implementation of *awk* actually behaves this way.

To fix this problem, the definition of *numeric string* was enhanced to include only those values obtained from specific circumstances (mostly external sources) where it is not possible to determine unambiguously whether the value is intended to be a string or a numeric.

Variables that are assigned to a numeric string shall also be treated as a numeric string. (For example, the notion of a numeric string can be propagated across assignments.) In comparisons, all variables having the uninitialized value are to be treated as a numeric operand evaluating to the numeric value zero.

Uninitialized variables include all types of variables including scalars, array elements, and fields. The definition of an uninitialized value in Variables and Special Variables is necessary to describe the value placed on uninitialized variables and on fields that are valid (for example, **< $NF**) but have no characters in them and to describe how these variables are to be used in comparisons. A valid field, such as **$1**, that has no characters in it can be obtained from an input line of `"\t\t"` when **FS=**`'\t'`. Historically, the comparison (**$1<**10) was done numerically after evaluating **$1** to the value zero.

The phrase "... also shall have the numeric value of the numeric string" was removed from several sections of the ISO POSIX-2:1993 standard because is specifies an unnecessary implementation detail. It is not necessary for IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to specify that these objects be assigned two different values. It is only necessary to specify that these objects may evaluate to two different values depending on context.

The description of numeric string processing is based on the behavior of the *atof*() function in the ISO C standard. While it is not a requirement for an implementation to use this function, many historical implementations of *awk* do. In the ISO C standard, floating-point constants use a period as a decimal point character for the language itself, independent of the current locale, but the *atof*() function and the associated *strtod*() function use the decimal point character of the current locale when converting strings to numeric values. Similarly in *awk*, floating-point constants in an *awk* script use a period independent of the locale, but input strings use the decimal point character of the locale.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 1.10 (on page 18), *grep*, *lex*, *sed*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *atof*( ), *exec*, *popen*( ), *setlocale*( ), *strtod*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The *awk* utility is aligned with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #211 is applied, adding the sentence "An occurrence of two consecutive backslashes shall be interpreted as just a single literal backslash character." into the description of the **sub** string function.

Issue 7

PASC Interpretation 1003.2-1992 #107 (SD5-XCU-ERN-73) is applied, updating the description of the **OFS** variable.

SD5-XCU-ERN-79 is applied, restoring the horizontal lines to Table 4-1 (on page 156), and SD5-XCU-ERN-80 is applied, changing the order of some table entries.

SD5-XCU-ERN-87 is applied, updating the descriptive text of the Grammar.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

basename — return non-directory portion of a pathname

SYNOPSIS

```
basename string [suffix]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *string* operand shall be treated as a pathname, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.266, Pathname. The string *string* shall be converted to the filename corresponding to the last pathname component in *string* and then the suffix string *suffix*, if present, shall be removed. This shall be done by performing actions equivalent to the following steps in order:

1. If *string* is a null string, it is unspecified whether the resulting string is `'.'` or a null string. In either case, skip steps 2 through 6.
2. If *string* is `"//"`, it is implementation-defined whether steps 3 to 6 are skipped or processed.
3. If *string* consists entirely of slash characters, *string* shall be set to a single slash character. In this case, skip steps 4 to 6.
4. If there are any trailing slash characters in *string*, they shall be removed.
5. If there are any slash characters remaining in *string*, the prefix of *string* up to and including the last slash character in *string* shall be removed.
6. If the *suffix* operand is present, is not identical to the characters remaining in *string*, and is identical to a suffix of the characters remaining in *string*, the suffix *suffix* shall be removed from *string*. Otherwise, *string* is not modified by this step. It shall not be considered an error if *suffix* is not found in *string*.

The resulting string shall be written to standard output.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

string A string.

suffix A string.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *basename*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The *basename* utility shall write a line to the standard output in the following format:

```
"%s\n", <resulting string>
```

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
The definition of *pathname* specifies implementation-defined behavior for pathnames starting with two slash characters. Therefore, applications shall not arbitrarily add slashes to the beginning of a pathname unless they can ensure that there are more or less than two or are prepared to deal with the implementation-defined consequences.

EXAMPLES
If the string *string* is a valid pathname:

```
$(basename "string")
```

produces a filename that could be used to open the file named by *string* in the directory returned by:

```
$(dirname "string")
```

If the string *string* is not a valid pathname, the same algorithm is used, but the result need not be a valid filename. The *basename* utility is not expected to make any judgements about the validity of *string* as a pathname; it just follows the specified algorithm to produce a result string.

The following shell script compiles **/usr/src/cmd/cat.c** and moves the output to a file named **cat** in the current directory when invoked with the argument **/usr/src/cmd/cat** or with the argument **/usr/src/cmd/cat.c**:

```
c99 $(dirname "$1")/$(basename "$1" .c).c
mv a.out $(basename "$1" .c)
```

RATIONALE

The behaviors of *basename* and *dirname* have been coordinated so that when *string* is a valid pathname:

```
$(basename "string")
```

would be a valid filename for the file in the directory:

```
$(dirname "string")
```

This would not work for the early proposal versions of these utilities due to the way it specified handling of trailing slashes.

Since the definition of *pathname* specifies implementation-defined behavior for pathnames starting with two slash characters, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies similar implementation-defined behavior for the *basename* and *dirname* utilities.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.5 (on page 33), *dirname*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #164 is applied.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

NAME

batch — schedule commands to be executed in a batch queue

SYNOPSIS

```
batch
```

DESCRIPTION

The *batch* utility shall read commands from standard input and schedule them for execution in a batch queue. It shall be the equivalent of the command:

```
at -q b -m now
```

where queue *b* is a special *at* queue, specifically for batch jobs. Batch jobs shall be submitted to the batch queue with no time constraints and shall be run by the system using algorithms, based on unspecified factors, that may vary with each invocation of *batch*.

XSI Users shall be permitted to use *batch* if their name appears in the file **at.allow** which is located in an implementation-defined directory. If that file does not exist, the file **at.deny**, which is located in an implementation-defined directory, shall be checked to determine whether the user shall be denied access to *batch*. If neither file exists, only a process with the appropriate privileges shall be allowed to submit a job. If only **at.deny** exists and is empty, global usage shall be permitted. The **at.allow** and **at.deny** files shall consist of one user name per line.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file consisting of commands acceptable to the shell command language described in Chapter 2 (on page 29).

INPUT FILES

XSI The text files **at.allow** and **at.deny**, which are located in an implementation-defined directory, shall contain zero or more user names, one per line, of users who are, respectively, authorized or denied access to the *at* and *batch* utilities.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *batch*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

LC_TIME Determine the format and contents for date and time strings written by *batch*.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

SHELL Determine the name of a command interpreter to be used to invoke the at-job. If the variable is unset or null, *sh* shall be used. If it is set to a value other than a name for *sh*, the implementation shall do one of the following: use that shell; use *sh*; use the login shell from the user database; any of the preceding accompanied by a warning diagnostic about which was chosen.

TZ Determine the timezone. The job shall be submitted for execution at the time specified by *timespec* or **–t** *time* relative to the timezone specified by the *TZ* variable. If *timespec* specifies a timezone, it overrides *TZ*. If *timespec* does not specify a timezone and *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

When standard input is a terminal, prompts of unspecified format for each line of the user input described in the STDIN section may be written to standard output.

STDERR

The following shall be written to standard error when a job has been successfully submitted:

```
"job %s at %s\n", at_job_id, <date>
```

where *date* shall be equivalent in format to the output of:

```
date +"%a %b %e %T %Y"
```

The date and time written shall be adjusted so that they appear in the timezone of the user (as determined by the *TZ* variable).

Neither this, nor warning messages concerning the selection of the command interpreter, are considered a diagnostic that changes the exit status.

Diagnostic messages, if any, shall be written to standard error.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

The job shall not be scheduled.

APPLICATION USAGE

It may be useful to redirect standard output within the specified commands.

EXAMPLES

1. This sequence can be used at a terminal:

```
batch
sort < file >outfile
EOT
```

2. This sequence, which demonstrates redirecting standard error to a pipe, is useful in a command procedure (the sequence of output redirection specifications is significant):

```
batch <<
! diff file1 file2 2>&1 >outfile | mailx mygroup
!
```

RATIONALE

Early proposals described *batch* in a manner totally separated from *at*, even though the historical model treated it almost as a synonym for *at* **−qb**. A number of features were added to list and control batch work separately from those in *at*. Upon further reflection, it was decided that the benefit of this did not merit the change to the historical interface.

The **−m** option was included on the equivalent *at* command because it is historical practice to mail results to the submitter, even if all job-produced output is redirected. As explained in the RATIONALE for *at*, the **now** keyword submits the job for immediate execution (after scheduling delays), despite some historical systems where *at* **now** would have been considered an error.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

at

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The NAME is changed to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

The *batch* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-95 is applied, removing the references to fixed locations for the files referenced by the *batch* utility.

NAME

bc — arbitrary-precision arithmetic language

SYNOPSIS

```
bc [-l] [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *bc* utility shall implement an arbitrary precision calculator. It shall take input from any files given, then read from the standard input. If the standard input and standard output to *bc* are attached to a terminal, the invocation of *bc* shall be considered to be *interactive*, causing behavioral constraints described in the following sections.

OPTIONS

The *bc* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–l (The letter ell.) Define the math functions and initialize *scale* to 20, instead of the default zero; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a text file containing *bc* program statements. After all *file*s have been read, *bc* shall read the standard input.

STDIN

See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

Input files shall be text files containing a sequence of comments, statements, and function definitions that shall be executed as they are read.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *bc*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The output of the *bc* utility shall be controlled by the program read, and consist of zero or more lines containing the value of all executed expressions without assignments. The radix and precision of the output shall be controlled by the values of the **obase** and **scale** variables; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

Grammar

The grammar in this section and the lexical conventions in the following section shall together describe the syntax for *bc* programs. The general conventions for this style of grammar are described in Section 1.10 (on page 18). A valid program can be represented as the non-terminal symbol **program** in the grammar. This formal syntax shall take precedence over the text syntax description.

```
%token    EOF NEWLINE STRING LETTER NUMBER

%token    MUL_OP
/*        '*', '/', '%'                          */

%token    ASSIGN_OP
/*        '=', '+=', '-=', '*=', '/=', '%=', '^=' */

%token    REL_OP
/*        '==', '<=', '>=', '!=', '<', '>'        */

%token    INCR_DECR
/*        '++', '--'                             */

%token    Define    Break    Quit    Length
/*        'define', 'break', 'quit', 'length'    */

%token    Return    For    If    While    Sqrt
/*        'return', 'for', 'if', 'while', 'sqrt'  */

%token    Scale    Ibase    Obase    Auto
/*        'scale', 'ibase', 'obase', 'auto'      */

%start    program

%%

program             : EOF
                    | input_item program
                    ;

input_item          : semicolon_list NEWLINE
                    | function
                    ;

semicolon_list      : /* empty */
                    | statement
                    | semicolon_list ';' statement
                    | semicolon_list ';'
                    ;
```



```
statement_list        : /* empty */
                      | statement
                      | statement_list NEWLINE
                      | statement_list NEWLINE statement
                      | statement_list ';'
                      | statement_list ';' statement
                      ;

statement             : expression
                      | STRING
                      | Break
                      | Quit
                      | Return
                      | Return '(' return_expression ')'
                      | For '(' expression ';'
                          relational_expression ';'
                          expression ')' statement
                      | If '(' relational_expression ')' statement
                      | While '(' relational_expression ')' statement
                      | '{' statement_list '}'
                      ;

function              : Define LETTER '(' opt_parameter_list ')'
                          '{' NEWLINE opt_auto_define_list
                          statement_list '}'
                      ;

opt_parameter_list    : /* empty */
                      | parameter_list
                      ;

parameter_list        : LETTER
                      | define_list ',' LETTER
                      ;

opt_auto_define_list  : /* empty */
                      | Auto define_list NEWLINE
                      | Auto define_list ';'
                      ;

define_list           : LETTER
                      | LETTER '[' ']'
                      | define_list ',' LETTER
                      | define_list ',' LETTER '[' ']'
                      ;

opt_argument_list     : /* empty */
                      | argument_list
                      ;

argument_list         : expression
                      | LETTER '[' ']' ',' argument_list
                      ;

relational_expression : expression
                      | expression REL_OP expression
                      ;

return_expression     : /* empty */
```

```
                        | expression
                        ;

expression              : named_expression
                        | NUMBER
                        | '(' expression ')'
                        | LETTER '(' opt_argument_list ')'
                        | '-' expression
                        | expression '+' expression
                        | expression '-' expression
                        | expression MUL_OP expression
                        | expression '^' expression
                        | INCR_DECR named_expression
                        | named_expression INCR_DECR
                        | named_expression ASSIGN_OP expression
                        | Length '(' expression ')'
                        | Sqrt '(' expression ')'
                        | Scale '(' expression ')'
                        ;

named_expression        : LETTER
                        | LETTER '[' expression ']'
                        | Scale
                        | Ibase
                        | Obase
                        ;
```

Lexical Conventions in bc

The lexical conventions for *bc* programs, with respect to the preceding grammar, shall be as follows:

1. Except as noted, *bc* shall recognize the longest possible token or delimiter beginning at a given point.
2. A comment shall consist of any characters beginning with the two adjacent characters `"/*"` and terminated by the next occurrence of the two adjacent characters `"*/"`. Comments shall have no effect except to delimit lexical tokens.
3. The <newline> shall be recognized as the token **NEWLINE**.
4. The token **STRING** shall represent a string constant; it shall consist of any characters beginning with the double-quote character (`'"'`) and terminated by another occurrence of the double-quote character. The value of the string is the sequence of all characters between, but not including, the two double-quote characters. All characters shall be taken literally from the input, and there is no way to specify a string containing a double-quote character. The length of the value of each string shall be limited to {BC_STRING_MAX} bytes.
5. A <blank> shall have no effect except as an ordinary character if it appears within a **STRING** token, or to delimit a lexical token other than **STRING**.
6. The combination of a backslash character immediately followed by a <newline> shall have no effect other than to delimit lexical tokens with the following exceptions:
   - It shall be interpreted as the character sequence `"\<newline>"` in **STRING** tokens.

- It shall be ignored as part of a multi-line **NUMBER** token.

7. The token **NUMBER** shall represent a numeric constant. It shall be recognized by the following grammar:

```
NUMBER  : integer
        | '.' integer
        | integer '.'
        | integer '.' integer
        ;

integer : digit
        | integer digit
        ;

digit   : 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7
        | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F
        ;
```

8. The value of a **NUMBER** token shall be interpreted as a numeral in the base specified by the value of the internal register **ibase** (described below). Each of the **digit** characters shall have the value from 0 to 15 in the order listed here, and the period character shall represent the radix point. The behavior is undefined if digits greater than or equal to the value of **ibase** appear in the token. However, note the exception for single-digit values being assigned to **ibase** and **obase** themselves, in Operations in bc (on page 197).

9. The following keywords shall be recognized as tokens:

auto	**ibase**	**length**	**return**	**while**
break	**if**	**obase**	**scale**	
define	**for**	**quit**	**sqrt**	

10. Any of the following characters occurring anywhere except within a keyword shall be recognized as the token **LETTER**:

```
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
```

11. The following single-character and two-character sequences shall be recognized as the token **ASSIGN_OP**:

```
=   +=   -=   *=   /=   %=   ^=
```

12. If an '=' character, as the beginning of a token, is followed by a '-' character with no intervening delimiter, the behavior is undefined.

13. The following single-characters shall be recognized as the token **MUL_OP**:

```
*   /   %
```

14. The following single-character and two-character sequences shall be recognized as the token **REL_OP**:

```
==   <=   >=   !=   <   >
```

15. The following two-character sequences shall be recognized as the token **INCR_DECR**:

```
++   --
```

16. The following single characters shall be recognized as tokens whose names are the character:

```
<newline>  (  )  ,  +  -  ;  [  ]  ^  {  }
```

17. The token **EOF** is returned when the end of input is reached.

Operations in bc

There are three kinds of identifiers: ordinary identifiers, array identifiers, and function identifiers. All three types consist of single lowercase letters. Array identifiers shall be followed by square brackets ("[]"). An array subscript is required except in an argument or auto list. Arrays are singly dimensioned and can contain up to {BC_DIM_MAX} elements. Indexing shall begin at zero so an array is indexed from 0 to {BC_DIM_MAX}−1. Subscripts shall be truncated to integers. The application shall ensure that function identifiers are followed by parentheses, possibly enclosing arguments. The three types of identifiers do not conflict.

The following table summarizes the rules for precedence and associativity of all operators. Operators on the same line shall have the same precedence; rows are in order of decreasing precedence.

Table 4-3 Operators in *bc*

Operator	Associativity
`++, --`	N/A
`unary -`	N/A
`^`	Right to left
`*, /, %`	Left to right
`+, binary -`	Left to right
`=, +=, -=, *=, /=, %=, ^=`	Right to left
`==, <=, >=, !=, <, >`	None

Each expression or named expression has a *scale*, which is the number of decimal digits that shall be maintained as the fractional portion of the expression.

Named expressions are places where values are stored. Named expressions shall be valid on the left side of an assignment. The value of a named expression shall be the value stored in the place named. Simple identifiers and array elements are named expressions; they have an initial value of zero and an initial scale of zero.

The internal registers **scale**, **ibase**, and **obase** are all named expressions. The scale of an expression consisting of the name of one of these registers shall be zero; values assigned to any of these registers are truncated to integers. The **scale** register shall contain a global value used in computing the scale of expressions (as described below). The value of the register **scale** is limited to 0 ≤ **scale** ≤ {BC_SCALE_MAX} and shall have a default value of zero. The **ibase** and **obase** registers are the input and output number radix, respectively. The value of **ibase** shall be limited to:

`2 ≤ ibase ≤ 16`

The value of **obase** shall be limited to:

`2 ≤ obase ≤ {BC_BASE_MAX}`

When either **ibase** or **obase** is assigned a single **digit** value from the list in Lexical Conventions in bc (on page 195), the value shall be assumed in hexadecimal. (For example, **ibase**=A sets to base ten, regardless of the current **ibase** value.) Otherwise, the behavior is undefined when digits greater than or equal to the value of **ibase** appear in the input. Both **ibase** and **obase** shall have initial values of 10.

Internal computations shall be conducted as if in decimal, regardless of the input and output bases, to the specified number of decimal digits. When an exact result is not achieved (for example, **scale**=0; 3.2/1), the result shall be truncated.

For all values of **obase** specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *bc* shall output numeric values by performing each of the following steps in order:

1. If the value is less than zero, a hyphen (`'-'`) character shall be output.
2. One of the following is output, depending on the numerical value:
   - If the absolute value of the numerical value is greater than or equal to one, the integer portion of the value shall be output as a series of digits appropriate to **obase** (as described below), most significant digit first. The most significant non-zero digit shall be output next, followed by each successively less significant digit.
   - If the absolute value of the numerical value is less than one but greater than zero and the scale of the numerical value is greater than zero, it is unspecified whether the character 0 is output.
   - If the numerical value is zero, the character 0 shall be output.
3. If the scale of the value is greater than zero and the numeric value is not zero, a period character shall be output, followed by a series of digits appropriate to **obase** (as described below) representing the most significant portion of the fractional part of the value. If *s* represents the scale of the value being output, the number of digits output shall be *s* if **obase** is 10, less than or equal to *s* if **obase** is greater than 10, or greater than or equal to *s* if **obase** is less than 10. For **obase** values other than 10, this should be the number of digits needed to represent a precision of 10^s.

For **obase** values from 2 to 16, valid digits are the first **obase** of the single characters:

```
0  1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  A  B  C  D  E  F
```

which represent the values zero to 15, inclusive, respectively.

For bases greater than 16, each digit shall be written as a separate multi-digit decimal number. Each digit except the most significant fractional digit shall be preceded by a single <space>. For bases from 17 to 100, *bc* shall write two-digit decimal numbers; for bases from 101 to 1 000, three-digit decimal strings, and so on. For example, the decimal number 1 024 in base 25 would be written as:

```
Δ01Δ15Δ24
```

and in base 125, as:

```
Δ008Δ024
```

Very large numbers shall be split across lines with 70 characters per line in the POSIX locale; other locales may split at different character boundaries. Lines that are continued shall end with a backslash (`'\'`).

A function call shall consist of a function name followed by parentheses containing a comma-separated list of expressions, which are the function arguments. A whole array passed as an argument shall be specified by the array name followed by empty square brackets. All function arguments shall be passed by value. As a result, changes made to the formal parameters shall have no effect on the actual arguments. If the function terminates by executing a **return** statement, the value of the function shall be the value of the expression in the parentheses of the **return** statement or shall be zero if no expression is provided or if there is no **return** statement.

The result of **sqrt**(*expression*) shall be the square root of the expression. The result shall be truncated in the least significant decimal place. The scale of the result shall be the scale of the expression or the value of **scale**, whichever is larger.

The result of **length**(*expression*) shall be the total number of significant decimal digits in the expression. The scale of the result shall be zero.

The result of **scale**(*expression*) shall be the scale of the expression. The scale of the result shall be zero.

A numeric constant shall be an expression. The scale shall be the number of digits that follow the radix point in the input representing the constant, or zero if no radix point appears.

The sequence (*expression*) shall be an expression with the same value and scale as *expression*. The parentheses can be used to alter the normal precedence.

The semantics of the unary and binary operators are as follows:

–expression
: The result shall be the negative of the *expression*. The scale of the result shall be the scale of *expression*.

The unary increment and decrement operators shall not modify the scale of the named expression upon which they operate. The scale of the result shall be the scale of that named expression.

++named-expression
: The named expression shall be incremented by one. The result shall be the value of the named expression after incrementing.

––named-expression
: The named expression shall be decremented by one. The result shall be the value of the named expression after decrementing.

named-expression++
: The named expression shall be incremented by one. The result shall be the value of the named expression before incrementing.

named-expression––
: The named expression shall be decremented by one. The result shall be the value of the named expression before decrementing.

The exponentiation operator, circumflex (`'^'`), shall bind right to left.

expression^expression
: The result shall be the first *expression* raised to the power of the second *expression*. If the second expression is not an integer, the behavior is undefined. If *a* is the scale of the left expression and *b* is the absolute value of the right expression, the scale of the result shall be:

```
if b >= 0 min(a * b, max(scale, a)) if b < 0 scale
```

The multiplicative operators (`'*'`, `'/'`, `'%'`) shall bind left to right.

*expression*expression*
: The result shall be the product of the two expressions. If *a* and *b* are the scales of the two expressions, then the scale of the result shall be:

```
min(a+b,max(scale,a,b))
```

expression/expression
: The result shall be the quotient of the two expressions. The scale of the result shall be the value of **scale**.

expression%expression
: For expressions *a* and *b*, *a*%*b* shall be evaluated equivalent to the steps:

1. Compute *a*/*b* to current scale.
2. Use the result to compute:

```
a – (a / b) * b
```


to scale:

```
max(scale + scale(b), scale(a))
```

The scale of the result shall be:

```
max(scale + scale(b), scale(a))
```

When **scale** is zero, the `'%'` operator is the mathematical remainder operator.

The additive operators (`'+'`, `'−'`) shall bind left to right.

expression+expression
The result shall be the sum of the two expressions. The scale of the result shall be the maximum of the scales of the expressions.

expression–expression
The result shall be the difference of the two expressions. The scale of the result shall be the maximum of the scales of the expressions.

The assignment operators (`'='`, `"+="`, `"−="`, `"*="`, `"/="`, `"%="`, `"^="`) shall bind right to left.

named-expression=expression
This expression shall result in assigning the value of the expression on the right to the named expression on the left. The scale of both the named expression and the result shall be the scale of *expression*.

The compound assignment forms:

named-expression <operator>= expression

shall be equivalent to:

named-expression=named-expression <operator> expression

except that the *named-expression* shall be evaluated only once.

Unlike all other operators, the relational operators (`'<'`, `'>'`, `"<="`, `">="`, `"=="`, `"!="`) shall be only valid as the object of an **if**, **while**, or inside a **for** statement.

expression1<expression2
The relation shall be true if the value of *expression1* is strictly less than the value of *expression2*.

expression1>expression2
The relation shall be true if the value of *expression1* is strictly greater than the value of *expression2*.

expression1<=expression2
The relation shall be true if the value of *expression1* is less than or equal to the value of *expression2*.

expression1>=expression2
The relation shall be true if the value of *expression1* is greater than or equal to the value of *expression2*.

expression1= =expression2
The relation shall be true if the values of *expression1* and *expression2* are equal.

expression1!=*expression2*
The relation shall be true if the values of *expression1* and *expression2* are unequal.

There are only two storage classes in *bc*: global and automatic (local). Only identifiers that are local to a function need be declared with the **auto** command. The arguments to a function shall be local to the function. All other identifiers are assumed to be global and available to all

functions. All identifiers, global and local, have initial values of zero. Identifiers declared as auto shall be allocated on entry to the function and released on returning from the function. They therefore do not retain values between function calls. Auto arrays shall be specified by the array name followed by empty square brackets. On entry to a function, the old values of the names that appear as parameters and as automatic variables shall be pushed onto a stack. Until the function returns, reference to these names shall refer only to the new values.

References to any of these names from other functions that are called from this function also refer to the new value until one of those functions uses the same name for a local variable.

When a statement is an expression, unless the main operator is an assignment, execution of the statement shall write the value of the expression followed by a <newline>.

When a statement is a string, execution of the statement shall write the value of the string.

Statements separated by semicolons or <newline>s shall be executed sequentially. In an interactive invocation of *bc*, each time a <newline> is read that satisfies the grammatical production:

```
input_item : semicolon_list NEWLINE
```

the sequential list of statements making up the **semicolon_list** shall be executed immediately and any output produced by that execution shall be written without any delay due to buffering.

In an **if** statement (**if**(*relation*) *statement*), the *statement* shall be executed if the relation is true.

The **while** statement (**while**(*relation*) *statement*) implements a loop in which the *relation* is tested; each time the *relation* is true, the *statement* shall be executed and the *relation* retested. When the *relation* is false, execution shall resume after *statement*.

A **for** statement(**for**(*expression*; *relation*; *expression*) *statement*) shall be the same as:

```
first-expression
while (relation) {
    statement
    last-expression
}
```

The application shall ensure that all three expressions are present.

The **break** statement shall cause termination of a **for** or **while** statement.

The **auto** statement (**auto** *identifier* [,*identifier*] ...) shall cause the values of the identifiers to be pushed down. The identifiers can be ordinary identifiers or array identifiers. Array identifiers shall be specified by following the array name by empty square brackets. The application shall ensure that the **auto** statement is the first statement in a function definition.

A **define** statement:

```
define LETTER ( opt_parameter_list ) {
    opt_auto_define_list
    statement_list
}
```

defines a function named **LETTER**. If a function named **LETTER** was previously defined, the **define** statement shall replace the previous definition. The expression:

```
LETTER ( opt_argument_list )
```

shall invoke the function named **LETTER**. The behavior is undefined if the number of arguments in the invocation does not match the number of parameters in the definition. Functions shall be defined before they are invoked. A function shall be considered to be defined within its own body, so recursive calls are valid. The values of numeric constants within a

function shall be interpreted in the base specified by the value of the **ibase** register when the function is invoked.

The **return** statements (**return** and **return**(*expression*)) shall cause termination of a function, popping of its auto variables, and specification of the result of the function. The first form shall be equivalent to **return**(0). The value and scale of the result returned by the function shall be the value and scale of the expression returned.

The **quit** statement (**quit**) shall stop execution of a *bc* program at the point where the statement occurs in the input, even if it occurs in a function definition, or in an **if**, **for**, or **while** statement.

The following functions shall be defined when the **–l** option is specified:

s(*expression*)
Sine of argument in radians.

c(*expression*)
Cosine of argument in radians.

a(*expression*)
Arctangent of argument.

l(*expression*)
Natural logarithm of argument.

e(*expression*)
Exponential function of argument.

j(*expression*, *expression*)
Bessel function of integer order.

The scale of the result returned by these functions shall be the value of the **scale** register at the time the function is invoked. The value of the **scale** register after these functions have completed their execution shall be the same value it had upon invocation. The behavior is undefined if any of these functions is invoked with an argument outside the domain of the mathematical function.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were processed successfully.

unspecified An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If any *file* operand is specified and the named file cannot be accessed, *bc* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and terminate without any further action.

In an interactive invocation of *bc*, the utility should print an error message and recover following any error in the input. In a non-interactive invocation of *bc*, invalid input causes undefined behavior.

APPLICATION USAGE

Automatic variables in *bc* do not work in exactly the same way as in either C or PL/1.

For historical reasons, the exit status from *bc* cannot be relied upon to indicate that an error has occurred. Returning zero after an error is possible. Therefore, *bc* should be used primarily by interactive users (who can react to error messages) or by application programs that can somehow validate the answers returned as not including error messages.

The *bc* utility always uses the period (`'.'`) character to represent a radix point, regardless of any decimal-point character specified as part of the current locale. In languages like C or *awk*, the period character is used in program source, so it can be portable and unambiguous, while the

locale-specific character is used in input and output. Because there is no distinction between source and input in *bc*, this arrangement would not be possible. Using the locale-specific character in *bc*'s input would introduce ambiguities into the language; consider the following example in a locale with a comma as the decimal-point character:

```
define f(a,b) {
    ...
}
...
f(1,2,3)
```

Because of such ambiguities, the period character is used in input. Having input follow different conventions from output would be confusing in either pipeline usage or interactive usage, so the period is also used in output.

EXAMPLES

In the shell, the following assigns an approximation of the first ten digits of *'π'* to the variable *x*:

```
x=$(printf "%s\n" 'scale = 10; 104348/33215' | bc)
```

The following *bc* program prints the same approximation of *'π'*, with a label, to standard output:

```
scale = 10
"pi equals "
104348 / 33215
```

The following defines a function to compute an approximate value of the exponential function (note that such a function is predefined if the **–l** option is specified):

```
scale = 20
define e(x){
    auto a, b, c, i, s
    a = 1
    b = 1
    s = 1
    for (i = 1; 1 == 1; i++){
        a = a*x
        b = b*i
        c = a/b
        if (c == 0) {
            return(s)
        }
        s = s+c
    }
}
```

The following prints approximate values of the exponential function of the first ten integers:

```
for (i = 1; i <= 10; ++i) {
    e(i)
}
```

RATIONALE

The *bc* utility is implemented historically as a front-end processor for *dc*; *dc* was not selected to be part of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because *bc* was thought to have a more intuitive programmatic interface. Current implementations that implement *bc* using *dc* are expected to be compliant.

The exit status for error conditions has been left unspecified for several reasons:

- The *bc* utility is used in both interactive and non-interactive situations. Different exit codes may be appropriate for the two uses.
- It is unclear when a non-zero exit should be given; divide-by-zero, undefined functions, and syntax errors are all possibilities.
- It is not clear what utility the exit status has.
- In the 4.3 BSD, System V, and Ninth Edition implementations, *bc* works in conjunction with *dc*. The *dc* utility is the parent, *bc* is the child. This was done to cleanly terminate *bc* if *dc* aborted.

The decision to have *bc* exit upon encountering an inaccessible input file is based on the belief that *bc file1 file2* is used most often when at least *file1* contains data/function declarations/initializations. Having *bc* continue with prerequisite files missing is probably not useful. There is no implication in the CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS section that *bc* must check all its files for accessibility before opening any of them.

There was considerable debate on the appropriateness of the language accepted by *bc*. Several reviewers preferred to see either a pure subset of the C language or some changes to make the language more compatible with C. While the *bc* language has some obvious similarities to C, it has never claimed to be compatible with any version of C. An interpreter for a subset of C might be a very worthwhile utility, and it could potentially make *bc* obsolete. However, no such utility is known in historical practice, and it was not within the scope of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to define such a language and utility. If and when they are defined, it may be appropriate to include them in a future version of IEEE Std 1003.1. This left the following alternatives:

1. Exclude any calculator language from this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

   The consensus of the standard developers was that a simple programmatic calculator language is very useful for both applications and interactive users. The only arguments for excluding any calculator were that it would become obsolete if and when a C-compatible one emerged, or that the absence would encourage the development of such a C-compatible one. These arguments did not sufficiently address the needs of current application writers.

2. Standardize the historical *dc*, possibly with minor modifications.

   The consensus of the standard developers was that *dc* is a fundamentally less usable language and that that would be far too severe a penalty for avoiding the issue of being similar to but incompatible with C.

3. Standardize the historical *bc*, possibly with minor modifications.

   This was the approach taken. Most of the proponents of changing the language would not have been satisfied until most or all of the incompatibilities with C were resolved. Since most of the changes considered most desirable would break historical applications and require significant modification to historical implementations, almost no modifications were made. The one significant modification that was made was the replacement of the historical *bc* assignment operators `"=+"`, and so on, with the more modern `"+="`, and so on. The older versions are considered to be fundamentally flawed because of the lexical ambiguity in uses like *a*=–1.

   In order to permit implementations to deal with backwards-compatibility as they see fit, the behavior of this one ambiguous construct was made undefined. (At least three implementations have been known to support this change already, so the degree of change involved should not be great.)

The `'%'` operator is the mathematical remainder operator when **scale** is zero. The behavior of this operator for other values of **scale** is from historical implementations of *bc*, and has been

maintained for the sake of historical applications despite its non-intuitive nature.

Historical implementations permit setting **ibase** and **obase** to a broader range of values. This includes values less than 2, which were not seen as sufficiently useful to standardize. These implementations do not interpret input properly for values of **ibase** that are greater than 16. This is because numeric constants are recognized syntactically, rather than lexically, as described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. They are built from lexical tokens of single hexadecimal digits and periods. Since <blank>s between tokens are not visible at the syntactic level, it is not possible to recognize the multi-digit "digits" used in the higher bases properly. The ability to recognize input in these bases was not considered useful enough to require modifying these implementations. Note that the recognition of numeric constants at the syntactic level is not a problem with conformance to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, as it does not impact the behavior of conforming applications (and correct *bc* programs). Historical implementations also accept input with all of the digits `'0'–'9'` and `'A'–'F'` regardless of the value of **ibase**; since digits with value greater than or equal to **ibase** are not really appropriate, the behavior when they appear is undefined, except for the common case of:

```
ibase=8;
    /* Process in octal base. */
...
ibase=A
    /* Restore decimal base. */
```

In some historical implementations, if the expression to be written is an uninitialized array element, a leading <space> and/or up to four leading 0 characters may be output before the character zero. This behavior is considered a bug; it is unlikely that any currently conforming application relies on:

```
echo 'b[3]' | bc
```

returning 00000 rather than 0.

Exact calculation of the number of fractional digits to output for a given value in a base other than 10 can be computationally expensive. Historical implementations use a faster approximation, and this is permitted. Note that the requirements apply only to values of **obase** that this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires implementations to support (in particular, not to 1, 0, or negative bases, if an implementation supports them as an extension).

Historical implementations of *bc* did not allow array parameters to be passed as the last parameter to a function. New implementations are encouraged to remove this restriction even though it is not required by the grammar.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 1.10 (on page 18), *awk*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

Updated to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard, which included resolution of several interpretations of the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

8141 **NAME**

8142 bg — run jobs in the background

8143 **SYNOPSIS**

8144 UP

```
bg [job_id...]
```

8145 **DESCRIPTION**

8146 If job control is enabled (see the description of *set* –**m**), the *bg* utility shall resume suspended jobs
8147 from the current environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)) by running them as background
8148 jobs. If the job specified by *job_id* is already a running background job, the *bg* utility shall have
8149 no effect and shall exit successfully.

8150 Using *bg* to place a job into the background shall cause its process ID to become "known in the
8151 current shell execution environment", as if it had been started as an asynchronous list; see
8152 Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50).

8153 **OPTIONS**

8154 None.

8155 **OPERANDS**

8156 The following operand shall be supported:

8157 *job_id* Specify the job to be resumed as a background job. If no *job_id* operand is given,
8158 the most recently suspended job shall be used. The format of *job_id* is described in
8159 the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.203, Job Control Job
8160 ID.

8161 **STDIN**

8162 Not used.

8163 **INPUT FILES**

8164 None.

8165 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

8166 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *bg*:

8167 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
8168 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
8169 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
8170 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

8171 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
8172 internationalization variables.

8173 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
8174 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
8175 arguments).

8176 *LC_MESSAGES*
8177 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
8178 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

8179 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The output of *bg* shall consist of a line in the format:

```
"[%d] %s\n", <job-number>, <command>
```

where the fields are as follows:

<*job-number*> A number that can be used to identify the job to the *wait*, *fg*, and *kill* utilities. Using these utilities, the job can be identified by prefixing the job number with `'%'`.

<*command*> The associated command that was given to the shell.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If job control is disabled, the *bg* utility shall exit with an error and no job shall be placed in the background.

APPLICATION USAGE

A job is generally suspended by typing the SUSP character (<control>-Z on most systems); see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface. At that point, *bg* can put the job into the background. This is most effective when the job is expecting no terminal input and its output has been redirected to non-terminal files. A background job can be forced to stop when it has terminal output by issuing the command:

```
stty tostop
```

A background job can be stopped with the command:

```
kill –s stop job ID
```

The *bg* utility does not work as expected when it is operating in its own utility execution environment because that environment has no suspended jobs. In the following examples:

```
... | xargs bg
(bg)
```

each *bg* operates in a different environment and does not share its parent shell's understanding of jobs. For this reason, *bg* is generally implemented as a shell regular built-in.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The extensions to the shell specified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x have mostly been based on features provided by the KornShell. The job control features provided by *bg*, *fg*, and *jobs* are also based on the KornShell. The standard developers examined the characteristics of the C shell versions of these utilities and found that differences exist. Despite widespread use of the

C shell, the KornShell versions were selected for this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to maintain a degree of uniformity with the rest of the KornShell features selected (such as the very popular command line editing features).

The *bg* utility is expected to wrap its output if the output exceeds the number of display columns.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50), *fg*, *kill*, *jobs*, *wait*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The JC margin marker on the SYNOPSIS is removed since support for Job Control is mandatory in this issue. This is a FIPS requirement.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

8241 **NAME**

8242 c99 — compile standard C programs

8243 **SYNOPSIS**

8244 CD
```
c99 [–c] [–D name[=value]]... [–E] [–g] [–I directory]... [–L directory]...
    [–o outfile] [–O optlevel] [–s] [–U name]... operand...
```
8245

8246 **DESCRIPTION**

8247 The *c99* utility is an interface to the standard C compilation system; it shall accept source code
8248 conforming to the ISO C standard. The system conceptually consists of a compiler and link
8249 editor. The files referenced by *operand*s shall be compiled and linked to produce an executable
8250 file. (It is unspecified whether the linking occurs entirely within the operation of *c99*; some
8251 implementations may produce objects that are not fully resolved until the file is executed.)

8252 If the **–c** option is specified, for all pathname operands of the form *file***.c**, the files:

8253 `$(basename pathname .c).o`

8254 shall be created as the result of successful compilation. If the **–c** option is not specified, it is
8255 unspecified whether such **.o** files are created or deleted for the *file***.c** operands.

8256 If there are no options that prevent link editing (such as **–c** or **–E**), and all operands compile and
8257 link without error, the resulting executable file shall be written according to the **–o** *outfile* option
8258 (if present) or to the file **a.out**.

8259 The executable file shall be created as specified in Section 1.7.1.4 (on page 4), except that the file
8260 permission bits shall be set to:

8261 S_IRWXO | S_IRWXG | S_IRWXU

8262 and the bits specified by the *umask* of the process shall be cleared.

8263 **OPTIONS**

8264 The *c99* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
8265 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that:

8266 • The **–l** *library* operands have the format of options, but their position within a list of
8267 operands affects the order in which libraries are searched.

8268 • The order of specifying the **–I** and **–L** options is significant.

8269 Options can be interspersed with operands.

8270 • Conforming applications shall specify each option separately; that is, grouping option
8271 letters (for example, **–cO**) need not be recognized by all implementations.

8272 The following options shall be supported:

8273 **–c** Suppress the link-edit phase of the compilation, and do not remove any object files
8274 that are produced.

8275 **–g** Produce symbolic information in the object or executable files; the nature of this
8276 information is unspecified, and may be modified by implementation-defined
8277 interactions with other options.

8278 **–s** Produce object or executable files, or both, from which symbolic and other
8279 information not required for proper execution using the *exec* family defined in the
8280 System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x has been removed (stripped). If
8281 both **–g** and **–s** options are present, the action taken is unspecified.

8282 **–o** *outfile* Use the pathname *outfile*, instead of the default **a.out**, for the executable file
8283 produced. If the **–o** option is present with **–c** or **–E**, the result is unspecified.

8284 **–D** *name*[**=***value*]
8285 Define *name* as if by a C-language **#define** directive. If no **=***value* is given, a value of
8286 1 shall be used. The **–D** option has lower precedence than the **–U** option. That is, if
8287 *name* is used in both a **–U** and a **–D** option, *name* shall be undefined regardless of
8288 the order of the options. Additional implementation-defined *name*s may be
8289 provided by the compiler. Implementations shall support at least 2 048 bytes of **–D**
8290 definitions and 256 *names*.

8291 **–E** Copy C-language source files to standard output, expanding all preprocessor
8292 directives; no compilation shall be performed. If any operand is not a text file, the
8293 effects are unspecified.

8294 **–I** *directory* Change the algorithm for searching for headers whose names are not absolute
8295 pathnames to look in the directory named by the *directory* pathname before looking
8296 in the usual places. Thus, headers whose names are enclosed in double-quotes (`" "`)
8297 shall be searched for first in the directory of the file with the **#include** line, then in
8298 directories named in **–I** options, and last in the usual places. For headers whose
8299 names are enclosed in angle brackets (`"<>"`), the header shall be searched for only
8300 in directories named in **–I** options and then in the usual places. Directories named
8301 in **–I** options shall be searched in the order specified. Implementations shall
8302 support at least ten instances of this option in a single *c99* command invocation.

8303 **–L** *directory* Change the algorithm of searching for the libraries named in the **–l** objects to look
8304 in the directory named by the *directory* pathname before looking in the usual
8305 places. Directories named in **–L** options shall be searched in the order specified.
8306 Implementations shall support at least ten instances of this option in a single *c99*
8307 command invocation. If a directory specified by a **–L** option contains files with
8308 names starting with any of the strings `"libc."`, `"libl."`, `"libpthread."`,
8309 `"libm."`, `"librt."`, `"libtrace."`, `"libxnet."`, or `"liby."`, the results are
8310 unspecified.

8311 **–O** *optlevel* Specify the level of code optimization. If the *optlevel* option-argument is the digit
8312 `'0'`, all special code optimizations shall be disabled. If it is the digit `'1'`, the
8313 nature of the optimization is unspecified. If the **–O** option is omitted, the nature of
8314 the system's default optimization is unspecified. It is unspecified whether code
8315 generated in the presence of the **–O** 0 option is the same as that generated when
8316 **–O** is omitted. Other *optlevel* values may be supported.

8317 **–U** *name* Remove any initial definition of *name*.

8318 Multiple instances of the **–D**, **–I**, **–U**, and **–L** options can be specified.

8319 **OPERANDS**

8320 An *operand* is either in the form of a pathname or the form **–l***library*, or is one of two consecutive
8321 operands of the form **–l** for the first and *library* for the second. The application shall ensure that
8322 at least one operand of the pathname form is specified. The following operands shall be
8323 supported:

8324 *file*.**c** A C-language source file to be compiled and optionally linked. The application
8325 shall ensure that the operand is of this form if the **–c** option is used.

8326 *file*.**a** A library of object files typically produced by the *ar* utility, and passed directly to
8327 the link editor. Implementations may recognize implementation-defined suffixes
8328 other than **.a** as denoting object file libraries.

file.**o** An object file produced by *c99* **–c** and passed directly to the link editor. Implementations may recognize implementation-defined suffixes other than **.o** as denoting object files.

The processing of other files is implementation-defined.

–l*library* (A hyphen, the letter ell, and a library name.)
–l *library* (Two consecutive operands, the first being a hyphen and the letter ell; the second being a library name.)

Search the library named:

`lib`*`library`*`.a`

For the remainder of this description of the *c99* utility, both of the forms **–l** *library* and **–l***library* are referred to as the **–l** operand for brevity (even though the **–l** *library* form is actually two operands).

A library shall be searched when its name is encountered, so the placement of a **–l** operand is significant. Several standard libraries can be specified in this manner, as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section. Implementations may recognize implementation-defined suffixes other than **.a** as denoting libraries.

If the last operand is a **–l** with no library name, then the *c99* utility shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and shall return a non-zero exit status.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

The input file shall be one of the following: a text file containing a C-language source program, an object file in the format produced by *c99* **–c**, or a library of object files, in the format produced by archiving zero or more object files, using *ar*. Implementations may supply additional utilities that produce files in these formats. Additional input file formats are implementation-defined.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *c99*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

TMPDIR Provide a pathname that should override the default directory for temporary files, if any. XSI On XSI-conforming systems, provide a pathname that shall override the default directory for temporary files, if any.

8372 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

8373 Default.

8374 **STDOUT**

8375 If more than one *file* operand ending in **.c** (or possibly other unspecified suffixes) is given, for
8376 each such file:

8377 `"%s:\n", <file>`

8378 may be written. These messages, if written, shall precede the processing of each input file; they
8379 shall not be written to the standard output if they are written to the standard error, as described
8380 in the STDERR section.

8381 If the –**E** option is specified, the standard output shall be a text file that represents the results of
8382 the preprocessing stage of the language; it may contain extra information appropriate for
8383 subsequent compilation passes.

8384 **STDERR**

8385 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages. If more than one *file* operand
8386 ending in **.c** (or possibly other unspecified suffixes) is given, for each such file:

8387 `"%s:\n", <file>`

8388 may be written to allow identification of the diagnostic and warning messages with the
8389 appropriate input file. These messages, if written, shall precede the processing of each input file;
8390 they shall not be written to the standard error if they are written to the standard output, as
8391 described in the STDOUT section.

8392 This utility may produce warning messages about certain conditions that do not warrant
8393 returning an error (non-zero) exit value.

8394 **OUTPUT FILES**

8395 Object files or executable files or both are produced in unspecified formats. If an existing file that
8396 does not resolve to a regular file matches the name of an object file being written or matches the
8397 name of an executable file being created by *c99*, it is unspecified whether *c99* shall attempt to
8398 write the object file or create the executable file, or shall issue a diagnostic and exit with a non-
8399 zero exit status.

8400 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

8401 **Standard Libraries**

8402 The *c99* utility shall recognize the following –**l** operands for standard libraries:

8403 **–l c** This operand shall make visible all functions referenced in the System Interfaces
8404 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, with the possible exception of those functions
8405 listed as residing in **<aio.h>**, **<arpa/inet.h>**, **<complex.h>**, **<fenv.h>**, **<math.h>**,
8406 **<mqueue.h>**, **<netdb.h>**, **<net/if.h>**, **<netinet/in.h>**, **<pthread.h>**, **<sched.h>**,
8407 **<semaphore.h>**, **<spawn.h>**, **<sys/socket.h>**, *pthread_kill*( ), and *pthread_sigmask*( )
8408 in **<signal.h>**, **<trace.h>**, functions marked as optional in **<sys/mman.h>**,
8409 functions marked as ADV (Advisory Information) in **<fcntl.h>**, and functions
8410 beginning with the prefix clock_ or time_ in **<time.h>**. This operand shall not be
8411 required to be present to cause a search of this library.

8412 **–l l** This operand shall make visible all functions required by the C-language output of
8413 *lex* that are not made available through the –**l c** operand.

8414 **–l pthread** This operand shall make visible all functions referenced in **<pthread.h>** and
8415 *pthread_kill*( ) and *pthread_sigmask*( ) referenced in **<signal.h>**. An implementation
8416 may search this library in the absence of this operand.

–l m This operand shall make visible all functions referenced in **<math.h>**, **<complex.h>**, and **<fenv.h>**. An implementation may search this library in the absence of this operand.

–l rt This operand shall make visible all functions referenced in **<aio.h>**, **<mqueue.h>**, **<sched.h>**, **<semaphore.h>**, and **<spawn.h>**, functions marked as optional in **<sys/mman.h>**, functions marked as ADV (Advisory Information) in **<fcntl.h>**, and functions beginning with the prefix clock_ and time_ in **<time.h>**. An implementation may search this library in the absence of this operand.

–l trace This operand shall make visible all functions referenced in **<trace.h>**. An implementation may search this library in the absence of this operand.

–l xnet This operand makes visible all functions referenced in **<arpa/inet.h>**, **<netdb.h>**, **<net/if.h>**, **<netinet/in.h>**, and **<sys/socket.h>**. An implementation may search this library in the absence of this operand.

–l y This operand shall make visible all functions required by the C-language output of *yacc* that are not made available through the **–l c** operand.

In the absence of options that inhibit invocation of the link editor, such as **–c** or **–E**, the *c99* utility shall cause the equivalent of a **–l c** operand to be passed to the link editor as the last **–l** operand, causing it to be searched after all other object files and libraries are loaded.

It is unspecified whether the libraries **libc.a**, **libm.a**, **librt.a**, **libpthread.a**, **libl.a**, **liby.a**, or **libxnet.a** exist as regular files. The implementation may accept as **–l** operands names of objects that do not exist as regular files.

External Symbols

The C compiler and link editor shall support the significance of external symbols up to a length of at least 31 bytes; the action taken upon encountering symbols exceeding the implementation-defined maximum symbol length is unspecified.

The compiler and link editor shall support a minimum of 511 external symbols per source or object file, and a minimum of 4 095 external symbols in total. A diagnostic message shall be written to the standard output if the implementation-defined limit is exceeded; other actions are unspecified.

Programming Environments

All implementations shall support one of the following programming environments as a default. Implementations may support more than one of the following programming environments. Applications can use *sysconf*( ) or *getconf* to determine which programming environments are supported.

8451 **Table 4-4** Programming Environments: Type Sizes

Programming Environment *getconf* Name	Bits in int	Bits in long	Bits in pointer	Bits in off_t
_POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32	32	32	32	32
_POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG	32	32	32	≥64
_POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64	32	64	64	64
_POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG	≥32	≥64	≥64	≥64

8458 All implementations shall support one or more environments where the widths of the following
8459 types are no greater than the width of type **long**:

8460 **blksize_t**, **cc_t**, **mode_t**, **nfds_t**, **pid_t**, **ptrdiff_t**, **size_t**, **speed_t**, **ssize_t**, **suseconds_t**, **tcflag_t**,
8461 **wchar_t**, **wint_t**

8462 The executable files created when these environments are selected shall be in a proper format for
8463 execution by the *exec* family of functions. Each environment may be one of the ones in Table 4-4
8464 (on page 215), or it may be another environment. The names for the environments that meet this
8465 requirement shall be output by a *getconf* command using the
8466 POSIX_V7_WIDTH_RESTRICTED_ENVS argument, as a <newline>-separated list of names
8467 suitable for use with the *getconf* **–v** option. If more than one environment meets the requirement,
8468 the names of all such environments shall be output on separate lines. Any of these names can
8469 then be used in a subsequent *getconf* command to obtain the flags specific to that environment
8470 with the following suffixes added as appropriate:

8471 _CFLAGS To get the C compiler flags.

8472 _LDFLAGS To get the linker/loader flags.

8473 _LIBS To get the libraries.

8474 This requirement may be removed in a future version.

8475 When this utility processes a file containing a function called *main*(), it shall be defined with a
8476 return type equivalent to **int**. Using return from the initial call to *main*() shall be equivalent
8477 (other than with respect to language scope issues) to calling *exit*() with the returned value.
8478 Reaching the end of the initial call to *main*() shall be equivalent to calling *exit*(0). The
8479 implementation shall not declare a prototype for this function.

8480 Implementations provide configuration strings for C compiler flags, linker/loader flags, and
8481 libraries for each supported environment. When an application needs to use a specific
8482 programming environment rather than the implementation default programming environment
8483 while compiling, the application shall first verify that the implementation supports the desired
8484 environment. If the desired programming environment is supported, the application shall then
8485 invoke *c99* with the appropriate C compiler flags as the first options for the compile, the
8486 appropriate linker/loader flags after any other options but before any operands, and the
8487 appropriate libraries at the end of the operands.

8488 Conforming applications shall not attempt to link together object files compiled for different
8489 programming models. Applications shall also be aware that binary data placed in shared
8490 memory or in files might not be recognized by applications built for other programming models.

Table 4-5 Programming Environments: *c99* and *cc* Arguments

Programming Environment *getconf* **Name**	**Use**	***c99* and *cc* Arguments** *getconf* **Name**
_POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32	C Compiler Flags Linker/Loader Flags Libraries	POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32_CFLAGS POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32_LDFLAGS POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32_LIBS
_POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG	C Compiler Flags Linker/Loader Flags Libraries	POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG_CFLAGS POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG_LIBS
_POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64	C Compiler Flags Linker/Loader Flags Libraries	POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64_CFLAGS POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64_LDFLAGS POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64_LIBS
_POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG	C Compiler Flags Linker/Loader Flags Libraries	POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG_CFLAGS POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LIBS

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful compilation or link edit.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

When *c99* encounters a compilation error that causes an object file not to be created, it shall write a diagnostic to standard error and continue to compile other source code operands, but it shall not perform the link phase and return a non-zero exit status. If the link edit is unsuccessful, a diagnostic message shall be written to standard error and *c99* exits with a non-zero status. A conforming application shall rely on the exit status of *c99*, rather than on the existence or mode of the executable file.

APPLICATION USAGE

Since the *c99* utility usually creates files in the current directory during the compilation process, it is typically necessary to run the *c99* utility in a directory in which a file can be created.

On systems providing POSIX Conformance (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 2, Conformance), *c99* is required only with the C-Language Development option; XSI-conformant systems always provide *c99*.

Some historical implementations have created **.o** files when **–c** is not specified and more than one source file is given. Since this area is left unspecified, the application cannot rely on **.o** files being created, but it also must be prepared for any related **.o** files that already exist being deleted at the completion of the link edit.

Some historical implementations have permitted **–L** options to be interspersed with **–l** operands on the command line. For an application to compile consistently on systems that do not behave like this, it is necessary for a conforming application to supply all **–L** options before any of the **–l** options.

There is the possible implication that if a user supplies versions of the standard functions (before they would be encountered by an implicit **–l c** or explicit **–l m**), that those versions would be used in place of the standard versions. There are various reasons this might not be true (functions defined as macros, manipulations for clean name space, and so on), so the existence of files named in the same manner as the standard libraries within the **–L** directories is explicitly stated to produce unspecified behavior.

All of the functions specified in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x may be made visible by implementations when the Standard C Library is searched. Conforming applications must explicitly request searching the other standard libraries when functions made visible by those libraries are used.

EXAMPLES

1. The following usage example compiles **foo.c** and creates the executable file **foo**:

   ```
   c99 –o foo foo.c
   ```

   The following usage example compiles **foo.c** and creates the object file **foo.o**:

   ```
   c99 –c foo.c
   ```

   The following usage example compiles **foo.c** and creates the executable file **a.out**:

   ```
   c99 foo.c
   ```

   The following usage example compiles **foo.c**, links it with **bar.o**, and creates the executable file **a.out**. It may also create and leave **foo.o**:

   ```
   c99 foo.c bar.o
   ```

2. The following example shows how an application using threads interfaces can test for support of and use a programming environment supporting 32-bit **int**, **long**, and **pointer** types and an **off_t** type using at least 64 bits:

   ```
   if [ $(getconf _POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG) != "–1" ]
   then
       c99 $(getconf POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG_CFLAGS) –D_XOPEN_SOURCE=700
           $(getconf POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS) foo.c –o foo \
           $(getconf POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG_LIBS) –l pthread
   else
       echo ILP32_OFFBIG programming environment not supported
       exit 1
   fi
   ```

3. The following examples clarify the use and interactions of **–L** options and **–l** operands.

   Consider the case in which module **a.c** calls function *f*( ) in library **libQ.a**, and module **b.c** calls function *g*( ) in library **libp.a**. Assume that both libraries reside in **/a/b/c**. The command line to compile and link in the desired way is:

   ```
   c99 –L /a/b/c main.o a.c –l Q b.c –l p
   ```

   In this case the **–L** operand need only precede the first **–l** operand, since both **libQ.a** and **libp.a** reside in the same directory.

   Multiple **–L** operands can be used when library name collisions occur. Building on the previous example, suppose that the user wants to use a new **libp.a**, in **/a/a/a**, but still wants *f*( ) from **/a/b/c/libQ.a**:

   ```
   c99 –L /a/a/a –L /a/b/c main.o a.c –l Q b.c –l p
   ```

   In this example, the linker searches the **–L** options in the order specified, and finds **/a/a/a/libp.a** before **/a/b/c/libp.a** when resolving references for **b.c**. The order of the **–l** operands is still important, however.

4. The following example shows how an application can use a programming environment where the widths of the following types:

   blksize_t, **cc_t**, **mode_t**, **nfds_t**, **pid_t**, **ptrdiff_t**, **size_t**, **speed_t**, **ssize_t**, **suseconds_t**, **tcflag_t**, **wchar_t**, **wint_t**

are no greater than the width of type **long**:

```
# First choose one of the listed environments ...

# ... if there are no additional constraints, the first one will do:
CENV=$(getconf POSIX_V7_WIDTH_RESTRICTED_ENVS | head -n l)

# ... or, if an environment that supports large files is preferred,
# look for names that contain "OFF64" or "OFFBIG". (This chooses
# the last one in the list if none match.)
for CENV in $(getconf POSIX_V7_WIDTH_RESTRICTED_ENVS)
do
    case $CENV in
    *OFF64*|*OFFBIG*) break ;;
    esac
done

# The chosen environment name can now be used like this:

c99 $(getconf ${CENV}_CFLAGS) -D _POSIX_C_SOURCE=200xxxL \
$(getconf ${CENV}_LDFLAGS) foo.c -o foo \
$(getconf ${CENV}_LIBS)
```

RATIONALE

The *c99* utility is based on the *c89* utility originally introduced in the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard.

Some of the changes from *c89* include the modification to the contents of the Standard Libraries section to account for new headers and options; for example, **<spawn.h>** added to the **–l rt** operand, and the **–l** trace operand added for the Tracing functions.

This standard specifies that the *c99* utility must be able to use regular files for ***.o** files and for **a.out** files. Implementations are free to overwrite existing files of other types when attempting to create object files and executable files, but are not required to do so. If something other than a regular file is specified and using it fails for any reason, *c99* is required to issue a diagnostic message and exit with a non-zero exit status. But for some file types, the problem may not be noticed for a long time. For example, if a FIFO named **a.out** exists in the current directory, *c99* may attempt to open **a.out** and will hang in the *open*( ) call until another process opens the FIFO for reading. Then *c99* may write most of the **a.out** to the FIFO and fail when it tries to seek back close to the start of the file to insert a timestamp (FIFOs are not seekable files). The *c99* utility is also allowed to issue a diagnostic immediately if it encounters an **a.out** or ***.o** file that is not a regular file. For portable use, applications should ensure that any **a.out**, **–o** option-argument, or ***.o** files corresponding to any ***.c** files do not conflict with names already in use that are not regular files or symbolic links that point to regular files.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 1.7.1.4 (on page 4), *ar*, *getconf*, *make*, *nm*, *strip*, *umask*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *exec*, *sysconf*( ), the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Included for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899: 1999 standard.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/12 is applied, correcting the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION of **–l c** and **–l m**. Previously, the text did not take into account the presence of the *c99* math headers.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/13 is applied, changing the reference to

the **libxnet** library to **libxnet.a**.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/5 is applied, updating the OPTIONS section, so that the names of files contained in the directory specified by the **–L** option are not assumed to end in the **.a** suffix. The set of library prefixes is also updated.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/6 is applied, removing the lead underscore from the POSIX_V6_WIDTH_RESTRICTED_ENVS variable in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION and the EXAMPLES sections.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #020 (SD5-XCU-ERN-10) is applied, adding to the OUTPUT FILES section and also adding associated RATIONALE.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #095 is applied, clarifying the **–l** *library* operand.

SD5-XCU-ERN-6 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply (options can be interspersed with operands).

SD5-XCU-ERN-11 is applied, adding the **<net/if.h>** header to the descriptions of **–l c** and **–l xnet**.

SD5-XCU-ERN-65 is applied, updating the EXAMPLES section.

SD5-XCU-ERN-67 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

The *getconf* variables for the supported programming environments are updated to be V7.

8648 **NAME**

8649 cal — print a calendar

8650 **SYNOPSIS**

8651 XSI
```
cal [[month] year]
```

8652 **DESCRIPTION**

8653 The *cal* utility shall write a calendar to standard output using the Julian calendar for dates from
8654 January 1, 1 through September 2, 1752 and the Gregorian calendar for dates from September 14,
8655 1752 through December 31, 9999 as though the Gregorian calendar had been adopted on
8656 September 14, 1752.

8657 **OPTIONS**

8658 None.

8659 **OPERANDS**

8660 The following operands shall be supported:

8661 *month* Specify the month to be displayed, represented as a decimal integer from 1
8662 (January) to 12 (December). The default shall be the current month.

8663 *year* Specify the year for which the calendar is displayed, represented as a decimal
8664 integer from 1 to 9999. The default shall be the current year.

8665 **STDIN**

8666 Not used.

8667 **INPUT FILES**

8668 None.

8669 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

8670 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cal*:

8671 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
8672 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
8673 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
8674 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

8675 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
8676 internationalization variables.

8677 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
8678 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
8679 arguments).

8680 *LC_MESSAGES*
8681 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
8682 diagnostic messages written to standard error, and informative messages written
8683 to standard output.

8684 *LC_TIME* Determine the format and contents of the calendar.

8685 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

8686 *TZ* Determine the timezone used to calculate the value of the current month.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall be used to display the calendar, in an unspecified format.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Note that:

```
cal 83
```

refers to A.D. 83, not 1983.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

A future version of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x may support locale-specific recognition of the date of adoption of the Gregorian calendar.

SEE ALSO

None.

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The DESCRIPTION is updated to allow for traditional behavior for years before the adoption of the Gregorian calendar.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

cat — concatenate and print files

SYNOPSIS

```
cat [–u] [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *cat* utility shall read files in sequence and shall write their contents to the standard output in the same sequence.

OPTIONS

The *cat* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–u Write bytes from the input file to the standard output without delay as each is read.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of an input file. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input shall be used. If a *file* is `'–'`, the *cat* utility shall read from the standard input at that point in the sequence. The *cat* utility shall not close and reopen standard input when it is referenced in this way, but shall accept multiple occurrences of `'–'` as a *file* operand.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files can be any file type.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cat*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall contain the sequence of bytes read from the input files. Nothing else shall be written to the standard output.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were output successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **–u** option has value in prototyping non-blocking reads from FIFOs. The intent is to support the following sequence:

```
mkfifo foo
cat –u foo > /dev/tty13 &
cat –u > foo
```

It is unspecified whether standard output is or is not buffered in the default case. This is sometimes of interest when standard output is associated with a terminal, since buffering may delay the output. The presence of the **–u** option guarantees that unbuffered I/O is available. It is implementation-defined whether the *cat* utility buffers output if the **–u** option is not specified. Traditionally, the **–u** option is implemented using the equivalent of the *setvbuf*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

EXAMPLES

The following command:

```
cat myfile
```

writes the contents of the file **myfile** to standard output.

The following command:

```
cat doc1 doc2 > doc.all
```

concatenates the files **doc1** and **doc2** and writes the result to **doc.all**.

Because of the shell language mechanism used to perform output redirection, a command such as this:

```
cat doc doc.end > doc
```

causes the original data in **doc** to be lost.

The command:

```
cat start – middle – end > file
```

when standard input is a terminal, gets two arbitrary pieces of input from the terminal with a

single invocation of *cat*. Note, however, that if standard input is a regular file, this would be equivalent to the command:

```
cat start – middle /dev/null end > file
```

because the entire contents of the file would be consumed by *cat* the first time '–' was used as a *file* operand and an end-of-file condition would be detected immediately when '–' was referenced the second time.

RATIONALE

Historical versions of the *cat* utility include the options **–e**, **–t**, and **–v**, which permit the ends of lines, <tab>s, and invisible characters, respectively, to be rendered visible in the output. The standard developers omitted these options because they provide too fine a degree of control over what is made visible, and similar output can be obtained using a command such as:

```
sed –n –e 's/$/$/' –e l pathname
```

The **–s** option was omitted because it corresponds to different functions in BSD and System V-based systems. The BSD **–s** option to squeeze blank lines can be accomplished by the shell script shown in the following example:

```
sed –n '
# Write non-empty lines.
/./   {
      p
      d
      }
# Write a single empty line, then look for more empty lines.
/^$/  p
# Get next line, discard the held <newline> (empty line),
# and look for more empty lines.
:Empty
/^$/  {
      N
      s/.//
      b Empty
      }
# Write the non-empty line before going back to search
# for the first in a set of empty lines.
      p
'
```

The System V **–s** option to silence error messages can be accomplished by redirecting the standard error. Note that the BSD documentation for *cat* uses the term "blank line" to mean the same as the POSIX "empty line": a line consisting only of a <newline>.

The BSD **–n** option was omitted because similar functionality can be obtained from the **–n** option of the *pr* utility.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

more, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *setvbuf*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

8854 **NAME**

8855 cd — change the working directory

8856 **SYNOPSIS**

8857 `cd [–L|–P] [`*`directory`*`]`

8858 `cd –`

8859 **DESCRIPTION**

8860 The *cd* utility shall change the working directory of the current shell execution environment (see
8861 Section 2.12 (on page 61)) by executing the following steps in sequence. (In the following steps,
8862 the symbol **curpath** represents an intermediate value used to simplify the description of the
8863 algorithm used by *cd*. There is no requirement that **curpath** be made visible to the application.)

8864 1. If no *directory* operand is given and the *HOME* environment variable is empty or
8865 undefined, the default behavior is implementation-defined and no further steps shall be
8866 taken.

8867 2. If no *directory* operand is given and the *HOME* environment variable is set to a non-empty
8868 value, the *cd* utility shall behave as if the directory named in the *HOME* environment
8869 variable was specified as the *directory* operand.

8870 3. If the *directory* operand begins with a slash character, set **curpath** to the operand and
8871 proceed to step 7.

8872 4. If the first component of the *directory* operand is dot or dot-dot, proceed to step 6.

8873 5. Starting with the first pathname in the colon-separated pathnames of *CDPATH* (see the
8874 ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section) if the pathname is non-null, test if the
8875 concatenation of that pathname, a slash character, and the *directory* operand names a
8876 directory. If the pathname is null, test if the concatenation of dot, a slash character, and
8877 the operand names a directory. In either case, if the resulting string names an existing
8878 directory, set **curpath** to that string and proceed to step 7. Otherwise, repeat this step with
8879 the next pathname in *CDPATH* until all pathnames have been tested.

8880 6. If the **–P** option is in effect, set **curpath** to the *directory* operand. Otherwise, set **curpath** to
8881 the string formed by the concatenation of the value of *PWD*, a slash character, and the
8882 operand.

8883 7. If the **–P** option is in effect, proceed to step 10. If **curpath** does not begin with a slash
8884 character, set **curpath** to the string formed by the concatenation of the value of *PWD*, a
8885 slash character, and the operand.

8886 8. The **curpath** value shall then be converted to canonical form as follows, considering each
8887 component from beginning to end, in sequence:

8888 a. Dot components and any slashes that separate them from the next component shall
8889 be deleted.

8890 b. For each dot-dot component, if there is a preceding component and it is neither
8891 root nor dot-dot, then:

8892 i. If the preceding component does not refer (in the context of pathname
8893 resolution with symbolic links followed) to a directory, then the *cd* utility
8894 shall display an appropriate error message and no further steps shall be
8895 taken.

ii. The preceding component, all slashes separating the preceding component from dot-dot, dot-dot, and all slashes separating dot-dot from the following component (if any) shall be deleted.

c. An implementation may further simplify **curpath** by removing any trailing slash characters that are not also leading slashes, replacing multiple non-leading consecutive slashes with a single slash, and replacing three or more leading slashes with a single slash. If, as a result of this canonicalization, the **curpath** variable is null, no further steps shall be taken.

9. If **curpath** is longer than {PATH_MAX} bytes (including the terminating null) and the *directory* operand was not longer than {PATH_MAX} bytes (including the terminating null), then **curpath** shall be converted from an absolute pathname to an equivalent relative pathname if possible. This conversion shall always be considered possible if the value of *PWD*, with a trailing slash added if it does not already have one, is an initial substring of **curpath**. Whether or not it is considered possible under other circumstances is unspecified. Implementations may also apply this conversion if **curpath** is not longer than {PATH_MAX} bytes or the *directory* operand was longer than {PATH_MAX} bytes.

10. The *cd* utility shall then perform actions equivalent to the *chdir*( ) function called with **curpath** as the *path* argument. If these actions fail for any reason, the *cd* utility shall display an appropriate error message and the remainder of this step shall not be executed. If the **–P** option is not in effect, the *PWD* environment variable shall be set to the value that **curpath** had on entry to step 9 (i.e., before conversion to a relative pathname). If the **–P** option is in effect, the *PWD* environment variable shall be set to an absolute pathname for the current working directory and shall not contain filename components that, in the context of pathname resolution, refer to a file of type symbolic link. If there is insufficient permission on the new directory, or on any parent of that directory, to determine the current working directory, the value of the *PWD* environment variable is unspecified.

If, during the execution of the above steps, the *PWD* environment variable is changed, the *OLDPWD* environment variable shall also be changed to the value of the old working directory (that is the current working directory immediately prior to the call to *cd*).

OPTIONS

The *cd* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–L Handle the operand dot-dot logically; symbolic link components shall not be resolved before dot-dot components are processed (see steps 8. and 9. in the DESCRIPTION).

–P Handle the operand dot-dot physically; symbolic link components shall be resolved before dot-dot components are processed (see step 7. in the DESCRIPTION).

If both **–L** and **–P** options are specified, the last of these options shall be used and all others ignored. If neither **–L** nor **–P** is specified, the operand shall be handled dot-dot logically; see the DESCRIPTION.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

directory An absolute or relative pathname of the directory that shall become the new working directory. The interpretation of a relative pathname by *cd* depends on the **–L** option and the *CDPATH* and *PWD* environment variables. If *directory* is an empty string, the results are unspecified.

– When a hyphen is used as the operand, this shall be equivalent to the command:

```
cd "$OLDPWD" && pwd
```

which changes to the previous working directory and then writes its name.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cd*:

CDPATH A colon-separated list of pathnames that refer to directories. The *cd* utility shall use this list in its attempt to change the directory, as described in the DESCRIPTION. An empty string in place of a directory pathname represents the current directory. If *CDPATH* is not set, it shall be treated as if it were an empty string.

HOME The name of the directory, used when no *directory* operand is specified.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

OLDPWD A pathname of the previous working directory, used by *cd* –.

PWD This variable shall be set as specified in the DESCRIPTION. If an application sets or unsets the value of *PWD*, the behavior of *cd* is unspecified.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

If a non-empty directory name from *CDPATH* is used, or if *cd* – is used, an absolute pathname of the new working directory shall be written to the standard output as follows:

```
"%s\n", <new directory>
```

Otherwise, there shall be no output.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The directory was successfully changed.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

The working directory shall remain unchanged.

APPLICATION USAGE

Since *cd* affects the current shell execution environment, it is always provided as a shell regular built-in. If it is called in a subshell or separate utility execution environment, such as one of the following:

```
(cd /tmp)
nohup cd
find . –exec cd {} \;
```

it does not affect the working directory of the caller's environment.

The user must have execute (search) permission in *directory* in order to change to it.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The use of the *CDPATH* was introduced in the System V shell. Its use is analogous to the use of the *PATH* variable in the shell. The BSD C shell used a shell parameter *cdpath* for this purpose.

A common extension when *HOME* is undefined is to get the login directory from the user database for the invoking user. This does not occur on System V implementations.

Some historical shells, such as the KornShell, took special actions when the directory name contained a dot-dot component, selecting the logical parent of the directory, rather than the actual parent directory; that is, it moved up one level toward the `'//'` in the pathname, remembering what the user typed, rather than performing the equivalent of:

```
chdir("..");
```

In such a shell, the following commands would not necessarily produce equivalent output for all directories:

```
cd .. && ls      ls ..
```

This behavior is now the default. It is not consistent with the definition of dot-dot in most historical practice; that is, while this behavior has been optionally available in the KornShell, other shells have historically not supported this functionality. The logical pathname is stored in the *PWD* environment variable when the *cd* utility completes and this value is used to construct the next directory name if *cd* is invoked with the **–L** option.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.12 (on page 61), *pwd*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *chdir*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The *cd* – operand, *PWD*, and *OLDPWD* are added.

The **–L** and **–P** options are added to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard. This also includes the introduction of a new description to include the effect of these options.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/14 is applied, changing the SYNOPSIS to make it clear that the **–L** and **–P** options are mutually-exclusive.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #037 is applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

cflow — generate a C-language flowgraph (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
cflow [–r] [–d num] [–D name[=def]]... [–i incl] [–I dir]...
    [–U dir]... file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *cflow* utility shall analyze a collection of object files or assembler, C-language, *lex*, or *yacc* source files, and attempt to build a graph, written to standard output, charting the external references.

OPTIONS

The *cflow* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the order of the –**D**, –**I**, and –**U** options (which are identical to their interpretation by *c99*) is significant.

The following options shall be supported:

–**d** *num* Indicate the depth at which the flowgraph is cut off. The application shall ensure that the argument *num* is a decimal integer. By default this is a very large number (typically greater than 32 000). Attempts to set the cut-off depth to a non-positive integer shall be ignored.

–**i** *incl* Increase the number of included symbols. The *incl* option-argument is one of the following characters:

x Include external and static data symbols. The default shall be to include only functions in the flowgraph.

_ (Underscore) Include names that begin with an underscore. The default shall be to exclude these functions (and data if –**i x** is used).

–**r** Reverse the caller:callee relationship, producing an inverted listing showing the callers of each function. The listing shall also be sorted in lexicographical order by callee.

OPERANDS

The following operand is supported:

file The pathname of a file for which a graph is to be generated. Filenames suffixed by **.l** shall shall be taken to be *lex* input, **.y** as *yacc* input, **.c** as *c99* input, and **.i** as the output of *c99* –**E**. Such files shall be processed as appropriate, determined by their suffix.

Files suffixed by **.s** (conventionally assembler source) may have more limited information extracted from them.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be object files or assembler, C-language, *lex*, or *yacc* source files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cflow*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the ordering of the output when the **–r** option is used.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The flowgraph written to standard output shall be formatted as follows:

```
"%d %s:%s\n", <reference number>, <global>, <definition>
```

Each line of output begins with a reference (that is, line) number, followed by indentation of at least one column position per level. This is followed by the name of the global, a colon, and its definition. Normally globals are only functions not defined as an external or beginning with an underscore; see the OPTIONS section for the **–i** inclusion option. For information extracted from C-language source, the definition consists of an abstract type declaration (for example, **char** *) and, delimited by angle brackets, the name of the source file and the line number where the definition was found. Definitions extracted from object files indicate the filename and location counter under which the symbol appeared (for example, *text*).

Once a definition of a name has been written, subsequent references to that name contain only the reference number of the line where the definition can be found. For undefined references, only `"<>"` shall be written.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Files produced by *lex* and *yacc* cause the reordering of line number declarations, and this can confuse *cflow*. To obtain proper results, the input of *yacc* or *lex* must be directed to *cflow*.

EXAMPLES

Given the following in **file.c**:

```
int i;
int f();
int g();
int h();
int
main()
{
    f();
    g();
    f();
}
int
f()
{
    i = h();
}
```

The command:

```
cflow –i x file.c
```

produces the output:

```
1 main: int(), <file.c 6>
2    f: int(), <file.c 13>
3         h: <>
4         i: int, <file.c 1>
5    g: <>
```

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

c99, *lex*, *yacc*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

chgrp — change the file group ownership

SYNOPSIS

```
chgrp [–h] group file...
chgrp –R [–H|–L|–P] group file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *chgrp* utility shall set the group ID of the file named by each *file* operand to the group ID specified by the *group* operand.

For each *file* operand, or, if the **–R** option is used, each file encountered while walking the directory trees specified by the *file* operands, the *chgrp* utility shall perform actions equivalent to the *chown*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, called with the following arguments:

- The *file* operand shall be used as the *path* argument.
- The user ID of the file shall be used as the *owner* argument.
- The specified group ID shall be used as the *group* argument.

Unless *chgrp* is invoked by a process with appropriate privileges, the set-user-ID and set-group-ID bits of a regular file shall be cleared upon successful completion; the set-user-ID and set-group-ID bits of other file types may be cleared.

OPTIONS

The *chgrp* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–h If the system supports group IDs for symbolic links, for each *file* operand that names a file of type symbolic link, *chgrp* shall attempt to set the group ID of the symbolic link instead of the file referenced by the symbolic link. If the system does not support group IDs for symbolic links, for each *file* operand that names a file of type symbolic link, *chgrp* shall do nothing more with the current file and shall go on to any remaining files.

–H If the **–R** option is specified and a symbolic link referencing a file of type directory is specified on the command line, *chgrp* shall change the group of the directory referenced by the symbolic link and all files in the file hierarchy below it.

–L If the **–R** option is specified and a symbolic link referencing a file of type directory is specified on the command line or encountered during the traversal of a file hierarchy, *chgrp* shall change the group of the directory referenced by the symbolic link and all files in the file hierarchy below it.

–P If the **–R** option is specified and a symbolic link is specified on the command line or encountered during the traversal of a file hierarchy, *chgrp* shall change the group ID of the symbolic link if the system supports this operation. The *chgrp* utility shall not follow the symbolic link to any other part of the file hierarchy.

–R Recursively change file group IDs. For each *file* operand that names a directory, *chgrp* shall change the group of the directory and all files in the file hierarchy below it. Unless a **–H**, **–L**, or **–P** option is specified, it is unspecified which of these options will be used as the default.

Specifying more than one of the mutually-exclusive options **–H**, **–L**, and **–P** shall not be

considered an error. The last option specified shall determine the behavior of the utility.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

group A group name from the group database or a numeric group ID. Either specifies a group ID to be given to each file named by one of the *file* operands. If a numeric *group* operand exists in the group database as a group name, the group ID number associated with that group name is used as the group ID.

file A pathname of a file whose group ID is to be modified.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *chgrp*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The utility executed successfully and all requested changes were made.

>0 An error occurred.

9250 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

9251 Default.

9252 **APPLICATION USAGE**

9253 Only the owner of a file or the user with appropriate privileges may change the owner or group
9254 of a file.

9255 Some implementations restrict the use of *chgrp* to a user with appropriate privileges when the
9256 *group* specified is not the effective group ID or one of the supplementary group IDs of the calling
9257 process.

9258 **EXAMPLES**

9259 None.

9260 **RATIONALE**

9261 The System V and BSD versions use different exit status codes. Some implementations used the
9262 exit status as a count of the number of errors that occurred; this practice is unworkable since it
9263 can overflow the range of valid exit status values. The standard developers chose to mask these
9264 by specifying only 0 and >0 as exit values.

9265 The functionality of *chgrp* is described substantially through references to *chown*( ). In this way,
9266 there is no duplication of effort required for describing the interactions of permissions, multiple
9267 groups, and so on.

9268 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

9269 None.

9270 **SEE ALSO**

9271 *chmod*, *chown*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *chown*( )

9272 **CHANGE HISTORY**

9273 First released in Issue 2.

9274 **Issue 6**

9275 New options **–H**, **–L**, and **–P** are added to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard. These
9276 options affect the processing of symbolic links.

9277 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #172 is applied, changing the CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
9278 section to "Default.".

9279 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/15 is applied, changing the SYNOPSIS to
9280 make it clear that **–h** and **–R** are optional.

9281 **Issue 7**

9282 SD5-XCU-ERN-8 is applied, removing the **–R** from the first line of the SYNOPSIS.

9283 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

chmod — change the file modes

SYNOPSIS

```
chmod [–R] mode file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *chmod* utility shall change any or all of the file mode bits of the file named by each *file* operand in the way specified by the *mode* operand.

It is implementation-defined whether and how the *chmod* utility affects any alternate or additional file access control mechanism (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.4, File Access Permissions) being used for the specified file.

Only a process whose effective user ID matches the user ID of the file, or a process with the appropriate privileges, shall be permitted to change the file mode bits of a file.

OPTIONS

The *chmod* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–R Recursively change file mode bits. For each *file* operand that names a directory, *chmod* shall change the file mode bits of the directory and all files in the file hierarchy below it.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

mode Represents the change to be made to the file mode bits of each file named by one of the *file* operands; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

file A pathname of a file whose file mode bits shall be modified.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *chmod*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

The *mode* operand shall be either a *symbolic_mode* expression or a non-negative octal integer. The *symbolic_mode* form is described by the grammar later in this section.

Each **clause** shall specify an operation to be performed on the current file mode bits of each *file*. The operations shall be performed on each *file* in the order in which the **clause**s are specified.

The **who** symbols **u**, **g**, and **o** shall specify the *user*, *group*, and *other* parts of the file mode bits, respectively. A **who** consisting of the symbol **a** shall be equivalent to **ugo**.

The **perm** symbols **r**, **w**, and **x** represent the *read*, *write*, and *execute/search* portions of file mode bits, respectively. The **perm** symbol **s** shall represent the *set-user-ID-on-execution* (when **who** contains or implies **u**) and *set-group-ID-on-execution* (when **who** contains or implies **g**) bits.

The **perm** symbol **X** shall represent the execute/search portion of the file mode bits if the file is a directory or if the current (unmodified) file mode bits have at least one of the execute bits (S_IXUSR, S_IXGRP, or S_IXOTH) set. It shall be ignored if the file is not a directory and none of the execute bits are set in the current file mode bits.

The **permcopy** symbols **u**, **g**, and **o** shall represent the current permissions associated with the user, group, and other parts of the file mode bits, respectively. For the remainder of this section, **perm** refers to the non-terminals **perm** and **permcopy** in the grammar.

If multiple **actionlist**s are grouped with a single **wholist** in the grammar, each **actionlist** shall be applied in the order specified with that **wholist**. The *op* symbols shall represent the operation performed, as follows:

+ If **perm** is not specified, the `'+'` operation shall not change the file mode bits.

  If **who** is not specified, the file mode bits represented by **perm** for the owner, group, and other permissions, except for those with corresponding bits in the file mode creation mask of the invoking process, shall be set.

  Otherwise, the file mode bits represented by the specified **who** and **perm** values shall be set.

– If **perm** is not specified, the `'-'` operation shall not change the file mode bits.

  If **who** is not specified, the file mode bits represented by **perm** for the owner, group, and other permissions, except for those with corresponding bits in the file mode creation mask of the invoking process, shall be cleared.

  Otherwise, the file mode bits represented by the specified **who** and **perm** values shall be cleared.

= Clear the file mode bits specified by the **who** value, or, if no **who** value is specified, all of the file mode bits specified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

  If **perm** is not specified, the `'='` operation shall make no further modifications to the file mode bits.

If **who** is not specified, the file mode bits represented by **perm** for the owner, group, and other permissions, except for those with corresponding bits in the file mode creation mask of the invoking process, shall be set.

Otherwise, the file mode bits represented by the specified **who** and **perm** values shall be set.

When using the symbolic mode form on a regular file, it is implementation-defined whether or not:

- Requests to set the set-user-ID-on-execution or set-group-ID-on-execution bit when all execute bits are currently clear and none are being set are ignored.
- Requests to clear all execute bits also clear the set-user-ID-on-execution and set-group-ID-on-execution bits.
- Requests to clear the set-user-ID-on-execution or set-group-ID-on-execution bits when all execute bits are currently clear are ignored. However, if the command *ls* **–l** *file* writes an *s* in the position indicating that the set-user-ID-on-execution or set-group-ID-on-execution is set, the commands *chmod* **u–s** *file* or *chmod* **g–s** *file*, respectively, shall not be ignored.

When using the symbolic mode form on other file types, it is implementation-defined whether or not requests to set or clear the set-user-ID-on-execution or set-group-ID-on-execution bits are honored.

If the **who** symbol **o** is used in conjunction with the **perm** symbol **s** with no other **who** symbols being specified, the set-user-ID-on-execution and set-group-ID-on-execution bits shall not be modified. It shall not be an error to specify the **who** symbol **o** in conjunction with the **perm** symbol **s**.

XSI The **perm** symbol **t** shall specify the S_ISVTX bit. When used with a file of type directory, it can be used with the **who** symbol **a**, or with no **who** symbol. It shall not be an error to specify a **who** symbol of **u**, **g**, or **o** in conjunction with the **perm** symbol **t**, but the meaning of these combinations is unspecified. The effect when using the **perm** symbol **t** with any file type other than directory is unspecified.

For an octal integer *mode* operand, the file mode bits shall be set absolutely.

For each bit set in the octal number, the corresponding file permission bit shown in the following table shall be set; all other file permission bits shall be cleared. For regular files, for each bit set in the octal number corresponding to the set-user-ID-on-execution or the set-group-ID-on-execution, bits shown in the following table shall be set; if these bits are not set in the octal number, they are cleared. For other file types, it is implementation-defined whether or not requests to set or clear the set-user-ID-on-execution or set-group-ID-on-execution bits are honored.

Octal	Mode Bit	Octal	Mode Bit	Octal	Mode Bit	Octal	Mode Bit
4000	S_ISUID	**0400**	S_IRUSR	**0040**	S_IRGRP	**0004**	S_IROTH
2000	S_ISGID	**0200**	S_IWUSR	**0020**	S_IWGRP	**0002**	S_IWOTH
XSI **1000**	S_ISVTX	**0100**	S_IXUSR	**0010**	S_IXGRP	**0001**	S_IXOTH

When bits are set in the octal number other than those listed in the table above, the behavior is unspecified.

Grammar for chmod

The grammar and lexical conventions in this section describe the syntax for the *symbolic_mode* operand. The general conventions for this style of grammar are described in Section 1.10 (on page 18). A valid *symbolic_mode* can be represented as the non-terminal symbol *symbolic_mode* in the grammar. This formal syntax shall take precedence over the preceding text syntax description.

The lexical processing is based entirely on single characters. Implementations need not allow <blank>s within the single argument being processed.

```
%start    symbolic_mode
%%

symbolic_mode    : clause
                 | symbolic_mode ',' clause
                 ;

clause           : actionlist
                 | wholist actionlist
                 ;

wholist          : who
                 | wholist who
                 ;

who              : 'u' | 'g' | 'o' | 'a'
                 ;

actionlist       : action
                 | actionlist action
                 ;

action           : op
                 | op permlist
                 | op permcopy
                 ;

permcopy         : 'u' | 'g' | 'o'
                 ;

op               : '+' | '-' | '='
                 ;

permlist         : perm
                 | perm permlist
                 ;

XSI  perm        : 'r' | 'w' | 'x' | 'X' | 's' | 't'
                 ;
```

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The utility executed successfully and all requested changes were made.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Some implementations of the *chmod* utility change the mode of a directory before the files in the directory when performing a recursive (**–R** option) change; others change the directory mode after the files in the directory. If an application tries to remove read or search permission for a file hierarchy, the removal attempt fails if the directory is changed first; on the other hand, trying to re-enable permissions to a restricted hierarchy fails if directories are changed last. Users should not try to make a hierarchy inaccessible to themselves.

Some implementations of *chmod* never used the *umask* of the process when changing modes; systems conformant with this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x do so when **who** is not specified. Note the difference between:

```
chmod a–w file
```

which removes all write permissions, and:

```
chmod –– –w file
```

which removes write permissions that would be allowed if **file** was created with the same *umask*.

Conforming applications should never assume that they know how the set-user-ID and set-group-ID bits on directories are interpreted.

EXAMPLES

Mode	Results
a+=	Equivalent to *a+,a=*; clears all file mode bits.
*go+–*w	Equivalent to *go+,go–w*; clears group and other write bits.
g=o–w	Equivalent to *g=o,g–w*; sets group bit to match other bits and then clears group write bit.
g–r+w	Equivalent to *g–r,g+w*; clears group read bit and sets group write bit.
uo=g	Sets owner bits to match group bits and sets other bits to match group bits.

RATIONALE

The functionality of *chmod* is described substantially through references to concepts defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. In this way, there is less duplication of effort required for describing the interactions of permissions. However, the behavior of this utility is not described in terms of the *chmod*( ) function from the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because that specification requires certain side effects upon alternate file access control mechanisms that might not be appropriate, depending on the implementation.

Implementations that support mandatory file and record locking as specified by the 1984 /usr/group standard historically used the combination of set-group-ID bit set and group execute bit clear to indicate mandatory locking. This condition is usually set or cleared with the symbolic mode **perm** symbol **l** instead of the **perm** symbols **s** and **x** so that the mandatory locking mode is not changed without explicit indication that that was what the user intended. Therefore, the details on how the implementation treats these conditions must be defined in the documentation. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require mandatory locking (nor does the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x), but does allow it as an extension. However, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does require that the *ls* and *chmod* utilities work consistently in this area. If *ls* **–l** *file* indicates that the set-group-ID bit is set, *chmod* **g–s** *file* must clear it (assuming appropriate privileges exist to change modes).

The System V and BSD versions use different exit status codes. Some implementations used the exit status as a count of the number of errors that occurred; this practice is unworkable since it

can overflow the range of valid exit status values. This problem is avoided here by specifying only 0 and >0 as exit values.

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x indicates that implementation-defined restrictions may cause the S_ISUID and S_ISGID bits to be ignored. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x allows the *chmod* utility to choose to modify these bits before calling *chmod*( ) (or some function providing equivalent capabilities) for non-regular files. Among other things, this allows implementations that use the set-user-ID and set-group-ID bits on directories to enable extended features to handle these extensions in an intelligent manner.

The **X perm** symbol was adopted from BSD-based systems because it provides commonly desired functionality when doing recursive (**–R** option) modifications. Similar functionality is not provided by the *find* utility. Historical BSD versions of *chmod*, however, only supported **X** with *op*+; it has been extended in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because it is also useful with *op*=. (It has also been added for *op*– even though it duplicates **x**, in this case, because it is intuitive and easier to explain.)

The grammar was extended with the *permcopy* non-terminal to allow historical-practice forms of symbolic modes like **o**=**u** –**g** (that is, set the "other" permissions to the permissions of "owner" minus the permissions of "group").

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

ls, *umask*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *chmod*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- Octal modes have been kept and made mandatory despite being marked obsolescent in the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #172 is applied, changing the CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS section to "Default.".

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-010 is applied, adding the description of the S_ISVTX bit and the **t perm** symbol as part of the XSI option.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/16 is applied, changing the XSI shaded text in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION from:

> "The **perm** symbol **t** shall specify the S_ISVTX bit and shall apply to directories only. The effect when using it with any other file type is unspecified. It can be used with the **who** symbols **o**, **a**, or with no **who** symbol. It shall not be an error to specify a **who** symbol of **u** or **g** in conjunction with the **perm** symbol **t**; it shall be ignored for **u** and **g**."

to:

> "The **perm** symbol **t** shall specify the S_ISVTX bit. When used with a file of type directory, it can be used with the **who** symbol **a**, or with no **who** symbol. It shall not be an error to specify a **who** symbol of **u**, **g**, or **o** in conjunction with the **perm** symbol **t**, but the meaning of these combinations is unspecified. The effect when using the **perm** symbol **t** with any file type other than directory is unspecified."

This change is to permit historical behavior.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

chown — change the file ownership

SYNOPSIS

```
chown [–h] owner[:group] file...
chown –R [–H|–L|–P ] owner[:group] file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *chown* utility shall set the user ID of the file named by each *file* operand to the user ID specified by the *owner* operand.

For each *file* operand, or, if the **–R** option is used, each file encountered while walking the directory trees specified by the *file* operands, the *chown* utility shall perform actions equivalent to the *chown*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, called with the following arguments:

1. The *file* operand shall be used as the *path* argument.
2. The user ID indicated by the *owner* portion of the first operand shall be used as the *owner* argument.
3. If the *group* portion of the first operand is given, the group ID indicated by it shall be used as the *group* argument; otherwise, the group ownership shall not be changed.

Unless *chown* is invoked by a process with appropriate privileges, the set-user-ID and set-group-ID bits of a regular file shall be cleared upon successful completion; the set-user-ID and set-group-ID bits of other file types may be cleared.

OPTIONS

The *chown* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–h If the system supports user IDs for symbolic links, for each *file* operand that names a file of type symbolic link, *chown* shall attempt to set the user ID of the symbolic link. If the system supports group IDs for symbolic links, and a group ID was specified, for each *file* operand that names a file of type symbolic link, *chown* shall attempt to set the group ID of the symbolic link. If the system does not support user or group IDs for symbolic links, for each *file* operand that names a file of type symbolic link, *chown* shall do nothing more with the current file and shall go on to any remaining files.

–H If the **–R** option is specified and a symbolic link referencing a file of type directory is specified on the command line, *chown* shall change the user ID (and group ID, if specified) of the directory referenced by the symbolic link and all files in the file hierarchy below it.

–L If the **–R** option is specified and a symbolic link referencing a file of type directory is specified on the command line or encountered during the traversal of a file hierarchy, *chown* shall change the user ID (and group ID, if specified) of the directory referenced by the symbolic link and all files in the file hierarchy below it.

–P If the **–R** option is specified and a symbolic link is specified on the command line or encountered during the traversal of a file hierarchy, *chown* shall change the owner ID (and group ID, if specified) of the symbolic link if the system supports this operation. The *chown* utility shall not follow the symbolic link to any other part of the file hierarchy.

–R Recursively change file user and group IDs. For each *file* operand that names a directory, *chown* shall change the user ID (and group ID, if specified) of the directory and all files in the file hierarchy below it. Unless a **–H**, **–L**, or **–P** option is specified, it is unspecified which of these options will be used as the default.

Specifying more than one of the mutually-exclusive options **–H**, **–L**, and **–P** shall not be considered an error. The last option specified shall determine the behavior of the utility.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

owner[:*group*] A user ID and optional group ID to be assigned to *file*. The *owner* portion of this operand shall be a user name from the user database or a numeric user ID. Either specifies a user ID which shall be given to each file named by one of the *file* operands. If a numeric *owner* operand exists in the user database as a user name, the user ID number associated with that user name shall be used as the user ID. Similarly, if the *group* portion of this operand is present, it shall be a group name from the group database or a numeric group ID. Either specifies a group ID which shall be given to each file. If a numeric group operand exists in the group database as a group name, the group ID number associated with that group name shall be used as the group ID.

file A pathname of a file whose user ID is to be modified.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *chown*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The utility executed successfully and all requested changes were made.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Only the owner of a file or the user with appropriate privileges may change the owner or group of a file.

Some implementations restrict the use of *chown* to a user with appropriate privileges.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The System V and BSD versions use different exit status codes. Some implementations used the exit status as a count of the number of errors that occurred; this practice is unworkable since it can overflow the range of valid exit status values. These are masked by specifying only 0 and >0 as exit values.

The functionality of *chown* is described substantially through references to functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. In this way, there is no duplication of effort required for describing the interactions of permissions, multiple groups, and so on.

The 4.3 BSD method of specifying both owner and group was included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because:

- There are cases where the desired end condition could not be achieved using the *chgrp* and *chown* (that only changed the user ID) utilities. (If the current owner is not a member of the desired group and the desired owner is not a member of the current group, the *chown*( ) function could fail unless both owner and group are changed at the same time.)
- Even if they could be changed independently, in cases where both are being changed, there is a 100% performance penalty caused by being forced to invoke both utilities.

The BSD syntax *user*[.*group*] was changed to *user*[:*group*] in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because the period is a valid character in login names (as specified by the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, login names consist of characters in the portable filename character set). The colon character was chosen as the replacement for the period character because it would never be allowed as a character in a user name or group name on historical implementations.

The **–R** option is considered by some observers as an undesirable departure from the historical UNIX system tools approach; since a tool, *find*, already exists to recurse over directories, there seemed to be no good reason to require other tools to have to duplicate that functionality. However, the **–R** option was deemed an important user convenience, is far more efficient than forking a separate process for each element of the directory hierarchy, and is in widespread historical use.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

chmod, *chgrp*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *chown*()

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

New options **–h**, **–H**, **–L**, and **–P** are added to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard. These options affect the processing of symbolic links.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #172 is applied, changing the CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS section to "Default.".

The "otherwise, ..." text in item 3. of the DESCRIPTION is changed to "otherwise, the group ownership shall not be changed".

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/17 is applied, changing the SYNOPSIS to make it clear that **–h** and **–R** are optional.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-9 is applied, removing the **–R** from the first line of the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

cksum — write file checksums and sizes

SYNOPSIS

```
cksum [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *cksum* utility shall calculate and write to standard output a cyclic redundancy check (CRC) for each input file, and also write to standard output the number of octets in each file. The CRC used is based on the polynomial used for CRC error checking in the ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1996 standard (Ethernet).

The encoding for the CRC checksum is defined by the generating polynomial:

$$G(x)=x^{32}+x^{26}+x^{23}+x^{22}+x^{16}+x^{12}+x^{11}+x^{10}+x^{8}+x^{7}+x^{5}+x^{4}+x^{2}+x+1$$

Mathematically, the CRC value corresponding to a given file shall be defined by the following procedure:

1. The n bits to be evaluated are considered to be the coefficients of a mod 2 polynomial $M(x)$ of degree $n–1$. These n bits are the bits from the file, with the most significant bit being the most significant bit of the first octet of the file and the last bit being the least significant bit of the last octet, padded with zero bits (if necessary) to achieve an integral number of octets, followed by one or more octets representing the length of the file as a binary value, least significant octet first. The smallest number of octets capable of representing this integer shall be used.
2. $M(x)$ is multiplied by x^{32} (that is, shifted left 32 bits) and divided by $G(x)$ using mod 2 division, producing a remainder $R(x)$ of degree ≤ 31.
3. The coefficients of $R(x)$ are considered to be a 32-bit sequence.
4. The bit sequence is complemented and the result is the CRC.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a file to be checked. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input shall be used.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files can be any file type.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cksum*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

For each file processed successfully, the *cksum* utility shall write in the following format:

```
"%u %d %s\n", <checksum>, <# of octets>, <pathname>
```

If no *file* operand was specified, the pathname and its leading <space> shall be omitted.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All files were processed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *cksum* utility is typically used to quickly compare a suspect file against a trusted version of the same, such as to ensure that files transmitted over noisy media arrive intact. However, this comparison cannot be considered cryptographically secure. The chances of a damaged file producing the same CRC as the original are small; deliberate deception is difficult, but probably not impossible.

Although input files to *cksum* can be any type, the results need not be what would be expected on character special device files or on file types not described by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Since this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify the block size used when doing input, checksums of character special files need not process all of the data in those files.

The algorithm is expressed in terms of a bitstream divided into octets. If a file is transmitted between two systems and undergoes any data transformation (such as changing little-endian byte ordering to big-endian), identical CRC values cannot be expected. Implementations performing such transformations may extend *cksum* to handle such situations.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The following C-language program can be used as a model to describe the algorithm. It assumes that a **char** is one octet. It also assumes that the entire file is available for one pass through the function. This was done for simplicity in demonstrating the algorithm, rather than as an implementation model.

```
static unsigned long crctab[] = {
0x00000000,
0x04c11db7, 0x09823b6e, 0x0d4326d9, 0x130476dc, 0x17c56b6b,
0x1a864db2, 0x1e475005, 0x2608edb8, 0x22c9f00f, 0x2f8ad6d6,
0x2b4bcb61, 0x350c9b64, 0x31cd86d3, 0x3c8ea00a, 0x384fbdbd,
0x4c11db70, 0x48d0c6c7, 0x4593e01e, 0x4152fda9, 0x5f15adac,
0x5bd4b01b, 0x569796c2, 0x52568b75, 0x6a1936c8, 0x6ed82b7f,
0x639b0da6, 0x675a1011, 0x791d4014, 0x7ddc5da3, 0x709f7b7a,
0x745e66cd, 0x9823b6e0, 0x9ce2ab57, 0x91a18d8e, 0x95609039,
0x8b27c03c, 0x8fe6dd8b, 0x82a5fb52, 0x8664e6e5, 0xbe2b5b58,
0xbaea46ef, 0xb7a96036, 0xb3687d81, 0xad2f2d84, 0xa9ee3033,
0xa4ad16ea, 0xa06c0b5d, 0xd4326d90, 0xd0f37027, 0xddb056fe,
0xd9714b49, 0xc7361b4c, 0xc3f706fb, 0xceb42022, 0xca753d95,
0xf23a8028, 0xf6fb9d9f, 0xfbb8bb46, 0xff79a6f1, 0xe13ef6f4,
0xe5ffeb43, 0xe8bccd9a, 0xec7dd02d, 0x34867077, 0x30476dc0,
0x3d044b19, 0x39c556ae, 0x278206ab, 0x23431b1c, 0x2e003dc5,
0x2ac12072, 0x128e9dcf, 0x164f8078, 0x1b0ca6a1, 0x1fcdbb16,
0x018aeb13, 0x054bf6a4, 0x0808d07d, 0x0cc9cdca, 0x7897ab07,
0x7c56b6b0, 0x71159069, 0x75d48dde, 0x6b93dddb, 0x6f52c06c,
0x6211e6b5, 0x66d0fb02, 0x5e9f46bf, 0x5a5e5b08, 0x571d7dd1,
0x53dc6066, 0x4d9b3063, 0x495a2dd4, 0x44190b0d, 0x40d816ba,
0xaca5c697, 0xa864db20, 0xa527fdf9, 0xa1e6e04e, 0xbfa1b04b,
0xbb60adfc, 0xb6238b25, 0xb2e29692, 0x8aad2b2f, 0x8e6c3698,
0x832f1041, 0x87ee0df6, 0x99a95df3, 0x9d684044, 0x902b669d,
0x94ea7b2a, 0xe0b41de7, 0xe4750050, 0xe9362689, 0xedf73b3e,
0xf3b06b3b, 0xf771768c, 0xfa325055, 0xfef34de2, 0xc6bcf05f,
0xc27dede8, 0xcf3ecb31, 0xcbffd686, 0xd5b88683, 0xd1799b34,
0xdc3abded, 0xd8fba05a, 0x690ce0ee, 0x6dcdfd59, 0x608edb80,
0x644fc637, 0x7a089632, 0x7ec98b85, 0x738aad5c, 0x774bb0eb,
0x4f040d56, 0x4bc510e1, 0x46863638, 0x42472b8f, 0x5c007b8a,
0x58c1663d, 0x558240e4, 0x51435d53, 0x251d3b9e, 0x21dc2629,
0x2c9f00f0, 0x285e1d47, 0x36194d42, 0x32d850f5, 0x3f9b762c,
0x3b5a6b9b, 0x0315d626, 0x07d4cb91, 0x0a97ed48, 0x0e56f0ff,
0x1011a0fa, 0x14d0bd4d, 0x19939b94, 0x1d528623, 0xf12f560e,
0xf5ee4bb9, 0xf8ad6d60, 0xfc6c70d7, 0xe22b20d2, 0xe6ea3d65,
0xeba91bbc, 0xef68060b, 0xd727bbb6, 0xd3e6a601, 0xdea580d8,
0xda649d6f, 0xc423cd6a, 0xc0e2d0dd, 0xcda1f604, 0xc960ebb3,
0xbd3e8d7e, 0xb9ff90c9, 0xb4bcb610, 0xb07daba7, 0xae3afba2,
0xaafbe615, 0xa7b8c0cc, 0xa379dd7b, 0x9b3660c6, 0x9ff77d71,
0x92b45ba8, 0x9675461f, 0x8832161a, 0x8cf30bad, 0x81b02d74,
0x857130c3, 0x5d8a9099, 0x594b8d2e, 0x5408abf7, 0x50c9b640,
0x4e8ee645, 0x4a4ffbf2, 0x470cdd2b, 0x43cdc09c, 0x7b827d21,
0x7f436096, 0x7200464f, 0x76c15bf8, 0x68860bfd, 0x6c47164a,
0x61043093, 0x65c52d24, 0x119b4be9, 0x155a565e, 0x18197087,
0x1cd86d30, 0x029f3d35, 0x065e2082, 0x0b1d065b, 0x0fdc1bec,
0x3793a651, 0x3352bbe6, 0x3e119d3f, 0x3ad08088, 0x2497d08d,
```



```
0x2056cd3a, 0x2d15ebe3, 0x29d4f654, 0xc5a92679, 0xc1683bce,
0xcc2b1d17, 0xc8ea00a0, 0xd6ad50a5, 0xd26c4d12, 0xdf2f6bcb,
0xdbee767c, 0xe3a1cbc1, 0xe760d676, 0xea23f0af, 0xeee2ed18,
0xf0a5bd1d, 0xf464a0aa, 0xf9278673, 0xfde69bc4, 0x89b8fd09,
0x8d79e0be, 0x803ac667, 0x84fbdbd0, 0x9abc8bd5, 0x9e7d9662,
0x933eb0bb, 0x97ffad0c, 0xafb010b1, 0xab710d06, 0xa6322bdf,
0xa2f33668, 0xbcb4666d, 0xb8757bda, 0xb5365d03, 0xb1f740b4
};

unsigned long memcrc(const unsigned char *b, size_t n)
{
/*  Input arguments:
 *  const char*   b == byte sequence to checksum
 *  size_t        n == length of sequence
 */

    register unsigned   i, c, s = 0;

    for (i = n; i > 0; --i) {
        c = (unsigned)(*b++);
        s = (s << 8) ^ crctab[(s >> 24) ^ c];
    }

    /* Extend with the length of the string. */
    while (n != 0) {
        c = n & 0377;
        n >>= 8;
        s = (s << 8) ^ crctab[(s >> 24) ^ c];
    }

    return ~s;
}
```

The historical practice of writing the number of "blocks" has been changed to writing the number of octets, since the latter is not only more useful, but also since historical implementations have not been consistent in defining what a "block" meant.

The algorithm used was selected to increase the operational robustness of *cksum*. Neither the System V nor BSD *sum* algorithm was selected. Since each of these was different and each was the default behavior on those systems, no realistic compromise was available if either were selected—some set of historical applications would break. Therefore, the name was changed to *cksum*. Although the historical *sum* commands will probably continue to be provided for many years, programs designed for portability across systems should use the new name.

The algorithm selected is based on that used by the ISO/IEC 8802-3: 1996 standard (Ethernet) for the frame check sequence field. The algorithm used does not match the technical definition of a *checksum*; the term is used for historical reasons. The length of the file is included in the CRC calculation because this parallels inclusion of a length field by Ethernet in its CRC, but also because it guards against inadvertent collisions between files that begin with different series of zero octets. The chance that two different files produce identical CRCs is much greater when their lengths are not considered. Keeping the length and the checksum of the file itself separate would yield a slightly more robust algorithm, but historical usage has always been that a single number (the checksum as printed) represents the signature of the file. It was decided that historical usage was the more important consideration.

Early proposals contained modifications to the Ethernet algorithm that involved extracting table values whenever an intermediate result became zero. This was demonstrated to be less robust than the current method and mathematically difficult to describe or justify.

The calculation used is identical to that given in pseudo-code in the referenced Sarwate article. The pseudo-code rendition is:

```
X <– 0; Y <– 0;
for i <– m –1 step –1 until 0 do
    begin
    T <– X(1) ^ A[i];
    X(1) <– X(0); X(0) <– Y(1); Y(1) <– Y(0); Y(0) <– 0;
    comment: f[T] and f’[T] denote the T-th words in the
        table f and f’ ;
    X <– X ^ f[T]; Y <– Y ^ f’[T];
    end
```

The pseudo-code is reproduced exactly as given; however, note that in the case of *cksum*, **A[i]** represents a byte of the file, the words **X** and **Y** are treated as a single 32-bit value, and the tables **f** and **f’** are a single table containing 32-bit values.

The referenced Sarwate article also discusses generating the table.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

None.

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

cmp — compare two files

SYNOPSIS

```
cmp [-l|-s] file1 file2
```

DESCRIPTION

The *cmp* utility shall compare two files. The *cmp* utility shall write no output if the files are the same. Under default options, if they differ, it shall write to standard output the byte and line number at which the first difference occurred. Bytes and lines shall be numbered beginning with 1.

OPTIONS

The *cmp* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–l (Lowercase ell.) Write the byte number (decimal) and the differing bytes (octal) for each difference.

–s Write nothing for differing files; return exit status only.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file1 A pathname of the first file to be compared. If *file1* is `'-'`, the standard input shall be used.

file2 A pathname of the second file to be compared. If *file2* is `'-'`, the standard input shall be used.

If both *file1* and *file2* refer to standard input or refer to the same FIFO special, block special, or character special file, the results are undefined.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if the *file1* or *file2* operand refers to standard input. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files can be any file type.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cmp*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to

standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

In the POSIX locale, results of the comparison shall be written to standard output. When no options are used, the format shall be:

```
"%s %s differ: char %d, line %d\n", file1, file2,
    <byte number>, <line number>
```

When the **–l** option is used, the format shall be:

```
"%d %o %o\n", <byte number>, <differing byte>,
    <differing byte>
```

for each byte that differs. The first <*differing byte*> number is from *file1* while the second is from *file2*. In both cases, <*byte number*> shall be relative to the beginning of the file, beginning with 1.

No output shall be written to standard output when the **–s** option is used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages. If the **–l** option is used and *file1* and *file2* differ in length, or if the **–s** option is not used and *file1* and *file2* are identical for the entire length of the shorter file, in the POSIX locale the following diagnostic message shall be written:

```
"cmp: EOF on %s%s\n", <name of shorter file>, <additional info>
```

The <*additional info*> field shall either be null or a string that starts with a <blank> and contains no <newline>s. Some implementations report on the number of lines in this case.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The files are identical.

1 The files are different; this includes the case where one file is identical to the first part of the other.

>1 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Although input files to *cmp* can be any type, the results might not be what would be expected on character special device files or on file types not described by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Since this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify the block size used when doing input, comparisons of character special files need not compare all of the data in those files.

For files which are not text files, line numbers simply reflect the presence of a <newline>, without any implication that the file is organized into lines.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The global language in Section 1.11 indicates that using two mutually-exclusive options together produces unspecified results. Some System V implementations consider the option usage:

```
cmp -l -s ...
```

to be an error. They also treat:

```
cmp -s -l ...
```

as if no options were specified. Both of these behaviors are considered bugs, but are allowed.

The word **char** in the standard output format comes from historical usage, even though it is actually a byte number. When *cmp* is supported in other locales, implementations are encouraged to use the word *byte* or its equivalent in another language. Users should not interpret this difference to indicate that the functionality of the utility changed between locales.

Some implementations report on the number of lines in the identical-but-shorter file case. This is allowed by the inclusion of the <*additional info*> fields in the output format. The restriction on having a leading <blank> and no <newline>s is to make parsing for the filename easier. It is recognized that some filenames containing white-space characters make parsing difficult anyway, but the restriction does aid programs used on systems where the names are predominantly well behaved.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

comm, *diff*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-96 is applied, updating the STDERR section.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

comm — select or reject lines common to two files

SYNOPSIS

```
comm [–123] file1 file2
```

DESCRIPTION

The *comm* utility shall read *file1* and *file2*, which should be ordered in the current collating sequence, and produce three text columns as output: lines only in *file1*, lines only in *file2*, and lines in both files.

If the lines in both files are not ordered according to the collating sequence of the current locale, the results are unspecified.

OPTIONS

The *comm* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–1 Suppress the output column of lines unique to *file1*.

–2 Suppress the output column of lines unique to *file2*.

–3 Suppress the output column of lines duplicated in *file1* and *file2*.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file1 A pathname of the first file to be compared. If *file1* is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

file2 A pathname of the second file to be compared. If *file2* is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

If both *file1* and *file2* refer to standard input or to the same FIFO special, block special, or character special file, the results are undefined.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if one of the *file1* or *file2* operands refers to standard input. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *comm*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the collating sequence *comm* expects to have been used when the input files were sorted.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The *comm* utility shall produce output depending on the options selected. If the **–1**, **–2**, and **–3** options are all selected, *comm* shall write nothing to standard output.

If the **–1** option is not selected, lines contained only in *file1* shall be written using the format:

```
"%s\n", <line in file1>
```

If the **–2** option is not selected, lines contained only in *file2* are written using the format:

```
"%s%s\n", <lead>, <line in file2>
```

where the string <*lead*> is as follows:

<tab> The **–1** option is not selected.

null string The **–1** option is selected.

If the **–3** option is not selected, lines contained in both files shall be written using the format:

```
"%s%s\n", <lead>, <line in both>
```

where the string <*lead*> is as follows:

<tab><tab> Neither the **–1** nor the **–2** option is selected.

<tab> Exactly one of the **–1** and **–2** options is selected.

null string Both the **–1** and **–2** options are selected.

If the input files were ordered according to the collating sequence of the current locale, the lines written shall be in the collating sequence of the original lines.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were successfully output as specified.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

If the input files are not properly presorted, the output of *comm* might not be useful.

EXAMPLES

If a file named **xcu** contains a sorted list of the utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, a file named **xpg3** contains a sorted list of the utilities specified in the X/Open Portability Guide, Issue 3, and a file named **svid89** contains a sorted list of the utilities in the System V Interface Definition Third Edition:

```
comm –23 xcu xpg3 | comm –23 – svid89
```

would print a list of utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x not specified by either of the other documents:

```
comm –12 xcu xpg3 | comm –12 – svid89
```

would print a list of utilities specified by all three documents, and:

```
comm –12 xpg3 svid89 | comm –23 – xcu
```

would print a list of utilities specified by both XPG3 and the SVID, but not specified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

cmp, *diff*, *sort*, *uniq*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

NAME

command — execute a simple command

SYNOPSIS

```
command [-p] command_name [argument...]
command [-v|-V] command_name
```

DESCRIPTION

The *command* utility shall cause the shell to treat the arguments as a simple command, suppressing the shell function lookup that is described in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48), item 1b.

If the *command_name* is the same as the name of one of the special built-in utilities, the special properties in the enumerated list at the beginning of Section 2.14 shall not occur. In every other respect, if *command_name* is not the name of a function, the effect of *command* (with no options) shall be the same as omitting *command*.

When the **-v** or **-V** option is used, the *command* utility shall provide information concerning how a command name is interpreted by the shell.

OPTIONS

The *command* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

-p Perform the command search using a default value for *PATH* that is guaranteed to find all of the standard utilities.

-v Write a string to standard output that indicates the pathname or command that will be used by the shell, in the current shell execution environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)), to invoke *command_name*, but do not invoke *command_name*.

- Utilities, regular built-in utilities, *command_name*s including a slash character, and any implementation-defined functions that are found using the *PATH* variable (as described in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48)), shall be written as absolute pathnames.
- Shell functions, special built-in utilities, regular built-in utilities not associated with a *PATH* search, and shell reserved words shall be written as just their names.
- An alias shall be written as a command line that represents its alias definition.
- Otherwise, no output shall be written and the exit status shall reflect that the name was not found.

-V Write a string to standard output that indicates how the name given in the *command_name* operand will be interpreted by the shell, in the current shell execution environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)), but do not invoke *command_name*. Although the format of this string is unspecified, it shall indicate in which of the following categories *command_name* falls and shall include the information stated:

- Utilities, regular built-in utilities, and any implementation-defined functions that are found using the *PATH* variable (as described in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48)), shall be identified as such and include the absolute pathname in the string.

- Other shell functions shall be identified as functions.
- Aliases shall be identified as aliases and their definitions included in the string.
- Special built-in utilities shall be identified as special built-in utilities.
- Regular built-in utilities not associated with a *PATH* search shall be identified as regular built-in utilities. (The term "regular" need not be used.)
- Shell reserved words shall be identified as reserved words.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

argument One of the strings treated as an argument to *command_name*.

command_name
The name of a utility or a special built-in utility.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *command*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PATH Determine the search path used during the command search described in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48), except as described under the **–p** option.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

When the **–v** option is specified, standard output shall be formatted as:

```
"%s\n", <pathname or command>
```

When the **–V** option is specified, standard output shall be formatted as:

```
"%s\n", <unspecified>
```

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

When the **–v** or **–V** options are specified, the following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 The *command_name* could not be found or an error occurred.

Otherwise, the following exit values shall be returned:

126 The utility specified by *command_name* was found but could not be invoked.

127 An error occurred in the *command* utility or the utility specified by *command_name* could not be found.

Otherwise, the exit status of *command* shall be that of the simple command specified by the arguments to *command*.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The order for command search allows functions to override regular built-ins and path searches. This utility is necessary to allow functions that have the same name as a utility to call the utility (instead of a recursive call to the function).

The system default path is available using *getconf*; however, since *getconf* may need to have the *PATH* set up before it can be called itself, the following can be used:

```
command –p getconf _CS_PATH
```

There are some advantages to suppressing the special characteristics of special built-ins on occasion. For example:

```
command exec > unwritable-file
```

does not cause a non-interactive script to abort, so that the output status can be checked by the script.

The *command*, *env*, *nohup*, *time*, and *xargs* utilities have been specified to use exit code 127 if an error occurs so that applications can distinguish "failure to find a utility" from "invoked utility exited with an error indication". The value 127 was chosen because it is not commonly used for other meanings; most utilities use small values for "normal error conditions" and the values above 128 can be confused with termination due to receipt of a signal. The value 126 was chosen in a similar manner to indicate that the utility could be found, but not invoked. Some scripts produce meaningful error messages differentiating the 126 and 127 cases. The distinction between exit codes 126 and 127 is based on KornShell practice that uses 127 when all attempts to *exec* the utility fail with [ENOENT], and uses 126 when any attempt to *exec* the utility fails for any other reason.

Since the **–v** and **–V** options of *command* produce output in relation to the current shell execution environment, *command* is generally provided as a shell regular built-in. If it is called in a subshell or separate utility execution environment, such as one of the following:

```
(PATH=foo command –v)
 nohup command –v
```

it does not necessarily produce correct results. For example, when called with *nohup* or an *exec* function, in a separate utility execution environment, most implementations are not able to identify aliases, functions, or special built-ins.

Two types of regular built-ins could be encountered on a system and these are described separately by *command*. The description of command search in Section 2.9.1.1 allows for a standard utility to be implemented as a regular built-in as long as it is found in the appropriate place in a *PATH* search. So, for example, *command* –**v** *true* might yield **/bin/true** or some similar pathname. Other implementation-defined utilities that are not defined by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x might exist only as built-ins and have no pathname associated with them. These produce output identified as (regular) built-ins. Applications encountering these are not able to count on *exec*ing them, using them with *nohup*, overriding them with a different *PATH*, and so on.

EXAMPLES

1. Make a version of *cd* that always prints out the new working directory exactly once:

```
cd() {
    command cd "$@" >/dev/null
    pwd
}
```

2. Start off a "secure shell script" in which the script avoids being spoofed by its parent:

```
IFS='
'
#    The preceding value should be <space><tab><newline>.
#    Set IFS to its default value.

\unalias –a
#    Unset all possible aliases.
#    Note that unalias is escaped to prevent an alias
#    being used for unalias.

unset –f command
#    Ensure command is not a user function.

PATH="$(command –p getconf _CS_PATH):$PATH"
#    Put on a reliable PATH prefix.

#    ...
```

At this point, given correct permissions on the directories called by *PATH*, the script has the ability to ensure that any utility it calls is the intended one. It is being very cautious because it assumes that implementation extensions may be present that would allow user functions to exist when it is invoked; this capability is not specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, but it is not prohibited as an extension. For example, the *ENV* variable precedes the invocation of the script with a user start-up script. Such a script could define functions to spoof the application.

RATIONALE

Since *command* is a regular built-in utility it is always found prior to the *PATH* search.

There is nothing in the description of *command* that implies the command line is parsed any differently from that of any other simple command. For example:

```
command a | b ; c
```

is not parsed in any special way that causes `'|'` or `';'` to be treated other than a pipe operator or semicolon or that prevents function lookup on **b** or **c**.

The *command* utility is somewhat similar to the Eighth Edition shell *builtin* command, but since

command also goes to the file system to search for utilities, the name *builtin* would not be intuitive.

The *command* utility is most likely to be provided as a regular built-in. It is not listed as a special built-in for the following reasons:

- The removal of exportable functions made the special precedence of a special built-in unnecessary.
- A special built-in has special properties (see Section 2.14 (on page 64)) that were inappropriate for invoking other utilities. For example, two commands such as:

  ```
  date > unwritable-file
  ```

  ```
  command date > unwritable-file
  ```

  would have entirely different results; in a non-interactive script, the former would continue to execute the next command, the latter would abort. Introducing this semantic difference along with suppressing functions was seen to be non-intuitive.

The **−p** option is present because it is useful to be able to ensure a safe path search that finds all the standard utilities. This search might not be identical to the one that occurs through one of the *exec* functions (as defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x) when *PATH* is unset. At the very least, this feature is required to allow the script to access the correct version of *getconf* so that the value of the default path can be accurately retrieved.

The *command* **−v** and **−V** options were added to satisfy requirements from users that are currently accomplished by three different historical utilities: *type* in the System V shell, *whence* in the KornShell, and *which* in the C shell. Since there is no historical agreement on how and what to accomplish here, the POSIX *command* utility was enhanced and the historical utilities were left unmodified. The C shell *which* merely conducts a path search. The KornShell *whence* is more elaborate—in addition to the categories required by POSIX, it also reports on tracked aliases, exported aliases, and undefined functions.

The output format of **−V** was left mostly unspecified because human users are its only audience. Applications should not be written to care about this information; they can use the output of **−v** to differentiate between various types of commands, but the additional information that may be emitted by the more verbose **−V** is not needed and should not be arbitrarily constrained in its verbosity or localization for application parsing reasons.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48), Section 2.12 (on page 61), Section 2.14 (on page 64), *sh*, *type*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *exec*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 7

The *command* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

10345 **NAME**

10346 compress — compress data

10347 **SYNOPSIS**

10348 XSI
```
compress [–fv] [–b bits] [file...]
```
10349
```
compress [–cfv] [–b bits] [file]
```

10350 **DESCRIPTION**

10351 The *compress* utility shall attempt to reduce the size of the named files by using adaptive Lempel-
10352 Ziv coding algorithm.

10353 **Note:** Lempel-Ziv is US Patent 4464650, issued to William Eastman, Abraham Lempel, Jacob Ziv,
10354 Martin Cohn on August 7th, 1984, and assigned to Sperry Corporation.

10355 Lempel-Ziv-Welch compression is covered by US Patent 4558302, issued to Terry A. Welch on
10356 December 10th, 1985, and assigned to Sperry Corporation.

10357 On systems not supporting adaptive Lempel-Ziv coding algorithm, the input files shall not be
10358 changed and an error value greater than two shall be returned. Except when the output is to the
10359 standard output, each file shall be replaced by one with the extension **.Z**. If the invoking process
10360 has appropriate privileges, the ownership, modes, access time, and modification time of the
10361 original file are preserved. If appending the **.Z** to the filename would make the name exceed
10362 {NAME_MAX} bytes, the command shall fail. If no files are specified, the standard input shall be
10363 compressed to the standard output.

10364 **OPTIONS**

10365 The *compress* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
10366 Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

10367 The following options shall be supported:

10368 **–b** *bits* Specify the maximum number of bits to use in a code. For a conforming
10369 application, the *bits* argument shall be:

10370 `9 <= bits <= 14`

10371 The implementation may allow *bits* values of greater than 14. The default is 14, 15,
10372 or 16.

10373 **–c** Cause *compress* to write to the standard output; the input file is not changed, and
10374 no **.Z** files are created.

10375 **–f** Force compression of *file*, even if it does not actually reduce the size of the file, or if
10376 the corresponding *file***.Z** file already exists. If the **–f** option is not given, and the
10377 process is not running in the background, the user is prompted as to whether an
10378 existing *file***.Z** file should be overwritten.

10379 **–v** Write the percentage reduction of each file to standard error.

10380 **OPERANDS**

10381 The following operand shall be supported:

10382 *file* A pathname of a file to be compressed.

10383 **STDIN**

10384 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`.

INPUT FILES

If *file* operands are specified, the input files contain the data to be compressed.

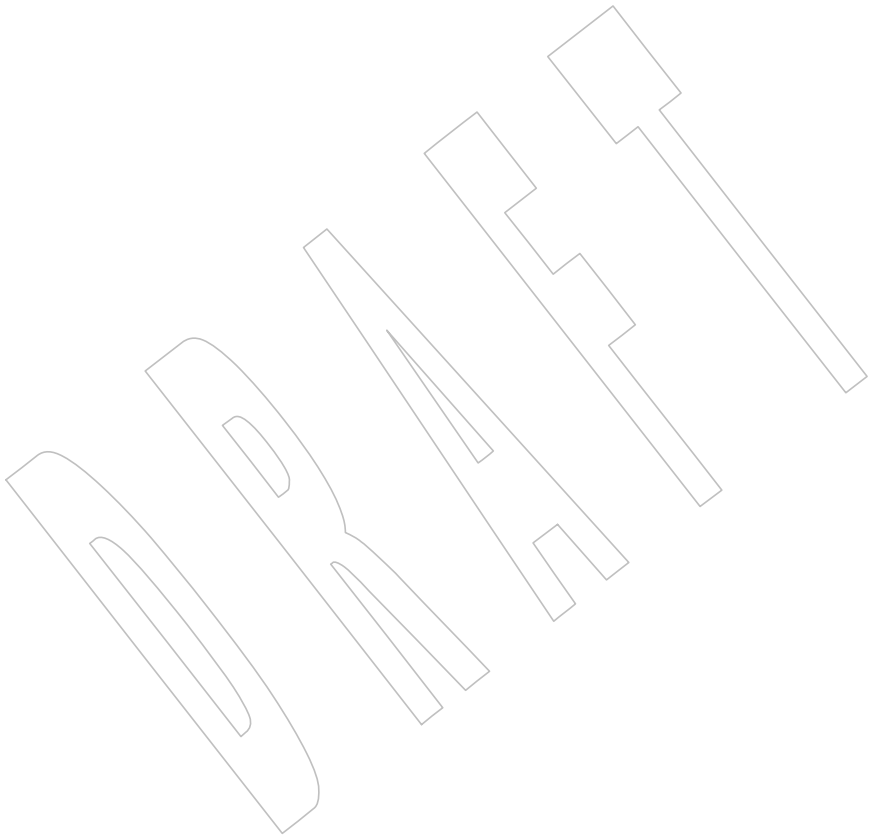
ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *compress*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as



APPLICATION USAGE

The amount of compression obtained depends on the size of the input, the number of *bits* per code, and the distribution of common substrings. Typically, text such as source code or English is reduced by 50-60%. Compression is generally much better than that achieved by Huffman coding or adaptive Huffman coding (*compact*), and takes less time to compute.

Although *compress* strictly follows the default actions upon receipt of a signal or when an error occurs, some unexpected results may occur. In some implementations it is likely that a partially compressed file is left in place, alongside its uncompressed input file. Since the general operation of *compress* is to delete the uncompressed file only after the **.Z** file has been successfully filled, an application should always carefully check the exit status of *compress* before arbitrarily deleting files that have like-named neighbors with **.Z** suffixes.

The limit of 14 on the *bits* option-argument is to achieve portability to all systems (within the restrictions imposed by the lack of an explicit published file format). Some implementations based on 16-bit architectures cannot support 15 or 16-bit uncompression.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

uncompress, *zcat*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

An error case is added for systems not supporting adaptive Lempel-Ziv coding.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

cp — copy files

SYNOPSIS

```
cp [–fip] source_file target_file
cp [–fip] source_file... target
cp –R [–H|–L|–P] [–fip] source_file... target
```

DESCRIPTION

The first synopsis form is denoted by two operands, neither of which are existing files of type directory. The *cp* utility shall copy the contents of *source_file* (or, if *source_file* is a file of type symbolic link, the contents of the file referenced by *source_file*) to the destination path named by *target_file.*

The second synopsis form is denoted by two or more operands where the **–R** option is not specified and the first synopsis form is not applicable. It shall be an error if any *source_file* is a file of type directory, if *target* does not exist, or if *target* does not name a directory. The *cp* utility shall copy the contents of each *source_file* (or, if *source_file* is a file of type symbolic link, the contents of the file referenced by *source_file*) to the destination path named by the concatenation of *target*, a slash character, and the last component of *source_file*.

The third and fourth synopsis forms are denoted by two or more operands where the **–R** option is specified. The *cp* utility shall copy each file in the file hierarchy rooted in each *source_file* to a destination path named as follows:

- If *target* exists and names an existing directory, the name of the corresponding destination path for each file in the file hierarchy shall be the concatenation of *target*, a slash character, and the pathname of the file relative to the directory containing *source_file*.
- If *target* does not exist and two operands are specified, the name of the corresponding destination path for *source_file* shall be *target*; the name of the corresponding destination path for all other files in the file hierarchy shall be the concatenation of *target*, a slash character, and the pathname of the file relative to *source_file*.

It shall be an error if *target* does not exist and more than two operands are specified, or if *target* exists and does not name a directory.

In the following description, the term *dest_file* refers to the file named by the destination path. The term *source_file* refers to the file that is being copied, whether specified as an operand or a file in a file hierarchy rooted in a *source_file* operand. If *source_file* is a file of type symbolic link:

- If the **–R** option was not specified, *cp* shall take actions based on the type and contents of the file referenced by the symbolic link, and not by the symbolic link itself.
- If the **–R** option was specified:
  - If none of the options **–H**, **–L**, nor **–P** were specified, it is unspecified which of **–H**, **–L**, or **–P** will be used as a default.
  - If the **–H** option was specified, *cp* shall take actions based on the type and contents of the file referenced by any symbolic link specified as a *source_file* operand.
  - If the **–L** option was specified, *cp* shall take actions based on the type and contents of the file referenced by any symbolic link specified as a *source_file* operand or any symbolic links encountered during traversal of a file hierarchy.

— If the **−P** option was specified, *cp* shall copy any symbolic link specified as a *source_file* operand and any symbolic links encountered during traversal of a file hierarchy, and shall not follow any symbolic links.

For each *source_file*, the following steps shall be taken:

1. If *source_file* references the same file as *dest_file*, *cp* may write a diagnostic message to standard error; it shall do nothing more with *source_file* and shall go on to any remaining files.
2. If *source_file* is of type directory, the following steps shall be taken:
   a. If the **−R** option was not specified, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with *source_file*, and go on to any remaining files.
   b. If *source_file* was not specified as an operand and *source_file* is dot or dot-dot, *cp* shall do nothing more with *source_file* and go on to any remaining files.
   c. If *dest_file* exists and it is a file type not specified by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the behavior is implementation-defined.
   d. If *dest_file* exists and it is not of type directory, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with *source_file* or any files below *source_file* in the file hierarchy, and go on to any remaining files.
   e. If the directory *dest_file* does not exist, it shall be created with file permission bits set to the same value as those of *source_file*, modified by the file creation mask of the user if the **−p** option was not specified, and then bitwise-inclusively OR'ed with S_IRWXU. If *dest_file* cannot be created, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with *source_file*, and go on to any remaining files. It is unspecified if *cp* attempts to copy files in the file hierarchy rooted in *source_file*.
   f. The files in the directory *source_file* shall be copied to the directory *dest_file*, taking the four steps (1 to 4) listed here with the files as *source_file*s.
   g. If *dest_file* was created, its file permission bits shall be changed (if necessary) to be the same as those of *source_file*, modified by the file creation mask of the user if the **−p** option was not specified.
   h. The *cp* utility shall do nothing more with *source_file* and go on to any remaining files.
3. If *source_file* is of type regular file, the following steps shall be taken:
   a. If *dest_file* exists, the following steps shall be taken:
      i. If the **−i** option is in effect, the *cp* utility shall write a prompt to the standard error and read a line from the standard input. If the response is not affirmative, *cp* shall do nothing more with *source_file* and go on to any remaining files.
      ii. A file descriptor for *dest_file* shall be obtained by performing actions equivalent to the *open*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x called using *dest_file* as the *path* argument, and the bitwise-inclusive OR of O_WRONLY and O_TRUNC as the *oflag* argument.
      iii. If the attempt to obtain a file descriptor fails and the **−f** option is in effect, *cp* shall attempt to remove the file by performing actions equivalent to the *unlink*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x called using *dest_file* as the *path* argument. If this attempt succeeds, *cp* shall continue with step 3b.

b. If *dest_file* does not exist, a file descriptor shall be obtained by performing actions equivalent to the *open*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x called using *dest_file* as the *path* argument, and the bitwise-inclusive OR of O_WRONLY and O_CREAT as the *oflag* argument. The file permission bits of *source_file* shall be the *mode* argument.

c. If the attempt to obtain a file descriptor fails, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with *source_file*, and go on to any remaining files.

d. The contents of *source_file* shall be written to the file descriptor. Any write errors shall cause *cp* to write a diagnostic message to standard error and continue to step 3e.

e. The file descriptor shall be closed.

f. The *cp* utility shall do nothing more with *source_file*. If a write error occurred in step 3d, it is unspecified if *cp* continues with any remaining files. If no write error occurred in step 3d, *cp* shall go on to any remaining files.

4. Otherwise, the following steps shall be taken:

a. If the **–R** option was specified, the following steps shall be taken:

i. The *dest_file* shall be created with the same file type as *source_file*.

ii. If *source_file* is a file of type FIFO, the file permission bits shall be the same as those of *source_file*, modified by the file creation mask of the user if the **–p** option was not specified. Otherwise, the permissions, owner ID, and group ID of *dest_file* are implementation-defined.

If this creation fails for any reason, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with *source_file*, and go on to any remaining files.

iii. If *source_file* is a file of type symbolic link, and the options require the symbolic link itself to be acted upon, the pathname contained in *dest_file* shall be the same as the pathname contained in *source_file*.

If this fails for any reason, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with *source_file*, and go on to any remaining files.

If the implementation provides additional or alternate access control mechanisms (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.4, File Access Permissions), their effect on copies of files is implementation-defined.

OPTIONS

The *cp* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–f If a file descriptor for a destination file cannot be obtained, as described in step 3.a.ii., attempt to unlink the destination file and proceed.

–H Take actions based on the type and contents of the file referenced by any symbolic link specified as a *source_file* operand.

–i Write a prompt to standard error before copying to any existing non-directory destination file. If the response from the standard input is affirmative, the copy shall be attempted; otherwise, it shall not.

–L Take actions based on the type and contents of the file referenced by any symbolic link specified as a *source_file* operand or any symbolic links encountered during traversal of a file hierarchy.

–P Take actions on any symbolic link specified as a *source_file* operand or any symbolic link encountered during traversal of a file hierarchy.

–p Duplicate the following characteristics of each source file in the corresponding destination file:

1. The time of last data modification and time of last access. If this duplication fails for any reason, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error.
2. The user ID and group ID. If this duplication fails for any reason, it is unspecified whether *cp* writes a diagnostic message to standard error.
3. The file permission bits and the S_ISUID and S_ISGID bits. Other, implementation-defined, bits may be duplicated as well. If this duplication fails for any reason, *cp* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error.

If the user ID or the group ID cannot be duplicated, the file permission bits S_ISUID and S_ISGID shall be cleared. If these bits are present in the source file but are not duplicated in the destination file, it is unspecified whether *cp* writes a diagnostic message to standard error.

The order in which the preceding characteristics are duplicated is unspecified. The *dest_file* shall not be deleted if these characteristics cannot be preserved.

–R Copy file hierarchies.

Specifying more than one of the mutually-exclusive options **–H**, **–L**, and **–P** shall not be considered an error. The last option specified shall determine the behavior of the utility.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

source_file A pathname of a file to be copied.

target_file A pathname of an existing or nonexistent file, used for the output when a single file is copied.

target A pathname of a directory to contain the copied files.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used to read an input line in response to each prompt specified in the STDERR section. Otherwise, the standard input shall not be used.

INPUT FILES

The input files specified as operands may be of any file type.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cp*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements used in the extended regular expression defined for

the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classes used in the extended regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale for the processing of affirmative responses that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
Not used.

STDERR
A prompt shall be written to standard error under the conditions specified in the DESCRIPTION section. The prompt shall contain the destination pathname, but its format is otherwise unspecified. Otherwise, the standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
The output files may be of any type.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All files were copied successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
If *cp* is prematurely terminated by a signal or error, files or file hierarchies may be only partially copied and files and directories may have incorrect permissions or access and modification times.

APPLICATION USAGE
The set-user-ID and set-group-ID bits are explicitly cleared when files are created. This is to prevent users from creating programs that are set-user-ID or set-group-ID to them when copying files or to make set-user-ID or set-group-ID files accessible to new groups of users. For example, if a file is set-user-ID and the copy has a different group ID than the source, a new group of users has execute permission to a set-user-ID program than did previously. In particular, this is a problem for superusers copying users' trees.

EXAMPLES
None.

RATIONALE
The **–i** option exists on BSD systems, giving applications and users a way to avoid accidentally removing files when copying. Although the 4.3 BSD version does not prompt if the standard input is not a terminal, the standard developers decided that use of **–i** is a request for interaction, so when the destination path exists, the utility takes instructions from whatever responds on standard input.

The exact format of the interactive prompts is unspecified. Only the general nature of the contents of prompts are specified because implementations may desire more descriptive prompts than those used on historical implementations. Therefore, an application using the **–i** option relies on the system to provide the most suitable dialog directly with the user, based on the behavior specified.

The **–p** option is historical practice on BSD systems, duplicating the time of last data modification and time of last access. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x extends it to preserve the user and group IDs, as well as the file permissions. This requirement has obvious problems in that the directories are almost certainly modified after being copied. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the modification times be preserved. The statement that the order in which the characteristics are duplicated is unspecified is to permit implementations to provide the maximum amount of security for the user. Implementations should take into account the obvious security issues involved in setting the owner, group, and mode in the wrong order or creating files with an owner, group, or mode different from the final value.

It is unspecified whether *cp* writes diagnostic messages when the user and group IDs cannot be set due to the widespread practice of users using **–p** to duplicate some portion of the file characteristics, indifferent to the duplication of others. Historic implementations only write diagnostic messages on errors other than [EPERM].

Earlier versions of this standard included support for the **–r** option to copy file hierarchies. The **–r** option is historical practice on BSD and BSD-derived systems. This option is no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations. The **–R** option was added as a close synonym to the **–r** option, selected for consistency with all other options in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that do recursive directory descent.

The difference between **–R** and the removed **–r** option is in the treatment by *cp* of file types other than regular and directory. It was implementation-defined how the – option treated special files to allow both historical implementations and those that chose to support **–r** with the same abilities as **–R** defined by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The original **–r** flag, for historic reasons, did not handle special files any differently from regular files, but always read the file and copied its contents. This had obvious problems in the presence of special file types; for example, character devices, FIFOs, and sockets.

When a failure occurs during the copying of a file hierarchy, *cp* is required to attempt to copy files that are on the same level in the hierarchy or above the file where the failure occurred. It is unspecified if *cp* shall attempt to copy files below the file where the failure occurred (which cannot succeed in any case).

Permissions, owners, and groups of created special file types have been deliberately left as implementation-defined. This is to allow systems to satisfy special requirements (for example, allowing users to create character special devices, but requiring them to be owned by a certain group). In general, it is strongly suggested that the permissions, owner, and group be the same as if the user had run the historical *mknod*, *ln*, or other utility to create the file. It is also probable that additional privileges are required to create block, character, or other implementation-defined special file types.

Additionally, the **–p** option explicitly requires that all set-user-ID and set-group-ID permissions be discarded if any of the owner or group IDs cannot be set. This is to keep users from unintentionally giving away special privilege when copying programs.

When creating regular files, historical versions of *cp* use the mode of the source file as modified by the file mode creation mask. Other choices would have been to use the mode of the source file unmodified by the creation mask or to use the same mode as would be given to a new file created by the user (plus the execution bits of the source file) and then modify it by the file mode creation mask. In the absence of any strong reason to change historic practice, it was in large part retained.

When creating directories, historical versions of *cp* use the mode of the source directory, plus read, write, and search bits for the owner, as modified by the file mode creation mask. This is done so that *cp* can copy trees where the user has read permission, but the owner does not. A side effect is that if the file creation mask denies the owner permissions, *cp* fails. Also, once the copy is done, historical versions of *cp* set the permissions on the created directory to be the same as the source directory, unmodified by the file creation mask.

This behavior has been modified so that *cp* is always able to create the contents of the directory, regardless of the file creation mask. After the copy is done, the permissions are set to be the same as the source directory, as modified by the file creation mask. This latter change from historical behavior is to prevent users from accidentally creating directories with permissions beyond those they would normally set and for consistency with the behavior of *cp* in creating files.

It is not a requirement that *cp* detect attempts to copy a file to itself; however, implementations are strongly encouraged to do so. Historical implementations have detected the attempt in most cases.

There are two methods of copying subtrees in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The other method is described as part of the *pax* utility (see *pax*). Both methods are historical practice. The *cp* utility provides a simpler, more intuitive interface, while *pax* offers a finer granularity of control. Each provides additional functionality to the other; in particular, *pax* maintains the hard-link structure of the hierarchy, while *cp* does not. It is the intention of the standard developers that the results be similar (using appropriate option combinations in both utilities). The results are not required to be identical; there seemed insufficient gain to applications to balance the difficulty of implementations having to guarantee that the results would be exactly identical.

The wording allowing *cp* to copy a directory to implementation-defined file types not specified by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is provided so that implementations supporting symbolic links are not required to prohibit copying directories to symbolic links. Other extensions to the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x file types may need to use this loophole as well.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The **–R** option should be used instead of the obsolescent **–r** option.

SEE ALSO

mv, *find*, *ln*, *pax*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *open*( ), *unlink*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The **–r** option is marked obsolescent.

The new options **–H**, **–L**, and **–P** are added to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard. These options affect the processing of symbolic links.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #194 is applied, adding a description of the **–P** option.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/18 is applied, correcting an error in the SEE ALSO section.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-31 and SD5-XCU-ERN-42 are applied, updating the DESCRIPTION.

The obsolescent **–r** option is removed.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-102 is applied, clarifying the **–i** option within the OPTIONS section.

NAME

crontab — schedule periodic background work

SYNOPSIS

```
crontab [file]
```

UP

```
crontab [-e|-l|-r]
```

DESCRIPTION

UP The *crontab* utility shall create, replace, or edit a user's crontab entry; a crontab entry is a list of commands and the times at which they shall be executed. The new crontab entry can be input by

UP specifying *file* or input from standard input if no *file* operand is specified, or by using an editor, if **–e** is specified.

Upon execution of a command from a crontab entry, the implementation shall supply a default environment, defining at least the following environment variables:

HOME A pathname of the user's home directory.

LOGNAME The user's login name.

PATH A string representing a search path guaranteed to find all of the standard utilities.

SHELL A pathname of the command interpreter. When *crontab* is invoked as specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the value shall be a pathname for *sh*.

The values of these variables when *crontab* is invoked as specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall not affect the default values provided when the scheduled command is run.

If standard output and standard error are not redirected by commands executed from the crontab entry, any generated output or errors shall be mailed, via an implementation-defined method, to the user.

XSI Users shall be permitted to use *crontab* if their names appear in the file **cron.allow** which is located in an implementation-defined directory. If that file does not exist, the file **cron.deny**, which is located in an implementation-defined directory, shall be checked to determine whether the user shall be denied access to *crontab*. If neither file exists, only a process with appropriate privileges shall be allowed to submit a job. If only **cron.deny** exists and is empty, global usage shall be permitted. The **cron.allow** and **cron.deny** files shall consist of one user name per line.

OPTIONS

The *crontab* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

UP **–e** Edit a copy of the invoking user's crontab entry, or create an empty entry to edit if the crontab entry does not exist. When editing is complete, the entry shall be installed as the user's crontab entry.

–l (The letter ell.) List the invoking user's crontab entry.

–r Remove the invoking user's crontab entry.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file The pathname of a file that contains specifications, in the format defined in the INPUT FILES section, for crontab entries.

10812 **STDIN**

10813 See the INPUT FILES section.

10814 **INPUT FILES**

10815 In the POSIX locale, the user or application shall ensure that a crontab entry is a text file
10816 consisting of lines of six fields each. The fields shall be separated by <blank>s. The first five
10817 fields shall be integer patterns that specify the following:

10818 1. Minute [0,59]
10819 2. Hour [0,23]
10820 3. Day of the month [1,31]
10821 4. Month of the year [1,12]
10822 5. Day of the week ([0,6] with 0=Sunday)

10823 Each of these patterns can be either an asterisk (meaning all valid values), an element, or a list of
10824 elements separated by commas. An element shall be either a number or two numbers separated
10825 by a hyphen (meaning an inclusive range). The specification of days can be made by two fields
10826 (day of the month and day of the week). If month, day of month, and day of week are all
10827 asterisks, every day shall be matched. If either the month or day of month is specified as an
10828 element or list, but the day of week is an asterisk, the month and day of month fields shall
10829 specify the days that match. If both month and day of month are specified as an asterisk, but day
10830 of week is an element or list, then only the specified days of the week match. Finally, if either the
10831 month or day of month is specified as an element or list, and the day of week is also specified as
10832 an element or list, then any day matching either the month and day of month, or the day of
10833 week, shall be matched.

10834 The sixth field of a line in a crontab entry is a string that shall be executed by *sh* at the specified
10835 times. A percent sign character in this field shall be translated to a <newline>. Any character
10836 preceded by a backslash (including the `'%'`) shall cause that character to be treated literally.
10837 Only the first line (up to a `'%'` or end-of-line) of the command field shall be executed by the
10838 command interpreter. The other lines shall be made available to the command as standard input.

10839 Blank lines and those whose first non-<blank> is `'#'` shall be ignored.

10840 XSI The text files **cron.allow** and **cron.deny**, which are located in an implementation-defined
10841 directory, shall contain zero or more user names, one per line, of users who are, respectively,
10842 authorized or denied access to the service underlying the *crontab* utility.

10843 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

10844 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *crontab*:

10845 *EDITOR* Determine the editor to be invoked when the **–e** option is specified. The default
10846 editor shall be *vi*.

10847 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
10848 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
10849 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
10850 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

10851 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
10852 internationalization variables.

10853 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
10854 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
10855 arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
If the **–l** option is specified, the crontab entry shall be written to the standard output.

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
UP The user's crontab entry is not submitted, removed, edited, or listed.

APPLICATION USAGE
The format of the crontab entry shown here is guaranteed only for the POSIX locale. Other cultures may be supported with substantially different interfaces, although implementations are encouraged to provide comparable levels of functionality.

The default settings of the *HOME*, *LOGNAME*, *PATH*, and *SHELL* variables that are given to the scheduled job are not affected by the settings of those variables when *crontab* is run; as stated, they are defaults. The text about "invoked as specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x" means that the implementation may provide extensions that allow these variables to be affected at runtime, but that the user has to take explicit action in order to access the extension, such as give a new option flag or modify the format of the crontab entry.

A typical user error is to type only *crontab*; this causes the system to wait for the new crontab entry on standard input. If end-of-file is typed (generally <control>-D), the crontab entry is replaced by an empty file. In this case, the user should type the interrupt character, which prevents the crontab entry from being replaced.

EXAMPLES
1. Clean up **core** files every weekday morning at 3:15 am:

```
15 3 * * 1-5 find $HOME –name core 2>/dev/null | xargs rm –f
```

2. Mail a birthday greeting:

```
0 12 14 2 * mailx john%Happy Birthday!%Time for lunch.
```

3. As an example of specifying the two types of days:

```
0 0 1,15 * 1
```

would run a command on the first and fifteenth of each month, as well as on every Monday. To specify days by only one field, the other field should be set to `'*'`; for example:

```
0 0 * * 1
```

would run a command only on Mondays.

RATIONALE

All references to a *cron* daemon and to *cron files* have been omitted. Although historical implementations have used this arrangement, there is no reason to limit future implementations.

This description of *crontab* is designed to support only users with normal privileges. The format of the input is based on the System V *crontab*; however, there is no requirement here that the actual system database used by the *cron* daemon (or a similar mechanism) use this format internally. For example, systems derived from BSD are likely to have an additional field appended that indicates the user identity to be used when the job is submitted.

The **−e** option was adopted from the SVID as a user convenience, although it does not exist in all historical implementations.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

at

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

The *crontab* utility (except for the **−e** option) is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-95 is applied, removing the references to fixed locations for the files referenced by the *crontab* utility.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

csplit — split files based on context

SYNOPSIS

```
csplit [–ks] [–f prefix] [–n number] file arg1 ... argn
```

DESCRIPTION

The *csplit* utility shall read the file named by the *file* operand, write all or part of that file into other files as directed by the *arg* operands, and write the sizes of the files.

OPTIONS

The *csplit* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–f *prefix* Name the created files *prefix***00**, *prefix***01**, ..., *prefixn*. The default is **xx00** ... **xx***n*. If the *prefix* argument would create a filename exceeding {NAME_MAX} bytes, an error shall result, *csplit* shall exit with a diagnostic message, and no files shall be created.

–k Leave previously created files intact. By default, *csplit* shall remove created files if an error occurs.

–n *number* Use *number* decimal digits to form filenames for the file pieces. The default shall be 2.

–s Suppress the output of file size messages.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file The pathname of a text file to be split. If *file* is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

The operands *arg1* ... *argn* can be a combination of the following:

/rexp/[*offset*]

A file shall be created using the content of the lines from the current line up to, but not including, the line that results from the evaluation of the regular expression with *offset*, if any, applied. The regular expression *rexp* shall follow the rules for basic regular expressions described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic Regular Expressions. The application shall use the sequence `"\/"` to specify a slash character within the *rexp*. The optional offset shall be a positive or negative integer value representing a number of lines. A positive integer value can be preceded by `'+'`. If the selection of lines from an *offset* expression of this type would create a file with zero lines, or one with greater than the number of lines left in the input file, the results are unspecified. After the section is created, the current line shall be set to the line that results from the evaluation of the regular expression with any offset applied. If the current line is the first line in the file and a regular expression operation has not yet been performed, the pattern match of *rexp* shall be applied from the current line to the end of the file. Otherwise, the pattern match of *rexp* shall be applied from the line following the current line to the end of the file.

%rexp%[*offset*]

Equivalent to */rexp/*[*offset*], except that no file shall be created for the selected section of the input file. The application shall use the sequence `"\%"` to specify a

10972 percent-sign character within the *rexp*.

10973 *line_no* Create a file from the current line up to (but not including) the line number *line_no*.
10974 Lines in the file shall be numbered starting at one. The current line becomes
10975 *line_no*.

10976 {*num*} Repeat operand. This operand can follow any of the operands described
10977 previously. If it follows a *rexp* type operand, that operand shall be applied *num*
10978 more times. If it follows a *line_no* operand, the file shall be split every *line_no* lines,
10979 *num* times, from that point.

10980 An error shall be reported if an operand does not reference a line between the current position
10981 and the end of the file.

10982 **STDIN**

10983 See the INPUT FILES section.

10984 **INPUT FILES**

10985 The input file shall be a text file.

10986 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

10987 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *csplit*:

10988 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
10989 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
10990 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
10991 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

10992 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
10993 internationalization variables.

10994 *LC_COLLATE*
10995 Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-
10996 character collating elements within regular expressions.

10997 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
10998 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
10999 arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classes within regular
11000 expressions.

11001 *LC_MESSAGES*
11002 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
11003 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

11004 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

11005 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

11006 If the **–k** option is specified, created files shall be retained. Otherwise, the default action occurs.

11007 **STDOUT**

11008 Unless the **–s** option is used, the standard output shall consist of one line per file created, with a
11009 format as follows:

11010 `"%d\n", <file size in bytes>`

11011 **STDERR**

11012 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

11013 **OUTPUT FILES**

11014 The output files shall contain portions of the original input file; otherwise, unchanged.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

By default, created files shall be removed if an error occurs. When the **–k** option is specified, created files shall not be removed if an error occurs.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

1. This example creates four files, **cobol00** . . . **cobol03**:

   ```
   csplit –f cobol file '/procedure division/' /par5./ /par16./
   ```

   After editing the split files, they can be recombined as follows:

   ```
   cat cobol0[0–3] > file
   ```

   Note that this example overwrites the original file.

2. This example would split the file after the first 99 lines, and every 100 lines thereafter, up to 9 999 lines; this is because lines in the file are numbered from 1 rather than zero, for historical reasons:

   ```
   csplit –k file  100  {99}
   ```

3. Assuming that **prog.c** follows the C-language coding convention of ending routines with a '}' at the beginning of the line, this example creates a file containing each separate C routine (up to 21) in **prog.c**:

   ```
   csplit –k prog.c '%main(%'  '/^}/+1' {20}
   ```

RATIONALE

The **–n** option was added to extend the range of filenames that could be handled.

Consideration was given to adding a **–a** flag to use the alphabetic filename generation used by the historical *split* utility, but the functionality added by the **–n** option was deemed to make alphabetic naming unnecessary.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

sed, *split*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

The description of regular expression operands is changed to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft

standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

The *csplit* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

11063 **NAME**

11064 ctags — create a tags file (**DEVELOPMENT**, **FORTRAN**)

11065 **SYNOPSIS**

11066 SD
```
ctags [–a] [–f tagsfile] pathname...
```
11067
```
ctags –x pathname...
```

11068 **DESCRIPTION**

11069 The *ctags* utility shall be provided on systems that support the the Software Development
11070 Utilities option, and either or both of the C-Language Development Utilities option and
11071 FORTRAN Development Utilities option. On other systems, it is optional.

11072 The *ctags* utility shall write a *tagsfile* or an index of objects from C-language or FORTRAN source
11073 files specified by the *pathname* operands. The *tagsfile* shall list the locators of language-specific
11074 objects within the source files. A locator consists of a name, pathname, and either a search
11075 pattern or a line number that can be used in searching for the object definition. The objects that
11076 shall be recognized are specified in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

11077 **OPTIONS**

11078 The *ctags* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
11079 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

11080 The following options shall be supported:

11081 **–a** Append to *tagsfile*.

11082 **–f** *tagsfile* Write the object locator lists into *tagsfile* instead of the default file named **tags** in the
11083 current directory.

11084 **–x** Produce a list of object names, the line number, and filename in which each is
11085 defined, as well as the text of that line, and write this to the standard output. A
11086 *tagsfile* shall not be created when **–x** is specified.

11087 **OPERANDS**

11088 The following *pathname* operands are supported:

11089 *file***.c** Files with basenames ending with the **.c** suffix shall be treated as C-language
11090 source code. Such files that are not valid input to *c99* produce unspecified results.

11091 *file***.h** Files with basenames ending with the **.h** suffix shall be treated as C-language
11092 source code. Such files that are not valid input to *c99* produce unspecified results.

11093 *file***.f** Files with basenames ending with the **.f** suffix shall be treated as FORTRAN-
11094 language source code. Such files that are not valid input to *fort77* produce
11095 unspecified results.

11096 The handling of other files is implementation-defined.

11097 **STDIN**

11098 See the INPUT FILES section.

11099 **INPUT FILES**

11100 The input files shall be text files containing source code in the language indicated by the
11101 operand filename suffixes.

11102 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

11103 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ctags*:

11104 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
11105 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
11106 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
11107 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

11108 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
11109 internationalization variables.

11110 *LC_COLLATE*
11111 Determine the order in which output is sorted for the **–x** option. The POSIX locale
11112 determines the order in which the *tagsfile* is written.

11113 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
11114 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
11115 arguments and input files). When processing C-language source code, if the locale
11116 is not compatible with the C locale described by the ISO C standard, the results are
11117 unspecified.

11118 *LC_MESSAGES*
11119 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
11120 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

11121 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

11122 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

11123 Default.

11124 **STDOUT**

11125 The list of object name information produced by the **–x** option shall be written to standard
11126 output in the following format:

11127 `"%s %d %s %s", <object-name>, <line-number>, <filename>, <text>`

11128 where <*text*> is the text of line <*line-number*> of file <*filename*>.

11129 **STDERR**

11130 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

11131 **OUTPUT FILES**

11132 When the **–x** option is not specified, the format of the output file shall be:

11133 `"%s\t%s\t/%s/\n", <identifier>, <filename>, <pattern>`

11134 where <*pattern*> is a search pattern that could be used by an editor to find the defining instance
11135 of <*identifier*> in <*filename*> (where *defining instance* is indicated by the declarations listed in the
11136 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION).

11137 An optional circumflex (`'^'`) can be added as a prefix to <*pattern*>, and an optional dollar sign
11138 can be appended to <*pattern*> to indicate that the pattern is anchored to the beginning (end) of a
11139 line of text. Any slash or backslash characters in <*pattern*> shall be preceded by a backslash
11140 character. The anchoring circumflex, dollar sign, and escaping backslash characters shall not be
11141 considered part of the search pattern. All other characters in the search pattern shall be
11142 considered literal characters.

11143 An alternative format is:

11144 `"%s\t%s\t?%s?\n", <identifier>, <filename>, <pattern>`

11145 which is identical to the first format except that slashes in <*pattern*> shall not be preceded by
11146 escaping backslash characters, and question mark characters in <*pattern*> shall be preceded by

backslash characters.

A second alternative format is:

```
"%s\t%s\t%d\n", <identifier>, <filename>, <lineno>
```

where <*lineno*> is a decimal line number that could be used by an editor to find <*identifier*> in <*filename*>.

Neither alternative format shall be produced by *ctags* when it is used as described by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, but the standard utilities that process tags files shall be able to process those formats as well as the first format.

In any of these formats, the file shall be sorted by identifier, based on the collation sequence in the POSIX locale.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

If the operand identifies C-language source, the *ctags* utility shall attempt to produce an output line for each of the following objects:

- Function definitions
- Type definitions
- Macros with arguments

It may also produce output for any of the following objects:

- Function prototypes
- Structures
- Unions
- Global variable definitions
- Enumeration types
- Macros without arguments
- **#define** statements
- **#line** statements

Any **#if** and **#ifdef** statements shall produce no output. The tag **main** is treated specially in C programs. The tag formed shall be created by prefixing **M** to the name of the file, with the trailing **.c**, and leading pathname components (if any) removed.

On systems that do not support the C-Language Development Utilities option, *ctags* produces unspecified results for C-language source code files. It should write to standard error a message identifying this condition and cause a non-zero exit status to be produced.

If the operand identifies FORTRAN source, the *ctags* utility shall produce an output line for each function definition. It may also produce output for any of the following objects:

- Subroutine definitions
- COMMON statements
- PARAMETER statements
- DATA and BLOCK DATA statements
- Statement numbers

On systems that do not support the FORTRAN Development Utilities option, *ctags* produces unspecified results for FORTRAN source code files. It should write to standard error a message identifying this condition and cause a non-zero exit status to be produced.

It is implementation-defined what other objects (including duplicate identifiers) produce output.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The output with **–x** is meant to be a simple index that can be written out as an off-line readable function index. If the input files to *ctags* (such as **.c** files) were not created using the same locale as that in effect when *ctags* **–x** is run, results might not be as expected.

The description of C-language processing says "attempts to" because the C language can be greatly confused, especially through the use of **#define**s, and this utility would be of no use if the real C preprocessor were run to identify them. The output from *ctags* may be fooled and incorrect for various constructs.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The option list was significantly reduced from that provided by historical implementations. The **–F** option was omitted as redundant, since it is the default. The **–B** option was omitted as being of very limited usefulness. The **–t** option was omitted since the recognition of **typedef**s is now required for C source files. The **–u** option was omitted because the update function was judged to be not only inefficient, but also rarely needed.

An early proposal included a **–w** option to suppress warning diagnostics. Since the types of such diagnostics could not be described, the option was omitted as being not useful.

The text for *LC_CTYPE* about compatibility with the C locale acknowledges that the ISO C standard imposes requirements on the locale used to process C source. This could easily be a superset of that known as "the C locale" by way of implementation extensions, or one of a few alternative locales for systems supporting different codesets. No statement is made for FORTRAN because the ANSI X3.9-1978 standard (FORTRAN 77) does not (yet) define a similar locale concept. However, a general rule in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is that any time that locales do not match (preparing a file for one locale and processing it in another), the results are suspect.

The collation sequence of the tags file is not affected by *LC_COLLATE* because it is typically not used by human readers, but only by programs such as *vi* to locate the tag within the source files. Using the POSIX locale eliminates some of the problems of coordinating locales between the *ctags* file creator and the *vi* file reader.

Historically, the tags file has been used only by *ex* and *vi*. However, the format of the tags file has been published to encourage other programs to use the tags in new ways. The format allows either patterns or line numbers to find the identifiers because the historical *vi* recognizes either. The *ctags* utility does not produce the format using line numbers because it is not useful following any source file changes that add or delete lines. The documented search patterns match historical practice. It should be noted that literal leading circumflex or trailing dollar-sign characters in the search pattern will only behave correctly if anchored to the beginning of the line or end of the line by an additional circumflex or dollar-sign character.

Historical implementations also understand the objects used by the languages Pascal and sometimes LISP, and they understand the C source output by *lex* and *yacc*. The *ctags* utility is not required to accommodate these languages, although implementors are encouraged to do so.

The following historical option was not specified, as *vgrind* is not included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x:

–v If the **–v** flag is given, an index of the form expected by *vgrind* is produced on the standard output. This listing contains the function name, filename, and page number (assuming 64-line pages). Since the output is sorted into lexicographic order, it may be desired to run the output through *sort* **–f**. Sample use:

```
ctags –v files | sort –f > index vgrind –x index
```

The special treatment of the tag **main** makes the use of *ctags* practical in directories with more than one program.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

c99, *fort77*, *vi*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The OUTPUT FILES section is changed to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #168 is applied, changing "create" to "write" in the DESCRIPTION.

Issue 7

The *ctags* utility is no longer dependent on support for the User Portability Utilities option.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

11262 **NAME**

11263 cut — cut out selected fields of each line of a file

11264 **SYNOPSIS**

11265 `cut –b` *`list`* `[–n] [`*`file...`*`]`

11266 `cut –c` *`list`* `[`*`file...`*`]`

11267 `cut –f` *`list`* `[–d` *`delim`*`] [–s] [`*`file...`*`]`

11268 **DESCRIPTION**

11269 The *cut* utility shall cut out bytes (**–b** option), characters (**–c** option), or character-delimited fields
11270 (**–f** option) from each line in one or more files, concatenate them, and write them to standard
11271 output.

11272 **OPTIONS**

11273 The *cut* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
11274 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

11275 The application shall ensure that the option-argument *list* (see options **–b**, **–c**, and **–f** below) is a
11276 comma-separated list or <blank>-separated list of positive numbers and ranges. Ranges can be
11277 in three forms. The first is two positive numbers separated by a hyphen (*low–high*), which
11278 represents all fields from the first number to the second number. The second is a positive
11279 number preceded by a hyphen (*–high*), which represents all fields from field number 1 to that
11280 number. The third is a positive number followed by a hyphen (*low–*), which represents that
11281 number to the last field, inclusive. The elements in *list* can be repeated, can overlap, and can be
11282 specified in any order, but the bytes, characters, or fields selected shall be written in the order of
11283 the input data. If an element appears in the selection list more than once, it shall be written
11284 exactly once.

11285 The following options shall be supported:

11286 **–b** *list* Cut based on a *list* of bytes. Each selected byte shall be output unless the **–n** option
11287 is also specified. It shall not be an error to select bytes not present in the input line.

11288 **–c** *list* Cut based on a *list* of characters. Each selected character shall be output. It shall
11289 not be an error to select characters not present in the input line.

11290 **–d** *delim* Set the field delimiter to the character *delim*. The default is the <tab>.

11291 **–f** *list* Cut based on a *list* of fields, assumed to be separated in the file by a delimiter
11292 character (see **–d**). Each selected field shall be output. Output fields shall be
11293 separated by a single occurrence of the field delimiter character. Lines with no field
11294 delimiters shall be passed through intact, unless **–s** is specified. It shall not be an
11295 error to select fields not present in the input line.

11296 **–n** Do not split characters. When specified with the **–b** option, each element in *list* of
11297 the form *low–high* (hyphen-separated numbers) shall be modified as follows:

11298 • If the byte selected by *low* is not the first byte of a character, *low* shall be
11299 decremented to select the first byte of the character originally selected by *low*.
11300 If the byte selected by *high* is not the last byte of a character, *high* shall be
11301 decremented to select the last byte of the character prior to the character
11302 originally selected by *high*, or zero if there is no prior character. If the
11303 resulting range element has *high* equal to zero or *low* greater than *high*, the list
11304 element shall be dropped from *list* for that input line without causing an
11305 error.

11306 Each element in *list* of the form *low–* shall be treated as above with *high* set to the

number of bytes in the current line, not including the terminating <newline>. Each element in *list* of the form *–high* shall be treated as above with *low* set to 1. Each element in *list* of the form *num* (a single number) shall be treated as above with *low* set to *num* and *high* set to *num*.

–s Suppress lines with no delimiter characters, when used with the **–f** option. Unless specified, lines with no delimiters shall be passed through untouched.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of an input file. If no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files, except that line lengths shall be unlimited.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cut*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The *cut* utility output shall be a concatenation of the selected bytes, characters, or fields (one of the following):

```
"%s\n", <concatenation of bytes>
"%s\n", <concatenation of characters>
"%s\n", <concatenation of fields and field delimiters>
```

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were output successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Earlier versions of the *cut* utility worked in an environment where bytes and characters were considered equivalent (modulo <backspace> and <tab> processing in some implementations). In the extended world of multi-byte characters, the new **–b** option has been added. The **–n** option (used with **–b**) allows it to be used to act on bytes rounded to character boundaries. The algorithm specified for **–n** guarantees that:

```
cut –b 1–500 –n file > file1
cut –b 501– –n file > file2
```

ends up with all the characters in **file** appearing exactly once in **file1** or **file2**. (There is, however, a <newline> in both **file1** and **file2** for each <newline> in **file**.)

EXAMPLES

Examples of the option qualifier list:

1,4,7 Select the first, fourth, and seventh bytes, characters, or fields and field delimiters.

1–3,8 Equivalent to 1,2,3,8.

–5,10 Equivalent to 1,2,3,4,5,10.

3– Equivalent to third to last, inclusive.

The *low–high* forms are not always equivalent when used with **–b** and **–n** and multi-byte characters; see the description of **–n**.

The following command:

```
cut –d : –f 1,6 /etc/passwd
```

reads the System V password file (user database) and produces lines of the form:

```
<user ID>:<home directory>
```

Most utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x work on text files. The *cut* utility can be used to turn files with arbitrary line lengths into a set of text files containing the same data. The *paste* utility can be used to create (or recreate) files with arbitrary line lengths. For example, if **file** contains long lines:

```
cut –b 1–500 –n file > file1
cut –b 501– –n file > file2
```

creates **file1** (a text file) with lines no longer than 500 bytes (plus the <newline>) and **file2** that contains the remainder of the data from **file**. (Note that **file2** is not a text file if there are lines in **file** that are longer than 500 + {LINE_MAX} bytes.) The original file can be recreated from **file1** and **file2** using the command:

```
paste –d "\0" file1 file2 > file
```

11390 **RATIONALE**

11391 Some historical implementations do not count <backspace>s in determining character counts
11392 with the **–c** option. This may be useful for using *cut* for processing *nroff* output. It was
11393 deliberately decided not to have the **–c** option treat either <backspace>s or <tab>s in any special
11394 fashion. The *fold* utility does treat these characters specially.

11395 Unlike other utilities, some historical implementations of *cut* exit after not finding an input file,
11396 rather than continuing to process the remaining *file* operands. This behavior is prohibited by this
11397 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, where only the exit status is affected by this problem.

11398 The behavior of *cut* when provided with either mutually-exclusive options or options that do
11399 not work logically together has been deliberately left unspecified in favor of global wording in
11400 Section 1.11 (on page 18).

11401 The OPTIONS section was changed in response to IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #149. The
11402 change represents historical practice on all known systems. The original standard was
11403 ambiguous on the nature of the output.

11404 The *list* option-arguments are historically used to select the portions of the line to be written, but
11405 do not affect the order of the data. For example:

11406 `echo abcdefghi | cut –c6,2,4–7,1`

11407 yields `"abdefg"`.

11408 A proposal to enhance *cut* with the following option:

11409 **–o** Preserve the selected field order. When this option is specified, each byte, character, or field
11410 (or ranges of such) shall be written in the order specified by the *list* option-argument, even if
11411 this requires multiple outputs of the same bytes, characters, or fields.

11412 was rejected because this type of enhancement is outside the scope of the IEEE P1003.2b draft
11413 standard.

11414 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

11415 None.

11416 **SEE ALSO**

11417 *grep*, *paste*, Section 2.5

11418 **CHANGE HISTORY**

11419 First released in Issue 2.

11420 **Issue 6**

11421 The OPTIONS section is changed to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

11422 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term “must” for application requirements.

11423 **Issue 7**

11424 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

cxref — generate a C-language program cross-reference table (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
cxref [–cs] [–o file] [–w num] [–D name[=def]]... [–I dir]...
    [–U name]... file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *cxref* utility shall analyze a collection of C-language *file*s and attempt to build a cross-reference table. Information from **#define** lines shall be included in the symbol table. A sorted listing shall be written to standard output of all symbols (auto, static, and global) in each *file* separately, or with the **–c** option, in combination. Each symbol shall contain an asterisk before the declaring reference.

OPTIONS

The *cxref* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the order of the **–D**, **–I**, and **–U** options (which are identical to their interpretation by *c99*) is significant. The following options shall be supported:

–c Write a combined cross-reference of all input files.

–s Operate silently; do not print input filenames.

–o *file* Direct output to named *file*.

–w *num* Format output no wider than *num* (decimal) columns. This option defaults to 80 if *num* is not specified or is less than 51.

–D Equivalent to *c99*.

–I Equivalent to *c99*.

–U Equivalent to *c99*.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a C-language source file.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

The input files are C-language source files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *cxref*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the ordering of the output.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The standard output shall be used for the cross-reference listing, unless the **–o** option is used to select a different output file.

The format of standard output is unspecified, except that the following information shall be included:

- If the **–c** option is not specified, each portion of the listing shall start with the name of the input file on a separate line.
- The name line shall be followed by a sorted list of symbols, each with its associated location pathname, the name of the function in which it appears (if it is not a function name itself), and line number references.
- Each line number may be preceded by an asterisk (`'*'`) flag, meaning that this is the declaring reference. Other single-character flags, with implementation-defined meanings, may be included.

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
The output file named by the **–o** option shall be used instead of standard output.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
None.

EXAMPLES
None.

RATIONALE
None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS
None.

SEE ALSO

c99

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

In the SYNOPSIS, [**–U** *dir*] is changed to [**–U** *name*].

Issue 6

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

11517 **NAME**

11518 date — write the date and time

11519 **SYNOPSIS**

11520 `date [–u] [+format]`

11521 XSI `date [–u] mmddhhmm[[cc]yy]`

11522 **DESCRIPTION**

11523 XSI The *date* utility shall write the date and time to standard output or attempt to set the system
11524 date and time. By default, the current date and time shall be written. If an operand beginning
11525 with '+' is specified, the output format of *date* shall be controlled by the conversion
11526 specifications and other text in the operand.

11527 **OPTIONS**

11528 The *date* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
11529 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

11530 The following option shall be supported:

11531 **–u** Perform operations as if the *TZ* environment variable was set to the string "UTC0",
11532 or its equivalent historical value of "GMT0". Otherwise, *date* shall use the timezone
11533 indicated by the *TZ* environment variable or the system default if that variable is
11534 unset or null.

11535 **OPERANDS**

11536 The following operands shall be supported:

11537 *+format* When the format is specified, each conversion specifier shall be replaced in the
11538 standard output by its corresponding value. All other characters shall be copied to
11539 the output without change. The output shall always be terminated with a
11540 <newline>.

11541 **Conversion Specifications**

11542 %a Locale's abbreviated weekday name.

11543 %A Locale's full weekday name.

11544 %b Locale's abbreviated month name.

11545 %B Locale's full month name.

11546 %c Locale's appropriate date and time representation.

11547 %C Century (a year divided by 100 and truncated to an integer) as a decimal
11548 number [00,99].

11549 %d Day of the month as a decimal number [01,31].

11550 %D Date in the format *mm/dd/yy*.

11551 %e Day of the month as a decimal number [1,31] in a two-digit field with
11552 leading space character fill.

11553 %h A synonym for %b.

11554 %H Hour (24-hour clock) as a decimal number [00,23].

%I	Hour (12-hour clock) as a decimal number [01,12].
%j	Day of the year as a decimal number [001,366].
%m	Month as a decimal number [01,12].
%M	Minute as a decimal number [00,59].
%n	A <newline>.
%p	Locale's equivalent of either AM or PM.
%r	12-hour clock time [01,12] using the AM/PM notation; in the POSIX locale, this shall be equivalent to %I:%M:%S %p.
%S	Seconds as a decimal number [00,60].
%t	A <tab>.
%T	24-hour clock time [00,23] in the format *HH*:*MM*:*SS*.
%u	Weekday as a decimal number [1,7] (1=Monday).
%U	Week of the year (Sunday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number [00,53]. All days in a new year preceding the first Sunday shall be considered to be in week 0.
%V	Week of the year (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number [01,53]. If the week containing January 1 has four or more days in the new year, then it shall be considered week 1; otherwise, it shall be the last week of the previous year, and the next week shall be week 1.
%w	Weekday as a decimal number [0,6] (0=Sunday).
%W	Week of the year (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number [00,53]. All days in a new year preceding the first Monday shall be considered to be in week 0.
%x	Locale's appropriate date representation.
%X	Locale's appropriate time representation.
%y	Year within century [00,99].
%Y	Year with century as a decimal number.
%Z	Timezone name, or no characters if no timezone is determinable.
%%	A percent sign character.

See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3.5, LC_TIME for the conversion specifier values in the POSIX locale.

Modified Conversion Specifications

Some conversion specifiers can be modified by the E and O modifier characters to indicate a different format or specification as specified in the *LC_TIME* locale description (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3.5, LC_TIME). If the corresponding keyword (see **era**, **era_year**, **era_d_fmt**, and **alt_digits** in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3.5, LC_TIME) is not specified or not supported for the current locale, the unmodified conversion specifier value shall be used.

%Ec	Locale's alternative appropriate date and time representation.

11595 %EC The name of the base year (period) in the locale's alternative
11596 representation.

11597 %Ex Locale's alternative date representation.

11598 %EX Locale's alternative time representation.

11599 %Ey Offset from %EC (year only) in the locale's alternative representation.

11600 %EY Full alternative year representation.

11601 %Od Day of month using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11602 %Oe Day of month using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11603 %OH Hour (24-hour clock) using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11604 %OI Hour (12-hour clock) using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11605 %Om Month using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11606 %OM Minutes using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11607 %OS Seconds using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11608 %Ou Weekday as a number in the locale's alternative representation (Monday
11609 = 1).

11610 %OU Week number of the year (Sunday as the first day of the week) using the
11611 locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11612 %OV Week number of the year (Monday as the first day of the week, rules
11613 corresponding to %V), using the locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11614 %Ow Weekday as a number in the locale's alternative representation (Sunday =
11615 0).

11616 %OW Week number of the year (Monday as the first day of the week) using the
11617 locale's alternative numeric symbols.

11618 %Oy Year (offset from %C) in alternative representation.

11619 XSI *mmddhhmm*[[*cc*]*yy*]

11620 Attempt to set the system date and time from the value given in the operand. This
11621 is only possible if the user has appropriate privileges and the system permits the
11622 setting of the system date and time. The first *mm* is the month (number); *dd* is the
11623 day (number); *hh* is the hour (number, 24-hour system); the second *mm* is the
11624 minute (number); *cc* is the century and is the first two digits of the year (this is
11625 optional); *yy* is the last two digits of the year and is optional. If century is not
11626 specified, then values in the range [69,99] shall refer to years 1969 to 1999 inclusive,
11627 and values in the range [00,68] shall refer to years 2000 to 2068 inclusive. The
11628 current year is the default if *yy* is omitted.

11629 **Note:** It is expected that in a future version of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x the default century
11630 inferred from a 2-digit year will change. (This would apply to all commands
11631 accepting a 2-digit year as input.)

11632 **STDIN**

11633 Not used.

11634 **INPUT FILES**

11635 None.

11636 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

11637 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *date*:

11638 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
11639 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
11640 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
11641 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

11642 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
11643 internationalization variables.

11644 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
11645 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
11646 arguments).

11647 *LC_MESSAGES*
11648 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
11649 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

11650 *LC_TIME* Determine the format and contents of date and time strings written by *date*.

11651 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

11652 *TZ* Determine the timezone in which the time and date are written, unless the **–u**
11653 option is specified. If the *TZ* variable is unset or null and **–u** is not specified, an
11654 unspecified system default timezone is used.

11655 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

11656 Default.

11657 **STDOUT**

11658 When no formatting operand is specified, the output in the POSIX locale shall be equivalent to
11659 specifying:

11660 `date "+%a %b %e %H:%M:%S %Z %Y"`

11661 **STDERR**

11662 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

11663 **OUTPUT FILES**

11664 None.

11665 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

11666 None.

11667 **EXIT STATUS**

11668 The following exit values shall be returned:

11669 0 The date was written successfully.

11670 >0 An error occurred.

11671 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

11672 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Conversion specifiers are of unspecified format when not in the POSIX locale. Some of them can contain <newline>s in some locales, so it may be difficult to use the format shown in standard output for parsing the output of *date* in those locales.

The range of values for `%S` extends from 0 to 60 seconds to accommodate the occasional leap second.

Although certain of the conversion specifiers in the POSIX locale (such as the name of the month) are shown with initial capital letters, this need not be the case in other locales. Programs using these fields may need to adjust the capitalization if the output is going to be used at the beginning of a sentence.

The date string formatting capabilities are intended for use in Gregorian-style calendars, possibly with a different starting year (or years). The `%x` and `%c` conversion specifications, however, are intended for local representation; these may be based on a different, non-Gregorian calendar.

The `%C` conversion specification was introduced to allow a fallback for the `%EC` (alternative year format base year); it can be viewed as the base of the current subdivision in the Gregorian calendar. The century number is calculated as the year divided by 100 and truncated to an integer; it should not be confused with the use of ordinal numbers for centuries (for example, ''twenty-first century''.) Both the `%Ey` and `%y` can then be viewed as the offset from `%EC` and `%C`, respectively.

The `E` and `O` modifiers modify the traditional conversion specifiers, so that they can always be used, even if the implementation (or the current locale) does not support the modifier.

The `E` modifier supports alternative date formats, such as the Japanese Emperor's Era, as long as these are based on the Gregorian calendar system. Extending the `E` modifiers to other date elements may provide an implementation-defined extension capable of supporting other calendar systems, especially in combination with the `O` modifier.

The `O` modifier supports time and date formats using the locale's alternative numerical symbols, such as Kanji or Hindi digits or ordinal number representation.

Non-European locales, whether they use Latin digits in computational items or not, often have local forms of the digits for use in date formats. This is not totally unknown even in Europe; a variant of dates uses Roman numerals for the months: the third day of September 1991 would be written as 3.IX.1991. In Japan, Kanji digits are regularly used for dates; in Arabic-speaking countries, Hindi digits are used. The `%d`, `%e`, `%H`, `%I`, `%m`, `%S`, `%U`, `%w`, `%W`, and `%y` conversion specifications always return the date and time field in Latin digits (that is, 0 to 9). The `%O` modifier was introduced to support the use for display purposes of non-Latin digits. In the *LC_TIME* category in *localedef*, the optional **alt_digits** keyword is intended for this purpose. As an example, assume the following (partial) *localedef* source:

```
alt_digits  "";"I";"II";"III";"IV";"V";"VI";"VII";"VIII" \
            "IX";"X";"XI";"XII"
d_fmt       "%e.%Om.%Y"
```

With the above date, the command:

```
date "+%x"
```

would yield 3.IX.1991. With the same **d_fmt**, but without the **alt_digits**, the command would yield 3.9.1991.

EXAMPLES

1. The following are input/output examples of *date* used at arbitrary times in the POSIX locale:

```
$ date
Tue Jun 26 09:58:10 PDT 1990

$ date "+DATE: %m/%d/%y%nTIME: %H:%M:%S"
DATE: 11/02/91
TIME: 13:36:16

$ date "+TIME: %r"
TIME: 01:36:32 PM
```

2. Examples for Denmark, where the default date and time format is %a %d %b %Y %T %Z:

```
$ LANG=da_DK.iso_8859–1 date
ons 02 okt 1991 15:03:32 CET

$ LANG=da_DK.iso_8859–1 \
    date "+DATO: %A den %e. %B %Y%nKLOKKEN: %H:%M:%S"
DATO: onsdag den 2. oktober 1991
KLOKKEN: 15:03:56
```

3. Examples for Germany, where the default date and time format is %a %d.%h.%Y, %T %Z:

```
$ LANG=De_DE.88591 date
Mi 02.Okt.1991, 15:01:21 MEZ

$ LANG=De_DE.88591 date "+DATUM: %A, %d. %B %Y%nZEIT: %H:%M:%S"
DATUM: Mittwoch, 02. Oktober 1991
ZEIT: 15:02:02
```

4. Examples for France, where the default date and time format is %a %d %h %Y %Z %T:

```
$ LANG=Fr_FR.88591 date
Mer 02 oct 1991 MET 15:03:32

$ LANG=Fr_FR.88591 date "+JOUR: %A %d %B %Y%nHEURE: %H:%M:%S"
JOUR: Mercredi 02 octobre 1991
HEURE: 15:03:56
```

RATIONALE

Some of the new options for formatting are from the ISO C standard. The **–u** option was introduced to allow portable access to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). The string `"GMT0"` is allowed as an equivalent *TZ* value to be compatible with all of the systems using the BSD implementation, where this option originated.

The %e format conversion specification (adopted from System V) was added because the ISO C standard conversion specifications did not provide any way to produce the historical default *date* output during the first nine days of any month.

There are two varieties of day and week numbering supported (in addition to any others created with the locale-dependent %E and %O modifier characters):

- The historical variety in which Sunday is the first day of the week and the weekdays preceding the first Sunday of the year are considered week 0. These are represented by %w and %U. A variant of this is %W, using Monday as the first day of the week, but still referring to week 0. This view of the calendar was retained because so many historical applications depend on it and the ISO C standard *strftime*( ) function, on which many *date* implementations are based, was defined in this way.

- The international standard, based on the ISO 8601:2000 standard where Monday is the first weekday and the algorithm for the first week number is more complex: If the week (Monday to Sunday) containing January 1 has four or more days in the new year, then it is week 1; otherwise, it is week 53 of the previous year, and the next week is week 1. These are represented by the new conversion specifications %u and %V, added as a result of international comments.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *printf*( ), *strftime*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

Changes are made for Year 2000 alignment.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The %EX modified conversion specification is added.

The Open Group Corrigendum U048/2 is applied, correcting the examples.

The DESCRIPTION is updated to refer to conversion specifications, instead of field descriptors for consistency with the *LC_TIME* category.

A clarification is made such that the current year is the default if the *yy* argument is omitted when setting the system date and time.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/19 is applied, correcting the CHANGE HISTORY section.

11787 **NAME**

11788 dd — convert and copy a file

11789 **SYNOPSIS**

11790 `dd [`*`operand...`*`]`

11791 **DESCRIPTION**

11792 The *dd* utility shall copy the specified input file to the specified output file with possible
11793 conversions using specific input and output block sizes. It shall read the input one block at a
11794 time, using the specified input block size; it shall then process the block of data actually
11795 returned, which could be smaller than the requested block size. It shall apply any conversions
11796 that have been specified and write the resulting data to the output in blocks of the specified
11797 output block size. If the **bs**=*expr* operand is specified and no conversions other than **sync**,
11798 **noerror**, or **notrunc** are requested, the data returned from each input block shall be written as a
11799 separate output block; if the read returns less than a full block and the **sync** conversion is not
11800 specified, the resulting output block shall be the same size as the input block. If the **bs**=*expr*
11801 operand is not specified, or a conversion other than **sync**, **noerror**, or **notrunc** is requested, the
11802 input shall be processed and collected into full-sized output blocks until the end of the input is
11803 reached.

11804 The processing order shall be as follows:

11805 1. An input block is read.

11806 2. If the input block is shorter than the specified input block size and the **sync** conversion is
11807 specified, null bytes shall be appended to the input data up to the specified size. (If either
11808 **block** or **unblock** is also specified, <space>s shall be appended instead of null bytes.) The
11809 remaining conversions and output shall include the pad characters as if they had been
11810 read from the input.

11811 3. If the **bs**=*expr* operand is specified and no conversion other than **sync** or **noerror** is
11812 requested, the resulting data shall be written to the output as a single block, and the
11813 remaining steps are omitted.

11814 4. If the **swab** conversion is specified, each pair of input data bytes shall be swapped. If
11815 there is an odd number of bytes in the input block, the last byte in the input record shall
11816 not be swapped.

11817 5. Any remaining conversions (**block**, **unblock**, **lcase**, and **ucase**) shall be performed. These
11818 conversions shall operate on the input data independently of the input blocking; an input
11819 or output fixed-length record may span block boundaries.

11820 6. The data resulting from input or conversion or both shall be aggregated into output
11821 blocks of the specified size. After the end of input is reached, any remaining output shall
11822 be written as a block without padding if **conv**=**sync** is not specified; thus, the final output
11823 block may be shorter than the output block size.

11824 **OPTIONS**

11825 None.

11826 **OPERANDS**

11827 All of the operands shall be processed before any input is read. The following operands shall be
11828 supported:

11829 **if**=*file* Specify the input pathname; the default is standard input.

of=*file* Specify the output pathname; the default is standard output. If the **seek**=*expr* conversion is not also specified, the output file shall be truncated before the copy begins if an explicit **of**=*file* operand is specified, unless **conv**=**notrunc** is specified. If **seek**=*expr* is specified, but **conv**=**notrunc** is not, the effect of the copy shall be to preserve the blocks in the output file over which *dd* seeks, but no other portion of the output file shall be preserved. (If the size of the seek plus the size of the input file is less than the previous size of the output file, the output file shall be shortened by the copy. If the input file is empty and either the size of the seek is greater than the previous size of the output file or the output file did not previously exist, the size of the output file shall be set to the file offset after the seek.)

ibs=*expr* Specify the input block size, in bytes, by *expr* (default is 512).

obs=*expr* Specify the output block size, in bytes, by *expr* (default is 512).

bs=*expr* Set both input and output block sizes to *expr* bytes, superseding **ibs**= and **obs**=. If no conversion other than **sync**, **noerror**, and **notrunc** is specified, each input block shall be copied to the output as a single block without aggregating short blocks.

cbs=*expr* Specify the conversion block size for **block** and **unblock** in bytes by *expr* (default is zero). If **cbs**= is omitted or given a value of zero, using **block** or **unblock** produces unspecified results.

XSI The application shall ensure that this operand is also specified if the **conv**= operand is specified with a value of **ascii**, **ebcdic**, or **ibm**. For a **conv**= operand with an **ascii** value, the input is handled as described for the **unblock** value, except that characters are converted to ASCII before any trailing <space>s are deleted. For **conv**= operands with **ebcdic** or **ibm** values, the input is handled as described for the **block** value except that the characters are converted to EBCDIC or IBM EBCDIC, respectively, after any trailing <space>s are added.

skip=*n* Skip *n* input blocks (using the specified input block size) before starting to copy. On seekable files, the implementation shall read the blocks or seek past them; on non-seekable files, the blocks shall be read and the data shall be discarded.

seek=*n* Skip *n* blocks (using the specified output block size) from the beginning of the output file before copying. On non-seekable files, existing blocks shall be read and space from the current end-of-file to the specified offset, if any, filled with null bytes; on seekable files, the implementation shall seek to the specified offset or read the blocks as described for non-seekable files.

count=*n* Copy only *n* input blocks.

conv=*value*[,*value* ...]
Where *value*s are comma-separated symbols from the following list:

XSI **ascii** Convert EBCDIC to ASCII; see Table 4-6 (on page 304).

XSI **ebcdic** Convert ASCII to EBCDIC; see Table 4-6 (on page 304).

XSI **ibm** Convert ASCII to a different EBCDIC set; see Table 4-7 (on page 305).

The **ascii**, **ebcdic**, and **ibm** values are mutually-exclusive.

block Treat the input as a sequence of <newline>-terminated or end-of-file-terminated variable-length records independent of the input block boundaries. Each record shall be converted to a record with a fixed length specified by the conversion block size. Any <newline> shall be removed from the input line; <space>s shall be appended to lines that are shorter than their conversion block size to fill the block. Lines

that are longer than the conversion block size shall be truncated to the largest number of characters that fit into that size; the number of truncated lines shall be reported (see the STDERR section).

The **block** and **unblock** values are mutually-exclusive.

unblock Convert fixed-length records to variable length. Read a number of bytes equal to the conversion block size (or the number of bytes remaining in the input, if less than the conversion block size), delete all trailing <space>s, and append a <newline>.

lcase Map uppercase characters specified by the *LC_CTYPE* keyword **tolower** to the corresponding lowercase character. Characters for which no mapping is specified shall not be modified by this conversion.

The **lcase** and **ucase** symbols are mutually-exclusive.

ucase Map lowercase characters specified by the *LC_CTYPE* keyword **toupper** to the corresponding uppercase character. Characters for which no mapping is specified shall not be modified by this conversion.

swab Swap every pair of input bytes.

noerror Do not stop processing on an input error. When an input error occurs, a diagnostic message shall be written on standard error, followed by the current input and output block counts in the same format as used at completion (see the STDERR section). If the **sync** conversion is specified, the missing input shall be replaced with null bytes and processed normally; otherwise, the input block shall be omitted from the output.

notrunc Do not truncate the output file. Preserve blocks in the output file not explicitly written by this invocation of the *dd* utility. (See also the preceding **of**=*file* operand.)

sync Pad every input block to the size of the **ibs**= buffer, appending null bytes. (If either **block** or **unblock** is also specified, append <space>s, rather than null bytes.)

The behavior is unspecified if operands other than **conv**= are specified more than once.

For the **bs**=, **cbs**=, **ibs**=, and **obs**= operands, the application shall supply an expression specifying a size in bytes. The expression, *expr*, can be:

1. A positive decimal number
2. A positive decimal number followed by *k*, specifying multiplication by 1 024
3. A positive decimal number followed by *b*, specifying multiplication by 512
4. Two or more positive decimal numbers (with or without *k* or *b*) separated by *x*, specifying the product of the indicated values

All of the operands are processed before any input is read.

XSI The following two tables display the octal number character values used for the **ascii** and **ebcdic** conversions (first table) and for the **ibm** conversion (second table). In both tables, the ASCII values are the row and column headers and the EBCDIC values are found at their intersections. For example, ASCII 0012 (LF) is the second row, third column, yielding 0045 in EBCDIC. The inverted tables (for EBCDIC to ASCII conversion) are not shown, but are in one-to-one correspondence with these tables. The differences between the two tables are highlighted by

11923

11924

small boxes drawn around five entries.

Table 4-6 ASCII to EBCDIC Conversion

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0000	0000 NUL	0001 SOH	0002 STX	0003 ETX	0067 EOT	0055 ENQ	0056 ACK	0057 BEL
0010	0026 BS	0005 HT	0045 LF	0013 VT	0014 FF	0015 CR	0016 SO	0017 SI
0020	0020 DLE	0021 DC1	0022 DC2	0023 DC3	0074 DC4	0075 NAK	0062 SYN	0046 ETB
0030	0030 CAN	0031 EM	0077 SUB	0047 ESC	0034 IFS	0035 IGS	0036 IRS	0037 ITB
0040	0100 Sp	0132 !	0177 "	0173 #	0133 $	0154 %	0120 &	0175 '
0050	0115 (	0135)	0134 *	0116 +	0153 ,	0140 -	0113 .	0141 /
0060	0360 0	0361 1	0362 2	0363 3	0364 4	0365 5	0366 6	0367 7
0070	0370 8	0371 9	0172 :	0136 ;	0114 <	0176 =	0156 >	0157 ?
0100	0174 @	0301 A	0302 B	0303 C	0304 D	0305 E	0306 F	0307 G
0110	0310 H	0311 I	0321 J	0322 K	0323 L	0324 M	0325 N	0326 O
0120	0327 P	0330 Q	0331 R	0342 S	0343 T	0344 U	0345 V	0346 W
0130	0347 X	0350 Y	0351 Z	0255 [	0340 \	0275]	0232	0155 _
0140	0171 `	0201 a	0202 b	0203 c	0204 d	0205 e	0206 f	0207 g
0150	0210 h	0211 i	0221 j	0222 k	0223]	0224 m	0225 n	0226 o
0160	0227 p	0230 q	0231 r	0242 s	0243 t	0244 u	0245 v	0246 w
0170	0247 x	0250 y	0251 z	0300 {	0117 |	0320 }	0137 ¬	0007 DEL
0200	0040 DS	0041 SOS	0042 FS	0043 WUS	0044 BYP	0025 NL	0006 RNL	0027 POC
0210	0050 SA	0051 SFE	0052 SM	0053 CSP	0054 MFA	0011 SPS	0012 RPT	0033 CU1
0220	0060	0061	0032 UBS	0063 IR	0064 PP	0065 TRN	0066 NBS	0010 GE
0230	0070 SBS	0071 IT	0072 RFF	0073 CU3	0004 SEL	0024 RES	0076	0341
0240	0101	0102	0103	0104	0105	0106	0107	0110
0250	0111	0121	0122	0123	0124	0125	0126	0127
0260	0130	0131	0142	0143	0144	0145	0146	0147
0270	0150	0151	0160	0161	0162	0163	0164	0165
0300	0166	0167	0170	0200	0212	0213	0214	0215
0310	0216	0217	0220	0152 ¦	0233	0234	0235	0236
0320	0237	0240	0252	0253	0254	0112 ¢	0256	0257
0330	0260	0261	0262	0263	0264	0265	0266	0267
0340	0270	0271	0272	0273	0274	0241	0276	0277
0350	0312	0313	0314 ┍	0315	0316 ⅄	0317	0332	0333
0360	0334	0335	0336	0337	0352	0353	0354 ┤	0355
0370	0356	0357	0372 |	0373	0374	0375	0376	0377 EO

Table 4-7 ASCII to IBM EBCDIC Conversion

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0000	0000 NUL	0001 SOH	0002 STX	0003 ETX	0067 EOT	0055 ENQ	0056 ACK	0057 BEL
0010	0026 BS	0005 HT	0045 LF	0013 VT	0014 FF	0015 CR	0016 SO	0017 SI
0020	0020 DLE	0021 DC1	0022 DC2	0023 DC3	0074 DC4	0075 NAK	0062 SYN	0046 ETB
0030	0030 CAN	0031 EM	0077 SUB	0047 ESC	0034 IFS	0035 IGS	0036 IRS	0037 ITB
0040	0100 Sp	0132 !	0177 "	0173 #	0133 $	0154 %	0120 &	0175 '
0050	0115 (	0135)	0134 *	0116 +	0153 ,	0140 -	0113 .	0141 /
0060	0360 0	0361 1	0362 2	0363 3	0364 4	0365 5	0366 6	0367 7
0070	0370 8	0371 9	0172 :	0136 ;	0114 <	0176 =	0156 >	0157 ?
0100	0174 @	0301 A	0302 B	0303 C	0304 D	0305 E	0306 F	0307 G
0110	0310 H	0311 I	0321 J	0322 K	0323 L	0324 M	0325 N	0326 O
0120	0327 P	0330 Q	0331 R	0342 S	0343 T	0344 U	0345 V	0346 W
0130	0347 X	0350 Y	0351 Z	0255 [	0340 \	0275]	0137 ¬	0155 _
0140	0171 `	0201 a	0202 b	0203 c	0204 d	0205 e	0206 f	0207 g
0150	0210 h	0211 i	0221 j	0222 k	0223]	0224 m	0225 n	0226 o
0160	0227 p	0230 q	0231 r	0242 s	0243 t	0244 u	0245 v	0246 w
0170	0247 x	0250 y	0251 z	0300 {	0117 |	0320 }	0241	0007 DEL
0200	0040 DS	0041 SOS	0042 FS	0043 WUS	0044 BYP	0025 NL	0006 RNL	0027 POC
0210	0050 SA	0051 SFE	0052 SM	0053 CSP	0054 MFA	0011 SPS	0012 RPT	0033 CU1
0220	0060	0061	0032 UBS	0063 IR	0064 PP	0065 TRN	0066 NBS	0010 GE
0230	0070 SBS	0071 IT	0072 RFF	0073 CU3	0004 SEL	0024 RES	0076	0341
0240	0101	0102	0103	0104	0105	0106	0107	0110
0250	0111	0121	0122	0123	0124	0125	0126	0127
0260	0130	0131	0142	0143	0144	0145	0146	0147
0270	0150	0151	0160	0161	0162	0163	0164	0165
0300	0166	0167	0170	0200	0212	0213	0214	0215
0310	0216	0217	0220	0232	0233	0234	0235	0236
0320	0237	0240	0252	0253	0254	0255 [	0256	0257
0330	0260	0261	0262	0263	0264	0265	0266	0267
0340	0270	0271	0272	0273	0274	0275]	0276	0277
0350	0312	0313	0314 ⌐	0315	0316 ¥	0317	0332	0333
0360	0334	0335	0336	0337	0352	0353	0354 ⊣	0355
0370	0356	0357	0372 |	0373	0374	0375	0376	0377 EO

STDIN

If no **if=** operand is specified, the standard input shall be used. See the INPUT FILES section.

11928 **INPUT FILES**

11929 The input file can be any file type.

11930 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

11931 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *dd*:

11932 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
11933 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
11934 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
11935 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

11936 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
11937 internationalization variables.

11938 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
11939 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
11940 arguments and input files), the classification of characters as uppercase or
11941 lowercase, and the mapping of characters from one case to the other.

11942 *LC_MESSAGES*

11943 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
11944 diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to
11945 standard output.

11946 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

11947 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

11948 For SIGINT, the *dd* utility shall interrupt its current processing, write status information to
11949 standard error, and exit as though terminated by SIGINT. It shall take the standard action for all
11950 other signals; see the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section in Section 1.11 (on page 18).

11951 **STDOUT**

11952 If no **of**= operand is specified, the standard output shall be used. The nature of the output
11953 depends on the operands selected.

11954 **STDERR**

11955 On completion, *dd* shall write the number of input and output blocks to standard error. In the
11956 POSIX locale the following formats shall be used:

11957 `"%u+%u records in\n", <number of whole input blocks>,`
11958 `<number of partial input blocks>`

11959 `"%u+%u records out\n", <number of whole output blocks>,`
11960 `<number of partial output blocks>`

11961 A partial input block is one for which *read*() returned less than the input block size. A partial
11962 output block is one that was written with fewer bytes than specified by the output block size.

11963 In addition, when there is at least one truncated block, the number of truncated blocks shall be
11964 written to standard error. In the POSIX locale, the format shall be:

11965 `"%u truncated %s\n", <number of truncated blocks>, "record" (if`
11966 `<number of truncated blocks> is one) "records" (otherwise)`

11967 Diagnostic messages may also be written to standard error.

11968 **OUTPUT FILES**

11969 If the **of**= operand is used, the output shall be the same as described in the STDOUT section.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The input file was copied successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If an input error is detected and the **noerror** conversion has not been specified, any partial output block shall be written to the output file, a diagnostic message shall be written, and the copy operation shall be discontinued. If some other error is detected, a diagnostic message shall be written and the copy operation shall be discontinued.

APPLICATION USAGE

The input and output block size can be specified to take advantage of raw physical I/O.

There are many different versions of the EBCDIC codesets. The ASCII and EBCDIC conversions specified for the *dd* utility perform conversions for the version specified by the tables.

EXAMPLES

The following command:

```
dd if=/dev/rmt0h  of=/dev/rmt1h
```

copies from tape drive 0 to tape drive 1, using a common historical device naming convention.

The following command:

```
dd ibs=10  skip=1
```

strips the first 10 bytes from standard input.

This example reads an EBCDIC tape blocked ten 80-byte EBCDIC card images per block into the ASCII file **x**:

```
dd if=/dev/tape of=x ibs=800 cbs=80 conv=ascii,lcase
```

RATIONALE

The OPTIONS section is listed as "None" because there are no options recognized by historical *dd* utilities. Certainly, many of the operands could have been designed to use the Utility Syntax Guidelines, which would have resulted in the classic hyphenated option letters. In this version of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *dd* retains its curious JCL-like syntax due to the large number of applications that depend on the historical implementation.

A suggested implementation technique for **conv**=**noerror**,**sync** is to zero (or <space>-fill, if **block**ing or **unblock**ing) the input buffer before each read and to write the contents of the input buffer to the output even after an error. In this manner, any data transferred to the input buffer before the error was detected is preserved. Another point is that a failed read on a regular file or a disk generally does not increment the file offset, and *dd* must then seek past the block on which the error occurred; otherwise, the input error occurs repetitively. When the input is a magnetic tape, however, the tape normally has passed the block containing the error when the error is reported, and thus no seek is necessary.

The default **ibs**= and **obs**= sizes are specified as 512 bytes because there are historical (largely portable) scripts that assume these values. If they were left unspecified, unusual results could occur if an implementation chose an odd block size.

Historical implementations of *dd* used *creat*() when processing **of**=*file*. This makes the **seek**= operand unusable except on special files. The **conv**=**notrunc** feature was added because more recent BSD-based implementations use *open*() (without O_TRUNC) instead of *creat*(), but they

fail to delete output file contents after the data copied.

The *w* multiplier (historically meaning *word*), is used in System V to mean 2 and in 4.2 BSD to mean 4. Since *word* is inherently non-portable, its use is not supported by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Standard EBCDIC does not have the characters `'['` and `']'`. The values used in the table are taken from a common print train that does contain them. Other than those characters, the print train values are not filled in, but appear to provide some of the motivation for the historical choice of translations reflected here.

The Standard EBCDIC table provides a 1:1 translation for all 256 bytes.

The IBM EBCDIC table does not provide such a translation. The marked cells in the tables differ in such a way that:

1. EBCDIC 0112 (`'¢'`) and 0152 (broken pipe) do not appear in the table.

12058 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12059 None.

12060 **SEE ALSO**

12061 Section 1.11 (on page 18), *sed*, *tr*

12062 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12063 First released in Issue 2.

12064 **Issue 5**

12065 The second paragraph of the **cbs**= description is reworded and marked EX.

12066 The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

12067 **Issue 6**

12068 Changes are made to **swab** conversion and SIGINT handling to align with the IEEE P1003.2b
12069 draft standard.

12070 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

12071 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #209 is applied, clarifying the interaction between *dd* **of**=*file* and
12072 **conv**=**notrunc**.

12073 **Issue 7**

12074 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #102 is applied.

12075 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

12076 **NAME**

12077 delta — make a delta (change) to an SCCS file (**DEVELOPMENT**)

12078 **SYNOPSIS**

12079 XSI
```
delta [–nps] [–g list] [–m mrlist] [–r SID] [–y[comment]] file...
```

12080 **DESCRIPTION**

12081 The *delta* utility shall be used to permanently introduce into the named SCCS files changes that
12082 were made to the files retrieved by *get* (called the *g-files*, or generated files).

12083 **OPTIONS**

12084 The *delta* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
12085 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the –**y** option has an optional option-argument. This
12086 optional option-argument shall not be presented as a separate argument.

12087 The following options shall be supported:

12088 –**r** *SID* Uniquely identify which delta is to be made to the SCCS file. The use of this option
12089 shall be necessary only if two or more outstanding *get* commands for editing (*get*
12090 –**e**) on the same SCCS file were done by the same person (login name). The SID
12091 value specified with the –**r** option can be either the SID specified on the *get*
12092 command line or the SID to be made as reported by the *get* utility; see *get* (on page
12093 476).

12094 –**s** Suppress the report to standard output of the activity associated with each *file*. See
12095 the STDOUT section.

12096 –**n** Specify retention of the edited *g-file* (normally removed at completion of delta
12097 processing).

12098 –**g** *list* Specify a *list* (see *get* for the definition of *list*) of deltas that shall be ignored when
12099 the file is accessed at the change level (SID) created by this delta.

12100 –**m** *mrlist* Specify a modification request (MR) number that the application shall supply as
12101 the reason for creating the new delta. This shall be used if the SCCS file has the **v**
12102 flag set; see *admin*.

12103 If –**m** is not used and `'–'` is not specified as a file argument, and the standard
12104 input is a terminal, the prompt described in the STDOUT section shall be written
12105 to standard output before the standard input is read; if the standard input is not a
12106 terminal, no prompt shall be issued.

12107 MRs in a list shall be separated by <blank>s or escaped <newline>s. An
12108 unescaped <newline> shall terminate the MR list. The escape character is
12109 <backslash>.

12110 If the **v** flag has a value, it shall be taken to be the name of a program which
12111 validates the correctness of the MR numbers. If a non-zero exit status is returned
12112 from the MR number validation program, the *delta* utility shall terminate. (It is
12113 assumed that the MR numbers were not all valid.)

12114 –**y**[*comment*] Describe the reason for making the delta. The *comment* shall be an arbitrary group
12115 of lines that would meet the definition of a text file. Implementations shall support
12116 *comment*s from zero to 512 bytes and may support longer values. A null string
12117 (specified as either –**y**, –**y**`""`, or in response to a prompt for a comment) shall be
12118 considered a valid *comment*.

12119 If –**y** is not specified and `'–'` is not specified as a file argument, and the standard

input is a terminal, the prompt described in the STDOUT section shall be written to standard output before the standard input is read; if the standard input is not a terminal, no prompt shall be issued. An unescaped <newline> shall terminate the comment text. The escape character is <backslash>.

The **–y** option shall be required if the *file* operand is specified as `'–'`.

–p Write (to standard output) the SCCS file differences before and after the delta is applied in *diff* format; see *diff*.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of an existing SCCS file or a directory. If *file* is a directory, the *delta* utility shall behave as though each file in the directory were specified as a named file, except that non-SCCS files (last component of the pathname does not begin with **s.**) and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

If exactly one *file* operand appears, and it is `'–'`, the standard input shall be read; each line of the standard input shall be taken to be the name of an SCCS file to be processed. Non-SCCS files and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file used only in the following cases:

- To read an *mrlist* or a *comment* (see the **–m** and **–y** options).
- A *file* operand shall be specified as `'–'`. In this case, the **–y** option must be used to specify the comment, and if the SCCS file has the **v** flag set, the **–m** option must also be used to specify the MR list.

INPUT FILES

Input files shall be text files whose data is to be included in the SCCS files. If the first character of any line of an input file is <SOH> in the POSIX locale, the results are unspecified. If this file contains more than 99 999 lines, the number of lines recorded in the header for this file shall be 99 999 for this delta.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *delta*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error, and informative messages written to standard output.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

TZ Determine the timezone in which the time and date are written in the SCCS file. If the *TZ* variable is unset or NULL, an unspecified system default timezone is used.

12165 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

12166 If SIGINT is caught, temporary files shall be cleaned up and *delta* shall exit with a non-zero exit
12167 code. The standard action shall be taken for all other signals; see Section 1.11 (on page 18).

12168 **STDOUT**

12169 The standard output shall be used only for the following messages in the POSIX locale:

12170 • Prompts (see the **–m** and **–y** options) in the following formats:

12171 `"MRs? "`

12172 `"comments? "`

12173 The MR prompt, if written, shall always precede the comments prompt.

12174 • A report of each file's activities (unless the **–s** option is specified) in the following format:

12175 `"%s\n%d inserted\n%d deleted\n%d unchanged\n", <New SID>,`
12176 `<number of lines inserted>, <number of lines deleted>,`
12177 `<number of lines unchanged>`

12178 **STDERR**

12179 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

12180 **OUTPUT FILES**

12181 Any SCCS files updated shall be files of an unspecified format.

12182 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

12183 **System Date and Time**

12184 When a delta is added to an SCCS file, the system date and time shall be recorded for the new
12185 delta. If a *get* is performed using an SCCS file with a date recorded apparently in the future, the
12186 behavior is unspecified.

12187 **EXIT STATUS**

12188 The following exit values shall be returned:

12189 0 Successful completion.

12190 >0 An error occurred.

12191 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

12192 Default.

12193 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12194 Problems can arise if the system date and time have been modified (for example, put forward
12195 and then back again, or unsynchronized clocks across a network) and can also arise when
12196 different values of the *TZ* environment variable are used.

12197 Problems of a similar nature can also arise for the operation of the *get* utility, which records the
12198 date and time in the file body.

12199 **EXAMPLES**

12200 None.

12201 **RATIONALE**

12202 None.

12203 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12204 None.

12205 **SEE ALSO**

12206 Section 1.11 (on page 18), *admin*, *diff*, *get*, *prs*, *rmdel*

12207 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12208 First released in Issue 2.

12209 **Issue 5**

12210 The output format description in the STDOUT section is corrected.

12211 **Issue 6**

12212 The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

12213 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

12214 The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-007 is applied as follows:

12215 • The use of `'-'` as a file argument is clarified.

12216 • The use of STDIN is added.

12217 • The ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section is updated to remove the implicit requirement
12218 that implementations re-signal themselves when catching a normally fatal signal.

12219 • New text is added to the INPUT FILES section warning that the maximum lines recorded
12220 in the file is 99 999.

12221 New text is added to the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION and APPLICATION USAGE sections
12222 regarding how the system date and time may be taken into account, and the *TZ* environment
12223 variable is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section as per The Open Group Base
12224 Resolution bwg2001-007.

12225 **Issue 7**

12226 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

12227 **NAME**

12228 df — report free disk space

12229 **SYNOPSIS**

12230 XSI `df [–k] [–P|–t] [file...]`

12231 **DESCRIPTION**

12232 XSI The *df* utility shall write the amount of available space and file slots for file systems on which
12233 the invoking user has appropriate read access. File systems shall be specified by the *file*
12234 operands; when none are specified, information shall be written for all file systems. The format
12235 of the default output from *df* is unspecified, but all space figures are reported in 512-byte units,
12236 unless the **–k** option is specified. This output shall contain at least the file system names, amount
12237 XSI of available space on each of these file systems, and the number of free file slots, or *inodes*,
12238 available; when **–t** is specified, the output shall contain the total allocated space as well.

12239 **OPTIONS**

12240 The *df* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
12241 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

12242 The following options shall be supported:

12243 **–k** Use 1 024-byte units, instead of the default 512-byte units, when writing space
12244 figures.

12245 **–P** Produce output in the format described in the STDOUT section.

12246 XSI **–t** Include total allocated-space figures in the output.

12247 **OPERANDS**

12248 The following operand shall be supported:

12249 *file* A pathname of a file within the hierarchy of the desired file system. If a file other
12250 XSI than a FIFO, a regular file, a directory, or a special file representing the device
12251 containing the file system (for example, **/dev/dsk/0s1**) is specified, the results are
12252 unspecified. If the *file* operand names a file other than a special file containing a file
12253 system, *df* shall write the amount of free space in the file system containing the
12254 XSI specified *file* operand. Otherwise, *df* shall write the amount of free space in that
12255 file system.

12256 **STDIN**

12257 Not used.

12258 **INPUT FILES**

12259 None.

12260 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

12261 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *df*:

12262 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
12263 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
12264 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
12265 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

12266 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
12267 internationalization variables.

12268 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
12269 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
12270 arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
When both the –**k** and –**P** options are specified, the following header line shall be written (in the POSIX locale):

```
"Filesystem 1024-blocks Used Available Capacity Mounted on\n"
```

When the –**P** option is specified without the –**k** option, the following header line shall be written (in the POSIX locale):

```
"Filesystem 512-blocks Used Available Capacity Mounted on\n"
```

The implementation may adjust the spacing of the header line and the individual data lines so that the information is presented in orderly columns.

The remaining output with –**P** shall consist of one line of information for each specified file system. These lines shall be formatted as follows:

```
"%s %d %d %d %d%% %s\n", <file system name>, <total space>,
    <space used>, <space free>, <percentage used>,
    <file system root>
```

In the following list, all quantities expressed in 512-byte units (1 024-byte when –**k** is specified) shall be rounded up to the next higher unit. The fields are:

<file system name>
The name of the file system, in an implementation-defined format.

<total space> The total size of the file system in 512-byte units. The exact meaning of this figure is implementation-defined, but should include *<space used>*, *<space free>*, plus any space reserved by the system not normally available to a user.

<space used> The total amount of space allocated to existing files in the file system, in 512-byte units.

<space free> The total amount of space available within the file system for the creation of new files by unprivileged users, in 512-byte units. When this figure is less than or equal to zero, it shall not be possible to create any new files on the file system without first deleting others, unless the process has appropriate privileges. The figure written may be less than zero.

<percentage used>
The percentage of the normally available space that is currently allocated to all files on the file system. This shall be calculated using the fraction:

```
<space used>/( <space used>+ <space free>)
```

expressed as a percentage. This percentage may be greater than 100 if *<space free>* is less than zero. The percentage value shall be expressed as a positive integer, with any fractional result causing it to be rounded to the next highest integer.

<file system root>
The directory below which the file system hierarchy appears.

12315 XSI The output format is unspecified when **–t** is used.

12316 **STDERR**

12317 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

12318 **OUTPUT FILES**

12319 None.

12320 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

12321 None.

12322 **EXIT STATUS**

12323 The following exit values shall be returned:

12324 0 Successful completion.

12325 >0 An error occurred.

12326 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

12327 Default.

12328 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12329 On most systems, the "name of the file system, in an implementation-defined format" is the
12330 special file on which the file system is mounted.

12331 On large file systems, the calculation specified for percentage used can create huge rounding
12332 errors.

12333 **EXAMPLES**

12334 1. The following example writes portable information about the **/usr** file system:

12335 ```
df –P /usr
```

12336 2. Assuming that **/usr/src** is part of the **/usr** file system, the following produces the same
12337 output as the previous example:

12338 ```
df –P /usr/src
```

12339 **RATIONALE**

12340 The behavior of *df* with the **–P** option is the default action of the 4.2 BSD *df* utility. The uppercase
12341 **–P** was selected to avoid collision with a known industry extension using **–p**.

12342 Historical *df* implementations vary considerably in their default output. It was therefore
12343 necessary to describe the default output in a loose manner to accommodate all known historical
12344 implementations and to add a portable option (**–P**) to provide information in a portable format.

12345 The use of 512-byte units is historical practice and maintains compatibility with *ls* and other
12346 utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. This does not mandate that the file system itself
12347 be based on 512-byte blocks. The **–k** option was added as a compromise measure. It was agreed
12348 by the standard developers that 512 bytes was the best default unit because of its complete
12349 historical consistency on System V (*versus* the mixed 512/1 024-byte usage on BSD systems), and
12350 that a **–k** option to switch to 1 024-byte units was a good compromise. Users who prefer the
12351 more logical 1 024-byte quantity can easily alias *df* to *df* **–k** without breaking many historical
12352 scripts relying on the 512-byte units.

12353 It was suggested that *df* and the various related utilities be modified to access a *BLOCKSIZE*
12354 environment variable to achieve consistency and user acceptance. Since this is not historical
12355 practice on any system, it is left as a possible area for system extensions and will be re-evaluated
12356 in a future version if it is widely implemented.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

find

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #099 is applied.

The *df* utility is removed from the User Portability Utilities option. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

12370 **NAME**

12371 diff — compare two files

12372 **SYNOPSIS**

12373 `diff [-c|-e|-f|-u|-C n|-U n] [-br] file1 file2`

12374 **DESCRIPTION**

12375 The *diff* utility shall compare the contents of *file1* and *file2* and write to standard output a list of
12376 changes necessary to convert *file1* into *file2*. This list should be minimal. No output shall be
12377 produced if the files are identical.

12378 **OPTIONS**

12379 The *diff* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
12380 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

12381 The following options shall be supported:

12382 **-b** Cause any amount of white space at the end of a line to be treated as a single
12383 <newline> (that is, the white-space characters preceding the <newline> are
12384 ignored) and other strings of white-space characters, not including <newline>s, to
12385 compare equal.

12386 **-c** Produce output in a form that provides three lines of copied context.

12387 **-C** *n* Produce output in a form that provides *n* lines of copied context (where *n* shall be
12388 interpreted as a positive decimal integer).

12389 **-e** Produce output in a form suitable as input for the *ed* utility, which can then be used
12390 to convert *file1* into *file2*.

12391 **-f** Produce output in an alternative form, similar in format to **-e**, but not intended to
12392 be suitable as input for the *ed* utility, and in the opposite order.

12393 **-r** Apply *diff* recursively to files and directories of the same name when *file1* and *file2*
12394 are both directories.

12395 The *diff* utility shall detect infinite loops; that is, entering a previously visited
12396 directory that is an ancestor of the last file encountered. When it detects an infinite
12397 loop, *diff* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and shall either recover
12398 its position in the hierarchy or terminate.

12399 **-u** Produce output in a form that provides three lines of unified context.

12400 **-U** *n* Produce output in a form that provides *n* lines of unified context (where *n* shall be
12401 interpreted as a non-negative decimal integer).

12402 **OPERANDS**

12403 The following operands shall be supported:

12404 *file1*, *file2* A pathname of a file to be compared. If either the *file1* or *file2* operand is `'-'`, the
12405 standard input shall be used in its place.

12406 If both *file1* and *file2* are directories, *diff* shall not compare block special files, character special
12407 files, or FIFO special files to any files and shall not compare regular files to directories. Further
12408 details are as specified in Diff Directory Comparison Format (on page 319). The behavior of *diff*
12409 on other file types is implementation-defined when found in directories.

12410 If only one of *file1* and *file2* is a directory, *diff* shall be applied to the non-directory file and the file
12411 contained in the directory file with a filename that is the same as the last component of the non-
12412 directory file.

12413 **STDIN**

12414 The standard input shall be used only if one of the *file1* or *file2* operands references standard
12415 input. See the INPUT FILES section.

12416 **INPUT FILES**

12417 The input files may be of any type.

12418 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

12419 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *diff*:

12420 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
12421 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
12422 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
12423 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

12424 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
12425 internationalization variables.

12426 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
12427 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
12428 arguments and input files).

12429 *LC_MESSAGES*
12430 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
12431 diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to
12432 standard output.

12433 *LC_TIME* Determine the locale for affecting the format of file timestamps written with the **–C**
12434 and **–c** options.

12435 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

12436 *TZ* Determine the timezone used for calculating file timestamps written with a context
12437 format. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

12438 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

12439 Default.

12440 **STDOUT**

12441 **Diff Directory Comparison Format**

12442 If both *file1* and *file2* are directories, the following output formats shall be used.

12443 In the POSIX locale, each file that is present in only one directory shall be reported using the
12444 following format:

12445 `"Only in %s: %s\n", <directory pathname>, <filename>`

12446 In the POSIX locale, subdirectories that are common to the two directories may be reported with
12447 the following format:

12448 `"Common subdirectories: %s and %s\n", <directory1 pathname>,`
12449 `<directory2 pathname>`

12450 For each file common to the two directories, if the two files are not to be compared: if the two
12451 files have the same device ID and file serial number, or are both block special files that refer to
12452 the same device, or are both character special files that refer to the same device, in the POSIX
12453 locale the output format is unspecified. Otherwise, in the POSIX locale an unspecified format
12454 shall be used that contains the pathnames of the two files.

12455 For each file common to the two directories, if the files are compared and are identical, no
12456 output shall be written. If the two files differ, the following format is written:

12457 `"diff %s %s %s\n", <diff_options>, <filename1>, <filename2>`

12458 where <*diff_options*> are the options as specified on the command line.

12459 All directory pathnames listed in this section shall be relative to the original command line
12460 arguments. All other names of files listed in this section shall be filenames (pathname
12461 components).

12462 **Diff Binary Output Format**

12463 In the POSIX locale, if one or both of the files being compared are not text files, an unspecified
12464 format shall be used that contains the pathnames of two files being compared and the string
12465 `"differ"`.

12466 If both files being compared are text files, depending on the options specified, one of the
12467 following formats shall be used to write the differences.

12468 **Diff Default Output Format**

12469 The default (without **–e**, **–f**, **–c**, **–C**, **–u**, or **–U** options) *diff* utility output shall contain lines of
12470 these forms:

12471 `"%da%d\n", <num1>, <num2>`

12472 `"%da%d,%d\n", <num1>, <num2>, <num3>`

12473 `"%dd%d\n", <num1>, <num2>`

12474 `"%d,%dd%d\n", <num1>, <num2>, <num3>`

12475 `"%dc%d\n", <num1>, <num2>`

12476 `"%d,%dc%d\n", <num1>, <num2>, <num3>`

12477 `"%dc%d,%d\n", <num1>, <num2>, <num3>`

12478 `"%d,%dc%d,%d\n", <num1>, <num2>, <num3>, <num4>`

12479 These lines resemble *ed* subcommands to convert *file1* into *file2*. The line numbers before the
12480 action letters shall pertain to *file1*; those after shall pertain to *file2*. Thus, by exchanging *a* for *d*
12481 and reading the line in reverse order, one can also determine how to convert *file2* into *file1*. As in
12482 *ed*, identical pairs (where *num1*= *num2*) are abbreviated as a single number.

12483 Following each of these lines, *diff* shall write to standard output all lines affected in the first file
12484 using the format:

12485 `"<Δ%s", <line>`

12486 and all lines affected in the second file using the format:

12487 `">Δ%s", <line>`

12488 If there are lines affected in both *file1* and *file2* (as with the **c** subcommand), the changes are
12489 separated with a line consisting of three hyphens:

12490 `"---\n"`

12491 **Diff –e Output Format**

12492 With the –**e** option, a script shall be produced that shall, when provided as input to *ed*, along
12493 with an appended **w** (write) command, convert *file1* into *file2*. Only the **a** (append), **c** (change), **d**
12494 (delete), **i** (insert), and **s** (substitute) commands of *ed* shall be used in this script. Text lines,
12495 except those consisting of the single character period (`'.'`), shall be output as they appear in the
12496 file.

12497 **Diff –f Output Format**

12498 With the –**f** option, an alternative format of script shall be produced. It is similar to that
12499 produced by –**e**, with the following differences:

12500 1. It is expressed in reverse sequence; the output of –**e** orders changes from the end of the
12501 file to the beginning; the –**f** from beginning to end.

12502 2. The command form <*lines*> <*command-letter*> used by –**e** is reversed. For example,
12503 10*c* with –**e** would be *c*10 with –**f**.

12504 3. The form used for ranges of line numbers is <space>-separated, rather than comma-
12505 separated.

12506 **Diff –c or –C Output Format**

12507 With the –**c** or –**C** option, the output format shall consist of affected lines along with
12508 surrounding lines of context. The affected lines shall show which ones need to be deleted or
12509 changed in *file1*, and those added from *file2*. With the –**c** option, three lines of context, if
12510 available, shall be written before and after the affected lines. With the –**C** option, the user can
12511 specify how many lines of context are written. The exact format follows.

12512 The name and last modification time of each file shall be output in the following format:

12513 `"*** %s %s\n", file1, <file1 timestamp>`
12514 `"--- %s %s\n", file2, <file2 timestamp>`

12515 Each <*file*> field shall be the pathname of the corresponding file being compared. The pathname
12516 written for standard input is unspecified.

12517 In the POSIX locale, each <*timestamp*> field shall be equivalent to the output from the following
12518 command:

12519 `date "+%a %b %e %T %Y"`

12520 without the trailing <newline>, executed at the time of last modification of the corresponding
12521 file (or the current time, if the file is standard input).

12522 Then, the following output formats shall be applied for every set of changes.

12523 First, a line shall be written in the following format:

12524 `"***************\n"`

12525 Next, the range of lines in *file1* shall be written in the following format if the range contains two
12526 or more lines:

12527 `"*** %d,%d ****\n", <beginning line number>, <ending line number>`

12528 and the following format otherwise:

12529 `"*** %d ****\n", <ending line number>`

12530 The ending line number of an empty range shall be the number of the preceding line, or 0 if the
12531 range is at the start of the file.

12532 Next, the affected lines along with lines of context (unaffected lines) shall be written. Unaffected

lines shall be written in the following format:

`"ΔΔ%s", <unaffected_line>`

Deleted lines shall be written as:

`"–Δ%s", <deleted_line>`

Changed lines shall be written as:

`"!Δ%s", <changed_line>`

Next, the range of lines in *file2* shall be written in the following format if the range contains two or more lines:

`"––– %d,%d ––––\n", <beginning line number>, <ending line number>`

and the following format otherwise:

`"––– %d ––––\n", <ending line number>`

Then, lines of context and changed lines shall be written as described in the previous formats. Lines added from *file2* shall be written in the following format:

`"+Δ%s", <added_line>`

Diff –u or –U Output Format

The **–u** or **–U** options behave like the **–c** or **–C** options, except that the context lines are not repeated; instead, the context, deleted, and added lines are shown together, interleaved. The exact format follows.

The name and last modification time of each file shall be output in the following format:

```
"---Δ%s%s%sΔ%s0, file1, <file1 timestamp>, <file1 frac>, <file1 zone>
"+++Δ%s%s%sΔ%s0, file2, <file2 timestamp>, <file2 frac>, <file2 zone>
```

Each <*file*> field shall be the pathname of the corresponding file being compared, or the single character `'–'` if standard input is being compared. However, if the pathname contains a <tab> or a <newline>, or if it does not consist entirely of characters taken from the portable character set, the behavior is implementation-defined.

Each <*timestamp*> field shall be equivalent to the output from the following command:

```
date '+%Y-%m-%dΔ%H:%M:%S'
```

without the trailing <newline>, executed at the time of last modification of the corresponding file (or the current time, if the file is standard input).

Each <*frac*> field shall be either empty, or a decimal point followed by at least one decimal digit, indicating the fractional-seconds part (if any) of the file timestamp. The number of fractional digits shall be at least the number needed to represent the file's timestamp without loss of information.

Each <*zone*> field shall be of the form `"shhmm"`, where `"shh"` is a signed two-digit decimal number in the range –24 through +25, and `"mm"` is an unsigned two-digit decimal number in the range 00 through 59. It represents the timezone of the timestamp as the number of hours (hh) and minutes (mm) east (+) or west (–) of UTC for the timestamp. If the hours and minutes are both zero, the sign shall be `'+'`. However, if the timezone is not an integral number of minutes away from UTC, the <*zone*> field is implementation-defined.

Then, the following output formats shall be applied for every set of changes.

First, the range of lines in each file shall be written in the following format:

`"@@Δ-%sΔ+%sΔ@@", <file1 range>, <file2 range>`

Each <*range*> field shall be of the form:

```
"%1d", <beginning line number>
```

if the range contains exactly one line, and:

```
"%1d,%1d", <beginning line number>, <number of lines>
```

otherwise. If a range is empty, its beginning line number shall be the number of the line just before the range, or 0 if the empty range starts the file.

Next, the affected lines along with lines of context shall be written. Each non-empty unaffected line shall be written in the following format:

```
"Δ%s", <unaffected_line>
```

where the contents of the unaffected line shall be taken from *file1*. It is implementation-defined whether an empty unaffected line is written as an empty line or a line containing a single <space> character. This line also represents the same line of *file2*, even though *file2*'s line may contain different contents due to the **–b**. Deleted lines shall be written as:

```
"-%s", <deleted_line>
```

Added lines shall be written as:

```
"+%s", <added_line>
```

The order of lines written shall be the same as that of the corresponding file. A deleted line shall never be written immediately after an added line.

If **–U** *n* is specified, the output shall contain no more than *n* consecutive unaffected lines; and if the output contains an affected line and this line is adjacent to up to *n* consecutive unaffected lines in the corresponding file, the output shall contain these unaffected lines. **–u** shall act like **–U**3.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 No differences were found.

1 Differences were found.

>1 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

If lines at the end of a file are changed and other lines are added, *diff* output may show this as a delete and add, as a change, or as a change and add; *diff* is not expected to know which happened and users should not care about the difference in output as long as it clearly shows the differences between the files.

EXAMPLES

If **dir1** is a directory containing a directory named **x**, **dir2** is a directory containing a directory named **x**, **dir1/x** and **dir2/x** both contain files named **date.out**, and **dir2/x** contains a file named **y**, the command:

```
diff –r dir1 dir2
```

could produce output similar to:

```
Common subdirectories: dir1/x and dir2/x
Only in dir2/x: y
diff –r dir1/x/date.out dir2/x/date.out
1c1
< Mon Jul  2 13:12:16 PDT 1990
---
> Tue Jun 19 21:41:39 PDT 1990
```

RATIONALE

The **–h** option was omitted because it was insufficiently specified and does not add to applications portability.

Historical implementations employ algorithms that do not always produce a minimum list of differences; the current language about making every effort is the best this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x can do, as there is no metric that could be employed to judge the quality of implementations against any and all file contents. The statement "This list should be minimal" clearly implies that implementations are not expected to provide the following output when comparing two 100-line files that differ in only one character on a single line:

```
1,100c1,100
all 100 lines from file1 preceded with "< "
---
all 100 lines from file2 preceded with "> "
```

The "Only in" messages required when the **–r** option is specified are not used by most historical implementations if the **–e** option is also specified. It is required here because it provides useful information that must be provided to update a target directory hierarchy to match a source hierarchy. The "Common subdirectories" messages are written by System V and 4.3 BSD when the **–r** option is specified. They are allowed here but are not required because they are reporting on something that is the same, not reporting a difference, and are not needed to update a target hierarchy.

The **–c** option, which writes output in a format using lines of context, has been included. The format is useful for a variety of reasons, among them being much improved readability and the ability to understand difference changes when the target file has line numbers that differ from another similar, but slightly different, copy. The *patch* utility is most valuable when working with difference listings using a context format. The BSD version of **–c** takes an optional argument specifying the amount of context. Rather than overloading **–c** and breaking the Utility Syntax Guidelines for *diff*, the standard developers decided to add a separate option for specifying a context diff with a specified amount of context (**–C**). Also, the format for context *diff*s was extended slightly in 4.3 BSD to allow multiple changes that are within context lines from each other to be merged together. The output format contains an additional four asterisks after the range of affected lines in the first filename. This was to provide a flag for old programs (like old versions of *patch*) that only understand the old context format. The version of context

12660 described here does not require that multiple changes within context lines be merged, but it does
12661 not prohibit it either. The extension is upwards-compatible, so any vendors that wish to retain
12662 the old version of *diff* can do so by adding the extra four asterisks (that is, utilities that currently
12663 use *diff* and understand the new merged format will also understand the old unmerged format,
12664 but not *vice versa*).

12665 The **–u** and **–U** options of GNU *diff* have been included. Their output format, designed by
12666 Wayne Davison, takes up less space than **–c** and **–C** format, and in many cases is easier to read.
12667 The format's timestamps do not vary by locale, so *LC_TIME* does not affect it. The format's line
12668 numbers are rendered with the `%1d` format, not `%d`, because the file format notation rules would
12669 allow extra <blank>s to appear around the numbers.

12670 The substitute command was added as an additional format for the **–e** option. This was added
12671 to provide implementations with a way to fix the classic "dot alone on a line" bug present in
12672 many versions of *diff*. Since many implementations have fixed this bug, the standard developers
12673 decided not to standardize broken behavior, but rather to provide the necessary tool for fixing
12674 the bug. One way to fix this bug is to output two periods whenever a lone period is needed, then
12675 terminate the append command with a period, and then use the substitute command to convert
12676 the two periods into one period.

12677 The BSD-derived **–r** option was added to provide a mechanism for using *diff* to compare two file
12678 system trees. This behavior is useful, is standard practice on all BSD-derived systems, and is not
12679 easily reproducible with the *find* utility.

12680 The requirement that *diff* not compare files in some circumstances, even though they have the
12681 same name, is based on the actual output of historical implementations. The specified behavior
12682 precludes the problems arising from running into FIFOs and other files that would cause *diff* to
12683 hang waiting for input with no indication to the user that *diff* was hung. A previous version of
12684 this standard specified the output format more precisely, but in practice this requirement was
12685 widely ignored and the benefit of standardization seemed small, so it is now unspecified. In
12686 most common usage, *diff* **–r** should indicate differences in the file hierarchies, not the difference
12687 of contents of devices pointed to by the hierarchies.

12688 Many early implementations of *diff* require seekable files. Since the System Interfaces volume of
12689 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x supports named pipes, the standard developers decided that such a
12690 restriction was unreasonable. Note also that the allowed filename – almost always refers to a
12691 pipe.

12692 No directory search order is specified for *diff*. The historical ordering is, in fact, not optimal, in
12693 that it prints out all of the differences at the current level, including the statements about all
12694 common subdirectories before recursing into those subdirectories.

12695 The message:

12696 `"diff %s %s %s\n", <diff_options>, <filename1>, <filename2>`

12697 does not vary by locale because it is the representation of a command, not an English sentence.

12698 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12699 None.

12700 **SEE ALSO**

12701 *cmp*, *comm*, *ed*, *find*

12702 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12703 First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The **–f** option is added.

The output format for **–c** or **–C** format is changed to align with changes to the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard resulting from IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #71.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/20 is applied, changing the STDOUT section. This changes the specification of *diff* **–c** so that it agrees with existing practice when contexts contain zero lines or one line.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-103 and SD5-XCU-ERN-120 are applied, adding the **–u** option.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #115 and #114 are applied.

12720 **NAME**

12721 dirname — return the directory portion of a pathname

12722 **SYNOPSIS**

12723 `dirname` *`string`*

12724 **DESCRIPTION**

12725 The *string* operand shall be treated as a pathname, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of
12726 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.266, Pathname. The string *string* shall be converted to the name
12727 of the directory containing the filename corresponding to the last pathname component in *string*,
12728 performing actions equivalent to the following steps in order:

12729 1. If *string* is //, skip steps 2 to 5.

12730 2. If *string* consists entirely of slash characters, *string* shall be set to a single slash character.
12731 In this case, skip steps 3 to 8.

12732 3. If there are any trailing slash characters in *string*, they shall be removed.

12733 4. If there are no slash characters remaining in *string*, *string* shall be set to a single period
12734 character. In this case, skip steps 5 to 8.

12735 5. If there are any trailing non-slash characters in *string*, they shall be removed.

12736 6. If the remaining *string* is //, it is implementation-defined whether steps 7 and 8 are
12737 skipped or processed.

12738 7. If there are any trailing slash characters in *string*, they shall be removed.

12739 8. If the remaining *string* is empty, *string* shall be set to a single slash character.

12740 The resulting string shall be written to standard output.

12741 **OPTIONS**

12742 None.

12743 **OPERANDS**

12744 The following operand shall be supported:

12745 *string* A string.

12746 **STDIN**

12747 Not used.

12748 **INPUT FILES**

12749 None.

12750 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

12751 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *dirname*:

12752 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
12753 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
12754 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
12755 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

12756 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
12757 internationalization variables.

12758 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
12759 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
12760 arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The *dirname* utility shall write a line to the standard output in the following format:

```
"%s\n", <resulting string>
```

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
The definition of *pathname* specifies implementation-defined behavior for pathnames starting with two slash characters. Therefore, applications shall not arbitrarily add slashes to the beginning of a pathname unless they can ensure that there are more or less than two or are prepared to deal with the implementation-defined consequences.

EXAMPLES

Command	Results
dirname /	*/*
dirname //	*/* or *//*
dirname /a/b/	*/a*
dirname //a//b//	*//a*
dirname	Unspecified
dirname a	. ($? = 0)
dirname ""	. ($? = 0)
dirname /a	*/*
dirname /a/b	*/a*
dirname a/b	*a*

RATIONALE
The *dirname* utility originated in System III. It has evolved through the System V releases to a version that matches the requirements specified in this description in System V Release 3. 4.3 BSD and earlier versions did not include *dirname*.

The behaviors of *basename* and *dirname* in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x have been coordinated so that when *string* is a valid pathname:

```
$(basename "string")
```

would be a valid filename for the file in the directory:

```
$(dirname "string")
```

This would not work for the versions of these utilities in early proposals due to the way processing of trailing slashes was specified. Consideration was given to leaving processing unspecified if there were trailing slashes, but this cannot be done; the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.266, Pathname allows trailing slashes. The *basename* and *dirname* utilities have to specify consistent handling for all valid pathnames.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

basename, Section 2.5

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

12819 **NAME**

12820 du — estimate file space usage

12821 **SYNOPSIS**

12822 `du [–a|–s] [–kx] [–H|–L] [`*`file`*`...]`

12823 **DESCRIPTION**

12824 By default, the *du* utility shall write to standard output the size of the file space allocated to, and
12825 the size of the file space allocated to each subdirectory of, the file hierarchy rooted in each of the
12826 specified files. By default, when a symbolic link is encountered on the command line or in the
12827 file hierarchy, *du* shall count the size of the symbolic link (rather than the file referenced by the
12828 link), and shall not follow the link to another portion of the file hierarchy. The size of the file
12829 space allocated to a file of type directory shall be defined as the sum total of space allocated to
12830 all files in the file hierarchy rooted in the directory plus the space allocated to the directory itself.

12831 When *du* cannot *stat*( ) files or *stat*( ) or read directories, it shall report an error condition and the
12832 final exit status is affected. Files with multiple links shall be counted and written for only one
12833 entry. The directory entry that is selected in the report is unspecified. By default, file sizes shall
12834 be written in 512-byte units, rounded up to the next 512-byte unit.

12835 **OPTIONS**

12836 The *du* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
12837 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

12838 The following options shall be supported:

12839 **–a** In addition to the default output, report the size of each file not of type directory in
12840 the file hierarchy rooted in the specified file. Regardless of the presence of the **–a**
12841 option, non-directories given as *file* operands shall always be listed.

12842 **–H** If a symbolic link is specified on the command line, *du* shall count the size of the
12843 file or file hierarchy referenced by the link.

12844 **–k** Write the files sizes in units of 1 024 bytes, rather than the default 512-byte units.

12845 **–L** If a symbolic link is specified on the command line or encountered during the
12846 traversal of a file hierarchy, *du* shall count the size of the file or file hierarchy
12847 referenced by the link.

12848 **–s** Instead of the default output, report only the total sum for each of the specified
12849 files.

12850 **–x** When evaluating file sizes, evaluate only those files that have the same device as
12851 the file specified by the *file* operand.

12852 Specifying more than one of the mutually-exclusive options **–H** and **–L** shall not be considered
12853 an error. The last option specified shall determine the behavior of the utility.

12854 **OPERANDS**

12855 The following operand shall be supported:

12856 *file* The pathname of a file whose size is to be written. If no *file* is specified, the current
12857 directory shall be used.

12858 **STDIN**

12859 Not used.

12860 **INPUT FILES**

12861 None.

12862 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

12863 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *du*:

12864 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
12865 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
12866 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
12867 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

12868 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
12869 internationalization variables.

12870 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
12871 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
12872 arguments).

12873 *LC_MESSAGES*
12874 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
12875 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

12876 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

12877 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

12878 Default.

12879 **STDOUT**

12880 The output from *du* shall consist of the amount of space allocated to a file and the name of the
12881 file, in the following format:

12882 `"%d %s\n", <size>, <pathname>`

12883 **STDERR**

12884 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

12885 **OUTPUT FILES**

12886 None.

12887 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

12888 None.

12889 **EXIT STATUS**

12890 The following exit values shall be returned:

12891 0 Successful completion.

12892 >0 An error occurred.

12893 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

12894 Default.

12895 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12896 None.

12897 **EXAMPLES**

12898 None.

12899 **RATIONALE**

12900 The use of 512-byte units is historical practice and maintains compatibility with *ls* and other
12901 utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. This does not mandate that the file system itself
12902 be based on 512-byte blocks. The **–k** option was added as a compromise measure. It was agreed
12903 by the standard developers that 512 bytes was the best default unit because of its complete
12904 historical consistency on System V (*versus* the mixed 512/1 024-byte usage on BSD systems), and

that a –**k** option to switch to 1 024-byte units was a good compromise. Users who prefer the 1 024-byte quantity can easily alias *du* to *du* –**k** without breaking the many historical scripts relying on the 512-byte units.

The –**b** option was added to an early proposal to provide a resolution to the situation where System V and BSD systems give figures for file sizes in *blocks*, which is an implementation-defined concept. (In common usage, the block size is 512 bytes for System V and 1 024 bytes for BSD systems.) However, –**b** was later deleted, since the default was eventually decided as 512-byte units.

Historical file systems provided no way to obtain exact figures for the space allocation given to files. There are two known areas of inaccuracies in historical file systems: cases of *indirect blocks* being used by the file system or *sparse* files yielding incorrectly high values. An indirect block is space used by the file system in the storage of the file, but that need not be counted in the space allocated to the file. A *sparse* file is one in which an *lseek*( ) call has been made to a position beyond the end of the file and data has subsequently been written at that point. A file system need not allocate all the intervening zero-filled blocks to such a file. It is up to the implementation to define exactly how accurate its methods are.

The –**a** and –**s** options were mutually-exclusive in the original version of *du*. The POSIX Shell and Utilities description is implied by the language in the SVID where –**s** is described as causing "only the grand total" to be reported. Some systems may produce output for –**sa**, but a Strictly Conforming POSIX Shell and Utilities Application cannot use that combination.

The –**a** and –**s** options were adopted from the SVID except that the System V behavior of not listing non-directories explicitly given as operands, unless the –**a** option is specified, was considered a bug; the BSD-based behavior (report for all operands) is mandated. The default behavior of *du* in the SVID with regard to reporting the failure to read files (it produces no messages) was considered counter-intuitive, and thus it was specified that the POSIX Shell and Utilities default behavior shall be to produce such messages. These messages can be turned off with shell redirection to achieve the System V behavior.

The –**x** option is historical practice on recent BSD systems. It has been adopted by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because there was no other historical method of limiting the *du* search to a single file hierarchy. This limitation of the sear

Issue 7

The *du* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

12955 **NAME**

12956 echo — write arguments to standard output

12957 **SYNOPSIS**

12958 `echo [`*`string...`*`]`

12959 **DESCRIPTION**

12960 The *echo* utility writes its arguments to standard output, followed by a <newline>. If there are
12961 no arguments, only the <newline> is written.

12962 **OPTIONS**

12963 The *echo* utility shall not recognize the "−−" argument in the manner specified by Guideline 10
12964 of the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines;
12965 "−−" shall be recognized as a string operand.

12966 Implementations shall not support any options.

12967 **OPERANDS**

12968 The following operands shall be supported:

12969 *string* A string to be written to standard output. If the first operand is **−n**, or if any of the
12970 operands contain a backslash (`'\'`) character, the results are implementation-
12971 defined.

12972 XSI On XSI-conformant systems, if the first operand is **−n**, it shall be treated as a string,
12973 not an option. The following character sequences shall be recognized on XSI-
12974 conformant systems within any of the arguments:

12975 `\a` Write an <alert>.

12976 `\b` Write a <backspace>.

12977 `\c` Suppress the <newline> that otherwise follows the final argument in the
12978 output. All characters following the `'\c'` in the arguments shall be
12979 ignored.

12980 `\f` Write a <form-feed>.

12981 `\n` Write a <newline>.

12982 `\r` Write a <carriage-return>.

12983 `\t` Write a <tab>.

12984 `\v` Write a <vertical-tab>.

12985 `\\` Write a backslash character.

12986 `\0`*`num`* Write an 8-bit value that is the zero, one, two, or three-digit octal number
12987 *num*.

12988 **STDIN**

12989 Not used.

12990 **INPUT FILES**

12991 None.

12992 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

12993 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *echo*:

12994 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
12995 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
12996 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
12997 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

12998 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
12999 internationalization variables.

13000 XSI *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
13001 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
13002 arguments).

13003 *LC_MESSAGES*
13004 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
13005 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

13006 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

13007 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

13008 Default.

13009 **STDOUT**

13010 The *echo* utility arguments shall be separated by single <space>s and a <newline> shall follow
13011 XSI the last argument. Output transformations shall occur based on the escape sequences in the
13012 input. See the OPERANDS section.

13013 **STDERR**

13014 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

13015 **OUTPUT FILES**

13016 None.

13017 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

13018 None.

13019 **EXIT STATUS**

13020 The following exit values shall be returned:

13021 0 Successful completion.

13022 >0 An error occurred.

13023 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

13024 Default.

13025 **APPLICATION USAGE**

13026 It is not possible to use *echo* portably across all POSIX systems unless both **–n** (as the first
13027 argument) and escape sequences are omitted.

13028 The *printf* utility can be used portably to emulate any of the traditional behaviors of the *echo*
13029 utility as follows (assuming that *IFS* has its standard value or is unset):

13030 • The historic System V *echo* and the requirements on XSI implementations in this volume of
13031 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are equivalent to:

13032 ```
printf "%b\n" "$*"
```

13033 • The BSD *echo* is equivalent to:

13034 ```
if [ "X$1" = "X–n" ]
13035 then
```



```
        shift
        printf "%s" "$*"
    else
        printf "%s\n" "$*"
    fi
```

New applications are encouraged to use *printf* instead of *echo*.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *echo* utility has not been made obsolescent because of its extremely widespread use in historical applications. Conforming applications that wish to do prompting without <newline>s or that could possibly be expecting to echo a **–n**, should use the *printf* utility derived from the Ninth Edition system.

As specified, *echo* writes its arguments in the simplest of ways. The two different historical versions of *echo* vary in fatally incompatible ways.

The BSD *echo* checks the first argument for the string **–n** which causes it to suppress the <newline> that would otherwise follow the final argument in the output.

The System V *echo* does not support any options, but allows escape sequences within its operands, as described for XSI implementations in the OPERANDS section.

The *echo* utility does not support Utility Syntax Guideline 10 because historical applications depend on *echo* to echo *all* of its arguments, except for the **–n** option in the BSD version.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

printf

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

In the OPTIONS section, the last sentence is changed to indicate that implementations “do not” support any options; in the previous issue this said “need not”.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- A set of character sequences is defined as *string* operands.
- *LC_CTYPE* is added to the list of environment variables affecting *echo*.
- In the OPTIONS section, implementations shall not support any options.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/21 is applied, so that the *echo* utility can accommodate historical BSD behavior.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

ed — edit text

SYNOPSIS

```
ed [–p string] [–s] [file]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *ed* utility is a line-oriented text editor that uses two modes: *command mode* and *input mode*. In command mode the input characters shall be interpreted as commands, and in input mode they shall be interpreted as text. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

If an operand is `'–'`, the results are unspecified.

OPTIONS

The *ed* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for the unspecified usage of `'–'`.

The following options shall be supported:

–p *string* Use *string* as the prompt string when in command mode. By default, there shall be no prompt string.

–s Suppress the writing of byte counts by **e**, **E**, **r**, and **w** commands and of the `'!'` prompt after a !*command*.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file If the *file* argument is given, *ed* shall simulate an **e** command on the file named by the pathname, *file*, before accepting commands from the standard input.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file consisting of commands, as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ed*:

HOME Determine the pathname of the user's home directory.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classes within regular expressions.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

The *ed* utility shall take the standard action for all signals (see the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section in Section 1.11 (on page 18)) with the following exceptions:

SIGINT The *ed* utility shall interrupt its current activity, write the string `"?\n"` to standard output, and return to command mode (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section).

SIGHUP If the buffer is not empty and has changed since the last write, the *ed* utility shall attempt to write a copy of the buffer in a file. First, the file named **ed.hup** in the current directory shall be used; if that fails, the file named **ed.hup** in the directory named by the *HOME* environment variable shall be used. In any case, the *ed* utility shall exit without writing the file to the currently remembered pathname and without returning to command mode.

SIGQUIT The *ed* utility shall ignore this event.

STDOUT

Various editing commands and the prompting feature (see **−p**) write to standard output, as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The output files shall be text files whose formats are dependent on the editing commands given.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

The *ed* utility shall operate on a copy of the file it is editing; changes made to the copy shall have no effect on the file until a **w** (write) command is given. The copy of the text is called the *buffer*.

Commands to *ed* have a simple and regular structure: zero, one, or two *addresses* followed by a single-character *command*, possibly followed by parameters to that command. These addresses specify one or more lines in the buffer. Every command that requires addresses has default addresses, so that the addresses very often can be omitted. If the **−p** option is specified, the prompt string shall be written to standard output before each command is read.

In general, only one command can appear on a line. Certain commands allow text to be input. This text is placed in the appropriate place in the buffer. While *ed* is accepting text, it is said to be in *input mode*. In this mode, no commands shall be recognized; all input is merely collected. Input mode is terminated by entering a line consisting of two characters: a period (`'.'`) followed by a <newline>. This line is not considered part of the input text.

Regular Expressions in ed

The *ed* utility shall support basic regular expressions, as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic Regular Expressions. Since regular expressions in *ed* are always matched against single lines (excluding the terminating <newline>s), never against any larger section of text, there is no way for a regular expression to match a <newline>.

A null RE shall be equivalent to the last RE encountered.

Regular expressions are used in addresses to specify lines, and in some commands (for example,

the **s** substitute command) to specify portions of a line to be substituted.

Addresses in ed

Addressing in *ed* relates to the current line. Generally, the current line is the last line affected by a command. The current line number is the address of the current line. If the edit buffer is not empty, the initial value for the current line shall be the last line in the edit buffer; otherwise, zero.

Addresses shall be constructed as follows:

1. The period character (`'.'`) shall address the current line.
2. The dollar sign character (`'$'`) shall address the last line of the edit buffer.
3. The positive decimal number *n* shall address the *n*th line of the edit buffer.
4. The apostrophe-x character pair (`"'x"`) shall address the line marked with the mark name character *x*, which shall be a lowercase letter from the portable character set. It shall be an error if the character has not been set to mark a line or if the line that was marked is not currently present in the edit buffer.
5. A BRE enclosed by slash characters (`'/'`) shall address the first line found by searching forwards from the line following the current line toward the end of the edit buffer and stopping at the first line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the BRE. The BRE consisting of a null BRE delimited by a pair of slash characters shall address the next line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the last BRE encountered. In addition, the second slash can be omitted at the end of a command line. Within the BRE, a backslash-slash pair (`"\/"`) shall represent a literal slash instead of the BRE delimiter. If necessary, the search shall wrap around to the beginning of the buffer and continue up to and including the current line, so that the entire buffer is searched.
6. A BRE enclosed by question-mark characters (`'?'`) shall address the first line found by searching backwards from the line preceding the current line toward the beginning of the edit buffer and stopping at the first line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the BRE. The BRE consisting of a null BRE delimited by a pair of question-mark characters (`"??"`) shall address the previous line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the last BRE encountered. In addition, the second question-mark can be omitted at the end of a command line. Within the BRE, a backslash-question-mark pair (`"\?"`) shall represent a literal question mark instead of the BRE delimiter. If necessary, the search shall wrap around to the end of the buffer and continue up to and including the current line, so that the entire buffer is searched.
7. A plus-sign (`'+'`) or hyphen character (`'−'`) followed by a decimal number shall address the current line plus or minus the number. A plus-sign or hyphen character not followed by a decimal number shall address the current line plus or minus 1.

Addresses can be followed by zero or more address offsets, optionally <blank>-separated. Address offsets are constructed as follows:

- A plus-sign or hyphen character followed by a decimal number shall add or subtract, respectively, the indicated number of lines to or from the address. A plus-sign or hyphen character not followed by a decimal number shall add or subtract 1 to or from the address.
- A decimal number shall add the indicated number of lines to the address.

It shall not be an error for an intermediate address value to be less than zero or greater than the last line in the edit buffer. It shall be an error for the final address value to be less than zero or greater than the last line in the edit buffer. It shall be an error if a search for a BRE fails to find a matching line.

Commands accept zero, one, or two addresses. If more than the required number of addresses are provided to a command that requires zero addresses, it shall be an error. Otherwise, if more than the required number of addresses are provided to a command, the addresses specified first shall be evaluated and then discarded until the maximum number of valid addresses remain, for the specified command.

Addresses shall be separated from each other by a comma (`','`) or semicolon character (`';'`). In the case of a semicolon separator, the current line (`'.'`) shall be set to the first address, and only then will the second address be calculated. This feature can be used to determine the starting line for forwards and backwards searches; see rules 5. and 6.

Addresses can be omitted on either side of the comma or semicolon separator, in which case the resulting address pairs shall be as follows:

Specified	Resulting
`,`	`1 , $`
`, addr`	`1 , addr`
`addr ,`	`addr , addr`
`;`	`. ; $`
`; addr`	`. ; addr`
`addr ;`	`addr ; addr`

Any <blank>s included between addresses, address separators, or address offsets shall be ignored.

Commands in ed

In the following list of *ed* commands, the default addresses are shown in parentheses. The number of addresses shown in the default shall be the number expected by the command. The parentheses are not part of the address; they show that the given addresses are the default.

It is generally invalid for more than one command to appear on a line. However, any command (except **e**, **E**, **f**, **q**, **Q**, **r**, **w**, and **!**) can be suffixed by the letter **l**, **n**, or **p**; in which case, except for the **l**, **n**, and **p** commands, the command shall be executed and then the new current line shall be written as described below under the **l**, **n**, and **p** commands. When an **l**, **n**, or **p** suffix is used with an **l**, **n**, or **p** command, the command shall write to standard output as described below, but it is unspecified whether the suffix writes the current line again in the requested format or whether the suffix has no effect. For example, the **pl** command (base **p** command with an **l** suffix) shall either write just the current line or write it twice—once as specified for **p** and once as specified for **l**. Also, the **g**, **G**, **v**, and **V** commands shall take a command as a parameter.

Each address component can be preceded by zero or more <blank>s. The command letter can be preceded by zero or more <blank>s. If a suffix letter (**l**, **n**, or **p**) is given, the application shall ensure that it immediately follows the command.

The **e**, **E**, **f**, **r**, and **w** commands shall take an optional *file* parameter, separated from the command letter by one or more <blank>s.

If changes have been made in the buffer since the last **w** command that wrote the entire buffer, *ed* shall warn the user if an attempt is made to destroy the editor buffer via the **e** or **q** commands. The *ed* utility shall write the string:

```
"?\n"
```

(followed by an explanatory message if *help mode* has been enabled via the **H** command) to standard output and shall continue in command mode with the current line number unchanged. If the **e** or **q** command is repeated with no intervening command, it shall take effect.

If a terminal disconnect (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface, Modem Disconnect and Closing a Device Terminal), is detected:

- If accompanied by a SIGHUP signal, the *ed* utility shall operate as described in the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section for a SIGHUP signal.
- If not accompanied by a SIGHUP signal, the *ed* utility shall act as if an end-of-file had been detected on standard input.

If an end-of-file is detected on standard input:

- If the *ed* utility is in input mode, *ed* shall terminate input mode and return to command mode. It is unspecified if any partially entered lines (that is, input text without a terminating <newline>) are discarded from the input text.
- If the *ed* utility is in command mode, it shall act as if a **q** command had been entered.

If the closing delimiter of an RE or of a replacement string (for example, `'/'`) in a **g**, **G**, **s**, **v**, or **V** command would be the last character before a <newline>, that delimiter can be omitted, in which case the addressed line shall be written. For example, the following pairs of commands are equivalent:

```
s/s1/s2     s/s1/s2/p
g/s1        g/s1/p
?s1         ?s1?
```

If an invalid command is entered, *ed* shall write the string:

```
"?\n"
```

(followed by an explanatory message if *help mode* has been enabled via the **H** command) to standard output and shall continue in command mode with the current line number unchanged.

Append Command

Synopsis:

```
(.)a
<text>
.
```

The **a** command shall read the given text and append it after the addressed line; the current line number shall become the address of the last inserted line or, if there were none, the addressed line. Address 0 shall be valid for this command; it shall cause the appended text to be placed at the beginning of the buffer.

Change Command

Synopsis:

```
(.,.)c
<text>
.
```

The **c** command shall delete the addressed lines, then accept input text that replaces these lines; the current line shall be set to the address of the last line input; or, if there were none, at the line after the last line deleted; if the lines deleted were originally at the end of the buffer, the current line number shall be set to the address of the new last line; if no lines remain in the buffer, the current line number shall be set to zero. Address 0 shall be valid for this command; it shall be interpreted as if address 1 were specified.

13295 **Delete Command**

13296 *Synopsis*: `(.,.)d`

13297 The **d** command shall delete the addressed lines from the buffer. The address of the line after the
13298 last line deleted shall become the current line number; if the lines deleted were originally at the
13299 end of the buffer, the current line number shall be set to the address of the new last line; if no
13300 lines remain in the buffer, the current line number shall be set to zero.

13301 **Edit Command**

13302 *Synopsis*: `e [file]`

13303 The **e** command shall delete the entire contents of the buffer and then read in the file named by
13304 the pathname *file*. The current line number shall be set to the address of the last line of the
13305 buffer. If no pathname is given, the currently remembered pathname, if any, shall be used (see
13306 the **f** command). The number of bytes read shall be written to standard output, unless the **–s**
13307 option was specified, in the following format:

13308 `"%d\n", <number of bytes read>`

13309 The name *file* shall be remembered for possible use as a default pathname in subsequent **e**, **E**, **r**,
13310 and **w** commands. If *file* is replaced by `'!'`, the rest of the line shall be taken to be a shell
13311 command line whose output is to be read. Such a shell command line shall not be remembered
13312 as the current *file*. All marks shall be discarded upon the completion of a successful **e** command.
13313 If the buffer has changed since the last time the entire buffer was written, the user shall be
13314 warned, as described previously.

13315 **Edit Without Checking Command**

13316 *Synopsis*: `E [file]`

13317 The **E** command shall possess all properties and restrictions of the **e** command except that the
13318 editor shall not check to see whether any changes have been made to the buffer since the last **w**
13319 command.

13320 **Filename Command**

13321 *Synopsis*: `f [file]`

13322 If *file* is given, the **f** command shall change the currently remembered pathname to *file*; whether
13323 the name is changed or not, it shall then write the (possibly new) currently remembered
13324 pathname to the standard output in the following format:

13325 `"%s\n", <pathname>`

13326 The current line number shall be unchanged.

13327 **Global Command**

13328 *Synopsis*: `(1,$)g/RE/command list`

13329 In the **g** command, the first step shall be to mark every line for which the line excluding the
13330 terminating <newline> matches the given RE. Then, going sequentially from the beginning of
13331 the file to the end of the file, the given *command list* shall be executed for each marked line, with
13332 the current line number set to the address of that line. Any line modified by the *command list*
13333 shall be unmarked. When the **g** command completes, the current line number shall have the
13334 value assigned by the last command in the *command list*. If there were no matching lines, the
13335 current line number shall not be changed. A single command or the first of a list of commands
13336 shall appear on the same line as the global command. All lines of a multi-line list except the last
13337 line shall be ended with a backslash preceding the terminating <newline>; the **a**, **i**, and **c**

commands and associated input are permitted. The `'.'` terminating input mode can be omitted if it would be the last line of the *command list*. An empty *command list* shall be equivalent to the **p** command. The use of the **g**, **G**, **v**, **V**, and **!** commands in the *command list* produces undefined results. Any character other than <space> or <newline> can be used instead of a slash to delimit the RE. Within the RE, the RE delimiter itself can be used as a literal character if it is preceded by a backslash.

Interactive Global Command

Synopsis: `(1,$)G/`*RE*`/`

In the **G** command, the first step shall be to mark every line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the given RE. Then, for every such line, that line shall be written, the current line number shall be set to the address of that line, and any one command (other than one of the **a**, **c**, **i**, **g**, **G**, **v**, and **V** commands) shall be read and executed. A <newline> shall act as a null command (causing no action to be taken on the current line); an `'&'` shall cause the re-execution of the most recent non-null command executed within the current invocation of **G**. Note that the commands input as part of the execution of the **G** command can address and affect any lines in the buffer. Any line modified by the command shall be unmarked. The final value of the current line number shall be the value set by the last command successfully executed. (Note that the last command successfully executed shall be the **G** command itself if a command fails or the null command is specified.) If there were no matching lines, the current line number shall not be changed. The **G** command can be terminated by a SIGINT signal. Any character other than <space> or <newline> can be used instead of a slash to delimit the RE and the replacement. Within the RE, the RE delimiter itself can be used as a literal character if it is preceded by a backslash.

Help Command

Synopsis: `h`

The **h** command shall write a short message to standard output that explains the reason for the most recent `'?'` notification. The current line number shall be unchanged.

Help-Mode Command

Synopsis: `H`

The **H** command shall cause *ed* to enter a mode in which help messages (see the **h** command) shall be written to standard output for all subsequent `'?'` notifications. The **H** command alternately shall turn this mode on and off; it is initially off. If the help-mode is being turned on, the **H** command also explains the previous `'?'` notification, if there was one. The current line number shall be unchanged.

Insert Command

Synopsis:
```
(.)i
<text>
.
```

The **i** command shall insert the given text before the addressed line; the current line is set to the last inserted line or, if there was none, to the addressed line. This command differs from the **a** command only in the placement of the input text. Address 0 shall be valid for this command; it shall be interpreted as if address 1 were specified.

13380 **Join Command**

13381 *Synopsis*: `(.,.+1)j`

13382 The **j** command shall join contiguous lines by removing the appropriate <newline>s. If exactly
13383 one address is given, this command shall do nothing. If lines are joined, the current line number
13384 shall be set to the address of the joined line; otherwise, the current line number shall be
13385 unchanged.

13386 **Mark Command**

13387 *Synopsis*: `(.)k`*x*

13388 The **k** command shall mark the addressed line with name *x*, which the application shall ensure
13389 is a lowercase letter from the portable character set. The address `"'x"` shall then refer to this
13390 line; the current line number shall be unchanged.

13391 **List Command**

13392 *Synopsis*: `(.,.)l`

13393 The **l** command shall write to standard output the addressed lines in a visually unambiguous
13394 form. The characters listed in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Table 5-1,
13395 Escape Sequences and Associated Actions (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`) shall
13396 be written as the corresponding escape sequence; the `'\n'` in that table is not applicable. Non-
13397 printable characters not in the table shall be written as one three-digit octal number (with a
13398 preceding backslash character) for each byte in the character (most significant byte first).

13399 Long lines shall be folded, with the point of folding indicated by <newline> preceded by a
13400 backslash; the length at which folding occurs is unspecified, but should be appropriate for the
13401 output device. The end of each line shall be marked with a `'$'`, and `'$'` characters within the
13402 text shall be written with a preceding backslash. An **l** command can be appended to any other
13403 command other than **e**, **E**, **f**, **q**, **Q**, **r**, **w**, or **!**. The current line number shall be set to the address
13404 of the last line written.

13405 **Move Command**

13406 *Synopsis*: `(.,.)m`*address*

13407 The **m** command shall reposition the addressed lines after the line addressed by *address*.
13408 Address 0 shall be valid for *address* and cause the addressed lines to be moved to the beginning
13409 of the buffer. It shall be an error if address *address* falls within the range of moved lines. The
13410 current line number shall be set to the address of the last line moved.

13411 **Number Command**

13412 *Synopsis*: `(.,.)n`

13413 The **n** command shall write to standard output the addressed lines, preceding each line by its
13414 line number and a <tab>; the current line number shall be set to the address of the last line
13415 written. The **n** command can be appended to any command other than **e**, **E**, **f**, **q**, **Q**, **r**, **w**, or **!**.

13416 **Print Command**

13417 *Synopsis*: `(.,.)p`

13418 The **p** command shall write to standard output the addressed lines; the current line number shall
13419 be set to the address of the last line written. The **p** command can be appended to any command
13420 other than **e**, **E**, **f**, **q**, **Q**, **r**, **w**, or **!**.

13421 **Prompt Command**

13422 *Synopsis*: `P`

13423 The **P** command shall cause *ed* to prompt with an asterisk (`'*'`) (or *string*, if **−p** is specified) for
13424 all subsequent commands. The **P** command alternatively shall turn this mode on and off; it shall
13425 be initially on if the **−p** option is specified; otherwise, off. The current line number shall be
13426 unchanged.

13427 **Quit Command**

13428 *Synopsis*: `q`

13429 The **q** command shall cause *ed* to exit. If the buffer has changed since the last time the entire
13430 buffer was written, the user shall be warned, as described previously.

13431 **Quit Without Checking Command**

13432 *Synopsis*: `Q`

13433 The **Q** command shall cause *ed* to exit without checking whether changes have been made in the
13434 buffer since the last **w** command.

13435 **Read Command**

13436 *Synopsis*: `($)r [`*`file`*`]`

13437 The **r** command shall read in the file named by the pathname *file* and append it after the
13438 addressed line. If no *file* argument is given, the currently remembered pathname, if any, shall be
13439 used (see the **e** and **f** commands). The currently remembered pathname shall not be changed
13440 unless there is no remembered pathname. Address 0 shall be valid for **r** and shall cause the file
13441 to be read at the beginning of the buffer. If the read is successful, and **−s** was not specified, the
13442 number of bytes read shall be written to standard output in the following format:

13443 `"%d\n", <`*`number of bytes read`*`>`

13444 The current line number shall be set to the address of the last line read in. If *file* is replaced by
13445 `'!'`, the rest of the line shall be taken to be a shell command line whose output is to be read.
13446 Such a shell command line shall not be remembered as the current pathname.

13447 **Substitute Command**

13448 *Synopsis*: `(.,.)s/`*`RE`*`/`*`replacement`*`/flags`

13449 The **s** command shall search each addressed line for an occurrence of the specified RE and
13450 replace either the first or all (non-overlapped) matched strings with the *replacement*; see the
13451 following description of the **g** suffix. It is an error if the substitution fails on every addressed
13452 line. Any character other than <space> or <newline> can be used instead of a slash to delimit the
13453 RE and the replacement. Within the RE, the RE delimiter itself can be used as a literal character
13454 if it is preceded by a backslash. The current line shall be set to the address of the last line on
13455 which a substitution occurred.

13456 An ampersand (`'&'`) appearing in the *replacement* shall be replaced by the string matching the
13457 RE on the current line. The special meaning of `'&'` in this context can be suppressed by

13458 preceding it by backslash. As a more general feature, the characters `'\n'`, where *n* is a digit,
13459 shall be replaced by the text matched by the corresponding back-reference expression. If the
13460 corresponding back-reference expression does not match, then the characters `'\n'` shall be
13461 replaced by the empty string. When the character `'%'` is the only character in the *replacement*, the
13462 *replacement* used in the most recent substitute command shall be used as the *replacement* in the
13463 current substitute command; if there was no previous substitute command, the use of `'%'` in this
13464 manner shall be an error. The `'%'` shall lose its special meaning when it is in a replacement
13465 string of more than one character or is preceded by a backslash. For each backslash (`'\'`)
13466 encountered in scanning *replacement* from beginning to end, the following character shall lose its
13467 special meaning (if any). It is unspecified what special meaning is given to any character other
13468 than `'&'`, `'\'`, `'%'`, or digits.

13469 A line can be split by substituting a <newline> into it. The application shall ensure it escapes the
13470 <newline> in the *replacement* by preceding it by backslash. Such substitution cannot be done as
13471 part of a **g** or **v** *command list*. The current line number shall be set to the address of the last line
13472 on which a substitution is performed. If no substitution is performed, the current line number
13473 shall be unchanged. If a line is split, a substitution shall be considered to have been performed
13474 on each of the new lines for the purpose of determining the new current line number. A
13475 substitution shall be considered to have been performed even if the replacement string is
13476 identical to the string that it replaces.

13477 The application shall ensure that the value of *flags* is zero or more of:

13478 *count* Substitute for the *count*th occurrence only of the RE found on each addressed line.

13479 **g** Globally substitute for all non-overlapping instances of the RE rather than just the first
13480 one. If both **g** and *count* are specified, the results are unspecified.

13481 **l** Write to standard output the final line in which a substitution was made. The line shall
13482 be written in the format specified for the **l** command.

13483 **n** Write to standard output the final line in which a substitution was made. The line shall
13484 be written in the format specified for the **n** command.

13485 **p** Write to standard output the final line in which a substitution was made. The line shall
13486 be written in the format specified for the **p** command.

13487 **Copy Command**

13488 *Synopsis*: `(.,.)t`*address*

13489 The **t** command shall be equivalent to the **m** command, except that a copy of the addressed lines
13490 shall be placed after address *address* (which can be 0); the current line number shall be set to the
13491 address of the last line added.

13492 **Undo Command**

13493 *Synopsis*: `u`

13494 The **u** command shall nullify the effect of the most recent command that modified anything in
13495 the buffer, namely the most recent **a**, **c**, **d**, **g**, **i**, **j**, **m**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **u**, **v**, **G**, or **V** command. All changes
13496 made to the buffer by a **g**, **G**, **v**, or **V** global command shall be undone as a single change; if no
13497 changes were made by the global command (such as with **g**/RE/**p**), the **u** command shall have
13498 no effect. The current line number shall be set to the value it had immediately before the
13499 command being undone started.

13500 **Global Non-Matched Command**

13501 *Synopsis*: `(1,$)v/RE/command list`

13502 This command shall be equivalent to the global command **g** except that the lines that are marked
13503 during the first step shall be those for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> does
13504 not match the RE.

13505 **Interactive Global Not-Matched Command**

13506 *Synopsis*: `(1,$)V/RE/`

13507 This command shall be equivalent to the interactive global command **G** except that the lines that
13508 are marked during the first step shall be those for which the line excluding the terminating
13509 <newline> does not match the RE.

13510 **Write Command**

13511 *Synopsis*: `(1,$)w [file]`

13512 The **w** command shall write the addressed lines into the file named by the pathname *file*. The
13513 command shall create the file, if it does not exist, or shall replace the contents of the existing file.
13514 The currently remembered pathname shall not be changed unless there is no remembered
13515 pathname. If no pathname is given, the currently remembered pathname, if any, shall be used
13516 (see the **e** and **f** commands); the current line number shall be unchanged. If the command is
13517 successful, the number of bytes written shall be written to standard output, unless the –**s** option
13518 was specified, in the following format:

13519 `"%d\n", <number of bytes written>`

13520 If *file* begins with `'!'`, the rest of the line shall be taken to be a shell command line whose
13521 standard input shall be the addressed lines. Such a shell command line shall not be remembered
13522 as the current pathname. This usage of the write command with `'!'` shall not be considered as a
13523 "last **w** command that wrote the entire buffer", as described previously; thus, this alone shall
13524 not prevent the warning to the user if an attempt is made to destroy the editor buffer via the **e** or
13525 **q** commands.

13526 **Line Number Command**

13527 *Synopsis*: `($)=`

13528 The line number of the addressed line shall be written to standard output in the following
13529 format:

13530 `"%d\n", <line number>`

13531 The current line number shall be unchanged by this command.

13532 **Shell Escape Command**

13533 *Synopsis*: `!command`

13534 The remainder of the line after the `'!'` shall be sent to the command interpreter to be
13535 interpreted as a shell command line. Within the text of that shell command line, the unescaped
13536 character `'%'` shall be replaced with the remembered pathname; if a `'!'` appears as the first
13537 character of the command, it shall be replaced with the text of the previous shell command
13538 executed via `'!'`. Thus, `"!!"` shall repeat the previous !*command*. If any replacements of `'%'` or
13539 `'!'` are performed, the modified line shall be written to the standard output before *command* is
13540 executed. The **!** command shall write:

13541 `"!\n"`

to standard output upon completion, unless the **–s** option is specified. The current line number shall be unchanged.

Null Command

Synopsis: `(.+1)`

An address alone on a line shall cause the addressed line to be written. A <newline> alone shall be equivalent to `"+1p"`. The current line number shall be set to the address of the written line.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion without any file or command errors.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

When an error in the input script is encountered, or when an error is detected that is a consequence of the data (not) present in the file or due to an external condition such as a read or write error:

- If the standard input is a terminal device file, all input shall be flushed, and a new command read.
- If the standard input is a regular file, *ed* shall terminate with a non-zero exit status.

APPLICATION USAGE

Because of the extremely terse nature of the default error messages, the prudent script writer begins the *ed* input commands with an **H** command, so that if any errors do occur at least some clue as to the cause is made available.

In previous versions, an obsolescent – option was described. This is no longer specified. Applications should use the **–s** option. Using – as a *file* operand now produces unspecified results. This allows implementations to continue to support the former required behavior.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The initial description of this utility was adapted from the SVID. It contains some features not found in Version 7 or BSD-derived systems. Some of the differences between the POSIX and BSD *ed* utilities include, but need not be limited to:

- The BSD – option does not suppress the `'!'` prompt after a **!** command.
- BSD does not support the special meanings of the `'%'` and `'!'` characters within a **!** command.
- BSD does not support the *addresses* `';'` and `','`.
- BSD allows the command/suffix pairs **pp**, **ll**, and so on, which are unspecified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.
- BSD does not support the `'!'` character part of the **e**, **r**, or **w** commands.
- A failed **g** command in BSD sets the line number to the last line searched if there are no matches.
- BSD does not default the *command list* to the **p** command.
- BSD does not support the **G**, **h**, **H**, **n**, or **V** commands.

- On BSD, if there is no inserted text, the insert command changes the current line to the referenced line –1; that is, the line before the specified line.
- On BSD, the *join* command with only a single address changes the current line to that address.
- BSD does not support the **P** command; moreover, in BSD it is synonymous with the **p** command.
- BSD does not support the *undo* of the commands **j**, **m**, **r**, **s**, or **t**.
- The Version 7 *ed* command **W**, and the BSD *ed* commands **W**, **wq**, and **z** are not present in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The –**s** option was added to allow the functionality of the now withdrawn – option in a manner compatible with the Utility Syntax Guidelines.

In early proposals there was a limit, {ED_FILE_MAX}, that described the historical limitations of some *ed* utilities in their handling of large files; some of these have had problems with files larger than 100 000 bytes. It was this limitation that prompted much of the desire to include a *split* command in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Since this limit was removed, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that implementations document the file size limits imposed by *ed* in the conformance document. The limit {ED_LINE_MAX} was also removed; therefore, the global limit {LINE_MAX} is used for input and output lines.

The manner in which the **l** command writes non-printable characters was changed to avoid the historical backspace-overstrike method. On video display terminals, the overstrike is ambiguous because most terminals simply replace overstruck characters, making the **l** format not useful for its intended purpose of unambiguously understanding the content of the line. The historical backslash escapes were also ambiguous. (The string `"a\0011"` could represent a line containing those six characters or a line containing the three characters `'a'`, a byte with a binary value of 1, and a 1.) In the format required here, a backslash appearing in the line is written as `"\\"` so that the output is truly unambiguous. The method of marking the ends of lines was adopted from the *ex* editor and is required for any line ending in <space>s; the `'$'` is placed on all lines so that a real `'$'` at the end of a line cannot be misinterpreted.

Previous versions of this standard allowed for implementations with bytes other than eight bits, but this has been modified in this version.

The description of how a NUL is written was removed. The NUL character cannot be in text files, and this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x should not dictate behavior in the case of undefined, erroneous input.

Unlike some of the other editing utilities, the filenames accepted by the **E**, **e**, **R**, and **r** commands are not patterns.

Early proposals stated that the –**p** option worked only when standard input was associated with a terminal device. This has been changed to conform to historical implementations, thereby allowing applications to interpose themselves between a user and the *ed* utility.

The form of the substitute command that uses the **n** suffix was limited in some historical documentation (where this was described incorrectly as "backreferencing"). This limit has been omitted because there is no reason why an editor processing lines of {LINE_MAX} length should have this restriction. The command **s/x/X/2047** should be able to substitute the 2 047th occurrence of `'x'` on a line.

The use of printing commands with printing suffixes (such as **pn**, **lp**, and so on) was made unspecified because BSD-based systems allow this, whereas System V does not.

Some BSD-based systems exit immediately upon receipt of end-of-file if all of the lines in the file have been deleted. Since this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x refers to the **q** command in this

instance, such behavior is not allowed.

Some historical implementations returned exit status zero even if command errors had occurred; this is not allowed by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Some historical implementations contained a bug that allowed a single period to be entered in input mode as <backslash> <period> <newline>. This is not allowed by *ed* because there is no description of escaping any of the characters in input mode; backslashes are entered into the buffer exactly as typed. The typical method of entering a single period has been to precede it with another character and then use the substitute command to delete that character.

It is difficult under some modes of some versions of historical operating system terminal drivers to distinguish between an end-of-file condition and terminal disconnect. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require implementations to distinguish between the two situations, which permits historical implementations of the *ed* utility on historical platforms to conform. Implementations are encouraged to distinguish between the two, if possible, and take appropriate action on terminal disconnect.

Historically, *ed* accepted a zero address for the **a** and **r** commands in order to insert text at the start of the edit buffer. When the buffer was empty the command **.=** returned zero. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

For consistency with the **a** and **r** commands and better user functionality, the **i** and **c** commands must also accept an address of 0, in which case 0*i* is treated as 1*i* and likewise for the **c** command.

All of the following are valid addresses:

`+++`	Three lines after the current line.
`/pattern/-`	One line before the next occurrence of pattern.
`-2`	Two lines before the current line.
`3 ---- 2`	Line one (note the intermediate negative address).
`1 2 3`	Line six.

Any number of addresses can be provided to commands taking addresses; for example, `"1,2,3,4,5p"` prints lines 4 and 5, because two is the greatest valid number of addresses accepted by the **print** command. This, in combination with the semicolon delimiter, permits users to create commands based on ordered patterns in the file. For example, the command `"3;/foo/;+2p"` will display the first line after line 3 that contains the pattern *foo*, plus the next two lines. Note that the address `"3;"` must still be evaluated before being discarded, because the search origin for the `"/foo/"` command depends on this.

Historically, *ed* disallowed address chains, as discussed above, consisting solely of comma or semicolon separators; for example, `",,,"` or `";;;"` were considered an error. For consistency of address specification, this restriction is removed. The following table lists some of the address forms now possible:

Address	Addr1	Addr2	Status	Comment
7,	7	7	Historical	
7,5,	5	5	Historical	
7,5,9	5	9	Historical	
7,9	7	9	Historical	
7,+	7	8	Historical	
,	1	$	Historical	
,7	1	7	Extension	
,,	$	$	Extension	
,;	$	$	Extension	
7;	7	7	Historical	
7;5;	5	5	Historical	
7;5;9	5	9	Historical	
7;5,9	5	9	Historical	
7;$;4	$	4	Historical	Valid, but erroneous.
7;9	7	9	Historical	
7;+	7	8	Historical	
;	.	$	Historical	
;7	.	7	Extension	
;;	$	$	Extension	
;,	$	$	Extension	

Historically, values could be added to addresses by including them after one or more <blank>s; for example, `"3 – 5p"` wrote the seventh line of the file, and `"/foo/ 5"` was the same as `"5 /foo/"`. However, only absolute values could be added; for example, `"5 /foo/"` was an error. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, *ed* accepted the `'^'` character as an address, in which case it was identical to the hyphen character. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require or prohibit this behavior.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 1.11 (on page 18), *ex*, *sed*, *sh*, *vi*, the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface, Modem Disconnect and Closing a Device Terminal

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

In the OPTIONS section, the meaning of –**s** and – is clarified.

A second FUTURE DIRECTION is added.

Issue 6

The obsolescent single-minus form is removed.

A second APPLICATION USAGE note is added.

The Open Group Corrigendum U025/2 is applied, correcting the description of the Edit section.

The *ed* utility is updated to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard. This includes addition of the treatment of the SIGQUIT signal, changes to *ed* addressing, and changes to processing when end-of-file is detected and when terminal disconnect is detected.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/22 is applied, adding the text: "Any line modified by the *command list* shall be unmarked." to the **G** command. This change corresponds

to a similar change made to the **g** command in the first version of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/7 is applied, removing text describing behavior on systems with bytes consisting of more than eight bits.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying the behavior if an operand is '–'.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #036 is applied, clarifying the behavior for BREs.

SD5-XCU-ERN-94 is applied, updating text in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION where a terminal disconnect is detected (in Commands in *ed*).

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

13724 **NAME**

13725 env — set the environment for command invocation

13726 **SYNOPSIS**

13727 `env [–i] [name=value]... [utility [argument...]]`

13728 **DESCRIPTION**

13729 The *env* utility shall obtain the current environment, modify it according to its arguments, then
13730 invoke the utility named by the *utility* operand with the modified environment.

13731 Optional arguments shall be passed to *utility*.

13732 If no *utility* operand is specified, the resulting environment shall be written to the standard
13733 output, with one *name=value* pair per line.

13734 If the first argument is `'–'`, the results are unspecified.

13735 **OPTIONS**

13736 The *env* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
13737 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for the unspecified usage of `'–'`.

13738 The following options shall be supported:

13739 **–i** Invoke *utility* with exactly the environment specified by the arguments; the
13740 inherited environment shall be ignored completely.

13741 **OPERANDS**

13742 The following operands shall be supported:

13743 *name=value* Arguments of the form *name=value* shall modify the execution environment, and
13744 shall be placed into the inherited environment before the *utility* is invoked.

13745 *utility* The name of the utility to be invoked. If the *utility* operand names any of the
13746 special built-in utilities in Section 2.14 (on page 64), the results are undefined.

13747 *argument* A string to pass as an argument for the invoked utility.

13748 **STDIN**

13749 Not used.

13750 **INPUT FILES**

13751 None.

13752 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

13753 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *env*:

13754 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
13755 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
13756 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
13757 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

13758 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
13759 internationalization variables.

13760 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
13761 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
13762 arguments).

13763 *LC_MESSAGES*
13764 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
13765 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

13766 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

13767 13768 13769 *PATH* Determine the location of the *utility*, as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables. If *PATH* is specified as a *name=value* operand to *env*, the *value* given shall be used in the search for *utility*.

13770 13771 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

Default.

13772 13773 13774 **STDOUT**

If no *utility* operand is specified, each *name=value* pair in the resulting environment shall be written in the form:

13775 `"%s=%s\n", <name>, <value>`

13776 If the *utility* operand is specified, the *env* utility shall not write to standard output.

13777 13778 **STDERR**

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

13779 13780 **OUTPUT FILES**

None.

13781 13782 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

None.

13783 13784 13785 **EXIT STATUS**

If *utility* is invoked, the exit status of *env* shall be the exit status of *utility*; otherwise, the *env* utility shall exit with one of the following values:

13786 0 The *env* utility completed successfully.

13787 1–125 An error occurred in the *env* utility.

13788 126 The utility specified by *utility* was found but could not be invoked.

13789 127 The utility specified by *utility* could not be found.

13790 13791 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

Default.

13792 13793 13794 13795 13796 13797 13798 13799 13800 13801 13802 **APPLICATION USAGE**

The *command*, *env*, *nice*, *nohup*, *time*, and *xargs* utilities have been specified to use exit code 127 if an error occurs so that applications can distinguish "failure to find a utility" from "invoked utility exited with an error indication". The value 127 was chosen because it is not commonly used for other meanings; most utilities use small values for "normal error conditions" and the values above 128 can be confused with termination due to receipt of a signal. The value 126 was chosen in a similar manner to indicate that the utility could be found, but not invoked. Some scripts produce meaningful error messages differentiating the 126 and 127 cases. The distinction between exit codes 126 and 127 is based on KornShell practice that uses 127 when all attempts to *exec* the utility fail with [ENOENT], and uses 126 when any attempt to *exec* the utility fails for any other reason.

13803 13804 13805 13806 13807 Historical implementations of the *env* utility use the *execvp*( ) or *execlp*( ) functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to invoke the specified utility; this provides better performance and keeps users from having to escape characters with special meaning to the shell. Therefore, shell functions, special built-ins, and built-ins that are only provided by the shell are not found.

13808 **EXAMPLES**

13809 The following command:

13810
```
env –i PATH=/mybin mygrep xyz myfile
```

13811 13812 invokes the command *mygrep* with a new *PATH* value as the only entry in its environment. In this case, *PATH* is used to locate *mygrep*, which then must reside in **/mybin**.

13813 **RATIONALE**

13814 13815 13816 13817 As with all other utilities that invoke other utilities, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x only specifies what *env* does with standard input, standard output, standard error, input files, and output files. If a utility is executed, it is not constrained by the specification of input and output by *env*.

13818 13819 13820 13821 13822 The **–i** option was added to allow the functionality of the withdrawn – option in a manner compatible with the Utility Syntax Guidelines. It is possible to create a non-conforming environment using the **–i** option, as it may remove environment variables required by the implementation for conformance. The following will preserve these environment variables as well as preserve the *PATH* for conforming utilities:

13823 13824 13825 13826
```
IFS='
'
# The preceding value should be <space><tab><newline>.
# Set IFS to its default value.
```

13827 13828
```
set –f
# disable pathname expansion
```

13829 13830 13831 13832 13833 13834 13835 13836
```
\unalias –a
# Unset all possible aliases.
# Note that unalias is escaped to prevent an alias
# being used for unalias.
# This step is not strictly necessary, since aliases are not inherited,
# and the ENV environment variable is only used by interactive shells,
# the only way any aliases can exist in a script is if it defines them
# itself.
```

13837 13838
```
unset –f env getconf
# Ensure env and getconf are not user functions.
```

13839
```
env –i $(getconf V7_ENV) PATH="$(getconf PATH)" command
```

13840 Some have suggested that *env* is redundant since the same effect is achieved by:

13841
```
name=value ... utility [ argument ... ]
```

13842 13843 13844 13845 The example is equivalent to *env* when an environment variable is being added to the environment of the command, but not when the environment is being set to the given value. The *env* utility also writes out the current environment if invoked without arguments. There is sufficient functionality beyond what the example provides to justify inclusion of *env*.

13846 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

13847 None.

13848 **SEE ALSO**

13849 Section 2.5 (on page 33), Section 2.14

13850 **CHANGE HISTORY**

13851 First released in Issue 2.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying the behavior if the first argument is '–'.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #047 is applied, providing RATIONALE on how to use the *env* utiilty to preserve a conforming environment.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

13858 **NAME**

13859 ex — text editor

13860 **SYNOPSIS**

13861 UP `ex [–rR] [–s|–v] [–c command] [–t tagstring] [–w size] [file...]`

13862 **DESCRIPTION**

13863 The *ex* utility is a line-oriented text editor. There are two other modes of the editor—open and
13864 visual—in which screen-oriented editing is available. This is described more fully by the *ex* **open**
13865 and **visual** commands and in *vi*.

13866 If an operand is `'–'`, the results are unspecified.

13867 This section uses the term *edit buffer* to describe the current working text. No specific
13868 implementation is implied by this term. All editing changes are performed on the edit buffer,
13869 and no changes to it shall affect any file until an editor command writes the file.

13870 Certain terminals do not have all the capabilities necessary to support the complete *ex* definition,
13871 such as the full-screen editing commands (*visual mode* or *open mode*). When these commands
13872 cannot be supported on such terminals, this condition shall not produce an error message such
13873 as "not an editor command" or report a syntax error. The implementation may either accept the
13874 commands and produce results on the screen that are the result of an unsuccessful attempt to
13875 meet the requirements of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x or report an error describing the
13876 terminal-related deficiency.

13877 **OPTIONS**

13878 The *ex* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
13879 Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for the unspecified usage of `'–'`, and that `'+'` may be
13880 recognized as an option deliminter as well as `'–'`.

13881 The following options shall be supported:

13882 **–c** *command* Specify an initial command to be executed in the first edit buffer loaded from an
13883 existing file (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section). Implementations may
13884 support more than a single **–c** option. In such implementations, the specified
13885 commands shall be executed in the order specified on the command line.

13886 **–r** Recover the named files (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section). Recovery
13887 information for a file shall be saved during an editor or system crash (for example,
13888 when the editor is terminated by a signal which the editor can catch), or after the
13889 use of an *ex* **preserve** command.

13890 A *crash* in this context is an unexpected failure of the system or utility that requires
13891 restarting the failed system or utility. A system crash implies that any utilities
13892 running at the time also crash. In the case of an editor or system crash, the number
13893 of changes to the edit buffer (since the most recent **preserve** command) that will be
13894 recovered is unspecified.

13895 If no *file* operands are given and the **–t** option is not specified, all other options, the
13896 *EXINIT* variable, and any **.exrc** files shall be ignored; a list of all recoverable files
13897 available to the invoking user shall be written, and the editor shall exit normally
13898 without further action.

13899 **–R** Set **readonly** edit option.

13900 **–s** Prepare *ex* for batch use by taking the following actions:

13901 • Suppress writing prompts and informational (but not diagnostic) messages.

13902 13903 13904 • Ignore the value of *TERM* and any implementation default terminal type and assume the terminal is a type incapable of supporting open or visual modes; see the **visual** command and the description of *vi*.

13905 13906 • Suppress the use of the *EXINIT* environment variable and the reading of any **.exrc** file; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

13907 • Suppress autoindentation, ignoring the value of the **autoindent** edit option.

13908 13909 13910 13911 13912 **–t** *tagstring* Edit the file containing the specified *tagstring*; see *ctags*. The tags feature represented by **–t** *tagstring* and the **tag** command is optional. It shall be provided on any system that also provides a conforming implementation of *ctags*; otherwise, the use of **–t** produces undefined results. On any system, it shall be an error to specify more than a single **–t** option.

13913 **–v** Begin in visual mode (see *vi*).

13914 **–w** *size* Set the value of the *window* editor option to *size*.

13915 **OPERANDS**

13916 The following operand shall be supported:

13917 *file* A pathname of a file to be edited.

13918 **STDIN**

13919 13920 13921 The standard input consists of a series of commands and input text, as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section. The implementation may limit each line of standard input to a length of {LINE_MAX}.

13922 If the standard input is not a terminal device, it shall be as if the **–s** option had been specified.

13923 13924 If a read from the standard input returns an error, or if the editor detects an end-of-file condition from the standard input, it shall be equivalent to a SIGHUP asynchronous event.

13925 **INPUT FILES**

13926 13927 13928 13929 Input files shall be text files or files that would be text files except for an incomplete last line that is not longer than {LINE_MAX}–1 bytes in length and contains no NUL characters. By default, any incomplete last line shall be treated as if it had a trailing <newline>. The editing of other forms of files may optionally be allowed by *ex* implementations.

13930 13931 The **.exrc** files and source files shall be text files consisting of *ex* commands; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

13932 13933 By default, the editor shall read lines from the files to be edited without interpreting any of those lines as any form of editor command.

13934 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

13935 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ex*:

13936 13937 13938 *COLUMNS* Override the system-selected horizontal screen size. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables for valid values and results when it is unset or null.

13939 13940 *EXINIT* Determine a list of *ex* commands that are executed on editor start-up. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section for more details of the initialization phase.

13941 13942 *HOME* Determine a pathname of a directory that shall be searched for an editor start-up file named **.exrc**; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files), the behavior of character classes within regular expressions, the classification of characters as uppercase or lowercase letters, the case conversion of letters, and the detection of word boundaries.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LINES Override the system-selected vertical screen size, used as the number of lines in a screenful and the vertical screen size in visual mode. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables for valid values and results when it is unset or null.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PATH Determine the search path for the shell command specified in the *ex* editor commands **!**, **shell**, **read**, and **write**, and the open and visual mode command **!**; see the description of command search and execution in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48).

SHELL Determine the preferred command line interpreter for use as the default value of the **shell** edit option.

TERM Determine the name of the terminal type. If this variable is unset or null, an unspecified default terminal type shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

The following term is used in this and following sections to specify command and asynchronous event actions:

complete write
A complete write is a write of the entire contents of the edit buffer to a file of a type other than a terminal device, or the saving of the edit buffer caused by the user executing the *ex* **preserve** command. Writing the contents of the edit buffer to a temporary file that will be removed when the editor exits shall not be considered a complete write.

The following actions shall be taken upon receipt of signals:

SIGINT If the standard input is not a terminal device, *ex* shall not write the file or return to command or text input mode, and shall exit with a non-zero exit status.

Otherwise, if executing an open or visual text input mode command, *ex* in receipt of SIGINT shall behave identically to its receipt of the <ESC> character.

Otherwise:

1. If executing an *ex* text input mode command, all input lines that have been completely entered shall be resolved into the edit buffer, and any partially entered line shall be discarded.
2. If there is a currently executing command, it shall be aborted and a message displayed. Unless otherwise specified by the *ex* or *vi* command descriptions, it is unspecified whether any lines modified by the executing command appear modified, or as they were before being modified by the executing command, in the buffer.

   If the currently executing command was a motion command, its associated command shall be discarded.
3. If in open or visual command mode, the terminal shall be alerted.
4. The editor shall then return to command mode.

SIGCONT The screen shall be refreshed if in open or visual mode.

SIGHUP If the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, *ex* shall attempt to save the edit buffer so that it can be recovered later using the **–r** option or the *ex* **recover** command. The editor shall not write the file or return to command or text input mode, and shall terminate with a non-zero exit status.

SIGTERM Refer to SIGHUP.

The action taken for all other signals is unspecified.

STDOUT

The standard output shall be used only for writing prompts to the user, for informational messages, and for writing lines from the file.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The output from *ex* shall be text files.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

Only the *ex* mode of the editor is described in this section. See *vi* for additional editing capabilities available in *ex*.

When an error occurs, *ex* shall write a message. If the terminal supports a standout mode (such as inverse video), the message shall be written in standout mode. If the terminal does not support a standout mode, and the edit option **errorbells** is set, an alert action shall precede the error message.

By default, *ex* shall start in command mode, which shall be indicated by a **:** prompt; see the **prompt** command. Text input mode can be entered by the **append**, **insert**, or **change** commands; it can be exited (and command mode re-entered) by typing a period (**'.'**) alone at the beginning of a line.

Initialization in ex and vi

The following symbols are used in this and following sections to specify locations in the edit buffer:

alternate and current pathnames

Two pathnames, named *current* and *alternate*, are maintained by the editor. Any *ex* commands that take filenames as arguments shall set them as follows:

1. If a *file* argument is specified to the *ex* **edit**, **ex**, or **recover** commands, or if an *ex* **tag** command replaces the contents of the edit buffer.
   a. If the command replaces the contents of the edit buffer, the current pathname shall be set to the *file* argument or the file indicated by the tag, and the alternate pathname shall be set to the previous value of the current pathname.
   b. Otherwise, the alternate pathname shall be set to the *file* argument.
2. If a *file* argument is specified to the *ex* **next** command:
   a. If the command replaces the contents of the edit buffer, the current pathname shall be set to the first *file* argument, and the alternate pathname shall be set to the previous value of the current pathname.
3. If a *file* argument is specified to the *ex* **file** command, the current pathname shall be set to the *file* argument, and the alternate pathname shall be set to the previous value of the current pathname.
4. If a *file* argument is specified to the *ex* **read** and **write** commands (that is, when reading or writing a file, and not to the program named by the **shell** edit option), or a *file* argument is specified to the *ex* **xit** command:
   a. If the current pathname has no value, the current pathname shall be set to the *file* argument.
   b. Otherwise, the alternate pathname shall be set to the *file* argument.

If the alternate pathname is set to the previous value of the current pathname when the current pathname had no previous value, then the alternate pathname shall have no value as a result.

current line
The line of the edit buffer referenced by the cursor. Each command description specifies the current line after the command has been executed, as the *current line value*. When the edit buffer contains no lines, the current line shall be zero; see Addressing in ex (on page 363).

current column
The current display line column occupied by the cursor. (The columns shall be numbered beginning at 1.) Each command description specifies the current column after the command has been executed, as the *current column* value. This column is an *ideal* column that is remembered over the lifetime of the editor. The actual display line column upon which the cursor rests may be different from the current column; see the cursor positioning discussion in Command Descriptions in vi (on page 994).

set to non-<blank>
A description for a current column value, meaning that the current column shall be set to the last display line column on which is displayed any part of the first non-<blank> of the line. If the line has no non-<blank> non-<newline>s, the current column shall be set to the last display line column on which is displayed any part of the last non-<newline> in the line. If the line is empty, the current column shall be set to column position 1.

The length of lines in the edit buffer may be limited to {LINE_MAX} bytes. In open and visual mode, the length of lines in the edit buffer may be limited to the number of characters that will fit in the display. If either limit is exceeded during editing, an error message shall be written. If either limit is exceeded by a line read in from a file, an error message shall be written and the edit session may be terminated.

If the editor stops running due to any reason other than a user command, and the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, it shall be equivalent to a SIGHUP asynchronous event. If the system crashes, it shall be equivalent to a SIGHUP asynchronous event.

During initialization (before the first file is copied into the edit buffer or any user commands from the terminal are processed) the following shall occur:

1. If the environment variable *EXINIT* is set, the editor shall execute the *ex* commands contained in that variable.
2. If the *EXINIT* variable is not set, and all of the following are true:
   a. The *HOME* environment variable is not null and not empty.
   b. The file **.exrc** in the directory referred to by the *HOME* environment variable:
      1. Exists
      2. Is owned by the same user ID as the real user ID of the process or the process has appropriate privileges
      3. Is not writable by anyone other than the owner

   the editor shall execute the *ex* commands contained in that file.
3. If and only if all of the following are true:
   a. The current directory is not referred to by the *HOME* environment variable.
   b. A command in the *EXINIT* environment variable or a command in the **.exrc** file in the directory referred to by the *HOME* environment variable sets the editor option **exrc**.
   c. The **.exrc** file in the current directory:
      1. Exists
      2. Is owned by the same user ID as the real user ID of the process, or by one of a set of implementation-defined user IDs
      3. Is not writable by anyone other than the owner

   the editor shall attempt to execute the *ex* commands contained in that file.

Lines in any **.exrc** file that are blank lines shall be ignored. If any **.exrc** file exists, but is not read for ownership or permission reasons, it shall be an error.

After the *EXINIT* variable and any **.exrc** files are processed, the first file specified by the user shall be edited, as follows:

1. If the user specified the **−t** option, the effect shall be as if the *ex* **tag** command was entered with the specified argument, with the exception that if tag processing does not result in a file to edit, the effect shall be as described in step 3. below.
2. Otherwise, if the user specified any command line *file* arguments, the effect shall be as if the *ex* **edit** command was entered with the first of those arguments as its *file* argument.
3. Otherwise, the effect shall be as if the *ex* **edit** command was entered with a nonexistent filename as its *file* argument. It is unspecified whether this action shall set the current pathname. In an implementation where this action does not set the current pathname, any editor command using the current pathname shall fail until an editor command sets the current pathname.

If the **−r** option was specified, the first time a file in the initial argument list or a file specified by the **−t** option is edited, if recovery information has previously been saved about it, that information shall be recovered and the editor shall behave as if the contents of the edit buffer have already been modified. If there are multiple instances of the file to be recovered, the one most recently saved shall be recovered, and an informational message that there are previous versions of the file that can be recovered shall be written. If no recovery information about a file

is available, an informational message to this effect shall be written, and the edit shall proceed as usual.

If the **–c** option was specified, the first time a file that already exists (including a file that might not exist but for which recovery information is available, when the **–r** option is specified) replaces or initializes the contents of the edit buffer, the current line shall be set to the last line of the edit buffer, the current column shall be set to non-<blank>, and the *ex* commands specified with the **–c** option shall be executed. In this case, the current line and current column shall not be set as described for the command associated with the replacement or initialization of the edit buffer contents. However, if the **–t** option or a **tag** command is associated with this action, the **–c** option commands shall be executed and then the movement to the tag shall be performed.

The current argument list shall initially be set to the filenames specified by the user on the command line. If no filenames are specified by the user, the current argument list shall be empty. If the **–t** option was specified, it is unspecified whether any filename resulting from tag processing shall be prepended to the current argument list. In the case where the filename is added as a prefix to the current argument list, the current argument list reference shall be set to that filename. In the case where the filename is not added as a prefix to the current argument list, the current argument list reference shall logically be located before the first of the filenames specified on the command line (for example, a subsequent *ex* **next** command shall edit the first filename from the command line). If the **–t** option was not specified, the current argument list reference shall be to the first of the filenames on the command line.

Addressing in ex

Addressing in *ex* relates to the current line and the current column; the address of a line is its 1-based line number, the address of a column is its 1-based count from the beginning of the line. Generally, the current line is the last line affected by a command. The current line number is the address of the current line. In each command description, the effect of the command on the current line number and the current column is described.

Addresses are constructed as follows:

1. The character `'.'` (period) shall address the current line.
2. The character `'$'` shall address the last line of the edit buffer.
3. The positive decimal number *n* shall address the *n*th line of the edit buffer.
4. The address `"'x"` refers to the line marked with the mark name character `'x'`, which shall be a lowercase letter from the portable character set or one of the characters `''` or `'''`. It shall be an error if the line that was marked is not currently present in the edit buffer or the mark has not been set. Lines can be marked with the *ex* **mark** or **k** commands, or the *vi* **m** command.
5. A regular expression enclosed by slashes (`'/'`) shall address the first line found by searching forwards from the line following the current line toward the end of the edit buffer and stopping at the first line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the regular expression. As stated in Regular Expressions in ex (on page 392), an address consisting of a null regular expression delimited by slashes `"//"` shall address the next line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the last regular expression encountered. In addition, the second slash can be omitted at the end of a command line. If the **wrapscan** edit option is set, the search shall wrap around to the beginning of the edit buffer and continue up to and including the current line, so that the entire edit buffer is searched. Within the regular expression, the sequence `"\/"` shall represent a literal slash instead of the regular expression delimiter.

6. A regular expression enclosed in question marks (`'?'`) shall address the first line found by searching backwards from the line preceding the current line toward the beginning of the edit buffer and stopping at the first line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the regular expression. An address consisting of a null regular expression delimited by question marks `"??"` shall address the previous line for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches the last regular expression encountered. In addition, the second question mark can be omitted at the end of a command line. If the **wrapscan** edit option is set, the search shall wrap around from the beginning of the edit buffer to the end of the edit buffer and continue up to and including the current line, so that the entire edit buffer is searched. Within the regular expression, the sequence `"\?"` shall represent a literal question mark instead of the RE delimiter.

7. A plus sign (`'+'`) or a minus sign (`'-'`) followed by a decimal number shall address the current line plus or minus the number. A `'+'` or `'-'` not followed by a decimal number shall address the current line plus or minus 1.

Addresses can be followed by zero or more address offsets, optionally <blank>-separated. Address offsets are constructed as follows:

1. A `'+'` or `'-'` immediately followed by a decimal number shall add (subtract) the indicated number of lines to (from) the address. A `'+'` or `'-'` not followed by a decimal number shall add (subtract) 1 to (from) the address.

2. A decimal number shall add the indicated number of lines to the address.

It shall not be an error for an intermediate address value to be less than zero or greater than the last line in the edit buffer. It shall be an error for the final address value to be less than zero or greater than the last line in the edit buffer.

Commands take zero, one, or two addresses; see the descriptions of *1addr* and *2addr* in Command Descriptions in ex (on page 370). If more than the required number of addresses are provided to a command that requires zero addresses, it shall be an error. Otherwise, if more than the required number of addresses are provided to a command, the addresses specified first shall be evaluated and then discarded until the maximum number of valid addresses remain.

Addresses shall be separated from each other by a comma (`','`) or a semicolon (`';'`). If no address is specified before or after a comma or semicolon separator, it shall be as if the address of the current line was specified before or after the separator. In the case of a semicolon separator, the current line (`'.'`) shall be set to the first address, and only then will the next address be calculated. This feature can be used to determine the starting line for forwards and backwards searches (see rules 5. and 6.).

A percent sign (`'%'`) shall be equivalent to entering the two addresses `"1,$"`.

Any delimiting <blank>s between addresses, address separators, or address offsets shall be discarded.

Command Line Parsing in ex

The following symbol is used in this and following sections to describe parsing behavior:

escape If a character is referred to as "backslash-escaped" or "<control>-V-escaped," it shall mean that the character acquired or lost a special meaning by virtue of being preceded, respectively, by a backslash or <control>-V character. Unless otherwise specified, the escaping character shall be discarded at that time and shall not be further considered for any purpose.

Command-line parsing shall be done in the following steps. For each step, characters already evaluated shall be ignored; that is, the phrase "leading character" refers to the next character that has not yet been evaluated.

1. Leading colon characters shall be skipped.
2. Leading <blank>s shall be skipped.
3. If the leading character is a double-quote character, the characters up to and including the next non-backslash-escaped <newline> shall be discarded, and any subsequent characters shall be parsed as a separate command.
4. Leading characters that can be interpreted as addresses shall be evaluated; see Addressing in ex (on page 363).
5. Leading <blank>s shall be skipped.
6. If the next character is a vertical-line character or a <newline>:
   a. If the next character is a <newline>:
      1. If *ex* is in open or visual mode, the current line shall be set to the last address specified, if any.
      2. Otherwise, if the last command was terminated by a vertical-line character, no action shall be taken; for example, the command `"||<newline>"` shall execute two implied commands, not three.
      3. Otherwise, step 6.b. shall apply.
   b. Otherwise, the implied command shall be the **print** command. The last **#**, **p**, and **l** flags specified to any *ex* command shall be remembered and shall apply to this implied command. Executing the *ex* **number**, **print**, or **list** command shall set the remembered flags to **#**, nothing, and **l**, respectively, plus any other flags specified for that execution of the **number**, **print**, or **list** command.

      If *ex* is not currently performing a **global** or **v** command, and no address or count is specified, the current line shall be incremented by 1 before the command is executed. If incrementing the current line would result in an address past the last line in the edit buffer, the command shall fail, and the increment shall not happen.
   c. The <newline> or vertical-line character shall be discarded and any subsequent characters shall be parsed as a separate command.
7. The command name shall be comprised of the next character (if the character is not alphabetic), or the next character and any subsequent alphabetic characters (if the character is alphabetic), with the following exceptions:
   a. Commands that consist of any prefix of the characters in the command name **delete**, followed immediately by any of the characters `'l'`, `'p'`, `'+'`, `'-'`, or `'#'` shall be interpreted as a **delete** command, followed by a <blank>, followed by the characters that were not part of the prefix of the **delete** command. The maximum number of characters shall be matched to the command name **delete**; for example, `"del"` shall not be treated as `"de"` followed by the flag **l**.
   b. Commands that consist of the character `'k'`, followed by a character that can be used as the name of a mark, shall be equivalent to the mark command followed by a <blank>, followed by the character that followed the `'k'`.
   c. Commands that consist of the character `'s'`, followed by characters that could be interpreted as valid options to the **s** command, shall be the equivalent of the **s** command, without any pattern or replacement values, followed by a <blank>, followed by the characters after the `'s'`.
8. The command name shall be matched against the possible command names, and a command name that contains a prefix matching the characters specified by the user shall be the executed command. In the case of commands where the characters specified by the

user could be ambiguous, the executed command shall be as follows:

a	**append**	**n**	**next**	**t**	**t**
c	**change**	**p**	**print**	**u**	**undo**
ch	**change**	**pr**	**print**	**un**	**undo**
e	**edit**	**r**	**read**	**v**	**v**
m	**move**	**re**	**read**	**w**	**write**
ma	**mark**	**s**	**s**		

Implementation extensions with names causing similar ambiguities shall not be checked for a match until all possible matches for commands specified by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x have been checked.

9. If the command is a **!** command, or if the command is a **read** command followed by zero or more <blank>s and a **!**, or if the command is a **write** command followed by one or more <blank>s and a **!**, the rest of the command shall include all characters up to a non-backslash-escaped <newline>. The <newline> shall be discarded and any subsequent characters shall be parsed as a separate *ex* command.

10. Otherwise, if the command is an **edit**, **ex**, or **next** command, or a **visual** command while in open or visual mode, the next part of the command shall be parsed as follows:

    a. Any '!' character immediately following the command shall be skipped and be part of the command.

    b. Any leading <blank>s shall be skipped and be part of the command.

    c. If the next character is a '+', characters up to the first non-backslash-escaped <newline> or non-backslash-escaped <blank> shall be skipped and be part of the command.

    d. The rest of the command shall be determined by the steps specified in paragraph 12.

11. Otherwise, if the command is a **global**, **open**, **s**, or **v** command, the next part of the command shall be parsed as follows:

    a. Any leading <blank>s shall be skipped and be part of the command.

    b. If the next character is not an alphanumeric, double-quote, <newline>, backslash, or vertical-line character:

        1. The next character shall be used as a command delimiter.

        2. If the command is a **global**, **open**, or **v** command, characters up to the first non-backslash-escaped <newline>, or first non-backslash-escaped delimiter character, shall be skipped and be part of the command.

        3. If the command is an **s** command, characters up to the first non-backslash-escaped <newline>, or second non-backslash-escaped delimiter character, shall be skipped and be part of the command.

    c. If the command is a **global** or **v** command, characters up to the first non-backslash-escaped <newline> shall be skipped and be part of the command.

    d. Otherwise, the rest of the command shall be determined by the steps specified in paragraph 12.

12. Otherwise:

    a. If the command was a **map**, **unmap**, **abbreviate**, or **unabbreviate** command, characters up to the first non-<control>-V-escaped <newline>, vertical-line, or double-quote character shall be skipped and be part of the command.

b. Otherwise, characters up to the first non-backslash-escaped <newline>, vertical-line, or double-quote character shall be skipped and be part of the command.

c. If the command was an **append**, **change**, or **insert** command, and the step 12.b. ended at a vertical-line character, any subsequent characters, up to the next non-backslash-escaped <newline> shall be used as input text to the command.

d. If the command was ended by a double-quote character, all subsequent characters, up to the next non-backslash-escaped <newline>, shall be discarded.

e. The terminating <newline> or vertical-line character shall be discarded and any subsequent characters shall be parsed as a separate *ex* command.

Command arguments shall be parsed as described by the Synopsis and Description of each individual *ex* command. This parsing shall not be <blank>-sensitive, except for the **!** argument, which must follow the command name without intervening <blank>s, and where it would otherwise be ambiguous. For example, *count* and *flag* arguments need not be <blank>-separated because `"d22p"` is not ambiguous, but *file* arguments to the *ex* **next** command must be separated by one or more <blank>s. Any <blank> in command arguments for the **abbreviate**, **unabbreviate**, **map**, and **unmap** commands can be <control>-V-escaped, in which case the <blank> shall not be used as an argument delimiter. Any <blank> in the command argument for any other command can be backslash-escaped, in which case that <blank> shall not be used as an argument delimiter.

Within command arguments for the **abbreviate**, **unabbreviate**, **map**, and **unmap** commands, any character can be <control>-V-escaped. All such escaped characters shall be treated literally and shall have no special meaning. Within command arguments for all other *ex* commands that are not regular expressions or replacement strings, any character that would otherwise have a special meaning can be backslash-escaped. Escaped characters shall be treated literally, without special meaning as shell expansion characters or `'!'`, `'%'`, and `'#'` expansion characters. See Regular Expressions in ex and Replacement Strings in ex for descriptions of command arguments that are regular expressions or replacement strings.

Non-backslash-escaped `'%'` characters appearing in *file* arguments to any *ex* command shall be replaced by the current pathname; unescaped `'#'` characters shall be replaced by the alternate pathname. It shall be an error if `'%'` or `'#'` characters appear unescaped in an argument and their corresponding values are not set.

Non-backslash-escaped `'!'` characters in the arguments to either the *ex* **!** command or the open and visual mode **!** command, or in the arguments to the *ex* **read** command, where the first non-<blank> after the command name is a `'!'` character, or in the arguments to the *ex* **write** command where the command name is followed by one or more <blank>s and the first non-<blank> after the command name is a `'!'` character, shall be replaced with the arguments to the last of those three commands as they appeared after all unescaped `'%'`, `'#'`, and `'!'` characters were replaced. It shall be an error if `'!'` characters appear unescaped in one of these commands and there has been no previous execution of one of these commands.

If an error occurs during the parsing or execution of an *ex* command:

- An informational message to this effect shall be written. Execution of the *ex* command shall stop, and the cursor (for example, the current line and column) shall not be further modified.
- If the *ex* command resulted from a map expansion, all characters from that map expansion shall be discarded, except as otherwise specified by the **map** command.
- Otherwise, if the *ex* command resulted from the processing of an *EXINIT* environment variable, a **.exrc** file, a **:source** command, a **–c** option, or a **+***command* specified to an *ex* **edit**, **ex**, **next**, or **visual** command, no further commands from the source of the commands shall be executed.

14353 - Otherwise, if the *ex* command resulted from the execution of a buffer or a **global** or **v**
14354 command, no further commands caused by the execution of the buffer or the **global** or **v**
14355 command shall be executed.

14356 - Otherwise, if the *ex* command was not terminated by a <newline>, all characters up to and
14357 including the next non-backslash-escaped <newline> shall be discarded.

14358 **Input Editing in ex**

14359 The following symbol is used in this and the following sections to specify command actions:

14360 *word* In the POSIX locale, a word consists of a maximal sequence of letters, digits, and
14361 underscores, delimited at both ends by characters other than letters, digits, or
14362 underscores, or by the beginning or end of a line or the edit buffer.

14363 When accepting input characters from the user, in either *ex* command mode or *ex* text input
14364 mode, *ex* shall enable canonical mode input processing, as defined in the System Interfaces
14365 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

14366 If in *ex* text input mode:

14367 1. If the **number** edit option is set, *ex* shall prompt for input using the line number that
14368 would be assigned to the line if it is entered, in the format specified for the *ex* **number**
14369 command.

14370 2. If the **autoindent** edit option is set, *ex* shall prompt for input using **autoindent** characters,
14371 as described by the **autoindent** edit option. **autoindent** characters shall follow the line
14372 number, if any.

14373 If in *ex* command mode:

14374 1. If the **prompt** edit option is set, input shall be prompted for using a single `':'` character;
14375 otherwise, there shall be no prompt.

14376 The input characters in the following sections shall have the following effects on the input line.

14377 **Scroll**

14378 *Synopsis*: `eof`

14379 See the description of the *stty eof* character in *stty*.

14380 If in *ex* command mode:

14381 If the *eof* character is the first character entered on the line, the line shall be evaluated as if
14382 it contained two characters: a <control>-D and a <newline>.

14383 Otherwise, the *eof* character shall have no special meaning.

14384 If in *ex* text input mode:

If the cursor follows an **autoindent** character, the **autoindent** characters in the line shall be modified so that a part of the next text input character will be displayed on the first column in the line after the previous **shiftwidth** edit option column boundary, and the user shall be prompted again for input for the same line.

Otherwise, if the cursor follows a `'0'`, which follows an **autoindent** character, and the `'0'` was the previous text input character, the `'0'` and all **autoindent** characters in the line shall be discarded, and the user shall be prompted again for input for the same line.

Otherwise, if the cursor follows a `'^'`, which follows an **autoindent** character, and the `'^'` was the previous text input character, the `'^'` and all **autoindent** characters in the line shall be discarded, and the user shall be prompted again for input for the same line. In addition, the **autoindent** level for the next input line shall be derived from the same line from which the **autoindent** level for the current input line was derived.

Otherwise, if there are no **autoindent** or text input characters in the line, the *eof* character shall be discarded.

Otherwise, the *eof* character shall have no special meaning.

<newline>

Synopsis: `<newline>`
`<control>-J`

If in *ex* command mode:

Cause the command line to be parsed; <control>-J shall be mapped to the <newline> for this purpose.

If in *ex* text input mode:

Terminate the current line. If there are no characters other than **autoindent** characters on the line, all characters on the line shall be discarded.

Prompt for text input on a new line after the current line. If the **autoindent** edit option is set, an appropriate number of **autoindent** characters shall be added as a prefix to the line as described by the *ex* **autoindent** edit option.

<backslash>

Synopsis: `<backslash>`

Allow the entry of a subsequent <newline> or <control>-J as a literal character, removing any special meaning that it may have to the editor during text input mode. The backslash character shall be retained and evaluated when the command line is parsed, or retained and included when the input text becomes part of the edit buffer.

<control>-V

Synopsis: `<control>-V`

Allow the entry of any subsequent character as a literal character, removing any special meaning that it may have to the editor during text input mode. The <control>-V character shall be discarded before the command line is parsed or the input text becomes part of the edit buffer.

If the "literal next" functionality is performed by the underlying system, it is implementation-defined whether a character other than <control>-V performs this function.

<control>-W

Synopsis: `<control>-W`

Discard the <control>-W, and the word previous to it in the input line, including any <blank>s following the word and preceding the <control>-W. If the "word erase" functionality is performed by the underlying system, it is implementation-defined whether a character other than <control>-W performs this function.

Command Descriptions in ex

The following symbols are used in this section to represent command modifiers. Some of these modifiers can be omitted, in which case the specified defaults shall be used.

1addr A single line address, given in any of the forms described in Addressing in ex (on page 363); the default shall be the current line (`'.'`), unless otherwise specified.

If the line address is zero, it shall be an error, unless otherwise specified in the following command descriptions.

If the edit buffer is empty, and the address is specified with a command other than **=**, **append**, **insert**, **open**, **put**, **read**, or **visual**, or the address is not zero, it shall be an error.

2addr Two addresses specifying an inclusive range of lines. If no addresses are specified, the default for *2addr* shall be the current line only (`"."`), unless otherwise specified in the following command descriptions. If one address is specified, *2addr* shall specify that line only, unless otherwise specified in the following command descriptions.

It shall be an error if the first address is greater than the second address.

If the edit buffer is empty, and the two addresses are specified with a command other than the **!**, **write**, **wq**, or **xit** commands, or either address is not zero, it shall be an error.

count A positive decimal number. If *count* is specified, it shall be equivalent to specifying an additional address to the command, unless otherwise specified by the following command descriptions. The additional address shall be equal to the last address specified to the command (either explicitly or by default) plus *count*–1.

If this would result in an address greater than the last line of the edit buffer, it shall be corrected to equal the last line of the edit buffer.

flags One or more of the characters `'+'`, `'-'`, `'#'`, `'p'`, or `'l'` (ell). The flag characters can be <blank>-separated, and in any order or combination. The characters `'#'`, `'p'`, and `'l'` shall cause lines to be written in the format specified by the **print** command with the specified *flags*.

The lines to be written are as follows:

1. All edit buffer lines written during the execution of the *ex* **&**, **~**, **list**, **number**, **open**, **print**, **s**, **visual**, and **z** commands shall be written as specified by *flags*.
2. After the completion of an *ex* command with a flag as an argument, the current line shall be written as specified by *flags*, unless the current line was the last line written by the command.

The characters `'+'` and `'-'` cause the value of the current line after the execution of the *ex* command to be adjusted by the offset address as described in Addressing in ex (on page 363). This adjustment shall occur before the current line is written as described in 2. above.

The default for *flags* shall be none.

buffer One of a number of named areas for holding text. The named buffers are specified by the alphanumeric characters of the POSIX locale. There shall also be one "unnamed" buffer. When no buffer is specified for editor commands that use a buffer, the unnamed buffer shall be used. Commands that store text into buffers shall store the text as it was before the command took effect, and shall store text occurring earlier in the file before text occurring later in the file, regardless of how the text region was specified. Commands that store text into buffers shall store the text into the unnamed buffer as well as any specified buffer.

In *ex* commands, buffer names are specified as the name by itself. In open or visual mode commands the name is preceded by a double quote (`'"'`) character.

If the specified buffer name is an uppercase character, and the buffer contents are to be modified, the buffer shall be appended to rather than being overwritten. If the buffer is not being modified, specifying the buffer name in lowercase and uppercase shall have identical results.

There shall also be buffers named by the numbers 1 through 9. In open and visual mode, if a region of text including characters from more than a single line is being modified by the *vi* **c** or **d** commands, the motion character associated with the **c** or **d** commands specifies that the buffer text shall be in line mode, or the commands **%**, **'**, **/**, **?**, **(**, **)**, **N**, **n**, **{**, or **}** are used to define a region of text for the **c** or **d** commands, the contents of buffers 1 through 8 shall be moved into the buffer named by the next numerically greater value, the contents of buffer 9 shall be discarded, and the region of text shall be copied into buffer 1. This shall be in addition to copying the text into a user-specified buffer or unnamed buffer, or both. Numeric buffers can be specified as a source buffer for open and visual mode commands; however, specifying a numeric buffer as the write target of an open or visual mode command shall have unspecified results.

The text of each buffer shall have the characteristic of being in either line or character mode. Appending text to a non-empty buffer shall set the mode to match the characteristic of the text being appended. Appending text to a buffer shall cause the creation of at least one additional line in the buffer. All text stored into buffers by *ex* commands shall be in line mode. The *ex* commands that use buffers as the source of text specify individually how buffers of different modes are handled. Each open or visual mode command that uses buffers for any purpose specifies individually the mode of the text stored into the buffer and how buffers of different modes are handled.

file Command text used to derive a pathname. The default shall be the current pathname, as defined previously, in which case, if no current pathname has yet been established it shall be an error, except where specifically noted in the individual command descriptions that follow. If the command text contains any of the characters `'~'`, `'{'`, `'['`, `'*'`, `'?'`, `'$'`, `'`''`, `'``'`, `'"'`, and `'\'`, it shall be subjected to the process of "shell expansions", as described below; if more than a single pathname results and the command expects only one, it shall be an error.

The process of shell expansions in the editor shall be done as follows. The *ex* utility shall pass two arguments to the program named by the shell edit option; the first shall be **–c**, and the second shall be the string `"echo"` and the command text as a single argument. The standard output and standard error of that command shall replace the command text.

! A character that can be appended to the command name to modify its operation, as detailed in the individual command descriptions. With the exception of the *ex* **read**, **write**, and **!** commands, the '!' character shall only act as a modifier if there are no <blank>s between it and the command name.

remembered search direction
The *vi* commands **N** and **n** begin searching in a forwards or backwards direction in the edit buffer based on a remembered search direction, which is initially unset, and is set by the *ex* **global**, **v**, **s**, and **tag** commands, and the *vi* **/** and **?** commands.

Abbreviate

Synopsis: `ab[`*`breviate`*`][`*`lhs rhs`*`]`

If *lhs* and *rhs* are not specified, write the current list of abbreviations and do nothing more.

Implementations may restrict the set of characters accepted in *lhs* or *rhs*, except that printable characters and <blank>s shall not be restricted. Additional restrictions shall be implementation-defined.

In both *lhs* and *rhs*, any character may be escaped with a <control>-V, in which case the character shall not be used to delimit *lhs* from *rhs*, and the escaping <control>-V shall be discarded.

In open and visual text input mode, if a non-word or <ESC> character that is not escaped by a <control>-V character is entered after a word character, a check shall be made for a set of characters matching *lhs*, in the text input entered during this command. If it is found, the effect shall be as if *rhs* was entered instead of *lhs*.

The set of characters that are checked is defined as follows:

1. If there are no characters inserted before the word and non-word or <ESC> characters that triggered the check, the set of characters shall consist of the word character.
2. If the character inserted before the word and non-word or <ESC> characters that triggered the check is a word character, the set of characters shall consist of the characters inserted immediately before the triggering characters that are word characters, plus the triggering word character.
3. If the character inserted before the word and non-word or <ESC> characters that triggered the check is not a word character, the set of characters shall consist of the characters that were inserted before the triggering characters that are neither <blank>s nor word characters, plus the triggering word character.

It is unspecified whether the *lhs* argument entered for the *ex* **abbreviate** and **unabbreviate** commands is replaced in this fashion. Regardless of whether or not the replacement occurs, the effect of the command shall be as if the replacement had not occurred.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Append

Synopsis: `[`*`1addr`*`] a[ppend][!]`

Enter *ex* text input mode; the input text shall be placed after the specified line. If line zero is specified, the text shall be placed at the beginning of the edit buffer.

This command shall be affected by the **number** and **autoindent** edit options; following the command name with '!' shall cause the **autoindent** edit option setting to be toggled for the duration of this command only.

Current line: Set to the last input line; if no lines were input, set to the specified line, or to the first

line of the edit buffer if a line of zero was specified, or zero if the edit buffer is empty.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Arguments

Synopsis: `ar[gs]`

Write the current argument list, with the current argument-list entry, if any, between `'['` and `']'` characters.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Change

Synopsis: `[2addr] c[hange][!][count]`

Enter *ex* text input mode; the input text shall replace the specified lines. The specified lines shall be copied into the unnamed buffer, which shall become a line mode buffer.

This command shall be affected by the **number** and **autoindent** edit options; following the command name with `'!'` shall cause the **autoindent** edit option setting to be toggled for the duration of this command only.

Current line: Set to the last input line; if no lines were input, set to the line before the first address, or to the first line of the edit buffer if there are no lines preceding the first address, or to zero if the edit buffer is empty.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Change Directory

Synopsis: `chd[ir][!][directory]`
`cd[!][directory]`

Change the current working directory to *directory*.

If no *directory* argument is specified, and the *HOME* environment variable is set to a non-null and non-empty value, *directory* shall default to the value named in the *HOME* environment variable. If the *HOME* environment variable is empty or is undefined, the default value of *directory* is implementation-defined.

If no `'!'` is appended to the command name, and the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, and the current pathname does not begin with a `'/'`, it shall be an error.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Copy

Synopsis: `[2addr] co[py] 1addr [flags]`
`[2addr] t 1addr [flags]`

Copy the specified lines after the specified destination line; line zero specifies that the lines shall be placed at the beginning of the edit buffer.

Current line: Set to the last line copied.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

14600 **Delete**

14601 *Synopsis*: **[***2addr***] d[elete][***buffer***][***count***][***flags***]**

14602 Delete the specified lines into a buffer (defaulting to the unnamed buffer), which shall become a
14603 line-mode buffer.

14604 Flags can immediately follow the command name; see Command Line Parsing in ex (on page
14605 364).

14606 *Current line*: Set to the line following the deleted lines, or to the last line in the edit buffer if that
14607 line is past the end of the edit buffer, or to zero if the edit buffer is empty.

14608 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

14609 **Edit**

14610 *Synopsis*: **e[dit][!][+***command***][***file***]**
14611 **ex[!][+***command***][***file***]**

14612 If no '!' is appended to the command name, and the edit buffer has been modified since the
14613 last complete write, it shall be an error.

14614 If *file* is specified, replace the current contents of the edit buffer with the current contents of *file*,
14615 and set the current pathname to *file*. If *file* is not specified, replace the current contents of the
14616 edit buffer with the current contents of the file named by the current pathname. If for any reason
14617 the current contents of the file cannot be accessed, the edit buffer shall be empty.

14618 The +*command* option shall be <blank>-delimited; <blank>s within +*command* can be escaped by
14619 preceding them with a backslash character. The +*command* shall be interpreted as an *ex*
14620 command immediately after the contents of the edit buffer have been replaced and the current
14621 line and column have been set.

14622 If the edit buffer is empty:

14623 *Current line*: Set to 0.

14624 *Current column*: Set to 1.

14625 Otherwise, if executed while in *ex* command mode or if the +*command* argument is specified:

14626 *Current line*: Set to the last line of the edit buffer.

14627 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

14628 Otherwise, if *file* is omitted or results in the current pathname:

14629 *Current line*: Set to the first line of the edit buffer.

14630 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

14631 Otherwise, if *file* is the same as the last file edited, the line and column shall be set as follows; if
14632 the file was previously edited, the line and column may be set as follows:

14633 *Current line*: Set to the last value held when that file was last edited. If this value is not a valid
14634 line in the new edit buffer, set to the first line of the edit buffer.

14635 *Current column*: If the current line was set to the last value held when the file was last edited, set
14636 to the last value held when the file was last edited. Otherwise, or if the last value is not a valid
14637 column in the new edit buffer, set to non-<blank>.

14638 Otherwise:

14639 *Current line*: Set to the first line of the edit buffer.

14640 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

14641 **File**

14642 *Synopsis*: `f[ile][file]`

14643 If a *file* argument is specified, the alternate pathname shall be set to the current pathname, and
14644 the current pathname shall be set to *file*.

14645 Write an informational message. If the file has a current pathname, it shall be included in this
14646 message; otherwise, the message shall indicate that there is no current pathname. If the edit
14647 buffer contains lines, the current line number and the number of lines in the edit buffer shall be
14648 included in this message; otherwise, the message shall indicate that the edit buffer is empty. If
14649 the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, this fact shall be included in this
14650 message. If the **readonly** edit option is set, this fact shall be included in this message. The
14651 message may contain other unspecified information.

14652 *Current line*: Unchanged.

14653 *Current column*: Unchanged.

14654 **Global**

14655 *Synopsis*: `[2addr] g[lobal] /pattern/ [commands]`
14656 `[2addr] v /pattern/ [commands]`

14657 The optional `'!'` character after the **global** command shall be the same as executing the **v**
14658 command.

14659 If *pattern* is empty (for example, `"//"`) or not specified, the last regular expression used in the
14660 editor command shall be used as the *pattern*. The *pattern* can be delimited by slashes (shown in
14661 the Synopsis), as well as any non-alphanumeric or non-<blank> other than backslash, vertical
14662 line, double quote, or <newline>.

14663 If no lines are specified, the lines shall default to the entire file.

14664 The **global** and **v** commands are logically two-pass operations. First, mark the lines within the
14665 specified lines for which the line excluding the terminating <newline> matches (**global**) or does
14666 not match (**v** or **global!**) the specified pattern. Second, execute the *ex* commands given by
14667 *commands*, with the current line (`'.'`) set to each marked line. If an error occurs during this
14668 process, or the contents of the edit buffer are replaced (for example, by the *ex* **:edit** command) an
14669 error message shall be written and no more commands resulting from the execution of this
14670 command shall be processed.

14671 Multiple *ex* commands can be specified by entering multiple commands on a single line using a
14672 vertical line to delimit them, or one per line, by escaping each <newline> with a backslash.

14673 If no commands are specified:

14674 1. If in *ex* command mode, it shall be as if the **print** command were specified.

14675 2. Otherwise, no command shall be executed.

14676 For the **append**, **change**, and **insert** commands, the input text shall be included as part of the
14677 command, and the terminating period can be omitted if the command ends the list of
14678 commands. The **open** and **visual** commands can be specified as one of the commands, in which
14679 case each marked line shall cause the editor to enter open or visual mode. If open or visual mode
14680 is exited using the *vi* **Q** command, the current line shall be set to the next marked line, and open
14681 or visual mode reentered, until the list of marked lines is exhausted.

14682 The **global**, **v**, and **undo** commands cannot be used in *commands*. Marked lines may be deleted
14683 by commands executed for lines occurring earlier in the file than the marked lines. In this case,
14684 no commands shall be executed for the deleted lines.

14685 If the remembered search direction is not set, the **global** and **v** commands shall set it to forward.

The **autoprint** and **autoindent** edit options shall be inhibited for the duration of the **g** or **v** command.

Current line: If no commands executed, set to the last marked line. Otherwise, as specified for the executed *ex* commands.

Current column: If no commands are executed, set to non-<blank>; otherwise, as specified for the individual *ex* commands.

Insert

Synopsis: **[***1addr***] i[nsert][!]**

Enter *ex* text input mode; the input text shall be placed before the specified line. If the line is zero or 1, the text shall be placed at the beginning of the edit buffer.

This command shall be affected by the **number** and **autoindent** edit options; following the command name with '!' shall cause the **autoindent** edit option setting to be toggled for the duration of this command only.

Current line: Set to the last input line; if no lines were input, set to the line before the specified line, or to the first line of the edit buffer if there are no lines preceding the specified line, or zero if the edit buffer is empty.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Join

Synopsis: **[***2addr***] j[oin][!][***count***][***flags***]**

If *count* is specified:

> If no address was specified, the **join** command shall behave as if *2addr* were the current line and the current line plus *count* (.,. + *count*).
>
> If one address was specified, the **join** command shall behave as if *2addr* were the specified address and the specified address plus *count* (*addr*,*addr* + *count*).
>
> If two addresses were specified, the **join** command shall behave as if an additional address, equal to the last address plus *count* −1 (*addr1*,*addr2*,*addr2* + *count* −1), was specified.
>
> If this would result in a second address greater than the last line of the edit buffer, it shall be corrected to be equal to the last line of the edit buffer.

If no *count* is specified:

> If no address was specified, the **join** command shall behave as if *2addr* were the current line and the next line (.,. +1).
>
> If one address was specified, the **join** command shall behave as if *2addr* were the specified address and the next line (*addr*,*addr* +1).

Join the text from the specified lines together into a single line, which shall replace the specified lines.

If a '!' character is appended to the command name, the **join** shall be without modification of any line, independent of the current locale.

Otherwise, in the POSIX locale, set the current line to the first of the specified lines, and then, for each subsequent line, proceed as follows:

1. Discard leading <space>s from the line to be joined.
2. If the line to be joined is now empty, delete it, and skip steps 3 through 5.
3. If the current line ends in a <blank>, or the first character of the line to be joined is a `')'` character, join the lines without further modification.
4. If the last character of the current line is a `'.'`, join the lines with two <space>s between them.
5. Otherwise, join the lines with a single <space> between them.

Current line: Set to the first line specified.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

List

Synopsis: **[***2addr***] l[ist][***count***][***flags***]**

This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* command:

[*2addr***] p[rint][***count***] l[***flags***]**

See Print (on page 381).

Map

Synopsis: **map[!][***lhs rhs***]**

If *lhs* and *rhs* are not specified:

1. If `'!'` is specified, write the current list of text input mode maps.
2. Otherwise, write the current list of command mode maps.
3. Do nothing more.

Implementations may restrict the set of characters accepted in *lhs* or *rhs*, except that printable characters and <blank>s shall not be restricted. Additional restrictions shall be implementation-defined. In both *lhs* and *rhs*, any character can be escaped with a <control>-V, in which case the character shall not be used to delimit *lhs* from *rhs*, and the escaping <control>-V shall be discarded.

If the character `'!'` is appended to the **map** command name, the mapping shall be effective during open or visual text input mode rather than **open** or **visual** command mode. This allows *lhs* to have two different **map** definitions at the same time: one for command mode and one for text input mode.

For command mode mappings:

When the *lhs* is entered as any part of a *vi* command in open or visual mode (but not as part of the arguments to the command), the action shall be as if the corresponding *rhs* had been entered.

If any character in the command, other than the first, is escaped using a <control>-V character, that character shall not be part of a match to an *lhs*.

It is unspecified whether implementations shall support **map** commands where the *lhs* is more than a single character in length, where the first character of the *lhs* is printable.

If *lhs* contains more than one character and the first character is `'#'`, followed by a sequence of digits corresponding to a numbered function key, then when this function key is typed it shall be mapped to *rhs*. Characters other than digits following a `'#'` character also represent the function key named by the characters in the *lhs* following the `'#'` and may be mapped to *rhs*. It is unspecified how function keys are named or what function keys are supported.

For text input mode mappings:

When the *lhs* is entered as any part of text entered in open or visual text input modes, the action shall be as if the corresponding *rhs* had been entered.

If any character in the input text is escaped using a <control>-V character, that character shall not be part of a match to an *lhs*.

It is unspecified whether the *lhs* text entered for subsequent **map** or **unmap** commands is replaced with the *rhs* text for the purposes of the screen display; regardless of whether or not the display appears as if the corresponding *rhs* text was entered, the effect of the command shall be as if the *lhs* text was entered.

If only part of the *lhs* is entered, it is unspecified how long the editor will wait for additional, possibly matching characters before treating the already entered characters as not matching the *lhs*.

The *rhs* characters shall themselves be subject to remapping, unless otherwise specified by the **remap** edit option, except that if the characters in *lhs* occur as prefix characters in *rhs*, those characters shall not be remapped.

On block-mode terminals, the mapping need not occur immediately (for example, it may occur after the terminal transmits a group of characters to the system), but it shall achieve the same results as if it occurred immediately.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Mark

Synopsis:
```
[1addr] ma[rk] character
[1addr] k character
```

Implementations shall support *character* values of a single lowercase letter of the POSIX locale and the characters `'''` and `'''`; support of other characters is implementation-defined.

If executing the *vi* **m** command, set the specified mark to the current line and 1-based numbered character referenced by the current column, if any; otherwise, column position 1.

Otherwise, set the specified mark to the specified line and 1-based numbered first non-<blank> non-<newline> in the line, if any; otherwise, the last non-<newline> in the line, if any; otherwise, column position 1.

The mark shall remain associated with the line until the mark is reset or the line is deleted. If a

deleted line is restored by a subsequent **undo** command, any marks previously associated with the line, which have not been reset, shall be restored as well. Any use of a mark not associated with a current line in the edit buffer shall be an error.

The marks ‘ and ’ shall be set as described previously, immediately before the following events occur in the editor:

1. The use of `'$'` as an *ex* address
2. The use of a positive decimal number as an *ex* address
3. The use of a search command as an *ex* address
4. The use of a mark reference as an *ex* address
5. The use of the following open and visual mode commands: <control>-], %, **(**, **)**, [,], {, }
6. The use of the following open and visual mode commands: **'**, **G**, **H**, **L**, **M**, **z** if the current line will change as a result of the command
7. The use of the open and visual mode commands: **/**, **?**, **N**, **‘**, **n** if the current line or column will change as a result of the command
8. The use of the *ex* mode commands: **z**, **undo**, **global**, **v**

For rules 1., 2., 3., and 4., the ‘ and ’ marks shall not be set if the *ex* command is parsed as specified by rule 6.a. in Command Line Parsing in ex (on page 364).

For rules 5., 6., and 7., the ‘ and ’ marks shall not be set if the commands are used as motion commands in open and visual mode.

For rules 1., 2., 3., 4., 5., 6., 7., and 8., the ‘ and ’ marks shall not be set if the command fails.

The ‘ and ’ marks shall be set as described previously, each time the contents of the edit buffer are replaced (including the editing of the initial buffer), if in open or visual mode, or if in **ex** mode and the edit buffer is not empty, before any commands or movements (including commands or movements specified by the **−c** or **−t** options or the **+***command* argument) are executed on the edit buffer. If in open or visual mode, the marks shall be set as if executing the *vi* **m** command; otherwise, as if executing the *ex* **mark** command.

When changing from **ex** mode to open or visual mode, if the ‘ and ’ marks are not already set, the ‘ and ’ marks shall be set as described previously.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Move

Synopsis: **[***2addr***]** **m[ove]** ***1addr*** **[***flags***]**

Move the specified lines after the specified destination line. A destination of line zero specifies that the lines shall be placed at the beginning of the edit buffer. It shall be an error if the destination line is within the range of lines to be moved.

Current line: Set to the last of the moved lines.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

14837 **Next**

14838 *Synopsis*: `n[ext][!][+command][file ...]`

14839 If no '!' is appended to the command name, and the edit buffer has been modified since the
14840 last complete write, it shall be an error, unless the file is successfully written as specified by the
14841 **autowrite** option.

14842 If one or more files is specified:

14843 1. Set the argument list to the specified filenames.

14844 2. Set the current argument list reference to be the first entry in the argument list.

14845 3. Set the current pathname to the first filename specified.

14846 Otherwise:

14847 1. It shall be an error if there are no more filenames in the argument list after the filename
14848 currently referenced.

14849 2. Set the current pathname and the current argument list reference to the filename after the
14850 filename currently referenced in the argument list.

14851 Replace the contents of the edit buffer with the contents of the file named by the current
14852 pathname. If for any reason the contents of the file cannot be accessed, the edit buffer shall be
14853 empty.

14854 This command shall be affected by the **autowrite** and **writeany** edit options.

14855 The **+***command* option shall be <blank>-delimited; <blank>s can be escaped by preceding them
14856 with a backslash character. The **+***command* shall be interpreted as an *ex* command immediately
14857 after the contents of the edit buffer have been replaced and the current line and column have
14858 been set.

14859 *Current line*: Set as described for the **edit** command.

14860 *Current column*: Set as described for the **edit** command.

14861 **Number**

14862 *Synopsis*: `[2addr] nu[mber][count][flags]`
14863 `[2addr] #[count][flags]`

14864 These commands shall be equivalent to the *ex* command:

14865 `[2addr] p[rint][count] #[flags]`

14866 See Print (on page 381).

14867 **Open**

14868 *Synopsis*: `[1addr] o[pen] /pattern/ [flags]`

14869 This command need not be supported on block-mode terminals or terminals with insufficient
14870 capabilities. If standard input, standard output, or standard error are not terminal devices, the
14871 results are unspecified.

14872 Enter open mode.

14873 The trailing delimiter can be omitted from *pattern* at the end of the command line. If *pattern* is
14874 empty (for example, "//") or not specified, the last regular expression used in the editor shall
14875 be used as the pattern. The pattern can be delimited by slashes (shown in the Synopsis), as well
14876 as any alphanumeric, or non-<blank> other than backslash, vertical line, double quote, or
14877 <newline>.

Current line: Set to the specified line.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Preserve

Synopsis: `pre[serve]`

Save the edit buffer in a form that can later be recovered by using the **–r** option or by using the *ex* **recover** command. After the file has been preserved, a mail message shall be sent to the user. This message shall be readable by invoking the *mailx* utility. The message shall contain the name of the file, the time of preservation, and an *ex* command that could be used to recover the file. Additional information may be included in the mail message.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Print

Synopsis: **[***2addr***]** p**[**rint**][***count***][***flags***]**

Write the addressed lines. The behavior is unspecified if the number of columns on the display is less than the number of columns required to write any single character in the lines being written.

Non-printable characters, except for the <tab>, shall be written as implementation-defined multi-character sequences.

If the **#** flag is specified or the **number** edit option is set, each line shall be preceded by its line number in the following format:

`"%6dΔΔ", <line number>`

If the **l** flag is specified or the **list** edit option is set:

1. The characters listed in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Table 5-1, Escape Sequences and Associated Actions shall be written as the corresponding escape sequence.
2. Non-printable characters not in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Table 5-1, Escape Sequences and Associated Actions shall be written as one three-digit octal number (with a preceding backslash) for each byte in the character (most significant byte first).
3. The end of each line shall be marked with a `'$'`, and literal `'$'` characters within the line shall be written with a preceding backslash.

Long lines shall be folded; the length at which folding occurs is unspecified, but should be appropriate for the output terminal, considering the number of columns of the terminal.

If a line is folded, and the **l** flag is not specified and the **list** edit option is not set, it is unspecified whether a multi-column character at the folding position is separated; it shall not be discarded.

Current line: Set to the last written line.

Current column: Unchanged if the current line is unchanged; otherwise, set to non-<blank>.

14914 **Put**

14915 *Synopsis*: **[***1addr***] pu[t][***buffer***]**

14916 Append text from the specified buffer (by default, the unnamed buffer) to the specified line; line
14917 zero specifies that the text shall be placed at the beginning of the edit buffer. Each portion of a
14918 line in the buffer shall become a new line in the edit buffer, regardless of the mode of the buffer.

14919 *Current line*: Set to the last line entered into the edit buffer.

14920 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

14921 **Quit**

14922 *Synopsis*: **q[uit][!]**

14923 If no '!' is appended to the command name:

14924 1. If the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, it shall be an error.

14925 2. If there are filenames in the argument list after the filename currently referenced, and the
14926 last command was not a **quit**, **wq**, **xit**, or **ZZ** (see Exit (on page 1026)) command, it shall
14927 be an error.

14928 Otherwise, terminate the editing session.

14929 **Read**

14930 *Synopsis*: **[***1addr***] r[ead][!][***file***]**

14931 If '!' is not the first non-<blank> to follow the command name, a copy of the specified file shall
14932 be appended into the edit buffer after the specified line; line zero specifies that the copy shall be
14933 placed at the beginning of the edit buffer. The number of lines and bytes read shall be written. If
14934 no *file* is named, the current pathname shall be the default. If there is no current pathname, then
14935 *file* shall become the current pathname. If there is no current pathname or *file* operand, it shall be
14936 an error. Specifying a *file* that is not of type regular shall have unspecified results.

14937 Otherwise, if *file* is preceded by '!', the rest of the line after the '!' shall have '%', '#', and
14938 '!' characters expanded as described in Command Line Parsing in ex (on page 364).

14939 The *ex* utility shall then pass two arguments to the program named by the shell edit option; the
14940 first shall be **–c** and the second shall be the expanded arguments to the **read** command as a
14941 single argument. The standard input of the program shall be set to the standard input of the *ex*
14942 program when it was invoked. The standard error and standard output of the program shall be
14943 appended into the edit buffer after the specified line.

14944 Each line in the copied file or program output (as delimited by <newline>s or the end of the file
14945 or output if it is not immediately preceded by a <newline>), shall be a separate line in the edit
14946 buffer. Any occurrences of <carriage-return> and <newline> pairs in the output shall be treated
14947 as single <newline>s.

14948 The special meaning of the '!' following the **read** command can be overridden by escaping it
14949 with a backslash character.

14950 *Current line*: If no lines are added to the edit buffer, unchanged. Otherwise, if in open or visual
14951 mode, set to the first line entered into the edit buffer. Otherwise, set to the last line entered into
14952 the edit buffer.

14953 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

Recover

Synopsis: `rec[over][!]` *`file`*

If no `'!'` is appended to the command name, and the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, it shall be an error.

If no *file* operand is specified, then the current pathname shall be used. If there is no current pathname or *file* operand, it shall be an error.

If no recovery information has previously been saved about *file*, the **recover** command shall behave identically to the **edit** command, and an informational message to this effect shall be written.

Otherwise, set the current pathname to *file*, and replace the current contents of the edit buffer with the recovered contents of *file*. If there are multiple instances of the file to be recovered, the one most recently saved shall be recovered, and an informational message that there are previous versions of the file that can be recovered shall be written. The editor shall behave as if the contents of the edit buffer have already been modified.

Current file: Set as described for the **edit** command.

Current column: Set as described for the **edit** command.

Rewind

Synopsis: `rew[ind][!]`

If no `'!'` is appended to the command name, and the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, it shall be an error, unless the file is successfully written as specified by the **autowrite** option.

If the argument list is empty, it shall be an error.

The current argument list reference and the current pathname shall be set to the first filename in the argument list.

Replace the contents of the edit buffer with the contents of the file named by the current pathname. If for any reason the contents of the file cannot be accessed, the edit buffer shall be empty.

This command shall be affected by the **autowrite** and **writeany** edit options.

Current line: Set as described for the **edit** command.

Current column: Set as described for the **edit** command.

Set

Synopsis: `se[t][`*`option`*`[=[`*`value`*`]] ...][no`*`option ...`*`][`*`option`*`? ...][all]`

When no arguments are specified, write the value of the **term** edit option and those options whose values have been changed from the default settings; when the argument *all* is specified, write all of the option values.

Giving an option name followed by the character `'?'` shall cause the current value of that option to be written. The `'?'` can be separated from the option name by zero or more <blank>s. The `'?'` shall be necessary only for Boolean valued options. Boolean options can be given values by the form **set** *option* to turn them on or **set no***option* to turn them off; string and numeric options can be assigned by the form **set** *option=value*. Any <blank>s in strings can be included as is by preceding each <blank> with an escaping backslash. More than one option can be set or listed by a single set command by specifying multiple arguments, each separated from the next by one or more <blank>s.

See Edit Options in ex for details about specific options.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Shell

Synopsis: `sh[ell]`

Invoke the program named in the **shell** edit option with the single argument **–i** (interactive mode). Editing shall be resumed when the program exits.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Source

Synopsis: `so[urce] file`

Read and execute *ex* commands from *file*. Lines in the file that are blank lines shall be ignored.

Current line: As specified for the individual *ex* commands.

Current column: As specified for the individual *ex* commands.

Substitute

Synopsis:
```
[2addr] s[ubstitute][/pattern/repl/[options][count][flags]]
[2addr] &[options][count][flags]]
[2addr] ~[options][count][flags]]
```

Replace the first instance of the pattern *pattern* by the string *repl* on each specified line. (See Regular Expressions in ex and Replacement Strings in ex (on page 392).) Any non-alphabetic, non-<blank> delimiter other than `'\'`, `'|'`, double quote, or <newline> can be used instead of `'/'`. Backslash characters can be used to escape delimiters, backslash characters, and other special characters.

The trailing delimiter can be omitted from *pattern* or from *repl* at the end of the command line. If both *pattern* and *repl* are not specified or are empty (for example, `"//"`), the last **s** command shall be repeated. If only *pattern* is not specified or is empty, the last regular expression used in the editor shall be used as the pattern. If only *repl* is not specified or is empty, the pattern shall be replaced by nothing. If the entire replacement pattern is `'%'`, the last replacement pattern to an **s** command shall be used.

Entering a <carriage-return> in *repl* (which requires an escaping backslash in *ex* mode and an escaping <control>-V in open or *vi* mode) shall split the line at that point, creating a new line in the edit buffer. The <carriage-return> shall be discarded.

If *options* includes the letter `'g'` (**global**), all non-overlapping instances of the pattern in the line shall be replaced.

If *options* includes the letter `'c'` (**confirm**), then before each substitution the line shall be written; the written line shall reflect all previous substitutions. On the following line, <space>s shall be written beneath the characters from the line that are before the *pattern* to be replaced, and `'^'` characters written beneath the characters included in the *pattern* to be replaced. The *ex* utility shall then wait for a response from the user. An affirmative response shall cause the substitution to be done, while any other input shall not make the substitution. An affirmative response shall consist of a line with the affirmative response (as defined by the current locale) at the beginning of the line. This line shall be subject to editing in the same way as the *ex* command line.

If interrupted (see the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section), any modifications confirmed by the

user shall be preserved in the edit buffer after the interrupt.

If the remembered search direction is not set, the **s** command shall set it to forward.

In the second Synopsis, the **&** command shall repeat the previous substitution, as if the **&** command were replaced by:

```
s/pattern/repl/
```

where *pattern* and *repl* are as specified in the previous **s**, **&**, or **~** command.

In the third Synopsis, the **~** command shall repeat the previous substitution, as if the `'~'` were replaced by:

```
s/pattern/repl/
```

where *pattern* shall be the last regular expression specified to the editor, and *repl* shall be from the previous substitution (including **&** and **~**) command.

These commands shall be affected by the *LC_MESSAGES* environment variable.

Current line: Set to the last line in which a substitution occurred, or, unchanged if no substitution occurred.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Suspend

Synopsis: `su[spend][!]`
`st[op][!]`

Allow control to return to the invoking process; *ex* shall suspend itself as if it had received the SIGTSTP signal. The suspension shall occur only if job control is enabled in the invoking shell (see the description of *set* **–m**).

These commands shall be affected by the **autowrite** and **writeany** edit options.

The current **susp** character (see *stty*) shall be equivalent to the **suspend** command.

Tag

Synopsis: `ta[g][!] tagstring`

The results are unspecified if the format of a tags file is not as specified by the *ctags* utility (see *ctags*) description.

The **tag** command shall search for *tagstring* in the tag files referred to by the **tag** edit option, in the order they are specified, until a reference to *tagstring* is found. Files shall be searched from beginning to end. If no reference is found, it shall be an error and an error message to this effect shall be written. If the reference is not found, or if an error occurs while processing a file referred to in the **tag** edit option, it shall be an error, and an error message shall be written at the first occurrence of such an error.

Otherwise, if the tags file contained a pattern, the pattern shall be treated as a regular expression used in the editor; for example, for the purposes of the **s** command.

If the *tagstring* is in a file with a different name than the current pathname, set the current pathname to the name of that file, and replace the contents of the edit buffer with the contents of that file. In this case, if no `'!'` is appended to the command name, and the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, it shall be an error, unless the file is successfully written as specified by the **autowrite** option.

This command shall be affected by the **autowrite**, **tag**, **taglength**, and **writeany** edit options.

Current line: If the tags file contained a line number, set to that line number. If the line number is

15082 larger than the last line in the edit buffer, an error message shall be written and the current line
15083 shall be set as specified for the **edit** command.

15084 If the tags file contained a pattern, set to the first occurrence of the pattern in the file. If no
15085 matching pattern is found, an error message shall be written and the current line shall be set as
15086 specified for the **edit** command.

15087 *Current column*: If the tags file contained a line-number reference and that line-number was not
15088 larger than the last line in the edit buffer, or if the tags file contained a pattern and that pattern
15089 was found, set to non-<blank>. Otherwise, set as specified for the **edit** command.

15090 **Unabbreviate**

15091 *Synopsis*: `una[bbrev]` *lhs*

15092 If *lhs* is not an entry in the current list of abbreviations (see Abbreviate (on page 372)), it shall be
15093 an error. Otherwise, delete *lhs* from the list of abbreviations.

15094 *Current line*: Unchanged.

15095 *Current column*: Unchanged.

15096 **Undo**

15097 *Synopsis*: `u[ndo]`

15098 Reverse the changes made by the last command that modified the contents of the edit buffer,
15099 including **undo**. For this purpose, the **global**, **v**, **open**, and **visual** commands, and commands
15100 resulting from buffer executions and mapped character expansions, are considered single
15101 commands.

15102 If no action that can be undone preceded the **undo** command, it shall be an error.

15103 If the **undo** command restores lines that were marked, the mark shall also be restored unless it
15104 was reset subsequent to the deletion of the lines.

15105 *Current line*:

15106 1. If lines are added or changed in the file, set to the first line added or changed.
15107 2. Set to the line before the first line deleted, if it exists.
15108 3. Set to 1 if the edit buffer is not empty.
15109 4. Set to zero.

15110 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

15111 **Unmap**

15112 *Synopsis*: `unm[ap][!]` *lhs*

15113 If `'!'` is appended to the command name, and if *lhs* is not an entry in the list of text input mode
15114 map definitions, it shall be an error. Otherwise, delete *lhs* from the list of text input mode map
15115 definitions.

15116 If no `'!'` is appended to the command name, and if *lhs* is not an entry in the list of command
15117 mode map definitions, it shall be an error. Otherwise, delete *lhs* from the list of command mode
15118 map definitions.

15119 *Current line*: Unchanged.

15120 *Current column*: Unchanged.

15121 **Version**

15122 *Synopsis*: `ve[rsion]`

15123 Write a message containing version information for the editor. The format of the message is
15124 unspecified.

15125 *Current line*: Unchanged.

15126 *Current column*: Unchanged.

15127 **Visual**

15128 *Synopsis*: `[`*`1addr`*`] vi[sual][`*`type`*`][`*`count`*`][`*`flags`*`]`

15129 If *ex* is currently in open or visual mode, the Synopsis and behavior of the visual command shall
15130 be the same as the **edit** command, as specified by Edit (on page 374).

15131 Otherwise, this command need not be supported on block-mode terminals or terminals with
15132 insufficient capabilities. If standard input, standard output, or standard error are not terminal
15133 devices, the results are unspecified.

15134 If *count* is specified, the value of the **window** edit option shall be set to *count* (as described in
15135 window (on page 399)). If the `'^'` type character was also specified, the **window** edit option
15136 shall be set before being used by the type character.

15137 Enter visual mode. If *type* is not specified, it shall be as if a *type* of `'+'` was specified. The *type*
15138 shall cause the following effects:

15139 `+` Place the beginning of the specified line at the top of the display.

15140 `-` Place the end of the specified line at the bottom of the display.

15141 `.` Place the beginning of the specified line in the middle of the display.

15142 `^` If the specified line is less than or equal to the value of the **window** edit option, set the line
15143 to 1; otherwise, decrement the line by the value of the **window** edit option minus 1. Place
15144 the beginning of this line as close to the bottom of the displayed lines as possible, while still
15145 displaying the value of the **window** edit option number of lines.

15146 *Current line*: Set to the specified line.

15147 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

15148 **Write**

15149 *Synopsis*: `[`*`2addr`*`] w[rite][!][>>][`*`file`*`]`
15150 `[`*`2addr`*`] w[rite][!][`*`file`*`]`
15151 `[`*`2addr`*`] wq[!][>>][`*`file`*`]`

15152 If no lines are specified, the lines shall default to the entire file.

15153 The command **wq** shall be equivalent to a **write** command followed by a **quit** command; **wq!**
15154 shall be equivalent to **write!** followed by **quit**. In both cases, if the **write** command fails, the
15155 **quit** shall not be attempted.

15156 If the command name is not followed by one or more <blank>s, or *file* is not preceded by a `'!'`
15157 character, the **write** shall be to a file.

15158 1. If the **>>** argument is specified, and the file already exists, the lines shall be appended to
15159 the file instead of replacing its contents. If the **>>** argument is specified, and the file does
15160 not already exist, it is unspecified whether the write shall proceed as if the **>>** argument
15161 had not been specified or if the write shall fail.

2. If the **readonly** edit option is set (see readonly (on page 396)), the **write** shall fail.
3. If *file* is specified, and is not the current pathname, and the file exists, the **write** shall fail.
4. If *file* is not specified, the current pathname shall be used. If there is no current pathname, the **write** command shall fail.
5. If the current pathname is used, and the current pathname has been changed by the **file** or **read** commands, and the file exists, the **write** shall fail. If the **write** is successful, subsequent **write**s shall not fail for this reason (unless the current pathname is changed again).
6. If the whole edit buffer is not being written, and the file to be written exists, the **write** shall fail.

For rules 1., 2., 4., and 5., the **write** can be forced by appending the character `'!'` to the command name.

For rules 2., 4., and 5., the **write** can be forced by setting the **writeany** edit option.

Additional, implementation-defined tests may cause the **write** to fail.

If the edit buffer is empty, a file without any contents shall be written.

An informational message shall be written noting the number of lines and bytes written.

Otherwise, if the command is followed by one or more <blank>s, and the file is preceded by `'!'`, the rest of the line after the `'!'` shall have `'%'`, `'#'`, and `'!'` characters expanded as described in Command Line Parsing in ex (on page 364).

The *ex* utility shall then pass two arguments to the program named by the **shell** edit option; the first shall be **–c** and the second shall be the expanded arguments to the **write** command as a single argument. The specified lines shall be written to the standard input of the command. The standard error and standard output of the program, if any, shall be written as described for the **print** command. If the last character in that output is not a <newline>, a <newline> shall be written at the end of the output.

The special meaning of the `'!'` following the **write** command can be overridden by escaping it with a backslash character.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Write and Exit

Synopsis: `[`*2addr*`] x[it][!][`*file*`]`

If the edit buffer has not been modified since the last complete **write**, **xit** shall be equivalent to the **quit** command, or if a `'!'` is appended to the command name, to **quit!**.

Otherwise, **xit** shall be equivalent to the **wq** command, or if a `'!'` is appended to the command name, to **wq!**.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

15199 **Yank**

15200 *Synopsis*: **[***2addr***] ya[nk][***buffer***][***count***]**

15201 Copy the specified lines to the specified buffer (by default, the unnamed buffer), which shall
15202 become a line-mode buffer.

15203 *Current line*: Unchanged.

15204 *Current column*: Unchanged.

15205 **Adjust Window**

15206 *Synopsis*: **[***1addr***] z[!][***type ...***][***count***][***flags***]**

15207 If no line is specified, the current line shall be the default; if *type* is omitted as well, the current
15208 line value shall first be incremented by 1. If incrementing the current line would cause it to be
15209 greater than the last line in the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

15210 If there are <blank>s between the *type* argument and the preceding **z** command name or
15211 optional '!' character, it shall be an error.

15212 If *count* is specified, the value of the **window** edit option shall be set to *count* (as described in
15213 window (on page 399)). If *count* is omitted, it shall default to 2 times the value of the **scroll** edit
15214 option, or if **!** was specified, the number of lines in the display minus 1.

15215 If *type* is omitted, then *count* lines starting with the specified line shall be written. Otherwise,
15216 *count* lines starting with the line specified by the *type* argument shall be written.

15217 The *type* argument shall change the lines to be written. The possible values of *type* are as follows:

15218 – The specified line shall be decremented by the following value:

15219 (((number of ''–'' characters) x *count*) –1)

15220 If the calculation would result in a number less than 1, it shall be an error. Write lines from
15221 the edit buffer, starting at the new value of line, until *count* lines or the last line in the edit
15222 buffer has been written.

15223 + The specified line shall be incremented by the following value:

15224 (((number of ''+'' characters) –1) x *count*) +1

15225 If the calculation would result in a number greater than the last line in the edit buffer, it
15226 shall be an error. Write lines from the edit buffer, starting at the new value of line, until *count*
15227 lines or the last line in the edit buffer has been written.

15228 =,. If more than a single '.' or '=' is specified, it shall be an error. The following steps shall
15229 be taken:

15230 1. If *count* is zero, nothing shall be written.

15231 2. Write as many of the *N* lines before the current line in the edit buffer as exist. If *count*
15232 or '!' was specified, *N* shall be:

15233 (*count* –1) /2

15234 Otherwise, *N* shall be:

15235 (*count* –3) /2

15236 If *N* is a number less than 3, no lines shall be written.

15237 3. If '=' was specified as the type character, write a line consisting of the smaller of the
15238 number of columns in the display divided by two, or 40 '–' characters.

4. Write the current line.
5. Repeat step 3.
6. Write as many of the *N* lines after the current line in the edit buffer as exist. *N* shall be defined as in step 2. If *N* is a number less than 3, no lines shall be written. If *count* is less than 3, no lines shall be written.

^ The specified line shall be decremented by the following value:

```
(((number of ''^'' characters) +1) x count) −1
```

If the calculation would result in a number less than 1, it shall be an error. Write lines from the edit buffer, starting at the new value of line, until *count* lines or the last line in the edit buffer has been written.

Current line: Set to the last line written, unless the type is **=**, in which case, set to the specified line.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Escape

Synopsis: `! command`
`[addr]! command`

The contents of the line after the `'!'` shall have `'%'`, `'#'`, and `'!'` characters expanded as described in Command Line Parsing in ex (on page 364). If the expansion causes the text of the line to change, it shall be redisplayed, preceded by a single `'!'` character.

The *ex* utility shall execute the program named by the **shell** edit option. It shall pass two arguments to the program; the first shall be **−c**, and the second shall be the expanded arguments to the **!** command as a single argument.

If no lines are specified, the standard input, standard output, and standard error of the program shall be set to the standard input, standard output, and standard error of the *ex* program when it was invoked. In addition, a warning message shall be written if the edit buffer has been modified since the last complete write, and the **warn** edit option is set.

If lines are specified, they shall be passed to the program as standard input, and the standard output and standard error of the program shall replace those lines in the edit buffer. Each line in the program output (as delimited by <newline>s or the end of the output if it is not immediately preceded by a <newline>), shall be a separate line in the edit buffer. Any occurrences of <carriage-return> and <newline> pairs in the output shall be treated as single <newline>s. The specified lines shall be copied into the unnamed buffer before they are replaced, and the unnamed buffer shall become a line-mode buffer.

If in *ex* mode, a single `'!'` character shall be written when the program completes.

This command shall be affected by the **shell** and **warn** edit options. If no lines are specified, this command shall be affected by the **autowrite** and **writeany** edit options. If lines are specified, this command shall be affected by the **autoprint** edit option.

Current line:

1. If no lines are specified, unchanged.
2. Otherwise, set to the last line read in, if any lines are read in.
3. Otherwise, set to the line before the first line of the lines specified, if that line exists.
4. Otherwise, set to the first line of the edit buffer if the edit buffer is not empty.

5. Otherwise, set to zero.

Current column: If no lines are specified, unchanged. Otherwise, set to non-<blank>.

Shift Left

Synopsis: **[***2addr***] <[<** ...**][***count***][***flags***]**

Shift the specified lines to the start of the line; the number of column positions to be shifted shall be the number of command characters times the value of the **shiftwidth** edit option. Only leading <blank>s shall be deleted or changed into other <blank>s in shifting; other characters shall not be affected.

Lines to be shifted shall be copied into the unnamed buffer, which shall become a line-mode buffer.

This command shall be affected by the **autoprint** edit option.

Current line: Set to the last line in the lines specified.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Shift Right

Synopsis: **[***2addr***] >[>** ...**][***count***][***flags***]**

Shift the specified lines away from the start of the line; the number of column positions to be shifted shall be the number of command characters times the value of the **shiftwidth** edit option. The shift shall be accomplished by adding <blank>s as a prefix to the line or changing leading <blank>s into other <blank>s. Empty lines shall not be changed.

Lines to be shifted shall be copied into the unnamed buffer, which shall become a line-mode buffer.

This command shall be affected by the **autoprint** edit option.

Current line: Set to the last line in the lines specified.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

<control>-D

Synopsis: <control>-D

Write the next *n* lines, where *n* is the minimum of the values of the **scroll** edit option and the number of lines after the current line in the edit buffer. If the current line is the last line of the edit buffer it shall be an error.

Current line: Set to the last line written.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Write Line Number

Synopsis: **[***1addr***] = [***flags***]**

If *line* is not specified, it shall default to the last line in the edit buffer. Write the line number of the specified line.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

15318 **Execute**

15319 *Synopsis*: **[***2addr***]** **@** *buffer*
15320 **[***2addr***]** ***** *buffer*

15321 If no buffer is specified or is specified as '@' or '*', the last buffer executed shall be used. If no
15322 previous buffer has been executed, it shall be an error.

15323 For each line specified by the addresses, set the current line ('.') to the specified line, and
15324 execute the contents of the named *buffer* (as they were at the time the @ command was executed)
15325 as *ex* commands. For each line of a line-mode buffer, and all but the last line of a character-mode
15326 buffer, the *ex* command parser shall behave as if the line was terminated by a <newline>.

15327 If an error occurs during this process, or a line specified by the addresses does not exist when
15328 the current line would be set to it, or more than a single line was specified by the addresses, and
15329 the contents of the edit buffer are replaced (for example, by the *ex* **:edit** command) an error
15330 message shall be written, and no more commands resulting from the execution of this command
15331 shall be processed.

15332 *Current line*: As specified for the individual *ex* commands.

15333 *Current column*: As specified for the individual *ex* commands.

15334 **Regular Expressions in ex**

15335 The *ex* utility shall support regular expressions that are a superset of the basic regular
15336 expressions described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic
15337 Regular Expressions. A null regular expression ("//") shall be equivalent to the last regular
15338 expression encountered.

15339 Regular expressions can be used in addresses to specify lines and, in some commands (for
15340 example, the **substitute** command), to specify portions of a line to be substituted.

15341 The following constructs can be used to enhance the basic regular expressions:

15342 \< Match the beginning of a *word*. (See the definition of *word* at the beginning of Command
15343 Descriptions in ex (on page 370).)

15344 \> Match the end of a *word*.

15345 ~ Match the replacement part of the last **substitute** command. The tilde ('~') character can be
15346 escaped in a regular expression to become a normal character with no special meaning. The
15347 backslash shall be discarded.

15348 When the editor option **magic** is not set, the only characters with special meanings shall be '^'
15349 at the beginning of a pattern, '$' at the end of a pattern, and '\'. The characters '.', '*',
15350 '[', and '~' shall be treated as ordinary characters unless preceded by a '\'; when preceded
15351 by a '\' they shall regain their special meaning, or in the case of backslash, be handled as a
15352 single backslash. Backslashes used to escape other characters shall be discarded.

15353 **Replacement Strings in ex**

15354 The character '&' ('\&' if the editor option **magic** is not set) in the replacement string shall
15355 stand for the text matched by the pattern to be replaced. The character '~' ('\~' if **magic** is not
15356 set) shall be replaced by the replacement part of the previous **substitute** command. The
15357 sequence '*n*', where *n* is an integer, shall be replaced by the text matched by the
15358 corresponding back-reference expression. If the corresponding back-reference expression does
15359 not match, then the characters '*n*' shall be replaced by the empty string.

15360 The strings '\l', '\u', '\L', and '\U' can be used to modify the case of elements in the
15361 replacement string (using the '\&' or "\"digit) notation. The string '\l' ('\u') shall cause
15362 the character that follows to be converted to lowercase (uppercase). The string '\L' ('\U') shall

cause all characters subsequent to it to be converted to lowercase (uppercase) as they are inserted by the substitution until the string `'\e'` or `'\E'`, or the end of the replacement string, is encountered.

Otherwise, any character following a backslash shall be treated as that literal character, and the escaping backslash shall be discarded.

An example of case conversion with the **s** command is as follows:

```
:p
The cat sat on the mat.
:s/\<.at\>/\u&/gp
The Cat Sat on the Mat.
:s/S\(.*\)M/S\U\1\eM/p
The Cat SAT ON THE Mat.
```

Edit Options in ex

The *ex* utility has a number of options that modify its behavior. These options have default settings, which can be changed using the **set** command.

Options are Boolean unless otherwise specified.

autoindent, ai

[Default *unset*]

If **autoindent** is set, each line in input mode shall be indented (using first as many <tab>s as possible, as determined by the editor option **tabstop**, and then using <space>s) to align with another line, as follows:

1. If in open or visual mode and the text input is part of a line-oriented command (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION in *vi*), align to the first column.
2. Otherwise, if in open or visual mode, indentation for each line shall be set as follows:
   a. If a line was previously inserted as part of this command, it shall be set to the indentation of the last inserted line by default, or as otherwise specified for the <control>-D character in Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026).
   b. Otherwise, it shall be set to the indentation of the previous current line, if any; otherwise, to the first column.
3. For the *ex* **a**, **i**, and **c** commands, indentation for each line shall be set as follows:
   a. If a line was previously inserted as part of this command, it shall be set to the indentation of the last inserted line by default, or as otherwise specified for the *eof* character in Scroll (on page 368).
   b. Otherwise, if the command is the *ex* **a** command, it shall be set to the line appended after, if any; otherwise to the first column.
   c. Otherwise, if the command is the *ex* **i** command, it shall be set to the line inserted before, if any; otherwise to the first column.
   d. Otherwise, if the command is the *ex* **c** command, it shall be set to the indentation of the line replaced.

15402 **autoprint, ap**

15403 [Default *set*]

15404 If **autoprint** is set, the current line shall be written after each *ex* command that modifies the
15405 contents of the current edit buffer, and after each **tag** command for which the tag search pattern
15406 was found or tag line number was valid, unless:

15407 1. The command was executed while in open or visual mode.

15408 2. The command was executed as part of a **global** or **v** command or @ buffer execution.

15409 3. The command was the form of the **read** command that reads a file into the edit buffer.

15410 4. The command was the **append**, **change**, or **insert** command.

15411 5. The command was not terminated by a <newline>.

15412 6. The current line shall be written by a flag specified to the command; for example, **delete #**
15413 shall write the current line as specified for the flag modifier to the **delete** command, and
15414 not as specified by the **autoprint** edit option.

15415 **autowrite, aw**

15416 [Default *unset*]

15417 If **autowrite** is set, and the edit buffer has been modified since it was last completely written to
15418 any file, the contents of the edit buffer shall be written as if the *ex* **write** command had been
15419 specified without arguments, before each command affected by the **autowrite** edit option is
15420 executed. Appending the character '!' to the command name of any of the *ex* commands
15421 except '!' shall prevent the write. If the write fails, it shall be an error and the command shall
15422 not be executed.

15423 **beautify, bf**

15424 XSI [Default *unset*]

15425 If **beautify** is set, all non-printable characters, other than <tab>s, <newline>s, and <form-feed>s,
15426 shall be discarded from text read in from files.

15427 **directory, dir**

15428 [Default *implementation-defined*]

15429 The value of this option specifies the directory in which the editor buffer is to be placed. If this
15430 directory is not writable by the user, the editor shall quit.

15431 **edcompatible, ed**

15432 [Default *unset*]

15433 Causes the presence of **g** and **c** suffixes on substitute commands to be remembered, and toggled
15434 by repeating the suffixes.

15435 **errorbells, eb**

15436 [Default *unset*]

15437 If the editor is in *ex* mode, and the terminal does not support a standout mode (such as inverse
15438 video), and **errorbells** is set, error messages shall be preceded by alerting the terminal.

15439 **exrc**

15440 [Default *unset*]

15441 If **exrc** is set, *ex* shall access any **.exrc** file in the current directory, as described in Initialization in
15442 ex and vi (on page 360). If **exrc** is not set, *ex* shall ignore any **.exrc** file in the current directory
15443 during initialization, unless the current directory is that named by the *HOME* environment
15444 variable.

15445 **ignorecase, ic**

15446 [Default *unset*]

15447 If **ignorecase** is set, characters that have uppercase and lowercase representations shall have
15448 those representations considered as equivalent for purposes of regular expression comparison.

15449 The **ignorecase** edit option shall affect all remembered regular expressions; for example,
15450 unsetting the **ignorecase** edit option shall cause a subsequent *vi* **n** command to search for the
15451 last basic regular expression in a case-sensitive fashion.

15452 **list**

15453 [Default *unset*]

15454 If **list** is set, edit buffer lines written while in *ex* command mode shall be written as specified for
15455 the **print** command with the **l** flag specified. In open or visual mode, each edit buffer line shall
15456 be displayed as specified for the *ex* **print** command with the **l** flag specified. In open or visual
15457 text input mode, when the cursor does not rest on any character in the line, it shall rest on the
15458 `'$'` marking the end of the line.

15459 **magic**

15460 [Default *set*]

15461 If **magic** is set, modify the interpretation of characters in regular expressions and substitution
15462 replacement strings (see Regular Expressions in ex and Replacement Strings in ex (on page 392)).

15463 **mesg**

15464 [Default *set*]

15465 If **mesg** is set, the permission for others to use the **write** or **talk** commands to write to the
15466 terminal shall be turned on while in open or visual mode. The shell-level command *mesg* **n** shall
15467 take precedence over any setting of the *ex* **mesg** option; that is, if **mesg y** was issued before the
15468 editor started (or in a shell escape), such as:

15469 `:!mesg y`

15470 the **mesg** option in *ex* shall suppress incoming messages, but the **mesg** option shall not enable
15471 incoming messages if **mesg n** was issued.

15472 **number, nu**

15473 [Default *unset*]

15474 If **number** is set, edit buffer lines written while in *ex* command mode shall be written with line
15475 numbers, in the format specified by the **print** command with the **#** flag specified. In *ex* text input
15476 mode, each line shall be preceded by the line number it will have in the file.

15477 In open or visual mode, each edit buffer line shall be displayed with a preceding line number, in
15478 the format specified by the *ex* **print** command with the **#** flag specified. This line number shall
15479 not be considered part of the line for the purposes of evaluating the current column; that is,
15480 column position 1 shall be the first column position after the format specified by the **print**
15481 command.

15482 **paragraphs, para**

15483 [Default in the POSIX locale `IPLPPPQPP LIpplpipbp`]

15484 The **paragraphs** edit option shall define additional paragraph boundaries for the open and
15485 visual mode commands. The **paragraphs** edit option can be set to a character string consisting of
15486 zero or more character pairs. It shall be an error to set it to an odd number of characters.

15487 **prompt**

15488 [Default *set*]

15489 If **prompt** is set, *ex* command mode input shall be prompted for with a colon (`':'`); when unset,
15490 no prompt shall be written.

15491 **readonly**

15492 [Default *see text*]

15493 If the **readonly** edit option is set, read-only mode shall be enabled (see Write (on page 387)). The
15494 **readonly** edit option shall be initialized to set if either of the following conditions are true:

15495 • The command-line option –R was specified.

15496 • Performing actions equivalent to the *access*( ) function called with the following arguments
15497 indicates that the file lacks write permission:

15498 1. The current pathname is used as the *path* argument.

15499 2. The constant **W_OK** is used as the *amode* argument.

15500 The **readonly** edit option may be initialized to set for other, implementation-defined reasons.
15501 The **readonly** edit option shall not be initialized to unset based on any special privileges of the
15502 user or process. The **readonly** edit option shall be reinitialized each time that the contents of the
15503 edit buffer are replaced (for example, by an **edit** or **next** command) unless the user has explicitly
15504 set it, in which case it shall remain set until the user explicitly unsets it. Once unset, it shall again
15505 be reinitialized each time that the contents of the edit buffer are replaced.

15506 **redraw**

15507 [Default *unset*]

15508 The editor simulates an intelligent terminal on a dumb terminal. (Since this is likely to require a
15509 large amount of output to the terminal, it is useful only at high transmission speeds.)

remap

[Default *set*]

If **remap** is set, map translation shall allow for maps defined in terms of other maps; translation shall continue until a final product is obtained. If unset, only a one-step translation shall be done.

report

[Default 5]

The value of this **report** edit option specifies what number of lines being added, copied, deleted, or modified in the edit buffer will cause an informational message to be written to the user. The following conditions shall cause an informational message. The message shall contain the number of lines added, copied, deleted, or modified, but is otherwise unspecified.

- An *ex* or *vi* editor command, other than **open**, **undo**, or **visual**, that modifies at least the value of the **report** edit option number of lines, and which is not part of an *ex* **global** or **v** command, or *ex* or *vi* buffer execution, shall cause an informational message to be written.
- An *ex* **yank** or *vi* **y** or **Y** command, that copies at least the value of the **report** edit option plus 1 number of lines, and which is not part of an *ex* **global** or **v** command, or *ex* or *vi* buffer execution, shall cause an informational message to be written.
- An *ex* **global**, **v**, **open**, **undo**, or **visual** command or *ex* or *vi* buffer execution, that adds or deletes a total of at least the value of the **report** edit option number of lines, and which is not part of an *ex* **global** or **v** command, or *ex* or *vi* buffer execution, shall cause an informational message to be written. (For example, if 3 lines were added and 8 lines deleted during an *ex* **visual** command, 5 would be the number compared against the **report** edit option after the command completed.)

scroll, scr

[Default (number of lines in the display –1)/2]

The value of the **scroll** edit option shall determine the number of lines scrolled by the *ex* <control>-D and **z** commands. For the *vi* <control>-D and <control>-U commands, it shall be the initial number of lines to scroll when no previous <control>-D or <control>-U command has been executed.

sections

[Default in the POSIX locale `NHSHH HUnhsh`]

The **sections** edit option shall define additional section boundaries for the open and visual mode commands. The **sections** edit option can be set to a character string consisting of zero or more character pairs; it shall be an error to set it to an odd number of characters.

shell, sh

[Default from the environment variable *SHELL*]

The value of this option shall be a string. The default shall be taken from the *SHELL* environment variable. If the *SHELL* environment variable is null or empty, the *sh* (see *sh*) utility shall be the default.

15549 **shiftwidth, sw**

15550 [Default 8]

15551 The value of this option shall give the width in columns of an indentation level used during
15552 autoindentation and by the shift commands (**<** and **>**).

15553 **showmatch, sm**

15554 [Default *unset*]

15555 The functionality described for the **showmatch** edit option need not be supported on block-
15556 mode terminals or terminals with insufficient capabilities.

15557 If **showmatch** is set, in open or visual mode, when a `')'` or `'}'` is typed, if the matching `'('` or
15558 `'{'` is currently visible on the display, the matching `'('` or `'{'` shall be flagged moving the
15559 cursor to its location for an unspecified amount of time.

15560 **showmode**

15561 [Default *unset*]

15562 If **showmode** is set, in open or visual mode, the current mode that the editor is in shall be
15563 displayed on the last line of the display. Command mode and text input mode shall be
15564 differentiated; other unspecified modes and implementation-defined information may be
15565 displayed.

15566 **slowopen**

15567 [Default *unset*]

15568 If **slowopen** is set during open and visual text input modes, the editor shall not update portions
15569 of the display other than those display line columns that display the characters entered by the
15570 user (see Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026)).

15571 **tabstop, ts**

15572 [Default 8]

15573 The value of this edit option shall specify the column boundary used by a <tab> in the display
15574 (see autoprint, ap and Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026)).

15575 **taglength, tl**

15576 [Default zero]

15577 The value of this edit option shall specify the maximum number of characters that are
15578 considered significant in the user-specified tag name and in the tag name from the tags file. If
15579 the value is zero, all characters in both tag names shall be significant.

15580 **tags**

15581 [Default *see text*]

15582 The value of this edit option shall be a string of <blank>-delimited pathnames of files used by
15583 the **tag** command. The default value is unspecified.

15584 **term**

15585 [Default from the environment variable *TERM*]

15586 The value of this edit option shall be a string. The default shall be taken from the *TERM* variable
15587 in the environment. If the *TERM* environment variable is empty or null, the default is
15588 unspecified. The editor shall use the value of this edit option to determine the type of the display
15589 device.

15590 The results are unspecified if the user changes the value of the term edit option after editor
15591 initialization.

15592 **terse**

15593 [Default *unset*]

15594 If **terse** is set, error messages may be less verbose. However, except for this caveat, error
15595 messages are unspecified. Furthermore, not all error messages need change for different settings
15596 of this option.

15597 **warn**

15598 [Default *set*]

15599 If **warn** is set, and the contents of the edit buffer have been modified since they were last
15600 completely written, the editor shall write a warning message before certain **!** commands (see
15601 Escape (on page 390)).

15602 **window**

15603 [Default *see text*]

15604 A value used in open and visual mode, by the <control>-B and <control>-F commands, and, in
15605 visual mode, to specify the number of lines displayed when the screen is repainted.

15606 If the **−w** command-line option is not specified, the default value shall be set to the value of the
15607 *LINES* environment variable. If the *LINES* environment variable is empty or null, the default
15608 shall be the number of lines in the display minus 1.

15609 Setting the **window** edit option to zero or to a value greater than the number of lines in the
15610 display minus 1 (either explicitly or based on the **−w** option or the *LINES* environment variable)
15611 shall cause the **window** edit option to be set to the number of lines in the display minus 1.

15612 The baud rate of the terminal line may change the default in an implementation-defined manner.

15613 **wrapmargin, wm**

15614 [Default 0]

15615 If the value of this edit option is zero, it shall have no effect.

15616 If not in the POSIX locale, the effect of this edit option is implementation-defined.

15617 Otherwise, it shall specify a number of columns from the ending margin of the terminal.

15618 During open and visual text input modes, for each character for which any part of the character
15619 is displayed in a column that is less than **wrapmargin** columns from the ending margin of the
15620 display line, the editor shall behave as follows:

15621 1. If the character triggering this event is a <blank>, it, and all immediately preceding
15622 <blank>s on the current line entered during the execution of the current text input
15623 command, shall be discarded, and the editor shall behave as if the user had entered a
15624 single <newline> instead. In addition, if the next user-entered character is a <space>, it

shall be discarded as well.

2. Otherwise, if there are one or more <blank>s on the current line immediately preceding the last group of inserted non-<blank>s which was entered during the execution of the current text input command, the <blank>s shall be replaced as if the user had entered a single <newline> instead.

If the **autoindent** edit option is set, and the events described in 1. or 2. are performed, any <blank>s at or after the cursor in the current line shall be discarded.

The ending margin shall be determined by the system or overridden by the user, as described for *COLUMNS* in the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section and the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

wrapscan, ws

[Default *set*]

If **wrapscan** is set, searches (the *ex* **/** or **?** addresses, or open and visual mode **/**, **?**, **N**, and **n** commands) shall wrap around the beginning or end of the edit buffer; when unset, searches shall stop at the beginning or end of the edit buffer.

writeany, wa

[Default *unset*]

If **writeany** is set, some of the checks performed when executing the *ex* **write** commands shall be inhibited, as described in editor option **autowrite**.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

When any error is encountered and the standard input is not a terminal device file, *ex* shall not write the file or return to command or text input mode, and shall terminate with a non-zero exit status.

Otherwise, when an unrecoverable error is encountered, it shall be equivalent to a SIGHUP asynchronous event.

Otherwise, when an error is encountered, the editor shall behave as specified in Command Line Parsing in ex (on page 364).

APPLICATION USAGE

If a SIGSEGV signal is received while *ex* is saving a file, the file might not be successfully saved.

The **next** command can accept more than one file, so usage such as:

```
next 'ls [abc]*'
```

is valid; it would not be valid for the **edit** or **read** commands, for example, because they expect only one file and unspecified results occur.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *ex*/*vi* specification is based on the historical practice found in the 4 BSD and System V implementations of *ex* and *vi*.

A *restricted editor* (both the historical *red* utility and modifications to *ex*) were considered and rejected for inclusion. Neither option provided the level of security that users might expect.

It is recognized that *ex* visual mode and related features would be difficult, if not impossible, to implement satisfactorily on a block-mode terminal, or a terminal without any form of cursor addressing; thus, it is not a mandatory requirement that such features should work on all terminals. It is the intention, however, that an *ex* implementation should provide the full set of capabilities on all terminals capable of supporting them.

Options

The **−c** replacement for **+***command* was inspired by the **−e** option of *sed*. Historically, all such commands (see **edit** and **next** as well) were executed from the last line of the edit buffer. This meant, for example, that `"+/pattern"` would fail unless the **wrapscan** option was set. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. The +*command* option is no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations. Historically, some implementations restricted the *ex* commands that could be listed as part of the command line arguments. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit these restrictions.

In historical implementations of the editor, the **−R** option (and the **readonly** edit option) only prevented overwriting of files; appending to files was still permitted, mapping loosely into the *csh* **noclobber** variable. Some implementations, however, have not followed this semantic, and **readonly** does not permit appending either. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x follows the latter practice, believing that it is a more obvious and intuitive meaning of **readonly**.

The **−s** option suppresses all interactive user feedback and is useful for editing scripts in batch jobs. The list of specific effects is historical practice. The terminal type "incapable of supporting open and visual modes" has historically been named "dumb".

The **−t** option was required because the *ctags* utility appears in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and the option is available in all historical implementations of *ex*.

Historically, the *ex* and *vi* utilities accepted a **−x** option, which did encryption based on the algorithm found in the historical *crypt* utility. The **−x** option for encryption, and the associated *crypt* utility, were omitted because the algorithm used was not specifiable and the export control laws of some nations make it difficult to export cryptographic technology. In addition, it did not historically provide the level of security that users might expect.

Standard Input

An end-of-file condition is not equivalent to an end-of-file character. A common end-of-file character, <control>-D, is historically an *ex* command.

There was no maximum line length in historical implementations of *ex*. Specifically, as it was parsed in chunks, the addresses had a different maximum length than the filenames. Further, the maximum line buffer size was declared as BUFSIZ, which was different lengths on different systems. This version selected the value of {LINE_MAX} to impose a reasonable restriction on portable usage of *ex* and to aid test suite writers in their development of realistic tests that exercise this limit.

15706 **Input Files**

15707 It was an explicit decision by the standard developers that a <newline> be added to any file
15708 lacking one. It was believed that this feature of *ex* and *vi* was relied on by users in order to make
15709 text files lacking a trailing <newline> more portable. It is recognized that this will require a user-
15710 specified option or extension for implementations that permit *ex* and *vi* to edit files of type other
15711 than text if such files are not otherwise identified by the system. It was agreed that the ability to
15712 edit files of arbitrary type can be useful, but it was not considered necessary to mandate that an
15713 *ex* or *vi* implementation be required to handle files other than text files.

15714 The paragraph in the INPUT FILES section, "By default, ...", is intended to close a long-
15715 standing security problem in *ex* and *vi*; that of the "modeline" or "modelines" edit option. This
15716 feature allows any line in the first or last five lines of the file containing the strings `"ex:"` or
15717 `"vi:"` (and, apparently, `"ei:"` or `"vx:"`) to be a line containing editor commands, and *ex*
15718 interprets all the text up to the next `':'` or <newline> as a command. Consider the
15719 consequences, for example, of an unsuspecting user using *ex* or *vi* as the editor when replying to
15720 a mail message in which a line such as:

15721 `ex:! rm –rf :`

15722 appeared in the signature lines. The standard developers believed strongly that an editor should
15723 not by default interpret any lines of a file. Vendors are strongly urged to delete this feature from
15724 their implementations of *ex* and *vi*.

15725 **Asynchronous Events**

15726 The intention of the phrase "complete write" is that the entire edit buffer be written to stable
15727 storage. The note regarding temporary files is intended for implementations that use temporary
15728 files to back edit buffers unnamed by the user.

15729 Historically, SIGQUIT was ignored by *ex*, but was the equivalent of the **Q** command in visual
15730 mode; that is, it exited visual mode and entered *ex* mode. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits, but does
15731 not require, this behavior. Historically, SIGINT was often used by *vi* users to terminate text input
15732 mode (<control>-C is often easier to enter than <ESC>). Some implementations of *vi* alerted the
15733 terminal on this event, and some did not. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that SIGINT behave
15734 identically to <ESC>, and that the terminal not be alerted.

15735 Historically, suspending the *ex* editor during text input mode was similar to SIGINT, as
15736 completed lines were retained, but any partial line discarded, and the editor returned to
15737 command mode. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is silent on this issue; implementations are encouraged to
15738 follow historical practice, where possible.

15739 Historically, the *vi* editor did not treat SIGTSTP as an asynchronous event, and it was therefore
15740 impossible to suspend the editor in visual text input mode. There are two major reasons for this.
15741 The first is that SIGTSTP is a broadcast signal on UNIX systems, and the chain of events where
15742 the shell *exec*s an application that then *exec*s *vi* usually caused confusion for the terminal state if
15743 SIGTSTP was delivered to the process group in the default manner. The second was that most
15744 implementations of the UNIX *curses* package are not reentrant, and the receipt of SIGTSTP at the
15745 wrong time will cause them to crash. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is silent on this issue;
15746 implementations are encouraged to treat suspension as an asynchronous event if possible.

15747 Historically, modifications to the edit buffer made before SIGINT interrupted an operation were
15748 retained; that is, anywhere from zero to all of the lines to be modified might have been modified
15749 by the time the SIGINT arrived. These changes were not discarded by the arrival of SIGINT.
15750 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits this behavior, noting that the **undo** command is required to be able
15751 to undo these partially completed commands.

15752 The action taken for signals other than SIGINT, SIGCONT, SIGHUP, and SIGTERM is
15753 unspecified because some implementations attempt to save the edit buffer in a useful state when

other signals are received.

Standard Error

For *ex*/*vi*, diagnostic messages are those messages reported as a result of a failed attempt to invoke *ex* or *vi*, such as invalid options or insufficient resources, or an abnormal termination condition. Diagnostic messages should not be confused with the error messages generated by inappropriate or illegal user commands.

Initialization in ex and vi

If an *ex* command (other than **cd**, **chdir**, or **source**) has a filename argument, one or both of the alternate and current pathnames will be set. Informally, they are set as follows:

1. If the *ex* command is one that replaces the contents of the edit buffer, and it succeeds, the current pathname will be set to the filename argument (the first filename argument in the case of the **next** command) and the alternate pathname will be set to the previous current pathname, if there was one.
2. In the case of the file read/write forms of the **read** and **write** commands, if there is no current pathname, the current pathname will be set to the filename argument.
3. Otherwise, the alternate pathname will be set to the filename argument.

For example, **:edit foo** and **:recover foo**, when successful, set the current pathname, and, if there was a previous current pathname, the alternate pathname. The commands **:write**, **!command**, and **:edit** set neither the current or alternate pathnames. If the **:edit foo** command were to fail for some reason, the alternate pathname would be set. The **read** and **write** commands set the alternate pathname to their *file* argument, unless the current pathname is not set, in which case they set the current pathname to their *file* arguments. The alternate pathname was not historically set by the **:source** command. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. Implementations adding commands that take filenames as arguments are encouraged to set the alternate pathname as described here.

Historically, *ex* and *vi* read the **.exrc** file in the *$HOME* directory twice, if the editor was executed in the *$HOME* directory. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x prohibits this behavior.

Historically, the 4 BSD *ex* and *vi* read the *$HOME* and local **.exrc** files if they were owned by the real ID of the user, or the **sourceany** option was set, regardless of other considerations. This was a security problem because it is possible to put normal UNIX system commands inside a **.exrc** file. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify the **sourceany** option, and historical implementations are encouraged to delete it.

The **.exrc** files must be owned by the real ID of the user, and not writable by anyone other than the owner. The appropriate privileges exception is intended to permit users to acquire special privileges, but continue to use the **.exrc** files in their home directories.

System V Release 3.2 and later *vi* implementations added the option **[no]exrc**. The behavior is that local **.exrc** files are read-only if the **exrc** option is set. The default for the **exrc** option was off, so by default, local **.exrc** files were not read. The problem this was intended to solve was that System V permitted users to give away files, so there is no possible ownership or writeability test to ensure that the file is safe. This is still a security problem on systems where users can give away files, but there is nothing additional that IEEE Std 1003.1-200x can do. The implementation-defined exception is intended to permit groups to have local **.exrc** files that are shared by users, by creating pseudo-users to own the shared files.

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not mention system-wide *ex* and *vi* start-up files. While they exist in several implementations of *ex* and *vi*, they are not present in any implementations considered historical practice by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Implementations that have such files should use them only if they are owned by the real user ID or an appropriate user (for example, root on

UNIX systems) and if they are not writable by any user other than their owner. System-wide start-up files should be read before the *EXINIT* variable, **$HOME/.exrc**, or local **.exrc** files are evaluated.

Historically, any *ex* command could be entered in the *EXINIT* variable or the **.exrc** file, although ones requiring that the edit buffer already contain lines of text generally caused historical implementations of the editor to drop **core**. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that any *ex* command be permitted in the *EXINIT* variable and **.exrc** files, for simplicity of specification and consistency, although many of them will obviously fail under many circumstances.

The initialization of the contents of the edit buffer uses the phrase "the effect shall be" with regard to various *ex* commands. The intent of this phrase is that edit buffer contents loaded during the initialization phase not be lost; that is, loading the edit buffer should fail if the **.exrc** file read in the contents of a file and did not subsequently write the edit buffer. An additional intent of this phrase is to specify that the initial current line and column is set as specified for the individual *ex* commands.

Historically, the **−t** option behaved as if the tag search were a **+***command*; that is, it was executed from the last line of the file specified by the tag. This resulted in the search failing if the pattern was a forward search pattern and the **wrapscan** edit option was not set. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior, requiring that the search for the tag pattern be performed on the entire file, and, if not found, that the current line be set to a more reasonable location in the file.

Historically, the empty edit buffer presented for editing when a file was not specified by the user was unnamed. This is permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; however, implementations are encouraged to provide users a temporary filename for this buffer because it permits them the use of *ex* commands that use the current pathname during temporary edit sessions.

Historically, the file specified using the **−t** option was not part of the current argument list. This practice is permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; however, implementations are encouraged to include its name in the current argument list for consistency.

Historically, the **−c** command was generally not executed until a file that already exists was edited. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to this historical practice. Commands that could cause the **−c** command to be executed include the *ex* commands **edit**, **next**, **recover**, **rewind**, and **tag**, and the *vi* commands <control>-^ and <control>-]. Historically, reading a file into an edit buffer did not cause the **−c** command to be executed (even though it might set the current pathname) with the exception that it did cause the **−c** command to be executed if: the editor was in *ex* mode, the edit buffer had no current pathname, the edit buffer was empty, and no read commands had yet been attempted. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Historically, the **−r** option was the same as a normal edit session if there was no recovery information available for the file. This allowed users to enter:

```
vi −r *.c
```

and recover whatever files were recoverable. In some implementations, recovery was attempted only on the first file named, and the file was not entered into the argument list; in others, recovery was attempted for each file named. In addition, some historical implementations ignored **−r** if **−t** was specified or did not support command line *file* arguments with the **−t** option. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x disallows these special cases, and requires that recovery be attempted the first time each file is edited.

Historically, *vi* initialized the **'** and **'** marks, but *ex* did not. This meant that if the first command in *ex* mode was **visual** or if an *ex* command was executed first (for example, *vi* +10 *file*), *vi* was entered without the marks being initialized. Because the standard developers believed the marks to be generally useful, and for consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that they always be initialized if in open or visual mode, or if in *ex* mode and the edit

buffer is not empty. Not initializing it in *ex* mode if the edit buffer is empty is historical practice; however, it has always been possible to set (and use) marks in empty edit buffers in open and visual mode edit sessions.

Addressing

Historically, *ex* and *vi* accepted the additional addressing forms `'\/'` and `'\?'`. They were equivalent to `"//"` and `"??"`, respectively. They are not required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, mostly because nobody can remember whether they ever did anything different historically.

Historically, *ex* and *vi* permitted an address of zero for several commands, and permitted the % address in empty files for others. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires support for the former in the few commands where it makes sense, and disallows it otherwise. In addition, because IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that % be logically equivalent to `"1,$"`, it is also supported where it makes sense and disallowed otherwise.

Historically, the % address could not be followed by further addresses. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that additional addresses be supported.

All of the following are valid *addresses*:

`+++` Three lines after the current line.

`/re/-` One line before the next occurrence of *re*.

`-2` Two lines before the current line.

`3 ---- 2` Line one (note intermediate negative address).

`1 2 3` Line six.

Any number of addresses can be provided to commands taking addresses; for example, `"1,2,3,4,5p"` prints lines 4 and 5, because two is the greatest valid number of addresses accepted by the **print** command. This, in combination with the semicolon delimiter, permits users to create commands based on ordered patterns in the file. For example, the command **3;/foo/;+2print** will display the first line after line 3 that contains the pattern *foo*, plus the next two lines. Note that the address **3;** must be evaluated before being discarded because the search origin for the **/foo/** command depends on this.

Historically, values could be added to addresses by including them after one or more <blank>s; for example, **3 - 5p** wrote the seventh line of the file, and **/foo/ 5** was the same as **/foo/+5**. However, only absolute values could be added; for example, **5 /foo/** was an error. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. Address offsets are separately specified from addresses because they could historically be provided to visual mode search commands.

Historically, any missing addresses defaulted to the current line. This was true for leading and trailing comma-delimited addresses, and for trailing semicolon-delimited addresses. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires it for leading semicolon addresses as well.

Historically, *ex* and *vi* accepted the `'^'` character as both an address and as a flag offset for commands. In both cases it was identical to the `'-'` character. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require or prohibit this behavior.

Historically, the enhancements to basic regular expressions could be used in addressing; for example, `'~'`, `'\<'`, and `'\>'`. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice; that is, that regular expression usage be consistent, and that regular expression enhancements be supported wherever regular expressions are used.

15893 **Command Line Parsing in ex**

15894 Historical *ex* command parsing was even more complex than that described here.
15895 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires the subset of the command parsing that the standard developers
15896 believed was documented and that users could reasonably be expected to use in a portable
15897 fashion, and that was historically consistent between implementations. (The discarded
15898 functionality is obscure, at best.) Historical implementations will require changes in order to
15899 comply with IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; however, users are not expected to notice any of these
15900 changes. Most of the complexity in *ex* parsing is to handle three special termination cases:

15901 1. The **!**, **global**, **v**, and the filter versions of the **read** and **write** commands are delimited by
15902 <newline>s (they can contain vertical-line characters that are usually shell pipes).

15903 2. The **ex**, **edit**, **next**, and **visual** in open and visual mode commands all take *ex* commands,
15904 optionally containing vertical-line characters, as their first arguments.

15905 3. The **s** command takes a regular expression as its first argument, and uses the delimiting
15906 characters to delimit the command.

15907 Historically, vertical-line characters in the **+***command* argument of the **ex**, **edit**, **next**, **vi**, and
15908 **visual** commands, and in the *pattern* and *replacement* parts of the **s** command, did not delimit the
15909 command, and in the filter cases for **read** and **write**, and the **!**, **global**, and **v** commands, they did
15910 not delimit the command at all. For example, the following commands are all valid:

15911 ```
:edit +25 | s/abc/ABC/ file.c
15912 :s/ | /PIPE/
15913 :read !spell % | columnate
15914 :global/pattern/p | l
15915 :s/a/b/ | s/c/d | set
```

15916 Historically, empty or <blank> filled lines in **.exrc** files and **source**d files (as well as *EXINIT*
15917 variables and *ex* command scripts) were treated as default commands; that is, **print** commands.
15918 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifically requires that they be ignored when encountered in **.exrc** and
15919 **source**d files to eliminate a common source of new user error.

15920 Historically, *ex* commands with multiple adjacent (or <blank>-separated) vertical lines were
15921 handled oddly when executed from *ex* mode. For example, the command `|||` <carriage-return>,
15922 when the cursor was on line 1, displayed lines 2, 3, and 5 of the file. In addition, the command `|`
15923 would only display the line after the next line, instead of the next two lines. The former worked
15924 more logically when executed from *vi* mode, and displayed lines 2, 3, and 4.
15925 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires the *vi* behavior; that is, a single default command and line number
15926 increment for each command separator, and trailing <newline>s after vertical-line separators are
15927 discarded.

15928 Historically, *ex* permitted a single extra colon as a leading command character; for example,
15929 **:g/pattern/:p** was a valid command. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x generalizes this to require that any
15930 number of leading colon characters be stripped.

15931 Historically, any prefix of the **delete** command could be followed without intervening <blank>s
15932 by a flag character because in the command **d p**, *p* is interpreted as the buffer *p*.
15933 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

15934 Historically, the **k** command could be followed by the mark name without intervening <blank>s.
15935 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

15936 Historically, the **s** command could be immediately followed by flag and option characters; for
15937 example, **s/e/E/|s|sgc3p** was a valid command. However, flag characters could not stand alone;
15938 for example, the commands **sp** and **s l** would fail, while the command **sgp** and **s gl** would
15939 succeed. (Obviously, the `'#'` flag character was used as a delimiter character if it followed the
15940 command.) Another issue was that option characters had to precede flag characters even when
```

the command was fully specified; for example, the command **s/e/E/pg** would fail, while the command **s/e/E/gp** would succeed. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, the first command name that had a prefix matching the input from the user was the executed command; for example, **ve**, **ver**, and **vers** all executed the **version** command. Commands were in a specific order, however, so that **a** matched **append**, not **abbreviate**. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. The restriction on command search order for implementations with extensions is to avoid the addition of commands such that the historical prefixes would fail to work portably.

Historical implementations of *ex* and *vi* did not correctly handle multiple *ex* commands, separated by vertical-line characters, that entered or exited visual mode or the editor. Because implementations of *vi* exist that do not exhibit this failure mode, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit it.

The requirement that alphabetic command names consist of all following alphabetic characters up to the next non-alphabetic character means that alphabetic command names must be separated from their arguments by one or more non-alphabetic characters, normally a <blank> or `'!'` character, except as specified for the exceptions, the **delete**, **k**, and **s** commands.

Historically, the repeated execution of the *ex* default **print** commands (<control>-D, *eof*, <newline>, <carriage-return>) erased any prompting character and displayed the next lines without scrolling the terminal; that is, immediately below any previously displayed lines. This provided a cleaner presentation of the lines in the file for the user. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require this behavior because it may be impossible in some situations; however, implementations are strongly encouraged to provide this semantic if possible.

Historically, it was possible to change files in the middle of a command, and have the rest of the command executed in the new file; for example:

```
:edit +25 file.c | s/abc/ABC/ | 1
```

was a valid command, and the substitution was attempted in the newly edited file. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. The following commands are examples that exercise the *ex* parser:

```
echo 'foo | bar' > file1; echo 'foo/bar' > file2;
vi
:edit +1 | s/|/PIPE/ | w file1 | e file2 | 1 | s/\//SLASH/ | wq
```

Historically, there was no protection in editor implementations to avoid *ex* **global**, **v**, **@**, or * commands changing edit buffers during execution of their associated commands. Because this would almost invariably result in catastrophic failure of the editor, and implementations exist that do exhibit these problems, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that changing the edit buffer during a **global** or **v** command, or during a **@** or * command for which there will be more than a single execution, be an error. Implementations supporting multiple edit buffers simultaneously are strongly encouraged to apply the same semantics to switching between buffers as well.

The *ex* command quoting required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is a superset of the quoting in historical implementations of the editor. For example, it was not historically possible to escape a <blank> in a filename; for example, **:edit foo\\\ bar** would report that too many filenames had been entered for the edit command, and there was no method of escaping a <blank> in the first argument of an **edit**, **ex**, **next**, or **visual** command at all. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x extends historical practice, requiring that quoting behavior be made consistent across all *ex* commands, except for the **map**, **unmap**, **abbreviate**, and **unabbreviate** commands, which historically used <control>-V instead of backslashes for quoting. For those four commands, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Backslash quoting in *ex* is non-intuitive. Backslash escapes are ignored unless they escape a

15990 special character; for example, when performing *file* argument expansion, the string `"\\%"` is
15991 equivalent to `'\%'`, not `"\<current pathname>"`. This can be confusing for users because
15992 backslash is usually one of the characters that causes shell expansion to be performed, and
15993 therefore shell quoting rules must be taken into consideration. Generally, quoting characters are
15994 only considered if they escape a special character, and a quoting character must be provided for
15995 each layer of parsing for which the character is special. As another example, only a single
15996 backslash is necessary for the `'\l'` sequence in substitute replacement patterns, because the
15997 character `'l'` is not special to any parsing layer above it.

15998 <control>-V quoting in *ex* is slightly different from backslash quoting. In the four commands
15999 where <control>-V quoting applies (**abbreviate**, **unabbreviate**, **map**, and **unmap**), any character
16000 may be escaped by a <control>-V whether it would have a special meaning or not.
16001 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

16002 Historical implementations of the editor did not require delimiters within character classes to be
16003 escaped; for example, the command **:s/[/]//** on the string `"xxx/yyy"` would delete the `'//'` from
16004 the string. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x disallows this historical practice for consistency and because it
16005 places a large burden on implementations by requiring that knowledge of regular expressions be
16006 built into the editor parser.

16007 Historically, quoting <newline>s in *ex* commands was handled inconsistently. In most cases, the
16008 <newline> always terminated the command, regardless of any preceding escape character,
16009 because backslash characters did not escape <newline>s for most *ex* commands. However, some
16010 *ex* commands (for example, **s**, **map**, and **abbreviation**) permitted <newline>s to be escaped
16011 (although in the case of **map** and **abbreviation**, <control>-V characters escaped them instead of
16012 backslashes). This was true in not only the command line, but also **.exrc** and **source**d files. For
16013 example, the command:

16014 `map = foo<control-V><newline>bar`

16015 would succeed, although it was sometimes difficult to get the <control>-V and the inserted
16016 <newline> passed to the *ex* parser. For consistency and simplicity of specification,
16017 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that it be possible to escape <newline>s in *ex* commands at all
16018 times, using backslashes for most *ex* commands, and using <control>-V characters for the **map**
16019 and **abbreviation** commands. For example, the command **print**<newline>**list** is required to be
16020 parsed as the single command **print**<newline>**list**. While this differs from historical practice,
16021 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x developers believed it unlikely that any script or user depended on the
16022 historical behavior.

16023 Historically, an error in a command specified using the **–c** option did not cause the rest of the **–c**
16024 commands to be discarded. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x disallows this for consistency with mapped
16025 keys, the **@**, **global**, **source**, and **v** commands, the *EXINIT* environment variable, and the **.exrc**
16026 files.

16027 **Input Editing in ex**

16028 One of the common uses of the historical *ex* editor is over slow network connections. Editors that
16029 run in canonical mode can require far less traffic to and from, and far less processing on, the host
16030 machine, as well as more easily supporting block-mode terminals. For these reasons,
16031 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that *ex* be implemented using canonical mode input processing, as
16032 was done historically.

16033 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require the historical 4 BSD input editing characters "word erase"
16034 or "literal next". For this reason, it is unspecified how they are handled by *ex*, although they
16035 must have the required effect. Implementations that resolve them after the line has been ended
16036 using a <newline> or <control>-M character, and implementations that rely on the underlying
16037 system terminal support for this processing, are both conforming. Implementations are strongly
16038 urged to use the underlying system functionality, if at all possible, for compatibility with other

system text input interfaces.

Historically, when the *eof* character was used to decrement the **autoindent** level, the cursor moved to display the new end of the **autoindent** characters, but did not move the cursor to a new line, nor did it erase the <control>-D character from the line. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify that the cursor remain on the same line or that the rest of the line is erased; however, implementations are strongly encouraged to provide the best possible user interface; that is, the cursor should remain on the same line, and any <control>-D character on the line should be erased.

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require the historical 4 BSD input editing character "reprint", traditionally <control>-R, which redisplayed the current input from the user. For this reason, and because the functionality cannot be implemented after the line has been terminated by the user, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x makes no requirements about this functionality. Implementations are strongly urged to make this historical functionality available, if possible.

Historically, <control>-Q did not perform a literal next function in *ex*, as it did in *vi*. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice to avoid breaking historical *ex* scripts and **.exrc** files.

eof

Whether the *eof* character immediately modifies the **autoindent** characters in the prompt is left unspecified so that implementations can conform in the presence of systems that do not support this functionality. Implementations are encouraged to modify the line and redisplay it immediately, if possible.

The specification of the handling of the *eof* character differs from historical practice only in that *eof* characters are not discarded if they follow normal characters in the text input. Historically, they were always discarded.

Command Descriptions in ex

Historically, several commands (for example, **global**, **v**, **visual**, **s**, **write**, **wq**, **yank**, **!**, **<**, **>**, **&**, and **~**) were executable in empty files (that is, the default address(es) were 0), or permitted explicit addresses of 0 (for example, 0 was a valid address, or 0,0 was a valid range). Addresses of 0, or command execution in an empty file, make sense only for commands that add new text to the edit buffer or write commands (because users may wish to write empty files). IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires this behavior for such commands and disallows it otherwise, for consistency and simplicity of specification.

A count to an *ex* command has been historically corrected to be no greater than the last line in a file; for example, in a five-line file, the command **1,6print** would fail, but the command **1print300** would succeed. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, the use of flags in *ex* commands could be obscure. General historical practice was as described by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, but there were some special cases. For instance, the **list**, **number**, and **print** commands ignored trailing address offsets; for example, **3p +++#** would display line 3, and 3 would be the current line after the execution of the command. The **open** and **visual** commands ignored both the trailing offsets and the trailing flags. Also, flags specified to the **open** and **visual** commands interacted badly with the **list** edit option, and setting and then unsetting it during the open/visual session would cause *vi* to stop displaying lines in the specified format. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit any of these exceptions to the general rule.

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x uses the word *copy* in several places when discussing buffers. This is not intended to imply implementation.

Historically, *ex* users could not specify numeric buffers because of the ambiguity this would

cause; for example, in the command **3 delete 2**, it is unclear whether 2 is a buffer name or a *count*. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice by default, but does not preclude extensions.

Historically, the contents of the unnamed buffer were frequently discarded after commands that did not explicitly affect it; for example, when using the **edit** command to switch files. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

The *ex* utility did not historically have access to the numeric buffers, and, furthermore, deleting lines in *ex* did not modify their contents. For example, if, after doing a delete in *vi*, the user switched to *ex*, did another delete, and then switched back to *vi*, the contents of the numeric buffers would not have changed. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. Numeric buffers are described in the *ex* utility in order to confine the description of buffers to a single location in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The metacharacters that trigger shell expansion in *file* arguments match historical practice, as does the method for doing shell expansion. Implementations wishing to provide users with the flexibility to alter the set of metacharacters are encouraged to provide a **shellmeta** string edit option.

Historically, *ex* commands executed from *vi* refreshed the screen when it did not strictly need to do so; for example, **:!date > /dev/null** does not require a screen refresh because the output of the UNIX *date* command requires only a single line of the screen. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the screen be refreshed if it has been overwritten, but makes no requirements as to how an implementation should make that determination. Implementations may prompt and refresh the screen regardless.

Abbreviate

Historical practice was that characters that were entered as part of an abbreviation replacement were subject to **map** expansions, the **showmatch** edit option, further abbreviation expansions, and so on; that is, they were logically pushed onto the terminal input queue, and were not a simple replacement. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. Historical practice was that whenever a non-word character (that had not been escaped by a <control>-V) was entered after a word character, *vi* would check for abbreviations. The check was based on the type of the character entered before the word character of the word/non-word pair that triggered the check. The word character of the word/non-word pair that triggered the check and all characters entered before the trigger pair that were of that type were included in the check, with the exception of <blank>s, which always delimited the abbreviation.

This means that, for the abbreviation to work, the *lhs* must end with a word character, there can be no transitions from word to non-word characters (or *vice versa*) other than between the last and next-to-last characters in the *lhs*, and there can be no <blank>s in the *lhs*. In addition, because of the historical quoting rules, it was impossible to enter a literal <control>-V in the *lhs*. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. Historical implementations did not inform users when abbreviations that could never be used were entered; implementations are strongly encouraged to do so.

For example, the following abbreviations will work:

```
:ab (p  REPLACE
:ab p   REPLACE
:ab ((p REPLACE
```

The following abbreviations will not work:

```
:ab (   REPLACE
:ab (pp REPLACE
```

Historical practice is that words on the *vi* colon command line were subject to abbreviation

expansion, including the arguments to the **abbrev** (and more interestingly) the **unabbrev** command. Because there are implementations that do not do abbreviation expansion for the first argument to those commands, this is permitted, but not required, by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. However, the following sequence:

```
:ab foo bar
:ab foo baz
```

resulted in the addition of an abbreviation of `"baz"` for the string `"bar"` in historical *ex*/*vi*, and the sequence:

```
:ab foo1 bar
:ab foo2 bar
:unabbreviate foo2
```

deleted the abbreviation `"foo1"`, not `"foo2"`. These behaviors are not permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because they clearly violate the expectations of the user.

It was historical practice that <control>-V, not backslash, characters be interpreted as escaping subsequent characters in the **abbreviate** command. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice; however, it should be noted that an abbreviation containing a <blank> will never work.

Append

Historically, any text following a vertical-line command separator after an **append**, **change**, or **insert** command became part of the insert text. For example, in the command:

```
:g/pattern/append|stuff1
```

a line containing the text `"stuff1"` would be appended to each line matching pattern. It was also historically valid to enter:

```
:append|stuff1
stuff2
.
```

and the text on the *ex* command line would be appended along with the text inserted after it. There was an historical bug, however, that the user had to enter two terminating lines (the `'.'` lines) to terminate text input mode in this case. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice, but disallows the historical need for multiple terminating lines.

Change

See the RATIONALE for the **append** command. Historical practice for cursor positioning after the change command when no text is input, is as described in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. However, one System V implementation is known to have been modified such that the cursor is positioned on the first address specified, and not on the line before the first address. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x disallows this modification for consistency.

Historically, the **change** command did not support buffer arguments, although some implementations allow the specification of an optional buffer. This behavior is neither required nor disallowed by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Change Directory

A common extension in *ex* implementations is to use the elements of a **cdpath** edit option as prefix directories for *path* arguments to **chdir** that are relative pathnames and that do not have `'.'` or `".."` as their first component. Elements in the **cdpath** edit option are colon-separated. The initial value of the **cdpath** edit option is the value of the shell *CDPATH* environment variable. This feature was not included in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because it does not exist in any of the implementations considered historical practice.

Copy

Historical implementations of *ex* permitted copies to lines inside of the specified range; for example, **:2,5copy3** was a valid command. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Delete

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires support for the historical parsing of a **delete** command followed by flags, without any intervening <blank>s. For example:

1dp Deletes the first line and prints the line that was second.

1delep As for **1dp**.

1d Deletes the first line, saving it in buffer *p*.

1d p1l (Pee-one-ell.) Deletes the first line, saving it in buffer *p*, and listing the line that was second.

Edit

Historically, any *ex* command could be entered as a **+***command* argument to the **edit** command, although some (for example, **insert** and **append**) were known to confuse historical implementations. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that any command be supported as an argument to the **edit** command.

Historically, the command argument was executed with the current line set to the last line of the file, regardless of whether the **edit** command was executed from visual mode or not. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, the **+***command* specified to the **edit** and **next** commands was delimited by the first <blank>, and there was no way to quote them. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the usual *ex* backslash quoting be provided.

Historically, specifying the **+***command* argument to the edit command required a filename to be specified as well; for example, **:edit +100** would always fail. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this usage to fail for that reason.

Historically, only the cursor position of the last file edited was remembered by the editor. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that this be supported; however, implementations are permitted to remember and restore the cursor position for any file previously edited.

File

Historical versions of the *ex* editor **file** command displayed a current line and number of lines in the edit buffer of 0 when the file was empty, while the *vi* <control>-G command displayed a current line and number of lines in the edit buffer of 1 in the same situation. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this discrepancy, instead requiring that a message be displayed indicating that the file is empty.

Global

The two-pass operation of the **global** and **v** commands is not intended to imply implementation, only the required result of the operation.

The current line and column are set as specified for the individual *ex* commands. This requirement is cumulative; that is, the current line and column must track across all the commands executed by the **global** or **v** commands.

Insert

See the RATIONALE for the **append** command.

Historically, **insert** could not be used with an address of zero; that is, not when the edit buffer was empty. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requir

```
:map ab abcd
```

the characters "ab" were used as is and were not remapped, but the characters "cd" were mapped if appropriate. This can cause infinite loops in the *vi* mapping mechanisms. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice, and that such loops be interruptible.

Text input maps had the same problems with expanding the *lhs* for the *ex* **map!** and **unmap!** command as did the *ex* **abbreviate** and **unabbreviate** commands. See the RATIONALE for the *ex* **abbreviate** command. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires similar modification of some historical practice for the **map** and **unmap** commands, as described for the **abbreviate** and **unabbreviate** commands.

Historically, **map**s that were subsets of other **map**s behaved differently depending on the order in which they were defined. For example:

```
:map! ab     short
:map! abc    long
```

would always translate the characters "ab" to "short", regardless of how fast the characters "abc" were entered. If the entry order was reversed:

```
:map! abc    long
:map! ab     short
```

the characters "ab" would cause the editor to pause, waiting for the completing 'c' character, and the characters might never be mapped to "short". For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the shortest match be used at all times.

The length of time the editor spends waiting for the characters to complete the *lhs* is unspecified because the timing capabilities of systems are often inexact and variable, and it may depend on other factors such as the speed of the connection. The time should be long enough for the user to be able to complete the sequence, but not long enough for the user to have to wait. Some implementations of *vi* have added a **keytime** option, which permits users to set the number of 0,1 seconds the editor waits for the completing characters. Because mapped terminal function and cursor keys tend to start with an <ESC> character, and <ESC> is the key ending *vi* text input mode, **map**s starting with <ESC> characters are generally exempted from this timeout period, or, at least timed out differently.

Mark

Historically, users were able to set the "previous context" marks explicitly. In addition, the *ex* commands '' and `` and the *vi* commands '', `, ``, and '' all referred to the same mark. In addition, the previous context marks were not set if the command, with which the address setting the mark was associated, failed. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. Historically, if marked lines were deleted, the mark was also deleted, but would reappear if the change was undone. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

The description of the special events that set the ' and ' marks matches historical practice. For example, historically the command **/a/,/b/** did not set the ' and ' marks, but the command **/a/,/b/delete** did.

16292 **Next**

16293 Historically, any *ex* command could be entered as a **+***command* argument to the **next** command,
16294 although some (for example, **insert** and **append**) were known to confuse historical
16295 implementations. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that any command be permitted and that it
16296 behave as specified. The **next** command can accept more than one file, so usage such as:

16297 `next 'ls [abc] '`

16298 is valid; it need not be valid for the **edit** or **read** commands, for example, because they expect
16299 only one filename.

16300 Historically, the **next** command behaved differently from the **:rewind** command in that it
16301 ignored the force flag if the **autowrite** flag was set. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does
16302 not permit this behavior.

16303 Historically, the **next** command positioned the cursor as if the file had never been edited before,
16304 regardless. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior, for consistency with the **edit**
16305 command.

16306 Implementations wanting to provide a counterpart to the **next** command that edited the
16307 previous file have used the command **prev[ious],** which takes no *file* argument.
16308 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require this command.

16309 **Open**

16310 Historically, the **open** command would fail if the **open** edit option was not set.
16311 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not mention the **open** edit option and does not require this behavior.
16312 Some historical implementations do not permit entering open mode from open or visual mode,
16313 only from *ex* mode. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

16314 Historically, entering open mode from the command line (that is, *vi* **+open**) resulted in
16315 anomalous behaviors; for example, the *ex* file and *set* commands, and the *vi* command
16316 <control>-G did not work. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

16317 Historically, the **open** command only permitted `'/'` characters to be used as the search pattern
16318 delimiter. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the search delimiters used by the **s**,
16319 **global**, and **v** commands be accepted as well.

16320 **Preserve**

16321 The **preserve** command does not historically cause the file to be considered unmodified for the
16322 purposes of future commands that may exit the editor. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires
16323 conformance to historical practice.

16324 Historical documentation stated that mail was not sent to the user when preserve was executed;
16325 however, historical implementations did send mail in this case. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires
16326 conformance to the historical implementations.

16327 **Print**

16328 The writing of NUL by the **print** command is not specified as a special case because the standard
16329 developers did not want to require *ex* to support NUL characters. Historically, characters were
16330 displayed using the ARPA standard mappings, which are as follows:

16331 1. Printable characters are left alone.

16332 2. Control characters less than \177 are represented as `'^'` followed by the character offset
16333 from the `'@'` character in the ASCII map; for example, \007 is represented as `'^G'`.

3. \177 is represented as `'^'` followed by `'?'`.

The display of characters having their eighth bit set was less standard. Existing implementations use hex (0x00), octal (\000), and a meta-bit display. (The latter displayed bytes that had their eighth bit set as the two characters `"M-"` followed by the seven-bit display as described above.) The latter probably has the best claim to historical practice because it was used for the **–v** option of 4 BSD and 4 BSD-derived versions of the *cat* utility since 1980.

No specific display format is required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Explicit dependence on the ASCII character set has been avoided where possible, hence the use of the phrase an "implementation-defined multi-character sequence" for the display of non-printable characters in preference to the historical usage of, for instance, `"^I"` for the <tab>. Implementations are encouraged to conform to historical practice in the absence of any strong reason to diverge.

Historically, all *ex* commands beginning with the letter `'p'` could be entered using capitalized versions of the commands; for example, **P[rint]**, **Pre[serve]**, and **Pu[t]** were all valid command names. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits, but does not require, this historical practice because capital forms of the commands are used by some implementations for other purposes.

Put

Historically, an *ex* **put** command, executed from open or visual mode, was the same as the open or visual mode **P** command, if the buffer was named and was cut in character mode, and the same as the **p** command if the buffer was named and cut in line mode. If the unnamed buffer was the source of the text, the entire line from which the text was taken was usually **put**, and the buffer was handled as if in line mode, but it was possible to get extremely anomalous behavior. In addition, using the **Q** command to switch into *ex* mode, and then doing a **put** often resulted in errors as well, such as appending text that was unrelated to the (supposed) contents of the buffer. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit these behaviors. All *ex* **put** commands are required to operate in line mode, and the contents of the buffers are not altered by changing the mode of the editor.

Read

Historically, an *ex* **read** command executed from open or visual mode, executed in an empty file, left an empty line as the first line of the file. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior. Historically, a **read** in open or visual mode from a program left the cursor at the last line read in, not the first. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Historical implementations of *ex* were unable to undo **read** commands that read from the output of a program. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Historically, the *ex* and *vi* message after a successful **read** or **write** command specified "characters", not "bytes". IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the number of bytes be displayed, not the number of characters, because it may be difficult in multi-byte implementations to determine the number of characters read. Implementations are encouraged to clarify the message displayed to the user.

Historically, reads were not permitted on files other than type regular, except that FIFO files could be read (probably only because they did not exist when *ex* and *vi* were originally written). Because the historical *ex* evaluated **read!** and **read !** equivalently, there can be no optional way to force the read. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits, but does not require, this behavior.

Recover

Some historical implementations of the editor permitted users to recover the edit buffer contents from a previous edit session, and then exit without saving those contents (or explicitly discarding them). The intent of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x in requiring that the edit buffer be treated as already modified is to prevent this user error.

Rewind

Historical implementations supported the **rewind** command when the user was editing the first file in the list; that is, the file that the **rewind** command would edit. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Substitute

Historically, *ex* accepted an **r** option to the **s** command. The effect of the **r** option was to use the last regular expression used in any command as the pattern, the same as the ~ command. The **r** option is not required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Historically, the **c** and **g** options were toggled; for example, the command **:s/abc/def/** was the same as **s/abc/def/ccccgggg**. For simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

The tilde command is often used to replace the last search RE. For example, in the sequence:

```
s/red/blue/
/green
~
```

the ~ command is equivalent to:

```
s/green/blue/
```

Historically, *ex* accepted all of the following forms:

```
s/abc/def/
s/abc/def
s/abc/
s/abc
```

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to this historical practice.

The **s** command presumes that the '^' character only occupies a single column in the display. Much of the *ex* and *vi* specification presumes that the <space> only occupies a single column in the display. There are no known character sets for which this is not true.

Historically, the final column position for the substitute commands was based on previous column movements; a search for a pattern followed by a substitution would leave the column position unchanged, while a 0 command followed by a substitution would change the column position to the first non-<blank>. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the final column position always be set to the first non-<blank>.

Set

Historical implementations redisplayed all of the options for each occurrence of the **all** keyword. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits, but does not require, this behavior.

Tag

No requirement is made as to where *ex* and *vi* shall look for the file referenced by the tag entry. Historical practice has been to look for the path found in the **tags** file, based on the current directory. A useful extension found in some implementations is to look based on the directory containing the tags file that held the entry, as well. No requirement is made as to which reference for the tag in the tags file is used. This is deliberate, in order to permit extensions such as multiple entries in a tags file for a tag.

Because users often specify many different tags files, some of which need not be relevant or exist at any particular time, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that error messages about problem tags files be displayed only if the requested tag is not found, and then, only once for each time that the **tag** edit option is changed.

The requirement that the current edit buffer be unmodified is only necessary if the file indicated by the tag entry is not the same as the current file (as defined by the current pathname). Historically, the file would be reloaded if the filename had changed, as well as if the filename was different from the current pathname. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior, requiring that the name be the only factor in the decision.

Historically, *vi* only searched for tags in the current file from the current cursor to the end of the file, and therefore, if the **wrapscan** option was not set, tags occurring before the current cursor were not found. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x considers this a bug, and implementations are required to search for the first occurrence in the file, regardless.

Undo

The **undo** description deliberately uses the word "modified". The **undo** command is not intended to undo commands that replace the contents of the edit buffer, such as **edit**, **next**, **tag**, or **recover**.

Cursor positioning after the **undo** command was inconsistent in the historical *vi*, sometimes attempting to restore the original cursor position (**global**, **undo**, and **v** commands), and sometimes, in the presence of maps, placing the cursor on the last line added or changed instead of the first. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires a simplified behavior for consistency and simplicity of specification.

Version

The **version** command cannot be exactly specified since there is no widely-accepted definition of what the version information should contain. Implementations are encouraged to do something reasonably intelligent.

Write

Historically, the *ex* and *vi* message after a successful **read** or **write** command specified "characters", not "bytes". IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the number of bytes be displayed, not the number of characters because it may be difficult in multi-byte implementations to determine the number of characters written. Implementations are encouraged to clarify the message displayed to the user.

Implementation-defined tests are permitted so that implementations can make additional checks; for example, for locks or file modification times.

Historically, attempting to append to a nonexistent file caused an error. It has been left unspecified in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to permit implementations to let the **write** succeed, so that the append semantics are similar to those of the historical *csh*.

Historical *vi* permitted empty edit buffers to be written. However, since the way *vi* got around

dealing with "empty" files was to always have a line in the edit buffer, no matter what, it wrote them as files of a single, empty line. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Historically, *ex* restored standard output and standard error to their values as of when *ex* was invoked, before writes to programs were performed. This could disturb the terminal configuration as well as be a security issue for some terminals. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this, requiring that the program output be captured and displayed as if by the *ex* **print** command.

Adjust Window

Historically, the line count was set to the value of the **scroll** option if the type character was end-of-file. This feature was broken on most historical implementations long ago, however, and is not documented anywhere. For this reason, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is resolutely silent.

Historically, the **z** command was <blank>-sensitive and **z +** and **z −** did different things than **z+** and **z−** because the type could not be distinguished from a flag. (The commands **z .** and **z =** were historically invalid.) IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to this historical practice.

Historically, the **z** command was further <blank>-sensitive in that the *count* could not be <blank>-delimited; for example, the commands **z= 5** and **z− 5** were also invalid. Because the *count* is not ambiguous with respect to either the type character or the flags, this is not permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Escape

Historically, *ex* filter commands only read the standard output of the commands, letting standard error appear on the terminal as usual. The *vi* utility, however, read both standard output and standard error. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires the latter behavior for both *ex* and *vi*, for consistency.

Shift Left and Shift Right

Historically, it was possible to add shift characters to increase the effect of the command; for example, **<<<** outdented (or **>>>** indented) the lines 3 levels of indentation instead of the default 1. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

<control>-D

Historically, the <control>-D command erased the prompt, providing the user with an unbroken presentation of lines from the edit buffer. This is not required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; implementations are encouraged to provide it if possible. Historically, the <control>-D command took, and then ignored, a *count*. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Write Line Number

Historically, the *ex* **=** command, when executed in *ex* mode in an empty edit buffer, reported 0, and from open or visual mode, reported 1. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

16499 **Execute**

16500 Historically, *ex* did not correctly handle the inclusion of text input commands (that is, **append**,
16501 **insert**, and **change**) in executed buffers. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this exclusion for
16502 consistency.

16503 Historically, the logical contents of the buffer being executed did not change if the buffer itself
16504 were modified by the commands being executed; that is, buffer execution did not support self-
16505 modifying code. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

16506 Historically, the @ command took a range of lines, and the @ buffer was executed once per line,
16507 with the current line (`'.'`) set to each specified line. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance
16508 to historical practice.

16509 Some historical implementations did not notice if errors occurred during buffer execution. This,
16510 coupled with the ability to specify a range of lines for the *ex* @ command, makes it trivial to
16511 cause them to drop **core**. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that implementations stop buffer
16512 execution if any error occurs, if the specified line doesn't exist, or if the contents of the edit
16513 buffer itself are replaced (for example, the buffer executes the *ex* **:edit** command).

16514 **Regular Expressions in ex**

16515 Historical practice is that the characters in the replacement part of the last **s** command—that is,
16516 those matched by entering a `'~'` in the regular expression—were not further expanded by the
16517 regular expression engine. So, if the characters contained the string `"a.,"` they would match
16518 `'a'` followed by `".,"` and not `'a'` followed by any character. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires
16519 conformance to historical practice.

16520 **Edit Options in ex**

16521 The following paragraphs describe the historical behavior of some edit options that were not, for
16522 whatever reason, included in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Implementations are strongly encouraged to
16523 only use these names if the functionality described here is fully supported.

16524 **extended** The **extended** edit option has been used in some implementations of *vi* to provide
16525 extended regular expressions instead of basic regular expressions This option was
16526 omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because it is not widespread historical practice.

16527 **flash** The **flash** edit option historically caused the screen to flash instead of beeping on
16528 error. This option was omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because it is not found in
16529 some historical implementations.

16530 **hardtabs** The **hardtabs** edit option historically defined the number of columns between
16531 hardware tab settings. This option was omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because
16532 it was believed to no longer be generally useful.

16533 **modeline** The **modeline** (sometimes named **modelines**) edit option historically caused *ex* or
16534 *vi* to read the five first and last lines of the file for editor commands. This option is
16535 a security problem, and vendors are strongly encouraged to delete it from
16536 historical implementations.

16537 **open** The **open** edit option historically disallowed the *ex* **open** and **visual** commands.
16538 This edit option was omitted because these commands are required by
16539 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

16540 **optimize** The **optimize** edit option historically expedited text throughput by setting the
16541 terminal to not do automatic <carriage-return>s when printing more than one
16542 logical line of output. This option was omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because
16543 it was intended for terminals without addressable cursors, which are rarely, if ever,
16544 still used.

ruler The **ruler** edit option has been used in some implementations of *vi* to present a current row/column ruler for the user. This option was omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because it is not widespread historical practice.

sourceany The **sourceany** edit option historically caused *ex* or *vi* to source start-up files that were owned by users other than the user running the editor. This option is a security problem, and vendors are strongly encouraged to remove it from their implementations.

timeout The **timeout** edit option historically enabled the (now standard) feature of only waiting for a short period before returning keys that could be part of a macro. This feature was omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because its behavior is now standard, it is not widely useful, and it was rarely documented.

verbose The **verbose** edit option has been used in some implementations of *vi* to cause *vi* to output error messages for common errors; for example, attempting to move the cursor past the beginning or end of the line instead of only alerting the screen. (The historical *vi* only alerted the terminal and presented no message for such errors. The historical editor option **terse** did not select when to present error messages, it only made existing error messages more or less verbose.) This option was omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because it is not widespread historical practice; however, implementors are encouraged to use it if they wish to provide error messages for naive users.

wraplen The **wraplen** edit option has been used in some implementations of *vi* to specify an automatic margin measured from the left margin instead of from the right margin. This is useful when multiple screen sizes are being used to edit a single file. This option was omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because it is not widespread historical practice; however, implementors are encouraged to use it if they add this functionality.

autoindent, ai

Historically, the command **0a** did not do any autoindentation, regardless of the current indentation of line 1. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that any indentation present in line 1 be used.

autoprint, ap

Historically, the **autoprint** edit option was not completely consistent or based solely on modifications to the edit buffer. Exceptions were the **read** command (when reading from a file, but not from a filter), the **append**, **change**, **insert**, **global**, and **v** commands, all of which were not affected by **autoprint**, and the **tag** command, which was affected by **autoprint**. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, the **autoprint** option only applied to the last of multiple commands entered using vertical-bar delimiters; for example, **delete** <newline> was affected by **autoprint**, but **delete | version** <newline> was not. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

16585 **autowrite, aw**

16586 Appending the '!' character to the *ex* **next** command to avoid performing an automatic write
16587 was not supported in historical implementations. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the
16588 behavior match the other *ex* commands for consistency.

16589 **ignorecase, ic**

16590 Historical implementations of case-insensitive matching (the **ignorecase** edit option) lead to
16591 counterintuitive situations when uppercase characters were used in range expressions.
16592 Historically, the process was as follows:

16593 1. Take a line of text from the edit buffer.

16594 2. Convert uppercase to lowercase in text line.

16595 3. Convert uppercase to lowercase in regular expressions, except in character class
16596 specifications.

16597 4. Match regular expressions against text.

16598 This would mean that, with **ignorecase** in effect, the text:

16599 `The cat sat on the mat`

16600 would be matched by

16601 `/^the/`

16602 but not by:

16603 `/^[A–Z]he/`

16604 For consistency with other commands implementing regular expressions, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x
16605 does not permit this behavior.

16606 **paragraphs, para**

16607 The ISO POSIX-2:1993 standard made the default **paragraphs** and **sections** edit options
16608 implementation-defined, arguing they were historically oriented to the UNIX system *troff* text
16609 formatter, and a "portable user" could use the {, }, [[,]], **(**, and **)** commands in open or visual
16610 mode and have the cursor stop in unexpected places. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies their values
16611 in the POSIX locale because the unusual grouping (they only work when grouped into two
16612 characters at a time) means that they cannot be used for general-purpose movement, regardless.

16613 **readonly**

16614 Implementations are encouraged to provide the best possible information to the user as to the
16615 read-only status of the file, with the exception that they should not consider the current special
16616 privileges of the process. This provides users with a safety net because they must force the
16617 overwrite of read-only files, even when running with additional privileges.

16618 The **readonly** edit option specification largely conforms to historical practice. The only
16619 difference is that historical implementations did not notice that the user had set the **readonly**
16620 edit option in cases where the file was already marked read-only for some reason, and would
16621 therefore reinitialize the **readonly** edit option the next time the contents of the edit buffer were
16622 replaced. This behavior is disallowed by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

report

The requirement that lines copied to a buffer interact differently than deleted lines is historical practice. For example, if the **report** edit option is set to 3, deleting 3 lines will cause a report to be written, but 4 lines must be copied before a report is written.

The requirement that the *ex* **global**, **v**, **open**, **undo**, and **visual** commands present reports based on the total number of lines added or deleted during the command execution, and that commands executed by the **global** and **v** commands not present reports, is historical practice. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x extends historical practice by requiring that buffer execution be treated similarly. The reasons for this are two-fold. Historically, only the report by the last command executed from the buffer would be seen by the user, as each new report would overwrite the last. In addition, the standard developers believed that buffer execution had more in common with **global** and **v** commands than it did with other *ex* commands, and should behave similarly, for consistency and simplicity of specification.

showmatch, sm

The length of time the cursor spends on the matching character is unspecified because the timing capabilities of systems are often inexact and variable. The time should be long enough for the user to notice, but not long enough for the user to become annoyed. Some implementations of *vi* have added a **matchtime** option that permits users to set the number of 0,1 second intervals the cursor pauses on the matching character.

showmode

The **showmode** option has been used in some historical implementations of *ex* and *vi* to display the current editing mode when in open or visual mode. The editing modes have generally included "command" and "input", and sometimes other modes such as "replace'

'il mtherts3.1 '

16669 **tags**

16670 The default path for tags files is left unspecified as implementations may have their own **tags**
16671 implementations that do not correspond to the historical ones. The default **tags** option value
16672 should probably at least include the file **./tags**.

16673 **term**

16674 Historical implementations of *ex* and *vi* ignored changes to the **term** edit option after the initial
16675 terminal information was loaded. This is permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; however,
16676 implementations are encouraged to permit the user to modify their terminal type at any time.

16677 **terse**

16678 Historically, the **terse** edit option optionally provided a shorter, less descriptive error message,
16679 for some error messages. This is permitted, but not required, by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.
16680 Historically, most common visual mode errors (for example, trying to move the cursor past the
16681 end of a line) did not result in an error message, but simply alerted the terminal.
16682 Implementations wishing to provide messages for novice users are urged to do so based on the
16683 **edit** option **verbose**, and not **terse**.

16684 **window**

16685 In historical implementations, the default for the **window** edit option was based on the baud
16686 rate as follows:

16687 1. If the baud rate was less than 1 200, the **edit** option **w300** set the window value; for
16688 example, the line:

16689 `set w300=12`

16690 would set the window option to 12 if the baud rate was less than 1 200.

16691 2. If the baud rate was equal to 1 200, the **edit** option **w1200** set the window value.

16692 3. If the baud rate was greater than 1 200, the **edit** option **w9600** set the window value.

16693 The **w300**, **w1200**, and **w9600** options do not appear in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because of their
16694 dependence on specific baud rates.

16695 In historical implementations, the size of the window displayed by various commands was
16696 related to, but not necessarily the same as, the **window** edit option. For example, the size of the
16697 window was set by the *ex* command **visual 10**, but it did not change the value of the **window**
16698 edit option. However, changing the value of the **window** edit option did change the number of
16699 lines that were displayed when the screen was repainted. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit
16700 this behavior in the interests of consistency and simplicity of specification, and requires that all
16701 commands that change the number of lines that are displayed do it by setting the value of the
16702 **window** edit option.

16703 **wrapmargin, wm**

16704 Historically, the **wrapmargin** option did not affect maps inserting characters that also had
16705 associated *counts*; for example **:map K 5aABC DEF**. Unfortunately, there are widely used
16706 maps that depend on this behavior. For consistency and simplicity of specification,
16707 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

16708 Historically, **wrapmargin** was calculated using the column display width of all characters on the
16709 screen. For example, an implementation using `"^I"` to represent <tab>s when the **list** edit
16710 option was set, where `'^'` and `'I'` each took up a single column on the screen, would calculate
16711 the **wrapmargin** based on a value of 2 for each <tab>. The **number** edit option similarly
16712 changed the effective length of the line as well. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to

historical practice.

Previous versions of this standard allowed for implementations with bytes other than eight bits, but this has been modified in this version.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48), *ctags*, *ed*, *sed*, *sh*, *stty*, *vi*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *access*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed, removing the **+***command* and – options.

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- In the **map** command description, the sequence **#***digit* is added.
- The **directory**, **edcompatible**, **redraw**, and **slowopen** edit options are added.

The *ex* utility is extensively changed for alignment with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard. This includes changes as a result of the IEEE PASC Interpretations 1003.2 #31, #38, #49, #50, #51, #52, #55, #56, #57, #61, #62, #63, #64, #65, and #78.

The **–l** option is removed.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/23 is applied, correcting a URL.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/8 is applied, making an editorial correction in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/9 is applied, removing text describing behavior on systems with bytes consisting of more than eight bits.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying the behavior if an operand is '–'.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #036 is applied, clarifying the behavior for BREs.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

16746 **NAME**

16747 expand — convert tabs to spaces

16748 **SYNOPSIS**

16749 `expand [–t tablist] [file...]`

16750 **DESCRIPTION**

16751 The *expand* utility shall write files or the standard input to the standard output with <tab>s
16752 replaced with one or more <space>s needed to pad to the next tab stop. Any <backspace>s shall
16753 be copied to the output and cause the column position count for tab stop calculations to be
16754 decremented; the column position count shall not be decremented below zero.

16755 **OPTIONS**

16756 The *expand* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
16757 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

16758 The following option shall be supported:

16759 **–t** *tablist* Specify the tab stops. The application shall ensure that the argument *tablist* consists
16760 of either a single positive decimal integer or a list of tabstops. If a single number is
16761 given, tabs shall be set that number of column positions apart instead of the
16762 default 8.

16763 If a list of tabstops is given, the application shall ensure that it consists of a list of
16764 two or more positive decimal integers, separated by <blank>s or commas, in
16765 ascending order. The tabs shall be set at those specific column positions. Each tab
16766 stop *N* shall be an integer value greater than zero, and the list is in strictly
16767 ascending order. This is taken to mean that, from the start of a line of output,
16768 tabbing to position *N* shall cause the next character output to be in the (*N*+1)th
16769 column position on that line.

16770 In the event of *expand* having to process a <tab> at a position beyond the last of
16771 those specified in a multiple tab-stop list, the <tab> shall be replaced by a single
16772 <space> in the output.

16773 **OPERANDS**

16774 The following operand shall be supported:

16775 *file* The pathname of a text file to be used as input.

16776 **STDIN**

16777 See the INPUT FILES section.

16778 **INPUT FILES**

16779 Input files shall be text files.

16780 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

16781 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *expand*:

16782 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
16783 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
16784 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
16785 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

16786 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
16787 internationalization variables.

16788 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
16789 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
16790 arguments and input files), the processing of <tab>s and <space>s, and for the
16791 determination of the width in column positions each character would occupy on
16792 an output device.

16793 *LC_MESSAGES*
16794 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
16795 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

16796 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

16797 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
16798 Default.

16799 **STDOUT**
16800 The standard output shall be equivalent to the input files with <tab>s converted into the
16801 appropriate number of <space>s.

16802 **STDERR**
16803 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

16804 **OUTPUT FILES**
16805 None.

16806 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
16807 None.

16808 **EXIT STATUS**
16809 The following exit values shall be returned:

16810 0 Successful completion

16811 >0 An error occurred.

16812 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
16813 The *expand* utility shall terminate with an error message and non-zero exit status upon
16814 encountering difficulties accessing one of the *file* operands.

16815 **APPLICATION USAGE**
16816 None.

16817 **EXAMPLES**
16818 None.

16819 **RATIONALE**
16820 The *expand* utility is useful for preprocessing text files (before sorting, looking at specific
16821 columns, and so on) that contain <tab>s.

16822 See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.103, Column Position.

16823 The *tablist* option-argument consists of integers in ascending order. Utility Syntax Guideline 8
16824 mandates that *expand* shall accept the integers (within the single argument) separated using
16825 either commas or <blank>s.

16826 Earlier versions of this standard allowed the following form in the SYNOPSIS:

16827 `expand [–tabstop][–tab1,tab2,...,tabn][`*`file ...`*`]`

16828 This form is no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

tabs, *unexpand*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

The *LC_CTYPE* environment variable description is updated to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied.

The *expand* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

16847 **NAME**

16848 expr — evaluate arguments as an expression

16849 **SYNOPSIS**

16850 `expr` *operand*

16851 **DESCRIPTION**

16852 The *expr* utility shall evaluate an expression and write the result to standard output.

16853 **OPTIONS**

16854 None.

16855 **OPERANDS**

16856 The single expression evaluated by *expr* shall be formed from the operands, as described in the
16857 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section. The application shall ensure that each of the expression
16858 operator symbols:

16859 `( ) | & = > >= < <= != + – * / % :`

16860 and the symbols *integer* and *string* in the table are provided as separate arguments to *expr*.

16861 **STDIN**

16862 Not used.

16863 **INPUT FILES**

16864 None.

16865 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

16866 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *expr*:

16867 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
16868 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
16869 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
16870 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

16871 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
16872 internationalization variables.

16873 *LC_COLLATE*
16874 Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-
16875 character collating elements within regular expressions and by the string
16876 comparison operators.

16877 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
16878 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
16879 arguments) and the behavior of character classes within regular expressions.

16880 *LC_MESSAGES*
16881 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
16882 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

16883 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

16884 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

16885 Default.

16886 **STDOUT**

16887 The *expr* utility shall evaluate the expression and write the result, followed by a <newline>, to
16888 standard output.

16889 **STDERR**

16890 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

16891 **OUTPUT FILES**

16892 None.

16893 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

16894 The formation of the expression to be evaluated is shown in the following table. The symbols
16895 *expr*, *expr1*, and *expr2* represent expressions formed from *integer* and *string* symbols and the
16896 expression operator symbols (all separate arguments) by recursive application of the constructs
16897 described in the table. The expressions are listed in order of increasing precedence, with equal-
16898 precedence operators grouped between horizontal lines. All of the operators shall be left-
16899 associative.

16900

Expression	Description
expr1 | *expr2*	Returns the evaluation of *expr1* if it is neither null nor zero; otherwise, returns the evaluation of *expr2* if it is not null; otherwise, zero.
expr1 & *expr2*	Returns the evaluation of *expr1* if neither expression evaluates to null or zero; otherwise, returns zero.
	Returns the result of a decimal integer comparison if both arguments are integers; otherwise, returns the result of a string comparison using the locale-specific collation sequence. The result of each comparison is 1 if the specified relationship is true, or 0 if the relationship is false.
expr1 = *expr2*	Equal.
expr1 > *expr2*	Greater than.
expr1 >= *expr2*	Greater than or equal.
expr1 < *expr2*	Less than.
expr1 <= *expr2*	Less than or equal.
expr1 != *expr2*	Not equal.
expr1 + *expr2*	Addition of decimal integer-valued arguments.
expr1 – *expr2*	Subtraction of decimal integer-valued arguments.
expr1 * *expr2*	Multiplication of decimal integer-valued arguments.
expr1 / *expr2*	Integer division of decimal integer-valued arguments, producing an integer result.
expr1 % *expr2*	Remainder of integer division of decimal integer-valued arguments.
expr1 : *expr2*	Matching expression; see below.
(*expr*)	Grouping symbols. Any expression can be placed within parentheses. Parentheses can be nested to a depth of {EXPR_NEST_MAX}.
integer	An argument consisting only of an (optional) unary minus followed by digits.
string	A string argument; see below.

16931 **Matching Expression**

16932 The `':'` matching operator shall compare the string resulting from the evaluation of *expr1* with
16933 the regular expression pattern resulting from the evaluation of *expr2*. Regular expression syntax
16934 shall be that defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic
16935 Regular Expressions, except that all patterns are anchored to the beginning of the string (that is,
16936 only sequences starting at the first character of a string are matched by the regular expression)
16937 and, therefore, it is unspecified whether `'^'` is a special character in that context. Usually, the
16938 matching operator shall return a string representing the number of characters matched (`'0'` on
16939 failure). Alternatively, if the pattern contains at least one regular expression subexpression
16940 `"[\(...\)]"`, the string matched by the back-reference expression `"\1"` shall be returned. If
16941 the back-reference expression `"\1"` does not match, then the null string shall be returned.

16942 **String Operand**

16943 A string argument is an argument that cannot be identified as an *integer* argument or as one of
16944 the expression operator symbols shown in the OPERANDS section.

16945 The use of string arguments **length**, **substr**, **index**, or **match** produces unspecified results.

16946 **EXIT STATUS**

16947 The following exit values shall be returned:

16948 0 The *expression* evaluates to neither null nor zero.

16949 1 The *expression* evaluates to null or zero.

16950 2 Invalid *expression*.

16951 >2 An error occurred.

16952 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

16953 Default.

16954 **APPLICATION USAGE**

16955 After argument processing by the shell, *expr* is not required to be able to tell the difference
16956 between an operator and an operand except by the value. If `"$a"` is `'='`, the command:

16957 ```
expr $a = '='
```

16958 looks like:

16959 ```
expr = = =
```

16960 as the arguments are passed to *expr* (and they all may be taken as the `'='` operator). The
16961 following works reliably:

16962 ```
expr X$a = X=
```

16963 Also note that this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits implementations to extend utilities.
16964 The *expr* utility permits the integer arguments to be preceded with a unary minus. This means
16965 that an integer argument could look like an option. Therefore, the conforming application must
16966 employ the `"--"` construct of Guideline 10 of the Base Definitions volume of
16967 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines to protect its operands if there is
16968 any chance the first operand might be a negative integer (or any string with a leading minus).

16969 **EXAMPLES**

16970 The *expr* utility has a rather difficult syntax:

16971 • Many of the operators are also shell control operators or reserved words, so they have to
16972 be escaped on the command line.

  
```

- Each part of the expression is composed of separate arguments, so liberal usage of <blank>s is required. For example:

Invalid	Valid
`expr 1+2`	`expr 1 + 2`
`expr "1 + 2"`	`expr 1 + 2`
`expr 1 + (2 * 3)`	`expr 1 + \( 2 \* 3 \)`

In many cases, the arithmetic and string features provided as part of the shell command language are easier to use than their equivalents in *expr*. Newly written scripts should avoid *expr* in favor of the new features within the shell; see Section 2.5 and Section 2.6.4 (on page 41).

The following command:

```
a=$(expr $a + 1)
```

adds 1 to the variable *a*.

The following command, for `"$a"` equal to either **/usr/abc/file** or just **file**:

```
expr $a : '.*/\(.*\)' \| $a
```

returns the last segment of a pathname (that is, **file**). Applications should avoid the character `'//'` used alone as an argument; *expr* may interpret it as the division operator.

The following command:

```
expr "//$a" : '.*/\(.*\)'
```

is a better representation of the previous example. The addition of the `"//"` characters eliminates any ambiguity about the division operator and simplifies the whole expression. Also note that pathnames may contain characters contained in the *IFS* variable and should be quoted to avoid having `"$a"` expand into multiple arguments.

The following command:

```
expr "$VAR" : '.*'
```

returns the number of characters in *VAR*.

RATIONALE

In an early proposal, EREs were used in the matching expression syntax. This was changed to BREs to avoid breaking historical applications.

The use of a leading circumflex in the BRE is unspecified because many historical implementations have treated it as a special character, despite their system documentation. For example:

```
expr foo : ^foo     expr ^foo : ^foo
```

return 3 and 0, respectively, on those systems; their documentation would imply the reverse. Thus, the anchoring condition is left unspecified to avoid breaking historical scripts relying on this undocumented feature.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.5 (on page 33), Section 2.6.4

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The *expr* utility is aligned with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard, to include resolution of IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #104.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #036 is applied, clarifying the behavior for BREs.

17022 **NAME**

17023 false — return false value

17024 **SYNOPSIS**

17025 `false`

17026 **DESCRIPTION**

17027 The *false* utility shall return with a non-zero exit code.

17028 **OPTIONS**

17029 None.

17030 **OPERANDS**

17031 None.

17032 **STDIN**

17033 Not used.

17034 **INPUT FILES**

17035 None.

17036 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

17037 None.

17038 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

17039 Default.

17040 **STDOUT**

17041 Not used.

17042 **STDERR**

17043 Not used.

17044 **OUTPUT FILES**

17045 None.

17046 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

17047 None.

17048 **EXIT STATUS**

17049 The *false* utility shall always exit with a value other than zero.

17050 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

17051 Default.

17052 **APPLICATION USAGE**

17053 None.

17054 **EXAMPLES**

17055 None.

17056 **RATIONALE**

17057 None.

17058 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

17059 None.

17060 **SEE ALSO**

17061 *true*

17062 **CHANGE HISTORY**

17063 First released in Issue 2.

17064 **Issue 6**

17065 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/24 is applied, changing the STDERR
17066 section from "None." to "Not used." for alignment with Section 1.11 (on page 18).

17067 **NAME**

17068 fc — process the command history list

17069 **SYNOPSIS**

17070 UP
```
fc [–r] [–e editor] [first[last]]
```
17071
```
fc –l [–nr] [first[last]]
```
17072
```
fc –s [old=new] [first]
```

17073 **DESCRIPTION**

17074 The *fc* utility shall list, or shall edit and re-execute, commands previously entered to an
17075 interactive *sh*.

17076 The command history list shall reference commands by number. The first number in the list is
17077 selected arbitrarily. The relationship of a number to its command shall not change except when
17078 the user logs in and no other process is accessing the list, at which time the system may reset the
17079 numbering to start the oldest retained command at another number (usually 1). When the
17080 number reaches an implementation-defined upper limit, which shall be no smaller than the
17081 value in *HISTSIZE* or 32 767 (whichever is greater), the shell may wrap the numbers, starting the
17082 next command with a lower number (usually 1). However, despite this optional wrapping of
17083 numbers, *fc* shall maintain the time-ordering sequence of the commands. For example, if four
17084 commands in sequence are given the numbers 32 766, 32 767, 1 (wrapped), and 2 as they are
17085 executed, command 32 767 is considered the command previous to 1, even though its number is
17086 higher.

17087 When commands are edited (when the **–l** option is not specified), the resulting lines shall be
17088 entered at the end of the history list and then re-executed by *sh*. The *fc* command that caused the
17089 editing shall not be entered into the history list. If the editor returns a non-zero exit status, this
17090 shall suppress the entry into the history list and the command re-execution. Any command line
17091 variable assignments or redirection operators used with *fc* shall affect both the *fc* command itself
17092 as well as the command that results; for example:

17093
```
fc –s –– –1 2>/dev/null
```

17094 reinvokes the previous command, suppressing standard error for both *fc* and the previous
17095 command.

17096 **OPTIONS**

17097 The *fc* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
17098 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

17099 The following options shall be supported:

17100 **–e** *editor* Use the editor named by *editor* to edit the commands. The *editor* string is a utility
17101 name, subject to search via the *PATH* variable (see the Base Definitions volume of
17102 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables). The value in the *FCEDIT*
17103 variable shall be used as a default when **–e** is not specified. If *FCEDIT* is null or
17104 unset, *ed* shall be used as the editor.

17105 **–l** (The letter ell.) List the commands rather than invoking an editor on them. The
17106 commands shall be written in the sequence indicated by the *first* and *last* operands,
17107 as affected by **–r**, with each command preceded by the command number.

17108 **–n** Suppress command numbers when listing with **–l**.

17109 **–r** Reverse the order of the commands listed (with **–l**) or edited (with neither **–l** nor
17110 **–s**).

17111 **–s** Re-execute the command without invoking an editor.

17112 **OPERANDS**

17113 The following operands shall be supported:

17114 *first*, *last* Select the commands to list or edit. The number of previous commands that can be
17115 accessed shall be determined by the value of the *HISTSIZE* variable. The value of
17116 *first* or *last* or both shall be one of the following:

17117 **[+]***number* A positive number representing a command number; command
17118 numbers can be displayed with the **–l** option.

17119 *–number* A negative decimal number representing the command that was
17120 executed *number* of commands previously. For example, –1 is the
17121 immediately previous command.

17122 *string* A string indicating the most recently entered command that begins
17123 with that string. If the *old=new* operand is not also specified with **–s**,
17124 the string form of the *first* operand cannot contain an embedded
17125 equal sign.

17126 When the synopsis form with **–s** is used:

17127 • If *first* is omitted, the previous command shall be used.

17128 For the synopsis forms without **–s**:

17129 • If *last* is omitted, *last* shall default to the previous command when **–l** is
17130 specified; otherwise, it shall default to *first*.

17131 • If *first* and *last* are both omitted, the previous 16 commands shall be listed or
17132 the previous single command shall be edited (based on the **–l** option).

17133 • If *first* and *last* are both present, all of the commands from *first* to *last* shall be
17134 edited (without **–l**) or listed (with **–l**). Editing multiple commands shall be
17135 accomplished by presenting to the editor all of the commands at one time,
17136 each command starting on a new line. If *first* represents a newer command
17137 than *last*, the commands shall be listed or edited in reverse sequence,
17138 equivalent to using **–r**. For example, the following commands on the first
17139 line are equivalent to the corresponding commands on the second:

17140 `fc –r 10 20  fc  30 40`
17141 `fc  20 10  fc –r 40 30`

17142 • When a range of commands is used, it shall not be an error to specify *first* or
17143 *last* values that are not in the history list; *fc* shall substitute the value
17144 representing the oldest or newest command in the list, as appropriate. For
17145 example, if there are only ten commands in the history list, numbered 1 to 10:

17146 `fc –l`
17147 `fc 1 99`

17148 shall list and edit, respectively, all ten commands.

17149 *old=new* Replace the first occurrence of string *old* in the commands to be re-executed by the
17150 string *new*.

17151 **STDIN**

17152 Not used.

17153 **INPUT FILES**

17154 None.

17155 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

17156 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *fc*:

17157 *FCEDIT* This variable, when expanded by the shell, shall determine the default value for
17158 the **−e** *editor* option's *editor* option-argument. If *FCEDIT* is null or unset, *ed* shall be
17159 used as the editor.

17160 *HISTFILE* Determine a pathname naming a command history file. If the *HISTFILE* variable is
17161 not set, the shell may attempt to access or create a file **.sh_history** in the directory
17162 referred to by the *HOME* environment variable. If the shell cannot obtain both read
17163 and write access to, or create, the history file, it shall use an unspecified
17164 mechanism that allows the history to operate properly. (References to history "file"
17165 in this section shall be understood to mean this unspecified mechanism in such
17166 cases.) An implementation may choose to access this variable only when
17167 initializing the history file; this initialization shall occur when *fc* or *sh* first attempt
17168 to retrieve entries from, or add entries to, the file, as the result of commands issued
17169 by the user, the file named by the *ENV* variable, or implementation-defined system
17170 start-up files. In some historical shells, the history file is initialized just after the
17171 *ENV* file has been processed. Therefore, it is implementation-defined whether
17172 changes made to *HISTFILE* after the history file has been initialized are effective.
17173 Implementations may choose to disable the history list mechanism for users with
17174 appropriate privileges who do not set *HISTFILE*; the specific circumstances under
17175 which this occurs are implementation-defined. If more than one instance of the
17176 shell is using the same history file, it is unspecified how updates to the history file
17177 from those shells interact. As entries are deleted from the history file, they shall be
17178 deleted oldest first. It is unspecified when history file entries are physically
17179 removed from the history file.

17180 *HISTSIZE* Determine a decimal number representing the limit to the number of previous
17181 commands that are accessible. If this variable is unset, an unspecified default
17182 greater than or equal to 128 shall be used. The maximum number of commands in
17183 the history list is unspecified, but shall be at least 128. An implementation may
17184 choose to access this variable only when initializing the history file, as described
17185 under *HISTFILE*. Therefore, it is unspecified whether changes made to *HISTSIZE*
17186 after the history file has been initialized are effective.

17187 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
17188 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
17189 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
17190 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

17191 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
17192 internationalization variables.

17193 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
17194 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
17195 arguments and input files).

17196 *LC_MESSAGES*

17197 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
17198 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

17199 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

17200 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

17201 Default.

17202 **STDOUT**

17203 When the **–l** option is used to list commands, the format of each command in the list shall be as
17204 follows:

17205 `"%d\t%s\n", <line number>, <command>`

17206 If both the **–l** and **–n** options are specified, the format of each command shall be:

17207 `"\t%s\n", <command>`

17208 If the <*command*> consists of more than one line, the lines after the first shall be displayed as:

17209 `"\t%s\n", <continued-command>`

17210 **STDERR**

17211 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

17212 **OUTPUT FILES**

17213 None.

17214 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

17215 None.

17216 **EXIT STATUS**

17217 The following exit values shall be returned:

17218 0 Successful completion of the listing.

17219 >0 An error occurred.

17220 Otherwise, the exit status shall be that of the commands executed by *fc*.

17221 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

17222 Default.

17223 **APPLICATION USAGE**

17224 Since editors sometimes use file descriptors as integral parts of their editing, redirecting their file
17225 descriptors as part of the *fc* command can produce unexpected results. For example, if *vi* is the
17226 *FCEDIT* editor, the command:

17227 `fc –s | more`

17228 does not work correctly on many systems.

17229 Users on windowing systems may want to have separate history files for each window by
17230 setting *HISTFILE* as follows:

17231 `HISTFILE=$HOME/.sh_hist$$`

17232 **EXAMPLES**

17233 None.

17234 **RATIONALE**

17235 This utility is based on the *fc* built-in of the KornShell.

17236 An early proposal specified the **–e** option as **[–e** *editor* **[***old***=** *new* **]]**, which is not historical
17237 practice. Historical practice in *fc* of either **[–e** *editor***]** or **[–e** – **[** *old***=** *new* **]]** is acceptable, but not
17238 both together. To clarify this, a new option **–s** was introduced replacing the **[–e** –**]**. This resolves
17239 the conflict and makes *fc* conform to the Utility Syntax Guidelines.

17240 *HISTFILE* Some implementations of the KornShell check for the superuser and do not create
17241 a history file unless *HISTFILE* is set. This is done primarily to avoid creating
17242 unlinked files in the root file system when logging in during single-user mode.
17243 *HISTFILE* must be set for the superuser to have history.

17244 *HISTSIZE* Needed to limit the size of history files. It is the intent of the standard developers
17245 that when two shells share the same history file, commands that are entered in one
17246 shell shall be accessible by the other shell. Because of the difficulties of
17247 synchronization over a network, the exact nature of the interaction is unspecified.

17248 The initialization process for the history file can be dependent on the system start-up files, in
17249 that they may contain commands that effectively preempt the settings the user has for *HISTFILE*
17250 and *HISTSIZE*. For example, function definition commands are recorded in the history file. If
17251 the system administrator includes function definitions in some system start-up file called before
17252 the *ENV* file, the history file is initialized before the user can influence its characteristics. In some
17253 historical shells, the history file is initialized just after the *ENV* file has been processed. Because
17254 of these situations, the text requires the initialization process to be implementation-defined.

17255 Consideration was given to omitting the *fc* utility in favor of the command line editing feature in
17256 *sh*. For example, in *vi* editing mode, typing `"<ESC> v"` is equivalent to:

17257 ```
EDITOR=vi fc
```

17258 However, the *fc* utility allows the user the flexibility to edit multiple commands simultaneously
17259 (such as *fc* 10 20) and to use editors other than those supported by *sh* for command line editing.

17260 In the KornShell, the alias **r** (“re-do”) is preset to *fc* –**e** – (equivalent to the POSIX *fc* –**s**). This is
17261 probably an easier command name to remember than *fc* (“fix command”), but it does not meet
17262 the Utility Syntax Guidelines. Renaming *fc* to *hist* or *redo* was considered, but since this
17263 description closely matches historical KornShell practice already, such a renaming was seen as
17264 gratuitous. Users are free to create aliases whenever odd historical names such as *fc*, *awk*, *cat*,
17265 *grep*, or *yacc* are standardized by POSIX.

17266 Command numbers have no ordering effects; they are like serial numbers. The –**r** option and
17267 –*number* operand address the sequence of command execution, regardless of serial numbers. So,
17268 for example, if the command number wrapped back to 1 at some arbitrary point, there would be
17269 no ambiguity associated with traversing the wrap point. For example, if the command history
17270 were:

17271 ```
32766: echo 1
17272 32767: echo 2
17273 1: echo 3
```

17274 the number –2 refers to command 32 767 because it is the second previous command, regardless
17275 of serial number.

17276 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

17277 None.

17278 **SEE ALSO**

17279 *sh*

17280 **CHANGE HISTORY**

17281 First released in Issue 4.

17282 **Issue 5**

17283 The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

In the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section, the text "user's home directory" is updated to "directory referred to by the *HOME* environment variable".

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

17290 **NAME**

17291 fg — run jobs in the foreground

17292 **SYNOPSIS**

17293 UP
```
fg [job_id]
```

17294 **DESCRIPTION**

17295 If job control is enabled (see the description of *set* **–m**), the *fg* utility shall move a background job
17296 from the current environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)) into the foreground.

17297 Using *fg* to place a job into the foreground shall remove its process ID from the list of those
17298 "known in the current shell execution environment"; see Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50).

17299 **OPTIONS**

17300 None.

17301 **OPERANDS**

17302 The following operand shall be supported:

17303 *job_id* Specify the job to be run as a foreground job. If no *job_id* operand is given, the
17304 *job_id* for the job that was most recently suspended, placed in the background, or
17305 run as a background job shall be used. The format of *job_id* is described in the Base
17306 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.203, Job Control Job ID.

17307 **STDIN**

17308 Not used.

17309 **INPUT FILES**

17310 None.

17311 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

17312 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *fg*:

17313 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
17314 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
17315 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
17316 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

17317 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
17318 internationalization variables.

17319 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
17320 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
17321 arguments).

17322 *LC_MESSAGES*
17323 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
17324 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

17325 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

17326 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

17327 Default.

17328 **STDOUT**

17329 The *fg* utility shall write the command line of the job to standard output in the following format:

17330
```
"%s\n", <command>
```


STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If job control is disabled, the *fg* utility shall exit with an error and no job shall be placed in the foreground.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *fg* utility does not work as expected when it is operating in its own utility execution environment because that environment has no applicable jobs to manipulate. See the APPLICATION USAGE section for *bg*. For this reason, *fg* is generally implemented as a shell regular built-in.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The extensions to the shell specified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x have mostly been based on features provided by the KornShell. The job control features provided by *bg*, *fg*, and *jobs* are also based on the KornShell. The standard developers examined the characteristics of the C shell versions of these utilities and found that differences exist. Despite widespread use of the C shell, the KornShell versions were selected for this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to maintain a degree of uniformity with the rest of the KornShell features selected (such as the very popular command line editing features).

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50), Section 2.12 (on page 61), *bg*, *kill*, *jobs*, *wait*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

The JC marking is removed from the SYNOPSIS since job control is mandatory is this issue.

17369 **NAME**

17370 file — determine file type

17371 **SYNOPSIS**

17372 `file [–dh] [–M file] [–m file] file...`

17373 `file –i [–h] file...`

17374 **DESCRIPTION**

17375 The *file* utility shall perform a series of tests in sequence on each specified *file* in an attempt to
17376 classify it:

17377 1. If *file* does not exist, cannot be read, or its file status could not be determined, the output
17378 shall indicate that the file was processed, but that its type could not be determined.

17379 2. If the file is not a regular file, its file type shall be identified. The file types directory,
17380 FIFO, socket, block special, and character special shall be identified as such. Other
17381 implementation-defined file types may also be identified. If *file* is a symbolic link, by
17382 default the link shall be resolved and *file* shall test the type of file referenced by the
17383 symbolic link. (See the **–h** and **–i** options below.)

17384 3. If the length of *file* is zero, it shall be identified as an empty file.

17385 4. The *file* utility shall examine an initial segment of *file* and shall make a guess at
17386 identifying its contents based on position-sensitive tests. (The answer is not guaranteed to
17387 be correct; see the **–d**, **–M**, and **–m** options below.)

17388 5. The *file* utility shall examine *file* and make a guess at identifying its contents based on
17389 context-sensitive default system tests. (The answer is not guaranteed to be correct.)

17390 6. The file shall be identified as a data file.

17391 If *file* does not exist, cannot be read, or its file status could not be determined, the output shall
17392 indicate that the file was processed, but that its type could not be determined.

17393 If *file* is a symbolic link, by default the link shall be resolved and *file* shall test the type of file
17394 referenced by the symbolic link.

17395 **OPTIONS**

17396 The *file* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
17397 Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the order of the **–m**, **–d**, and **–M** options shall be
17398 significant.

17399 The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

17400 **–d** Apply any position-sensitive default system tests and context-sensitive default
17401 system tests to the file. This is the default if no **–M** or **–m** option is specified.

17402 **–h** When a symbolic link is encountered, identify the file as a symbolic link. If **–h** is
17403 not specified and *file* is a symbolic link that refers to a nonexistent file, *file* shall
17404 identify the file as a symbolic link, as if **–h** had been specified.

17405 **–i** If a file is a regular file, do not attempt to classify the type of the file further, but
17406 identify the file as specified in the STDOUT section.

17407 **–M** *file* Specify the name of a file containing position-sensitive tests that shall be applied to
17408 a file in order to classify it (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION). No position-
17409 sensitive default system tests nor context-sensitive default system tests shall be
17410 applied unless the **–d** option is also specified.

17411 **–m** *file* Specify the name of a file containing position-sensitive tests that shall be applied to
17412 a file in order to classify it (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION).

17413 If the **–m** option is specified without specifying the **–d** option or the **–M** option, position-
17414 sensitive default system tests shall be applied after the position-sensitive tests specified by the
17415 **–m** option. If the **–M** option is specified with the **–d** option, the **–m** option, or both, or the **–m**
17416 option is specified with the **–d** option, the concatenation of the position-sensitive tests specified
17417 by these options shall be applied in the order specified by the appearance of these options. If a
17418 **–M** or **–m** *file* option-argument is –, the results are unspecified.

17419 **OPERANDS**

17420 The following operand shall be supported:

17421 *file* A pathname of a file to be tested.

17422 **STDIN**

17423 Not used.

17424 **INPUT FILES**

17425 The *file* can be any file type.

17426 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

17427 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *file*:

17428 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
17429 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
17430 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
17431 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

17432 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
17433 internationalization variables.

17434 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
17435 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
17436 arguments and input files).

17437 *LC_MESSAGES*
17438 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
17439 diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to
17440 standard output.

17441 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

17442 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

17443 Default.

17444 **STDOUT**

17445 In the POSIX locale, the following format shall be used to identify each operand, *file* specified:

17446 `"%s: %s\n", <file>, <type>`

17447 The values for <*type*> are unspecified, except that in the POSIX locale, if *file* is identified as one
17448 of the types listed in the following table, <*type*> shall contain (but is not limited to) the
17449 corresponding string, unless the file is identified by a position-sensitive test specified by a **–M** or
17450 **–m** option. Each space shown in the strings shall be exactly one <space>.

17451 **Table 4-8** File Utility Output Strings

If *file* is:	<*type*> shall contain the string:	Notes
Nonexistent	cannot open	
Block special	block special	1
Character special	character special	1
Directory	directory	1
FIFO	fifo	1
Socket	socket	1
Symbolic link	symbolic link to	1
Regular file	regular file	1,2
Empty regular file	empty	3
Regular file that cannot be read	cannot open	3
Executable binary	executable	3,4,6
ar archive library (see *ar*)	archive	3,4,6
Extended *cpio* format (see *pax*)	cpio archive	3,4,6
Extended *tar* format (see **ustar** in *pax*)	tar archive	3,4,6
Shell script	commands text	3,5,6
C-language source	c program text	3,5,6
FORTRAN source	fortran program text	3,5,6
Regular file whose type cannot be determined	data	3

Notes:

1. This is a file type test.
2. This test is applied only if the **–i** option is specified.
3. This test is applied only if the **–i** option is not specified.
4. This is a position-sensitive default system test.
5. This is a context-sensitive default system test.
6. Position-sensitive default system tests and context-sensitive default system tests are not applied if the **–M** option is specified unless the **–d** option is also specified.

In the POSIX locale, if *file* is identified as a symbolic link (see the **–h** option), the following alternative output format shall be used:

```
"%s: %s %s\n", <file>, <type>, <contents of link>"
```

If the file named by the *file* operand does not exist, cannot be read, or the type of the file named by the *file* operand cannot be determined, this shall not be considered an error that affects the exit status.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

A file specified as an option-argument to the **–m** or **–M** options shall contain one position-sensitive test per line, which shall be applied to the file. If the test succeeds, the message field of the line shall be printed and no further tests shall be applied, with the exception that tests on immediately following lines beginning with a single `'>'` character shall be applied.

Each line shall be composed of the following four <tab>-separated fields. (Implementations may allow any combination of one or more white space characters other than <newline> to act as field separators.)

offset An unsigned number (optionally preceded by a single `'>'` character) specifying the *offset*, in bytes, of the value in the file that is to be compared against the *value* field of the line. If the file is shorter than the specified offset, the test shall fail.

If the *offset* begins with the character `'>'`, the test contained in the line shall not be applied to the file unless the test on the last line for which the *offset* did not begin with a `'>'` was successful. By default, the *offset* shall be interpreted as an unsigned decimal number. With a leading 0x or 0X, the *offset* shall be interpreted as a hexadecimal number; otherwise, with a leading 0, the *offset* shall be interpreted as an octal number.

type The type of the value in the file to be tested. The type shall consist of the type specification characters `d`, `s`, and `u`, specifying signed decimal, string, and unsigned decimal, respectively.

The *type* string shall be interpreted as the bytes from the file starting at the specified *offset* and including the same number of bytes specified by the *value* field. If insufficient bytes remain in the file past the *offset* to match the *value* field, the test shall fail.

The type specification characters `d` and `u` can be followed by an optional unsigned decimal integer that specifies the number of bytes represented by the type. The type specification characters `d` and `u` can be followed by an optional `C`, `S`, `I`, or `L`, indicating that the value is of type **char**, **short**, **int**, or **long**, respectively.

The default number of bytes represented by the type specifiers `d`, `f`, and `u` shall correspond to their respective C-language types as follows. If the system claims conformance to the C-Language Development Utilities option, those specifiers shall correspond to the default sizes used in the *c99* utility. Otherwise, the default sizes shall be implementation-defined.

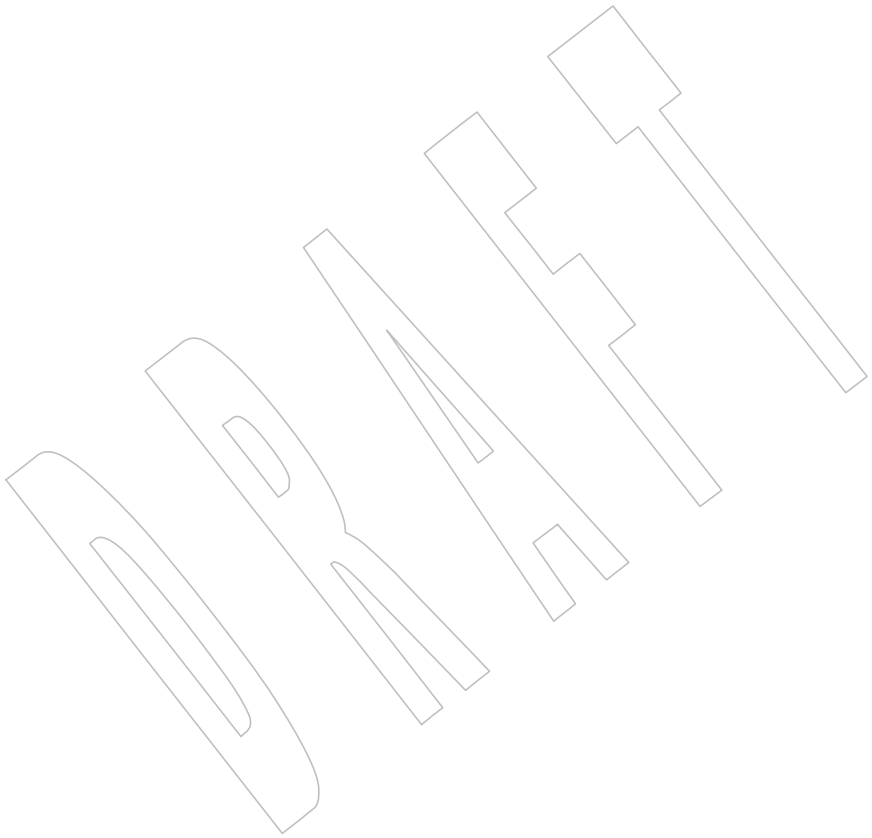
For the type specifier characters `d` and `u`, the default number of bytes shall correspond to the size of a basic integer type of the implementation. For these specifier characters, the implementation shall support values of the optional number of bytes to be converted corresponding to the number of bytes in the C-language types **char**, **short**, **int**, or **long**. These numbers can also be specified by an application as the characters `C`, `S`, `I`, and `L`, respectively. The byte order used when interpreting numeric values is implementation-defined, but shall correspond to the order in which a constant of the corresponding type is stored in memory on the system.

All type specifiers, except for `s`, can be followed by a mask specifier of the form &*number*. The mask value shall be AND'ed with the value of the input file before the comparison with the *value* field of the line is made. By default, the mask shall be interpreted as an unsigned decimal number. With a leading 0x or 0X, the mask shall be interpreted as an unsigned hexadecimal number; otherwise, with a leading 0, the mask shall be interpreted as an unsigned octal number.

The strings **byte**, **short**, **long**, and **string** shall also be supported as type fields, being interpreted as `dC`, `dS`, `dL`, and `s`, respectively.

value The *value* to be compared with the value from the file.

If the specifier from the type field is `s` or **string**, then interpret the value as a string. Otherwise, interpret it as a number. If the value is a string, then the test shall succeed only when a string value exactly matches the bytes from the file.



APPLICATION USAGE

The *file* utility can only be required to guess at many of the file types because only exhaustive testing can determine some types with certainty. For example, binary data on some implementations might match the initial segment of an executable or a *tar* archive.

Note that the table indicates that the output contains the stated string. Systems may add text before or after the string. For executables, as an example, the machine architecture and various facts about how the file was link-edited may be included. Note also that on systems that recognize shell script files starting with "#!" as executable files, these may be identified as executable binary files rather than as shell scripts.

EXAMPLES

Determine whether an argument is a binary executable file:

```
file "$1" | grep –Fq executable &&
    printf "%s is executable.\n" "$1"
```

RATIONALE

The **–f** option was omitted because the same effect can (and should) be obtained using the *xargs* utility.

Historical versions of the *file* utility attempt to identify the following types of files: symbolic link, directory, character special, block special, socket, *tar* archive, *cpio* archive, SCCS archive, archive library, empty, *compress* output, *pack* output, binary data, C source, FORTRAN source, assembler source, *nroff/troff/eqn/tbl* source *troff* output, shell script, C shell script, English text, ASCII text, various executables, APL workspace, compiled terminfo entries, and CURSES screen images. Only those types that are reasonably well specified in POSIX or are directly related to POSIX utilities are listed in the table.

Historical systems have used a "magic file" named **/etc/magic** to help identify file types. Because it is generally useful for users and scripts to be able to identify special file types, the **–m** flag and a portable format for user-created magic files has been specified. No requirement is made that an implementation of *file* use this method of identifying files, only that users be permitted to add their own classifying tests.

In addition, three options have been added to historical practice. The **–d** flag has been added to permit users to cause their tests to follow any default system tests. The **–i** flag has been added to permit users to test portably for regular files in shell scripts. The **–M** flag has been added to permit users to ignore any default system tests.

The IEEE Std 1003.1-200x description of default system tests and the interaction between the **–d**, **–M**, and **–m** options did not clearly indicate that there were two types of "default system tests". The "position-sensitive tests" determine file types by looking for certain string or binary values at specific offsets in the file being examined. These position-sensitive tests were implemented in historical systems using the magic file described above. Some of these tests are now built into the *file* utility itself on some implementations so the output can provide more detail than can be provided by magic files. For example, a magic file can easily identify a **core** file on most implementations, but cannot name the program file that dropped the core. A magic file could produce output such as:

```
/home/dwc/core: ELF 32-bit MSB core file SPARC Version 1
```

but by building the test into the *file* utility, you could get output such as:

```
/home/dwc/core: ELF 32-bit MSB core file SPARC Version 1, from 'testprog'
```

These extended built-in tests are still to be treated as position-sensitive default system tests even if they are not listed in **/etc/magic** or any other magic file.

The context-sensitive default system tests were always built into the *file* utility. These tests looked for language constructs in text files trying to identify shell scripts, C, FORTRAN, and

other computer language source files, and even plain text files. With the addition of the **–m** and **–M** options the distinction between position-sensitive and context-sensitive default system tests became important because the order of testing is important. The context-sensitive system default tests should never be applied before any position-sensitive tests even if the **–d** option is specified before a **–m** option or **–M** option due to the high probability that the context-sensitive system default tests will incorrectly identify arbitrary text files as text files before position-sensitive tests specified by the **–m** or **–M** option would be applied to give a more accurate identification.

Leaving the meaning of **–M** – and **–m** – unspecified allows an existing prototype of these options to continue to work in a backwards-compatible manner. (In that implementation, **–M** – was roughly equivalent to **–d** in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.)

The historical **–c** option was omitted as not particularly useful to users or portable shell scripts. In addition, a reasonable implementation of the *file* utility would report any errors found each time the magic file is read.

The historical format of the magic file was the same as that specified by the Rationale in the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard for the *offset*, *value*, and *message* fields; however, it used less precise type fields than the format specified by the current normative text. The new type field values are a superset of the historical ones.

The following is an example magic file:

```
0  short     070707              cpio archive
0  short     0143561             Byte-swapped cpio archive
0  string    070707              ASCII cpio archive
0  long      0177555             Very old archive
0  short     0177545             Old archive
0  short     017437              Old packed data
0  string    \037\036            Packed data
0  string    \377\037            Compacted data
0  string    \037\235            Compressed data
>2 byte&0x80 >0                  Block compressed
>2 byte&0x1f x                   %d bits
0  string    \032\001            Compiled Terminfo Entry
0  short     0433                Curses screen image
0  short     0434                Curses screen image
0  string    <ar>                System V Release 1 archive
0  string    !<arch>\n__.SYMDEF  Archive random library
0  string    !<arch>             Archive
0  string    ARF_BEGARF          PHIGS clear text archive
0  long      0x137A2950          Scalable OpenFont binary
0  long      0x137A2951          Encrypted scalable OpenFont binary
```

The use of a basic integer data type is intended to allow the implementation to choose a word size commonly used by applications on that architecture.

Previous versions of this standard allowed for implementations with bytes other than eight bits, but this has been modified in this version.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

ar, *ls*, *pax*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

Options and an EXTENDED DESCRIPTION are added as specified in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

IEEE PASC Interpretations 1003.2 #192 and #178 are applied.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/25 is applied, making major changes to address ambiguities raised in defect reports.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/26 is applied, making it clear in the OPTIONS section that the **−m**, **−d**, and **−M** options do not comply with Guideline 11 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/10 is applied, clarifying the specification characters.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/11 is applied, allowing application writers to create portable magic files that can match characters in strings, and allowing common extensions found in existing implementations.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/12 is applied, removing text describing behavior on systems with bytes consisting of more than eight bits.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-4 is applied, adding further entries in the Notes column in Table 4-8.

The *file* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

17700 **NAME**

17701 find — find files

17702 **SYNOPSIS**

17703 `find [-H|-L] path... [operand_expression...]`

17704 **DESCRIPTION**

17705 The *find* utility shall recursively descend the directory hierarchy from each file specified by *path*,
17706 evaluating a Boolean expression composed of the primaries described in the OPERANDS section
17707 for each file encountered.

17708 The *find* utility shall be able to descend to arbitrary depths in a file hierarchy and shall not fail
17709 due to path length limitations (unless a *path* operand specified by the application exceeds
17710 {PATH_MAX} requirements).

17711 The *find* utility shall detect infinite loops; that is, entering a previously visited directory that is an
17712 ancestor of the last file encountered. When it detects an infinite loop, *find* shall write a
17713 diagnostic message to standard error and shall either recover its position in the hierarchy or
17714 terminate.

17715 **OPTIONS**

17716 The *find* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
17717 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

17718 The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

17719 **-H** Cause the file information and file type evaluated for each symbolic link
17720 encountered on the command line to be those of the file referenced by the link, and
17721 not the link itself. If the referenced file does not exist, the file information and type
17722 shall be for the link itself. File information for all symbolic links not on the
17723 command line shall be that of the link itself.

17724 **-L** Cause the file information and file type evaluated for each symbolic link to be
17725 those of the file referenced by the link, and not the link itself. If the referenced file
17726 does not exist, the file information and type shall be for the link itself.

17727 Specifying more than one of the mutually-exclusive options **-H** and **-L** shall not be considered
17728 an error. The last option specified shall determine the behavior of the utility.

17729 **OPERANDS**

17730 The following operands shall be supported:

17731 The *path* operand is a pathname of a starting point in the directory hierarchy.

17732 The first operand that starts with a `'-'`, or is a `'!'` or a `'('`, and all subsequent arguments shall
17733 be interpreted as an *expression* made up of the following primaries and operators. In the
17734 descriptions, wherever *n* is used as a primary argument, it shall be interpreted as a decimal
17735 integer optionally preceded by a plus (`'+'`) or minus (`'-'`) sign, as follows:

17736 *+n* More than *n*.

17737 *n* Exactly *n*.

17738 *-n* Less than *n*.

17739 The following primaries shall be supported:

17740 **-name** *pattern*

17741 The primary shall evaluate as true if the basename of the filename being examined
17742 matches *pattern* using the pattern matching notation described in Section 2.13 (on

page 62).

–nouser The primary shall evaluate as true if the file belongs to a user ID for which the *getpwuid*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (or equivalent) returns NULL.

–nogroup The primary shall evaluate as true if the file belongs to a group ID for which the *getgrgid*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (or equivalent) returns NULL.

–xdev The primary shall always evaluate as true; it shall cause *find* not to continue descending past directories that have a different device ID (*st_dev*, see the *stat*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x). If any **–xdev** primary is specified, it shall apply to the entire expression even if the **–xdev** primary would not normally be evaluated.

–prune The primary shall always evaluate as true; it shall cause *find* not to descend the current pathname if it is a directory. If the **–depth** primary is specified, the **–prune** primary shall have no effect.

–perm [–]*mode*

The *mode* argument is used to represent file mode bits. It shall be identical in format to the *symbolic_mode* operand described in *chmod*, and shall be interpreted as follows. To start, a template shall be assumed with all file mode bits cleared. An *op* symbol of `'+'` shall set the appropriate mode bits in the template; `'–'` shall clear the appropriate bits; `'='` shall set the appropriate mode bits, without regard to the contents of the file mode creation mask of the process. The *op* symbol of `'–'` cannot be the first character of *mode*; this avoids ambiguity with the optional leading hyphen. Since the initial mode is all bits off, there are not any symbolic modes that need to use `'–'` as the first character.

If the hyphen is omitted, the primary shall evaluate as true when the file permission bits exactly match the value of the resulting template.

Otherwise, if *mode* is prefixed by a hyphen, the primary shall evaluate as true if at least all the bits in the resulting template are set in the file permission bits.

–perm [–]*onum*

If the hyphen is omitted, the primary shall evaluate as true when the file mode bits exactly match the value of the octal number *onum* (see the description of the octal *mode* in *chmod*). Otherwise, if *onum* is prefixed by a hyphen, the primary shall evaluate as true if at least all of the bits specified in *onum* are set. In both cases, the behavior is unspecified when *onum* exceedes 07777.

–type *c* The primary shall evaluate as true if the type of the file is *c*, where *c* is `'b'`, `'c'`, `'d'`, `'l'`, `'p'`, `'f'`, or `'s'` for block special file, character special file, directory, symbolic link, FIFO, regular file, or socket, respectively.

–links *n* The primary shall evaluate as true if the file has *n* links.

–user *uname* The primary shall evaluate as true if the file belongs to the user *uname*. If *uname* is a decimal integer and the *getpwnam*() (or equivalent) function does not return a valid user name, *uname* shall be interpreted as a user ID.

–group *gname*

The primary shall evaluate as true if the file belongs to the group *gname*. If *gname* is a decimal integer and the *getgrnam*() (or equivalent) function does not return a valid group name, *gname* shall be interpreted as a group ID.

17789 –**size** *n*[**c**] The primary shall evaluate as true if the file size in bytes, divided by 512 and
17790 rounded up to the next integer, is *n*. If *n* is followed by the character 'c', the size
17791 shall be in bytes.

17792 –**atime** *n* The primary shall evaluate as true if the file access time subtracted from the
17793 initialization time, divided by 86 400 (with any remainder discarded), is *n*.

17794 –**ctime** *n* The primary shall evaluate as true if the time of last change of file status
17795 information subtracted from the initialization time, divided by 86 400 (with any
17796 remainder discarded), is *n*.

17797 –**mtime** *n* The primary shall evaluate as true if the file modification time subtracted from the
17798 initialization time, divided by 86 400 (with any remainder discarded), is *n*.

17799 –**exec** *utility_name* [*argument* ...] **;**
17800 –**exec** *utility_name* [*argument* ...] {} +
17801 The end of the primary expression shall be punctuated by a semicolon or by a plus
17802 sign. Only a plus sign that follows an argument containing the two characters
17803 "{}" shall punctuate the end of the primary expression. Other uses of the plus
17804 sign shall not be treated as special.

17805 If the primary expression is punctuated by a semicolon, the utility *utility_name*
17806 shall be invoked once for each pathname and the primary shall evaluate as true if
17807 the utility returns a zero value as exit status. A *utility_name* or *argument* containing
17808 only the two characters "{}" shall be replaced by the current pathname.

17809 If the primary expression is punctuated by a plus sign, the primary shall always
17810 evaluate as true, and the pathnames for which the primary is evaluated shall be
17811 aggregated into sets. The utility *utility_name* shall be invoked once for each set of
17812 aggregated pathnames. Each invocation shall begin after the last pathname in the
17813 set is aggregated, and shall be completed before the *find* utility exits and before the
17814 first pathname in the next set (if any) is aggregated for this primary, but it is
17815 otherwise unspecified whether the invocation occurs before, during, or after the
17816 evaluations of other primaries. If any invocation returns a non-zero value as exit
17817 status, the *find* utility shall return a non-zero exit status. An argument containing
17818 only the two characters "{}" shall be replaced by the set of aggregated
17819 pathnames, with each pathname passed as a separate argument to the invoked
17820 utility in the same order that it was aggregated. The size of any set of two or more
17821 pathnames shall be limited such that execution of the utility does not cause the
17822 system's {ARG_MAX} limit to be exceeded. If more than one argument containing
17823 only the two characters "{}" is present, the behavior is unspecified.

17824 If a *utility_name* or *argument* string contains the two characters "{}", but not just
17825 the two characters "{}", it is implementation-defined whether *find* replaces those
17826 two characters or uses the string without change. The current directory for the
17827 invocation of *utility_name* shall be the same as the current directory when the *find*
17828 utility was started. If the *utility_name* names any of the special built-in utilities (see
17829 Section 2.14 (on page 64)), the results are undefined.

17830 –**ok** *utility_name* [*argument* ...] **;**
17831 The –**ok** primary shall be equivalent to –**exec**, except that the use of a plus sign to
17832 punctuate the end of the primary expression need not be supported, and *find* shall
17833 request affirmation of the invocation of *utility_name* using the current file as an
17834 argument by writing to standard error as described in the STDERR section. If the
17835 response on standard input is affirmative, the utility shall be invoked. Otherwise,
17836 the command shall not be invoked and the value of the –**ok** operand shall be false.

17837 –**print** The primary shall always evaluate as true; it shall cause the current pathname to
17838 be written to standard output.

17839 –**newer** *file* The primary shall evaluate as true if the modification time of the current file is
17840 more recent than the modification time of the file named by the pathname *file*.

17841 –**depth** The primary shall always evaluate as true; it shall cause descent of the directory
17842 hierarchy to be done so that all entries in a directory are acted on before the
17843 directory itself. If a –**depth** primary is not specified, all entries in a directory shall
17844 be acted on after the directory itself. If any –**depth** primary is specified, it shall
17845 apply to the entire expression even if the –**depth** primary would not normally be
17846 evaluated.

17847 The primaries can be combined using the following operators (in order of decreasing
17848 precedence):

17849 (*expression*) True if *expression* is true.

17850 **!** *expression* Negation of a primary; the unary NOT operator.

17851 *expression* **[**–**a]** *expression*
17852 Conjunction of primaries; the AND operator is implied by the juxtaposition of two
17853 primaries or made explicit by the optional –**a** operator. The second expression shall
17854 not be evaluated if the first expression is false.

17855 *expression* –**o** *expression*
17856 Alternation of primaries; the OR operator. The second expression shall not be
17857 evaluated if the first expression is true.

17858 If no *expression* is present, –**print** shall be used as the expression. Otherwise, if the given
17859 expression does not contain any of the primaries –**exec**, –**ok**, or –**print**, the given expression
17860 shall be effectively replaced by:

17861 `( given_expression ) –print`

17862 The –**user**, –**group**, and –**newer** primaries each shall evaluate their respective arguments only
17863 once.

17864 **STDIN**

17865 If the –**ok** primary is used, the response shall be read from the standard input. An entire line
17866 shall be read as the response. Otherwise, the standard input shall not be used.

17867 **INPUT FILES**

17868 None.

17869 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

17870 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *find*:

17871 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
17872 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
17873 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
17874 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

17875 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
17876 internationalization variables.

17877 *LC_COLLATE*
17878 Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-
17879 character collating elements used in the pattern matching notation for the –**n**
17880 option and in the extended regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale
17881 keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

17882 *LC_CTYPE* This variable determines the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of
17883 text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte
17884 characters in arguments), the behavior of character classes within the pattern
17885 matching notation used for the **–n** option, and the behavior of character classes
17886 within regular expressions used in the extended regular expression defined for the
17887 **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

17888 *LC_MESSAGES*
17889 Determine the locale for the processing of affirmative responses that should be
17890 used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard
17891 error.

17892 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

17893 *PATH* Determine the location of the *utility_name* for the **–exec** and **–ok** primaries, as
17894 described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8,
17895 Environment Variables.

17896 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
17897 Default.

17898 **STDOUT**
17899 The **–print** primary shall cause the current pathnames to be written to standard output. The
17900 format shall be:

17901 `"%s\n", <path>`

17902 **STDERR**
17903 The **–ok** primary shall write a prompt to standard error containing at least the *utility_name* to be
17904 invoked and the current pathname. In the POSIX locale, the last non-<blank> in the prompt shall
17905 be `'?'`. The exact format used is unspecified.

17906 Otherwise, the standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

17907 **OUTPUT FILES**
17908 None.

17909 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
17910 None.

17911 **EXIT STATUS**
17912 The following exit values shall be returned:

17913 0 All *path* operands were traversed successfully.

17914 >0 An error occurred.

17915 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
17916 Default.

17917 **APPLICATION USAGE**
17918 When used in operands, pattern matching notation, semicolons, opening parentheses, and
17919 closing parentheses are special to the shell and must be quoted (see Section 2.2 (on page 30)).

17920 The bit that is traditionally used for sticky (historically 01000) is specified in the **–perm** primary
17921 using the octal number argument form. Since this bit is not defined by this volume of
17922 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, applications must not assume that it actually refers to the traditional sticky
17923 bit.

17924 **EXAMPLES**

17925 1. The following commands are equivalent:

17926 ```
17927 find .
      find . –print
```

17928 They both write out the entire directory hierarchy from the current directory.

17929 2. The following command:

17930 ```
      find / \( –name tmp –o –name '*.xx' \) –atime +7 –exec rm {} \;
```

17931 removes all files named **tmp** or ending in **.xx** that have not been accessed for seven or
17932 more 24-hour periods.

17933 3. The following command:

17934 ```
      find . –perm –o+w,+s
```

17935 prints (–**print** is assumed) the names of all files in or below the current directory, with all
17936 of the file permission bits S_ISUID, S_ISGID, and S_IWOTH set.

17937 4. The following command:

17938 ```
      find . –name SCCS –prune –o –print
```

17939 recursively prints pathnames of all files in the current directory and below, but skips
17940 directories named SCCS and files in them.

17941 5. The following command:

17942 ```
      find . –print –name SCCS –prune
```

17943 behaves as in the previous example, but prints the names of the SCCS directories.

17944 6. The following command is roughly equivalent to the –**nt** extension to *test*:

17945 ```
      if [ –n "$(find file1 –prune –newer file2)" ]; then
17946      printf %s\\n "file1 is newer than file2"
      fi
17947 ```

17948 7. The descriptions of –**atime**, –**ctime**, and –**mtime** use the terminology *n* "86 400 second
17949 periods (days)". For example, a file accessed at 23:59 is selected by:

17950 ```
      find . –atime –1 –print
```

17951 at 00:01 the next day (less than 24 hours later, not more than one day ago); the midnight
17952 boundary between days has no effect on the 24-hour calculation.

17953 8. The following command:

17954 ```
      find . ! –name . –prune –name '*.old' –exec \
17955   sh –c 'mv "$@" ../old/' sh {} +
```

17956 performs the same task as:

17957 ```
      mv ./*.old ./.*.old ../old/
```

17958 while avoiding an "Argument list too long" error if there are a large number of files
17959 ending with **.old** (and avoiding "No such file or directory" errors if no files match **./*.old**
17960 or **./.*.old**).

17961 The alternative:

17962 ```
      find . ! –name . –prune –name '*.old' –exec mv {} ../old/ \;
```

17963 is less efficient if there are many files to move because it executes one *mv* command per

  
```

file.

RATIONALE

The **–a** operator was retained as an optional operator for compatibility with historical shell scripts, even though it is redundant with expression concatenation.

The descriptions of the `'–'` modifier on the *mode* and *onum* arguments to the **–perm** primary agree with historical practice on BSD and System V implementations. System V and BSD documentation both describe it in terms of checking additional bits; in fact, it uses the same bits, but checks for having at least all of the matching bits set instead of having exactly the matching bits set.

The exact format of the interactive prompts is unspecified. Only the general nature of the contents of prompts are specified because:

- Implementations may desire more descriptive prompts than those used on historical implementations.
- Since the historical prompt strings do not terminate with <newline>s, there is no portable way for another program to interact with the prompts of this utility via pipes.

Therefore, an application using this prompting option relies on the system to provide the most suitable dialog directly with the user, based on the general guidelines specified.

The **–name** *file* operand was changed to use the shell pattern matching notation so that *find* is consistent with other utilities using pattern matching.

The **–size** operand refers to the size of a file, rather than the number of blocks it may occupy in the file system. The intent is that the *st_size* field defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x should be used, not the *st_blocks* found in historical implementations. There are at least two reasons for this:

1. In both System V and BSD, *find* only uses *st_size* in size calculations for the operands specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. (BSD uses *st_blocks* only when processing the **–ls** primary.)
2. Users usually think of file size in terms of bytes, which is also the unit used by the *ls* utility for the output from the **–l** option. (In both System V and BSD, *ls* uses *st_size* for the **–l** option size field and uses *st_blocks* for the *ls* **–s** calculations. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify *ls* **–s**.)

The descriptions of **–atime**, **–ctime**, and **–mtime** were changed from the SVID description of *n* "days" to *n* being the result of the integer division of the time difference in seconds by 86 400. The description is also different in terms of the exact timeframe for the *n* case (*versus* the +*n* or –*n*), but it matches all known historical implementations. It refers to one 86 400 second period in the past, not any time from the beginning of that period to the current time. For example, **–atime** 2 is true if the file was accessed any time in the period from 72 hours to 48 hours ago.

Historical implementations do not modify `"{}"` when it appears as a substring of an **–exec** or **–ok** *utility_name* or argument string. There have been numerous user requests for this extension, so this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x allows the desired behavior. At least one recent implementation does support this feature, but encountered several problems in managing memory allocation and dealing with multiple occurrences of `"{}"` in a string while it was being developed, so it is not yet required behavior.

Assuming the presence of **–print** was added to correct a historical pitfall that plagues novice users, it is entirely upwards-compatible from the historical System V *find* utility. In its simplest form (*find directory*), it could be confused with the historical BSD fast *find*. The BSD developers agreed that adding **–print** as a default expression was the correct decision and have added the fast *find* functionality within a new utility called *locate*.

Historically, the –**L** option was implemented using the primary –**follow**. The –**H** and –**L** options were added for two reasons. First, they offer a finer granularity of control and consistency with other programs that walk file hierarchies. Second, the –**follow** primary always evaluated to true. As they were historically really global variables that took effect before the traversal began, some valid expressions had unexpected results. An example is the expression –**print** –**o** –**follow**. Because –**print** always evaluates to true, the standard order of evaluation implies that –**follow** would never be evaluated. This was never the case. Historical practice for the –**follow** primary, however, is not consistent. Some implementations always follow symbolic links on the command line whether –**follow** is specified or not. Others follow symbolic links on the command line only if –**follow** is specified. Both behaviors are provided by the –**H** and –**L** options, but scripts using the current –**follow** primary would be broken if the –**follow** option is specified to work either way.

Since the –**L** option resolves all symbolic links and the –**type** *l* primary is true for symbolic links that still exist after symbolic links have been resolved, the command:

```
find –L . –type l
```

prints a list of symbolic links reachable from the current directory that do not resolve to accessible files.

A feature of SVR4's *find* utility was the –**exec** primary's **+** terminator. This allowed filenames containing special characters (especially <newline>s) to be grouped together without the problems that occur if such filenames are piped to *xargs*. Other implementations have added other ways to get around this problem, notably a –**print0** primary that wrote filenames with a null byte terminator. This was considered here, but not adopted. Using a null terminator meant that any utility that was going to process *find*'s –**print0** output had to add a new option to parse the null terminators it would now be reading.

The "`–exec ... {} +`" syntax adopted was a result of IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #210. It should be noted that this is an incompatible change to the ISO/IEC 9899: 1999 standard. For example, the following command prints all files with a '`–`' after their name if they are regular files, and a '`+`' otherwise:

```
find / –type f –exec echo {} – ';' –o –exec echo {} + ';'
```

The change invalidates usage like this. Even though the previous standard stated that this usage would work, in practice many did not support it and the standard developers felt it better to now state that this was not allowable.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.2 (on page 30), Section 2.13 (on page 62), Section 2.14 (on page 64), *chmod*, *pax*, *sh*, *test*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *getgrgid*( ), *getpwuid*( ), *stat*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The –**perm** [–]*onum* primary is supported.

The *find* utility is aligned with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard, to include processing of symbolic links and changes to the description of the **atime**, **ctime**, and **mtime** operands.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #210 is applied, extending the –**exec** operand.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/13 is applied, updating the RATIONALE section to be consistent with the normative text.

Issue 7

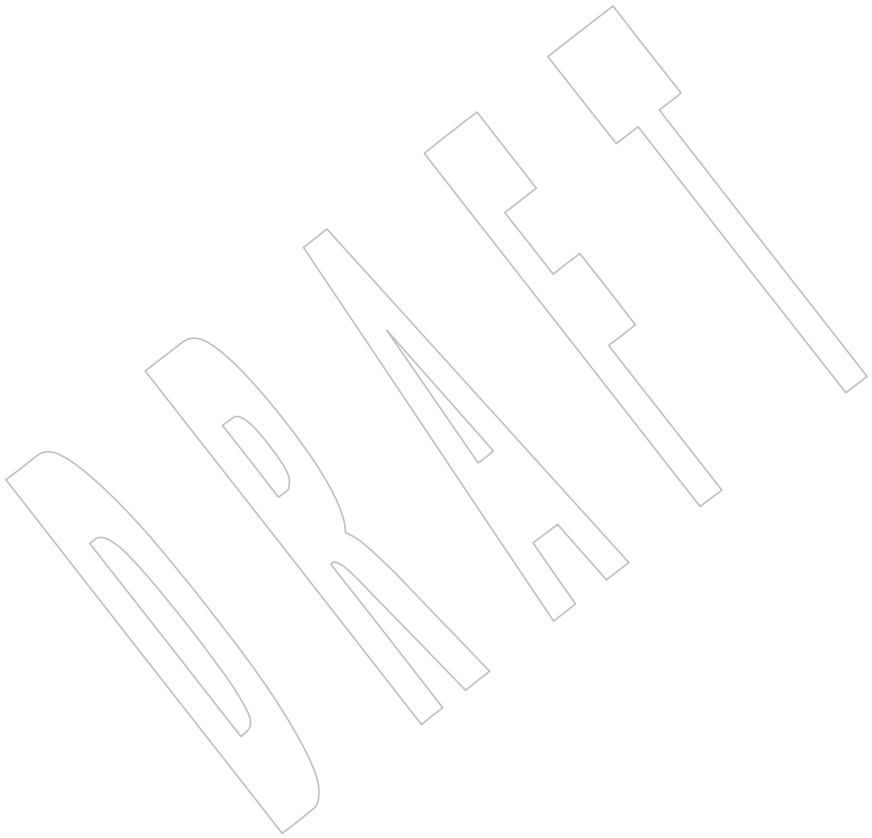
SD5-XCU-ERN-48 is applied, clarifying the –**L** option in the case that the referenced file does not exist.

SD5-XCU-ERN-89 is applied, updating the OPERANDS section.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-117 is applied, clarifying the –**perm** operand.

SD5-XCU-ERN-122 is applied, adding a new EXAMPLE.



NAME

fold — filter for folding lines

SYNOPSIS

```
fold [–bs] [–w width] [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *fold* utility is a filter that shall fold lines from its input files, breaking the lines to have a maximum of *width* column positions (or bytes, if the **–b** option is specified). Lines shall be broken by the insertion of a <newline> such that each output line (referred to later in this section as a *segment*) is the maximum width possible that does not exceed the specified number of column positions (or bytes). A line shall not be broken in the middle of a character. The behavior is undefined if *width* is less than the number of columns any single character in the input would occupy.

If the <carriage-return>s, <backspace>s, or <tab>s are encountered in the input, and the **–b** option is not specified, they shall be treated specially:

<backspace> The current count of line width shall be decremented by one, although the count never shall become negative. The *fold* utility shall not insert a <newline> immediately before or after any <backspace>.

<carriage-return>
The current count of line width shall be set to zero. The *fold* utility shall not insert a <newline> immediately before or after any <carriage-return>.

<tab> Each <tab> encountered shall advance the column position pointer to the next tab stop. Tab stops shall be at each column position *n* such that *n* modulo 8 equals 1.

OPTIONS

The *fold* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–b Count *width* in bytes rather than column positions.

–s If a segment of a line contains a <blank> within the first *width* column positions (or bytes), break the line after the last such <blank> meeting the width constraints. If there is no <blank> meeting the requirements, the **–s** option shall have no effect for that output segment of the input line.

–w *width* Specify the maximum line length, in column positions (or bytes if **–b** is specified). The results are unspecified if *width* is not a positive decimal number. The default value shall be 80.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a text file to be folded. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input shall be used.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES section.

18109 **INPUT FILES**

18110 If the **–b** option is specified, the input files shall be text files except that the lines are not limited
18111 to {LINE_MAX} bytes in length. If the **–b** option is not specified, the input files shall be text files.

18112 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

18113 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *fold*:

18114 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
18115 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
18116 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
18117 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

18118 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
18119 internationalization variables.

18120 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
18121 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
18122 arguments and input files), and for the determination of the width in column
18123 positions each character would occupy on a constant-width font output device.

18124 *LC_MESSAGES*
18125 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
18126 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

18127 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

18128 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

18129 Default.

18130 **STDOUT**

18131 The standard output shall be a file containing a sequence of characters whose order shall be
18132 preserved from the input files, possibly with inserted <newline>s.

18133 **STDERR**

18134 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

18135 **OUTPUT FILES**

18136 None.

18137 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

18138 None.

18139 **EXIT STATUS**

18140 The following exit values shall be returned:

18141 0 All input files were processed successfully.

18142 >0 An error occurred.

18143 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

18144 Default.

18145 **APPLICATION USAGE**

18146 The *cut* and *fold* utilities can be used to create text files out of files with arbitrary line lengths.
18147 The *cut* utility should be used when the number of lines (or records) needs to remain constant.
18148 The *fold* utility should be used when the contents of long lines need to be kept contiguous.

18149 The *fold* utility is frequently used to send text files to printers that truncate, rather than fold, lines
18150 wider than the printer is able to print (usually 80 or 132 column positions).

EXAMPLES

An example invocation that submits a file of possibly long lines to the printer (under the assumption that the user knows the line width of the printer to be assigned by *lp*):

```
fold –w 132 bigfile | lp
```

RATIONALE

Although terminal input in canonical processing mode requires the erase character (frequently set to <backspace>) to erase the previous character (not byte or column position), terminal output is not buffered and is extremely difficult, if not impossible, to parse correctly; the interpretation depends entirely on the physical device that actually displays/prints/stores the output. In all known internationalized implementations, the utilities producing output for mixed column-width output assume that a <backspace> backs up one column position and outputs enough <backspace>s to return to the start of the character when <backspace> is used to provide local line motions to support underlining and emboldening operations. Since *fold* without the **–b** option is dealing with these same constraints, <backspace> is always treated as backing up one column position rather than backing up one character.

Historical versions of the *fold* utility assumed 1 byte was one character and occupied one column position when written out. This is no longer always true. Since the most common usage of *fold* is believed to be folding long lines for output to limited-length output devices, this capability was preserved as the default case. The **–b** option was added so that applications could *fold* files with arbitrary length lines into text files that could then be processed by the standard utilities. Note that although the width for the **–b** option is in bytes, a line is never split in the middle of a character. (It is unspecified what happens if a width is specified that is too small to hold a single character found in the input followed by a <newline>.)

The tab stops are hardcoded to be every eighth column to meet historical practice. No new method of specifying other tab stops was invented.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

cut

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

18186 **NAME**

18187 fort77 — FORTRAN compiler (**FORTRAN**)

18188 **SYNOPSIS**

18189 FD
```
fort77 [–c] [–g] [–L directory]... [–O optlevel] [–o outfile] [–s]
    [–w] operand...
```
18190

18191 **DESCRIPTION**

18192 The *fort77* utility is the interface to the FORTRAN compilation system; it shall accept the full
18193 FORTRAN-77 language defined by the ANSI X3.9-1978 standard. The system conceptually
18194 consists of a compiler and link editor. The files referenced by *operand*s are compiled and linked
18195 to produce an executable file. It is unspecified whether the linking occurs entirely within the
18196 operation of *fort77*; some implementations may produce objects that are not fully resolved until
18197 the file is executed.

18198 If the **–c** option is present, for all pathname operands of the form *file***.f**, the files:

18199 `$(basename pathname.f).o`

18200 shall be created or overwritten as the result of successful compilation. If the **–c** option is not
18201 specified, it is unspecified whether such **.o** files are created or deleted for the *file***.f** operands.

18202 If there are no options that prevent link editing (such as **–c**) and all operands compile and link
18203 without error, the resulting executable file shall be written into the file named by the **–o** option
18204 (if present) or to the file **a.out**. The executable file shall be created as specified in the System
18205 Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, except that the file permissions shall be set to:

18206 S_IRWXO | S_IRWXG | S_IRWXU

18207 and that the bits specified by the *umask* of the process shall be cleared.

18208 **OPTIONS**

18209 The *fort77* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
18210 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that:

18211 • The **–l** *library* operands have the format of options, but their position within a list of
18212 operands affects the order in which libraries are searched.

18213 • The order of specifying the multiple **–L** options is significant.

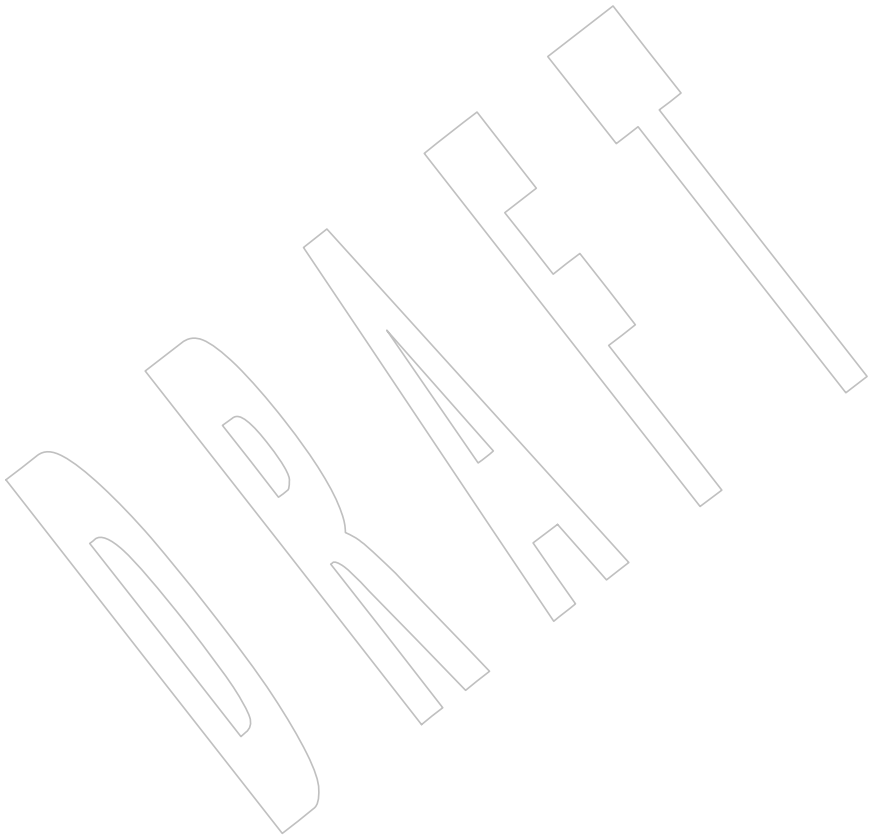
18214 • Conforming applications shall specify each option separately; that is, grouping option
18215 letters (for example, **–cg**) need not be recognized by all implementations.

18216 The following options shall be supported:

18217 **–c** Suppress the link-edit phase of the compilation, and do not remove any object files
18218 that are produced.

18219 **–g** Produce symbolic information in the object or executable files; the nature of this
18220 information is unspecified, and may be modified by implementation-defined
18221 interactions with other options.

18222 **–s** Produce object or executable files, or both, from which symbolic and other
18223 information not required for proper execution using the *exec* family of functions
18224 defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x has been removed
18225 (stripped). If both **–g** and **–s** options are present, the action taken is unspecified.



ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *fort77*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

TMPDIR Determine the pathname that should override the default directory for temporary files, if any.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages. If more than one *file* operand ending in **.f** (or possibly other unspecified suffixes) is given, for each such file:

```
"%s:\n", <file>
```

may be written to allow identification of the diagnostic message with the appropriate input file.

This utility may produce warning messages about certain conditions that do not warrant returning an error (non-zero) exit value.

OUTPUT FILES

Object files, listing files, and executable files shall be produced in unspecified formats.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

Standard Libraries

The *fort77* utility shall recognize the following **–l** operand for the standard library:

–l f This library contains all functions referenced in the ANSI X3.9-1978 standard. This operand shall not be required to be present to cause a search of this library.

In the absence of options that inhibit invocation of the link editor, such as **–c**, the *fort77* utility shall cause the equivalent of a **–l f** operand to be passed to the link editor as the last **–l** operand, causing it to be searched after all other object files and libraries are loaded.

It is unspecified whether the library **libf.a** exists as a regular file. The implementation may accept as **–l** operands names of objects that do not exist as regular files.

18310 **External Symbols**

18311 The FORTRAN compiler and link editor shall support the significance of external symbols up to
18312 a length of at least 31 bytes; case folding is permitted. The action taken upon encountering
18313 symbols exceeding the implementation-defined maximum symbol length is unspecified.

18314 The compiler and link editor shall support a minimum of 511 external symbols per source or
18315 object file, and a minimum of 4 095 external symbols total. A diagnostic message is written to
18316 standard output if the implementation-defined limit is exceeded; other actions are unspecified.

18317 **EXIT STATUS**

18318 The following exit values shall be returned:

18319 0 Successful compilation or link edit.

18320 >0 An error occurred.

18321 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

18322 When *fort77* encounters a compilation error, it shall write a diagnostic to standard error and
18323 continue to compile other source code operands. It shall return a non-zero exit status, but it is
18324 implementation-defined whether an object module is created. If the link edit is unsuccessful, a
18325 diagnostic message shall be written to standard error, and *fort77* shall exit with a non-zero status.

18326 **APPLICATION USAGE**

18327 None.

18328 **EXAMPLES**

18329 The following usage example compiles **xyz.f** and creates the executable file **foo**:

18330 ```
fort77 –o foo xyz.f
```

18331 The following example compiles **xyz.f** and creates the object file **xyz.o**:

18332 ```
fort77 –c xyz.f
```

18333 The following example compiles **xyz.f** and creates the executable file **a.out**:

18334 ```
fort77 xyz.f
```

18335 The following example compiles **xyz.f**, links it with **b.o**, and creates the executable **a.out**:

18336 ```
fort77 xyz.f b.o
```

18337 **RATIONALE**

18338 The name of this utility was chosen as *fort77* to parallel the renaming of the C compiler. The
18339 name *f77* was not chosen to avoid problems with historical implementations. The
18340 ANSI X3.9-1978 standard was selected as a normative reference because the ISO/IEC version of
18341 FORTRAN-77 has been superseded by the ISO/IEC 1539: 1990 standard (Fortran-90).

18342 The file inclusion and symbol definition **#define** mechanisms used by the *c99* utility were not
18343 included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x—even though they are commonly
18344 implemented—since there is no requirement that the FORTRAN compiler use the C
18345 preprocessor.

18346 The **–onetrip** option was not included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, even though
18347 many historical compilers support it, because it is derived from FORTRAN-66; it is an
18348 anachronism that should not be perpetuated.

18349 Some implementations produce compilation listings. This aspect of FORTRAN has been left
18350 unspecified because there was controversy concerning the various methods proposed for
18351 implementing it: a **–V** option overlapped with historical vendor practice and a naming
18352 convention of creating files with **.l** suffixes collided with historical *lex* file naming practice.

18353 There is no **–I** option in this version of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to specify a directory

for file inclusion. An INCLUDE directive has been a part of the Fortran-90 discussions, but an interface supporting that standard is not in the current scope.

It is noted that many FORTRAN compilers produce an object module even when compilation errors occur; during a subsequent compilation, the compiler may patch the object module rather than recompiling all the code. Consequently, it is left to the implementor whether or not an object file is created.

A reference to MIL-STD-1753 was removed from an early proposal in response to a request from the POSIX FORTRAN-binding standard developers. It was not the intention of the standard developers to require certification of the FORTRAN compiler, and IEEE Std 1003.9-1992 does not specify the military standard or any special preprocessing requirements. Furthermore, use of that document would have been inappropriate for an international standard.

The specification of optimization has been subject to changes through early proposals. At one time, **−O** and **−N** were Booleans: optimize and do not optimize (with an unspecified default). Some historical practice led this to be changed to:

−O 0 No optimization.

−O 1 Some level of optimization.

−O *n* Other, unspecified levels of optimization.

It is not always clear whether "good code generation" is the same thing as optimization. Simple optimizations of local actions do not usually affect the semantics of a program. The **−O** 0 option has been included to accommodate the very particular nature of scientific calculations in a highly optimized environment; compilers make errors. Some degree of optimization is expected, even if it is not documented here, and the ability to shut it off completely could be important when porting an application. An implementation may treat **−O** 0 as "do less than normal" if it wishes, but this is only meaningful if any of the operations it performs can affect the semantics of a program. It is highly dependent on the implementation whether doing less than normal is logical. It is not the intent of the **−O** 0 option to ask for inefficient code generation, but rather to assure that any semantically visible optimization is suppressed.

The specification of standard library access is consistent with the C compiler specification. Implementations are not required to have **/usr/lib/libf.a**, as many historical implementations do, but if not they are required to recognize **f** as a token.

External symbol size limits are in normative text; conforming applications need to know these limits. However, the minimum maximum symbol length should be taken as a constraint on a conforming application, not on an implementation, and consequently the action taken for a symbol exceeding the limit is unspecified. The minimum size for the external symbol table was added for similar reasons.

The CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS section clearly specifies the behavior of the compiler when compilation or link-edit errors occur. The behavior of several historical implementations was examined, and the choice was made to be silent on the status of the executable, or **a.out**, file in the face of compiler or linker errors. If a linker writes the executable file, then links it on disk with *lseek*( )s and *write*( )s, the partially linked executable file can be left on disk and its execute bits turned off if the link edit fails. However, if the linker links the image in memory before writing the file to disk, it need not touch the executable file (if it already exists) because the link edit fails. Since both approaches are historical practice, a conforming application shall rely on the exit status of *fort77*, rather than on the existence or mode of the executable file.

The **−g** and **−s** options are not specified as mutually-exclusive. Historically these two options have been mutually-exclusive, but because both are so loosely specified, it seemed appropriate to leave their interaction unspecified.

The requirement that conforming applications specify compiler options separately is to reserve

the multi-character option name space for vendor-specific compiler options, which are known to exist in many historical implementations. Implementations are not required to recognize, for example, **–gc** as if it were **–g –c**; nor are they forbidden from doing so. The SYNOPSIS shows all of the options separately to highlight this requirement on applications.

Echoing filenames to standard error is considered a diagnostic message because it would otherwise be difficult to associate an error message with the erring file. They are described with "may" to allow implementations to use other methods of identifying files and to parallel the description in *c99*.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

A compilation system based on the ISO/IEC 1539: 1990 standard (Fortran-90) may be considered for a future version; it may have a different utility name from *fort77*.

SEE ALSO

ar, *asa*, *c99*, *umask*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *exec*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the FORTRAN Development Utilities option.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

18422 **NAME**

18423 fuser — list process IDs of all processes that have one or more files open

18424 **SYNOPSIS**

18425 XSI `fuser [–cfu] file...`

18426 **DESCRIPTION**

18427 The *fuser* utility shall write to standard output the process IDs of processes running on the local
18428 system that have one or more named files open. For block special devices, all processes using
18429 any file on that device are listed.

18430 The *fuser* utility shall write to standard error additional information about the named files
18431 indicating how the file is being used.

18432 Any output for processes running on remote systems that have a named file open is unspecified.

18433 A user may need appropriate privilege to invoke the *fuser* utility.

18434 **OPTIONS**

18435 The *fuser* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
18436 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

18437 The following options shall be supported:

18438 **–c** The file is treated as a mount point and the utility shall report on any files open in
18439 the file system.

18440 **–f** The report shall be only for the named files.

18441 **–u** The user name, in parentheses, associated with each process ID written to standard
18442 output shall be written to standard error.

18443 **OPERANDS**

18444 The following operand shall be supported:

18445 *file* A pathname on which the file or file system is to be reported.

18446 **STDIN**

18447 Not used.

18448 **INPUT FILES**

18449 The user database.

18450 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

18451 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *fuser*:

18452 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
18453 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
18454 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
18455 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

18456 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
18457 internationalization variables.

18458 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
18459 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
18460 arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The *fuser* utility shall write the process ID for each process using each file given as an operand to standard output in the following format:

`"%d", <process_id>`

STDERR
The *fuser* utility shall write diagnostic messages to standard error.

The *fuser* utility also shall write the following to standard error:

- The pathname of each named file is written followed immediately by a colon.
- For each process ID written to standard output, the character `'c'` shall be written to standard error if the process is using the file as its current directory and the character `'r'` shall be written to standard error if the process is using the file as its root directory. Implementations may write other alphabetic characters to indicate other uses of files.
- When the **–u** option is specified, characters indicating the use of the file shall be followed immediately by the user name, in parentheses, corresponding to the real user ID of the process. If the user name cannot be resolved from the real user ID of the process, the real user ID of the process shall be written instead of the user name.

When standard output and standard error are directed to the same file, the output shall be interleaved so that the filename appears at the start of each line, followed by the process ID and characters indicating the use of the file. Then, if the **–u** option is specified, the user name or user ID for each process using that file shall be written.

A <newline> shall be written to standard error after the last output described above for each *file* operand.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

18499 **APPLICATION USAGE**

18500 None.

18501 **EXAMPLES**

18502 The command:

18503 `fuser –fu .`

18504 writes to standard output the process IDs of processes that are using the current directory and
18505 writes to standard error an indication of how those processes are using the directory and the
18506 user names associated with the processes that are using the current directory.

18507 `fuser –c <mount point>`

18508 writes to standard output the process IDs of processes that are using any file in the file system
18509 which is mounted on <*mount point*> and writes to standard error an indication of how those
18510 processes are using the files.

18511 `fuser <mount point>`

18512 writes to standard output the process IDs of processes that are using the file which is named by
18513 <*mount point*> and writes to standard error an indication of how those processes are using the
18514 file.

18515 `fuser <block device>`

18516 writes to standard output the process IDs of processes that are using any file which is on the
18517 device named by <*block device*> and writes to standard error an indication of how those
18518 processes are using the file.

18519 `fuser –-f <block device>`

18520 writes to standard output the process IDs of processes that are using the file <*block device*> itself
18521 and writes to standard error an indication of how those processes are using the file.

18522 **RATIONALE**

18523 The definition of the *fuser* utility follows existing practice.

18524 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

18525 None.

18526 **SEE ALSO**

18527 None.

18528 **CHANGE HISTORY**

18529 First released in Issue 5.

18530 **Issue 7**

18531 SD5-XCU-ERN-90 is applied, updating the EXAMPLES section.

18532 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

gencat — generate a formatted message catalog

SYNOPSIS

```
gencat catfile msgfile...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *gencat* utility shall merge the message text source file *msgfile* into a formatted message catalog *catfile*. The file *catfile* shall be created if it does not already exist. If *catfile* does exist, its messages shall be included in the new *catfile*. If set and message numbers collide, the new message text defined in *msgfile* shall replace the old message text currently contained in *catfile*.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

catfile A pathname of the formatted message catalog. If `'−'` is specified, standard output shall be used. The format of the message catalog produced is unspecified.

msgfile A pathname of a message text source file. If `'−'` is specified for an instance of *msgfile*, standard input shall be used. The format of message text source files is defined in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

STDIN

The standard input shall not be used unless a *msgfile* operand is specified as `'−'`.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *gencat*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall not be used unless the *catfile* operand is specified as `'−'`.

18574 **STDERR**

18575 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

18576 **OUTPUT FILES**

18577 None.

18578 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

18579 The content of a message text file shall be in the format defined as follows. Note that the fields of
18580 a message text source line are separated by a single <blank>. Any other <blank>s are
18581 considered to be part of the subsequent field.

18582 **$set** *n comment*

18583 This line specifies the set identifier of the following messages until the next **$set** or
18584 end-of-file appears. The *n* denotes the set identifier, which is defined as a number
18585 in the range [1, {NL_SETMAX}] (see the **<limits.h>** header defined in the Base
18586 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x). The application shall ensure that set
18587 identifiers are presented in ascending order within a single source file, but need
18588 not be contiguous. Any string following the set identifier shall be treated as a
18589 comment. If no **$set** directive is specified in a message text source file, all messages
18590 shall be located in an implementation-defined default message set NL_SETD (see
18591 the **<nl_types.h>** header defined in the Base Definitions volume of
18592 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x).

18593 **$delset** *n comment*

18594 This line deletes message set *n* from an existing message catalog. The *n* denotes the
18595 set number [1, {NL_SETMAX}]. Any string following the set number shall be
18596 treated as a comment.

18597 **$** *comment* A line beginning with '$' followed by a <blank> shall be treated as a comment.

18598 *m message-text*

18599 The *m* denotes the message identifier, which is defined as a number in the range [1,
18600 {NL_MSGMAX}] (see the **<limits.h>** header). The *message-text* shall be stored in the
18601 message catalog with the set identifier specified by the last **$set** directive, and with
18602 message identifier *m*. If the *message-text* is empty, and a <blank> field separator is
18603 present, an empty string shall be stored in the message catalog. If a message source
18604 line has a message number, but neither a field separator nor *message-text*, the
18605 existing message with that number (if any) shall be deleted from the catalog. The
18606 application shall ensure that message identifiers are in ascending order within a
18607 single set, but need not be contiguous. The application shall ensure that the length
18608 of *message-text* is in the range [0, {NL_TEXTMAX}] (see the **<limits.h>** header).

18609 **$quote** *n* This line specifies an optional quote character *c*, which can be used to surround
18610 *message-text* so that trailing spaces or null (empty) messages are visible in a
18611 message source line. By default, or if an empty **$quote** directive is supplied, no
18612 quoting of *message-text* shall be recognized.

18613 Empty lines in a message text source file shall be ignored. The effects of lines starting with any
18614 character other than those defined above are implementation-defined.

18615 Text strings can contain the special characters and escape sequences defined in the following
18616 table:

Description	Symbol	Sequence
<newline>	NL(LF)	`\n`
Horizontal-tab	HT	`\t`
<vertical-tab>	VT	`\v`
<backspace>	BS	`\b`
<carriage-return>	CR	`\r`
<form-feed>	FF	`\f`
Backslash	`\`	`\\`
Bit pattern	`ddd`	`\ddd`

The escape sequence `"\ddd"` consists of backslash followed by one, two, or three octal digits, which shall be taken to specify the value of the desired character. If the character following a backslash is not one of those specified, the backslash shall be ignored.

Backslash (`'\'`) followed by a <newline> is also used to continue a string on the following line. Thus, the following two lines describe a single message string:

```
1 This line continues \
to the next line
```

which shall be equivalent to:

```
1 This line continues to the next line
```

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Message catalogs produced by *gencat* are binary encoded, meaning that their portability cannot be guaranteed between different types of machine. Thus, just as C programs need to be recompiled for each type of machine, so message catalogs must be recreated via *gencat*.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

iconv, the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, **<limits.h>**, **<nl_types.h>**

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 3.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

The *gencat* utility is moved from the XSI option to the Base.

18659 **NAME**

18660 get — get a version of an SCCS file (**DEVELOPMENT**)

18661 **SYNOPSIS**

18662 XSI `get [–begkmnlLpst] [–c cutoff] [–i list] [–r SID] [–x list] file...`

18663 **DESCRIPTION**

18664 The *get* utility shall generate a text file from each named SCCS *file* according to the specifications
18665 given by its options.

18666 The generated text shall normally be written into a file called the **g-file** whose name is derived
18667 from the SCCS filename by simply removing the leading `"s."`.

18668 **OPTIONS**

18669 The *get* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
18670 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

18671 The following options shall be supported:

18672 –**r** *SID* Indicate the SCCS Identification String (SID) of the version (delta) of an SCCS file
18673 to be retrieved. The table shows, for the most useful cases, what version of an
18674 SCCS file is retrieved (as well as the SID of the version to be eventually created by
18675 *delta* if the –**e** option is also used), as a function of the SID specified.

18676 –**c** *cutoff* Indicate the *cutoff* date-time, in the form:

18677 *YY*[*MM*[*DD*[*HH*[*MM*[*SS*]]]]]

18678 For the *YY* component, values in the range [69,99] shall refer to years 1969 to 1999
18679 inclusive, and values in the range [00,68] shall refer to years 2000 to 2068 inclusive.

18680 **Note:** It is expected that in a future version of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x the default century
18681 inferred from a 2-digit year will change. (This would apply to all commands
18682 accepting a 2-digit year as input.)

18683 No changes (deltas) to the SCCS file that were created after the specified *cutoff*
18684 date-time shall be included in the generated text file. Units omitted from the date-
18685 time default to their maximum possible values; for example, –**c** 7502 is equivalent
18686 to –**c** 750228235959.

18687 Any number of non-numeric characters may separate the various 2-digit pieces of
18688 the *cutoff* date-time. This feature allows the user to specify a *cutoff* date in the form:
18689 –**c** "77/2/2 9:22:25".

18690 –**e** Indicate that the *get* is for the purpose of editing or making a change (delta) to the
18691 SCCS file via a subsequent use of *delta*. The –**e** option used in a *get* for a particular
18692 version (SID) of the SCCS file shall prevent further *get* commands from editing on
18693 the same SID until *delta* is executed or the **j** (joint edit) flag is set in the SCCS file.
18694 Concurrent use of *get* –**e** for different SIDs is always allowed.

18695 If the **g-file** generated by *get* with a –**e** option is accidentally ruined in the process
18696 of editing, it may be regenerated by re-executing the *get* command with the –**k**
18697 option in place of the –**e** option.

18698 SCCS file protection specified via the ceiling, floor, and authorized user list stored
18699 in the SCCS file shall be enforced when the –**e** option is used.

18700 **–b** Use with the **–e** option to indicate that the new delta should have an SID in a new
18701 branch as shown in the table below. This option shall be ignored if the **b** flag is not
18702 present in the file or if the retrieved delta is not a leaf delta. (A leaf delta is one that
18703 has no successors on the SCCS file tree.)

18704 **Note:** A branch delta may always be created from a non-leaf delta.

18705 **–i** *list* Indicate a *list* of deltas to be included (forced to be applied) in the creation of the
18706 generated file. The *list* has the following syntax:

18707 `<list> ::= <range> | <list> , <range>`
18708 `<range> ::= SID | SID – SID`

18709 SID, the SCCS Identification of a delta, may be in any form shown in the "SID
18710 Specified" column of the table in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section, except
18711 that the result of supplying a partial SID is unspecified. A diagnostic message shall
18712 be written if the first SID in the range is not an ancestor of the second SID in the
18713 range.

18714 **–x** *list* Indicate a *list* of deltas to be excluded (forced not to be applied) in the creation of
18715 the generated file. See the **–i** option for the *list* format.

18716 **–k** Suppress replacement of identification keywords (see below) in the retrieved text
18717 by their value. The **–k** option shall be implied by the **–e** option.

18718 **–l** Write a delta summary into an **l-file**.

18719 **–L** Write a delta summary to standard output. All informative output that normally is
18720 written to standard output shall be written to standard error instead, unless the **–s**
18721 option is used, in which case it shall be suppressed.

18722 **–p** Write the text retrieved from the SCCS file to the standard output. No **g-file** shall
18723 be created. All informative output that normally goes to the standard output shall
18724 go to standard error instead, unless the **–s** option is used, in which case it shall
18725 disappear.

18726 **–s** Suppress all informative output normally written to standard output. However,
18727 fatal error messages (which shall always be written to the standard error) shall
18728 remain unaffected.

18729 **–m** Precede each text line retrieved from the SCCS file by the SID of the delta that
18730 inserted the text line in the SCCS file. The format shall be:

18731 `"%s\t%s", <SID>, <text line>`

18732 **–n** Precede each generated text line with the %**M**% identification keyword value (see
18733 below). The format shall be:

18734 `"%s\t%s", <%M% value>, <text line>`

18735 When both the **–m** and **–n** options are used, the <*text line*> shall be replaced by the
18736 **–m** option-generated format.

18737 **–g** Suppress the actual retrieval of text from the SCCS file. It is primarily used to
18738 generate an **l-file**, or to verify the existence of a particular SID.

18739 **–t** Use to access the most recently created (top) delta in a given release (for example,
18740 **–r 1**), or release and level (for example, **–r 1.2**).

18741 **OPERANDS**

18742 The following operands shall be supported:

18743 *file* A pathname of an existing SCCS file or a directory. If *file* is a directory, the *get*
18744 utility shall behave as though each file in the directory were specified as a named
18745 file, except that non-SCCS files (last component of the pathname does not begin
18746 with **s.**) and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

18747 If exactly one *file* operand appears, and it is `'-'`, the standard input shall be read;
18748 each line of the standard input is taken to be the name of an SCCS file to be
18749 processed. Non-SCCS files and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

18750 **STDIN**

18751 The standard input shall be a text file used only if the *file* operand is specified as `'-'`. Each line
18752 of the text file shall be interpreted as an SCCS pathname.

18753 **INPUT FILES**

18754 The SCCS files shall be files of an unspecified format.

18755 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

18756 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *get*:

18757 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
18758 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
18759 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
18760 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

18761 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
18762 internationalization variables.

18763 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
18764 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
18765 arguments and input files).

18766 *LC_MESSAGES*

18767 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
18768 diagnostic messages written to standard error, and informative messages written
18769 to standard output (or standard error, if the **–p** option is used).

18770 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

18771 *TZ* Determine the timezone in which the times and dates written in the SCCS file are
18772 evaluated. If the *TZ* variable is unset or NULL, an unspecified system default
18773 timezone is used.

18774 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

18775 Default.

18776 **STDOUT**

18777 For each file processed, *get* shall write to standard output the SID being accessed and the
18778 number of lines retrieved from the SCCS file, in the following format:

18779 `"%s\n%d lines\n", <SID>, <number of lines>`

18780 If the **–e** option is used, the SID of the delta to be made shall appear after the SID accessed and
18781 before the number of lines generated, in the POSIX locale:

18782 `"%s\nnew delta %s\n%d lines\n", <SID accessed>,`
18783 `<SID to be made>, <number of lines>`

18784 If there is more than one named file or if a directory or standard input is named, each pathname
18785 shall be written before each of the lines shown in one of the preceding formats:

18786 `"\n%s:\n", <pathname>`

18787 If the –**L** option is used, a delta summary shall be written following the format specified below
18788 for **l-files**.

18789 If the –**i** option is used, included deltas shall be listed following the notation, in the POSIX
18790 locale:

18791 `"Included:\n"`

18792 If the –**x** option is used, excluded deltas shall be listed following the notation, in the POSIX
18793 locale:

18794 `"Excluded:\n"`

18795 If the –**p** or –**L** options are specified, the standard output shall consist of the text retrieved from
18796 the SCCS file.

18797 **STDERR**

18798 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages, except if the –**p** or –**L** options are
18799 specified, it shall include all informative messages normally sent to standard output.

18800 **OUTPUT FILES**

18801 Several auxiliary files may be created by *get*. These files are known generically as the **g-file**, **l-**
18802 **file**, **p-file**, and **z-file**. The letter before the hyphen is called the *tag*. An auxiliary filename shall
18803 be formed from the SCCS filename: the application shall ensure that the last component of all
18804 SCCS filenames is of the form **s.***module-name*; the auxiliary files shall be named by replacing the
18805 leading **s** with the tag. The **g-file** shall be an exception to this scheme: the **g-file** is named by
18806 removing the **s.** prefix. For example, for **s.xyz.c**, the auxiliary filenames would be **xyz.c**, **l.xyz.c**,
18807 **p.xyz.c**, and **z.xyz.c**, respectively.

18808 The **g-file**, which contains the generated text, shall be created in the current directory (unless the
18809 –**p** option is used). A **g-file** shall be created in all cases, whether or not any lines of text were
18810 generated by the *get*. It shall be owned by the real user. If the –**k** option is used or implied, the
18811 **g-file** shall be writable by the owner only (read-only for everyone else); otherwise, it shall be
18812 read-only. Only the real user need have write permission in the current directory.

18813 The **l-file** shall contain a table showing which deltas were applied in generating the retrieved
18814 text. The **l-file** shall be created in the current directory if the –**l** option is used; it shall be read-
18815 only and it is owned by the real user. Only the real user need have write permission in the
18816 current directory.

18817 Lines in the **l-file** shall have the following format:

18818 `"%c%c%cΔ%s\t%sΔ%s\n", <code1>, <code2>, <code3>,`
18819 `<SID>, <date-time>, <login>`

18820 where the entries are:

18821 *<code1>* A <space> if the delta was applied; `'*'` otherwise.

18822 *<code2>* A <space> if the delta was applied or was not applied and ignored; `'*'` if the delta
18823 was not applied and was not ignored.

18824 *<code3>* A character indicating a special reason why the delta was or was not applied:

18825 **I** Included.

18826 **X** Excluded.

18827 **C** Cut off (by a –**c** option).

<*date-time*> Date and time (using the format of the *date* utility's `%y/%m/%d %T` conversion specification format) of creation.

<*login*> Login name of person who created *delta*.

The comments and MR data shall follow on subsequent lines, indented one <tab>. A blank line shall terminate each entry.

The **p-file** shall be used to pass information resulting from a *get* with a **–e** option along to *delta*. Its contents shall also be used to prevent a subsequent execution of *get* with a **–e** option for the same SID until *delta* is executed or the joint edit flag, **j**, is set in the SCCS file. The **p-file** shall be created in the directory containing the SCCS file and the application shall ensure that the effective user has write permission in that directory. It shall be writable by owner only, and owned by the effective user. Each line in the **p-file** shall have the following format:

```
"%sΔ%sΔ%sΔ%s%s%s\n", <g-file SID>,
    <SID of new delta>, <login-name of real user>,
    <date-time>, <i-value>, <x-value>
```

where <*i-value*> uses the format `""` if no **–i** option was specified, and shall use the format:

```
"Δ–i%s", <–i option option-argument>
```

if a **–i** option was specified and <*x-value*> uses the format `""` if no **–x** option was specified, and shall use the format:

```
"Δ–x%s", <–x option option-argument>
```

if a **–x** option was specified. There can be an arbitrary number of lines in the **p-file** at any time; no two lines shall have the same new delta SID.

The **z-file** shall serve as a lock-out mechanism against simultaneous updates. Its contents shall be the binary process ID of the command (that is, *get*) that created it. The **z-file** shall be created in the directory containing the SCCS file for the duration of *get*. The same protection restrictions as those for the **p-file** shall apply for the **z-file**. The **z-file** shall be created read-only.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

Determination of SCCS Identification String				
SID* Specified	**–b Keyletter Used†**	**Other Conditions**	**SID Retrieved**	**SID of Delta to be Created**
none‡	no	R defaults to mR	mR.mL	mR.(mL+1)
none‡	yes	R defaults to mR	mR.mL	mR.mL.(mB+1).1
R	no	R > mR	mR.mL	R.1***
R	no	R = mR	mR.mL	mR.(mL+1)
R	yes	R > mR	mR.mL	mR.mL.(mB+1).1
R	yes	R = mR	mR.mL	mR.mL.(mB+1).1
R	–	R < mR and R does not exist	hR.mL**	hR.mL.(mB+1).1
R	–	Trunk successor in release > R and R exists	R.mL	R.mL.(mB+1).1
R.L	no	No trunk successor	R.L	R.(L+1)
R.L	yes	No trunk successor	R.L	R.L.(mB+1).1
R.L	–	Trunk successor in release ≥ R	R.L	R.L.(mB+1).1
R.L.B	no	No branch successor	R.L.B.mS	R.L.B.(mS+1)
R.L.B	yes	No branch successor	R.L.B.mS	R.L.(mB+1).1
R.L.B.S	no	No branch successor	R.L.B.S	R.L.B.(S+1)
R.L.B.S	yes	No branch successor	R.L.B.S	R.L.(mB+1).1
R.L.B.S	–	Branch successor	R.L.B.S	R.L.(mB+1).1

* R, L, B, and S are the release, level, branch, and sequence components of the SID, respectively; m means maximum. Thus, for example, R.mL means "the maximum level number within release R"; R.L.(mB+1).1 means "the first sequence number on the new branch (that is, maximum branch number plus one) of level L within release R". Note that if the SID specified is of the form R.L, R.L.B, or R.L.B.S, each of the specified components shall exist.

** hR is the highest existing release that is lower than the specified, nonexistent, release R.

*** This is used to force creation of the first delta in a new release.

† The **–b** option is effective only if the **b** flag is present in the file. An entry of '–' means "irrelevant".

‡ This case applies if the **d** (default SID) flag is not present in the file. If the **d** flag is present in the file, then the SID obtained from the **d** flag is interpreted as if it had been specified on the command line. Thus, one of the other cases in this table applies.

System Date and Time

When a **g-file** is generated, the creation time of deltas in the SCCS file may be taken into account. If any of these times are apparently in the future, the behavior is unspecified.

18892 **Identification Keywords**

18893 Identifying information shall be inserted into the text retrieved from the SCCS file by replacing
18894 identification keywords with their value wherever they occur. The following keywords may be
18895 used in the text stored in an SCCS file:

18896 %**M**% Module name: either the value of the **m** flag in the file, or if absent, the name of the
18897 SCCS file with the leading **s.** removed.

18898 %**I**% SCCS identification (SID) (%**R**%.%**L**% or %**R**%.%**L**%.%**B**%.%**S**%) of the retrieved
18899 text.

18900 %**R**% Release.

18901 %**L**% Level.

18902 %**B**% Branch.

18903 %**S**% Sequence.

18904 %**D**% Current date (*YY*/*MM*/*DD*).

18905 %**H**% Current date (*MM*/*DD*/*YY*).

18906 %**T**% Current time (*HH*:*MM*:*SS*).

18907 %**E**% Date newest applied delta was created (*YY*/*MM*/*DD*).

18908 %**G**% Date newest applied delta was created (*MM*/*DD*/*YY*).

18909 %**U**% Time newest applied delta was created (*HH*:*MM*:*SS*).

18910 %**Y**% Module type: value of the **t** flag in the SCCS file.

18911 %**F**% SCCS filename.

18912 %**P**% SCCS absolute pathname.

18913 %**Q**% The value of the **q** flag in the file.

18914 %**C**% Current line number. This keyword is intended for identifying messages output by
18915 the program, such as "this should not have happened" type errors. It is not
18916 intended to be used on every line to provide sequence numbers.

18917 %**Z**% The four-character string `"@(#)"` recognizable by *what*.

18918 %**W**% A shorthand notation for constructing *what* strings:

18919 `%W%=%Z%%M%<tab>%I%`

18920 %**A**% Another shorthand notation for constructing *what* strings:

18921 `%A%=%Z%%Y%%M%%I%%Z%`

18922 **EXIT STATUS**

18923 The following exit values shall be returned:

18924 0 Successful completion.

18925 >0 An error occurred.

18926 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

18927 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Problems can arise if the system date and time have been modified (for example, put forward and then back again, or unsynchronized clocks across a network) and can also arise when different values of the *TZ* environment variable are used.

Problems of a similar nature can also arise for the operation of the *delta* utility, which compares the previous file body against the working file as part of its normal operation.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The **–lp** option may be withdrawn in a future version.

SEE ALSO

admin, *delta*, *prs*, *what*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

A correction is made to the first format string in STDOUT.

The interpretation of the *YY* component of the **–c** *cutoff* argument is noted.

Issue 6

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed, removing the **–lp** option.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The Open Group Corrigendum U025/5 is applied, correcting text in the OPTIONS section.

The Open Group Corrigendum U048/1 is applied.

The Open Group Interpretation PIN4C.00014 is applied.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-007 is applied as follows:

- The EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section is updated to make partial SID handling unspecified, reflecting common usage, and to clarify SID ranges.
- New text is added to the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION and APPLICATION USAGE sections regarding how the system date and time may be taken into account.
- The *TZ* environment variable is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

18961 **NAME**

18962 getconf — get configuration values

18963 **SYNOPSIS**

18964 `getconf [–v specification] system_var`

18965 `getconf [–v specification] path_var pathname`

18966 **DESCRIPTION**

18967 In the first synopsis form, the *getconf* utility shall write to the standard output the value of the
18968 variable specified by the *system_var* operand.

18969 In the second synopsis form, the *getconf* utility shall write to the standard output the value of the
18970 variable specified by the *path_var* operand for the path specified by the *pathname* operand.

18971 The value of each configuration variable shall be determined as if it were obtained by calling the
18972 function from which it is defined to be available by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x or by
18973 the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (see the OPERANDS section). The value
18974 shall reflect conditions in the current operating environment.

18975 **OPTIONS**

18976 The *getconf* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
18977 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

18978 The following option shall be supported:

18979 **–v** *specification*

18980 Indicate a specific specification and version for which configuration variables shall
18981 be determined. If this option is not specified, the values returned correspond to an
18982 implementation default conforming compilation environment.

18983 If the command:

18984 `getconf _POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32`

18985 does not write `"–1\n"` or `"undefined\n"` to standard output, then commands of
18986 the form:

18987 `getconf –v POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32 ...`

18988 determine values for configuration variables corresponding to the
18989 POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFF32 compilation environment specified in *c99*, the
18990 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

18991 If the command:

18992 `getconf _POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG`

18993 does not write `"–1\n"` or `"undefined\n"` to standard output, then commands of
18994 the form:

18995 `getconf –v POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG ...`

18996 determine values for configuration variables corresponding to the
18997 POSIX_V7_ILP32_OFFBIG compilation environment specified in *c99*, the
18998 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

18999 If the command:

19000 `getconf _POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64`

19001 does not write `"–1\n"` or `"undefined\n"` to standard output, then commands of

the form:

```
getconf –v POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64 ...
```

determine values for configuration variables corresponding to the POSIX_V7_LP64_OFF64 compilation environment specified in *c99*, the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

If the command:

```
getconf _POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG
```

does not write `"–1\n"` or `"undefined\n"` to standard output, then commands of the form:

```
getconf –v POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG ...
```

determine values for configuration variables corresponding to the POSIX_V7_LPBIG_OFFBIG compilation environment specified in *c99*, the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

path_var A name of a configuration variable. All of the variables in the Variable column of the table in the DESCRIPTION of the *fpathconf*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, without the enclosing braces, shall be supported. The implementation may add other local variables.

pathname A pathname for which the variable specified by *path_var* is to be determined.

system_var A name of a configuration variable. All of the following variables shall be supported:

- The names in the Variable column of the table in the DESCRIPTION of the *sysconf*( ) function in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, except for the entries corresponding to _SC_CLK_TCK, _SC_GETGR_R_SIZE_MAX, and _SC_GETPW_R_SIZE_MAX, without the enclosing braces.

  For compatibility with earlier versions, the following variable names shall also be supported:

  POSIX2_C_BIND
  POSIX2_C_DEV
  POSIX2_CHAR_TERM
  POSIX2_FORT_DEV
  POSIX2_FORT_RUN
  POSIX2_LOCALEDEF
  POSIX2_SW_DEV
  POSIX2_UPE
  POSIX2_VERSION

  and shall be equivalent to the same name prefixed with an underscore. This requirement may be removed in a future version.

- The names of the symbolic constants used as the *name* argument of the *confstr*( ) function in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, without the _CS_ prefix.

- The names of the symbolic constants listed under the headings "Maximum Values" and "Minimum Values" in the description of the **<limits.h>** header in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, without the enclosing braces.

  For compatibility with earlier versions, the following variable names shall also be supported:

  POSIX2_BC_BASE_MAX
  POSIX2_BC_DIM_MAX
  POSIX2_BC_SCALE_MAX
  POSIX2_BC_STRING_MAX
  POSIX2_COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX
  POSIX2_EXPR_NEST_MAX
  POSIX2_LINE_MAX
  POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX

  and shall be equivalent to the same name prefixed with an underscore. This requirement may be removed in a future version.

The implementation may add other local values.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *getconf*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

If the specified variable is defined on the system and its value is described to be available from the *confstr*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, its value shall be written in the following format:

```
"%s\n", <value>
```

Otherwise, if the specified variable is defined on the system, its value shall be written in the following format:

19090 `"%d\n", <value>`

19091 If the specified variable is valid, but is undefined on the system, *getconf* shall write using the
19092 following format:

19093 `"undefined\n"`

19094 If the variable name is invalid or an error occurs, nothing shall be written to standard output.

19095 **STDERR**

19096 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

19097 **OUTPUT FILES**

19098 None.

19099 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

19100 None.

19101 **EXIT STATUS**

19102 The following exit values shall be returned:

19103 0 The specified variable is valid and information about its current state was written
19104 successfully.

19105 >0 An error occurred.

19106 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

19107 Default.

19108 **APPLICATION USAGE**

19109 None.

19110 **EXAMPLES**

19111 The following example illustrates the value of {NGROUPS_MAX}:

19112 ```
getconf NGROUPS_MAX
```

19113 The following example illustrates the value of {NAME_MAX} for a specific directory:

19114 ```
getconf NAME_MAX /usr
```

19115 The following example shows how to deal more carefully with results that might be unspecified:

19116 ```
if value=$(getconf PATH_MAX /usr); then
    if ["$value" = "undefined"]; then
        echo PATH_MAX in /usr is infinite.
    else
        echo PATH_MAX in /usr is $value.
    fi
else
    echo Error in getconf.
fi
```

19125 Note that:

19126 ```
sysconf(_SC_POSIX_C_BIND);
```

19127 and:

19128 ```
system("getconf POSIX2_C_BIND");
```

19129 in a C program could give different answers. The *sysconf*( ) call supplies a value that corresponds
19130 to the conditions when the program was either compiled or executed, depending on the
19131 implementation; the *system*( ) call to *getconf* always supplies a value corresponding to conditions
19132 when the program is executed.

  
```

19133 **RATIONALE**

19134 The original need for this utility, and for the *confstr*( ) function, was to provide a way of finding
19135 the configuration-defined default value for the *PATH* environment variable. Since *PATH* can be
19136 modified by the user to include directories that could contain utilities replacing the standard
19137 utilities, shell scripts need a way to determine the system-supplied *PATH* environment variable
19138 value that contains the correct search path for the standard utilities. It was later suggested that
19139 access to the other variables described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x could also be
19140 useful to applications.

19141 This functionality of *getconf* would not be adequately subsumed by another command such as:

19142 `grep var /etc/conf`

19143 because such a strategy would provide correct values for neither those variables that can vary at
19144 runtime, nor those that can vary depending on the path.

19145 Early proposal versions of *getconf* specified exit status 1 when the specified variable was valid,
19146 but not defined on the system. The output string `"undefined"` is now used to specify this case
19147 with exit code 0 because so many things depend on an exit code of zero when an invoked utility
19148 is successful.

19149 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

19150 None.

19151 **SEE ALSO**

19152 *c99*, the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, **<limits.h>**, the System Interfaces
19153 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *confstr*( ), *pathconf*( ), *sysconf*( ), *system*( )

19154 **CHANGE HISTORY**

19155 First released in Issue 4.

19156 **Issue 5**

19157 In the OPERANDS section:

19158 - {NL_MAX} is changed to {NL_NMAX}.
19159 - Entries beginning NL_ are deleted from the list of standard configuration variables.
19160 - The list of variables previously marked UX is merged with the list marked EX.
19161 - Operands are added to support new Option Groups.
19162 - Operands are added so that *getconf* can determine supported programming environments.

19163 **Issue 6**

19164 The Open Group Corrigendum U029/4 is applied, correcting the example command in the last
19165 paragraph of the OPTIONS section.

19166 The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the
19167 Single UNIX Specification:

19168 - Operands are added to determine supported programming environments.

19169 This reference page is updated for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899: 1999 standard. Specifically,
19170 new macros for *c99* programming environments are introduced.

19171 XSI marked *system_var* (XBS5_*) values are marked LEGACY.

19172 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/27 is applied, correcting the descriptions
19173 of *path_var* and *system_var* in the OPERANDS section.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

19176 **NAME**

19177 getopts — parse utility options

19178 **SYNOPSIS**

19179 `getopts` *`optstring name`* **[***`arg...`***]**

19180 **DESCRIPTION**

19181 The *getopts* utility shall retrieve options and option-arguments from a list of parameters. It shall
19182 support the Utility Syntax Guidelines 3 to 10, inclusive, described in the Base Definitions volume
19183 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

19184 Each time it is invoked, the *getopts* utility shall place the value of the next option in the shell
19185 variable specified by the *name* operand and the index of the next argument to be processed in the
19186 shell variable *OPTIND*. Whenever the shell is invoked, *OPTIND* shall be initialized to 1.

19187 When the option requires an option-argument, the *getopts* utility shall place it in the shell
19188 variable *OPTARG*. If no option was found, or if the option that was found does not have an
19189 option-argument, *OPTARG* shall be unset.

19190 If an option character not contained in the *optstring* operand is found where an option character
19191 is expected, the shell variable specified by *name* shall be set to the question-mark (`'?'`) character.
19192 In this case, if the first character in *optstring* is a colon (`':'`), the shell variable *OPTARG* shall be
19193 set to the option character found, but no output shall be written to standard error; otherwise, the
19194 shell variable *OPTARG* shall be unset and a diagnostic message shall be written to standard
19195 error. This condition shall be considered to be an error detected in the way arguments were
19196 presented to the invoking application, but shall not be an error in *getopts* processing.

19197 If an option-argument is missing:

19198 • If the first character of *optstring* is a colon, the shell variable specified by *name* shall be set
19199 to the colon character and the shell variable *OPTARG* shall be set to the option character
19200 found.

19201 • Otherwise, the shell variable specified by *name* shall be set to the question-mark character,
19202 the shell variable *OPTARG* shall be unset, and a diagnostic message shall be written to
19203 standard error. This condition shall be considered to be an error detected in the way
19204 arguments were presented to the invoking application, but shall not be an error in *getopts*
19205 processing; a diagnostic message shall be written as stated, but the exit status shall be zero.

19206 When the end of options is encountered, the *getopts* utility shall exit with a return value greater
19207 than zero; the shell variable *OPTIND* shall be set to the index of the first non-option-argument,
19208 where the first `"--"` argument is considered to be an option-argument if there are no other non-
19209 option-arguments appearing before it, or the value `"$#"+1` if there are no non-option-
19210 arguments; the *name* variable shall be set to the question-mark character. Any of the following
19211 shall identify the end of options: the special option `"--"`, finding an argument that does not
19212 begin with a `'-'`, or encountering an error.

19213 The shell variables *OPTIND* and *OPTARG* shall be local to the caller of *getopts* and shall not be
19214 exported by default.

19215 The shell variable specified by the *name* operand, *OPTIND*, and *OPTARG* shall affect the current
19216 shell execution environment; see Section 2.12 (on page 61).

19217 If the application sets *OPTIND* to the value 1, a new set of parameters can be used: either the
19218 current positional parameters or new *arg* values. Any other attempt to invoke *getopts* multiple
19219 times in a single shell execution environment with parameters (positional parameters or *arg*
19220 operands) that are not the same in all invocations, or with an *OPTIND* value modified to be a
19221 value other than 1, produces unspecified results.

19222 **OPTIONS**
19223 None.

19224 **OPERANDS**
19225 The following operands shall be supported:

19226 *optstring* A string containing the option characters recognized by the utility invoking *getopts*.
19227 If a character is followed by a colon, the option shall be expected to have an
19228 argument, which should be supplied as a separate argument. Applications should
19229 specify an option character and its option-argument as separate arguments, but
19230 *getopts* shall interpret the characters following an option character requiring
19231 arguments as an argument whether or not this is done. An explicit null option-
19232 argument need not be recognized if it is not supplied as a separate argument when
19233 *getopts* is invoked. (See also the *getopt*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces
19234 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.) The characters question-mark and colon shall not
19235 be used as option characters by an application. The use of other option characters
19236 that are not alphanumeric produces unspecified results. If the option-argument is
19237 not supplied as a separate argument from the option character, the value in
19238 *OPTARG* shall be stripped of the option character and the `'-'`. The first character
19239 in *optstring* determines how *getopts* behaves if an option character is not known or
19240 an option-argument is missing.

19241 *name* The name of a shell variable that shall be set by the *getopts* utility to the option
19242 character that was found.

19243 The *getopts* utility by default shall parse positional parameters passed to the invoking shell
19244 procedure. If *arg*s are given, they shall be parsed instead of the positional parameters.

19245 **STDIN**
19246 Not used.

19247 **INPUT FILES**
19248 None.

19249 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**
19250 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *getopts*:

19251 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
19252 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
19253 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
19254 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

19255 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
19256 internationalization variables.

19257 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
19258 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
19259 arguments and input files).

19260 *LC_MESSAGES*
19261 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
19262 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

19263 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

19264 *OPTIND* This variable shall be used by the *getopts* utility as the index of the next argument
19265 to be processed.

19266 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

19267 Default.

19268 **STDOUT**

19269 Not used.

19270 **STDERR**

19271 Whenever an error is detected and the first character in the *optstring* operand is not a colon
19272 (`':'`), a diagnostic message shall be written to standard error with the following information in
19273 an unspecified format:

19274 • The invoking program name shall be identified in the message. The invoking program
19275 name shall be the value of the shell special parameter 0 (see Section 2.5.2 (on page 34)) at
19276 the time the *getopts* utility is invoked. A name equivalent to:

19277 `basename "$0"`

19278 may be used.

19279 • If an option is found that was not specified in *optstring*, this error is identified and the
19280 invalid option character shall be identified in the message.

19281 • If an option requiring an option-argument is found, but an option-argument is not found,
19282 this error shall be identified and the invalid option character shall be identified in the
19283 message.

19284 **OUTPUT FILES**

19285 None.

19286 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

19287 None.

19288 **EXIT STATUS**

19289 The following exit values shall be returned:

19290 0 An option, specified or unspecified by *optstring*, was found.

19291 >0 The end of options was encountered or an error occurred.

19292 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

19293 Default.

19294 **APPLICATION USAGE**

19295 Since *getopts* affects the current shell execution environment, it is generally provided as a shell
19296 regular built-in. If it is called in a subshell or separate utility execution environment, such as one
19297 of the following:

```
19298 (getopts abc value "$@")
19299 nohup getopts ...
19300 find . –exec getopts ... \;
```

19301 it does not affect the shell variables in the caller's environment.

19302 Note that shell functions share *OPTIND* with the calling shell even though the positional
19303 parameters are changed. If the calling shell and any of its functions uses *getopts* to parse
19304 arguments, the results are unspecified.

19305 **EXAMPLES**

19306 The following example script parses and displays its arguments:

```
19307 aflag=
19308 bflag=
19309 while getopts ab: name
19310 do
```



```
        case $name in
        a)    aflag=1;;
        b)    bflag=1
              bval="$OPTARG";;
        ?)   printf "Usage: %s: [–a] [–b value] args\n" $0
              exit 2;;
        esac
    done
    if [ ! –z "$aflag" ]; then
        printf "Option –a specified\n"
    fi
    if [ ! –z "$bflag" ]; then
        printf 'Option –b "%s" specified\n' "$bval"
    fi
    shift $(($OPTIND – 1))
    printf "Remaining arguments are: %s\n" "$*"
```

RATIONALE

The *getopts* utility was chosen in preference to the System V *getopt* utility because *getopts* handles option-arguments containing <blank>s.

The *OPTARG* variable is not mentioned in the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section because it does not affect the execution of *getopts*; it is one of the few "output-only" variables used by the standard utilities.

The colon is not allowed as an option character because that is not historical behavior, and it violates the Utility Syntax Guidelines. The colon is now specified to behave as in the KornShell version of the *getopts* utility; when used as the first character in the *optstring* operand, it disables diagnostics concerning missing option-arguments and unexpected option characters. This replaces the use of the *OPTERR* variable that was specified in an early proposal.

The formats of the diagnostic messages produced by the *getopts* utility and the *getopt*() function are not fully specified because implementations with superior ("friendlier") formats objected to the formats used by some historical implementations. The standard developers considered it important that the information in the messages used be uniform between *getopts* and *getopt*(). Exact duplication of the messages might not be possible, particularly if a utility is built on another system that has a different *getopt*() function, but the messages must have specific information included so that the program name, invalid option character, and type of error can be distinguished by a user.

Only a rare application program intercepts a *getopts* standard error message and wants to parse it. Therefore, implementations are free to choose the most usable messages they can devise. The following formats are used by many historical implementations:

```
"%s: illegal option –– %c\n", <program name>, <option character>
```

```
"%s: option requires an argument –– %c\n", <program name>, \
    <option character>
```

Historical shells with built-in versions of *getopt*() or *getopts* have used different formats, frequently not even indicating the option character found in error.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

19356 **SEE ALSO**

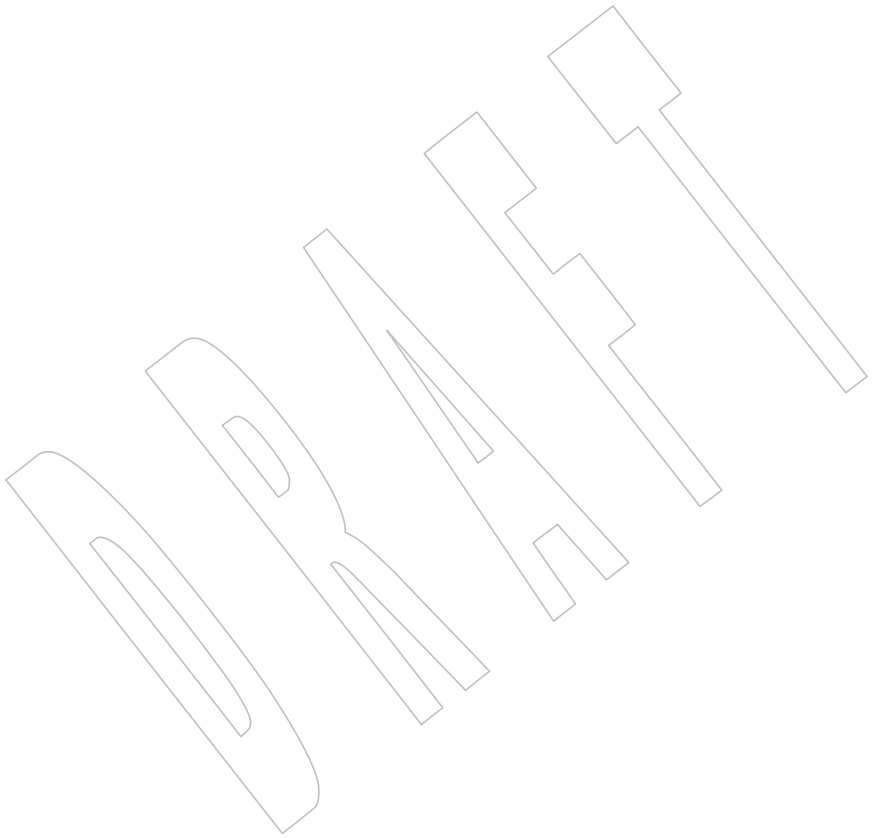
19357 Section 2.5.2 (on page 34), the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *getopt*( )

19358 **CHANGE HISTORY**

19359 First released in Issue 4.

19360 **Issue 6**

19361 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.



19362 **NAME**

19363 grep — search a file for a pattern

19364 **SYNOPSIS**

19365 `grep [-E|-F] [-c|-l|-q] [-insvx] -e pattern_list`
19366 `    [-e pattern_list]... [-f pattern_file]... [file...]`

19367 `grep [-E|-F] [-c|-l|-q] [-insvx] [-e pattern_list]...`
19368 `    -f pattern_file [-f pattern_file]... [file...]`

19369 `grep [-E|-F] [-c|-l|-q] [-insvx] pattern_list [file...]`

19370 **DESCRIPTION**

19371 The *grep* utility shall search the input files, selecting lines matching one or more patterns; the
19372 types of patterns are controlled by the options specified. The patterns are specified by the **–e**
19373 option, **–f** option, or the *pattern_list* operand. The *pattern_list*'s value shall consist of one or more
19374 patterns separated by <newline>s; the *pattern_file*'s contents shall consist of one or more patterns
19375 terminated by <newline>. By default, an input line shall be selected if any pattern, treated as an
19376 entire basic regular expression (BRE) as described in the Base Definitions volume of
19377 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic Regular Expressions, matches any part of the line
19378 excluding the terminating <newline>; a null BRE shall match every line. By default, each
19379 selected input line shall be written to the standard output.

19380 Regular expression matching shall be based on text lines. Since a <newline> separates or
19381 terminates patterns (see the **–e** and **–f** options below), regular expressions cannot contain a
19382 <newline>. Similarly, since patterns are matched against individual lines (excluding the
19383 terminating <newline>s) of the input, there is no way for a pattern to match a <newline> found
19384 in the input.

19385 **OPTIONS**

19386 The *grep* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
19387 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

19388 The following options shall be supported:

19389 **–E** Match using extended regular expressions. Treat each pattern specified as an ERE,
19390 as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.4,
19391 Extended Regular Expressions. If any entire ERE pattern matches some part of an
19392 input line excluding the terminating <newline>, the line shall be matched. A null
19393 ERE shall match every line.

19394 **–F** Match using fixed strings. Treat each pattern specified as a string instead of a
19395 regular expression. If an input line contains any of the patterns as a contiguous
19396 sequence of bytes, the line shall be matched. A null string shall match every line.

19397 **–c** Write only a count of selected lines to standard output.

19398 **–e** *pattern_list*
19399 Specify one or more patterns to be used during the search for input. The
19400 application shall ensure that patterns in *pattern_list* are separated by a <newline>.
19401 A null pattern can be specified by two adjacent <newline>s in *pattern_list*. Unless
19402 the **–E** or **–F** option is also specified, each pattern shall be treated as a BRE, as
19403 described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic
19404 Regular Expressions. Multiple **–e** and **–f** options shall be accepted by the *grep*
19405 utility. All of the specified patterns shall be used when matching lines, but the
19406 order of evaluation is unspecified.

19407 **–f** *pattern_file*

19408 Read one or more patterns from the file named by the pathname *pattern_file*.
19409 Patterns in *pattern_file* shall be terminated by a <newline>. A null pattern can be
19410 specified by an empty line in *pattern_file*. Unless the **–E** or **–F** option is also
19411 specified, each pattern shall be treated as a BRE, as described in the Base
19412 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic Regular Expressions.

19413 **–i** Perform pattern matching in searches without regard to case; see the Base
19414 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.2, Regular Expression
19415 General Requirements.

19416 **–l** (The letter ell.) Write only the names of files containing selected lines to standard
19417 output. Pathnames shall be written once per file searched. If the standard input is
19418 searched, a pathname of `"(standard input)"` shall be written, in the POSIX
19419 locale. In other locales, `"standard input"` may be replaced by something more
19420 appropriate in those locales.

19421 **–n** Precede each output line by its relative line number in the file, each file starting at
19422 line 1. The line number counter shall be reset for each file processed.

19423 **–q** Quiet. Nothing shall be written to the standard output, regardless of matching
19424 lines. Exit with zero status if an input line is selected.

19425 **–s** Suppress the error messages ordinarily written for nonexistent or unreadable files.
19426 Other error messages shall not be suppressed.

19427 **–v** Select lines not matching any of the specified patterns. If the **–v** option is not
19428 specified, selected lines shall be those that match any of the specified patterns.

19429 **–x** Consider only input lines that use all characters in the line excluding the
19430 terminating <newline> to match an entire fixed string or regular expression to be
19431 matching lines.

19432 **OPERANDS**

19433 The following operands shall be supported:

19434 *pattern_list* Specify one or more patterns to be used during the search for input. This operand
19435 shall be treated as if it were specified as **–e** *pattern_list*.

19436 *file* A pathname of a file to be searched for the patterns. If no *file* operands are
19437 specified, the standard input shall be used.

19438 **STDIN**

19439 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES
19440 section.

19441 **INPUT FILES**

19442 The input files shall be text files.

19443 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

19444 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *grep*:

19445 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
19446 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
19447 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
19448 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

19449 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
19450 internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classes within regular expressions.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
If the **–l** option is in effect, the following shall be written for each file containing at least one selected input line:

`"%s\n", <file>`

Otherwise, if more than one *file* argument appears, and **–q** is not specified, the *grep* utility shall prefix each output line by:

`"%s:", <file>`

The remainder of each output line shall depend on the other options specified:

- If the **–c** option is in effect, the remainder of each output line shall contain:

  `"%d\n", <count>`

- Otherwise, if **–c** is not in effect and the **–n** option is in effect, the following shall be written to standard output:

  `"%d:", <line number>`

- Finally, the following shall be written to standard output:

  `"%s", <selected-line contents>`

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 One or more lines were selected.

1 No lines were selected.

>1 An error occurred.

19490 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

19491 If the **–q** option is specified, the exit status shall be zero if an input line is selected, even if an
19492 error was detected. Otherwise, default actions shall be performed.

19493 **APPLICATION USAGE**

19494 Care should be taken when using characters in *pattern_list* that may also be meaningful to the
19495 command interpreter. It is safest to enclose the entire *pattern_list* argument in single quotes:

19496 `'...'`

19497 The **–e** *pattern_list* option has the same effect as the *pattern_list* operand, but is useful when
19498 *pattern_list* begins with the hyphen delimiter. It is also useful when it is more convenient to
19499 provide multiple patterns as separate arguments.

19500 Multiple **–e** and **–f** options are accepted and *grep* uses all of the patterns it is given while
19501 matching input text lines. (Note that the order of evaluation is not specified. If an
19502 implementation finds a null string as a pattern, it is allowed to use that pattern first, matching
19503 every line, and effectively ignore any other patterns.)

19504 The **–q** option provides a means of easily determining whether or not a pattern (or string) exists
19505 in a group of files. When searching several files, it provides a performance improvement
19506 (because it can quit as soon as it finds the first match) and requires less care by the user in
19507 choosing the set of files to supply as arguments (because it exits zero if it finds a match even if
19508 *grep* detected an access or read error on earlier *file* operands).

19509 **EXAMPLES**

19510 1. To find all uses of the word `"Posix"` (in any case) in file **text.mm** and write with line
19511 numbers:

19512 ```
grep –i –n posix text.mm
```

19513 2. To find all empty lines in the standard input:

19514 ```
grep ^$
```

19515 or:

19516 ```
grep –v .
```

19517 3. Both of the following commands print all lines containing strings `"abc"` or `"def"` or
19518 both:

19519 ```
grep –E 'abc|def'
```
19520 ```
grep –F 'abc
```
19521 ```
def'
```

19522 4. Both of the following commands print all lines matching exactly `"abc"` or `"def"`:

19523 ```
grep –E '^abc$|^def$'
```

19524 ```
grep –F –x 'abc
```
19525 ```
def'
```

19526 **RATIONALE**

19527 This *grep* has been enhanced in an upwards-compatible way to provide the exact functionality of
19528 the historical *egrep* and *fgrep* commands as well. It was the clear intention of the standard
19529 developers to consolidate the three *grep*s into a single command.

19530 The old *egrep* and *fgrep* commands are likely to be supported for many years to come as
19531 implementation extensions, allowing historical applications to operate unmodified.

19532 Historical implementations usually silently ignored all but one of multiply-specified **–e** and **–f**
19533 options, but were not consistent as to which specification was actually used.

 
```

The **–b** option was omitted from the OPTIONS section because block numbers are implementation-defined.

The System V restriction on using – to mean standard input was omitted.

A definition of action taken when given a null BRE or ERE is specified. This is an error condition in some historical implementations.

The **–l** option previously indicated that its use was undefined when no files were explicitly named. This behavior was historical and placed an unnecessary restriction on future implementations. It has been removed.

The historical BSD *grep* **–s** option practice is easily duplicated by redirecting standard output to **/dev/null**. The **–s** option required here is from System V.

The **–x** option, historically available only with *fgrep*, is available here for all of the non-obsolescent versions.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

sed

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The Open Group Corrigendum U029/5 is applied, correcting the SYNOPSIS.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/28 is applied, correcting the examples using the *grep* **–F** option which did not match the normative description of the **–F** option.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-98 is applied, updating the STDOUT section.

19560 **NAME**

19561 hash — remember or report utility locations

19562 **SYNOPSIS**

19563 `hash [`*`utility`*`...]`

19564 `hash –r`

19565 **DESCRIPTION**

19566 The *hash* utility shall affect the way the current shell environment remembers the locations of
19567 utilities found as described in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48). Depending on the arguments
19568 specified, it shall add utility locations to its list of remembered locations or it shall purge the
19569 contents of the list. When no arguments are specified, it shall report on the contents of the list.

19570 Utilities provided as built-ins to the shell shall not be reported by *hash*.

19571 **OPTIONS**

19572 The *hash* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
19573 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

19574 The following option shall be supported:

19575 **–r** Forget all previously remembered utility locations.

19576 **OPERANDS**

19577 The following operand shall be supported:

19578 *utility* The name of a utility to be searched for and added to the list of remembered
19579 locations. If *utility* contains one or more slashes, the results are unspecified.

19580 **STDIN**

19581 Not used.

19582 **INPUT FILES**

19583 None.

19584 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

19585 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *hash*:

19586 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
19587 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
19588 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
19589 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

19590 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
19591 internationalization variables.

19592 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
19593 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
19594 arguments).

19595 *LC_MESSAGES*
19596 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
19597 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

19598 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

19599 *PATH* Determine the location of *utility*, as described in the Base Definitions volume of
19600 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

19601 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
19602 Default.

19603 **STDOUT**
19604 The standard output of *hash* shall be used when no arguments are specified. Its format is
19605 unspecified, but includes the pathname of each utility in the list of remembered locations for the
19606 current shell environment. This list shall consist of those utilities named in previous *hash*
19607 invocations that have been invoked, and may contain those invoked and found through the
19608 normal command search process.

19609 **STDERR**
19610 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

19611 **OUTPUT FILES**
19612 None.

19613 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
19614 None.

19615 **EXIT STATUS**
19616 The following exit values shall be returned:

19617 0 Successful completion.

19618 >0 An error occurred.

19619 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
19620 Default.

19621 **APPLICATION USAGE**
19622 Since *hash* affects the current shell execution environment, it is always provided as a shell
19623 regular built-in. If it is called in a separate utility execution environment, such as one of the
19624 following:

19625 ```
nohup hash –r
```
19626 ```
find . –type f | xargs hash
```

19627 it does not affect the command search process of the caller's environment.

19628 The *hash* utility may be implemented as an alias—for example, *alias* –**t** –, in which case utilities
19629 found through normal command search are not listed by the *hash* command.

19630 The effects of *hash* –**r** can also be achieved portably by resetting the value of *PATH*; in the
19631 simplest form, this can be:

19632 ```
PATH="$PATH"
```

19633 The use of *hash* with *utility* names is unnecessary for most applications, but may provide a
19634 performance improvement on a few implementations; normally, the hashing process is included
19635 by default.

19636 **EXAMPLES**
19637 None.

19638 **RATIONALE**
19639 None.

19640 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
19641 None.
```

19642 **SEE ALSO**

19643 Section 2.9.1.1

19644 **CHANGE HISTORY**

19645 First released in Issue 2.

19646 **Issue 7**

19647 The *hash* utility is moved from the XSI option to the Base.

19648 **NAME**

19649 head — copy the first part of files

19650 **SYNOPSIS**

19651 `head [–n number] [file...]`

19652 **DESCRIPTION**

19653 The *head* utility shall copy its input files to the standard output, ending the output for each file at
19654 a designated point.

19655 Copying shall end at the point in each input file indicated by the **–n** *number* option. The option-
19656 argument *number* shall be counted in units of lines.

19657 **OPTIONS**

19658 The *head* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
19659 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

19660 The following option shall be supported:

19661 **–n** *number* The first *number* lines of each input file shall be copied to standard output. The
19662 application shall ensure that the *number* option-argument is a positive decimal
19663 integer.

19664 When a file contains less than *number* lines, it shall be copied to standard output in its entirety.
19665 This shall not be an error.

19666 If no options are specified, *head* shall act as if **–n 10** had been specified.

19667 **OPERANDS**

19668 The following operand shall be supported:

19669 *file* A pathname of an input file. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input
19670 shall be used.

19671 **STDIN**

19672 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES
19673 section.

19674 **INPUT FILES**

19675 Input files shall be text files, but the line length is not restricted to {LINE_MAX} bytes.

19676 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

19677 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *head*:

19678 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
19679 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
19680 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
19681 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

19682 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
19683 internationalization variables.

19684 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
19685 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
19686 arguments and input files).

19687 *LC_MESSAGES*

19688 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
19689 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

19690 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

19691 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

19692 Default.

19693 **STDOUT**

19694 The standard output shall contain designated portions of the input files.

19695 If multiple *file* operands are specified, *head* shall precede the output for each with the header:

19696 `"\n==> %s <==\n", <pathname>`

19697 except that the first header written shall not include the initial <newline>.

19698 **STDERR**

19699 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

19700 **OUTPUT FILES**

19701 None.

19702 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

19703 None.

19704 **EXIT STATUS**

19705 The following exit values shall be returned:

19706 0 Successful completion.

19707 >0 An error occurred.

19708 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

19709 Default.

19710 **APPLICATION USAGE**

19711 The obsolescent *–number* form is withdrawn in this version. Applications should use the **–n**
19712 *number* option.

19713 **EXAMPLES**

19714 To write the first ten lines of all files (except those with a leading period) in the directory:

19715 ```
head *
```

19716 **RATIONALE**

19717 Although it is possible to simulate *head* with *sed* 10q for a single file, the standard developers
19718 decided that the popularity of *head* on historical BSD systems warranted its inclusion alongside
19719 *tail*.

19720 This standard version of *head* follows the Utility Syntax Guidelines. The **–n** option was added to
19721 this new interface so that *head* and *tail* would be more logically related. Earlier versions of this
19722 standard allowed a **–number** option. This form is no longer specified by this standard but may
19723 be present in some implementations.

19724 There is no **–c** option (as there is in *tail*) because it is not historical practice and because other
19725 utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x provide similar functionality.

19726 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

19727 None.

19728 **SEE ALSO**

19729 *sed*, *tail*

 
```

19730 **CHANGE HISTORY**

19731 First released in Issue 4.

19732 **Issue 6**

19733 The obsolescent –**number** form is withdrawn.

19734 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

19735 The DESCRIPTION is updated to clarify that when a file contains less than the number of lines
19736 requested, the entire file is copied to standard output.

19737 **Issue 7**

19738 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied.

19739 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

19740 **NAME**

19741 iconv — codeset conversion

19742 **SYNOPSIS**

19743 `iconv [–cs] –f frommap –t tomap [file...]`

19744 `iconv –f fromcode [–cs] [–t tocode] [file...]`

19745 `iconv –t tocode [–cs] [–f fromcode] [file...]`

19746 `iconv –l`

19747 **DESCRIPTION**

19748 The *iconv* utility shall convert the encoding of characters in *file* from one codeset to another and
19749 write the results to standard output.

19750 When the options indicate that charmap files are used to specify the codesets (see OPTIONS),
19751 the codeset conversion shall be accomplished by performing a logical join on the symbolic
19752 character names in the two charmaps. The implementation need not support the use of charmap
19753 files for codeset conversion unless the POSIX2_LOCALEDEF symbol is defined on the system.

19754 **OPTIONS**

19755 The *iconv* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
19756 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

19757 The following options shall be supported:

19758 **–c** Omit any characters that are invalid in the codeset of the input file from the
19759 output. When **–c** is not used, the results of encountering invalid characters in the
19760 input stream (either those that are not characters in the codeset of the input file or
19761 that have no corresponding character in the codeset of the output file) shall be
19762 specified in the system documentation. The presence or absence of **–c** shall not
19763 affect the exit status of *iconv*.

19764 **–f** *fromcodeset*

19765 Identify the codeset of the input file. The implementation shall recognize the
19766 following two forms of the *fromcodeset* option-argument:

19767 *fromcode* The *fromcode* option-argument must not contain a slash character. It
19768 shall be interpreted as the name of one of the codeset descriptions
19769 provided by the implementation in an unspecified format. Valid
19770 values of *fromcode* are implementation-defined.

19771 *frommap* The *frommap* option-argument must contain a slash character. It shall
19772 be interpreted as the pathname of a charmap file as defined in the
19773 Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.4,
19774 Character Set Description File. If the pathname does not represent a
19775 valid, readable charmap file, the results are undefined.

19776 If this option is omitted, the codeset of the current locale shall be used.

19777 **–l** Write all supported *fromcode* and *tocode* values to standard output in an unspecified
19778 format.

19779 **–s** Suppress any messages written to standard error concerning invalid characters.
19780 When **–s** is not used, the results of encountering invalid characters in the input
19781 stream (either those that are not valid characters in the codeset of the input file or
19782 that have no corresponding character in the codeset of the output file) shall be
19783 specified in the system documentation. The presence or absence of **–s** shall not

affect the exit status of *iconv*.

–t *tocodeset* Identify the codeset to be used for the output file. The implementation shall recognize the following two forms of the *tocodeset* option-argument:

tocode The semantics shall be equivalent to the **–f** *fromcode* option.

tomap The semantics shall be equivalent to the *tomap* option.

If this option is omitted, the codeset of the current locale shall be used.

If either **–f** or **–t** represents a charmap file, but the other does not (or is omitted), or both **–f** and **–t** are omitted, the results are undefined.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of an input file. If no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`.

INPUT FILES

The input file shall be a text file.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *iconv*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments). During translation of the file, this variable is superseded by the use of the *fromcode* option-argument.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

When the **–l** option is used, the standard output shall contain all supported *fromcode* and *tocode* values, written in an unspecified format.

When the **–l** option is not used, the standard output shall contain the sequence of characters read from the input files, translated to the specified codeset. Nothing else shall be written to the standard output.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

19826 **OUTPUT FILES**

19827 None.

19828 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

19829 None.

19830 **EXIT STATUS**

19831 The following exit values shall be returned:

19832 0 Successful completion.

19833 >0 An error occurred.

19834 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

19835 Default.

19836 **APPLICATION USAGE**

19837 The user must ensure that both charmap files use the same symbolic names for characters the
19838 two codesets have in common.

19839 **EXAMPLES**

19840 The following example converts the contents of file **mail.x400** from the ISO/IEC 6937:2001
19841 standard codeset to the ISO/IEC 8859-1:1998 standard codeset, and stores the results in file
19842 **mail.local**:

19843 ```
iconv –f IS6937 –t IS8859 mail.x400 > mail.local
```

19844 **RATIONALE**

19845 The *iconv* utility can be used portably only when the user provides two charmap files as option-
19846 arguments. This is because a single charmap provided by the user cannot reliably be joined with
19847 the names in a system-provided character set description. The valid values for *fromcode* and
19848 *tocode* are implementation-defined and do not have to have any relation to the charmap
19849 mechanisms. As an aid to interactive users, the **–l** option was adopted from the Plan 9 operating
19850 system. It writes information concerning these implementation-defined values. The format is
19851 unspecified because there are many possible useful formats that could be chosen, such as a
19852 matrix of valid combinations of *fromcode* and *tocode*. The **–l** option is not intended for shell script
19853 usage; conforming applications will have to use charmaps.

19854 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

19855 None.

19856 **SEE ALSO**

19857 *gencat*

19858 **CHANGE HISTORY**

19859 First released in Issue 3.

19860 **Issue 6**

19861 This utility has been rewritten to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard. Specifically, the
19862 ability to use charmap files for conversion has been added.

19863 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/29 is applied, making changes to address
19864 inconsistencies with the *iconv*( ) function in the System Interfaces volume of
19865 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

19866 **Issue 7**

19867 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

 
```

19868 **NAME**

19869 id — return user identity

19870 **SYNOPSIS**

19871 `id [`*user*`]`

19872 `id –G [–n] [`*user*`]`

19873 `id –g [–nr] [`*user*`]`

19874 `id –u [–nr] [`*user*`]`

19875 **DESCRIPTION**

19876 If no *user* operand is provided, the *id* utility shall write the user and group IDs and the
19877 corresponding user and group names of the invoking process to standard output. If the effective
19878 and real IDs do not match, both shall be written. If multiple groups are supported by the
19879 underlying system (see the description of {NGROUPS_MAX} in the System Interfaces volume of
19880 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x), the supplementary group affiliations of the invoking process shall also be
19881 written.

19882 If a *user* operand is provided and the process has the appropriate privileges, the user and group
19883 IDs of the selected user shall be written. In this case, effective IDs shall be assumed to be
19884 identical to real IDs. If the selected user has more than one allowable group membership listed
19885 in the group database, these shall be written in the same manner as the supplementary groups
19886 described in the preceding paragraph.

19887 **OPTIONS**

19888 The *id* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
19889 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

19890 The following options shall be supported:

19891 **–G** Output all different group IDs (effective, real, and supplementary) only, using the
19892 format `"%u\n"`. If there is more than one distinct group affiliation, output each
19893 such affiliation, using the format `" %u"`, before the <newline> is output.

19894 **–g** Output only the effective group ID, using the format `"%u\n"`.

19895 **–n** Output the name in the format `"%s"` instead of the numeric ID using the format
19896 `"%u"`.

19897 **–r** Output the real ID instead of the effective ID.

19898 **–u** Output only the effective user ID, using the format `"%u\n"`.

19899 **OPERANDS**

19900 The following operand shall be supported:

19901 *user* The login name for which information is to be written.

19902 **STDIN**

19903 Not used.

19904 **INPUT FILES**

19905 None.

19906 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

19907 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *id*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The following formats shall be used when the *LC_MESSAGES* locale category specifies the POSIX locale. In other locales, the strings *uid*, *gid*, *euid*, *egid*, and *groups* may be replaced with more appropriate strings corresponding to the locale.

```
"uid=%u(%s) gid=%u(%s)\n", <real user ID>, <user-name>,
    <real group ID>, <group-name>
```

If the effective and real user IDs do not match, the following shall be inserted immediately before the `'\n'` character in the previous format:

```
" euid=%u(%s)"
```

with the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

```
<effective user ID>, <effective user-name>
```

If the effective and real group IDs do not match, the following shall be inserted directly before the `'\n'` character in the format string (and after any addition resulting from the effective and real user IDs not matching):

```
" egid=%u(%s)"
```

with the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

```
<effective group-ID>, <effective group name>
```

If the process has supplementary group affiliations or the selected user is allowed to belong to multiple groups, the first shall be added directly before the <newline> in the format string:

```
" groups=%u(%s)"
```

with the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

```
<supplementary group ID>, <supplementary group name>
```

and the necessary number of the following added after that for any remaining supplementary group IDs:

```
",%u(%s)"
```

and the necessary number of the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

```
<supplementary group ID>, <supplementary group name>
```

If any of the user ID, group ID, effective user ID, effective group ID, or supplementary/multiple group IDs cannot be mapped by the system into printable user or group names, the corresponding `"(%s)"` and *name* argument shall be omitted from the corresponding format string.

When any of the options are specified, the output format shall be as described in the OPTIONS section.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Output produced by the **–G** option and by the default case could potentially produce very long lines on systems that support large numbers of supplementary groups. (On systems with user and group IDs that are 32-bit integers and with group names with a maximum of 8 bytes per name, 93 supplementary groups plus distinct effective and real group and user IDs could theoretically overflow the 2 048-byte {LINE_MAX} text file line limit on the default output case. It would take about 186 supplementary groups to overflow the 2 048-byte barrier using *id* **–G**). This is not expected to be a problem in practice, but in cases where it is a concern, applications should consider using *fold* **–s** before postprocessing the output of *id*.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The functionality provided by the 4 BSD *groups* utility can be simulated using:

```
id –Gn [ user ]
```

The 4 BSD command *groups* was considered, but it was not included because it did not provide the functionality of the *id* utility of the SVID. Also, it was thought that it would be easier to modify *id* to provide the additional functionality necessary to systems with multiple groups than to invent another command.

The options **–u**, **–g**, **–n**, and **–r** were added to ease the use of *id* with shell commands substitution. Without these options it is necessary to use some preprocessor such as *sed* to select the desired piece of information. Since output such as that produced by:

```
id –u –n
```

is frequently wanted, it seemed desirable to add the options.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

19994 **SEE ALSO**

19995 *fold*, *logname*, *who*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *getgid*(), *getgroups*(),
19996 *getuid*()

19997 **CHANGE HISTORY**

19998 First released in Issue 2.

19999 **Issue 7**

20000 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

20001 **NAME**

20002 ipcrm — remove an XSI message queue, semaphore set, or shared memory segment identifier

20003 **SYNOPSIS**

20004 XSI
```
ipcrm [–q msgid|–Q msgkey|–s semid|–S semkey|–m shmid|–M shmkey]...
```

20005 **DESCRIPTION**

20006 The *ipcrm* utility shall remove zero or more message queues, semaphore sets, or shared memory
20007 segments. The interprocess communication facilities to be removed are specified by the options.

20008 Only a user with appropriate privilege shall be allowed to remove an interprocess
20009 communication facility that was not created by or owned by the user invoking *ipcrm*.

20010 **OPTIONS**

20011 The *ipcrm* facility supports the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
20012 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

20013 The following options shall be supported:

20014 **–q** *msgid* Remove the message queue identifier *msgid* from the system and destroy the
20015 message queue and data structure associated with it.

20016 **–m** *shmid* Remove the shared memory identifier *shmid* from the system. The shared memory
20017 segment and data structure associated with it shall be destroyed after the last
20018 detach.

20019 **–s** *semid* Remove the semaphore identifier *semid* from the system and destroy the set of
20020 semaphores and data structure associated with it.

20021 **–Q** *msgkey* Remove the message queue identifier, created with key *msgkey*, from the system
20022 and destroy the message queue and data structure associated with it.

20023 **–M** *shmkey* Remove the shared memory identifier, created with key *shmkey*, from the system.
20027 2001-2 TdeoTL(2002040)15 The shared memory segment and data structure associated with it shall be
destroyed after the last detach.

–S *semkey* Remove the semaphore identifier, created with key *semkey*, from the system and
destroy the set of semaphores and data structure associated with it.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ipcrm*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

20042 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
20043 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
20044 arguments).

20045 *LC_MESSAGES*
20046 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
20047 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

20048 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

20049 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
20050 Default.

20051 **STDOUT**
20052 Not used.

20053 **STDERR**
20054 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

20055 **OUTPUT FILES**
20056 None.

20057 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
20058 None.

20059 **EXIT STATUS**
20060 The following exit values shall be returned:

20061 0 Successful completion.

20062 >0 An error occurred.

20063 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
20064 Default.

20065 **APPLICATION USAGE**
20066 None.

20067 **EXAMPLES**
20068 None.

20069 **RATIONALE**
20070 None.

20071 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
20072 None.

20073 **SEE ALSO**
20074 *ipcs*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *msgctl*( ), *semctl*( ), *shmctl*( )

20075 **CHANGE HISTORY**
20076 First released in Issue 5.

20077 **Issue 7**
20078 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

20079 **NAME**

20080 ipcs — report XSI interprocess communication facilities status

20081 **SYNOPSIS**

20082 XSI
```
ipcs [-qms] [-a|-bcopt]
```

20083 **DESCRIPTION**

20084 The *ipcs* utility shall write information about active interprocess communication facilities.

20085 Without options, information shall be written in short format for message queues, shared
20086 memory segments, and semaphore sets that are currently active in the system. Otherwise, the
20087 information that is displayed is controlled by the options specified.

20088 **OPTIONS**

20089 The *ipcs* facility supports the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
20090 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

20091 The *ipcs* utility accepts the following options:

20092 **-q** Write information about active message queues.

20093 **-m** Write information about active shared memory segments.

20094 **-s** Write information about active semaphore sets.

20095 If **-q**, **-m**, or **-s** are specified, only information about those facilities shall be written. If none of
20096 these three are specified, information about all three shall be written subject to the following
20097 options:

20098 **-a** Use all print options. (This is a shorthand notation for **-b**, **-c**, **-o**, **-p**, and **-t**.)

20099 **-b** Write information on maximum allowable size. (Maximum number of bytes in
20100 messages on queue for message queues, size of segments for shared memory, and
20101 number of semaphores in each set for semaphores.)

20102 **-c** Write creator's user name and group name; see below.

20103 **-o** Write information on outstanding usage. (Number of messages on queue and total
20104 number of bytes in messages on queue for message queues, and number of
20105 processes attached to shared memory segments.)

20106 **-p** Write process number information. (Process ID of the last process to send a
20107 message and process ID of the last process to receive a message on message
20108 queues, process ID of the creating process, and process ID of the last process to
20109 attach or detach on shared memory segments.)

20110 **-t** Write time information. (Time of the last control operation that changed the access
20111 permissions for all facilities, time of the last *msgsnd*( ) and *msgrcv*( ) operations on
20112 message queues, time of the last *shmat*( ) and *shmdt*( ) operations on shared
20113 memory, and time of the last *semop*( ) operation on semaphores.)

20114 **OPERANDS**

20115 None.

20116 **STDIN**

20117 Not used.

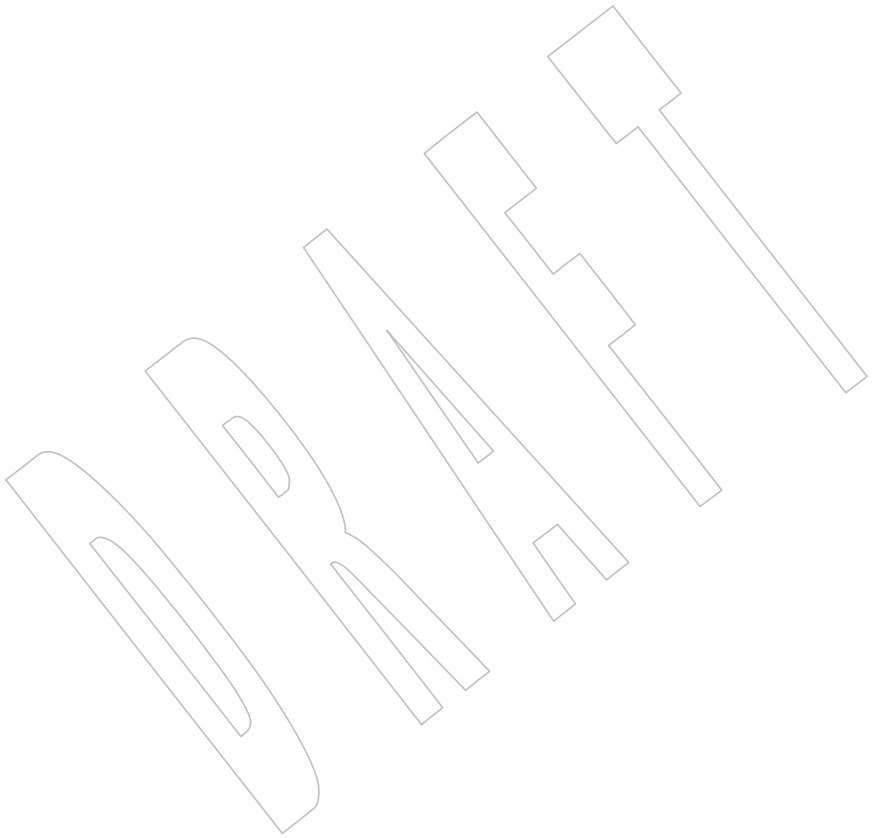
INPUT FILES

- The group database
- The user database

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ipcs*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions voull.dull.



shall cause the corresponding column to appear; "all" means that the column shall always appear. Each column is separated by one or more <space>s. Note that these options only determine what information is provided for each report; they do not determine which reports are written.

T (all) Type of facility:

`q` Message queue.

`m` Shared memory segment.

`s` Semaphore.

This field is a single character written using the format `%c`.

ID (all) The identifier for the facility entry. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

KEY (all) The key used as an argument to *msgget*(), *semget*(), or *shmget*() to create the facility entry.

Note: The key of a shared memory segment is changed to IPC_PRIVATE when the segment has been removed until all processes attached to the segment detach it.

This field shall be written using the format `0x%x`.

MODE (all) The facility access modes and flags. The mode shall consist of 11 characters that are interpreted as follows.

The first character shall be:

`S` If a process is waiting on a *msgsnd*() operation.

– If the above is not true.

The second character shall be:

`R` If a process is waiting on a *msgrcv*() operation.

`C` or – If the associated shared memory segment is to be cleared when the first attach operation is executed.

– If none of the above is true.

The next nine characters shall be interpreted as three sets of three bits each. The first set refers to the owner's permissions; the next to permissions of others in the usergroup of the facility entry; and the last to all others. Within each set, the first character indicates permission to read, the second character indicates permission to write or alter the facility entry, and the last character is a minus sign (`'–'`).

The permissions shall be indicated as follows:

r If read permission is granted.

w If write permission is granted.

a If alter permission is granted.

– If the indicated permission is not granted.

The first character following the permissions specifies if there is an alternate or additional access control method associated with the facility. If there is no alternate or additional access control method associated with the facility, a single <space> shall be written; otherwise, another printable character is written.

OWNER (all) The user name of the owner of the facility entry. If the user name of the owner is found in the user database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the user ID of the owner shall be written using the format `%d`.

GROUP (all) The group name of the owner of the facility entry. If the group name of the owner is found in the group database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the group ID of the owner shall be written using the format `%d`.

The following nine columns shall be only written out for message queues:

CREATOR (**a**,**c**) The user name of the creator of the facility entry. If the user name of the creator is found in the user database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the user ID of the creator shall be written using the format `%d`.

CGROUP (**a**,**c**) The group name of the creator of the facility entry. If the group name of the creator is found in the group database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the group ID of the creator shall be written using the format `%d`.

CBYTES (**a**,**o**) The number of bytes in messages currently outstanding on the associated message queue. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

QNUM (**a**,**o**) The number of messages currently outstanding on the associated message queue. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

QBYTES (**a**,**b**) The maximum number of bytes allowed in messages outstanding on the associated message queue. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

LSPID (**a**,**p**) The process ID of the last process to send a message to the associated queue. This field shall be written using the format:

`"%d", <pid>`

where <*pid*> is 0 if no message has been sent to the corresponding message queue; otherwise, <*pid*> shall be the process ID of the last process to send a message to the queue.

LRPID (**a**,**p**) The process ID of the last process to receive a message from the associated queue. This field shall be written using the format:

`"%d", <pid>`

where <*pid*> is 0 if no message has been received from the corresponding message queue; otherwise, <*pid*> shall be the process ID of the last process to receive a message from the queue.

STIME (**a**,**t**) The time the last message was sent to the associated queue. If a message has been sent to the corresponding message queue, the hour, minute, and second

CREATOR (**a**,**c**) The user of the creator of the facility entry. If the user name of the creator is found in the user database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the user ID of the creator shall be written using the format `%d`.

CGROUP (**a**,**c**) The group name of the creator of the facility entry. If the group name of the creator is found in the group database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the group ID of the creator shall be written using the format `%d`.

NATTCH (**a**,**o**) The number of processes attached to the associated shared memory segment. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

SEGSZ (**a**,**b**) The size of the associated shared memory segment. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

CPID (**a**,**p**) The process ID of the creator of the shared memory entry. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

LPID (**a**,**p**) The process ID of the last process to attach or detach the shared memory segment. This field shall be written using the format:

`"%d", <pid>`

where <*pid*> is 0 if no process has attached the corresponding shared memory segment; otherwise, <*pid*> shall be the process ID of the last process to attach or detach the segment.

ATIME (**a**,**t**) The time the last attach on the associated shared memory segment was completed. If the corresponding shared memory segment has ever been attached, the hour, minute, and second of the last time the segment was attached shall be written using the format `%d:%2.2d:%2.2d`. Otherwise, the format `" no-entry"` shall be written.

DTIME (**a**,**t**) The time the last detach on the associated shared memory segment was completed. If the corresponding shared memory segment has ever been detached, the hour, minute, and second of the last time the segment was detached shall be written using the format `%d:%2.2d:%2.2d`. Otherwise, the format `" no-entry"` shall be written.

The following four columns shall be only written out for semaphore sets:

CREATOR (**a**,**c**) The user of the creator of the facility entry. If the user name of the creator is found in the user database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the user ID of the creator shall be written using the format `%d`.

CGROUP (**a**,**c**) The group name of the creator of the facility entry. If the group name of the creator is found in the group database, at least the first eight column positions of the name shall be written using the format `%s`. Otherwise, the group ID of the creator shall be written using the format `%d`.

NSEMS (**a**,**b**) The number of semaphores in the set associated with the semaphore entry. This field shall be written using the format `%d`.

OTIME (**a**,**t**) The time the last semaphore operation on the set associated with the semaphore entry was completed. If a semaphore operation has ever been performed on the corresponding semaphore set, the hour, minute, and second of the last semaphore operation on the semaphore set shall be written using the format `%d:%2.2d:%2.2d`. Otherwise, the format `" no-entry"` shall be written.

The following column shall be written for all three reports when it is requested:

CTIME (**a**,**t**) The time the associated entry was created or changed. The hour, minute, and second of the time when the associated entry was created shall be written using the format `%d:%2.2d:%2.2d`.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Things can change while *ipcs* is running; the information it gives is guaranteed to be accurate only when it was retrieved.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *msgrcv*( ), *msgsnd*( ), *semget*( ), *semop*( ), *shmat*( ), *shmdt*( ), *shmget*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 5.

Issue 6

The Open Group Corrigendum U020/1 is applied, correcting the SYNOPSIS.

The Open Group Corrigenda U032/1 and U032/2 are applied, clarifying the output format.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg98-004 is applied.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

jobs — display status of jobs in the current session

SYNOPSIS

UP

```
jobs [–l|–p] [job_id...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *jobs* utility shall display the status of jobs that were started in the current shell environment; see Section 2.12 (on page 61).

When *jobs* reports the termination status of a job, the shell shall remove its process ID from the list of those "known in the current shell execution environment"; see Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50).

OPTIONS

The *jobs* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–l (The letter ell.) Provide more information about each job listed. This information shall include the job number, current job, process group ID, state, and the command that formed the job.

–p Display only the process IDs for the process group leaders of the selected jobs.

By default, the *jobs* utility shall display the status of all stopped jobs, running background jobs and all jobs whose status has changed and have not been reported by the shell.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

job_id Specifies the jobs for which the status is to be displayed. If no *job_id* is given, the status information for all jobs shall be displayed. The format of *job_id* is described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.203, Job Control Job ID.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

20374 *LC_MESSAGES*
20375 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
20376 diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to
20377 standard output.

20378 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

20379 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
20380 Default.

20381 **STDOUT**
20382 If the –**p** option is specified, the output shall consist of one line for each process ID:

20383 `"%d\n", <process ID>`

20384 Otherwise, if the –**l** option is not specified, the output shall be a series of lines of the form:

20385 `"[%d] %c %s %s\n", <job-number>, <current>, <state>, <command>`

20386 where the fields shall be as follows:

20387 <*current*> The character `'+'` identifies the job that would be used as a default for the *fg* or *bg*
20388 utilities; this job can also be specified using the *job_id* %+ or `"%%"`. The character
20389 `'–'` identifies the job that would become the default if the current default job were
20390 to exit; this job can also be specified using the *job_id* %–. For other jobs, this field is
20391 a <space>. At most one job can be identified with `'+'` and at most one job can be
20392 identified with `'–'`. If there is any suspended job, then the current job shall be a
20393 suspended job. If there are at least two suspended jobs, then the previous job also
20394 shall be a suspended job.

20395 <*job-number*> A number that can be used to identify the process group to the *wait*, *fg*, *bg*, and *kill*
20396 utilities. Using these utilities, the job can be identified by prefixing the job number
20397 with `'%'`.

20398 <*state*> One of the following strings (in the POSIX locale):

20399 **Running** Indicates that the job has not been suspended by a signal and has not
20400 exited.

20401 **Done** Indicates that the job completed and returned exit status zero.

20402 **Done**(*code*) Indicates that the job completed normally and that it exited with the
20403 specified non-zero exit status, *code*, expressed as a decimal number.

20404 **Stopped** Indicates that the job was suspended by the SIGTSTP signal.

20405 **Stopped** (**SIGTSTP**)
20406 Indicates that the job was suspended by the SIGTSTP signal.

20407 **Stopped** (**SIGSTOP**)
20408 Indicates that the job was suspended by the SIGSTOP signal.

20409 **Stopped** (**SIGTTIN**)
20410 Indicates that the job was suspended by the SIGTTIN signal.

20411 **Stopped** (**SIGTTOU**)
20412 Indicates that the job was suspended by the SIGTTOU signal.

20413 The implementation may substitute the string **Suspended** in place of **Stopped**. If
20414 the job was terminated by a signal, the format of <*state*> is unspecified, but it shall
20415 be visibly distinct from all of the other <*state*> formats shown here and shall
20416 indicate the name or description of the signal causing the termination.

<*command*> The associated command that was given to the shell.

If the **–l** option is specified, a field containing the process group ID shall be inserted before the <*state*> field. Also, more processes in a process group may be output on separate lines, using only the process ID and <*command*> fields.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **–p** option is the only portable way to find out the process group of a job because different implementations have different strategies for defining the process group of the job. Usage such as $(*jobs* **–p**) provides a way of referring to the process group of the job in an implementation-independent way.

The *jobs* utility does not work as expected when it is operating in its own utility execution environment because that environment has no applicable jobs to manipulate. See the APPLICATION USAGE section for *bg*. For this reason, *jobs* is generally implemented as a shell regular built-in.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

Both "%%" and "%+" are used to refer to the current job. Both forms are of equal validity—the "%%" mirroring "$$" and "%+" mirroring the output of *jobs*. Both forms reflect historical practice of the KornShell and the C shell with job control.

The job control features provided by *bg*, *fg*, and *jobs* are based on the KornShell. The standard developers examined the characteristics of the C shell versions of these utilities and found that differences exist. Despite widespread use of the C shell, the KornShell versions were selected for this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to maintain a degree of uniformity with the rest of the KornShell features selected (such as the very popular command line editing features).

The *jobs* utility is not dependent on the job control option, as are the seemingly related *bg* and *fg* utilities because *jobs* is useful for examining background jobs, regardless of the condition of job control. When the user has invoked a *set* **+m** command and job control has been turned off, *jobs* can still be used to examine the background jobs associated with that current session. Similarly, *kill* can then be used to kill background jobs with *kill*% <*background job number*>.

The output for terminated jobs is left unspecified to accommodate various historical systems. The following formats have been witnessed:

1. **Killed**(*signal name*)

2. *signal name*
3. *signal name*(**coredump**)
4. *signal description*– **core dumped**

Most users should be able to understand these formats, although it means that applications have trouble parsing them.

The calculation of job IDs was not described since this would suggest an implementation, which may impose unnecessary restrictions.

In an early proposal, a –**n** option was included to ''Display the status of jobs that have changed, exited, or stopped since the last status report''. It was removed because the shell always writes any changed status of jobs before each prompt.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.12 (on page 61), *bg*, *fg*, *kill*, *wait*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The JC shading is removed as job control is mandatory in this issue.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

join — relational database operator

SYNOPSIS

```
join [–a file_number|–v file_number] [–e string] [–o list] [–t char]
    [–1 field] [–2 field] file1 file2
```

DESCRIPTION

The *join* utility shall perform an equality join on the files *file1* and *file2*. The joined files shall be written to the standard output.

The join field is a field in each file on which the files are compared. The *join* utility shall write one line in the output for each pair of lines in *file1* and *file2* that have identical join fields. The output line by default shall consist of the join field, then the remaining fields from *file1*, then the remaining fields from *file2*. This format can be changed by using the **–o** option (see below). The **–a** option can be used to add unmatched lines to the output. The **–v** option can be used to output only unmatched lines.

The files *file1* and *file2* shall be ordered in the collating sequence of *sort* **–b** on the fields on which they shall be joined, by default the first in each line. All selected output shall be written in the same collating sequence.

The default input field separators shall be <blank>s. In this case, multiple separators shall count as one field separator, and leading separators shall be ignored. The default output field separator shall be a <space>.

The field separator and collating sequence can be changed by using the **–t** option (see below).

If the same key appears more than once in either file, all combinations of the set of remaining fields in *file1* and the set of remaining fields in *file2* are output in the order of the lines encountered.

If the input files are not in the appropriate collating sequence, the results are unspecified.

OPTIONS

The *join* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–a *file_number*
: Produce a line for each unpairable line in file *file_number*, where *file_number* is 1 or 2, in addition to the default output. If both **–a**1 and **–a**2 are specified, all unpairable lines shall be output.

–e *string*
: Replace empty output fields in the list selected by **–o** with the string *string*.

–o *list*
: Construct the output line to comprise the fields specified in *list*, each element of which shall have one of the following two forms:

  1. *file_number.field*, where *file_number* is a file number and *field* is a decimal integer field number
  2. 0 (zero), representing the join field

  The elements of *list* shall be either comma-separated or <blank>-separated, as specified in Guideline 8 of the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines. The fields specified by *list* shall be written for all selected output lines. Fields selected by *list* that do not appear in the input shall be treated as empty output fields. (See the **–e** option.) Only specifically

requested fields shall be written. The application shall ensure that *list* is a single command line argument.

–t *char* Use character *char* as a separator, for both input and output. Every appearance of *char* in a line shall be significant. When this option is specified, the collating sequence shall be the same as *sort* without the **–b** option.

–v *file_number*
Instead of the default output, produce a line only for each unpairable line in *file_number*, where *file_number* is 1 or 2. If both **–v**1 and **–v**2 are specified, all unpairable lines shall be output.

–1 *field* Join on the *field*th field of file 1. Fields are decimal integers starting with 1.

–2 *field* Join on the *field*th field of file 2. Fields are decimal integers starting with 1.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file1, *file2* A pathname of a file to be joined. If either of the *file1* or *file2* operands is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used in its place.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if the *file1* or *file2* operand is `'–'`. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *join*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale of the collating sequence *join* expects to have been used when the input files were sorted.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The *join* utility output shall be a concatenation of selected character fields. When the **–o** option is not specified, the output shall be:

```
"%s%s%s\n", <join field>, <other file1 fields>,
    <other file2 fields>
```

If the join field is not the first field in a file, the <*other file fields*> for that file shall be:

<fields preceding join field>, <fields following join field>

When the **–o** option is specified, the output format shall be:

"%s\n", *<concatenation of fields>*

where the concatenation of fields is described by the **–o** option, above.

For either format, each field (except the last) shall be written with its trailing separator character. If the separator is the default (<blank>s), a single <space> shall be written after each field (except the last).

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were output successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Pathnames consisting of numeric digits or of the form *string.string* should not be specified directly following the **–o** list.

EXAMPLES

The **–o** 0 field essentially selects the union of the join fields. For example, given file **phone**:

```
!Name           Phone Number
Don             +1 123-456-7890
Hal             +1 234-567-8901
Yasushi         +2 345-678-9012
```

and file **fax**:

```
!Name           Fax Number
Don             +1 123-456-7899
Keith           +1 456-789-0122
Yasushi         +2 345-678-9011
```

(where the large expanses of white space are meant to each represent a single <tab>), the command:

```
join –t "<tab>" –a 1 –a 2 –e '(unknown)' –o 0,1.2,2.2 phone fax
```

would produce:

```
!Name           Phone Number          Fax Number
Don             +1 123-456-7890       +1 123-456-7899
Hal             +1 234-567-8901       (unknown)
Keith           (unknown)             +1 456-789-0122
Yasushi         +2 345-678-9012       +2 345-678-9011
```


Multiple instances of the same key will produce combinatorial results. The following:

```
fa:
    a x
    a y
    a z
fb:
    a p
```

will produce:

```
a x p
a y p
a z p
```

And the following:

```
fa:
    a b c
    a d e
fb:
    a w x
    a y z
    a o p
```

will produce:

```
a b c w x
a b c y z
a b c o p
a d e w x
a d e y z
a d e o p
```

RATIONALE

The **–e** option is only effective when used with **–o** because, unless specific fields are identified using **–o**, *join* is not aware of what fields might be empty. The exception to this is the join field, but identifying an empty join field with the **–e** string is not historical practice and some scripts might break if this were changed.

The 0 field in the **–o** list was adopted from the Tenth Edition version of *join* to satisfy international objections that the *join* in the base documents does not support the "full join" or "outer join" described in relational database literature. Although it has been possible to include a join field in the output (by default, or by field number using **–o**), the join field could not be included for an unpaired line selected by **–a**. The **–o** 0 field essentially selects the union of the join fields.

ed linejf0 Tc11.7859 dNds Tcn0s.

files was considered to be the end of the file; the description in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not cite this as an allowable case.

Earlier versions of this standard allowed **–j**, **–j1**, **–j2** options, and a form of the **–o** option that allowed the *list* option-argument to be multiple arguments. These forms are no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

awk, *comm*, *sort*, *uniq*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The obsolescent **–j** options and the multi-argument **–o** option are withdrawn in this issue.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

kill — terminate or signal processes

SYNOPSIS

```
kill –s signal_name pid...
kill –l [exit_status]
```

XSI

```
kill [–signal_name] pid...
kill [–signal_number] pid...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *kill* utility shall send a signal to the process or processes specified by each *pid* operand.

For each *pid* operand, the *kill* utility shall perform actions equivalent to the *kill*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x called with the following arguments:

- The value of the *pid* operand shall be used as the *pid* argument.
- The *sig* argument is the value specified by the **–s** option, *–signal_number* option, or the *–signal_name* option, or by SIGTERM, if none of these options is specified.

OPTIONS

The *kill* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that in the last two SYNOPSIS forms, the *–signal_number* and *–signal_name* options are usually more than a single character.

The following options shall be supported:

–l (The letter ell.) Write all values of *signal_name* supported by the implementation, if no operand is given. If an *exit_status* operand is given and it is a value of the `'?'` shell special parameter (see Section 2.5.2 and *wait*) corresponding to a process that was terminated by a signal, the *signal_name* corresponding to the signal that terminated the process shall be written. If an *exit_status* operand is given and it is the unsigned decimal integer value of a signal number, the *signal_name* (the symbolic constant name without the **SIG** prefix defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x) corresponding to that signal shall be written. Otherwise, the results are unspecified.

–s *signal_name*
Specify the signal to send, using one of the symbolic names defined in the **<signal.h>** header. Values of *signal_name* shall be recognized in a case-independent fashion, without the **SIG** prefix. In addition, the symbolic name 0 shall be recognized, representing the signal value zero. The corresponding signal shall be sent instead of SIGTERM.

XSI *–signal_name*
Equivalent to **–s** *signal_name*.

XSI *–signal_number*
Specify a non-negative decimal integer, *signal_number*, representing the signal to be used instead of SIGTERM, as the *sig* argument in the effective call to *kill*(). The correspondence between integer values and the *sig* value used is shown in the following list.

The effects of specifying any *signal_number* other than those listed below are

undefined.

0 0

1 SIGHUP

2 SIGINT

3 SIGQUIT

6 SIGABRT

9 SIGKILL

14 SIGALRM

15 SIGTERM

If the first argument is a negative integer, it shall be interpreted as a *–signal_number* option, not as a negative *pid* operand specifying a process group.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

pid One of the following:

1. A decimal integer specifying a process or process group to be signaled. The process or processes selected by positive, negative, and zero values of the *pid* operand shall be as described for the *kill*( ) function. If process number 0 is specified, all processes in the current process group shall be signaled. For the effects of negative *pid* numbers, see the *kill*( ) f

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

When the **–l** option is not specified, the standard output shall not be used.

When the **–l** option is specified, the symbolic name of each signal shall be written in the following format:

```
"%s%c", <signal_name>, <separator>
```

where the <*signal_name*> is in uppercase, without the **SIG** prefix, and the <*separator*> shall be either a <newline> or a <space>. For the last signal written, <*separator*> shall be a <newline>.

When both the **–l** option and *exit_status* operand are specified, the symbolic name of the corresponding signal shall be written in the following format:

```
"%s\n", <signal_name>
```

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 At least one matching process was found for each *pid* operand, and the specified signal was successfully processed for at least one matching process.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Process numbers can be found by using *ps*.

The job control job ID notation is not required to work as expected when *kill* is operating in its own utility execution environment. In either of the following examples:

```
nohup kill %1 &
system("kill %1");
```

the *kill* operates in a different environment and does not share the shell's understanding of job numbers.

EXAMPLES

Any of the commands:

```
kill –9 100 –165
kill –s kill 100 –165
kill –s KILL 100 –165
```

sends the SIGKILL signal to the process whose process ID is 100 and to all processes whose

process group ID is 165, assuming the sending process has permission to send that signal to the specified processes, and that they exist.

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x do not require specific signal numbers for any *signal_names*. Even the *–signal_number* option provides symbolic (although numeric) names for signals. If a process is terminated by a signal, its exit status indicates the signal that killed it, but the exact values are not specified. The *kill* **–l** option, however, can be used to map decimal signal numbers and exit status values into the name of a signal. The following example reports the status of a terminated job:

```
job
stat=$?
if [ $stat –eq 0 ]
then
    echo job completed successfully.
elif [ $stat –gt 128 ]
then
    echo job terminated by signal SIG$(kill –l $stat).
else
    echo job terminated with error code $stat.
fi
```

To send the default signal to a process group (say 123), an application should use a command similar to one of the following:

```
kill –TERM –123
kill –– –123
```

RATIONALE

The **–l** option originated from the C shell, and is also implemented in the KornShell. The C shell output can consist of multiple output lines because the signal names do not always fit on a single line on some terminal screens. The KornShell output also included the implementation-defined signal numbers and was considered by the standard developers to be too difficult for scripts to parse conveniently. The specified output format is intended not only to accommodate the historical C shell output, but also to permit an entirely vertical or entirely horizontal listing on systems for which this is appropriate.

An early proposal invented the name SIGNULL as a *signal_name* for signal 0 (used by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to test for the existence of a process without sending it a signal). Since the *signal_name* 0 can be used in this case unambiguously, SIGNULL has been removed.

An early proposal also required symbolic *signal_name*s to be recognized with or without the **SIG** prefix. Historical versions of *kill* have not written the **SIG** prefix for the **–l** option and have not recognized the **SIG** prefix on *signal_name*s. Since neither applications portability nor ease-of-use would be improved by requiring this extension, it is no longer required.

To avoid an ambiguity of an initial negative number argument specifying either a signal number or a process group, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x mandates that it is always considered the former by implementations that support the XSI option. It also requires that conforming applications always use the "––" options terminator argument when specifying a process group, unless an option is also specified.

The **–s** option was added in response to international interest in providing some form of *kill* that meets the Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The job control job ID notation is not required to work as expected when *kill* is operating in its own utility execution environment. In either of the following examples:

```
nohup kill %1 &
```



```
system("kill %1");
```

the *kill* operates in a different environment and does not understand how the shell has managed its job numbers.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *ps*, *wait*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *kill*( ), the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, **<signal.h>**

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The obsolescent versions of the SYNOPSIS are turned into non-obsolescent features of the XSI option, corresponding to a similar change in the *trap* special built-in.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

20873 **NAME**

20874 lex — generate programs for lexical tasks (**DEVELOPMENT**)

20875 **SYNOPSIS**

20876 CD
```
lex [–t] [–n|–v] [file...]
```

20877 **DESCRIPTION**

20878 The *lex* utility shall generate C programs to be used in lexical processing of character input, and
20879 that can be used as an interface to *yacc*. The C programs shall be generated from *lex* source code
20880 and conform to the ISO C standard. Usually, the *lex* utility shall write the program it generates to
20881 the file **lex.yy.c**; the state of this file is unspecified if *lex* exits with a non-zero exit status. See the
20882 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section for a complete description of the *lex* input language.

20883 **OPTIONS**

20884 The *lex* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
20885 Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for Guideline 9.

20886 The following options shall be supported:

20887 **–n** Suppress the summary of statistics usually written with the **–v** option. If no table
20888 sizes are specified in the *lex* source code and the **–v** option is not specified, then **–n**
20889 is implied.

20890 **–t** Write the resulting program to standard output instead of **lex.yy.c**.

20891 **–v** Write a summary of *lex* statistics to the standard output. (See the discussion of *lex*
20892 table sizes in Definitions in lex (on page 537).) If the **–t** option is specified and **–n**
20893 is not specified, this report shall be written to standard error. If table sizes are
20894 specified in the *lex* source code, and if the **–n** option is not specified, the **–v** option
20895 may be enabled.

20896 **OPERANDS**

20897 The following operand shall be supported:

20898 *file* A pathname of an input file. If more than one such *file* is specified, all files shall be
20899 concatenated to produce a single *lex* program. If no *file* operands are specified, or if
20900 a *file* operand is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

20901 **STDIN**

20902 The standard input shall be used if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`. See
20903 INPUT FILES.

20904 **INPUT FILES**

20905 The input files shall be text files containing *lex* source code, as described in the EXTENDED
20906 DESCRIPTION section.

20907 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

20908 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *lex*:

20909 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
20910 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
20911 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
20912 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

20913 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
20914 internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions. If this variable is not set to the POSIX locale, the results are unspecified.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files), and the behavior of character classes within regular expressions. If this variable is not set to the POSIX locale, the results are unspecified.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

If the **–t** option is specified, the text file of C source code output of *lex* shall be written to standard output.

If the **–t** option is not specified:

- Implementation-defined informational, error, and warning messages concerning the contents of *lex* source code input shall be written to either the standard output or standard error.
- If the **–v** option is specified and the **–n** option is not specified, *lex* statistics shall also be written to either the standard output or standard error, in an implementation-defined format. These statistics may also be generated if table sizes are specified with a `'%'` operator in the *Definitions* section, as long as the **–n** option is not specified.

STDERR

If the **–t** option is specified, implementation-defined informational, error, and warning messages concerning the contents of *lex* source code input shall be written to the standard error.

If the **–t** option is not specified:

1. Implementation-defined informational, error, and warning messages concerning the contents of *lex* source code input shall be written to either the standard output or standard error.
2. If the **–v** option is specified and the **–n** option is not specified, *lex* statistics shall also be written to either the standard output or standard error, in an implementation-defined format. These statistics may also be generated if table sizes are specified with a `'%'` operator in the *Definitions* section, as long as the **–n** option is not specified.

OUTPUT FILES

A text file containing C source code shall be written to **lex.yy.c**, or to the standard output if the **–t** option is present.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

Each input file shall contain *lex* source code, which is a table of regular expressions with corresponding actions in the form of C program fragments.

When **lex.yy.c** is compiled and linked with the *lex* library (using the **–l l** operand with *c99*), the resulting program shall read character input from the standard input and shall partition it into strings that match the given expressions.

When an expression is matched, these actions shall occur:

- The input string that was matched shall be left in *yytext* as a null-terminated string; *yytext* shall either be an external character array or a pointer to a character string. As explained in Definitions in lex (on page 537), the type can be explicitly selected using the **%array** or **%pointer** declarations, but the default is implementation-defined.
- The external **int** *yyleng* shall be set to the length of the matching string.
- The expression's corresponding program fragment, or action, shall be executed.

During pattern matching, *lex* shall search the set of patterns for the single longest possible match. Among rules that match the same number of characters, the rule given first shall be chosen.

The general format of *lex* source shall be:

Definitions
%%
Rules
%%
*User*Subroutines

The first "%%" is required to mark the beginning of the rules (regular expressions and actions); the second "%%" is required only if user subroutines follow.

Any line in the *Definitions* section beginning with a <blank> shall be assumed to be a C program fragment and shall be copied to the external definition area of the **lex.yy.c** file. Similarly, anything in the *Definitions* section included between delimiter lines containing only "%{" and "%}" shall also be copied unchanged to the external definition area of the **lex.yy.c** file.

Any such input (beginning with a <blank> or within "%{" and "%}" delimiter lines) appearing at the beginning of the *Rules* section before any rules are specified shall be written to **lex.yy.c** after the declarations of variables for the *yylex*() function and before the first line of code in *yylex*(). Thus, user variables local to *yylex*() can be declared here, as well as application code to execute upon entry to *yylex*().

The action taken by *lex* when encountering any input beginning with a <blank> or within "%{" and "%}" delimiter lines appearing in the *Rules* section but coming after one or more rules is undefined. The presence of such input may result in an erroneous definition of the *yylex*() function.

Definitions in lex

Definitions appear before the first "%%" delimiter. Any line in this section not contained between "%{" and "%}" lines and not beginning with a <blank> shall be assumed to define a *lex* substitution string. The format of these lines shall be:

```
name substitute
```

If a *name* does not meet the requirements for identifiers in the ISO C standard, the result is undefined. The string *substitute* shall replace the string {*name*} when it is used in a rule. The *name* string shall be recognized in this context only when the braces are provided and when it does not appear within a bracket expression or within double-quotes.

In the *Definitions* section, any line beginning with a '%' (percent sign) character and followed by an alphanumeric word beginning with either 's' or 'S' shall define a set of start conditions. Any line beginning with a '%' followed by a word beginning with either 'x' or 'X' shall define a set of exclusive start conditions. When the generated scanner is in a %s state, patterns with no state specified shall be also active; in a %x state, such patterns shall not be active. The rest of the line, after the first word, shall be considered to be one or more <blank>-separated

names of start conditions. Start condition names shall be constructed in the same way as definition names. Start conditions can be used to restrict the matching of regular expressions to one or more states as described in Regular Expressions in lex (on page 539).

Implementations shall accept either of the following two mutually-exclusive declarations in the *Definitions* section:

%array Declare the type of *yytext* to be a null-terminated character array.

%pointer Declare the type of *yytext* to be a pointer to a null-terminated character string.

The default type of *yytext* is implementation-defined. If an application refers to *yytext* outside of the scanner source file (that is, via an **extern**), the application shall include the appropriate **%array** or **%pointer** declaration in the scanner source file.

Implementations shall accept declarations in the *Definitions* section for setting certain internal table sizes. The declarations are shown in the following table.

Table 4-9 Table Size Declarations in *lex*

Declaration	Description	Minimum Value
%**p** *n*	Number of positions	2 500
%**n** *n*	Number of states	500
%**a** *n*	Number of transitions	2 000
%**e** *n*	Number of parse tree nodes	1 000
%**k** *n*	Number of packed character classes	1 000
%**o** *n*	Size of the output array	3 000

In the table, *n* represents a positive decimal integer, preceded by one or more <blank>s. The exact meaning of these table size numbers is implementation-defined. The implementation shall document how these numbers affect the *lex* utility and how they are related to any output that may be generated by the implementation should limitations be encountered during the execution of *lex*. It shall be possible to determine from this output which of the table size values needs to be modified to permit *lex* to successfully generate tables for the input language. The values in the column Minimum Value represent the lowest values conforming implementations shall provide.

Rules in lex

The rules in *lex* source files are a table in which the left column contains regular expressions and the right column contains actions (C program fragments) to be executed when the expressions are recognized.

```
ERE action
ERE action
...
```

The extended regular expression (ERE) portion of a row shall be separated from *action* by one or more <blank>s. A regular expression containing <blank>s shall be recognized under one of the following conditions:

- The entire expression appears within double-quotes.
- The <blank>s appear within double-quotes or square brackets.
- Each <blank> is preceded by a backslash character.

User Subroutines in lex

Anything in the user subroutines section shall be copied to **lex.yy.c** following *yylex*().

Regular Expressions in lex

The *lex* utility shall support the set of extended regular expressions (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.4, Extended Regular Expressions), with the following additions and exceptions to the syntax:

`"..."` Any string enclosed in double-quotes shall represent the characters within the double-quotes as themselves, except that backslash escapes (which appear in the following table) shall be recognized. Any backslash-escape sequence shall be terminated by the closing quote. For example, `"\01""1"` represents a single string: the octal value 1 followed by the character `'1'`.

<state>r, *<state1,state2,...>r*
The regular expression *r* shall be matched only when the program is in one of the start conditions indicated by *state*, *state1*, and so on; see Actions in lex (on page 541). (As an exception to the typographical conventions of the rest of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, in this case *<state>* does not represent a metavariable, but the literal angle-bracket characters surrounding a symbol.) The start condition shall be recognized as such only at the beginning of a regular expression.

r/x The regular expression *r* shall be matched only if it is followed by an occurrence of regular expression *x* (*x* is the instance of trailing context, further defined below). The token returned in *yytext* shall only match *r*. If the trailing portion of *r* matches the beginning of *x*, the result is unspecified. The *r* expression cannot include further trailing context or the `'$'` (match-end-of-line) operator; *x* cannot include the `'^'` (match-beginning-of-line) operator, nor trailing context, nor the `'$'` operator. That is, only one occurrence of trailing context is allowed in a *lex* regular expression, and the `'^'` operator only can be used at the beginning of such an expression.

{*name*} When *name* is one of the substitution symbols from the *Definitions* section, the string, including the enclosing braces, shall be replaced by the *substitute* value. The *substitute* value shall be treated in the extended regular expression as if it were enclosed in parentheses. No substitution shall occur if {*name*} occurs within a bracket expression or within double-quotes.

Within an ERE, a backslash character shall be considered to begin an escape sequence as specified in the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`). In addition, the escape sequences in the following table shall be recognized.

A literal <newline> cannot occur within an ERE; the escape sequence `'\n'` can be used to represent a <newline>. A <newline> shall not be matched by a period operator.

21086 **Table 4-10** Escape Sequences in *lex*

Escape Sequence	Description	Meaning
`\`*digits*	A backslash character followed by the longest sequence of one, two, or three octal-digit characters (01234567). If all of the digits are 0 (that is, representation of the NUL character), the behavior is undefined.	The character whose encoding is represented by the one, two, or three-digit octal integer. Multi-byte characters require multiple, concatenated escape sequences of this type, including the leading `'\'` for each byte.
`\x`*digits*	A backslash character followed by the longest sequence of hexadecimal-digit characters (01234567abcdefABCDEF). If all of the digits are 0 (that is, representation of the NUL character), the behavior is undefined.	The character whose encoding is represented by the hexadecimal integer.
`\c`	A backslash character followed by any character not described in this table or in the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`).	The character `'c'`, unchanged.

Note: If a `'\x'` sequence needs to be immediately followed by a hexadecimal digit character, a sequence such as `"\x1""1"` can be used, which represents a character containing the value 1, followed by the character `'1'`.

The order of precedence given to extended regular expressions for *lex* differs from that specified in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.4, Extended Regular Expressions. The order of precedence for *lex* shall be as shown in the following table, from high to low.

Note: The escaped characters entry is not meant to imply that these are operators, but they are included in the table to show their relationships to the true operators. The start condition, trailing context, and anchoring notations have been omitted from the table because of the placement restrictions described in this section; they can only appear at the beginning or ending of an ERE.

21125 **Table 4-11** ERE Precedence in *lex*

Extended Regular Expression	Precedence
collation-related bracket symbols	`[= =]  [: :]  [. .]`
escaped characters	`\<special character>`
bracket expression	`[ ]`
quoting	`"..."`
grouping	`( )`
definition	`{name}`
single-character RE duplication	`* + ?`
concatenation	
interval expression	`{m,n}`
alternation	`|`

The ERE anchoring operators '^' and '$' do not appear in the table. With *lex* regular expressions, these operators are restricted in their use: the '^' operator can only be used at the beginning of an entire regular expression, and the '$' operator only at the end. The operators apply to the entire regular expression. Thus, for example, the pattern "(^abc)|(def$)" is undefined; it can instead be written as two separate rules, one with the regular expression "^abc" and one with "def$", which share a common action via the special '|' action (see below). If the pattern were written "^abc|def$", it would match either "abc" or "def" on a line by itself.

Unlike the general ERE rules, embedded anchoring is not allowed by most historical *lex* implementations. An example of embedded anchoring would be for patterns such as "(^|)foo(|$)" to match "foo" when it exists as a complete word. This functionality can be obtained using existing *lex* features:

```
^foo/[ \n]      |
" foo"/[ \n]    /* Found foo as a separate word. */
```

Note also that '$' is a form of trailing context (it is equivalent to "/\n") and as such cannot be used with regular expressions containing another instance of the operator (see the preceding discussion of trailing context).

The additional regular expressions trailing-context operator '/' can be used as an ordinary character if presented within double-quotes, "/"; preceded by a backslash, "\/"; or within a bracket expression, "[/]". The start-condition '<' and '>' operators shall be special only in a start condition at the beginning of a regular expression; elsewhere in the regular expression they shall be treated as ordinary characters.

Actions in lex

The action to be taken when an ERE is matched can be a C program fragment or the special actions described below; the program fragment can contain one or more C statements, and can also include special actions. The empty C statement ';' shall be a valid action; any string in the **lex.yy.c** input that matches the pattern portion of such a rule is effectively ignored or skipped. However, the absence of an action shall not be valid, and the action *lex* takes in such a condition is undefined.

The specification for an action, including C statements and special actions, can extend across several lines if enclosed in braces:

```
ERE <one or more blanks> { program statement
                           program statement }
```

The default action when a string in the input to a **lex.yy.c** program is not matched by any expression shall be to copy the string to the output. Because the default behavior of a program

21172 generated by *lex* is to read the input and copy it to the output, a minimal *lex* source program that
21173 has just "%%" shall generate a C program that simply copies the input to the output unchanged.

21174 Four special actions shall be available:

21175 `| ECHO; REJECT; BEGIN`

21176 | The action '|' means that the action for the next rule is the action for this rule.
21177 Unlike the other three actions, '|' cannot be enclosed in braces or be semicolon-
21178 terminated; the application shall ensure that it is specified alone, with no other
21179 actions.

21180 **ECHO;** Write the contents of the string *yytext* on the output.

21181 **REJECT;** Usually only a single expression is matched by a given string in the input.
21182 **REJECT** means "continue to the next expression that matches the current input",
21183 and shall cause whatever rule was the second choice after the current rule to be
21184 executed for the same input. Thus, multiple rules can be matched and executed for
21185 one input string or overlapping input strings. For example, given the regular
21186 expressions "xyz" and "xy" and the input "xyz", usually only the regular
21187 expression "xyz" would match. The next attempted match would start after **z.** If
21188 the last action in the "xyz" rule is **REJECT**, both this rule and the "xy" rule
21189 would be executed. The **REJECT** action may be implemented in such a fashion that
21190 flow of control does not continue after it, as if it were equivalent to a **goto** to
21191 another part of *yylex*(). The use of **REJECT** may result in somewhat larger and
21192 slower scanners.

21193 **BEGIN** The action:

21194 `BEGIN newstate;`

21195 switches the state (start condition) to *newstate*. If the string *newstate* has not been
21196 declared previously as a start condition in the *Definitions* section, the results are
21197 unspecified. The initial state is indicated by the digit '0' or the token **INITIAL**.

21198 The functions or macros described below are accessible to user code included in the *lex* input. It
21199 is unspecified whether they appear in the C code output of *lex*, or are accessible only through the
21200 **–l l** operand to *c99* (the *lex* library).

21201 **int** *yylex*(**void**)
21202 Performs lexical analysis on the input; this is the primary function generated by the *lex*
21203 utility. The function shall return zero when the end of input is reached; otherwise, it shall
21204 return non-zero values (tokens) determined by the actions that are selected.

21205 **int** *yymore*(**void**)
21206 When called, indicates that when the next input string is recognized, it is to be appended to
21207 the current value of *yytext* rather than replacing it; the value in *yyleng* shall be adjusted
21208 accordingly.

21209 **int** *yyless*(**int** *n*)
21210 Retains *n* initial characters in *yytext*, NUL-terminated, and treats the remaining characters as
21211 if they had not been read; the value in *yyleng* shall be adjusted accordingly.

21212 **int** *input*(**void**)
21213 Returns the next character from the input, or zero on end-of-file. It shall obtain input from
21214 the stream pointer *yyin*, although possibly via an intermediate buffer. Thus, once scanning
21215 has begun, the effect of altering the value of *yyin* is undefined. The character read shall be
21216 removed from the input stream of the scanner without any processing by the scanner.

21217 **int** *unput*(**int** *c*)
21218 Returns the character `'c'` to the input; *yytext* and *yyleng* are undefined until the next
21219 expression is matched. The result of using *unput*( ) for more characters than have been input
21220 is unspecified.

21221 The following functions shall appear only in the *lex* library accessible through the **–ll** operand;
21222 they can therefore be redefined by a conforming application:

21223 **int** *yywrap*(**void**)
21224 Called by *yylex*( ) at end-of-file; the default *yywrap*( ) shall always return 1. If the application
21225 requires *yylex*( ) to continue processing with another source of input, then the application
21226 can include a function *yywrap*( ), which associates another file with the external variable
21227 **FILE** * *yyin* and shall return a value of zero.

21228 **int** *main*(**int** *argc*, **char** **argv*[ ])
21229 Calls *yylex*( ) to perform lexical analysis, then exits. The user code can contain *main*( ) to
21230 perform application-specific operations, calling *yylex*( ) as applicable.

21231 Except for *input*( ), *unput*( ), and *main*( ), all external and static names generated by *lex* shall begin
21232 with the prefix **yy** or **YY**.

21233 **EXIT STATUS**
21234 The following exit values shall be returned:

21235 0 Successful completion.

21236 >0 An error occurred.

21237 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
21238 Default.

21239 **APPLICATION USAGE**
21240 Conforming applications are warned that in the *Rules* section, an ERE without an action is not
21241 acceptable, but need not be detected as erroneous by *lex*. This may result in compilation or
21242 runtime errors.

21243 The purpose of *input*( ) is to take characters off the input stream and discard them as far as the
21244 lexical analysis is concerned. A common use is to discard the body of a comment once the
21245 beginning of a comment is recognized.

21246 The *lex* utility is not fully internationalized in its treatment of regular expressions in the *lex*
21247 source code or generated lexical analyzer. It would seem desirable to have the lexical analyzer
21248 interpret the regular expressions given in the *lex* source according to the environment specified
21249 when the lexical analyzer is executed, but this is not possible with the current *lex* technology.
21250 Furthermore, the very nature of the lexical analyzers produced by *lex* must be closely tied to the
21251 lexical requirements of the input language being described, which is frequently locale-specific
21252 anyway. (For example, writing an analyzer that is used for French text is not automatically
21253 useful for processing other languages.)

21254 **EXAMPLES**
21255 The following is an example of a *lex* program that implements a rudimentary scanner for a
21256 Pascal-like syntax:

```
21257 %{
21258 /* Need this for the call to atof() below. */
21259 #include <math.h>
21260 /* Need this for printf(), fopen(), and stdin below. */
21261 #include <stdio.h>
21262 %}
21263 DIGIT    [0–9]
```

```
ID       [a-z][a-z0-9]*
%%
{DIGIT}+ {
    printf("An integer: %s (%d)\n", yytext,
        atoi(yytext));
    }
{DIGIT}+"."{DIGIT}*        {
    printf("A float: %s (%g)\n", yytext,
        atof(yytext));
    }
if|then|begin|end|procedure|function        {
    printf("A keyword: %s\n", yytext);
    }
{ID}    printf("An identifier: %s\n", yytext);
"+"|"-"|"*"|"/"        printf("An operator: %s\n", yytext);
"{"[^}\n]*"}"    /* Eat up one-line comments. */
[ \t\n]+        /* Eat up white space. */
.  printf("Unrecognized character: %s\n", yytext);
%%
int main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    ++argv, --argc;  /* Skip over program name. */
    if (argc > 0)
        yyin = fopen(argv[0], "r");
    else
        yyin = stdin;
    yylex();
}
```

RATIONALE

Even though the **-c** option and references to the C language are retained in this description, *lex* may be generalized to other languages, as was done at one time for EFL, the Extended FORTRAN Language. Since the *lex* input specification is essentially language-independent, versions of this utility could be written to produce Ada, Modula-2, or Pascal code, and there are known historical implementations that do so.

The current description of *lex* bypasses the issue of dealing with internationalized EREs in the *lex* source code or generated lexical analyzer. If it follows the model used by *awk* (the source code is assumed to be presented in the POSIX locale, but input and output are in the locale specified by the environment variables), then the tables in the lexical analyzer produced by *lex* would interpret EREs specified in the *lex* source in terms of the environment variables specified when *lex* was executed. The desired effect would be to have the lexical analyzer interpret the EREs given in the *lex* source according to the environment specified when the lexical analyzer is executed, but this is not possible with the current *lex* technology.

The description of octal and hexadecimal-digit escape sequences agrees with the ISO C standard use of escape sequences.

Previous versions of this standard allowed for implementations with bytes other than eight bits, but this has been modified in this version.

There is no detailed output format specification. The observed behavior of *lex* under four different historical implementations was that none of these implementations consistently reported the line numbers for error and warning messages. Furthermore, there was a desire that *lex* be allowed to output additional diagnostic messages. Leaving message formats unspecified avoids these formatting questions and problems with internationalization.

Although the `%x` specifier for *exclusive* start conditions is not historical practice, it is believed to be a minor change to historical implementations and greatly enhances the usability of *lex* programs since it permits an application to obtain the expected functionality with fewer statements.

The **%array** and **%pointer** declarations were added as a compromise between historical systems. The System V-based *lex* copies the matched text to a *yytext* array. The *flex* program, supported in BSD and GNU systems, uses a pointer. In the latter case, significant performance improvements are available for some scanners. Most historical programs should require no change in porting from one system to another because the string being referenced is null-terminated in both cases. (The method used by *flex* in its case is to null-terminate the token in place by remembering the character that used to come right after the token and replacing it before continuing on to the next scan.) Multi-file programs with external references to *yytext* outside the scanner source file should continue to operate on their historical systems, but would require one of the new declarations to be considered strictly portable.

The description of EREs avoids unnecessary duplication of ERE details because their meanings within a *lex* ERE are the same as that for the ERE in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The reason for the undefined condition associated with text beginning with a <blank> or within `"%{"` and `"%}"` delimiter lines appearing in the *Rules* section is historical practice. Both the BSD and System V *lex* copy the indented (or enclosed) input in the *Rules* section (except at the beginning) to unreachable areas of the *yylex*() function (the code is written directly after a *break* statement). In some cases, the System V *lex* generates an error message or a syntax error, depending on the form of indented input.

The intention in breaking the list of functions into those that may appear in **lex.yy.c** *versus* those that only appear in **libl.a** is that only those functions in **libl.a** can be reliably redefined by a conforming application.

The descriptions of standard output and standard error are somewhat complicated because historical *lex* implementations chose to issue diagnostic messages to standard output (unless **–t** was given). IEEE Std 1003.1-200x allows this behavior, but leaves an opening for the more expected behavior of using standard error for diagnostics. Also, the System V behavior of writing the statistics when any table sizes are given is allowed, while BSD-derived systems can avoid it. The programmer can always precisely obtain the desired results by using either the **–t** or **–n** options.

The OPERANDS section does not mention the use of – as a synonym for standard input; not all historical implementations support such usage for any of the *file* operands.

A description of the *translation table* was deleted from early proposals because of its relatively low usage in historical applications.

The change to the definition of the *input*() function that allows buffering of input presents the opportunity for major performance gains in some applications.

The following examples clarify the differences between *lex* regular expressions and regular expressions appearing elsewhere in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. For regular expressions of the form `"r/x"`, the string matching *r* is always returned; confusion may arise when the beginning of *x* matches the trailing portion of *r*. For example, given the regular expression `"a*b/cc"` and the input `"aaabcc"`, *yytext* would contain the string `"aaab"` on this match. But given the regular expression `"x*/xy"` and the input `"xxxy"`, the token **xxx**, not **xx**, is returned

by some implementations because **xxx** matches `"x*"`.

In the rule `"ab*/bc"`, the `"b*"` at the end of *r* extends *r*'s match into the beginning of the trailing context, so the result is unspecified. If this rule were `"ab/bc"`, however, the rule matches the text `"ab"` when it is followed by the text `"bc"`. In this latter case, the matching of *r* cannot extend into the beginning of *x*, so the result is specified.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

c99, *ed*, *yacc*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the C-Language Development Utilities option.

The obsolescent **−c** option is removed.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/14 is applied, removing text describing behavior on systems with bytes consisting of more than eight bits.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-6 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

21380 **NAME**

21381 link — call *link*( ) function

21382 **SYNOPSIS**

21383 XSI
```
link file1 file2
```

21384 **DESCRIPTION**

21385 The *link* utility shall perform the function call:

21386
```
link(file1, file2);
```

21387 A user may need appropriate privilege to invoke the *link* utility.

21388 **OPTIONS**

21389 None.

21390 **OPERANDS**

21391 The following operands shall be supported:

21392 *file1* The pathname of an existing file.

21393 *file2* The pathname of the new directory entry to be created.

21394 **STDIN**

21395 Not used.

21396 **INPUT FILES**

21397 Not used.

21398 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

21399 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *link*:

21400 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
21401 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
21402 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
21403 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

21404 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
21405 internationalization variables.

21406 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
21407 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
21408 arguments).

21409 *LC_MESSAGES*
21410 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
21411 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

21412 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

21413 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

21414 Default.

21415 **STDOUT**

21416 None.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

ln, *unlink*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *link*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 5.

NAME

ln — link files

SYNOPSIS

```
ln [–fs] source_file target_file
ln [–fs] source_file... target_dir
```

DESCRIPTION

In the first synopsis form, the *ln* utility shall create a new directory entry (link) at the destination path specified by the *target_file* operand. If the **–s** option is specified, a symbolic link shall be created for the file specified by the *source_file* operand. This first synopsis form shall be assumed when the final operand does not name an existing directory; if more than two operands are specified and the final is not an existing directory, an error shall result.

In the second synopsis form, the *ln* utility shall create a new directory entry (link), or if the **–s** option is specified a symbolic link, for each file specified by a *source_file* operand, at a destination path in the existing directory named by *target_dir*.

If the last operand specifies an existing file of a type not specified by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the behavior is implementation-defined.

The corresponding destination path for each *source_file* shall be the concatenation of the target directory pathname, a slash character, and the last pathname component of the *source_file*. The second synopsis form shall be assumed when the final operand names an existing directory.

For each *source_file*:

1. If the destination path exists:
   a. If the **–f** option is not specified, *ln* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with the current *source_file*, and go on to any remaining *source_files*.
   b. Actions shall be performed equivalent to the *unlink*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, called using *destination* as the *path* argument. If this fails for any reason, *ln* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with the current *source_file*, and go on to any remaining *source_files*.
2. If the **–s** option is specified, *ln* shall create a symbolic link named by the destination path and containing as its pathname *source_file*. The *ln* utility shall do nothing more with *source_file* and shall go on to any remaining files.
3. If *source_file* is a symbolic link, actions shall be performed equivalent to the *link*() function using the object that *source_file* references as the *path1* argument and the destination path as the *path2* argument. The *ln* utility shall do nothing more with *source_file* and shall go on to any remaining files.
4. Actions shall be performed equivalent to the *link*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x using *source_file* as the *path1* argument, and the destination path as the *path2* argument.

OPTIONS

The *ln* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

21484 **–f** Force existing destination pathnames to be removed to allow the link.

21485 **–s** Create symbolic links instead of hard links.

21486 **OPERANDS**

21487 The following operands shall be supported:

21488 *source_file* A pathname of a file to be linked. If the **–s** option is specified, no restrictions on the
21489 type of file or on its existence shall be made. If the **–s** option is not specified,
21490 whether a directory can be linked is implementation-defined.

21491 *target_file* The pathname of the new directory entry to be created.

21492 *target_dir* A pathname of an existing directory in which the new directory entries are created.

21493 **STDIN**

21494 Not used.

21495 **INPUT FILES**

21496 None.

21497 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

21498 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ln*:

21499 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
21500 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
21501 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
21502 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

21503 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
21504 internationalization variables.

21505 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
21506 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
21507 arguments).

21508 *LC_MESSAGES*

21509 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
21510 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

21511 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

21512 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

21513 Default.

21514 **STDOUT**

21515 Not used.

21516 **STDERR**

21517 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

21518 **OUTPUT FILES**

21519 None.

21520 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

21521 None.

21522 **EXIT STATUS**

21523 The following exit values shall be returned:

21524 0 All the specified files were linked successfully.

21525 >0 An error occurred.

21526 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
21527 Default.

21528 **APPLICATION USAGE**
21529 None.

21530 **EXAMPLES**
21531 None.

21532 **RATIONALE**
21533 The CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS section does not require *ln* **–f** *a b* to remove *b* if a
21534 subsequent link operation would fail.

21535 Some historic versions of *ln* (including the one specified by the SVID) unlink the destination file,
21536 if it exists, by default. If the mode does not permit writing, these versions prompt for
21537 confirmation before attempting the unlink. In these versions the **–f** option causes *ln* not to
21538 attempt to prompt for confirmation.

21539 This allows *ln* to succeed in creating links when the target file already exists, even if the file itself
21540 is not writable (although the directory must be). Early proposals specified this functionality.

21541 This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not allow the *ln* utility to unlink existing destination
21542 paths by default for the following reasons:

21543 • The *ln* utility has historically been used to provide locking for shell applications, a usage
21544 that is incompatible with *ln* unlinking the destination path by default. There was no
21545 corresponding technical advantage to adding this functionality.

21546 • This functionality gave *ln* the ability to destroy the link structure of files, which changes
21547 the historical behavior of *ln*.

21548 • This functionality is easily replicated with a combination of *rm* and *ln*.

21549 • It is not historical practice in many systems; BSD and BSD-derived systems do not support
21550 this behavior. Unfortunately, whichever behavior is selected can cause scripts written
21551 expecting the other behavior to fail.

21552 • It is preferable that *ln* perform in the same manner as the *link*( ) function, which does not
21553 permit the target to exist already.

21554 This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x retains the **–f** option to provide support for shell scripts
21555 depending on the SVID semantics. It seems likely that shell scripts would not be written to
21556 handle prompting by *ln* and would therefore have specified the **–f** option.

21557 The **–f** option is an undocumented feature of many historical versions of the *ln* utility, allowing
21558 linking to directories. These versions require modification.

21559 Early proposals of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x also required a **–i** option, which behaved
21560 like the **–i** options in *cp* and *mv*, prompting for confirmation before unlinking existing files. This
21561 was not historical practice for the *ln* utility and has been omitted.

21562 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
21563 None.

21564 **SEE ALSO**
21565 *chmod*, *find*, *pax*, *rm*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *link*( ), *unlink*( )

21566 **CHANGE HISTORY**
21567 First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The *ln* utility is updated to include symbolic link processing as defined in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-27 is applied, adding a new paragraph to the RATIONALE.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

locale — get locale-specific information

SYNOPSIS

```
locale [–a|–m]

locale [–ck] name...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *locale* utility shall write information about the current locale environment, or all public locales, to the standard output. For the purposes of this section, a *public locale* is one provided by the implementation that is accessible to the application.

When *locale* is invoked without any arguments, it shall summarize the current locale environment for each locale category as determined by the settings of the environment variables defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 7, Locale.

When invoked with operands, it shall write values that have been assigned to the keywords in the locale categories, as follows:

- Specifying a keyword name shall select the named keyword and the category containing that keyword.
- Specifying a category name shall select the named category and all keywords in that category.

OPTIONS

The *locale* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–a Write information about all available public locales. The available locales shall include **POSIX**, representing the POSIX locale. The manner in which the implementation determines what other locales are available is implementation-defined.

–c Write the names of selected locale categories; see the STDOUT section. The **–c** option increases readability when more than one category is selected (for example, via more than one keyword name or via a category name). It is valid both with and without the **–k** option.

–k Write the names and values of selected keywords. The implementation may omit values for some keywords; see the OPERANDS section.

–m Write names of available charmaps; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

name The name of a locale category as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 7, Locale, the name of a keyword in a locale category, or the reserved name **charmap**. The named category or keyword shall be selected for output. If a single *name* reprms definednTd(mor)]TJ268efi02.305(IvPe0.187 Tw[(is Tj-21

21618 **STDIN**

21619 Not used.

21620 **INPUT FILES**

21621 None.

21622 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

21623 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *locale*:

21624 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
21625 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
21626 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
21627 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

21628 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
21629 internationalization variables.

21630 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
21631 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
21632 arguments and input files).

21633 *LC_MESSAGES*
21634 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
21635 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

21636 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

21637 XSI The application shall ensure that the *LANG*, *LC_**, and *NLSPATH* environment variables specify
21638 the current locale environment to be written out; they shall be used if the **−a** option is not
21639 specified.

21640 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

21641 Default.

21642 **STDOUT**

21643 The *LANG* variable shall be written first using the format:

21644 `"LANG=%s\n", <value>`

21645 If *LANG* is not set or is an empty string, the value is the empty string.

21646 If *locale* is invoked without any options or operands, the names and values of the *LC_**
21647 environment variables described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be written to the
21648 standard output, one variable per line, and each line using the following format. Only those
21649 variables set in the environment and not overridden by *LC_ALL* shall be written using this
21650 format:

21651 `"%s=%s\n", <variable_name>, <value>`

21652 The names of those *LC_** variables associated with locale categories defined in this volume of
21653 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that are not set in the environment or are overridden by *LC_ALL* shall be
21654 written in the following format:

21655 `"%s=\"%s\"\n", <variable_name>, <implied value>`

21656 The <*implied value*> shall be the name of the locale that has been selected for that category by the
21657 implementation, based on the values in *LANG* and *LC_ALL*, as described in the Base Definitions
21658 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

21659 The <*value*> and <*implied value*> shown above shall be properly quoted for possible later reentry
21660 to the shell. The <*value*> shall not be quoted using double-quotes (so that it can be distinguished
21661 by the user from the <*implied value*> case, which always requires double-quotes).

21662 The *LC_ALL* variable shall be written last, using the first format shown above. If it is not set, it

21663 shall be written as:

21664 `"LC_ALL=\n"`

21665 If any arguments are specified:

21666 1. If the –**a** option is specified, the names of all the public locales shall be written, each in the
21667 following format:

21668 `"%s\n", <locale name>`

21669 2. If the –**c** option is specified, the names of all selected categories shall be written, each in
21670 the following format:

21671 `"%s\n", <category name>`

21672 If keywords are also selected for writing (see following items), the category name output
21673 shall precede the keyword output for that category.

21674 If the –**c** option is not specified, the names of the categories shall not be written; only the
21675 keywords, as selected by the <*name*> operand, shall be written.

21676 3. If the –**k** option is specified, the names and values of selected keywords shall be written.
21677 If a value is non-numeric and is not a compound keyword value, it shall be written in the
21678 following format:

21679 `"%s=\"%s\"\n", <keyword name>, <keyword value>`

21680 If a value is a non-numeric compound keyword value, it shall either be written in the
21681 format:

21682 `"%s=\"%s\"\n", <keyword name>, <keyword value>`

21683 where the <*keyword value*> is a single string of values separated by semicolons, or it shall
21684 be written in the format:

21685 `"%s=%s\n", <keyword name>, <keyword value>`

21686 where the <*keyword value*> is encoded as a set of strings, each enclosed in double-
21687 quotation marks, separated by semicolons.

21688 If the keyword was **charmap**, the name of the charmap (if any) that was specified via the
21689 *localedef* –**f** option when the locale was created shall be written, with the word **charmap** as
21690 <*keyword name*>.

21691 If a value is numeric, it shall be written in one of the following formats:

21692 `"%s=%d\n", <keyword name>, <keyword value>`

21693 `"%s=%c%o\n", <keyword name>, <escape character>, <keyword value>`

21694 `"%s=%cx%x\n", <keyword name>, <escape character>, <keyword value>`

21695 where the <*escape character*> is that identified by the **escape_char** keyword in the current
21696 locale; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3, Locale
21697 Definition.

21698 Compound keyword values (list entries) shall be separated in the output by semicolons.
21699 When included in keyword values, the semicolon, the double-quote, the backslash, and
21700 any control character shall be preceded (escaped) with the escape character.

21701 4. If the –**k** option is not specified, selected keyword values shall be written, each in the
21702 following format:

21703 `"%s\n", <keyword value>`

21704 If the keyword was **charmap**, the name of the charmap (if any) that was specified via the

localedef –**f** option when the locale was created shall be written.

5. If the –**m** option is specified, then a list of all available charmaps shall be written, each in the format:

   `"%s\n", <charmap>`

   where <*charmap*> is in a format suitable for use as the option-argument to the *localedef* –**f** option.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All the requested information was found and output successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

If the *LANG* environment variable is not set or set to an empty value, or one of the *LC_** environment variables is set to an unrecognized value, the actual locales assumed (if any) are implementation-defined as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

Implementations are not required to write out the actual values for keywords in the categories *LC_CTYPE* and *LC_COLLATE*; however, they must write out the categories (allowing an application to determine, for example, which character classes are available).

EXAMPLES

In the following examples, the assumption is that locale environment variables are set as follows:

```
LANG=locale_x
LC_COLLATE=locale_y
```

The command *locale* would result in the following output:

```
LANG=locale_x
LC_CTYPE="locale_x"
LC_COLLATE=locale_y
LC_TIME="locale_x"
LC_NUMERIC="locale_x"
LC_MONETARY="locale_x"
LC_MESSAGES="locale_x"
LC_ALL=
```

The order of presentation of the categories is not specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The command:

```
LC_ALL=POSIX locale –ck decimal_point
```

would produce:

```
LC_NUMERIC
decimal_point="."
```

The following command shows an application of *locale* to determine whether a user-supplied response is affirmative:

```
if printf "%s\n" "$response" | grep –Eq "$(locale yesexpr)"
then
    affirmative processing goes here
else
    non-affirmative processing goes here
fi
```

RATIONALE

The output for categories *LC_CTYPE* and *LC_COLLATE* has been made implementation-defined because there is a questionable value in having a shell script receive an entire array of characters. It is also difficult to return a logical collation description, short of returning a complete *localedef* source.

The **–m** option was included to allow applications to query for the existence of charmaps. The output is a list of the charmaps (implementation-supplied and user-supplied, if any) on the system.

The **–c** option was included for readability when more than one category is selected (for example, via more than one keyword name or via a category name). It is valid both with and without the **–k** option.

The **charmap** keyword, which returns the name of the charmap (if any) that was used when the current locale was created, was included to allow applications needing the information to retrieve it.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

localedef, the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3, Locale Definition

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/30 is applied, correcting an editorial error in the STDOUT section.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretations 1003.1-2001 #017, #021, and #088 are applied, clarifying the standard output for the **–k** option when *LANG* is not set or is an empty string.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

localedef — define locale environment

SYNOPSIS

```
localedef [–c] [–f charmap] [–i sourcefile] [–u code_set_name] name
```

DESCRIPTION

The *localedef* utility shall convert source definitions for locale categories into a format usable by the functions and utilities whose operational behavior is determined by the setting of the locale environment variables defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 7, Locale. It is implementation-defined whether users have the capability to create new locales, in addition to those supplied by the implementation. If the symbolic constant
XSI POSIX2_LOCALEDEF is defined, the system supports the creation of new locales. On XSI-conformant systems, the symbolic constant POSIX2_LOCALEDEF shall be defined.

The utility shall read source definitions for one or more locale categories belonging to the same locale from the file named in the **–i** option (if specified) or from standard input.

The *name* operand identifies the target locale. The utility shall support the creation of *public*, or generally accessible locales, as well as *private*, or restricted-access locales. Implementations may restrict the capability to create or modify public locales to users with the appropriate privileges.

Each category source definition shall be identified by the corresponding environment variable name and terminated by an **END** *category-name* statement. The following categories shall be supported. In addition, the input may contain source for implementation-defined categories.

LC_CTYPE Defines character classification and case conversion.

LC_COLLATE
Defines collation rules.

LC_MONETARY
Defines the format and symbols used in formatting of monetary information.

LC_NUMERIC
Defines the decimal delimiter, grouping, and grouping symbol for non-monetary numeric editing.

LC_TIME Defines the format and content of date and time information.

LC_MESSAGES
Defines the format and values of affirmative and negative responses.

OPTIONS

The *localedef* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–c Create permanent output even if warning messages have been issued.

–f *charmap* Specify the pathname of a file containing a mapping of character symbols and collating element symbols to actual character encodings. The format of the *charmap* is described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.4, Character Set Description File. The application shall ensure that this option is specified if symbolic names (other than collating symbols defined in a **collating-symbol** keyword) are used. If the **–f** option is not present, an implementation-defined character mapping shall be used.

21833 –**i** *inputfile* The pathname of a file containing the source definitions. If this option is not
21834 present, source definitions shall be read from standard input. The format of the
21835 *inputfile* is described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
21836 Section 7.3, Locale Definition.

21837 –**u** *code_set_name*
21838 Specify the name of a codeset used as the target mapping of character symbols and
21839 collating element symbols whose encoding values are defined in terms of the
21840 ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000 standard position constant values.

21841 **OPERANDS**
21842 The following operand shall be supported:

21843 *name* Identifies the locale; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
21844 Chapter 7, Locale for a description of the use of this name. If the name contains one
21845 or more slash characters, *name* shall be interpreted as a pathname where the
21846 created locale definitions shall be stored. If *name* does not contain any slash
21847 characters, the interpretation of the name is implementation-defined and the locale
21848 shall be public. The ability to create public locales in this way may be restricted to
21849 users with appropriate privileges. (As a consequence of specifying one *name*,
21850 although several categories can be processed in one execution, only categories
21851 belonging to the same locale can be processed.)

21852 **STDIN**
21853 Unless the –**i** option is specified, the standard input shall be a text file containing one or more
21854 locale category source definitions, as described in the Base Definitions volume of
21855 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3, Locale Definition. When lines are continued using the escape
21856 character mechanism, there is no limit to the length of the accumulated continued line.

21857 **INPUT FILES**
21858 The character set mapping file specified as the *charmap* option-argument is described in the Base
21859 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.4, Character Set Description File. If a locale
21860 category source definition contains a **copy** statement, as defined in the Base Definitions volume
21861 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 7, Locale, and the **copy** statement names a valid, existing
21862 locale, then *localedef* shall behave as if the source definition had contained a valid category
21863 source definition for the named locale.

21864 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**
21865 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *localedef*:

21866 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
21867 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
21868 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
21869 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

21870 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
21871 internationalization variables.

21872 *LC_COLLATE*
21873 (This variable has no affect on *localedef*; the POSIX locale is used for this category.)

21874 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
21875 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
21876 arguments and input files). This variable has no affect on the processing of *localedef*
21877 input data; the POSIX locale is used for this purpose, regardless of the value of this
21878 variable.

21879 *LC_MESSAGES*
21880 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
21881 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The utility shall report all categories successfully processed, in an unspecified format.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The format of the created output is unspecified. If the *name* operand does not contain a slash, the existence of an output file for the locale is unspecified.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

When the **–u** option is used, the *code_set_name* option-argument shall be interpreted as an implementation-defined name of a codeset to which the ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000 standard position constant values shall be converted via an implementation-defined method. Both the ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000 standard position constant values and other formats (decimal, hexadecimal, or octal) shall be valid as encoding values within the *charmap* file. The codeset represented by the implementation-defined name can be any codeset that is supported by the implementation.

When conflicts occur between the *charmap* specification of <*code_set_name*>, <*mb_cur_max*>, or <*mb_cur_min*> and the implementation-defined interpretation of these respective items for the codeset represented by the **–u** option-argument *code_set_name*, the result is unspecified.

When conflicts occur between the *charmap* encoding values specified for symbolic names of characters of the portable character set and the implementation-defined assignment of character encoding values, the result is unspecified.

If a non-printable character in the *charmap* has a width specified that is not **–1**, the result will be undefined.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 No errors occurred and the locales were successfully created.

1 Warnings occurred and the locales were successfully created.

2 The locale specification exceeded implementation limits or the coded character set or sets used were not supported by the implementation, and no locale was created.

3 The capability to create new locales is not supported by the implementation.

>3 Warnings or errors occurred and no output was created.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If an error is detected, no permanent output shall be created.

If warnings occur, permanent output shall be created if the **–c** option was specified. The following conditions shall cause warning messages to be issued:

- If a symbolic name not found in the *charmap* file is used for the descriptions of the *LC_CTYPE* or *LC_COLLATE* categories (for other categories, this shall be an error condition).
- If the number of operands to the **order** keyword exceeds the {COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX} limit.

- If optional keywords not supported by the implementation are present in the source.

Other implementation-defined conditions may also cause warnings.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *charmap* definition is optional, and is contained outside the locale definition. This allows both completely self-defined source files, and generic sources (applicable to more than one codeset). To aid portability, all *charmap* definitions must use the same symbolic names for the portable character set. As explained in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.4, Character Set Description File, it is implementation-defined whether or not users or applications can provide additional character set description files. Therefore, the **–f** option might be operable only when an implementation-defined *charmap* is named.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The output produced by the *localedef* utility is implementation-defined. The *name* operand is used to identify the specific locale. (As a consequence, although several categories can be processed in one execution, only categories belonging to the same locale can be processed.)

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

locale, the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 7.3, Locale Definition

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

The **–u** option is added, as specified in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/15 is applied, rewording text in the OPERANDS section describing the ability to create public locales.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/16 is applied, making the text consistent with the descriptions of **WIDTH** and **WIDTH_DEFAULT** in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

logger — log messages

SYNOPSIS

```
logger string...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *logger* utility saves a message, in an unspecified manner and format, containing the *string* operands provided by the user. The messages are expected to be evaluated later by personnel performing system administration tasks.

It is implementation-defined whether messages written in locales other than the POSIX locale are effective.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

string One of the string arguments whose contents are concatenated together, in the order specified, separated by single <space>s.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *logger*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error. (This means diagnostics from *logger* to the user or application, not diagnostic messages that the user is sending to the system administrator.)

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

Unspecified.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

This utility allows logging of information for later use by a system administrator or programmer in determining why non-interactive utilities have failed. The locations of the saved messages, their format, and retention period are all unspecified. There is no method for a conforming application to read messages, once written.

EXAMPLES

A batch application, running non-interactively, tries to read a configuration file and fails; it may attempt to notify the system administrator with:

```
logger myname: unable to read file foo. [timestamp]
```

RATIONALE

The standard developers believed strongly that some method of alerting administrators to errors was necessary. The obvious example is a batch utility, running non-interactively, that is unable to read its configuration files or that is unable to create or write its results file. However, the standard developers did not wish to define the format or delivery mechanisms as they have historically been (and will probably continue to be) very system-specific, as well as involving functionality clearly outside the scope of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The text with *LC_MESSAGES* about diagnostic messages means diagnostics from *logger* to the user or application, not diagnostic messages that the user is sending to the system administrator.

Multiple *string* arguments are allowed, similar to *echo*, for ease-of-use.

Like the utilities *mailx* and *lp*, *logger* is admittedly difficult to test. This was not deemed sufficient justification to exclude these utilities from this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. It is also arguable that they are, in fact, testable, but that the tests themselves are not portable.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

lp, *mailx*, *write*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

22040 **NAME**

22041 logname — return the user's login name

22042 **SYNOPSIS**

22043 `logname`

22044 **DESCRIPTION**

22045 The *logname* utility shall write the user's login name to standard output. The login name shall be
22046 the string that would be returned by the *getlogin*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces
22047 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Under the conditions where the *getlogin*( ) function would fail,
22048 the *logname* utility shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and exit with a non-zero
22049 exit status.

22050 **OPTIONS**

22051 None.

22052 **OPERANDS**

22053 None.

22054 **STDIN**

22055 Not used.

22056 **INPUT FILES**

22057 None.

22058 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

22059 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *logname*:

22060 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
22061 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
22062 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
22063 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

22064 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
22065 internationalization variables.

22066 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
22067 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
22068 arguments).

22069 *LC_MESSAGES*
22070 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
22071 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

22072 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

22073 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

22074 Default.

22075 **STDOUT**

22076 The *logname* utility output shall be a single line consisting of the user's login name:

22077 `"%s\n", <login name>`

22078 **STDERR**

22079 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

22080 **OUTPUT FILES**

22081 None.

22082 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

22083 None.

22084 **EXIT STATUS**

22085 The following exit values shall be returned:

22086 0 Successful completion.

22087 >0 An error occurred.

22088 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

22089 Default.

22090 **APPLICATION USAGE**

22091 The *logname* utility explicitly ignores the *LOGNAME* environment variable because environment
22092 changes could produce erroneous results.

22093 **EXAMPLES**

22094 None.

22095 **RATIONALE**

22096 The **passwd** file is not listed as required because the implementation may have other means of
22097 mapping login names.

22098 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

22099 None.

22100 **SEE ALSO**

22101 *id*, *who*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *getlogin*( )

22102 **CHANGE HISTORY**

22103 First released in Issue 2.

22104 **NAME**

22105 lp — send files to a printer

22106 **SYNOPSIS**

22107 `lp [–c] [–d dest] [–n copies] [–msw] [–o option]... [–t title] [file...]`

22108 **DESCRIPTION**

22109 The *lp* utility shall copy the input files to an output destination in an unspecified manner. The
22110 default output destination should be to a hardcopy device, such as a printer or microfilm
22111 recorder, that produces non-volatile, human-readable documents. If such a device is not
22112 available to the application, or if the system provides no such device, the *lp* utility shall exit with
22113 a non-zero exit status.

22114 The actual writing to the output device may occur some time after the *lp* utility successfully
22115 exits. During the portion of the writing that corresponds to each input file, the implementation
22116 shall guarantee exclusive access to the device.

22117 The *lp* utility shall associate a unique *request ID* with each request.

22118 Normally, a banner page is produced to separate and identify each print job. This page may be
22119 suppressed by implementation-defined conditions, such as an operator command or one of the
22120 **–o** *option* values.

22121 **OPTIONS**

22122 The *lp* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
22123 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

22124 The following options shall be supported:

22125 **–c** Exit only after further access to any of the input files is no longer required. The
22126 application can then safely delete or modify the files without affecting the output
22127 operation. Normally, files are not copied, but are linked whenever possible. If the
22128 **–c** option is not given, then the user should be careful not to remove any of the
22129 files before the request has been printed in its entirety. It should also be noted that
22130 in the absence of the **–c** option, any changes made to the named files after the
22131 request is made but before it is printed may be reflected in the printed output. On
22132 some implementations, **–c** may be on by default.

22133 **–d** *dest* Specify a string that names the destination (*dest*). If *dest* is a printer, the request
22134 shall be printed only on that specific printer. If *dest* is a class of printers, the request
22135 shall be printed on the first available printer that is a member of the class. Under
22136 certain conditions (printer unavailability, file space limitation, and so on), requests
22137 for specific destinations need not be accepted. Destination names vary between
22138 systems.

22139 If **–d** is not specified, and neither the *LPDEST* nor *PRINTER* environment variable
22140 is set, an unspecified destination is used. The **–d** *dest* option shall take precedence
22141 over *LPDEST*, which in turn shall take precedence over *PRINTER*. Results are
22142 undefined when *dest* contains a value that is not a valid destination name.

22143 **–m** Send mail (see *mailx*) after the files have been printed. By default, no mail is sent
22144 upon normal completion of the print request.

22145 **–n** *copies* Write *copies* number of copies of the files, where *copies* is a positive decimal integer.
22146 The methods for producing multiple copies and for arranging the multiple copies
22147 when multiple *file* operands are used are unspecified, except that each file shall be
22148 output as an integral whole, not interleaved with portions of other files.

–o *option* Specify printer-dependent or class-dependent *option*s. Several such *option*s may be collected by specifying the **–o** option more than once.

–s Suppress messages from *lp*.

–t *title* Write *title* on the banner page of the output.

–w Write a message on the user's terminal after the files have been printed. If the user is not logged in, then mail shall be sent instead.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a file to be output. If no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is '–', the standard input shall be used. If a *file* operand is used, but the **–c** option is not specified, the process performing the writing to the output device may have user and group permissions that differ from that of the process invoking *lp*.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is '–'. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *lp*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

LC_TIME Determine the format and contents of date and time strings displayed in the *lp* banner page, if any.

LPDEST Determine the destination. If the *LPDEST* environment variable is not set, the *PRINTER* environment variable shall be used. The **–d** *dest* option takes precedence over *LPDEST*. Results are undefined when **–d** is not specified and *LPDEST* contains a value that is not a valid destination name.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PRINTER Determine the output device or destination. If the *LPDEST* and *PRINTER* environment variables are not set, an unspecified output device is used. The **–d** *dest* option and the *LPDEST* environment variable shall take precedence over *PRINTER*. Results are undefined when **–d** is not specified, *LPDEST* is unset, and *PRINTER* contains a value that is not a valid device or destination name.

TZ Determine the timezone used to calculate date and time strings displayed in the *lp* banner page, if any. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The *lp* utility shall write a *request ID* to the standard output, unless **–s** is specified. The format of the message is unspecified. The request ID can be used on systems supporting the historical *cancel* and *lpstat* utilities.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were processed successfully.

>0 No output device was available, or an error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *pr* and *fold* utilities can be used to achieve reasonable formatting for the implementation's default page size.

A conforming application can use one of the *file* operands only with the **–c** option or if the file is publicly readable and guaranteed to be available at the time of printing. This is because IEEE Std 1003.1-200x gives the implementation the freedom to queue up the request for printing at some later time by a different process that might not be able to access the file.

EXAMPLES

1. To print file *file*:

   ```
   lp –c file
   ```

2. To print multiple files with headers:

   ```
   pr file1 file2 | lp
   ```

RATIONALE

The *lp* utility was designed to be a basic version of a utility that is already available in many historical implementations. The standard developers considered that it should be implementable simply as:

```
cat "$@" > /dev/lp
```

after appropriate processing of options, if that is how the implementation chose to do it and if exclusive access could be granted (so that two users did not write to the device simultaneously). Although in the future the standard developers may add other options to this utility, it should always be able to execute with no options or operands and send the standard input to an unspecified output device.

This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x makes no representations concerning the format of the

printed output, except that it must be "human-readable" and "non-volatile". Thus, writing by default to a disk or tape drive or a display terminal would not qualify. (Such destinations are not prohibited when **–d** *dest*, *LPDEST*, or *PRINTER* are used, however.)

This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is worded such that a "print job" consisting of multiple input files, possibly in multiple copies, is guaranteed to print so that any one file is not intermixed with another, but there is no statement that all the files or copies have to print out together.

The **–c** option may imply a spooling operation, but this is not required. The utility can be implemented to wait until the printer is ready and then wait until it is finished. Because of that, there is no attempt to define a queuing mechanism (priorities, classes of output, and so on).

On some historical systems, the request ID reported on the STDOUT can be used to later cancel or find the status of a request using utilities not defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Although the historical System V *lp* and BSD *lpr* utilities have provided similar functionality, they used different names for the environment variable specifying the destination printer. Since the name of the utility here is *lp*, *LPDEST* (used by the System V *lp* utility) was given precedence over *PRINTER* (used by the BSD *lpr* utility). Since environments of users frequently contain one or the other environment variable, the *lp* utility is required to recognize both. If this was not done, many applications would send output to unexpected output devices when users moved from system to system.

Some have commented that *lp* has far too little functionality to make it worthwhile. Requests have proposed additional options or operands or both that added functionality. The requests included:

- Wording *requiring* the output to be "hardcopy"
- A requirement for multiple printers
- Options for supporting various page-description languages

Given that a compliant system is not required to even have a printer, placing further restrictions upon the behavior of the printer is not useful. Since hardcopy format is so application-dependent, it is difficult, if not impossible, to select a reasonable subset of functionality that should be required on all compliant systems.

The term *unspecified* is used in this section in lieu of *implementation-defined* as most known implementations would not be able to make definitive statements in their conformance documents; the existence and usage of printers is very dependent on how the system administrator configures each individual system.

Since the default destination, device type, queuing mechanisms, and acceptable forms of input are all unspecified, usage guidelines for what a conforming application can do are as follows:

- Use the command in a pipeline, or with **–c**, so that there are no permission problems and the files can be safely deleted or modified.
- Limit output to text files of reasonable line lengths and printable characters and include no device-specific formatting information, such as a page description language. The meaning of "reasonable" in this context can only be answered as a quality-of-implementation issue, but it should be apparent from historical usage patterns in the industry and the locale. The *pr* and *fold* utilities can be used to achieve reasonable formatting for the default page size of the implementation.

Alternatively, the application can arrange its installation in such a way that it requires the system administrator or operator to provide the appropriate information on *lp* options and environment variable values.

At a minimum, having this utility in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x tells the industry that

conforming applications require a means to print output and provides at least a command name and *LPDEST* routing mechanism that can be used for discussions between vendors, application writers, and users. The use of "should" in the DESCRIPTION of *lp* clearly shows the intent of the standard developers, even if they cannot mandate that all systems (such as laptops) have printers.

This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify what the ownership of the process performing the writing to the output device may be. If **–c** is not used, it is unspecified whether the process performing the writing to the output device has permission to read *file* if there are any restrictions in place on who may read *file* until after it is printed. Also, if **–c** is not used, the results of deleting *file* before it is printed are unspecified.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

mailx

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- In the DESCRIPTION, the requirement to associate a unique request ID, and the normal generation of a banner page is added.
- In the OPTIONS section:
  - The **–d** *dest* description is expanded, but references to *lpstat* are removed.
  - The **–m**, **–o**, **–s**, **–t**, and **–w** options are added.
- In the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section, *LC_TIME* may now affect the execution.
- The STDOUT section is added.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The *TZ* entry is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

22315 **NAME**

22316 ls — list directory contents

22317 **SYNOPSIS**

22318 XSI `ls [–ACFRSacdilmnpqrtu1] [–H|–L] [–fgos] [`*file*`...]`

22319 **DESCRIPTION**

22320 For each operand that names a file of a type other than directory or symbolic link to a directory,
22321 *ls* shall write the name of the file as well as any requested, associated information. For each
22322 operand that names a file of type directory, *ls* shall write the names of files contained within the
22323 directory as well as any requested, associated information. Filenames beginning with a period
22324 (`'.'`) and any associated information shall not be written out unless explicitly referenced, the
22325 **–A** or **–a** option is supplied, or an implementation-defined condition causes them to be written.
22326 If one of the **–d**, **–F**, or **–l** options are specified, and one of the **–H** or **–L** options are not specified,
22327 for each operand that names a file of type symbolic link to a directory, *ls* shall write the name of
22328 the file as well as any requested, associated information. If none of the **–d**, **–F**, or **–l** options are
22329 specified, or the **–H** or **–L** options are specified, for each operand that names a file of type
22330 symbolic link to a directory, *ls* shall write the names of files contained within the directory as
22331 well as any requested, associated information.

22332 If no operands are specified, *ls* shall write the contents of the current directory. If more than one
22333 operand is specified, *ls* shall write non-directory operands first; it shall sort directory and non-
22334 directory operands separately according to the collating sequence in the current locale.

22335 The *ls* utility shall detect infinite loops; that is, entering a previously visited directory that is an
22336 ancestor of the last file encountered. When it detects an infinite loop, *ls* shall write a diagnostic
22337 message to standard error and shall either recover its position in the hierarchy or terminate.

22338 **OPTIONS**

22339 The *ls* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
22340 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

22341 The following options shall be supported:

22342 **–A** Write out all directory entries, including those whose names begin with a period
22343 (`'.'`) but excluding the entries dot and dot-dot (if they exist).

22344 **–C** Write multi-text-column output with entries sorted down the columns, according
22345 to the collating sequence. The number of text columns and the column separator
22346 characters are unspecified, but should be adapted to the nature of the output
22347 device.

22348 **–F** Do not follow symbolic links named as operands unless the **–H** or **–L** options are
22349 specified. Write a slash (`'/'`) immediately after each pathname that is a directory,
22350 an asterisk (`'*'`) after each that is executable, a vertical bar (`'|'`) after each that is
22351 a FIFO, and an at sign (`'@'`) after each that is a symbolic link. For other file types,
22352 other symbols may be written.

22353 **–H** If a symbolic link referencing a file of type directory is specified on the command
22354 line, *ls* shall evaluate the file information and file type to be those of the file
22355 referenced by the link, and not the link itself; however, *ls* shall write the name of
22356 the link itself and not the file referenced by the link.

22357 **–L** Evaluate the file information and file type for all symbolic links (whether named
22358 on the command line or encountered in a file hierarchy) to be those of the file
22359 referenced by the link, and not the link itself; however, *ls* shall write the name of
22360 the link itself and not the file referenced by the link. When **–L** is used with **–l**, write

the contents of symbolic links in the long format (see the STDOUT section).

–R Recursively list subdirectories encountered.

–S Sort with the primary key being file size (in decreasing order) and the secondary key being filename in the collating sequence (in increasing order).

–a Write out all directory entries, including those whose names begin with a period (`'.'`).

–c Use time of last modification of the file status information (see **<sys/stat.h>** in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x) instead of last modification of the file itself for sorting (**–t**) or writing (**–l**).

–d Do not follow symbolic links named as operands unless the **–H** or **–L** options are specified. Do not treat directories differently than other types of files. The use of **–d** with **–R** produces unspecified results.

XSI **–f** Force each argument to be interpreted as a directory and list the name found in each slot. This option shall turn off **–l**, **–t**, **–S**, **–s**, and **–r**, and shall turn on **–a**; the order is the order in which entries appear in the directory.

XSI **–g** The same as **–l**, except that the owner shall not be written.

–i For each file, write the file's file serial number (see *stat*( ) in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x).

–l (The letter ell.) Do not follow symbolic links named as operands unless the **–H** or **–L** options are specified. Write out in long format (see the STDOUT section). When **–l** (ell) is specified, –1 (one) shall be assumed.

–m Stream output format; list files across the page, separated by commas.

–n The same as **–l**, except that the owner's UID and GID numbers shall be written, rather than the associated character strings.

XSI **–o** The same as **–l**, except that the group shall not be written.

–p Write a slash (`'/'`) after each filename if that file is a directory.

–q Force each instance of non-printable filename characters and <tab>s to be written as the question-mark (`'?'`) character. Implementations may provide this option by default if the output is to a terminal device.

–r Reverse the order of the sort to get reverse collating sequence oldest first, or smallest file size first depending on the other options given.

XSI **–s** Indicate the total number of file system blocks consumed by each file displayed. The block size is implementation-defined.

–t Sort with the primary key being time modified (most recently modified first) and the secondary key being filename in the collating sequence.

–u Use time of last access (see **<sys/stat.h>**) instead of last modification of the file for sorting (**–t**) or writing (**–l**).

–x The same as **–C**, except that the multi-text-column output is produced with entries sorted across, rather than down, the columns.

–1 (The numeric digit one.) Force output to be one entry per line.

Specifying more than one of the options in the following mutually-exclusive pairs shall not be considered an error: **–C** and **–l** (ell), **–m** and **–l** (ell), **–x** and **–l** (ell), **–C** and **–1** (one), **–H** and **–L**, **–c** and **–u**, **–t** and **–S**. The last option specified in each pair shall determine the output format.

22404 **OPERANDS**

22405 The following operand shall be supported:

22406 *file* A pathname of a file to be written. If the file specified is not found, a diagnostic
22407 message shall be output on standard error.

22408 **STDIN**

22409 Not used.

22410 **INPUT FILES**

22411 None.

22412 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

22413 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ls*:

22414 *COLUMNS* Determine the user's preferred column position width for writing multiple text-
22415 column output. If this variable contains a string representing a decimal integer, the
22416 *ls* utility shall calculate how many pathname text columns to write (see **–C**) based
22417 on the width provided. If *COLUMNS* is not set or invalid, an implementation-
22418 defined number of column positions shall be assumed, based on the
22419 implementation's knowledge of the output device. The column width chosen to
22420 write the names of files in any given directory shall be constant. Filenames shall
22421 not be truncated to fit into the multiple text-column output.

22422 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
22423 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
22424 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
22425 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

22426 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
22427 internationalization variables.

22428 *LC_COLLATE*
22429 Determine the locale for character collation information in determining the
22430 pathname collation sequence.

22431 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
22432 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
22433 arguments) and which characters are defined as printable (character class **print**).

22434 *LC_MESSAGES*
22435 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
22436 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

22437 *LC_TIME* Determine the format and contents for date and time strings written by *ls*.

22438 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

22439 *TZ* Determine the timezone for date and time strings written by *ls*. If *TZ* is unset or
22440 null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

22441 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

22442 Default.

22443 **STDOUT**

22444 The default format shall be to list one entry per line to standard output; the exceptions are to
22445 terminals or when one of the **–C**, **–m**, or **–x** options is specified. If the output is to a terminal, the
22446 format is implementation-defined.

22447 When **–m** is specified, the format used shall be:

22448 `"%s, %s, ...\n", <filename1>, <filename2>`

where the largest number of filenames shall be written without exceeding the length of the line.

If the **–i** option is specified, the file's file serial number (see **<sys/stat.h>**) shall be written in the following format before any other output for the corresponding entry:

```
%u ", <file serial number>
```

If the **–l** option is specified without **–L**, the following information shall be written:

```
"%s %u %s %s %u %s %s\n", <file mode>, <number of links>,
    <owner name>, <group name>, <number of bytes in the file>,
    <date and time>, <pathname>
```

If the file is a symbolic link, this information shall be about the link itself and the <*pathname*> field shall be of the form:

```
"%s –> %s", <pathname of link>, <contents of link>
```

If both **–l** and **–L** are specified, the following information shall be written:

```
"%s %u %s %s %u %s %s\n", <file mode>, <number of links>,
    <owner name>, <group name>, <number of bytes in the file>,
    <date and time>, <pathname of link>
```

where all fields except <*pathname of link*> shall be for the file resolved from the symbolic link.

XSI The **–n**, **–g**, and **–o** options use the same format as **–l**, but with omitted items and their associated <blank>s. See the OPTIONS section.

In both the preceding **–l** forms, if <*owner name*> or <*group name*> cannot be determined, or if **–n** is given, they shall be replaced with their associated numeric values using the format %u.

The <*date and time*> field shall contain the appropriate date and timestamp of when the file was last modified. In the POSIX locale, the field shall be the equivalent of the output of the following *date* command:

```
date "+%b %e %H:%M"
```

if the file has been modified in the last six months, or:

```
date "+%b %e %Y"
```

(where two <space>s are used between %e and %Y) if the file has not been modified in the last six months or if the modification date is in the future, except that, in both cases, the final <newline> produced by *date* shall not be included and the output shall be as if the *date* command were executed at the time of the last modification date of the file rather than the current time. When the *LC_TIME* locale category is not set to the POSIX locale, a different format and order of presentation of this field may be used.

If the file is a character special or block special file, the size of the file may be replaced with implementation-defined information associated with the device in question.

If the pathname was specified as a *file* operand, it shall be written as specified.

XSI The file mode written under the **–l**, **–n**, **–g**, and **–o** options shall consist of the following format:

```
"%c%s%s%s%s", <entry type>, <owner permissions>,
    <group permissions>, <other permissions>,
    <optional alternate access method flag>
```

The <*optional alternate access method flag*> shall be the empty string if there is no alternate or additional access control method associated with the file; otherwise, it shall be a string containing a single printable character that is not a <blank>.

The <*entry type*> character shall describe the type of file, as follows:

22492 `d` Directory.

22493 `b` Block special file.

22494 `c` Character special file.

22495 `l` (ell) Symbolic link.

22496 `p` FIFO.

22497 – Regular file.

22498 Implementations may add other characters to this list to represent other implementation-defined
22499 file types.

22500 The next three fields shall be three characters each:

22501 *<owner permissions>*
22502 Permissions for the file owner class (see the Base Definitions volume of
22503 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.4, File Access Permissions).

22504 *<group permissions>*
22505 Permissions for the file group class.

22506 *<other permissions>*
22507 Permissions for the file other class.

22508 Each field shall have three character positions:

22509 1. If `'r'`, the file is readable; if `'-'`, the file is not readable.

22510 2. If `'w'`, the file is writable; if `'-'`, the file is not writable.

22511 3. The first of the following that applies:

22512 `S` If in *<owner permissions>*, the file is not executable and set-user-ID mode is set. If in
22513 *<group permissions>*, the file is not executable and set-group-ID mode is set.

22514 `s` If in *<owner permissions>*, the file is executable and set-user-ID mode is set. If in
22515 *<group permissions>*, the file is executable and set-group-ID mode is set.

22516 XSI `T` If in *<other permissions>* and the file is a directory, search permission is not granted to
22517 others, and the restricted deletion flag is set.

22518 XSI `t` If in *<other permissions>* and the file is a directory, search permission is granted to
22519 others, and the restricted deletion flag is set.

22520 `x` The file is executable or the directory is searchable.

22521 – None of the attributes of `'S'`, `'s'`, `'T'`, `'t'`, or `'x'` applies.

22522 Implementations may add other characters to this list for the third character position.
22523 Such additions shall, however, be written in lowercase if the file is executable or
22524 searchable, and in uppercase if it is not.

22525 XSI If any of the **–l**, **–n**, **–g**, **–o**, or **–s** options is specified, each list of files within the directory shall be
22526 preceded by a status line indicating the number of file system blocks occupied by files in the
22527 directory in 512-byte units, rounded up to the next integral number of units, if necessary. In the
22528 POSIX locale, the format shall be:

22529 `"total %u\n", <number of units in the directory>`

22530 If more than one directory, or a combination of non-directory files and directories are written,
22531 either as a result of specifying multiple operands, or the **–R** option, each list of files within a
22532 directory shall be preceded by:

22533 `"\n%s:\n", <directory name>`

If this string is the first thing to be written, the first <newline> shall not be written. This output shall precede the number of units in the directory.

XSI If the **–s** option is given, each file shall be written with the number of blocks used by the file. Along with **–C**, **–1**, **–m**, or **–x**, the number and a <space> shall precede the filename; with **–g**, **–l**, **–n**, or **–o**, they shall precede each line describing a file.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Many implementations use the equal sign (`'='`) to denote sockets bound to the file system for the **–F** option. Similarly, many historical implementations use the `'s'` character to denote sockets as the entry type characters for the **–l** option.

It is difficult for an application to use every part of the file modes field of *ls* **–l** in a portable manner. Certain file types and executable bits are not guaranteed to be exactly as shown, as implementations may have extensions. Applications can use this field to pass directly to a user printout or prompt, but actions based on its contents should generally be deferred, instead, to the *test* utility.

The output of *ls* (with the **–l** and related options) contains information that logically could be used by utilities such as *chmod* and *touch* to restore files to a known state. However, this information is presented in a format that cannot be used directly by those utilities or be easily translated into a format that can be used. A character has been added to the end of the permissions string so that applications at least have an indication that they may be working in an area they do not understand instead of assuming that they can translate the permissions string into something that can be used. Future issues or related documents may define one or more specific characters to be used based on different standard additional or alternative access control mechanisms.

As with many of the utilities that deal with filenames, the output of *ls* for multiple files or in one of the long listing formats must be used carefully on systems where filenames can contain embedded white space. Systems and system administrators should institute policies and user training to limit the use of such filenames.

The number of disk blocks occupied by the file that it reports varies depending on underlying file system type, block size units reported, and the method of calculating the number of blocks. On some file system types, the number is the actual number of blocks occupied by the file (counting indirect blocks and ignoring holes in the file); on others it is calculated based on the file size (usually making an allowance for indirect blocks, but ignoring holes).

22578 **EXAMPLES**

22579 An example of a small directory tree being fully listed with *ls* –**laRF a** in the POSIX locale:

22580
22581
22582
22583
22584
```
total 11
drwxr-xr-x   3 fox      prog          64 Jul  4 12:07 ./
drwxrwxrwx   4 fox      prog        3264 Jul  4 12:09 ../
drwxr-xr-x   2 fox      prog          48 Jul  4 12:07 b/
-rwxr--r--   1 fox      prog         572 Jul  4 12:07 foo*
```

22585
22586
22587
22588
22589
```
a/b:
total 4
drwxr-xr-x   2 fox      prog          48 Jul  4 12:07 ./
drwxr-xr-x   3 fox      prog          64 Jul  4 12:07 ../
-rw-r--r--   1 fox      prog         700 Jul  4 12:07 bar
```

22590 **RATIONALE**

22591 Some historical implementations of the *ls* utility show all entries in a directory except dot and
22592 dot-dot when a superuser invokes *ls* without specifying the –**a** option. When "normal" users
22593 invoke *ls* without specifying –**a**, they should not see information about any files with names
22594 beginning with a period unless they were named as *file* operands.

22595 Implementations are expected to traverse arbitrary depths when processing the –**R** option. The
22596 only limitation on depth should be based on running out of physical storage for keeping track of
22597 untraversed directories.

22598 The –**1** (one) option was historically found in BSD and BSD-derived implementations only. It is
22599 required in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x so that conforming applications might ensure
22600 that output is one entry per line, even if the output is to a terminal.

22601 The –**S** option was added in Issue 7, but had been provided by several implementations for
22602 many years. The description given in the standard documents historic practice, but does not
22603 match much of the documentation that described its behavior. Historical documentation
22604 typically described it as something like:

22605 –**S** Sort by size (largest size first) instead of by name. Special character devices (listed
22606 last) are sorted by name.

22607 even though the file type was never considered when sorting the output. Character special files
22608 do typically sort close to the end of the list because their file size on most implementations is
22609 zero. But they are sorted alphabetically with any other files that happen to have the same file
22610 size (zero), not sorted separately and added to the end.

22611 Generally, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is silent about what happens when options are
22612 given multiple times. In the cases of –**C**, –**l**, and –**1**, however, it does specify the results of these
22613 overlapping options. Since *ls* is one of the most aliased commands, it is important that the
22614 implementation perform intuitively. For example, if the alias were:

22615
```
alias ls="ls –C"
```

22616 and the user typed *ls* –**1**, single-text-column output should result, not an error.

22617 Earlier versions of this standard did not describe the BSD –**A** option (like –**a**, but dot and dot-dot
22618 are not written out). It has been added due to widespread implementation.

22619 Implementations may make –**q** the default for terminals to prevent trojan horse attacks on
22620 terminals with special escape sequences. This is not required because:

22621 • Some control characters may be useful on some terminals; for example, a system might
22622 write them as `"\001"` or `"^A"`.

- Special behavior for terminals is not relevant to applications portability.

An early proposal specified that the <*optional alternate access method flag*> had to be '+' if there was an alternate access method used on the file or <space> if there was not. This was changed to be <space> if there is not and a single printable character if there is. This was done for three reasons:

1. There are historical implementations using characters other than '+'.
2. There are implementations that vary this character used in that position to distinguish between various alternate access methods in use.
3. The standard developers did not want to preclude future specifications that might need a way to specify more than one alternate access method.

Nonetheless, implementations providing a single alternate access method are encouraged to use '+'.

In an early proposal, the units used to specify the number of blocks occupied by files in a directory in an *ls* **–l** listing were implementation-defined. This was because BSD systems have historically used 1 024-byte units and System V systems have historically used 512-byte units. It was pointed out by BSD developers that their system has used 512-byte units in some places and 1 024-byte units in other places. (System V has consistently used 512.) Therefore, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x usually specifies 512. Future releases of BSD are expected to consistently provide 512 bytes as a default with a way of specifying 1 024-byte units where appropriate.

The <*date and time*> field in the **–l** format is specified only for the POSIX locale. As noted, the format can be different in other locales. No mechanism for defining this is present in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, as the appropriate vehicle is a messaging system; that is, the format should be specified as a "message".

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The **–s** uses implementation-defined units and cannot be used portably; it may be withdrawn in a future version.

SEE ALSO

chmod, *find*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *stat*( ), the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, **<sys/stat.h>**

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

A second FUTURE DIRECTION is added.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- In the **–F** option, other symbols are allowed for other file types.

Treatment of symbolic links is added, as defined in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-010 is applied, adding the `T` and `t` fields as part of the XSI option.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-50 is applied, adding the **–A** option.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #101 is applied, clarifying the optional alternate access method flag in the STDOUT section.

The **–S** option is added from The Open Group Technical Standard, 2006, Extended API Set

Part 1.

The **−m**, **−n**, **−p**, and **−x** options are moved from the XSI option to the Base.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

22671 **NAME**

22672 m4 — macro processor

22673 **SYNOPSIS**

22674 `m4 [-s] [-D name[=val]]... [-U name]... file...`

22675 **DESCRIPTION**

22676 The *m4* utility is a macro processor that shall read one or more text files, process them according
22677 to their included macro statements, and write the results to standard output.

22678 **OPTIONS**

22679 The *m4* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
22680 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the order of the **-D** and **-U** options shall be
22681 significant, and options can be interspersed with operands.

22682 The following options shall be supported:

22683 **-s** Enable line synchronization output for the *c99* preprocessor phase (that is, **#line**
22684 directives).

22685 **-D** *name*[=*val*]
22686 Define *name* to *val* or to null if =*val* is omitted.

22687 **-U** *name* Undefine *name*.

22688 **OPERANDS**

22689 The following operand shall be supported:

22690 *file* A pathname of a text file to be processed. If no *file* is given, or if it is `'-'`, the
22691 standard input shall be read.

22692 **STDIN**

22693 The standard input shall be a text file that is used if no *file* operand is given, or if it is `'-'`.

22694 **INPUT FILES**

22695 The input file named by the *file* operand shall be a text file.

22696 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

22697 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *m4*:

22698 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
22699 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
22700 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
22701 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

22702 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
22703 internationalization variables.

22704 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
22705 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
22706 arguments and input files).

22707 *LC_MESSAGES*
22708 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
22709 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

22710 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

22711 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
22712 Default.

22713 **STDOUT**
22714 The standard output shall be the same as the input files, after being processed for macro
22715 expansion.

22716 **STDERR**
22717 The standard error shall be used to display strings with the **errprint** macro, macro tracing
22718 enabled by the **traceon** macro, the defined text for macros written by the **dumpdef** macro, or for
22719 diagnostic messages.

22720 **OUTPUT FILES**
22721 None.

22722 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
22723 The *m4* utility shall compare each token from the input against the set of built-in and user-
22724 defined macros. If the token matches the name of a macro, then the token shall be replaced by
22725 the macro's defining text, if any, and rescanned for matching macro names. Once no portion of
22726 the token matches the name of a macro, it shall be written to standard output. Macros may have
22727 arguments, in which case the arguments shall be substituted into the defining text before it is
22728 rescanned.

22729 Macro calls have the form:

22730 *name*(*arg1*, *arg2*, ..., *argn*)

22731 Macro names shall consist of letters, digits, and underscores, where the first character is not a
22732 digit. Tokens not of this form shall not be treated as macros.

22733 The application shall ensure that the left parenthesis immediately follows the name of the macro.
22734 If a token matching the name of a macro is not followed by a left parenthesis, it is handled as a
22735 use of that macro without arguments.

22736 If a macro name is followed by a left parenthesis, its arguments are the comma-separated tokens
22737 between the left parenthesis and the matching right parenthesis. Unquoted <blank>s and
22738 <newline>s preceding each argument shall be ignored. All other characters, including trailing
22739 <blank>s and <newline>s, are retained. Commas enclosed between left and right parenthesis
22740 characters do not delimit arguments.

22741 Arguments are positionally defined and referenced. The string `"$1"` in the defining text shall be
22742 replaced by the first argument. Systems shall support at least nine arguments; only the first nine
22743 can be referenced, using the strings `"$1"` to `"$9"`, inclusive. The string `"$0"` is replaced with
22744 the name of the macro. The string `"$#"` is replaced by the number of arguments as a string. The
22745 string `"$*"` is replaced by a list of all of the arguments, separated by commas. The string `"$@"`
22746 is replaced by a list of all of the arguments separated by commas, and each argument is quoted
22747 using the current left and right quoting strings. The string `"${"` produces unspecified behavior.

22748 If fewer arguments are supplied than are in the macro definition, the omitted arguments are
22749 taken to be null. It is not an error if more arguments are supplied than are in the macro
22750 definition.

22751 No special meaning is given to any characters enclosed between matching left and right quoting
22752 strings, but the quoting strings are themselves discarded. By default, the left quoting string
22753 consists of a grave accent (`` ` ``) and the right quoting string consists of an acute accent (`'`); see
22754 also the **changequote** macro.

22755 Comments are written but not scanned for matching macro names; by default, the begin-
22756 comment string consists of the number sign character and the end-comment string consists of a
22757 <newline>. See also the **changecom** and **dnl** macros.

The *m4* utility shall make available the following built-in macros. They can be redefined, but once this is done the original meaning is lost. Their values shall be null unless otherwise stated. In the descriptions below, the term *defining text* refers to the value of the macro: the second argument to the **define** macro, among other things. Except for the first argument to the **eval** macro, all numeric arguments to built-in macros shall be interpreted as decimal values. The string values produced as the defining text of the **decr**, **divnum**, **incr**, **index**, **len**, and **sysval** built-in macros shall be in the form of a decimal-constant as defined in the C language.

changecom The **changecom** macro shall set the begin-comment and end-comment strings. With no arguments, the comment mechanism shall be disabled. With a single argument, that argument shall become the begin-comment string and the <newline> shall become the end-comment string. With two arguments, the first argument shall become the begin-comment string and the second argument shall become the end-comment string. Systems shall support comment strings of at least five characters.

changequote The **changequote** macro shall set the begin-quote and end-quote strings. With no arguments, the quote strings shall be set to the default values (that is, ‘ ’). The behavior is unspecified if there is a single argument or either argument is null. With two non-null arguments, the first argument shall become the begin-quote string and the second argument shall become the end-quote string. Systems shall support quote strings of at least five characters.

decr The defining text of the **decr** macro shall be its first argument decremented by 1. It shall be an error to specify an argument containing any non-numeric characters.

define The second argument shall become the defining text of the macro whose name is the first argument. It is unspecified whether the **define** macro deletes all prior definitions of the macro named by its first argument or preserves all but the current definition of the macro.

defn The defining text of the **defn** macro shall be the quoted definition (using the current quoting strings) of its arguments.

divert The *m4* utility maintains nine temporary buffers, numbered 1 to 9, inclusive. When the last of the input has been processed, any output that has been placed in these buffers shall be written to standard output in buffer-numerical order. The **divert** macro shall divert future output to the buffer specified by its argument. Specifying no argument or an argument of 0 shall resume the normal output process. Output diverted to a stream with a negative number shall be discarded. Behavior is implementation-defined if a stream number larger than 9 is specified. It shall be an error to specify an argument containing any non-numeric characters.

divnum The defining text of the **divnum** macro shall be the number of the current output stream as a string.

dnl The **dnl** macro shall cause *m4* to discard all input characters up to and including the next <newline>.

dumpdef The **dumpdef** macro shall write the defined text to standard error for each of the macros specified as arguments, or, if no arguments are specified, for all macros.

errprint The **errprint** macro shall write its arguments to standard error.

eval The **eval** macro shall evaluate its first argument as an arithmetic expression, using 32-bit signed integer arithmetic. All of the C-language operators shall be supported, except for:

```
[]
–>
```

22806 `++`
22807 `--`
22808 `(`*`type`*`)`
22809 `unary *`
22810 *`sizeof`*
22811 `,`
22812 `.`
22813 `?:`
22814 `unary &`

22815 and all assignment operators. It shall be an error to specify any of these operators.
22816 Precedence and associativity shall be as in the ISO C standard. Systems shall
22817 support octal and hexadecimal numbers as in the ISO C standard. The second
22818 argument, if specified, shall set the radix for the result; the default is 10. The third
22819 argument, if specified, sets the minimum number of digits in the result. It shall be
22820 an error to specify the second or third argument containing any non-numeric
22821 characters.

22822 **ifdef** If the first argument to the **ifdef** macro is defined, the defining text shall be the
22823 second argument. Otherwise, the defining text shall be the third argument, if
22824 specified, or the null string, if not.

22825 **ifelse** The **ifelse** macro takes three or more arguments. If the first two arguments
22826 compare as equal strings (after macro expansion of both arguments), the defining
22827 text shall be the third argument. If the first two arguments do not compare as equal
22828 strings and there are three arguments, the defining text shall be null. If the first two
22829 arguments do not compare as equal strings and there are four or five arguments,
22830 the defining text shall be the fourth argument. If the first two arguments do not
22831 compare as equal strings and there are six or more arguments, the first three
22832 arguments shall be discarded and processing shall restart with the remaining
22833 arguments.

22834 **include** The defining text for the **include** macro shall be the contents of the file named by
22835 the first argument. It shall be an error if the file cannot be read.

22836 **incr** The defining text of the **incr** macro shall be its first argument incremented by 1. It
22837 shall be an error to specify an argument containing any non-numeric characters.

22838 **index** The defining text of the **index** macro shall be the first character position (as a
22839 string) in the first argument where a string matching the second argument begins
22840 (zero origin), or –1 if the second argument does not occur.

22841 **len** The defining text of the **len** macro shall be the length (as a string) of the first
22842 argument.

22843 **m4exit** Exit from the *m4* utility. If the first argument is specified, it is the exit code. The
22844 default is zero. It shall be an error to specify an argument containing any non-
22845 numeric characters.

22846 **m4wrap** The first argument shall be processed when EOF is reached. If the **m4wrap** macro
22847 is used multiple times, the arguments specified shall be processed in the order in
22848 which the **m4wrap** macros were processed.

22849 **maketemp** The defining text shall be the first argument, with any trailing `'X'` characters
22850 replaced with the current process ID as a string.

22851 **popdef** The **popdef** macro shall delete the current definition of its arguments, replacing
22852 that definition with the previous one. If there is no previous definition, the macro
22853 is undefined.

22854 **pushdef** The **pushdef** macro shall be equivalent to the **define** macro with the exception that
22855 it shall preserve any current definition for future retrieval using the **popdef** macro.

22856 **shift** The defining text for the **shift** macro shall be all of its arguments except for the first
22857 one.

22858 **sinclude** The **sinclude** macro shall be equivalent to the **include** macro, except that it shall
22859 not be an error if the file is inaccessible.

22860 **substr** The defining text for the **substr** macro shall be the substring of the first argument
22861 beginning at the zero-offset character position specified by the second argument.
22862 The third argument, if specified, shall be the number of characters to select; if not
22863 specified, the characters from the starting point to the end of the first argument
22864 shall become the defining text. It shall not be an error to specify a starting point
22865 beyond the end of the first argument and the defining text shall be null. It shall be
22866 an error to specify an argument containing any non-numeric characters.

22867 **syscmd** The **syscmd** macro shall interpret its first argument as a shell command line. The
22868 defining text shall be the string result of that command. The string result shall not
22869 be rescanned for macros while setting the defining text. No output redirection shall
22870 be performed by the *m4* utility. The exit status value from the command can be
22871 retrieved using the **sysval** macro.

22872 **sysval** The defining text of the **sysval** macro shall be the exit value of the utility last
22873 invoked by the **syscmd** macro (as a string).

22874 **traceon** The **traceon** macro shall enable tracing for the macros specified as arguments, or, if
22875 no arguments are specified, for all macros. The trace output shall be written to
22876 standard error in an unspecified format.

22877 **traceoff** The **traceoff** macro shall disable tracing for the macros specified as arguments, or,
22878 if no arguments are specified, for all macros.

22879 **translit** The defining text of the **translit** macro shall be the first argument with every
22880 character that occurs in the second argument replaced with the corresponding
22881 character from the third argument. The behavior is unspecified if the '–' character
22882 appears within the second or third argument anywhere besides the first or last
22883 character.

22884 **undefine** The **undefine** macro shall delete all definitions (including those preserved using
22885 the **pushdef** macro) of the macros named by its arguments.

22886 **undivert** The **undivert** macro shall cause immediate output of any text in temporary buffers
22887 named as arguments, or all temporary buffers if no arguments are specified.
22888 Buffers can be undiverted into other temporary buffers. Undiverting shall discard
22889 the contents of the temporary buffer. The behavior is unspecified if an argument
22890 contains any non-numeric characters.

22891 **EXIT STATUS**

22892 The following exit values shall be returned:

22893 0 Successful completion.

22894 >0 An error occurred

22895 If the **m4exit** macro is used, the exit value can be specified by the input file.

22896 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

22897 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **defn** macro is useful for renaming macros, especially built-ins.

When a macro has been multiply defined via the **pushdef** macro, it is unspecified whether the **define** macro will alter only the most recent definition (as though by **popdef** and **pushdef**), or replace the entire stack of definitions with a single definition (as though by **undefine** and **pushdef**). An application desiring particular behavior for the **define** macro in this case can redefine it accordingly.

EXAMPLES

If the file **m4src** contains the lines:

```
The value of ‘VER’ is "VER".
ifdef(‘VER’, ‘‘VER’’ is defined to be VER., VER is not defined.)
ifelse(VER, 1, ‘‘VER’’ is ‘VER’.)
ifelse(VER, 2, ‘‘VER’’ is ‘VER’., ‘‘VER’’ is not 2.)
end
```

then the command

```
m4 m4src
```

or the command:

```
m4 –U VER m4src
```

produces the output:

```
The value of VER is "VER".
VER is not defined.

VER is not 2.
end
```

The command:

```
m4 –D VER m4src
```

produces the output:

```
The value of VER is "".
VER is defined to be .

VER is not 2.
end
```

The command:

```
m4 –D VER=1 m4src
```

produces the output:

```
The value of VER is "1".
VER is defined to be 1.
VER is 1.
VER is not 2.
end
```

The command:

```
m4 –D VER=2 m4src
```

```
produces the output:
```

```
The value of VER is "2".
VER is defined to be 2.
```



```
VER is 2.
end
```

RATIONALE

Historic System V-based behavior treated `"${"` in a macro definition as two literal characters. However, this sequence is left unspecified so that implementations may offer extensions such as `"${11}"` meaning the eleventh positional parameter. Macros can still be defined with appropriate uses of nested quoting to result in a literal `"${"` in the output after rescanning removes the nested quotes.

Historic System V-based behavior treated `'-'` as a literal; GNU behavior treats it as a range. This version of the standard allows either behavior.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

c99

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The phrase "the defined text for macros written by the **dumpdef** macro" is added to the description of STDERR, and the description of **dumpdef** is updated to indicate that output is written to standard error. The description of **eval** is updated to indicate that the list of excluded C operators excludes unary `'&'` and `'.'`. In the description of **ifdef**, the phrase "and it is not defined to be zero" is deleted.

Issue 6

In the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION, the **eval** text is updated to include a `'&'` character in the excepted list.

The EXTENDED DESCRIPTION of **divert** is updated to clarify that there are only nine diversion buffers.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2000-006 is applied.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/31 is applied, replacing the EXAMPLES section.

Issue 7

The *m4* utility is moved from the XSI option to the Base.

SD5-XCU-ERN-6 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply (options can be interspersed with operands).

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-99 is applied, clarifying the definition of the **divert** macro in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

SD5-XCU-ERN-100 is applied, clarifying the definition of the **syscmd** macro in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

SD5-XCU-ERN-101 is applied, clarifying the definition of the **undivert** macro in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

SD5-XCU-ERN-111 is applied to the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION, clarifying that the string `"${"` produces unspecified behavior.

SD5-XCU-ERN-112 is applied, updating the **changequote** macro.

22986 SD5-XCU-ERN-118 is applied, clarifying the definition of the **define** and **translit** macros in the
22987 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION.

22988 **NAME**

22989 mailx — process messages

22990 **SYNOPSIS**

22991 **Send Mode**

22992 `mailx [–s subject] address...`

22993 **Receive Mode**

22994 UP `mailx –e`

22995 `mailx [–HiNn] [–F] [–u user]`

22996 `mailx –f[–HiNn] [–F] [file]`

22997 **DESCRIPTION**

22998 The *mailx* utility provides a message sending and receiving facility. It has two major modes,
22999 selected by the options used: Send Mode and Receive Mode.

23000 On systems that do not support the User Portability Utilities option, an application using *mailx*
23001 shall have the ability to send messages in an unspecified manner (Send Mode). Unless the first
23002 character of one or more lines is tilde (`'~'`), all characters in the input message shall appear in
23003 the delivered message, but additional characters may be inserted in the message before it is
23004 retrieved.

23005 UP On systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option, mail-receiving capabilities and other
23006 interactive features, Receive Mode, described below, also shall be enabled.

23007 **Send Mode**

23008 Send Mode can be used by applications or users to send messages from the text in standard
23009 input.

23010 UP **Receive Mode**

23011 Receive Mode is more oriented towards interactive users. Mail can be read and sent in this
23012 interactive mode.

23013 When reading mail, *mailx* provides commands to facilitate saving, deleting, and responding to
23014 messages. When sending mail, *mailx* allows editing, reviewing, and other modification of the
23015 message as it is entered.

23016 Incoming mail shall be stored in one or more unspecified locations for each user, collectively
23017 called the system *mailbox* for that user. When *mailx* is invoked in Receive Mode, the system
23018 mailbox shall be the default place to find new mail. As messages are read, they shall be marked
23019 to be moved to a secondary file for storage, unless specific action is taken. This secondary file is
23020 called the **mbox** and is normally located in the directory referred to by the *HOME* environment
23021 variable (see *MBOX* in the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section for a description of this file).
23022 Messages shall remain in this file until explicitly removed. When the **–f** option is used to read
23023 mail messages from secondary files, messages shall be retained in those files unless specifically
23024 removed. All three of these locations—system mailbox, **mbox**, and secondary file—are referred
23025 to in this section as simply "mailboxes", unless more specific identification is required.

OPTIONS

The *mailx* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported. (Only the **–s** *subject* option shall be required on all systems. The other options are required only on systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option.)

UP **–e** Test for the presence of mail in the system mailbox. The *mailx* utility shall write nothing and exit with a successful return code if there is mail to read.

UP **–f** Read messages from the file named by the *file* operand instead of the system mailbox. (See also **folder**.) If no *file* operand is specified, read messages from **mbox** instead of the system mailbox.

UP **–F** Record the message in a file named after the first recipient. The name is the login-name portion of the address found first on the **To:** line in the mail header. Overrides the **record** variable, if set (see Internal Variables in mailx (on page 595).)

UP **–H** Write a header summary only.

UP **–i** Ignore interrupts. (See also **ignore**.)

UP **–n** Do not initialize from the system default start-up file. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

UP **–N** Do not write an initial header summary.

–s *subject* Set the **Subject** header field to *subject*. All characters in the *subject* string shall appear in the delivered message. The results are unspecified if *subject* is longer than {LINE_MAX} – 10 bytes or contains a <newline>.

UP **–u** *user* Read the system mailbox of the login name *user*. This shall only be successful if the invoking user has the appropriate privileges to read the system mailbox of that user.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

address Addressee of message. When **–n** is specified and no user start-up files are accessed (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section), the user or application shall ensure this is an address to pass to the mail delivery system. Any system or user start-up files may enable aliases (see **alias** under Commands in mailx (on page 598)) that may modify the form of *address* before it is passed to the mail delivery system.

UP *file* A pathname of a file to be read instead of the system mailbox when **–f** is specified. The meaning of the *file* option-argument shall be affected by the contents of the **folder** internal variable; see Internal Variables in mailx (on page 595).

STDIN

When *mailx* is invoked in Send Mode (the first synopsis line), standard input shall be the message to be delivered to the specified addresses. When in Receive Mode, user commands shall be accepted from *stdin*. If the User Portability Utilities option is not supported, standard input lines beginning with a tilde (`'~'`) character produce unspecified results.

UP If the User Portability Utilities option is supported, then in both Send and Receive Modes, standard input lines beginning with the escape character (usually tilde (`'~'`)) shall affect processing as described in Command Escapes in mailx (on page 606).

23069 **INPUT FILES**

23070 When *mailx* is used as described by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the *file* option-
23071 argument (see the **–f** option) and the **mbox** shall be text files containing mail messages,
23072 formatted as described in the OUTPUT FILES section. The nature of the system mailbox is
23073 unspecified; it need not be a file.

23074 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

23075 UP Some of the functionality described in this section shall be provided on implementations that
23076 support the User Portability Utilities option as described in the text, and is not further shaded
23077 for this option.

23078 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *mailx*:

23079 *DEAD* Determine the pathname of the file in which to save partial messages in case of
23080 interrupts or delivery errors. The default shall be **dead.letter** in the directory
23081 named by the *HOME* variable. The behavior of *mailx* in saving partial messages is
23082 unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported and *DEAD* is
23083 not defined with the value **/dev/null**.

23084 *EDITOR* Determine the name of a utility to invoke when the **edit** (see Commands in mailx
23085 (on page 598)) or **~e** (see Command Escapes in mailx (on page 606)) command is
23086 XSI used. The default editor is unspecified. On XSI-conformant systems it is *ed*. The
23087 effects of this variable are unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not
23088 supported.

23089 *HOME* Determine the pathname of the user's home directory.

23090 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
23091 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
23092 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
23093 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

23094 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
23095 internationalization variables.

23096 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
23097 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
23098 arguments and input files) and the handling of case-insensitive address and
23099 header-field comparisons.

23100 *LC_TIME* This variable may determine the format and contents of the date and time strings
23101 written by *mailx*. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies the effects of this
23102 variable only for systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option.

23103 *LC_MESSAGES*
23104 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
23105 diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to
23106 standard output.

23107 *LISTER* Determine a string representing the command for writing the contents of the
23108 **folder** directory to standard output when the **folders** command is given (see
23109 **folders** in Commands in mailx (on page 598)). Any string acceptable as a
23110 *command_string* operand to the *sh* **–c** command shall be valid. If this variable is null
23111 or not set, the output command shall be *ls*. The effects of this variable are
23112 unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported.

23113 *MAILRC* Determine the pathname of the start-up file. The default shall be **.mailrc** in the
23114 directory referred to by the *HOME* environment variable. The behavior of *mailx* is
23115 unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported and *MAILRC* is
23116 not defined with the value **/dev/null**.

MBOX Determine a pathname of the file to save messages from the system mailbox that have been read. The **exit** command shall override this function, as shall saving the message explicitly in another file. The default shall be **mbox** in the directory named by the *HOME* variable. The effects of this variable are unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PAGER Determine a string representing an output filtering or pagination command for writing the output to the terminal. Any string acceptable as a *command_string* operand to the *sh* **−c** command shall be valid. When standard output is a terminal device, the message output shall be piped through the command if the *mailx* internal variable **crt** is set to a value less the number of lines in the message; see Internal Variables in mailx (on page 595). If the *PAGER* variable is null or not set, the paginator shall be either *more* or another paginator utility documented in the system documentation. The effects of this variable are unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported.

SHELL Determine the name of a preferred command interpreter. The default shall be *sh*. The effects of this variable are unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported.

TERM If the internal variable **screen** is not specified, determine the name of the terminal type to indicate in an unspecified manner the number of lines in a screenful of headers. If *TERM* is not set or is set to null, an unspecified default terminal type shall be used and the value of a screenful is unspecified. The effects of this variable are unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported.

TZ This variable may determine the timezone used to calculate date and time strings written by *mailx*. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

VISUAL Determine a pathname of a utility to invoke when the **visual** command (see Commands in mailx (on page 598)) or **~v** command-escape (see Command Escapes in mailx (on page 606)) is used. If this variable is null or not set, the full-screen editor shall be *vi*. The effects of this variable are unspecified if the User Portability Utilities option is not supported.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

When *mailx* is in Send Mode and standard input is not a terminal, it shall take the standard action for all signals.

UP In Receive Mode, or in Send Mode when standard input is a terminal, if a SIGINT signal is received:

UP 1. If in command mode, the current command, if there is one, shall be aborted, and a command-mode prompt shall be written.

2. If in input mode:

UP a. If **ignore** is set, *mailx* shall write "@\n", discard the current input line, and continue processing, bypassing the message-abort mechanism described in item 2b.

UP b. If the interrupt was received while sending mail, either when in Receive Mode or in Send Mode, a message shall be written, and another subsequent interrupt, with no other intervening characters typed, shall be required to abort the mail message.

UP If in Receive Mode and another interrupt is received, a command-mode prompt shall be written. If in Send Mode and another interrupt is received, *mailx* shall terminate with a non-zero status.

In both cases listed in item b, if the message is not empty:

UP i. If **save** is enabled and the file named by *DEAD* can be created, the message shall be written to the file named by *DEAD*. If the file exists, the message shall be written to replace the contents of the file.

UP ii. If **save** is not enabled, or the file named by *DEAD* cannot be created, the message shall not be saved.

The *mailx* utility shall take the standard action for all other signals.

STDOUT

In command and input modes, all output, including prompts and messages, shall be written to standard output.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

Various *mailx* commands and command escapes can create or add to files, including the **mbox**, the dead-letter file, and secondary mailboxes. When *mailx* is used as described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, these files shall be text files, formatted as follows:

```
line beginning with From<space>
[one or more header-lines; see Commands in mailx (on page 598)]
empty line
[zero or more body lines
empty line]
[line beginning with From<space>...]
```

where each message begins with the **From <space>** line shown, preceded by the beginning of the file or an empty line. (The **From <space>** line is considered to be part of the message header, but not one of the header-lines referred to in Commands in mailx (on page 598); thus, it shall not be affected by the **discard**, **ignore**, or **retain** commands.) The formats of the remainder of the **From <space>** line and any additional header lines are unspecified, except that none shall be empty. The format of a message body line is also unspecified, except that no line following an empty line shall start with **From <space>**; *mailx* shall modify any such user-entered message body lines (following an empty line and beginning with **From <space>**) by adding one or more characters to precede the `'F'`; it may add these characters to **From <space>** lines that are not preceded by an empty line.

When a message from the system mailbox or entered by the user is not a text file, it is implementation-defined how such a message is stored in files written by *mailx*.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

UP The functionality in the entire EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section shall be provided on implementations supporting the User Portability Utilities option. The functionality described in this section shall be provided on implementations that support the User Portability Utilities option (and the rest of this section is not further shaded for this option).

The *mailx* utility need not support for all character encodings in all circumstances. For example, inter-system mail may be restricted to 7-bit data by the underlying network, 8-bit data need not be portable to non-internationalized systems, and so on. Under these circumstances, it is recommended that only characters defined in the ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard International Reference Version (equivalent to ASCII) 7-bit range of characters be used.

When *mailx* is invoked using one of the Receive Mode synopsis forms, it shall write a page of header-summary lines (if **–N** was not specified and there are messages, see below), followed by a prompt indicating that *mailx* can accept regular commands (see Commands in mailx (on page 598)); this is termed *command mode*. The page of header-summary lines shall contain the first

new message if there are new messages, or the first unread message if there are unread messages, or the first message. When *mailx* is invoked using the Send Mode synopsis and standard input is a terminal, if no subject is specified on the command line and the **asksub** variable is set, a prompt for the subject shall be written. At this point, *mailx* shall be in input mode. This input mode shall also be entered when using one of the Receive Mode synopsis forms and a reply or new message is composed using the **reply**, **Reply**, **followup**, **Followup**, or **mail** commands and standard input is a terminal. When the message is typed and the end of the message is encountered, the message shall be passed to the mail delivery software. Commands can be entered by beginning a line with the escape character (by default, tilde (`'~'`)) followed by a single command letter and optional arguments. See Commands in mailx for a summary of these commands. It is unspecified what effect these commands will have if standard input is not a terminal when a message is entered using either the Send Mode synopsis, or the Read Mode commands **reply**, **Reply**, **followup**, **Followup**, or **mail**.

Note: For notational convenience, this section uses the default escape character, tilde, in all references and examples.

At any time, the behavior of *mailx* shall be governed by a set of environmental and internal variables. These are flags and valued parameters that can be set and cleared via the *mailx* **set** and **unset** commands.

Regular commands are of the form:

[*command***] [***msglist***] [***argument* **...]**

If no *command* is specified in command mode, **next** shall be assumed. In input mode, commands shall be recognized by the escape character, and lines not treated as commands shall be taken as input for the message.

In command mode, each message shall be assigned a sequential number, starting with 1.

All messages have a state that shall affect how they are displayed in the header summary and how they are retained or deleted upon termination of *mailx*. There is at any time the notion of a *current* message, which shall be marked by a `'>'` at the beginning of a line in the header summary. When *mailx* is invoked using one of the Receive Mode synopsis forms, the current message shall be the first new message, if there is a new message, or the first unread message if there is an unread message, or the first message if there are any messages, or unspecified if there are no messages in the mailbox. Each command that takes an optional list of messages (*msglist*) or an optional single message (*message*) on which to operate shall leave the current message set to the highest-numbered message of the messages specified, unless the command deletes messages, in which case the current message shall be set to the first undeleted message (that is, a message not in the deleted state) after the highest-numbered message deleted by the command, if one exists, or the first undeleted message before the highest-numbered message deleted by the command, if one exists, or to an unspecified value if there are no remaining undeleted messages. All messages shall be in one of the following states:

new The message is present in the system mailbox and has not been viewed by the user or moved to any other state. Messages in state *new* when *mailx* quits shall be retained in the system mailbox.

unread The message has been present in the system mailbox for more than one invocation of *mailx* and has not been viewed by the user or moved to any other state. Messages in state *unread* when *mailx* quits shall be retained in the system mailbox.

read The message has been processed by one of the following commands: **~f**, **~m**, **~F**, **~M**, **copy**, **mbox**, **next**, **pipe**, **print**, **Print**, **top**, **type**, **Type**, **undelete**. The **delete**, **dp**, and **dt** commands may also cause the next message to be marked as *read*, depending on the value of the **autoprint** variable. Messages that are in the system mailbox and in state *read* when *mailx* quits shall be saved in the **mbox**, unless the internal variable **hold** was set. Messages that are in the **mbox** or in a secondary

mailbox and in state *read* when *mailx* quits shall be retained in their current location.

deleted The message has been processed by one of the following commands: **delete**, **dp**, **dt**. Messages in state *deleted* when *mailx* quits shall be deleted. Deleted messages shall be ignored until *mailx* quits or changes mailboxes or they are specified to the undelete command; for example, the message specification */string* shall only search the subject lines of messages that have not yet been deleted, unless the command operating on the list of messages is **undelete**. No deleted message or deleted message header shall be displayed by any *mailx* command other than **undelete**.

preserved The message has been processed by a **preserve** command. When *mailx* quits, the message shall be retained in its current location.

saved The message has been processed by one of the following commands: **save** or **write**. If the current mailbox is the system mailbox, and the internal variable **keepsave** is set, messages in the state saved shall be saved to the file designated by the *MBOX* variable (see the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section). If the current mailbox is the system mailbox, messages in the state *saved* shall be deleted from the current mailbox, when the **quit** or **file** command is used to exit the current mailbox.

The header-summary line for each message shall indicate the state of the message.

Many commands take an optional list of messages (*msglist*) on which to operate, which defaults to the current message. A *msglist* is a list of message specifications separated by <blank>s, which can include:

`n` Message number *n*.

`+` The next undeleted message, or the next deleted message for the **undelete** command.

`–` The next previous undeleted message, or the next previous deleted message for the **undelete** command.

`.` The current message.

`^` The first undeleted message, or the first deleted message for the **undelete** command.

`$` The last message.

`*` All messages.

`n-m` An inclusive range of message numbers.

address All messages from *address*; any address as shown in a header summary shall be matchable in this form.

/string All messages with *string* in the subject line (case ignored).

`:c` All messages of type *c*, where *c* shall be one of:

- `d` Deleted messages.
- `n` New messages.
- `o` Old messages (any not in state *read* or *new*).
- `r` Read messages.
- `u` Unread messages.

Other commands take an optional message (*message*) on which to operate, which defaults to the current message. All of the forms allowed for *msglist* are also allowed for *message*, but if more than one message is specified, only the first shall be operated on.

Other arguments are usually arbitrary strings whose usage depends on the command involved.

Start-Up in mailx

At start-up time, *mailx* shall take the following steps in sequence:

1. Establish all variables at their stated default values.
2. Process command line options, overriding corresponding default values.
3. Import any of the *DEAD*, *EDITOR*, *MBOX*, *LISTER*, *PAGER*, *SHELL*, or *VISUAL* variables that are present in the environment, overriding the corresponding default values.
4. Read *mailx* commands from an unspecified system start-up file, unless the **–n** option is given, to initialize any internal *mailx* variables and aliases.
5. Process the start-up file of *mailx* commands named in the user *MAILRC* variable.

Most regular *mailx* commands are valid inside start-up files, the most common use being to set up initial display options and alias lists. The following commands shall be invalid in the start-up file: **!**, **edit**, **hold**, **mail**, **preserve**, **reply**, **Reply**, **shell**, **visual**, **Copy**, **followup**, and **Followup**. Any errors in the start-up file shall either cause *mailx* to terminate with a diagnostic message and a non-zero status or to continue after writing a diagnostic message, ignoring the remainder of the lines in the start-up file.

A blank line in a start-up file shall be ignored.

Internal Variables in mailx

The following variables are internal *mailx* variables. Each internal variable can be set via the *mailx* **set** command at any time. The **unset** and **set no** *name* commands can be used to erase variables.

In the following list, variables shown as:

`variable`

represent Boolean values. Variables shown as:

`variable=`*`value`*

shall be assigned string or numeric values. For string values, the rules in Commands in mailx concerning filenames and quoting shall also apply.

The defaults specified here may be changed by the unspecified system start-up file unless the user specifies the **–n** option.

allnet All network names whose login name components match shall be treated as identical. This shall cause the *msglist* message specifications to behave similarly. The default shall be **noallnet**. See also the **alternates** command and the **metoo** variable.

append Append messages to the end of the **mbox** file upon termination instead of placing them at the beginning. The default shall be **noappend**. This variable shall not affect the **save** command when saving to **mbox**.

ask, **asksub** Prompt for a subject line on outgoing mail if one is not specified on the command line with the **–s** option. The **ask** and **asksub** forms are synonyms; the system shall refer to **asksub** and **noasksub** in its messages, but shall accept **ask** and **noask** as user input to mean **asksub** and **noasksub**. It shall not be possible to set both **ask** and **noasksub**, or **noask** and **asksub**. The default shall be **asksub**, but no prompting shall be done if standard input is not a terminal.

askbcc Prompt for the blind copy list. The default shall be **noaskbcc**.

askcc Prompt for the copy list. The default shall be **noaskcc**.

autoprint Enable automatic writing of messages after **delete** and **undelete** commands. The default shall be **noautoprint**.

bang Enable the special-case treatment of exclamation marks (`'!'`) in escape command lines; see the **escape** command and Command Escapes in mailx (on page 606). The default shall be **nobang**, disabling the expansion of `'!'` in the *command* argument to the **~!** command and the **~<!***command* escape.

cmd=*command*
Set the default command to be invoked by the **pipe** command. The default shall be **nocmd**.

crt=*number* Pipe messages having more than *number* lines through the command specified by the value of the *PAGER* variable. The default shall be **nocrt**. If it is set to null, the value used is implementation-defined.

XSI **debug** Enable verbose diagnostics for debugging. Messages are not delivered. The default shall be **nodebug**.

dot When **dot** is set, a period on a line by itself during message input from a terminal shall also signify end-of-file (in addition to normal end-of-file). The default shall be **nodot**. If **ignoreeof** is set (see below), a setting of **nodot** shall be ignored and the period is the only method to terminate input mode.

escape=*c* Set the command escape character to be the character `'c'`. By default, the command escape character shall be tilde. If **escape** is unset, tilde shall be used; if it is set to null, command escaping shall be disabled.

flipr Reverse the meanings of the **R** and **r** commands. The default shall be **noflipr**.

folder=*directory*
The default directory for saving mail files. User-specified filenames beginning with a plus sign (`'+'`) shall be expanded by preceding the filename with this directory name to obtain the real pathname. If *directory* does not start with a slash (`'/'`), the contents of *HOME* shall be prefixed to it. The default shall be **nofolder**. If **folder** is unset or set to null, user-specified filenames beginning with `'+'` shall refer to files in the current directory that begin with the literal `'+'` character. See also **outfolder** below. The **folder** value need not affect the processing of the files named in *MBOX* and *DEAD*.

header Enable writing of the header summary when entering *mailx* in Receive Mode. The default shall be **header**.

hold Preserve all messages that are read in the system mailbox instead of putting them in the **mbox** save file. The default shall be **nohold**.

ignore Ignore interrupts while entering messages. The default shall be **noignore**.

ignoreeof Ignore normal end-of-file during message input. Input can be terminated only by entering a period (`'.'`) on a line by itself or by the **~.** command escape. The default shall be **noignoreeof**. See also **dot** above.

indentprefix=*string*
A string that shall be added as a prefix to each line that is inserted into the message by the **~m** command escape. This variable shall default to one <tab>.

keep When a system mailbox, secondary mailbox, or **mbox** is empty, truncate it to zero length instead of removing it. The default shall be **nokeep**.

keepsave Keep the messages that have been saved from the system mailbox into other files in the file designated by the variable *MBOX*, instead of deleting them. The default shall be **nokeepsave**.

metoo Suppress the deletion of the login name of the user from the recipient list when replying to a message or sending to a group. The default shall be **nometoo**.

XSI **onehop** When responding to a message that was originally sent to several recipients, the other recipient addresses are normally forced to be relative to the originating author's machine for the response. This flag disables alteration of the recipients' addresses, improving efficiency in a network where all machines can send directly to all other machines (that is, one hop away). The default shall be **noonehop**.

outfolder Cause the files used to record outgoing messages to be located in the directory specified by the **folder** variable unless the pathname is absolute. The default shall be **nooutfolder**. See the **record** variable.

page Insert a <form-feed> after each message sent through the pipe created by the **pipe** command. The default shall be **nopage**.

prompt=*string*
Set the command-mode prompt to *string*. If *string* is null or if **noprompt** is set, no prompting shall occur. The default shall be to prompt with the string `"? "`.

quiet Refrain from writing the opening message and version when entering *mailx*. The default shall be **noquiet**.

record=*file* Record all outgoing mail in the file with the pathname *file*. The default shall be **norecord**. See also **outfolder** above.

save Enable saving of messages in the dead-letter file on interrupt or delivery error. See the variable *DEAD* for the location of the dead-letter file. The default shall be **save**.

screen=*number*
Set the number of lines in a screenful of headers for the **headers** and **z** commands. If **screen** is not specified, a value based on the terminal type identified by the *TERM* environment variable, the window size, the baud rate, or some combination of these shall be used.

sendwait Wait for the background mailer to finish before returning. The default shall be **nosendwait**.

showto When the sender of the message was the user who is invoking *mailx*, write the information from the **To:** line instead of the **From:** line in the header summary. The default shall be **noshowto**.

sign=*string* Set the variable inserted into the text of a message when the **~a** command escape is given. The default shall be **nosign**. The character sequences `'\t'` and `'\n'` shall be recognized in the variable as <tab>s and <newline>s, respectively. (See also **~i** in Command Escapes in mailx (on page 606).)

Sign=*string* Set the variable inserted into the text of a message when the **~A** command escape is given. The default shall be **noSign**. The character sequences `'\t'` and `'\n'` shall be recognized in the variable as <tab>s and <newline>s, respectively.

toplines=*number*
Set the number of lines of the message to write with the **top** command. The default shall be 5.

Commands in mailx

The following *mailx* commands shall be provided. In the following list, header refers to lines from the message header, as shown in the OUTPUT FILES section. Header-line refers to lines within the header that begin with one or more non-white-space characters, immediately followed by a colon and white space and continuing until the next line beginning with a non-white-space character or an empty line. Header-field refers to the portion of a header line prior to the first colon in that line.

For each of the commands listed below, the command can be entered as the abbreviation (those characters in the Synopsis command word preceding the '[', the full command (all characters shown for the command word, omitting the '[' and ']'), or any truncation of the full command down to the abbreviation. For example, the **exit** command (shown as **ex[it]** in the Synopsis) can be entered as **ex**, **exi**, or **exit**.

The arguments to commands can be quoted, using the following methods:

- An argument can be enclosed between paired double-quotes ("") or single-quotes (''); any white space, shell word expansion, or backslash characters within the quotes shall be treated literally as part of the argument. A double-quote shall be treated literally within single-quotes and *vice versa*. These special properties of the quote marks shall occur only when they are paired at the beginning and end of the argument.
- A backslash outside of the enclosing quotes shall be discarded and the following character treated literally as part of the argument.
- An unquoted backslash at the end of a command line shall be discarded and the next line shall continue the command.

Filenames, where expected, shall be subjected to the following transformations, in sequence:

- If the filename begins with an unquoted plus sign, and the **folder** variable is defined (see the **folder** variable), the plus sign shall be replaced by the value of the **folder** variable followed by a slash. If the **folder** variable is unset or is set to null, the filename shall be unchanged.
- Shell word expansions shall be applied to the filename (see Section 2.6 (on page 37)). If more than a single pathname results from this expansion and the command is expecting one file, the effects are unspecified.

Declare Aliases

Synopsis:

```
a[lias] [alias [address...]]
g[roup] [alias [address...]]
```

Add the given addresses to the alias specified by *alias*. The names shall be substituted when *alias* is used as a recipient address specified by the user in an outgoing message (that is, other recipients addressed indirectly through the **reply** command shall not be substituted in this manner). Mail address alias substitution shall apply only when the alias string is used as a full address; for example, when **hlj** is an alias, *hlj@posix.com* does not trigger the alias substitution. If no arguments are given, write a listing of the current aliases to standard output. If only an *alias* argument is given, write a listing of the specified alias to standard output. These listings need not reflect the same order of addresses that were entered.

23479 **Declare Alternatives**

23480 *Synopsis*: `alt[ernates] name...`

23481 (See also the **metoo** variable.) Declare a list of alternative names for the user's login. When
23482 responding to a message, these names shall be removed from the list of recipients for the
23483 response. The comparison of names shall be in a case-insensitive manner. With no arguments,
23484 **alternates** shall write the current list of alternative names.

23485 **Change Current Directory**

23486 *Synopsis*: `cd [directory]`
23487 `ch[dir] [directory]`

23488 Change directory. If *directory* is not specified, the contents of *HOME* shall be used.

23489 **Copy Messages**

23490 *Synopsis*: `c[opy] [file]`
23491 `c[opy] [msglist] file`
23492 `C[opy] [msglist]`

23493 Copy messages to the file named by the pathname *file* without marking the messages as saved.
23494 Otherwise, it shall be equivalent to the **save** command.

23495 In the capitalized form, save the specified messages in a file whose name is derived from the
23496 author of the message to be saved, without marking the messages as saved. Otherwise, it shall
23497 be equivalent to the **Save** command.

23498 **Delete Messages**

23499 *Synopsis*: `d[elete] [msglist]`

23500 Mark messages for deletion from the mailbox. The deletions shall not occur until *mailx* quits (see
23501 the **quit** command) or changes mailboxes (see the **folder** command). If **autoprint** is set and there
23502 are messages remaining after the **delete** command, the current message shall be written as
23503 described for the **print** command (see the **print** command); otherwise, the *mailx* prompt shall be
23504 written.

23505 **Discard Header Fields**

23506 *Synopsis*: `di[scard] [header-field...]`
23507 `ig[nore] [header-field...]`

23508 Suppress the specified header fields when writing messages. Specified *header-fields* shall be
23509 added to the list of suppressed header fields. Examples of header fields to ignore are **status** and
23510 **cc**. The fields shall be included when the message is saved. The **Print** and **Type** commands shall
23511 override this command. The comparison of header fields shall be in a case-insensitive manner. If
23512 no arguments are specified, write a list of the currently suppressed header fields to standard
23513 output; the listing need not reflect the same order of header fields that were entered.

23514 If both **retain** and **discard** commands are given, **discard** commands shall be ignored.

23515 **Delete Messages and Display**

23516 *Synopsis*: `dp [`*`msglist`*`]`
23517 `dt [`*`msglist`*`]`

23518 Delete the specified messages as described for the **delete** command, except that the **autoprint**
23519 variable shall have no effect, and the current message shall be written only if it was set to a
23520 message after the last message deleted by the command. Otherwise, an informational message
23521 to the effect that there are no further messages in the mailbox shall be written, followed by the
23522 *mailx* prompt.

23523 **Echo a String**

23524 *Synopsis*: `ec[ho] `*`string ...`*

23525 Echo the given strings, equivalent to the shell *echo* utility.

23526 **Edit Messages**

23527 *Synopsis*: `e[dit] [`*`msglist`*`]`

23528 Edit the given messages. The messages shall be placed in a temporary file and the utility named
23529 by the *EDITOR* variable is invoked to edit each file in sequence. The default *EDITOR* is
23530 unspecified.

23531 The **edit** command does not modify the contents of those messages in the mailbox.

23532 **Exit**

23533 *Synopsis*: `ex[it]`
23534 `x[it]`

23535 Exit from *mailx* without changing the mailbox. No messages shall be saved in the **mbox** (see also
23536 **quit**).

23537 **Change Folder**

23538 *Synopsis*: `fi[le] [`*`file`*`]`
23539 `fold[er] [`*`file`*`]`

23540 Quit (see the **quit** command) from the current file of messages and read in the file named by the
23541 pathname *file*. If no argument is given, the name and status of the current mailbox shall be
23542 written.

23543 Several unquoted special characters shall be recognized when used as *file* names, with the
23544 following substitutions:

23545 `%` The system mailbox for the invoking user.

23546 `%`*`user`* The system mailbox for *user*.

23547 `#` The previous file.

23548 `&` The current **mbox**.

23549 `+`*`file`* The named file in the **folder** directory. (See the **folder** variable.)

23550 The default file shall be the current mailbox.

23551 **Display List of Folders**

23552 *Synopsis*: `folders`

23553 Write the names of the files in the directory set by the **folder** variable. The command specified
23554 by the *LISTER* environment variable shall be used (see the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES
23555 section).

23556 **Follow Up Specified Messages**

23557 *Synopsis*: `fo[llowup] [`*`message`*`]`
23558 `F[ollowup] [`*`msglist`*`]`

23559 In the lowercase form, respond to a message, recording the response in a file whose name is
23560 derived from the author of the message. See also the **save** and **copy** commands and **outfolder**.

23561 In the capitalized form, respond to the first message in the *msglist*, sending the message to the
23562 author of each message in the *msglist*. The subject line shall be taken from the first message and
23563 the response shall be recorded in a file whose name is derived from the author of the first
23564 message. See also the **Save** and **Copy** commands and **outfolder**.

23565 Both forms shall override the **record** variable, if set.

23566 **Display Header Summary for Specified Messages**

23567 *Synopsis*: `f[rom] [`*`msglist`*`]`

23568 Write the header summary for the specified messages.

23569 **Display Header Summary**

23570 *Synopsis*: `h[eaders] [`*`message`*`]`

23571 Write the page of headers that includes the message specified. If the *message* argument is not
23572 specified, the current message shall not change. However, if the *message* argument is specified,
23573 the current message shall become the message that appears at the top of the page of headers that
23574 includes the message specified. The **screen** variable sets the number of headers per page. See
23575 also the **z** command.

23576 **Help**

23577 *Synopsis*: `hel[p]`
23578 `?`

23579 Write a summary of commands.

23580 **Hold Messages**

23581 *Synopsis*: `ho[ld] [`*`msglist`*`]`
23582 `pre[serve] [`*`msglist`*`]`

23583 Mark the messages in *msglist* to be retained in the mailbox when *mailx* terminates. This shall
23584 override any commands that might previously have marked the messages to be deleted. During
23585 the current invocation of *mailx*, only the **delete**, **dp**, or **dt** commands shall remove the *preserve*
23586 marking of a message.

23587 **Execute Commands Conditionally**

23588 *Synopsis*: `i[f] s|r`
23589 `mail-commands`
23590 `el[se]`
23591 `mail-commands`
23592 `en[dif]`

23593 Execute commands conditionally, where **if s** executes the following *mail-commands*, up to an
23594 **else** or **endif**, if the program is in Send Mode, and **if r** shall cause the *mail-commands* to be
23595 executed only in Receive Mode.

23596 **List Available Commands**

23597 *Synopsis*: `l[ist]`

23598 Write a list of all commands available. No explanation shall be given.

23599 **Mail a Message**

23600 *Synopsis*: `m[ail] address...`

23601 Mail a message to the specified addresses or aliases.

23602 **Direct Messages to mbox**

23603 *Synopsis*: `mb[ox] [msglist]`

23604 Arrange for the given messages to end up in the **mbox** save file when *mailx* terminates normally.
23605 See *MBOX*. See also the **exit** and **quit** commands.

23606 **Process Next Specified Message**

23607 *Synopsis*: `n[ext] [message]`

23608 If the current message has not been written (for example, by the **print** command) since *mailx*
23609 started or since any other message was the current message, behave as if the **print** command
23610 was entered. Otherwise, if there is an undeleted message after the current message, make it the
23611 current message and behave as if the **print** command was entered. Otherwise, an informational
23612 message to the effect that there are no further messages in the mailbox shall be written, followed
23613 by the *mailx* prompt. Should the current message location be the result of an immediately
23614 preceding **hold**, **mbox**, **preserve**, or **touch** command, **next** will act as if the current message has
23615 already been written.

23616 **Pipe Message**

23617 *Synopsis*: `pi[pe] [[msglist] command]`
23618 `| [[msglist] command]`

23619 Pipe the messages through the given *command* by invoking the command interpreter specified
23620 by *SHELL* with two arguments: **–c** and *command*. (See also *sh* **–c**.) The application shall ensure
23621 that the command is given as a single argument. Quoting, described previously, can be used to
23622 accomplish this. If no arguments are given, the current message shall be piped through the
23623 command specified by the value of the **cmd** variable. If the **page** variable is set, a <form-feed>
23624 shall be inserted after each message.

23625 **Display Message with Headers**

23626 *Synopsis*: `P[rint] [msglist]`
23627 `T[ype] [msglist]`

23628 Write the specified messages, including all header lines, to standard output. Override
23629 suppression of lines by the **discard**, **ignore**, and **retain** commands. If **crt** is set, the messages
23630 longer than the number of lines specified by the **crt** variable shall be paged through the
23631 command specified by the *PAGER* environment variable.

23632 **Display Message**

23633 *Synopsis*: `p[rint] [msglist]`
23634 `t[ype] [msglist]`

23635 Write the specified messages to standard output. If **crt** is set, the messages longer than the
23636 number of lines specified by the **crt** variable shall be paged through the command specified by
23637 the *PAGER* environment variable.

23638 **Quit**

23639 *Synopsis*: `q[uit]`
23640 *end-of-file*

23641 Terminate *mailx*, storing messages that were read in **mbox** (if the current mailbox is the system
23642 mailbox and unless **hold** is set), deleting messages that have been explicitly saved (unless
23643 **keepsave** is set), discarding messages that have been deleted, and saving all remaining messages
23644 in the mailbox.

23645 **Reply to a Message List**

23646 *Synopsis*: `R[eply] [msglist]`
23647 `R[espond] [msglist]`

23648 Mail a reply message to the sender of each message in the *msglist*. The subject line shall be
23649 formed by concatenating **Re:**<space> (unless it already begins with that string) and the subject
23650 from the first message. If **record** is set to a filename, the response shall be saved at the end of that
23651 file.

23652 See also the **flipr** variable.

23653 **Reply to a Message**

23654 *Synopsis*: `r[eply] [message]`
23655 `r[espond] [message]`

23656 Mail a reply message to all recipients included in the header of the message. The subject line
23657 shall be formed by concatenating **Re:**<space> (unless it already begins with that string) and the
23658 subject from the message. If **record** is set to a filename, the response shall be saved at the end of
23659 that file.

23660 See also the **flipr** variable.

23661 **Retain Header Fields**

23662 *Synopsis*: `ret[ain] [header-field...]`

23663 Retain the specified header fields when writing messages. This command shall override all
23664 **discard** and **ignore** commands. The comparison of header fields shall be in a case-insensitive
23665 manner. If no arguments are specified, write a list of the currently retained header fields to
23666 standard output; the listing need not reflect the same order of header fields that were entered.

23667 **Save Messages**

23668 *Synopsis*: `s[ave] [file]`
23669 `s[ave] [msglist] file`
23670 `S[ave] [msglist]`

23671 Save the specified messages in the file named by the pathname *file*, or the **mbox** if the *file*
23672 argument is omitted. The file shall be created if it does not exist; otherwise, the messages shall be
23673 appended to the file. The message shall be put in the state *saved*, and shall behave as specified in
23674 the description of the *saved* state when the current mailbox is exited by the **quit** or **file**
23675 command.

23676 In the capitalized form, save the specified messages in a file whose name is derived from the
23677 author of the first message. The name of the file shall be taken to be the author's name with all
23678 network addressing stripped off. See also the **Copy**, **followup**, and **Followup** commands and
23679 **outfolder** variable.

23680 **Set Variables**

23681 *Synopsis*: `se[t] [name[=[string]] ...] [name=number ...] [noname ...]`

23682 Define one or more variables called *name*. The variable can be given a null, string, or numeric
23683 value. Quoting and backslash escapes can occur anywhere in *string*, as described previously, as
23684 if the *string* portion of the argument were the entire argument. The forms *name* and *name*= shall
23685 be equivalent to *name*="" for variables that take string values. The **set** command without
23686 arguments shall write a list of all defined variables and their values. The **no** *name* form shall be
23687 equivalent to **unset** *name*.

23688 **Invoke a Shell**

23689 *Synopsis*: `sh[ell]`

23690 Invoke an interactive command interpreter (see also *SHELL*).

23691 **Display Message Size**

23692 *Synopsis*: `si[ze] [msglist]`

23693 Write the size in bytes of each of the specified messages.

23694 **Read mailx Commands From a File**

23695 *Synopsis*: `so[urce] file`

23696 Read and execute commands from the file named by the pathname *file* and return to command
23697 mode.

23698 **Display Beginning of Messages**

23699 *Synopsis*: `to[p] [msglist]`

23700 Write the top few lines of each of the specified messages. If the **toplines** variable is set, it is taken
23701 as the number of lines to write. The default shall be 5.

23702 **Touch Messages**

23703 *Synopsis*: `tou[ch] [msglist]`

23704 Touch the specified messages. If any message in *msglist* is not specifically deleted nor saved in a
23705 file, it shall be placed in the **mbox** upon normal termination. See **exit** and **quit**.

23706 **Delete Aliases**

23707 *Synopsis*: `una[lias] [alias]...`

23708 Delete the specified alias names. If a specified alias does not exist, the results are unspecified.

23709 **Undelete Messages**

23710 *Synopsis*: `u[ndelete] [msglist]`

23711 Change the state of the specified messages from deleted to read. If **autoprint** is set, the last
23712 message of those restored shall be written. If *msglist* is not specified, the message shall be
23713 selected as follows:

23714 • If there are any deleted messages that follow the current message, the first of these shall be
23715 chosen.

23716 • Otherwise, the last deleted message that also precedes the current message shall be chosen.

23717 **Unset Variables**

23718 *Synopsis*: `uns[et] name...`

23719 Cause the specified variables to be erased.

23720 **Edit Message with Full-Screen Editor**

23721 *Synopsis*: `v[isual] [msglist]`

23722 Edit the given messages with a screen editor. Each message shall be placed in a temporary file,
23723 and the utility named by the *VISUAL* variable shall be invoked to edit each file in sequence. The
23724 default editor shall be *vi*.

23725 The **visual** command does not modify the contents of those messages in the mailbox.

23726 **Write Messages to a File**

23727 *Synopsis*: `w[rite] [msglist] file`

23728 Write the given messages to the file specified by the pathname *file*, minus the message header.
23729 Otherwise, it shall be equivalent to the **save** command.

23730 **Scroll Header Display**

23731 *Synopsis*: `z[+|−]`

23732 Scroll the header display forward (if `'+'` is specified or if no option is specified) or backward (if
23733 `'−'` is specified) one screenful. The number of headers written shall be set by the **screen**
23734 variable.

23735 **Invoke Shell Command**

23736 *Synopsis*: `!command`

23737 Invoke the command interpreter specified by *SHELL* with two arguments: **−c** and *command*. (See
23738 also *sh* **−c**.) If the **bang** variable is set, each unescaped occurrence of `'!'` in *command* shall be
23739 replaced with the command executed by the previous **!** command or **~!** command escape.

23740 **Null Command**

23741 *Synopsis*: `# comment`

23742 This null command (comment) shall be ignored by *mailx*.

23743 **Display Current Message Number**

23744 *Synopsis*: `=`

23745 Write the current message number.

23746 **Command Escapes in mailx**

23747 The following commands can be entered only from input mode, by beginning a line with the
23748 escape character (by default, tilde (`'~'`)). See the **escape** variable description for changing this
23749 special character. The format for the commands shall be:

23750 `<escape-character><command-char><separator>[<arguments>]`

23751 where the <*separator*> can be zero or more <blank>s.

23752 In the following descriptions, the application shall ensure that the argument *command* (but not
23753 *mailx-command)* is a shell command string. Any string acceptable to the command interpreter
23754 specified by the *SHELL* variable when it is invoked as *SHELL* **−c** *command_string* shall be valid.
23755 The command can be presented as multiple arguments (that is, quoting is not required).

23756 Command escapes that are listed with *msglist* or *mailx-command* arguments are invalid in Send
23757 Mode and produce unspecified results.

23758 **~!** *command* Invoke the command interpreter specified by *SHELL* with two arguments: **−c** and
23759 *command*; and then return to input mode. If the **bang** variable is set, each
23760 unescaped occurrence of `'!'` in *command* shall be replaced with the command
23761 executed by the previous **!** command or **~!** command escape.

23762 **~.** Simulate end-of-file (terminate message input).

23763 **~:** *mailx-command*, **~_** *mailx-command*
23764 Perform the command-level request.

23765 **~?** Write a summary of command escapes.

23766 **~A** This shall be equivalent to **~i Sign**.

23767 **~a** This shall be equivalent to **~i sign**.

23768 **~b** *name...* Add the *name*s to the blind carbon copy (**Bcc**) list.

23769 **~c** *name...* Add the *name*s to the carbon copy (**Cc**) list.

23770 **~d** Read in the dead-letter file. See *DEAD* for a description of this file.

23771 **~e** Invoke the editor, as specified by the *EDITOR* environment variable, on the partial
23772 message.

23773 **~f** [*msglist*] Forward the specified messages. The specified messages shall be inserted into the
23774 current message without alteration. This command escape also shall insert
23775 message headers into the message with field selection affected by the **discard**,
23776 **ignore**, and **retain** commands.

23777 **~F** [*msglist*] This shall be the equivalent of the **~f** command escape, except that all headers shall
23778 be included in the message, regardless of previous **discard**, **ignore**, and **retain**
23779 commands.

23780 **~h** If standard input is a terminal, prompt for a **Subject** line and the **To**, **Cc**, and **Bcc**
23781 lists. Other implementation-defined headers may also be presented for editing. If
23782 the field is written with an initial value, it can be edited as if it had just been typed.

23783 **~i** *string* Insert the value of the named variable, followed by a <newline>, into the text of
23784 the message. If the string is unset or null, the message shall not be changed.

23785 **~m** [*msglist*] Insert the specified messages into the message, prefixing non-empty lines with the
23786 string in the **indentprefix** variable. This command escape also shall insert message
23787 headers into the message, with field selection affected by the **discard**, **ignore**, and
23788 **retain** commands.

23789 **~M** [*msglist*] This shall be the equivalent of the **~m** command escape, except that all headers
23790 shall be included in the message, regardless of previous **discard**, **ignore**, and **retain**
23791 commands.

23792 **~p** Write the message being entered. If the message is longer than **crt** lines (see
23793 Internal Variables in mailx (on page 595)), the output shall be paginated as
23794 described for the *PAGER* variable.

23795 **~q** Quit (see the **quit** command) from input mode by simulating an interrupt. If the
23796 body of the message is not empty, the partial message shall be saved in the dead-
23797 letter file. See *DEAD* for a description of this file.

23798 **~r** *file*, **~<** *file*, **~r** **!***command*, **~<** **!***command*
23799 Read in the file specified by the pathname *file*. If the argument begins with an
23800 exclamation mark (**'!'**), the rest of the string shall be taken as an arbitrary system
23801 command; the command interpreter specified by *SHELL* shall be invoked with two
23802 arguments: **–c** and *command*. The standard output of *command* shall be inserted
23803 into the message.

23804 **~s** *string* Set the subject line to *string*.

23805 **~t** *name...* Add the given *name*s to the **To** list.

23806 **~v** Invoke the full-screen editor, as specified by the *VISUAL* environment variable, on
23807 the partial message.

23808 **~w** *file* Write the partial message, without the header, onto the file named by the
23809 pathname *file*. The file shall be created or the message shall be appended to it if
23810 the file exists.

23811 **~x** Exit as with **~q**, except the message shall not be saved in the dead-letter file.

23812 ~| *command* Pipe the body of the message through the given *command* by invoking the
23813 command interpreter specified by *SHELL* with two arguments: **–c** and *command*. If
23814 the *command* returns a successful exit status, the standard output of the command
23815 shall replace the message. Otherwise, the message shall remain unchanged. If the
23816 *command* fails, an error message giving the exit status shall be written.

23817 **EXIT STATUS**

23818 UP When the **–e** option is specified, the following exit values are returned:

23819 0 Mail was found.

23820 >0 Mail was not found or an error occurred.

23821 Otherwise, the following exit values are returned:

23822 0 Successful completion; note that this status implies that all messages were *sent*, but it gives
23823 no assurances that any of them were actually *delivered*.

23824 >0 An error occurred.

23825 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

23826 UP When in input mode (Receive Mode) or Send Mode:

23827 UP • If an error is encountered processing an input line beginning with a tilde ('~') character,
23828 (see Command Escapes in mailx (on page 606)), a diagnostic message shall be written to
23829 standard error, and the message being composed may be modified, but this condition shall
23830 not prevent the message from being sent.

23831 • Other errors shall prevent the sending of the message.

23832 UP When in command mode:

23833 • Default.

23834 **APPLICATION USAGE**

23835 Delivery of messages to remote systems requires the existence of communication paths to such
23836 systems. These need not exist.

23837 Input lines are limited to {LINE_MAX} bytes, but mailers between systems may impose more
23838 severe line-length restrictions. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not place any
23839 restrictions on the length of messages handled by *mailx*, and for delivery of local messages the
23840 only limitations should be the normal problems of available disk space for the target mail file.
23841 When sending messages to external machines, applications are advised to limit messages to less
23842 than 100 000 bytes because some mail gateways impose message-length restrictions.

23843 The format of the system mailbox is intentionally unspecified. Not all systems implement
23844 system mailboxes as flat files, particularly with the advent of multimedia mail messages. Some
23845 system mailboxes may be multiple files, others records in a database. The internal format of the
23846 messages themselves is specified with the historical format from Version 7, but only after the
23847 messages have been saved in some file other than the system mailbox. This was done so that
23848 many historical applications expecting text-file mailboxes are not broken.

23849 Some new formats for messages can be expected in the future, probably including binary data,
23850 bit maps, and various multimedia objects. As described here, *mailx* is not prohibited from
23851 handling such messages, but it must store them as text files in secondary mailboxes (unless some
23852 extension, such as a variable or command line option, is used to change the stored format). Its
23853 method of doing so is implementation-defined and might include translating the data into text
23854 file-compatible or readable form or omitting certain portions of the message from the stored
23855 output.

The **discard** and **ignore** commands are not inverses of the **retain** command. The **retain** command discards all header-fields except those explicitly retained. The **discard** command keeps all header-fields except those explicitly discarded. If headers exist on the retained header list, **discard** and **ignore** commands are ignored.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The standard developers felt strongly that a method for applications to send messages to specific users was necessary. The obvious example is a batch utility, running non-interactively, that wishes to communicate errors or results to a user. However, the actual format, delivery mechanism, and method of reading the message are clearly beyond the scope of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The intent of this command is to provide a simple, portable interface for sending messages non-interactively. It merely defines a "front-end" to the historical mail system. It is suggested that implementations explicitly denote the sender and recipient in the body of the delivered message. Further specification of formats for either the message envelope or the message itself were deliberately not made, as the industry is in the midst of changing from the current standards to a more internationalized standard and it is probably incorrect, at this time, to require either one.

Implementations are encouraged to conform to the various delivery mechanisms described in the CCITT X.400 standards or to the equivalent Internet standards, described in Internet Request for Comment (RFC) documents RFC 819, RFC 822, RFC 920, RFC 921, and RFC 1123.

Many historical systems modified each body line that started with **From** by prefixing the `'F'` with `'>'`. It is unnecessary, but allowed, to do that when the string does not follow a blank line because it cannot be confused with the next header.

The **edit** and **visual** commands merely edit the specified messages in a temporary file. They do not modify the contents of those messages in the mailbox; such a capability could be added as an extension, such as by using different command names.

The restriction on a subject line being {LINE_MAX}–10 bytes is based on the historical format that consumes 10 bytes for **Subject:** and the trailing <newline>. Many historical mailers that a message may encounter on other systems are not able to handle lines that long, however.

Like the utilities *logger* and *lp*, *mailx* admittedly is difficult to test. This was not deemed sufficient justification to exclude this utility from this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. It is also arguable that it is, in fact, testable, but that the tests themselves are not portable.

When *mailx* is being used by an application that wishes to receive the results as if none of the User Portability Utilities option features were supported, the *DEAD* environment variable must be set to **/dev/null**. Otherwise, it may be subject to the file creations described in *mailx* ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS. Similarly, if the *MAILRC* environment variable is not set to **/dev/null**, historical versions of *mailx* and *Mail* read initialization commands from a file before processing begins. Since the initialization that a user specifies could alter the contents of messages an application is trying to send, such applications must set *MAILRC* to **/dev/null**.

The description of *LC_TIME* uses "may affect" because many historical implementations do not or cannot manipulate the date and time strings in the incoming mail headers. Some headers found in incoming mail do not have enough information to determine the timezone in which the mail originated, and, therefore, *mailx* cannot convert the date and time strings into the internal form that then is parsed by routines like *strftime*( ) that can take *LC_TIME* settings into account. Changing all these times to a user-specified format is allowed, but not required.

The paginator selected when *PAGER* is null or unset is partially unspecified to allow the System V historical practice of using *pg* as the default. Bypassing the pagination function, such as by declaring that *cat* is the paginator, would not meet with the intended meaning of this

description. However, any "portable user" would have to set *PAGER* explicitly to get his or her preferred paginator on all systems. The paginator choice was made partially unspecified, unlike the *VISUAL* editor choice (mandated to be *vi*) because most historical pagers follow a common theme of user input, whereas editors differ dramatically.

Options to specify addresses as **cc** (carbon copy) or **bcc** (blind carbon copy) were considered to be format details and were omitted.

A zero exit status implies that all messages were *sent*, but it gives no assurances that any of them were actually *delivered*. The reliability of the delivery mechanism is unspecified and is an appropriate marketing distinction between systems.

In order to conform to the Utility Syntax Guidelines, a solution was required to the optional *file* option-argument to **–f**. By making *file* an operand, the guidelines are satisfied and users remain portable. However, it does force implementations to support usage such as:

```
mailx –fin mymail.box
```

The **no** *name* method of unsetting variables is not present in all historical systems, but it is in System V and provides a logical set of commands corresponding to the format of the display of options from the *mailx set* command without arguments.

The **ask** and **asksub** variables are the names selected by BSD and System V, respectively, for the same feature. They are synonyms in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The *mailx echo* command was not documented in the BSD version and has been omitted here because it is not obviously useful for interactive users.

The default prompt on the System V *mailx* is a question mark, on BSD *Mail* an ampersand. Since this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x chose the *mailx* name, it kept the System V default, assuming that BSD users would not have difficulty with this minor incompatibility (that they can override).

The meanings of **r** and **R** are reversed between System V *mailx* and SunOS *Mail*. Once again, since this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x chose the *mailx* name, it kept the System V default, but allows the SunOS user to achieve the desired results using **flipr**, an internal variable in System V *mailx*, although it has not been documented in the SVID.

The **indentprefix** variable, the **retain** and **unalias** commands, and the **~F** and **~M** command escapes were adopted from 4.3 BSD *Mail*.

The **version** command was not included because no sufficiently general specification of the version information could be devised that would still be useful to a portable user. This command name should be used by suppliers who wish to provide version information about the *mailx* command.

The "implementation-specific (unspecified) system start-up file" hThe

23952 followed by **next** (or the default command) would skip the message for which the user had
23953 searched.

23954 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

23955 None.

23956 **SEE ALSO**

23957 Chapter 2 (on page 29), *ed*, *ls*, *more*, *vi*

23958 **CHANGE HISTORY**

23959 First released in Issue 2.

23960 **Issue 5**

23961 The description of the *EDITOR* environment variable is changed to indicate that *ed* is the default
23962 editor if this variable is not set. In previous issues, this default was not stated explicitly at this
23963 point but was implied further down in the text.

23964 The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

23965 **Issue 6**

23966 The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the
23967 Single UNIX Specification:

23968 • The **–F** option is added.

23969 • The **allnet**, **debug**, and **sendwait** internal variables are added.

23970 • The **C**, **ec**, **fo**, **F**, and **S** *mailx* commands are added.

23971 In the DESCRIPTION and ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES sections, text stating "*HOME*
23972 directory" is replaced by "directory referred to by the *HOME* environment variable".

23973 The *mailx* utility is aligned with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard, which includes various
23974 clarifications to resolve IEEE PASC Interpretations submitted for the ISO POSIX-2: 1993
23975 standard. In particular, the changes here address IEEE PASC Interpretations 1003.2 #10, #11,
23976 #103, #106, #108, #114, #115, #122, and #129.

23977 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

23978 The *TZ* entry is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

23979 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/32 is applied, applying a change to the
23980 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION, raised by IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #122, which was
23981 overlooked in the first version of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

23982 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/17 is applied, updating the EXTENDED
23983 DESCRIPTION (Internal Variables in *mailx*). The system start-up file is changed from
23984 "implementation-defined" to "unspecified" for consistency with other text in the EXTENDED
23985 DESCRIPTION.

23986 **Issue 7**

23987 SD5-XCU-ERN-69 is applied.

23988 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #089 is applied, clarifying the effect of the *LC_TIME*
23989 environment variable.

23990 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #090 is applied, updating the description of the **next**
23991 command.

23992 Shading to indicate support for the User Portability Utilities option is added.

23993 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

make — maintain, update, and regenerate groups of programs (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

SD
```
make [–einpqrst] [–f makefile]... [–k|–S] [macro=value]...
    [target_name...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *make* utility shall update files that are derived from other files. A typical case is one where object files are derived from the corresponding source files. The *make* utility examines time relationships and shall update those derived files (called targets) that have modified times earlier than the modified times of the files (called prerequisites) from which they are derived. A description file (makefile) contains a description of the relationships between files, and the commands that need to be executed to update the targets to reflect changes in their prerequisites. Each specification, or rule, shall consist of a target, optional prerequisites, and optional commands to be executed when a prerequisite is newer than the target. There are two types of rule:

1. *Inference rules*, which have one target name with at least one period (`'.'`) and no slash (`'/'`)
2. *Target rules*, which can have more than one target name

In addition, *make* shall have a collection of built-in macros and inference rules that infer prerequisite relationships to simplify maintenance of programs.

To receive exactly the behavior described in this section, the user shall ensure that a portable makefile shall:

- Include the special target **.POSIX**
- Omit any special target reserved for implementations (a leading period followed by uppercase letters) that has not been specified by this section

The behavior of *make* is unspecified if either or both of these conditions are not met.

OPTIONS

The *make* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for Guideline 9.

The following options shall be supported:

–e Cause environment variables, including those with null values, to override macro assignments within makefiles.

–f *makefile* Specify a different makefile. The argument *makefile* is a pathname of a description file, which is also referred to as the *makefile*. A pathname of `'–'` shall denote the standard input. There can be multiple instances of this option, and they shall be processed in the order specified. The effect of specifying the same option-argument more than once is unspecified.

–i Ignore error codes returned by invoked commands. This mode is the same as if the special target **.IGNORE** were specified without prerequisites.

–k Continue to update other targets that do not depend on the current target if a non-ignored error occurs while executing the commands to bring a target up-to-date.

24035 **–n** Write commands that would be executed on standard output, but do not execute
24036 them. However, lines with a plus sign ('+') prefix shall be executed. In this mode,
24037 lines with an at sign ('@') character prefix shall be written to standard output.

24038 **–p** Write to standard output the complete set of macro definitions and target
24039 descriptions. The output format is unspecified.

24040 **–q** Return a zero exit value if the target file is up-to-date; otherwise, return an exit
24041 value of 1. Targets shall not be updated if this option is specified. However, a
24042 makefile command line (associated with the targets) with a plus sign ('+') prefix
24043 shall be executed.

24044 **–r** Clear the suffix list and do not use the built-in rules.

24045 **–S** Terminate *make* if an error occurs while executing the commands to bring a target
24046 up-to-date. This shall be the default and the opposite of **–k**.

24047 **–s** Do not write makefile command lines or touch messages (see **–t**) to standard
24048 output before executing. This mode shall be the same as if the special target
24049 **.SILENT** were specified without prerequisites.

24050 **–t** Update the modification time of each target as though a *touch target* had been
24051 executed. Targets that have prerequisites but no commands (see Target Rules (on
24052 page 616)), or that are already up-to-date, shall not be touched in this manner.
24053 Write messages to standard output for each target file indicating the name of the
24054 file and that it was touched. Normally, the *makefile* command lines associated with
24055 each target are not executed. However, a command line with a plus sign ('+')
24056 prefix shall be executed.

24057 Any options specified in the *MAKEFLAGS* environment variable shall be evaluated before any
24058 options specified on the *make* utility command line. If the **–k** and **–S** options are both specified
24059 on the *make* utility command line or by the *MAKEFLAGS* environment variable, the last option
24060 specified shall take precedence. If the **–f** or **–p** options appear in the *MAKEFLAGS* environment
24061 variable, the result is undefined.

24062 **OPERANDS**

24063 The following operands shall be supported:

24064 *target_name* Target names, as defined in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section. If no target is
24065 specified, while *make* is processing the makefiles, the first target that *make*
24066 encounters that is not a special target or an inference rule shall be used.

24067 *macro=value* Macro definitions, as defined in Macros (on page 618).

24068 If the *target_name* and *macro=value* operands are intermixed on the *make* utility command line,
24069 the results are unspecified.

24070 **STDIN**

24071 The standard input shall be used only if the *makefile* option-argument is '–'. See the INPUT
24072 FILES section.

24073 **INPUT FILES**

24074 The input file, otherwise known as the makefile, is a text file containing rules, macro definitions,
24075 and comments. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

24076 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

24077 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *make*:

24078 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
24079 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
24080 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
24081 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

MAKEFLAGS
This variable shall be interpreted as a character string representing a series of option characters to be used as the default options. The implementation shall accept both of the following formats (but need not accept them when intermixed):

- The characters are option letters without the leading hyphens or <blank> separation used on a *make* utility command line.
- The characters are formatted in a manner similar to a portion of the *make* utility command line: options are preceded by hyphens and <blank>-separated as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines. The *macro=value* macro definition operands can also be included. The difference between the contents of *MAKEFLAGS* and the *make* utility command line is that the contents of the variable shall not be subjected to the word expansions (see Section 2.6 (on page 37)) associated with parsing the command line values.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

XSI *PROJECTDIR*
Provide a directory to be used to search for SCCS files not found in the current directory. In all of the following cases, the search for SCCS files is made in the directory **SCCS** in the identified directory. If the value of *PROJECTDIR* begins with a slash, it shall be considered an absolute pathname; otherwise, the value of *PROJECTDIR* is treated as a user name and that user's initial working directory shall be examined for a subdirectory **src** or **source**. If such a directory is found, it shall be used. Otherwise, the value is used as a relative pathname.

If *PROJECTDIR* is not set or has a null value, the search for SCCS files shall be made in the directory **SCCS** in the current directory.

The setting of *PROJECTDIR* affects all files listed in the remainder of this utility description for files with a component named **SCCS**.

The value of the *SHELL* environment variable shall not be used as a macro and shall not be modified by defining the **SHELL** macro in a makefile or on the command line. All other environment variables, including those with null values, shall be used as macros, as defined in Macros (on page 618).

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

If not already ignored, *make* shall trap SIGHUP, SIGTERM, SIGINT, and SIGQUIT and remove the current target unless the target is a directory or the target is a prerequisite of the special target **.PRECIOUS** or unless one of the **–n**, **–p**, or **–q** options was specified. Any targets removed in this manner shall be reported in diagnostic messages of unspecified format, written to standard error. After this cleanup process, if any, *make* shall take the standard action for all other signals.

STDOUT

The *make* utility shall write all commands to be executed to standard output unless the **–s** option was specified, the command is prefixed with an at sign, or the special target **.SILENT** has either the current target as a prerequisite or has no prerequisites. If *make* is invoked without any work needing to be done, it shall write a message to standard output indicating that no action was taken. If the **–t** option is present and a file is touched, *make* shall write to standard output a message of unspecified format indicating that the file was touched, including the filename of the file.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

Files can be created when the **–t** option is present. Additional files can also be created by the utilities invoked by *make*.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

The *make* utility attempts to perform the actions required to ensure that the specified targets are up-to-date. A target is considered out-of-date if it is older than any of its prerequisites or if it does not exist. The *make* utility shall treat all prerequisites as targets themselves and recursively ensure that they are up-to-date, processing them in the order in which they appear in the rule. The *make* utility shall use the modification times of files to determine whether the corresponding targets are out-of-date.

After *make* has ensured that all of the prerequisites of a target are up-to-date and if the target is out-of-date, the commands associated with the target entry shall be executed. If there are no commands listed for the target, the target shall be treated as up-to-date.

Makefile Syntax

A makefile can contain rules, macro definitions (see Macros (on page 618)), and comments. There are two kinds of rules: *inference rules* and *target rules*. The *make* utility shall contain a set of built-in inference rules. If the **–r** option is present, the built-in rules shall not be used and the suffix list shall be cleared. Additional rules of both types can be specified in a makefile. If a rule is defined more than once, the value of the rule shall be that of the last one specified. Macros can also be defined more than once, and the value of the macro is specified in Macros (on page 618). Comments start with a number sign (`'#'`) and continue until an unescaped <newline> is reached.

By default, the following files shall be tried in sequence: **./makefile** and **./Makefile**. If neither
XSI **./makefile** or **./Makefile** are found, other implementation-defined files may also be tried. On XSI-conformant systems, the additional files **./s.makefile**, **SCCS/s.makefile**, **./s.Makefile**, and **SCCS/s.Makefile** shall also be tried.

The **–f** option shall direct *make* to ignore any of these default files and use the specified argument as a makefile instead. If the `'–'` argument is specified, standard input shall be used.

The term *makefile* is used to refer to any rules provided by the user, whether in **./makefile** or its variants, or specified by the **–f** option.

The rules in makefiles shall consist of the following types of lines: target rules, including special targets (see Target Rules (on page 616)), inference rules (see Inference Rules (on page 619)), macro definitions (see Macros (on page 618)), empty lines, and comments.

When an escaped <newline> (one preceded by a backslash) is found anywhere in the makefile except in a command line, it shall be replaced, along with any leading white space on the following line, with a single <space>. When an escaped <newline> is found in a command line in a makefile, the command line shall contain the backslash, the <newline>, and the next line, except that the first character of the next line shall not be included if it is a <tab>.

Makefile Execution

Makefile command lines shall be processed one at a time by writing the makefile command line to the standard output (unless one of the conditions listed under '@' suppresses the writing) and executing the command(s) in the line. A <tab> may precede the command to standard output. Command execution shall be as if the makefile command line were the argument to the *system*() function. The environment for the command being executed shall contain all of the variables in the environment of *make*.

By default, when *make* receives a non-zero status from the execution of a command, it shall terminate with an error message to standard error.

Makefile command lines can have one or more of the following prefixes: a hyphen ('–'), an at sign ('@'), or a plus sign ('+'). These shall modify the way in which *make* processes the command. When a command is written to standard output, the prefix shall not be included in the output.

– If the command prefix contains a hyphen, or the **–i** option is present, or the special target **.IGNORE** has either the current target as a prerequisite or has no prerequisites, any error found while executing the command shall be ignored.

@ If the command prefix contains an at sign and the *make* utility command line **–n** option is not specified, or the **–s** option is present, or the special target **.SILENT** has either the current target as a prerequisite or has no prerequisites, the command shall not be written to standard output before it is executed.

\+ If the command prefix contains a plus sign, this indicates a makefile command line that shall be executed even if **–n**, **–q**, or **–t** is specified.

Target Rules

Target rules are formatted as follows:

```
target [target...]: [prerequisite...][;command]
[<tab>command
<tab>command
...]

line that does not begin with <tab>
```

Target entries are specified by a <blank>-separated, non-null list of targets, then a colon, then a <blank>-separated, possibly empty list of prerequisites. Text following a semicolon, if any, and all following lines that begin with a <tab>, are makefile command lines to be executed to update the target. The first non-empty line that does not begin with a <tab> or '#' shall begin a new entry. An empty or blank line, or a line beginning with '#', may begin a new entry.

Applications shall select target names from the set of characters consisting solely of periods, underscores, digits, and alphabetics from the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set). Implementations may allow other characters in target names as extensions. The interpretation of targets containing the characters '%' and '"' is implementation-defined.

A target that has prerequisites, but does not have any commands, can be used to add to the prerequisite list for that target. Only one target rule for any given target can contain commands.

Lines that begin with one of the following are called *special targets* and control the operation of *make*:

.DEFAULT If the makefile uses this special target, the application shall ensure that it is specified with commands, but without prerequisites. The commands shall be used by *make* if there are no other rules available to build a target.

.IGNORE Prerequisites of this special target are targets themselves; this shall cause errors from commands associated with them to be ignored in the same manner as specified by the **–i** option. Subsequent occurrences of **.IGNORE** shall add to the list of targets ignoring command errors. If no prerequisites are specified, *make* shall behave as if the **–i** option had been specified and errors from all commands associated with all targets shall be ignored.

.POSIX The application shall ensure that this special target is specified without prerequisites or commands. If it appears as the first non-comment line in the makefile, *make* shall process the makefile as specified by this section; otherwise, the behavior of *make* is unspecified.

.PRECIOUS Prerequisites of this special target shall not be removed if *make* receives one of the asynchronous events explicitly described in the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section. Subsequent occurrences of **.PRECIOUS** shall add to the list of precious files. If no prerequisites are specified, all targets in the makefile shall be treated as if specified with **.PRECIOUS**.

XSI **.SCCS_GET** The application shall ensure that this special target is specified without prerequisites. If this special target is included in a makefile, the commands specified with this target shall replace the default commands associated with this special target (see Default Rules (on page 622)). The commands specified with this target are used to get all SCCS files that are not found in the current directory.

When source files are named in a dependency list, *make* shall treat them just like any other target. Because the source file is presumed to be present in the directory, there is no need to add an entry for it to the makefile. When a target has no dependencies, but is present in the directory, *make* shall assume that that file is up-to-date. If, however, an SCCS file named **SCCS/s.***source_file* is found for a target *source_file*, *make* compares the timestamp of the target file with that of the **SCCS/s.source_file** to ensure the target is up-to-date. If the target is missing, or if the SCCS file is newer, *make* shall automatically issue the commands specified for the **.SCCS_GET** special target to retrieve the most recent version. However, if the target is writable by anyone, *make* shall not retrieve a new version.

.SILENT Prerequisites of this special target are targets themselves; this shall cause commands associated with them not to be written to the standard output before they are executed. Subsequent occurrences of **.SILENT** shall add to the list of targets with silent commands. If no prerequisites are specified, *make* shall behave as if the **–s** option had been specified and no commands or touch messages associated with any target shall be written to standard output.

.SUFFIXES Prerequisites of **.SUFFIXES** shall be appended to the list of known suffixes and are used in conjunction with the inference rules (see Inference Rules (on page 619)). If **.SUFFIXES** does not have any prerequisites, the list of known suffixes shall be cleared.

The special targets **.IGNORE**, **.POSIX**, **.PRECIOUS**, **.SILENT**, and **.SUFFIXES** shall be specified without commands.

Targets with names consisting of a leading period followed by the uppercase letters `"POSIX"` and then any other characters are reserved for future standardization. Targets with names consisting of a leading period followed by one or more uppercase letters are reserved for implementation extensions.

24268 **Macros**

24269 Macro definitions are in the form:

24270 *string1* = [*string2*]

24271 The macro named *string1* is defined as having the value of *string2*, where *string2* is defined as all
24272 characters, if any, after the equal sign, up to a comment character (`'#'`) or an unescaped
24273 <newline>. Any <blank>s immediately before or after the equal sign shall be ignored.

24274 Applications shall select macro names from the set of characters consisting solely of periods,
24275 underscores, digits, and alphabetics from the portable character set (see the Base Definitions
24276 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set). A macro name shall not
24277 contain an equals sign. Implementations may allow other characters in macro names as
24278 extensions.

24279 Macros can appear anywhere in the makefile. Macro expansions using the forms $(*string1*) or
24280 ${*string1*} shall be replaced by *string2*, as follows:

24281 - Macros in target lines shall be evaluated when the target line is read.
24282 - Macros in makefile command lines shall be evaluated when the command is executed.
24283 - Macros in the string before the equals sign in a macro definition shall be evaluated when
24284 the macro assignment is made.
24285 - Macros after the equals sign in a macro definition shall not be evaluated until the defined
24286 macro is used in a rule or command, or before the equals sign in a macro definition.

24287 The parentheses or braces are optional if *string1* is a single character. The macro $$ shall be
24288 replaced by the single character `'$'`. If *string1* in a macro expansion contains a macro
24289 expansion, the results are unspecified.

24290 Macro expansions using the forms $(*string1*[**:***subst1***=**[*subst2*]]) or ${*string1*[**:***subst1***=**[*subst2*]]}
24291 be used to replace all occurrences of *subst1* with *subst2* when the macro substitution is
24292 performed. The *subst1* to be replaced shall be recognized when it is a suffix at the end of a word
24293 in *string1* (where a *word*, in this context, is defined to be a string delimited by the beginning of
24294 the line, a <blank>, or a <newline>). If *string1* in a macro expansion contains a macro expansion,
24295 the results are unspecified.

24296 Macro expansions in *string1* of macro definition lines shall be evaluated when read. Macro
24297 expansions in *string2* of macro definition lines shall be performed when the macro identified by
24298 *string1* is expanded in a rule or command.

24299 Macro definitions shall be taken from the following sources, in the following logical order,
24300 before the makefile(s) are read.

24301 1. Macros specified on the *make* utility command line, in the order specified on the
24302 command line. It is unspecified whether the internal macros defined in Internal Macros
24303 are accepted from this source.
24304 2. Macros defined by the *MAKEFLAGS* environment variable, in the order specified in the
24305 environment variable. It is unspecified whether the internal macros defined in Internal
24306 Macros are accepted from this source.
24307 3. The contents of the environment, excluding the *MAKEFLAGS* and *SHELL* variables and
24308 including the variables with null values.
24309 4. Macros defined in the inference rules built into *make*.

24310 Macro definitions from these sources shall not override macro definitions from a lower-
24311 numbered source. Macro definitions from a single source (for example, the *make* utility
24312 command line, the *MAKEFLAGS* environment variable, or the other environment variables)

shall override previous macro definitions from the same source.

Macros defined in the makefile(s) shall override macro definitions that occur before them in the makefile(s) and macro definitions from source 4. If the **–e** option is not specified, macros defined in the makefile(s) shall override macro definitions from source 3. Macros defined in the makefile(s) shall not override macro definitions from source 1 or source 2.

Before the makefile(s) are read, all of the *make* utility command line options (except **–f** and **–p**) and *make* utility command line macro definitions (except any for the *MAKEFLAGS* macro), not already included in the *MAKEFLAGS* macro, shall be added to the *MAKEFLAGS* macro, quoted in an implementation-defined manner such that when *MAKEFLAGS* is read by another instance of the *make* command, the original macro's value is recovered. Other implementation-defined options and macros may also be added to the *MAKEFLAGS* macro. If this modifies the value of the *MAKEFLAGS* macro, or, if the *MAKEFLAGS* macro is modified at any subsequent time, the *MAKEFLAGS* environment variable shall be modified to match the new value of the *MAKEFLAGS* macro. The result of setting *MAKEFLAGS* in the Makefile is unspecified.

Before the makefile(s) are read, all of the *make* utility command line macro definitions (except the *MAKEFLAGS* macro or the *SHELL* macro) shall be added to the environment of *make*. Other implementation-defined variables may also be added to the environment of *make*.

The **SHELL** macro shall be treated specially. It shall be provided by *make* and set to the pathname of the shell command language interpreter (see *sh*). The *SHELL* environment variable shall not affect the value of the **SHELL** macro. If **SHELL** is defined in the makefile or is specified on the command line, it shall replace the original value of the **SHELL** macro, but shall not affect the *SHELL* environment variable. Other effects of defining **SHELL** in the makefile or on the command line are implementation-defined.

Inference Rules

Inference rules are formatted as follows:

```
target:
<tab>command
[<tab>command]
...

line that does not begin with <tab> or #
```

The application shall ensure that the *target* portion is a valid target name (see Target Rules (on page 616)) of the form **.s2** or **.s1.s2** (where **.s1** and **.s2** are suffixes that have been given as prerequisites of the **.SUFFIXES** special target and *s1* and *s2* do not contain any slashes or periods.) If there is only one period in the target, it is a single-suffix inference rule. Targets with two periods are double-suffix inference rules. Inference rules can have only one target before the colon.

The application shall ensure that the makefile does not specify prerequisites for inference rules; no characters other than white space shall follow the colon in the first line, except when creating the *empty rule*, described below. Prerequisites are inferred, as described below.

Inference rules can be redefined. A target that matches an existing inference rule shall overwrite the old inference rule. An empty rule can be created with a command consisting of simply a semicolon (that is, the rule still exists and is found during inference rule search, but since it is empty, execution has no effect). The empty rule can also be formatted as follows:

```
rule: ;
```

where zero or more <blank>s separate the colon and semicolon.

The *make* utility uses the suffixes of targets and their prerequisites to infer how a target can be made up-to-date. A list of inference rules defines the commands to be executed. By default, *make*

24360 contains a built-in set of inference rules. Additional rules can be specified in the makefile.

24361 The special target **.SUFFIXES** contains as its prerequisites a list of suffixes that shall be used by
24362 the inference rules. The order in which the suffixes are specified defines the order in which the
24363 inference rules for the suffixes are used. New suffixes shall be appended to the current list by
24364 specifying a **.SUFFIXES** special target in the makefile. A **.SUFFIXES** target with no prerequisites
24365 shall clear the list of suffixes. An empty **.SUFFIXES** target followed by a new **.SUFFIXES** list is
24366 required to change the order of the suffixes.

24367 Normally, the user would provide an inference rule for each suffix. The inference rule to update
24368 a target with a suffix **.s1** from a prerequisite with a suffix **.s2** is specified as a target **.s2.s1**. The
24369 internal macros provide the means to specify general inference rules (see Internal Macros (on
24370 page 620)).

24371 When no target rule is found to update a target, the inference rules shall be checked. The suffix
24372 of the target (**.s1**) to be built is compared to the list of suffixes specified by the **.SUFFIXES** special
24373 targets. If the **.s1** suffix is found in **.SUFFIXES**, the inference rules shall be searched in the order
24374 defined for the first **.s2.s1** rule whose prerequisite file (**$*.s2**) exists. If the target is out-of-date
24375 with respect to this prerequisite, the commands for that inference rule shall be executed.

24376 If the target to be built does not contain a suffix and there is no rule for the target, the single
24377 suffix inference rules shall be checked. The single-suffix inference rules define how to build a
24378 target if a file is found with a name that matches the target name with one of the single suffixes
24379 appended. A rule with one suffix **.s2** is the definition of how to build *target* from **target.s2**. The
24380 other suffix (**.s1**) is treated as null.

24381 XSI A tilde (**'~'**) in the above rules refers to an SCCS file in the current directory. Thus, the rule **.c~.o**
24382 would transform an SCCS C-language source file into an object file (**.o**). Because the **s.** of the
24383 SCCS files is a prefix, it is incompatible with *make*'s suffix point of view. Hence, the **'~'** is a way
24384 of changing any file reference into an SCCS file reference.

24385 **Libraries**

24386 If a target or prerequisite contains parentheses, it shall be treated as a member of an archive
24387 library. For the *lib*(*member***.o**) expression *lib* refers to the name of the archive library and *member***.o**
24388 to the member name. The application shall ensure that the member is an object file with the **.o**
24389 suffix. The modification time of the expression is the modification time for the member as kept
24390 in the archive library; see *ar*. The **.a** suffix shall refer to an archive library. The **.s2.a** rule shall be
24391 used to update a member in the library from a file with a suffix **.s2**.

24392 **Internal Macros**

24393 The *make* utility shall maintain five internal macros that can be used in target and inference rules.
24394 In order to clearly define the meaning of these macros, some clarification of the terms *target rule*,
24395 *inference rule*, *target*, and *prerequisite* is necessary.

24396 Target rules are specified by the user in a makefile for a particular target. Inference rules are
24397 user-specified or *make*-specified rules for a particular class of target name. Explicit prerequisites
24398 are those prerequisites specified in a makefile on target lines. Implicit prerequisites are those
24399 prerequisites that are generated when inference rules are used. Inference rules are applied to
24400 implicit prerequisites or to explicit prerequisites that do not have target rules defined for them in
24401 the makefile. Target rules are applied to targets specified in the makefile.

24402 Before any target in the makefile is updated, each of its prerequisites (both explicit and implicit)
24403 shall be updated. This shall be accomplished by recursively processing each prerequisite. Upon
24404 recursion, each prerequisite shall become a target itself. Its prerequisites in turn shall be
24405 processed recursively until a target is found that has no prerequisites, at which point the
24406 recursion stops. The recursion shall then back up, updating each target as it goes.

In the definitions that follow, the word *target* refers to one of:

- A target specified in the makefile
- An explicit prerequisite specified in the makefile that becomes the target when *make* processes it during recursion
- An implicit prerequisite that becomes a target when *make* processes it during recursion

In the definitions that follow, the word *prerequisite* refers to one of the following:

- An explicit prerequisite specified in the makefile for a particular target
- An implicit prerequisite generated as a result of locating an appropriate inference rule and corresponding file that matches the suffix of the target

The five internal macros are:

$@ The $@ shall evaluate to the full target name of the current target, or the archive filename part of a library archive target. It shall be evaluated for both target and inference rules.

For example, in the **.c.a** inference rule, $@ represents the out-of-date **.a** file to be built. Similarly, in a makefile target rule to build **lib.a** from **file.c**, $@ represents the out-of-date **lib.a**.

$% The $% macro shall be evaluated only when the current target is an archive library member of the form *libname*(*member***.o**). In these cases, $@ shall evaluate to *libname* and $% shall evaluate to *member***.o**. The $% macro shall be evaluated for both target and inference rules.

For example, in a makefile target rule to build **lib.a**(**file.o**), $% represents **file.o**, as opposed to $@, which represents **lib.a**.

$? The $? macro shall evaluate to the list of prerequisites that are newer than the current target. It shall be evaluated for both target and inference rules.

For example, in a makefile target rule to build *prog* from **file1.o**, **file2.o**, and **file3.o**, and where *prog* is not out-of-date with respect to **file1.o**, but is out-of-date with respect to **file2.o** and **file3.o**, $? represents **file2.o** and **file3.o**.

$< In an inference rule, the $< macro shall evaluate to the filename whose existence allowed the inference rule to be chosen for the target. In the **.DEFAULT** rule, the $< macro shall evaluate to the current target name. The meaning of the $< macro shall be otherwise unspecified.

For example, in the **.c.a** inference rule, $< represents the prerequisite **.c** file.

$* The $* macro shall evaluate to the current target name with its suffix deleted. It shall be evaluated at least for inference rules.

For example, in the **.c.a** inference rule, $*.o represents the out-of-date **.o** file that corresponds to the prerequisite **.c** file.

Each of the internal macros has an alternative form. When an uppercase `'D'` or `'F'` is appended to any of the macros, the meaning shall be changed to the *directory part* for `'D'` and *filename part* for `'F'`. The directory part is the path prefix of the file without a trailing slash; for the current directory, the directory part is `'.'`. When the $? macro contains more than one prerequisite filename, the $(?D) and $(?F) (or ${?D} and ${?F}) macros expand to a list of directory name parts and filename parts respectively.

For the target *lib*(*member***.o**) and the **s2.a** rule, the internal macros shall be defined as:

24450 $< *member*.**s2**

24451 $* *member*

24452 $@ *lib*

24453 $? *member*.**s2**

24454 $% *member*.**o**

24455 **Default Rules**

24456 The default rules for *make* shall achieve results that are the same as if the following were used.
24457 Implementations that do not support the C-Language Development Utilities option may omit
24458 **CC**, **CFLAGS**, **YACC**, **YFLAGS**, **LEX**, **LFLAGS**, **LDFLAGS**, and the **.c**, **.y**, and **.l** inference rules.
24459 Implementations that do not support FORTRAN may omit **FC**, **FFLAGS**, and the **.f** inference
24460 rules. Implementations may provide additional macros and rules.

24461 *SPECIAL TARGETS*

24462 XSI
```
.SCCS_GET: sccs $(SCCSFLAGS) get $(SCCSGETFLAGS) $@
```

24463 XSI
```
.SUFFIXES: .o .c .y .l .a .sh .f .c~ .y~ .l~ .sh~ .f~
```

24464 *MACROS*

```
MAKE=make
AR=ar
ARFLAGS=-rv
YACC=yacc
YFLAGS=
LEX=lex
LFLAGS=
LDFLAGS=
CC=c99
CFLAGS=-O
FC=fort77
FFLAGS=-O 1
```
24477 XSI
```
GET=get
GFLAGS=
SCCSFLAGS=
SCCSGETFLAGS=-s
```

24481 *SINGLE SUFFIX RULES*

```
.c:
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) $(LDFLAGS) -o $@ $<
.f:
    $(FC) $(FFLAGS) $(LDFLAGS) -o $@ $<
.sh:
    cp $< $@
    chmod a+x $@
```
24489 XSI
```
.c~:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.c
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) $(LDFLAGS) -o $@ $*.c
.f~:
```



```
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.f
    $(FC) $(FFLAGS) $(LDFLAGS) -o $@ $*.f

.sh~:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.sh
    cp $*.sh $@
    chmod a+x $@
```

DOUBLE SUFFIX RULES

```
.c.o:
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c $<

.f.o:
    $(FC) $(FFLAGS) -c $<

.y.o:
    $(YACC) $(YFLAGS) $<
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c y.tab.c
    rm -f y.tab.c
    mv y.tab.o $@

.l.o:
    $(LEX) $(LFLAGS) $<
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c lex.yy.c
    rm -f lex.yy.c
    mv lex.yy.o $@

.y.c:
    $(YACC) $(YFLAGS) $<
    mv y.tab.c $@

.l.c:
    $(LEX) $(LFLAGS) $<
    mv lex.yy.c $@
```

XSI

```
.c~.o:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.c
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c $*.c

.f~.o:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.f
    $(FC) $(FFLAGS) -c $*.f

.y~.o:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.y
    $(YACC) $(YFLAGS) $*.y
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c y.tab.c
    rm -f y.tab.c
    mv y.tab.o $@

.l~.o:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.l
    $(LEX) $(LFLAGS) $*.l
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c lex.yy.c
    rm -f lex.yy.c
    mv lex.yy.o $@

.y~.c:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.y
```



```
    $(YACC) $(YFLAGS) $*.y
    mv y.tab.c $@

.l~.c:
    $(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.l
    $(LEX) $(LFLAGS) $*.l
    mv lex.yy.c $@


.c.a:
    $(CC) -c $(CFLAGS) $<
    $(AR) $(ARFLAGS) $@ $*.o
    rm -f $*.o

.f.a:
    $(FC) -c $(FFLAGS) $<
    $(AR) $(ARFLAGS) $@ $*.o
    rm -f $*.o
```

EXIT STATUS

When the **-q** option is specified, the *make* utility shall exit with one of the following values:

0 Successful completion.

1 The target was not up-to-date.

>1 An error occurred.

When the **-q** option is not specified, the *make* utility shall exit with one of the following values:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

If there is a source file (such as **./source.c**) and there are two SCCS files corresponding to it (**./s.source.c** and **./SCCS/s.source.c**), on XSI-conformant systems *make* uses the SCCS file in the current directory. However, users are advised to use the underlying SCCS utilities (*admin*, *delta*, *get*, and so on) or the *sccs* utility for all source files in a given directory. If both forms are used for a given source file, future developers are very likely to be confused.

It is incumbent upon portable makefiles to specify the **.POSIX** special target in order to guarantee that they are not affected by local extensions.

The **-k** and **-S** options are both present so that the relationship between the command line, the *MAKEFLAGS* variable, and the makefile can be controlled precisely. If the **k** flag is passed in *MAKEFLAGS* and a command is of the form:

```
$(MAKE) -S foo
```

then the default behavior is restored for the child *make*.

When the **-n** option is specified, it is always added to *MAKEFLAGS*. This allows a recursive *make* **-n** *target* to be used to see all of the action that would be taken to update *target*.

Because of widespread historical practice, interpreting a `'#'` number sign inside a variable as the start of a comment has the unfortunate side effect of making it impossible to place a number sign in a variable, thus forbidding something like:

```
CFLAGS = "-D COMMENT_CHAR='#'"
```

Many historical *make* utilities stop chaining together inference rules when an intermediate target is nonexistent. For example, it might be possible for a *make* to determine that both **.y.c** and **.c.o** could be used to convert a **.y** to a **.o**. Instead, in this case, *make* requires the use of a **.y.o** rule.

The best way to provide portable makefiles is to include all of the rules needed in the makefile itself. The rules provided use only features provided by other parts of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The default rules include rules for optional commands in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Only rules pertaining to commands that are provided are needed in an implementation's default set.

Macros used within other macros are evaluated when the new macro is used rather than when the new macro is defined. Therefore:

```
MACRO = value1
NEW   = $(MACRO)
MACRO = value2

target:
    echo $(NEW)
```

would produce *value2* and not *value1* since **NEW** was not expanded until it was needed in the *echo* command line.

Some historical applications have been known to intermix *target_name* and *macro=name* operands on the command line, expecting that all of the macros are processed before any of the targets are dealt with. Conforming applications do not do this, although some backwards-compatibility support may be included in some implementations.

The following characters in filenames may give trouble: `'='`, `':'`, `'''`, `'''`, and `'@'`. For inference rules, the description of $< and $? seem similar. However, an example shows the minor difference. In a makefile containing:

```
foo.o: foo.h
```

if **foo.h** is newer than **foo.o**, yet **foo.c** is older than **foo.o**, the built-in rule to make **foo.o** from **foo.c** is used, with $< equal to **foo.c** and $? equal to **foo.h**. If **foo.c** is also newer than **foo.o**, $< is equal to **foo.c** and $? is equal to **foo.h foo.c**.

EXAMPLES

1. The following command:

   ```
   make
   ```

   makes the first target found in the makefile.

2. The following command:

   ```
   make junk
   ```

   makes the target **junk**.

3. The following makefile says that **pgm** depends on two files, **a.o** and **b.o**, and that they in turn depend on their corresponding source files (**a.c** and **b.c**), and a common file **incl.h**:

   ```
   pgm: a.o b.o
       c99 a.o b.o –o pgm
   a.o: incl.h a.c
       c99 –c a.c
   b.o: incl.h b.c
       c99 –c b.c
   ```


4. An example for making optimized **.o** files from **.c** files is:

```
.c.o:
    c99 –c –O $*.c
```

or:

```
.c.o:
    c99 –c –O $<
```

5. The most common use of the archive interface follows. Here, it is assumed that the source files are all C-language source:

```
lib: lib(file1.o) lib(file2.o) lib(file3.o)
    @echo lib is now up-to-date
```

The **.c.a** rule is used to make **file1.o**, **file2.o**, and **file3.o** and insert them into **lib**.

The treatment of escaped <newline>s throughout the makefile is historical practice. For example, the inference rule:

```
.c.o\
:
```

works, and the macro:

```
f=  bar baz\
    biz
a:
    echo ==$f==
```

echoes `"==bar baz biz=="`.

If $? were:

```
/usr/include/stdio.h /usr/include/unistd.h foo.h
```

then $(?D) would be:

```
/usr/include /usr/include .
```

and $(?F) would be:

```
stdio.h unistd.h foo.h
```

6. The contents of the built-in rules can be viewed by running:

```
make –p –f /dev/null 2>/dev/null
```

RATIONALE

The *make* utility described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is intended to provide the means for changing portable source code into executables that can be run on an IEEE Std 1003.1-200x-conforming system. It reflects the most common features present in System V and BSD *make*s.

Historically, the *make* utility has been an especially fertile ground for vendor and research organization-specific syntax modifications and extensions. Examples include:

- Syntax supporting parallel execution (such as from various multi-processor vendors, GNU, and others)
- Additional “operators” separating targets and their prerequisites (System V, BSD, and others)

- Specifying that command lines containing the strings "${MAKE}" and "$(MAKE)" are executed when the –**n** option is specified (GNU and System V)
- Modifications of the meaning of internal macros when referencing libraries (BSD and others)
- Using a single instance of the shell for all of the command lines of the target (BSD and others)
- Allowing spaces as well as tabs to delimit command lines (BSD)
- Adding C preprocessor-style "include" and "ifdef" constructs (System V, GNU, BSD, and others)
- Remote execution of command lines (Sprite and others)
- Specifying additional special targets (BSD, System V, and most others)

Additionally, many vendors and research organizations have rethought the basic concepts of *make*, creating vastly extended, as well as completely new, syntaxes. Each of these versions of *make* fulfills the needs of a different community of users; it is unreasonable for this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to require behavior that would be incompatible (and probably inferior) to historical practice for such a community.

In similar circumstances, when the industry has enough sufficiently incompatible formats as to make them irreconcilable, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x has followed one or both of two courses of action. Commands have been renamed (*cksum*, *echo*, and *pax*) and/or command line options have been provided to select the desired behavior (*grep*, *od*, and *pax*).

Because the syntax specified for the *make* utility is, by and large, a subset of the syntaxes accepted by almost all versions of *make*, it was decided that it would be counter-productive to change the name. And since the makefile itself is a basic unit of portability, it would not be completely effective to reserve a new option letter, such as *make* –**P**, to achieve the portable behavior. Therefore, the special target **.POSIX** was added to the makefile, allowing users to specify "standard" behavior. This special target does not preclude extensions in the *make* utility, nor does it preclude such extensions being used by the makefile specifying the target; it does, however, preclude any extensions from being applied that could alter the behavior of previously valid syntax; such extensions must be controlled via command line options or new special targets. It is incumbent upon portable makefiles to specify the **.POSIX** special target in order to guarantee that they are not affected by local extensions.

The portable version of *make* described in this reference page is not intended to be the state-of-the-art software generation tool and, as such, some newer and more leading-edge features have not been included. An attempt has been made to describe the portable makefile in a manner that does not preclude such extensions as long as they do not disturb the portable behavior described here.

When the –**n** option is specified, it is always added to *MAKEFLAGS*. This allows a recursive *make* –**n** *target* to be used to see all of the action that would be taken to update *target*.

The definition of *MAKEFLAGS* allows both the System V letter string and the BSD command line formats. The two formats are sufficiently different to allow implementations to support both without ambiguity.

Early proposals stated that an "unquoted" number sign was treated as the start of a comment. The *make* utility does not pay any attention to quotes. A number sign starts a comment regardless of its surroundings.

The text about "other implementation-defined pathnames may also be tried" in addition to **./makefile** and **./Makefile** is to allow such extensions as **SCCS/s.Makefile** and other variations. It was made an implementation-defined requirement (as opposed to unspecified behavior) to

highlight surprising implementations that might select something unexpected like **/etc/Makefile**. XSI-conformant systems also try **./s.makefile**, **SCCS/s.makefile**, **./s.Makefile**, and **SCCS/s.Makefile**.

Early proposals contained the macro **NPROC** as a means of specifying that *make* should use *n* processes to do the work required. While this feature is a valuable extension for many systems, it is not common usage and could require other non-trivial extensions to makefile syntax. This extension is not required by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, but could be provided as a compatible extension. The macro **PARALLEL** is used by some historical systems with essentially the same meaning (but without using a name that is a common system limit value). It is suggested that implementors recognize the existing use of **NPROC** and/or **PARALLEL** as extensions to *make*.

The default rules are based on System V. The default **CC=** value is *c99* instead of *cc* because this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not standardize the utility named *cc*. Thus, every conforming application would be required to define **CC=***c99* to expect to run. There is no advantage conferred by the hope that the makefile might hit the "preferred" compiler because this cannot be guaranteed to work. Also, since the portable makescript can only use the *c99* options, no advantage is conferred in terms of what the script can do. It is a quality-of-implementation issue as to whether *c99* is as valuable as *cc*.

The **–d** option to *make* is frequently used to produce debugging information, but is too implementation-defined to add to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The **–p** option is not passed in *MAKEFLAGS* on most historical implementations and to change this would cause many implementations to break without sufficiently increased portability.

Commands that begin with a plus sign (`'+'`) are executed even if the **–n** option is present. Based on the GNU version of *make*, the behavior of **–n** when the plus-sign prefix is encountered has been extended to apply to **–q** and **–t** as well. However, the System V convention of forcing command execution with **–n** when the command line of a target contains either of the strings `"$(MAKE)"` or `"${MAKE}"` has not been adopted. This functionality appeared in early proposals, but the danger of this approach was pointed out with the following example of a portion of a makefile:

```
subdir:
    cd subdir; rm all_the_files; $(MAKE)
```

The loss of the System V behavior in this case is well-balanced by the safety afforded to other makefiles that were not aware of this situation. In any event, the command line plus-sign prefix can provide the desired functionality.

The double colon in the target rule format is supported in BSD systems to allow more than one target line containing the same target name to have commands associated with it. Since this is not functionality described in the SVID or XPG3 it has been allowed as an extension, but not mandated.

The default rules are provided with text specifying that the built-in rules shall be the same as if the listed set were used. The intent is that implementations should be able to use the rules without change, but will be allowed to alter them in ways that do not affect the primary behavior.

The best way to provide portable makefiles is to include all of the rules needed in the makefile itself. The rules provided use only features provided by other portions of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The default rules include rules for optional commands in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Only rules pertaining to commands that are provided are needed in the default set of an implementation.

One point of discussion was whether to drop the default rules list from this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. They provide convenience, but do not enhance portability of applications.

The prime benefit is in portability of users who wish to type *make command* and have the command build from a **command.c** file.

The historical *MAKESHELL* feature was omitted. In some implementations it is used to let a user override the shell to be used to run *make* commands. This was confusing; for a portable *make*, the shell should be chosen by the makefile writer or specified on the *make* command line and not by a user running *make*.

The *make* utilities in most historical implementations process the prerequisites of a target in left-to-right order, and the makefile format requires this. It supports the standard idiom used in many makefiles that produce *yacc* programs; for example:

```
foo: y.tab.o lex.o main.o
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) –o $@ t.tab.o lex.o main.o
```

In this example, if *make* chose any arbitrary order, the **lex.o** might not be made with the correct **y.tab.h**. Although there may be better ways to express this relationship, it is widely used historically. Implementations that desire to update prerequisites in parallel should require an explicit extension to *make* or the makefile format to accomplish it, as described previously.

The algorithm for determining a new entry for target rules is partially unspecified. Some historical *make*s allow blank, empty, or comment lines within the collection of commands marked by leading <tab>s. A conforming makefile must ensure that each command starts with a <tab>, but implementations are free to ignore blank, empty, and comment lines without triggering the start of a new entry.

The ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section includes having SIGTERM and SIGHUP, along with the more traditional SIGINT and SIGQUIT, remove the current target unless directed not to do so. SIGTERM and SIGHUP were added to parallel other utilities that have historically cleaned up their work as a result of these signals. When *make* receives any signal other than SIGQUIT, it is required to resend itself the signal it received so that it exits with a status that reflects the signal. The results from SIGQUIT are partially unspecified because, on systems that create **core** files upon receipt of SIGQUIT, the **core** from *make* would conflict with a **core** file from the command that was running when the SIGQUIT arrived. The main concern was to prevent damaged files from appearing up-to-date when *make* is rerun.

The **.PRECIOUS** special target was extended to affect all targets globally (by specifying no prerequisites). The **.IGNORE** and **.SILENT** special targets were extended to allow prerequisites; it was judged to be more useful in some cases to be able to turn off errors or echoing for a list of targets than for the entire makefile. These extensions to *make* in System V were made to match historical practice from the BSD *make*.

Macros are not exported to the environment of commands to be run. This was never the case in any historical *make* and would have serious consequences. The environment is the same as the environment to *make* except that *MAKEFLAGS* and macros defined on the *make* command line are added.

Some implementations do not use *system*() for all command lines, as required by the portable makefile format; as a performance enhancement, they select lines without shell metacharacters for direct execution by *execve*(). There is no requirement that *system*() be used specifically, but merely that the same results be achieved. The metacharacters typically used to bypass the direct *execve*() execution have been any of:

```
=  |  ^  (  )  ;  &  <  >  *  ?  [  ]  :  $  ‘  ’  "  \  \n
```

The default in some advanced versions of *make* is to group all the command lines for a target and execute them using a single shell invocation; the System V method is to pass each line individually to a separate shell. The single-shell method has the advantages in performance and the lack of a requirement for many continued lines. However, converting to this newer method has caused portability problems with many historical makefiles, so the behavior with the POSIX

makefile is specified to be the same as that of System V. It is suggested that the special target **.ONESHELL** be used as an implementation extension to achieve the single-shell grouping for a target or group of targets.

Novice users of *make* have had difficulty with the historical need to start commands with a <tab>. Since it is often difficult to discern differences between <tab>s and <space>s on terminals or printed listings, confusing bugs can arise. In early proposals, an attempt was made to correct this problem by allowing leading <blank>s instead of <tab>s. However, implementors reported many makefiles that failed in subtle ways following this change, and it is difficult to implement a *make* that unambiguously can differentiate between macro and command lines. There is extensive historical practice of allowing leading spaces before macro definitions. Forcing macro lines into column 1 would be a significant backwards-compatibility problem for some makefiles. Therefore, historical practice was restored.

The System V INCLUDE feature was considered, but not included. This would treat a line that began in the first column and contained INCLUDE <*filename*> as an indication to read <*filename*> at that point in the makefile. This is difficult to use in a portable way, and it raises concerns about nesting levels and diagnostics. System V, BSD, GNU, and others have used different methods for including files.

The System V dynamic dependency feature was not included. It would support:

```
cat: $$@.c
```

that would expand to;

```
cat: cat.c
```

This feature exists only in the new version of System V *make* and, while useful, is not in wide usage. This means that macros are expanded twice for prerequisites: once at makefile parse time and once at target update time.

Consideration was given to adding metarules to the POSIX *make*. This would make **%.o: %.c** the same as **.c.o:**. This is quite useful and available from some vendors, but it would cause too many changes to this *make* to support. It would have introduced rule chaining and new substitution rules. However, the rules for target names have been set to reserve the `'%'` and `'"'` characters. These are traditionally used to implement metarules and quoting of target names, respectively. Implementors are strongly encouraged to use these characters only for these purposes.

A request was made to extend the suffix delimiter character from a period to any character. The metarules feature in newer *make*s solves this problem in a more general way. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is staying with the more conservative historical definition.

The standard output format for the **−p** option is not described because it is primarily a debugging option and because the format is not generally useful to programs. In historical implementations the output is not suitable for use in generating makefiles. The **−p** format has been variable across historical implementations. Therefore, the definition of **−p** was only to provide a consistently named option for obtaining *make* script debugging information.

Some historical implementations have not cleared the suffix list with **−r**.

Implementations should be aware that some historical applications have intermixed *target_name* and *macro=value* operands on the command line, expecting that all of the macros are processed before any of the targets are dealt with. Conforming applications do not do this, but some backwards-compatibility support may be warranted.

Empty inference rules are specified with a semicolon command rather than omitting all commands, as described in an early proposal. The latter case has no traditional meaning and is reserved for implementation extensions, such as in GNU *make*.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *ar*, *c99*, *get*, *lex*, *sccs*, *sh*, *yacc*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *exec*, *system*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the Software Development Utilities option.

The Open Group Corrigendum U029/1 is applied, correcting a typographical error in the SPECIAL TARGETS section.

In the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section, the *PROJECTDIR* description is updated from "otherwise, the home directory of a user of that name is examined" to "otherwise, the value of *PROJECTDIR* is treated as a user name and that user's initial working directory is examined".

It is specified whether the command line is related to the makefile or to the *make* command, and the macro processing rules are updated to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #193 is applied.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-6 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

man — display system documentation

SYNOPSIS

```
man [–k] name...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *man* utility shall write information about each of the *name* operands. If *name* is the name of a standard utility, *man* at a minimum shall write a message describing the syntax used by the standard utility, its options, and operands. If more information is available, the *man* utility shall provide it in an implementation-defined manner.

An implementation may provide information for values of *name* other than the standard utilities. Standard utilities that are listed as optional and that are not supported by the implementation either shall cause a brief message indicating that fact to be displayed or shall cause a full display of information as described previously.

OPTIONS

The *man* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–k Interpret *name* operands as keywords to be used in searching a utilities summary database that contains a brief purpose entry for each standard utility and write lines from the summary database that match any of the keywords. The keyword search shall produce results that are the equivalent of the output of the following command:

```
grep –Ei '
name
name
...
' summary-database
```

This assumes that the *summary-database* is a text file with a single entry per line; this organization is not required and the example using *grep* **–Ei** is merely illustrative of the type of search intended. The purpose entry to be included in the database shall consist of a terse description of the purpose of the utility.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

name A keyword or the name of a standard utility. When **–k** is not specified and *name* does not represent one of the standard utilities, the results are unspecified.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *man*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and in the summary database). The value of *LC_CTYPE* need not affect the format of the information written about the *name* operands.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PAGER Determine an output filtering command for writing the output to a terminal. Any string acceptable as a *command_string* operand to the *sh* **−c** command shall be valid. When standard output is a terminal device, the reference page output shall be piped through the command. If the *PAGER* variable is null or not set, the command shall be either *more* or another paginator utility documented in the system documentation.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The *man* utility shall write text describing the syntax of the utility *name*, its options and its operands, or, when **−k** is specified, lines from the summary database. The format of this text is implementation-defined.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used for diagnostic messages, and may also be used for informational messages of unspecified format.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

It is recognized that the *man* utility is only of minimal usefulness as specified. The opinion of the standard developers was strongly divided as to how much or how little information *man* should be required to provide. They considered, however, that the provision of some portable way of accessing documentation would aid user portability. The arguments against a fuller specification were:

- Large quantities of documentation should not be required on a system that does not have excess disk space.
- The current manual system does not present information in a manner that greatly aids user portability.
- A "better help system" is currently an area in which vendors feel that they can add value to their POSIX implementations.

The **–f** option was considered, but due to implementation differences, it was not included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The description was changed to be more specific about what has to be displayed for a utility. The standard developers considered it insufficient to allow a display of only the synopsis without giving a short description of what each option and operand does.

The "purpose" entry to be included in the database can be similar to the section title (less the numeric prefix) from this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x for each utility. These titles are similar to those used in historical systems for this purpose.

See *mailx* for rationale concerning the default paginator.

The caveat in the *LC_CTYPE* description was added because it is not a requirement that an implementation provide reference pages for all of its supported locales on each system; changing *LC_CTYPE* does not necessarily translate the reference page into another language. This is equivalent to the current state of *LC_MESSAGES* in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x—locale-specific messages are not yet a requirement.

The historical *MANPATH* variable is not included in POSIX because no attempt is made to specify naming conventions for reference page files, nor even to mandate that they are files at all. On some implementations they could be a true database, a hypertext file, or even fixed strings within the *man* executable. The standard developers considered the portability of reference pages to be outside their scope of work. However, users should be aware that *MANPATH* is implemented on a number of historical systems and that it can be used to tailor the search pattern for reference pages from the various categories (utilities, functions, file formats, and so on) when the system administrator reveals the location and conventions for reference pages on the system.

The keyword search can rely on at least the text of the section titles from these utility descriptions, and the implementation may add more keywords. The term "section titles" refers to the strings such as:

```
man — Display system documentation
ps — Report process status
```

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

more

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #108 is applied, clarifying that informational messages may appear on standard error.

25016 **NAME**

25017 mesg — permit or deny messages

25018 **SYNOPSIS**

25019 `mesg [y|n]`

25020 **DESCRIPTION**

25021 The *mesg* utility shall control whether other users are allowed to send messages via *write*, *talk*, or
25022 other utilities to a terminal device. The terminal device affected shall be determined by searching
25023 for the first terminal in the sequence of devices associated with standard input, standard output,
25024 and standard error, respectively. With no arguments, *mesg* shall report the current state without
25025 changing it. Processes with appropriate privileges may be able to send messages to the terminal
25026 independent of the current state.

25027 **OPTIONS**

25028 None.

25029 **OPERANDS**

25030 The following operands shall be supported in the POSIX locale:

25031 *y* Grant permission to other users to send messages to the terminal device.

25032 *n* Deny permission to other users to send messages to the terminal device.

25033 **STDIN**

25034 Not used.

25035 **INPUT FILES**

25036 None.

25037 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

25038 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *mesg*:

25039 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
25040 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
25041 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
25042 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

25043 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
25044 internationalization variables.

25045 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
25046 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
25047 arguments).

25048 *LC_MESSAGES*
25049 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
25050 diagnostic messages written (by *mesg*) to standard error.

25051 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

25052 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

25053 Default.

25054 **STDOUT**

25055 If no operand is specified, *mesg* shall display the current terminal state in an unspecified format.

25056 **STDERR**

25057 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

25058 **OUTPUT FILES**

25059 None.

25060 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

25061 None.

25062 **EXIT STATUS**

25063 The following exit values shall be returned:

25064 0 Receiving messages is allowed.

25065 1 Receiving messages is not allowed.

25066 >1 An error occurred.

25067 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

25068 Default.

25069 **APPLICATION USAGE**

25070 The mechanism by which the message status of the terminal is changed is unspecified.
25071 Therefore, unspecified actions may cause the status of the terminal to change after *mesg* has
25072 successfully completed. These actions may include, but are not limited to: another invocation of
25073 the *mesg* utility, login procedures; invocation of the *stty* utility, invocation of the *chmod* utility or
25074 *chmod*( ) function, and so on.

25075 **EXAMPLES**

25076 None.

25077 **RATIONALE**

25078 The terminal changed by *mesg* is that associated with the standard input, output, or error, rather
25079 than the controlling terminal for the session. This is because users logged in more than once
25080 should be able to change any of their login terminals without having to stop the job running in
25081 those sessions. This is not a security problem involving the terminals of other users because
25082 appropriate privileges would be required to affect the terminal of another user.

25083 The method of checking each of the first three file descriptors in sequence until a terminal is
25084 found was adopted from System V.

25085 The file **/dev/tty** is not specified for the terminal device because it was thought to be too
25086 restrictive. Typical environment changes for the *n* operand are that write permissions are
25087 removed for *others* and *group* from the appropriate device. It was decided to leave the actual
25088 description of what is done as unspecified because of potential differences between
25089 implementations.

25090 The format for standard output is unspecified because of differences between historical
25091 implementations. This output is generally not useful to shell scripts (they can use the exit status),
25092 so exact parsing of the output is unnecessary.

25093 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

25094 None.

25095 **SEE ALSO**

25096 *talk*, *write*

25097 **CHANGE HISTORY**

25098 First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

Issue 7

The *mesg* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

NAME

mkdir — make directories

SYNOPSIS

```
mkdir [–p] [–m mode] dir...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *mkdir* utility shall create the directories specified by the operands, in the order specified.

For each *dir* operand, the *mkdir* utility shall perform actions equivalent to the *mkdir*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, called with the following arguments:

1. The *dir* operand is used as the *path* argument.
2. The value of the bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IRWXU, S_IRWXG, and S_IRWXO is used as the *mode* argument. (If the **–m** option is specified, the value of the *mkdir*( ) *mode* argument is unspecified, but the directory shall at no time have permissions less restrictive than the **–m** *mode* option-argument.)

OPTIONS

The *mkdir* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–m *mode* Set the file permission bits of the newly-created directory to the specified *mode* value. The *mode* option-argument shall be the same as the *mode* operand defined for the *chmod* utility. In the *symbolic_mode* strings, the *op* characters `'+'` and `'–'` shall be interpreted relative to an assumed initial mode of *a=rwx*; `'+'` shall add permissions to the default mode, `'–'` shall delete permissions from the default mode.

–p Create any missing intermediate pathname components.

For each *dir* operand that does not name an existing directory, effects equivalent to those caused by the following command shall occur:

```
mkdir –p –m $(umask –S),u+wx $(dirname dir) &&
mkdir [–m mode] dir
```

where the **–m** *mode* option represents that option supplied to the original invocation of *mkdir*, if any.

Each *dir* operand that names an existing directory shall be ignored without error.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

dir A pathname of a directory to be created.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

25143 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

25144 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *mkdir*:

25145 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
25146 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
25147 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
25148 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

25149 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
25150 internationalization variables.

25151 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
25152 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
25153 arguments).

25154 *LC_MESSAGES*
25155 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
25156 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

25157 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

25158 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

25159 Default.

25160 **STDOUT**

25161 Not used.

25162 **STDERR**

25163 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

25164 **OUTPUT FILES**

25165 None.

25166 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

25167 None.

25168 **EXIT STATUS**

25169 The following exit values shall be returned:

25170 0 All the specified directories were created successfully or the **−p** option was specified and all
25171 the specified directories now exist.

25172 >0 An error occurred.

25173 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

25174 Default.

25175 **APPLICATION USAGE**

25176 The default file mode for directories is *a=rwx* (777 on most systems) with selected permissions
25177 removed in accordance with the file mode creation mask. For intermediate pathname
25178 components created by *mkdir*, the mode is the default modified by *u+wx* so that the
25179 subdirectories can always be created regardless of the file mode creation mask; if different
25180 ultimate permissions are desired for the intermediate directories, they can be changed
25181 afterwards with *chmod*.

25182 Note that some of the requested directories may have been created even if an error occurs.

25183 **EXAMPLES**

25184 None.

25185 **RATIONALE**

25186 The System V **–m** option was included to control the file mode.

25187 The System V **–p** option was included to create any needed intermediate directories and to
25188 complement the functionality provided by *rmdir* for removing directories in the path prefix as
25189 they become empty. Because no error is produced if any path component already exists, the **–p**
25190 option is also useful to ensure that a particular directory exists.

25191 The functionality of *mkdir* is described substantially through a reference to the *mkdir*( ) function
25192 in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. For example, by default, the mode of
25193 the directory is affected by the file mode creation mask in accordance with the specified behavior
25194 of the *mkdir*( ) function. In this way, there is less duplication of effort required for describing
25195 details of the directory creation.

25196 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

25197 None.

25198 **SEE ALSO**

25199 *chmod*, *rm*, *rmdir*, *umask*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *mkdir*( )

25200 **CHANGE HISTORY**

25201 First released in Issue 2.

25202 **Issue 5**

25203 The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

25204 **Issue 7**

25205 SD5-XCU-ERN-56 is applied, aligning the **–m** option with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard to
25206 clarify an ambiguity.

25207 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

25208 **NAME**

25209 mkfifo — make FIFO special files

25210 **SYNOPSIS**

25211 `mkfifo [–m mode] file...`

25212 **DESCRIPTION**

25213 The *mkfifo* utility shall create the FIFO special files specified by the operands, in the order
25214 specified.

25215 For each *file* operand, the *mkfifo* utility shall perform actions equivalent to the *mkfifo*() function
25216 defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, called with the following
25217 arguments:

25218 1. The *file* operand is used as the *path* argument.

25219 2. The value of the bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IRUSR, S_IWUSR, S_IRGRP, S_IWGRP,
25220 S_IROTH, and S_IWOTH is used as the *mode* argument. (If the **–m** option is specified, the
25221 value of the *mkfifo*() *mode* argument is unspecified, but the FIFO shall at no time have
25222 permissions less restrictive than the **–m** *mode* option-argument.)

25223 **OPTIONS**

25224 The *mkfifo* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
25225 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

25226 The following option shall be supported:

25227 **–m** *mode* Set the file permission bits of the newly-created FIFO to the specified *mode* value.
25228 The *mode* option-argument shall be the same as the *mode* operand defined for the
25229 *chmod* utility. In the *symbolic_mode* strings, the *op* characters `'+'` and `'–'` shall be
25230 interpreted relative to an assumed initial mode of *a=rw*.

25231 **OPERANDS**

25232 The following operand shall be supported:

25233 *file* A pathname of the FIFO special file to be created.

25234 **STDIN**

25235 Not used.

25236 **INPUT FILES**

25237 None.

25238 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

25239 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *mkfifo*:

25240 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
25241 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
25242 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
25243 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

25244 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
25245 internationalization variables.

25246 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
25247 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
25248 arguments).

25249 *LC_MESSAGES*
25250 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
25251 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

25252 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

25253 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
25254 Default.

25255 **STDOUT**
25256 Not used.

25257 **STDERR**
25258 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

25259 **OUTPUT FILES**
25260 None.

25261 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
25262 None.

25263 **EXIT STATUS**
25264 The following exit values shall be returned:

25265 0 All the specified FIFO special files were created successfully.

25266 >0 An error occurred.

25267 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
25268 Default.

25269 **APPLICATION USAGE**
25270 None.

25271 **EXAMPLES**
25272 None.

25273 **RATIONALE**
25274 This utility was added to permit shell applications to create FIFO special files.

25275 The **−m** option was added to control the file mode, for consistency with the similar functionality
25276 provided by the *mkdir* utility.

25277 Early proposals included a **−p** option similar to the *mkdir* **−p** option that created intermediate
25278 directories leading up to the FIFO specified by the final component. This was removed because
25279 it is not commonly needed and is not common practice with similar utilities.

25280 The functionality of *mkfifo* is described substantially through a reference to the *mkfifo*( ) function
25281 in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. For example, by default, the mode of
25282 the FIFO file is affected by the file mode creation mask in accordance with the specified behavior
25283 of the *mkfifo*( ) function. In this way, there is less duplication of effort required for describing
25284 details of the file creation.

25285 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
25286 None.

25287 **SEE ALSO**
25288 *chmod*, *umask*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *mkfifo*( )

25289 **CHANGE HISTORY**
25290 First released in Issue 3.

25291 **Issue 6**

25292 The **–m** option is aligned with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard to clarify an ambiguity.

25293 **NAME**

25294 more — display files on a page-by-page basis

25295 **SYNOPSIS**

25296 UP

```
more [–ceisu] [–n number] [–p command] [–t tagstring] [file...]
```

25297 **DESCRIPTION**

25298 The *more* utility shall read files and either write them to the terminal on a page-by-page basis or
25299 filter them to standard output. If standard output is not a terminal device, all input files shall be
25300 copied to standard output in their entirety, without modification, except as specified for the **–s**
25301 option. If standard output is a terminal device, the files shall be written a number of lines (one
25302 screenful) at a time under the control of user commands. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
25303 section.

25304 Certain block-mode terminals do not have all the capabilities necessary to support the complete
25305 *more* definition; they are incapable of accepting commands that are not terminated with a
25306 <newline>. Implementations that support such terminals shall provide an operating mode to
25307 *more* in which all commands can be terminated with a <newline> on those terminals. This mode:

25308 • Shall be documented in the system documentation

25309 • Shall, at invocation, inform the user of the terminal deficiency that requires the <newline>
25310 usage and provide instructions on how this warning can be suppressed in future
25311 invocations

25312 • Shall not be required for implementations supporting only fully capable terminals

25313 • Shall not affect commands already requiring <newline>s

25314 • Shall not affect users on the capable terminals from using *more* as described in this volume
25315 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x

25316 **OPTIONS**

25317 The *more* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
25318 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that `'+'` may be recognized as an option delimiter as well
25319 as `'–'`.

25320 The following options shall be supported:

25321 **–c** If a screen is to be written that has no lines in common with the current screen, or
25322 *more* is writing its first screen, *more* shall not scroll the screen, but instead shall
25323 redraw each line of the screen in turn, from the top of the screen to the bottom. In
25324 addition, if *more* is writing its first screen, the screen shall be cleared. This option
25325 may be silently ignored on devices with insufficient terminal capabilities.

25326 **–e** By default, *more* shall exit immediately after writing the last line of the last file in
25327 the argument list. If the **–e** option is specified:

25328 1. If there is only a single file in the argument list and that file was completely
25329 displayed on a single screen, *more* shall exit immediately after writing the
25330 last line of that file.

25331 2. Otherwise, *more* shall exit only after reaching end-of-file on the last file in
25332 the argument list twice without an intervening operation. See the
25333 EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

25334 **–i** Perform pattern matching in searches without regard to case; see the Base
25335 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.2, Regular Expression
25336 General Requirements.

25337 **–n** *number* Specify the number of lines per screenful. The *number* argument is a positive
25338 decimal integer. The **–n** option shall override any values obtained from any other
25339 source.

25340 **–p** *command* Each time a screen from a new file is displayed or redisplayed (including as a
25341 result of *more* commands; for example, **:p**), execute the *more* command(s) in the
25342 command arguments in the order specified, as if entered by the user after the first
25343 screen has been displayed. No intermediate results shall be displayed (that is, if the
25344 command is a movement to a screen different from the normal first screen, only the
25345 screen resulting from the command shall be displayed.) If any of the commands
25346 fail for any reason, an informational message to this effect shall be written, and no
25347 further commands specified using the **–p** option shall be executed for this file.

25348 **–s** Behave as if consecutive empty lines were a single empty line.

25349 **–t** *tagstring* Write the screenful of the file containing the tag named by the *tagstring* argument.
25350 See the *ctags* utility. The tags feature represented by **–t** *tagstring* and the **:t**
25351 command is optional. It shall be provided on any system that also provides a
25352 conforming implementation of *ctags*; otherwise, the use of **–t** produces undefined
25353 results.

25354 The filename resulting from the **–t** option shall be logically added as a prefix to the
25355 list of command line files, as if specified by the user. If the tag named by the
25356 *tagstring* argument is not found, it shall be an error, and *more* shall take no further
25357 action.

25358 If the tag specifies a line number, the first line of the display shall contain the
25359 beginning of that line. If the tag specifies a pattern, the first line of the display shall
25360 contain the beginning of the matching text from the first line of the file that
25361 contains that pattern. If the line does not exist in the file or matching text is not
25362 found, an informational message to this effect shall be displayed, and *more* shall
25363 display the default screen as if **–t** had not been specified.

25364 If both the **–t** *tagstring* and **–p** *command* options are given, the **–t** *tagstring* shall be
25365 processed first; that is, the file and starting line for the display shall be as specified
25366 by **–t**, and then the **–p** *more* command shall be executed. If the line (matching text)
25367 specified by the **–t** command does not exist (is not found), no **–p** *more* command
25368 shall be executed for this file at any time.

25369 **–u** Treat a <backspace> as a printable control character, displayed as an
25370 implementation-defined character sequence (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
25371 section), suppressing backspacing and the special handling that produces
25372 underlined or standout mode text on some terminal types. Also, do not ignore a
25373 <carriage-return> at the end of a line.

25374 **OPERANDS**

25375 The following operand shall be supported:

25376 *file* A pathname of an input file. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input
25377 shall be used. If a *file* is `'–'`, the standard input shall be read at that point in the
25378 sequence.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is '–'.

INPUT FILES

The input files being examined shall be text files. If standard output is a terminal, standard error shall be used to read commands from the user. If standard output is a terminal, standard error is not readable, and command input is needed, *more* may attempt to obtain user commands from the controlling terminal (for example, **/dev/tty**); otherwise, *more* shall terminate with an error indicating that it was unable to read user commands. If standard output is not a terminal, no error shall result if standard error cannot be opened for reading.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *more*:

COLUMNS Override the system-selected horizontal display line size. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables for valid values and results when it is unset or null.

EDITOR Used by the **v** command to select an editor. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classes within regular expressions.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

LINES Override the system-selected vertical screen size, used as the number of lines in a screenful. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables for valid values and results when it is unset or null. The **–n** option shall take precedence over the *LINES* variable for determining the number of lines in a screenful.

MORE Determine a string containing options described in the OPTIONS section preceded with hyphens and <blank>-separated as on the command line. Any command line

25425 *TERM* Determine the name of the terminal type. If this variable is unset or null, an
25426 unspecified default terminal type is used.

25427 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
25428 Default.

25429 **STDOUT**
25430 The standard output shall be used to write the contents of the input files.

25431 **STDERR**
25432 The standard error shall be used for diagnostic messages and user commands (see the INPUT
25433 FILES section), and, if standard output is a terminal device, to write a prompting string. The
25434 prompting string shall appear on the screen line below the last line of the file displayed in the
25435 current screenful. The prompt shall contain the name of the file currently being examined and
25436 shall contain an end-of-file indication and the name of the next file, if any, when prompting at
25437 the end-of-file. If an error or informational message is displayed, it is unspecified whether it is
25438 contained in the prompt. If it is not contained in the prompt, it shall be displayed and then the
25439 user shall be prompted for a continuation character, at which point another message or the user
25440 prompt may be displayed. The prompt is otherwise unspecified. It is unspecified whether
25441 informational messages are written for other user commands.

25442 **OUTPUT FILES**
25443 None.

25444 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
25445 The following section describes the behavior of *more* when the standard output is a terminal
25446 device. If the standard output is not a terminal device, no options other than **–s** shall have any
25447 effect, and all input files shall be copied to standard output otherwise unmodified, at which time
25448 *more* shall exit without further action.

25449 The number of lines available per screen shall be determined by the **–n** option, if present, or by
25450 examining values in the environment (see the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section). If neither
25451 method yields a number, an unspecified number of lines shall be used.

25452 The maximum number of lines written shall be one less than this number, because the screen
25453 line after the last line written shall be used to write a user prompt and user input. If the number
25454 of lines in the screen is less than two, the results are undefined. It is unspecified whether user
25455 input is permitted to be longer than the remainder of the single line where the prompt has been
25456 written.

25457 The number of columns available per line shall be determined by examining values in the
25458 environment (see the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section), with a default value as described
25459 in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

25460 Lines that are longer than the display shall be folded; the length at which folding occurs is
25461 unspecified, but should be appropriate for the output device. Folding may occur between glyphs
25462 of single characters that take up multiple display columns.

25463 When standard output is a terminal and **–u** is not specified, *more* shall treat <backspace>s and
25464 <carriage-return>s specially:

25465 • A character, followed first by a sequence of *n* <backspace>s (where *n* is the same as the
25466 number of column positions that the character occupies), then by *n* underscore characters
25467 ('_'), shall cause that character to be written as underlined text, if the terminal type
25468 supports that. The *n* underscore characters, followed first by *n* <backspace>s, then any
25469 character with *n* column positions, shall also cause that character to be written as
25470 underlined text, if the terminal type supports that.

- A sequence of *n* <backspace>s (where *n* is the same as the number of column positions that the previous character occupies) that appears between two identical printable characters shall cause the first of those two characters to be written as emboldened text (that is, visually brighter, standout mode, or inverse-video mode), if the terminal type supports that, and the second to be discarded. Immediately subsequent occurrences of <backspace>/character pairs for that same character shall also be discarded. (For example, the sequence `"a\ba\ba\ba"` is interpreted as a single emboldened `'a'`.)
- The *more* utility shall logically discard all other <backspace>s from the line as well as the character which precedes them, if any.
- A <carriage-return> at the end of a line shall be ignored, rather than being written as a non-printable character, as described in the next paragraph.

It is implementation-defined how other non-printable characters are written. Implementations should use the same format that they use for the *ex* **print** command; see the OPTIONS section within the *ed* utility. It is unspecified whether a multi-column character shall be separated if it crosses a display line boundary; it shall not be discarded. The behavior is unspecified if the number of columns on the display is less than the number of columns any single character in the line being displayed would occupy.

When each new file is displayed (or redisplayed), *more* shall write the first screen of the file. Once the initial screen has been written, *more* shall prompt for a user command. If the execution of the user command results in a screen that has lines in common with the current screen, and the device has sufficient terminal capabilities, *more* shall scroll the screen; otherwise, it is unspecified whether the screen is scrolled or redrawn.

For all files but the last (including standard input if no file was specified, and for the last file as well, if the **–e** option was not specified), when *more* has written the last line in the file, *more* shall prompt for a user command. This prompt shall contain the name of the next file as well as an indication that *more* has reached end-of-file. If the user command is **f**, <control>-F, <space>, **j**, <newline>, **d**, <control>-D, or **s**, *more* shall display the next file. Otherwise, if displaying the last file, *more* shall exit. Otherwise, *more* shall execute the user command specified.

Several of the commands described in this section display a previous screen from the input stream. In the case that text is being taken from a non-rewindable stream, such as a pipe, it is implementation-defined how much backwards motion is supported. If a command cannot be executed because of a limitation on backwards motion, an error message to this effect shall be displayed, the current screen shall not change, and the user shall be prompted for another command.

If a command cannot be performed because there are insufficient lines to display, *more* shall alert the terminal. If a command cannot be performed because there are insufficient lines to display or a **/** command fails: if the input is the standard input, the last screen in the file may be displayed; otherwise, the current file and screen shall not change, and the user shall be prompted for another command.

The interactive commands in the following sections shall be supported. Some commands can be preceded by a decimal integer, called *count* in the following descriptions. If not specified with the command, *count* shall default to 1. In the following descriptions, *pattern* is a basic regular expression, as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic Regular Expressions. The term ‘‘examine’’ is historical usage meaning ‘‘open the file for viewing’’; for example, *more* **foo** would be expressed as examining file **foo**.

In the following descriptions, unless otherwise specified, *line* is a line in the *more* display, not a line from the file being examined.

In the following descriptions, the *current position* refers to two things:

25519 1. The position of the current line on the screen
25520 2. The line number (in the file) of the current line on the screen

25521 Usually, the line on the screen corresponding to the current position is the third line on the
25522 screen. If this is not possible (there are fewer than three lines to display or this is the first page of
25523 the file, or it is the last page of the file), then the current position is either the first or last line on
25524 the screen as described later.

25525 **Help**

25526 *Synopsis*: h

25527 Write a summary of these commands and other implementation-defined commands. The
25528 behavior shall be as if the *more* utility were executed with the –**e** option on a file that contained
25529 the summary information. The user shall be prompted as described earlier in this section when
25530 end-of-file is reached. If the user command is one of those specified to continue to the next file,
25531 *more* shall return to the file and screen state from which the **h** command was executed.

25532 **Scroll Forward One Screenful**

25533 *Synopsis*: [*count*]f
25534 [*count*]<control>-F

25535 Scroll forward *count* lines, with a default of one screenful. If *count* is more than the screen size,
25536 only the final screenful shall be written.

25537 **Scroll Backward One Screenful**

25538 *Synopsis*: [*count*]b
25539 [*count*]<control>-B

25540 Scroll backward *count* lines, with a default of one screenful (see the –**n** option). If *count* is more
25541 than the screen size, only the final screenful shall be written.

25542 **Scroll Forward One Line**

25543 *Synopsis*: [*count*]<space>
25544 [*count*]j
25545 [*count*]<newline>

25546 Scroll forward *count* lines. The default *count* for the <space> shall be one screenful; for **j** and
25547 <newline>, one line. The entire *count* lines shall be written, even if *count* is more than the screen
25548 size.

25549 **Scroll Backward One Line**

25550 *Synopsis*: [*count*]k

25551 Scroll backward *count* lines. The entire *count* lines shall be written, even if *count* is more than the
25552 screen size.

25553 **Scroll Forward One Half Screenful**

25554 *Synopsis*: `[count]d`
25555 `[count]<control>-D`

25556 Scroll forward *count* lines, with a default of one half of the screen size. If *count* is specified, it
25557 shall become the new default for subsequent **d**, <control>-D, and **u** commands.

25558 **Skip Forward One Line**

25559 *Synopsis*: `[count]s`

25560 Display the screenful beginning with the line *count* lines after the last line on the current screen.
25561 If *count* would cause the current position to be such that less than one screenful would be
25562 written, the last screenful in the file shall be written.

25563 **Scroll Backward One Half Screenful**

25564 *Synopsis*: `[count]u`
25565 `[count]<control>-U`

25566 Scroll backward *count* lines, with a default of one half of the screen size. If *count* is specified, it
25567 shall become the new default for subsequent **d**, <control>–D, **u**, and <control>–U commands.
25568 The entire *count* lines shall be written, even if *count* is more than the screen size.

25569 **Go to Beginning of File**

25570 *Synopsis*: `[count]g`

25571 Display the screenful beginning with line *count*.

25572 **Go to End-of-File**

25573 *Synopsis*: `[count]G`

25574 If *count* is specified, display the screenful beginning with the line *count*. Otherwise, display the
25575 last screenful of the file.

25576 **Refresh the Screen**

25577 *Synopsis*: `r`
25578 `<control>-L`

25579 Refresh the screen.

25580 **Discard and Refresh**

25581 *Synopsis*: `R`

25582 Refresh the screen, discarding any buffered input. If the current file is non-seekable, buffered
25583 input shall not be discarded and the **R** command shall be equivalent to the **r** command.

25584 **Mark Position**

25585 *Synopsis*: `mletter`

25586 Mark the current position with the letter named by *letter*, where *letter* represents the name of one
25587 of the lowercase letters of the portable character set. When a new file is examined, all marks may
25588 be lost.

25589 **Return to Mark**

25590 *Synopsis*: `'letter`

25591 Return to the position that was previously marked with the letter named by *letter*, making that
25592 line the current position.

25593 **Return to Previous Position**

25594 *Synopsis*: `''`

25595 Return to the position from which the last large movement command was executed (where a
25596 "large movement" is defined as any movement of more than a screenful of lines). If no such
25597 movements have been made, return to the beginning of the file.

25598 **Search Forward for Pattern**

25599 *Synopsis*: `[`*count*`]/[!]`*pattern*`<newline>`

25600 Display the screenful beginning with the *count*th line containing the pattern. The search shall
25601 start after the first line currently displayed. The null regular expression (`'/'` followed by a
25602 <newline>) shall repeat the search using the previous regular expression, with a default *count*. If
25603 the character `'!'` is included, the matching lines shall be those that do not contain the *pattern*. If
25604 no match is found for the *pattern*, a message to that effect shall be displayed.

25605 **Search Backward for Pattern**

25606 *Synopsis*: `[`*count*`]?[!]`*pattern*`<newline>`

25607 Display the screenful beginning with the *count*th previous line containing the pattern. The search
25608 shall start on the last line before the first line currently displayed. The null regular expression
25609 (`'?'` followed by a <newline>) shall repeat the search using the previous regular expression,
25610 with a default *count*. If the character `'!'` is included, matching lines shall be those that do not
25611 contain the *pattern*. If no match is found for the *pattern*, a message to that effect shall be
25612 displayed.

25613 **Repeat Search**

25614 *Synopsis*: `[`*count*`]n`

25615 Repeat the previous search for *count*th line containing the last *pattern* (or not containing the last
25616 *pattern*, if the previous search was `"/!"` or `"?!"`).

25617 **Repeat Search in Reverse**

25618 *Synopsis*: `[`*count*`]N`

25619 Repeat the search in the opposite direction of the previous search for the *count*th line containing
25620 the last *pattern* (or not containing the last *pattern*, if the previous search was `"/!"` or `"?!"`).

25621 **Examine New File**

25622 *Synopsis*: `:e [`*filename*`]<newline>`

25623 Examine a new file. If the *filename* argument is not specified, the current file (see the **:n** and **:p**
25624 commands below) shall be re-examined. The *filename* shall be subjected to the process of shell
25625 word expansions (see Section 2.6 (on page 37)); if more than a single pathname results, the
25626 effects are unspecified. If *filename* is a number sign (`'#'`), the previously examined file shall be
25627 re-examined. If *filename* is not accessible for any reason (including that it is a non-seekable file),
25628 an error message to this effect shall be displayed and the current file and screen shall not change.

25629 **Examine Next File**

25630 *Synopsis*: `[count]:n`

25631 Examine the next file. If a number *count* is specified, the *count*th next file shall be examined. If
25632 *filename* refers to a non-seekable file, the results are unspecified.

25633 **Examine Previous File**

25634 *Synopsis*: `[count]:p`

25635 Examine the previous file. If a number *count* is specified, the *count*th previous file shall be
25636 examined. If *filename* refers to a non-seekable file, the results are unspecified.

25637 **Go to Tag**

25638 *Synopsis*: `:t tagstring<newline>`

25639 If the file containing the tag named by the *tagstring* argument is not the current file, examine the
25640 file, as if the **:e** command was executed with that file as the argument. Otherwise, or in addition,
25641 display the screenful beginning with the tag, as described for the **−t** option (see the OPTIONS
25642 section). If the *ctags* utility is not supported by the system, the use of **:t** produces undefined
25643 results.

25644 **Invoke Editor**

25645 *Synopsis*: `v`

25646 Invoke an editor to edit the current file being examined. If standard input is being examined, the
25647 results are unspecified. The name of the editor shall be taken from the environment variable
25648 *EDITOR*, or shall default to *vi*. If the last pathname component in *EDITOR* is either *vi* or *ex*, the
25649 editor shall be invoked with a **−c** *linenumber* command line argument, where *linenumber* is the
25650 line number of the file line containing the display line currently displayed as the first line of the
25651 screen. It is implementation-defined whether line-setting options are passed to editors other
25652 than *vi* and *ex*.

25653 When the editor exits, *more* shall resume with the same file and screen as when the editor was
25654 invoked.

25655 **Display Position**

25656 *Synopsis*: `=`
25657 `<control>-G`

25658 Write a message for which the information references the first byte of the line after the last line of
25659 the file on the screen. This message shall include the name of the file currently being examined,
25660 its number relative to the total number of files there are to examine, the line number in the file,
25661 the byte number and the total bytes in the file, and what percentage of the file precedes the
25662 current position. If *more* is reading from standard input, or the file is shorter than a single screen,
25663 the line number, the byte number, the total bytes, and the percentage need not be written.

25664 **Quit**

25665 *Synopsis*: `q`
25666 `:q`
25667 `ZZ`

25668 Exit *more*.

25669 **EXIT STATUS**

25670 The following exit values shall be returned:

25671 0 Successful completion.

25672 >0 An error occurred.

25673 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

25674 If an error is encountered accessing a file when using the **:n** command, *more* shall attempt to
25675 examine the next file in the argument list, but the final exit status shall be affected. If an error is
25676 encountered accessing a file via the **:p** command, *more* shall attempt to examine the previous file
25677 in the argument list, but the final exit status shall be affected. If an error is encountered accessing
25678 a file via the **:e** command, *more* shall remain in the current file and the final exit status shall not
25679 be affected.

25680 **APPLICATION USAGE**

25681 When the standard output is not a terminal, only the –**s** filter-modification option is effective.
25682 This is based on historical practice. For example, a typical implementation of *man* pipes its
25683 output through *more* –**s** to squeeze excess white space for terminal users. When *man* is piped to
25684 *lp*, however, it is undesirable for this squeezing to happen.

25685 **EXAMPLES**

25686 The –**p** allows arbitrary commands to be executed at the start of each file. Examples are:

25687 *more* –**p G** *file1 file2*
25688 Examine each file starting with its last screenful.

25689 *more* –**p** 100 *file1 file2*
25690 Examine each file starting with line 100 in the current position (usually the third line, so line
25691 98 would be the first line written).

25692 *more* –**p** /100 *file1 file2*
25693 Examine each file starting with the first line containing the string `"100"` in the current
25694 position

25695 **RATIONALE**

25696 The *more* utility, available in BSD and BSD-derived systems, was chosen as the prototype for the
25697 POSIX file display program since it is more widely available than either the public-domain
25698 program *less* or than *pg*, a pager provided in System V. The 4.4 BSD *more* is the model for the
25699 features selected; it is almost fully upwards-compatible from the 4.3 BSD version in wide use
25700 and has become more amenable for *vi* users. Several features originally derived from various file
25701 editors, found in both *less* and *pg*, have been added to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x as
25702 they have proved extremely popular with users.

25703 There are inconsistencies between *more* and *vi* that result from historical practice. For example,
25704 the single-character commands **h**, **f**, **b**, and <space> are screen movers in *more*, but cursor
25705 movers in *vi*. These inconsistencies were maintained because the cursor movements are not
25706 applicable to *more* and the powerful functionality achieved without the use of the control key
25707 justifies the differences.

25708 The tags interface has been included in a program that is not a text editor because it promotes
25709 another degree of consistent operation with *vi*. It is conceivable that the paging environment of
25710 *more* would be superior for browsing source code files in some circumstances.

25711 The operating mode referred to for block-mode terminals effectively adds a <newline> to each
25712 Synopsis line that currently has none. So, for example, **d**<newline> would page one screenful.
25713 The mode could be triggered by a command line option, environment variable, or some other
25714 method. The details are not imposed by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because there are so
25715 few systems known to support such terminals. Nevertheless, it was considered that all systems
25716 should be able to support *more* given the exception cited for this small community of terminals

because, in comparison to *vi*, the cursor movements are few and the command set relatively amenable to the optional <newline>s.

Some versions of *more* provide a shell escaping mechanism similar to the *ex* **!** command. The standard developers did not consider that this was necessary in a paginator, particularly given the wide acceptance of multiple window terminals and job control features. (They chose to retain such features in the editors and *mailx* because the shell interaction also gives an opportunity to modify the editing buffer, which is not applicable to *more*.)

The **−p** (position) option replaces the **+** command because of the Utility Syntax Guidelines. The *+command* option is no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations. In early proposals, it took a *pattern* argument, but historical *less* provided the *more* general facility of a command. It would have been desirable to use the same **−c** as *ex* and *vi*, but the letter was already in use.

The text stating "from a non-rewindable stream ... implementations may limit the amount of backwards motion supported" would allow an implementation that permitted no backwards motion beyond text already on the screen. It was not possible to require a minimum amount of backwards motion that would be effective for all conceivable device types. The implementation should allow the user to back up as far as possible, within device and reasonable memory allocation constraints.

Historically, non-printable characters were displayed using the ARPA standard mappings, which are as follows:

1. Printable characters are left alone.
2. Control characters less than \177 are represented as followed by the character offset from the `'@'` character in the ASCII map; for example, \007 is represented as `'G'`.
3. \177 is represented as followed by `'?'`.

The display of characters having their eighth bit set was less standard. Existing implementations use hex (0x00), octal (\000), and a meta-bit display. (The latter displayed characters with their eighth bit set as the two characters `"M−"`, followed by the seven-bit display as described previously.) The latter probably has the best claim to historical practice because it was used with the **−v** option of 4 BSD and 4 BSD-derived versions of the *cat* utility since 1980.

No specific display format is required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Implementations are encouraged to conform to historic practice in the absence of any strong reason to diverge.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *ctags*, *ed*, *ex*, *vi*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

The utility has been extensively reworked for alignment with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard:

- Changes have been made as a result of IEEE PASC Interpretations 1003.2 #37 and #109.

- The *more* utility should be able to handle underlined and emboldened displays of characters that are wider than a single column position.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying that '+' may be recognized as an option delimiter in the OPTIONS section.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

25767 **NAME**

25768 mv — move files

25769 **SYNOPSIS**

25770 `mv [–if] source_file target_file`

25771 `mv [–if] source_file... target_dir`

25772 **DESCRIPTION**

25773 In the first synopsis form, the *mv* utility shall move the file named by the *source_file* operand to
25774 the destination specified by the *target_file*. This first synopsis form is assumed when the final
25775 operand does not name an existing directory and is not a symbolic link referring to an existing
25776 directory.

25777 In the second synopsis form, *mv* shall move each file named by a *source_file* operand to a
25778 destination file in the existing directory named by the *target_dir* operand, or referenced if
25779 *target_dir* is a symbolic link referring to an existing directory. The destination path for each
25780 *source_file* shall be the concatenation of the target directory, a single slash character, and the last
25781 pathname component of the *source_file*. This second form is assumed when the final operand
25782 names an existing directory.

25783 If any operand specifies an existing file of a type not specified by the System Interfaces volume
25784 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the behavior is implementation-defined.

25785 For each *source_file* the following steps shall be taken:

25786 1. If the destination path exists, the **–f** option is not specified, and either of the following
25787 conditions is true:

25788 a. The permissions of the destination path do not permit writing and the standard
25789 input is a terminal.

25790 b. The **–i** option is specified.

25791 the *mv* utility shall write a prompt to standard error and read a line from standard input.
25792 If the response is not affirmative, *mv* shall do nothing more with the current *source_file*
25793 and go on to any remaining *source_file*s.

25794 2. The *mv* utility shall perform actions equivalent to the *rename*() function defined in the
25795 System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, called with the following arguments:

25796 a. The *source_file* operand is used as the *old* argument.

25797 b. The destination path is used as the *new* argument.

25798 If this succeeds, *mv* shall do nothing more with the current *source_file* and go on to any
25799 remaining *source_file*s. If this fails for any reasons other than those described for the *errno*
25800 [EXDEV] in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *mv* shall write a
25801 diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with the current *source_file*, and go
25802 on to any remaining *source_file*s.

25803 3. If the destination path exists, and it is a file of type directory and *source_file* is not a file of
25804 type directory, or it is a file not of type directory and *source_file* is a file of type directory,
25805 *mv* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with the current
25806 *source_file*, and go on to any remaining *source_file*s.

25807 4. If the destination path exists, *mv* shall attempt to remove it. If this fails for any reason, *mv*
25808 shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with the current
25809 *source_file*, and go on to any remaining *source_file*s.

5. The file hierarchy rooted in *source_file* shall be duplicated as a file hierarchy rooted in the destination path. If *source_file* or any of the files below it in the hierarchy are symbolic links, the links themselves shall be duplicated, including their contents, rather than any files to which they refer. The following characteristics of each file in the file hierarchy shall be duplicated:

   - The time of last data modification and time of last access
   - The user ID and group ID
   - The file mode

   If the user ID, group ID, or file mode of a regular file cannot be duplicated, the file mode bits S_ISUID and S_ISGID shall not be duplicated.

   When files are duplicated to another file system, the implementation may require that the process invoking *mv* has read access to each file being duplicated.

   If files being duplicated to another file system have hard links to other files, it is unspecified whether the files copied to the new file system have the hard links preserved or separate copies are created for the linked files.

   If the duplication of the file hierarchy fails for any reason, *mv* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with the current *source_file*, and go on to any remaining *source_file*s.

   If the duplication of the file characteristics fails for any reason, *mv* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, but this failure shall not cause *mv* to modify its exit status.

6. The file hierarchy rooted in *source_file* shall be removed. If this fails for any reason, *mv* shall write a diagnostic message to the standard error, do nothing more with the current *source_file*, and go on to any remaining *source_file*s.

OPTIONS

The *mv* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–f Do not prompt for confirmation if the destination path exists. Any previous occurrence of the **–i** option is ignored.

–i Prompt for confirmation if the destination path exists. Any previous occurrence of the **–f** option is ignored.

Specifying more than one of the **–f** or **–i** options shall not be considered an error. The last option specified shall determine the behavior of *mv*.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

source_file A pathname of a file or directory to be moved.

target_file A new pathname for the file or directory being moved.

target_dir A pathname of an existing directory into which to move the input files.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used to read an input line in response to each prompt specified in the STDERR section. Otherwise, the standard input shall not be used.

25851 **INPUT FILES**

25852 The input files specified by each *source_file* operand can be of any file type.

25853 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

25854 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *mv*:

25855 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
25856 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
25857 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
25858 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

25859 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
25860 internationalization variables.

25861 *LC_COLLATE*
25862 Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-
25863 character collating elements used in the extended regular expression defined for
25864 the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

25865 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
25866 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
25867 arguments and input files), the behavior of character classes used in the extended
25868 regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES*
25869 category.

25870 *LC_MESSAGES*
25871 Determine the locale for the processing of affirmative responses that should be
25872 used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard
25873 error.

25874 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

25875 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

25876 Default.

25877 **STDOUT**

25878 Not used.

25879 **STDERR**

25880 Prompts shall be written to the standard error under the conditions specified in the
25881 DESCRIPTION section. The prompts shall contain the destination pathname, but their format is
25882 otherwise unspecified. Otherwise, the standard error shall be used only for diagnostic
25883 messages.

25884 **OUTPUT FILES**

25885 The output files may be of any file type.

25886 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

25887 None.

25888 **EXIT STATUS**

25889 The following exit values shall be returned:

25890 0 All input files were moved successfully.

25891 >0 An error occurred.

25892 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

25893 If the copying or removal of *source_file* is prematurely terminated by a signal or error, *mv* may
25894 leave a partial copy of *source_file* at the source or destination. The *mv* utility shall not modify
25895 both *source_file* and the destination path simultaneously; termination at any point shall leave
25896 either *source_file* or the destination path complete.

APPLICATION USAGE

Some implementations mark for update the *st_ctime* field of renamed files and some do not. Applications which make use of the *st_ctime* field may behave differently with respect to renamed files unless they are designed to allow for either behavior.

EXAMPLES

If the current directory contains only files **a** (of any type defined by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x), **b** (also of any type), and a directory **c**:

```
mv a b c
mv c d
```

results with the original files **a** and **b** residing in the directory **d** in the current directory.

RATIONALE

Early proposals diverged from the SVID and BSD historical practice in that they required that when the destination path exists, the **–f** option is not specified, and input is not a terminal, *mv* fails. This was done for compatibility with *cp*. The current text returns to historical practice. It should be noted that this is consistent with the *rename*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, which does not require write permission on the target.

For absolute clarity, paragraph (1), describing the behavior of *mv* when prompting for confirmation, should be interpreted in the following manner:

```
if (exists AND (NOT f_option) AND
    ((not_writable AND input_is_terminal) OR i_option))
```

The **–i** option exists on BSD systems, giving applications and users a way to avoid accidentally unlinking files when moving others. When the standard input is not a terminal, the 4.3 BSD *mv* deletes all existing destination paths without prompting, even when **–i** is specified; this is inconsistent with the behavior of the 4.3 BSD *cp* utility, which always generates an error when the file is unwritable and the standard input is not a terminal. The standard developers decided that use of **–i** is a request for interaction, so when the destination path exists, the utility takes instructions from whatever responds to standard input.

The *rename*() function is able to move directories within the same file system. Some historical versions of *mv* have been able to move directories, but not to a different file system. The standard developers considered that this was an annoying inconsistency, so this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires directories to be able to be moved even across file systems. There is no **–R** option to confirm that moving a directory is actually intended, since such an option was not required for moving directories in historical practice. Requiring the application to specify it sometimes, depending on the destination, seemed just as inconsistent. The semantics of the *rename*() function were preserved as much as possible. For example, *mv* is not permitted to "rename" files to or from directories, even though they might be empty and removable.

Historic implementations of *mv* did not exit with a non-zero exit status if they were unable to duplicate any file characteristics when moving a file across file systems, nor did they write a diagnostic message for the user. The former behavior has been preserved to prevent scripts from breaking; a diagnostic message is now required, however, so that users are alerted that the file characteristics have changed.

The exact format of the interactive prompts is unspecified. Only the general nature of the contents of prompts are specified because implementations may desire more descriptive prompts than those used on historical implementations. Therefore, an application not using the **–f** option or using the **–i** option relies on the system to provide the most suitable dialog directly with the user, based on the behavior specified.

When *mv* is dealing with a single file system and *source_file* is a symbolic link, the link itself is moved as a consequence of the dependence on the *rename*() functionality, per the

DESCRIPTION. Across file systems, this has to be made explicit.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

cp, *ln*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *rename*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The *mv* utility is changed to describe processing of symbolic links as specified in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-13 is applied, making an editorial correction to the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-51 is applied to the DESCRIPTION, defining the behavior for when files are being duplicated to another file system while having hard links.

NAME

newgrp — change to a new group

SYNOPSIS

```
newgrp [-l] [group]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *newgrp* utility shall create a new shell execution environment with a new real and effective group identification. Of the attributes listed in Section 2.12 (on page 61), the new shell execution environment shall retain the working directory, file creation mask, and exported variables from the previous environment (that is, open files, traps, unexported variables, alias definitions, shell functions, and *set* options may be lost). All other aspects of the process environment that are preserved by the *exec* family of functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall also be preserved by *newgrp*; whether other aspects are preserved is unspecified.

A failure to assign the new group identifications (for example, for security or password-related reasons) shall not prevent the new shell execution environment from being created.

The *newgrp* utility shall affect the supplemental groups for the process as follows:

- On systems where the effective group ID is normally in the supplementary group list (or whenever the old effective group ID actually is in the supplementary group list):
  - If the new effective group ID is also in the supplementary group list, *newgrp* shall change the effective group ID.
  - If the new effective group ID is not in the supplementary group list, *newgrp* shall add the new effective group ID to the list, if there is room to add it.
- On systems where the effective group ID is not normally in the supplementary group list (or whenever the old effective group ID is not in the supplementary group list):
  - If the new effective group ID is in the supplementary group list, *newgrp* shall delete it.
  - If the old effective group ID is not in the supplementary list, *newgrp* shall add it if there is room.

Note: The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify whether the effective group ID of a process is included in its supplementary group list.

With no operands, *newgrp* shall change the effective group back to the groups identified in the user's user entry, and shall set the list of supplementary groups to that set in the user's group database entries.

If the first argument is `'-'`, the results are unspecified.

If a password is required for the specified group, and the user is not listed as a member of that group in the group database, the user shall be prompted to enter the correct password for that group. If the user is listed as a member of that group, no password shall be requested. If no password is required for the specified group, it is implementation-defined whether users not listed as members of that group can change to that group. Whether or not a password is required, implementation-defined system accounting or security mechanisms may impose additional authorization restrictions that may cause *newgrp* to write a diagnostic message and suppress the changing of the group identification.

26003 **OPTIONS**

26004 The *newgrp* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
26005 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for the unspecified usage of '–'.

26006 The following option shall be supported:

26007 **–l** (The letter ell.) Change the environment to what would be expected if the user
26008 actually logged in again.

26009 **OPERANDS**

26010 The following operand shall be supported:

26011 *group* A group name from the group database or a non-negative numeric group ID.
26012 Specifies the group ID to which the real and effective group IDs shall be set. If
26013 *group* is a non-negative numeric string and exists in the group database as a group
26014 name (see *getgrnam*()), the numeric group ID associated with that group name
26015 shall be used as the group ID.

26016 **STDIN**

26017 Not used.

26018 **INPUT FILES**

26019 The file **/dev/tty** shall be used to read a single line of text for password checking, when one is
26020 required.

26021 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

26022 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *newgrp*:

26023 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
26024 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
26025 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
26026 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

26027 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
26028 internationalization variables.

26029 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
26030 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
26031 arguments).

26032 *LC_MESSAGES*
26033 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
26034 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

26035 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

26036 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

26037 Default.

26038 **STDOUT**

26039 Not used.

26040 **STDERR**

26041 The standard error shall be used for diagnostic messages and a prompt string for a password, if
26042 one is required. Diagnostic messages may be written in cases where the exit status is not
26043 available. See the EXIT STATUS section.

26044 **OUTPUT FILES**

26045 None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

If *newgrp* succeeds in creating a new shell execution environment, whether or not the group identification was changed successfully, the exit status shall be the exit status of the shell. Otherwise, the following exit value shall be returned:

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

The invoking shell may terminate.

APPLICATION USAGE

There is no convenient way to enter a password into the group database. Use of group passwords is not encouraged, because by their very nature they encourage poor security practices. Group passwords may disappear in the future.

A common implementation of *newgrp* is that the current shell uses *exec* to overlay itself with *newgrp*, which in turn overlays itself with a new shell after changing group. On some implementations, however, this may not occur and *newgrp* may be invoked as a subprocess.

The *newgrp* command is intended only for use from an interactive terminal. It does not offer a useful interface for the support of applications.

The exit status of *newgrp* is generally inapplicable. If *newgrp* is used in a script, in most cases it successfully invokes a new shell and the rest of the original shell script is bypassed when the new shell exits. Used interactively, *newgrp* displays diagnostic messages to indicate problems. But usage such as:

```
newgrp foo
echo $?
```

is not useful because the new shell might not have access to any status *newgrp* may have generated (and most historical systems do not provide this status). A zero status echoed here does not necessarily indicate that the user has changed to the new group successfully. Following *newgrp* with the *id* command provides a portable means of determining whether the group change was successful or not.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

Most historical implementations use one of the *exec* functions to implement the behavior of *newgrp*. Errors detected before the *exec* leave the environment unchanged, while errors detected after the *exec* leave the user in a changed environment. While it would be useful to have *newgrp* issue a diagnostic message to tell the user that the environment changed, it would be inappropriate to require this change to some historical implementations.

The password mechanism is allowed in the group database, but how this would be implemented is not specified.

The *newgrp* utility was retained in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, even given the existence of the multiple group permissions feature in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, for several reasons. First, in some implementations, the group ownership of a newly created file is determined by the group of the directory in which the file is created, as allowed by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; on other implementations, the group ownership of a newly created file is determined by the effective group ID. On implementations of the latter type, *newgrp* allows files to be created with a specific group ownership. Finally, many implementations use the real group ID in accounting, and on such systems, *newgrp* allows the accounting identity of the user to be changed.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *sh*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *exec*, *getgrnam*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

The text describing supplemental groups is no longer conditional on {NGROUPS_MAX} being greater than 1. This is because {NGROUPS_MAX} now has a minimum value of 8. This is a FIPS requirement.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying the behavior if the first argument is '−'.

The *newgrp* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

nice — invoke a utility with an altered nice value

SYNOPSIS

```
nice [–n increment] utility [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *nice* utility shall invoke a utility, requesting that it be run with a different nice value (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.239, Nice Value). With no options, the executed utility shall be run with a nice value that is some implementation-defined quantity greater than or equal to the nice value of the current process. If the user lacks appropriate privileges to affect the nice value in the requested manner, the *nice* utility shall not affect the nice value; in this case, a warning message may be written to standard error, but this shall not prevent the invocation of *utility* or affect the exit status.

OPTIONS

The *nice* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option is supported:

–n *increment* A positive or negative decimal integer which shall have the same effect on the execution of the utility as if the utility had called the *nice*( ) function with the numeric value of the *increment* option-argument.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

utility The name of a utility that is to be invoked. If the *utility* operand names any of the special built-in utilities in Section 2.14 (on page 64), the results are undefined.

argument Any string to be supplied as an argument when invoking the utility named by the *utility* operand.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *nice*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PATH Determine the search path used to locate the utility to be invoked. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

If *utility* is invoked, the exit status of *nice* shall be the exit status of *utility*; otherwise, the *nice* utility shall exit with one of the following values:

1-125 An error occurred in the *nice* utility.

126 The utility specified by *utility* was found but could not be invoked.

127 The utility specified by *utility* could not be found.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The only guaranteed portable uses of this utility are:

nice utility
Run *utility* with the default higher or equal nice value.

nice **–n** <*positive integer*> *utility*
Run *utility* with a higher nice value.

On some implementations they have no discernible effect on the invoked utility and on some others they are exactly equivalent.

Historical systems have frequently supported the <*positive integer*> up to 20. Since there is no error penalty associated with guessing a number that is too high, users without access to the system conformance document (to see what limits are actually in place) could use the historical 1 to 20 range or attempt to use very large numbers if the job should be truly low priority.

The nice value of a process can be displayed using the command:

```
ps –o nice
```

The *command*, *env*, *nice*, *nohup*, *time*, and *xargs* utilities have been specified to use exit code 127 if an error occurs so that applications can distinguish "failure to find a utility" from "invoked utility exited with an error indication". The value 127 was chosen because it is not commonly used for other meanings; most utilities use small values for "normal error conditions" and the values above 128 can be confused with termination due to receipt of a signal. The value 126 was chosen in a similar manner to indicate that the utility could be found, but not invoked. Some scripts produce meaningful error messages differentiating the 126 and 127 cases. The distinction between exit codes 126 and 127 is based on KornShell practice that uses 127 when all attempts to *exec* the utility fail with [ENOENT], and uses 126 when any attempt to *exec* the utility fails for any other reason.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The 4.3 BSD version of *nice* does not check whether *increment* is a valid decimal integer. The command *nice* **–x** *utility*, for example, would be treated the same as the command *nice* **––1** *utility*. If the user does not have appropriate privileges, this results in a "permission denied" error. This is considered a bug.

When a user without appropriate privileges gives a negative *increment*, System V treats it like the command *nice* **–0** *utility*, while 4.3 BSD writes a "permission denied" message and does not run the utility. The standard specifies the System V behavior together with an optional BSD-style "permission denied" message.

The C shell has a built-in version of *nice* that has a different interface from the one described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The term "utility" is used, rather than "command", to highlight the fact that shell compound commands, pipelines, and so on, cannot be used. Special built-ins also cannot be used. However, "utility" includes user application programs and shell scripts, not just utilities defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Historical implementations of *nice* provide a nice value range of 40 or 41 discrete steps, with the default nice value being the midpoint of that range. By default, they raise the nice value of the executed utility by 10.

Some historical documentation states that the *increment* value must be within a fixed range. This is misleading; the valid *increment* values on any invocation are determined by the current process nice value, which is not always the default.

The definition of nice value is not intended to suggest that all processes in a system have priorities that are comparable. Scheduling policy extensions such as the realtime priorities in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x make the notion of a single underlying priority for all scheduling policies problematic. Some implementations may implement the *nice*-related features to affect all processes on the system, others to affect just the general time-sharing activities implied by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, and others may have no effect at all. Because of the use of "implementation-defined" in *nice* and *renice*, a wide range of implementation strategies are possible.

Earlier versions of this standard allowed a *–increment* option. This form is no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *renice*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *nice*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/18 is applied, deleting a paragraph of RATIONALE that referred to text no longer in the standard.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-32 and SD5-XCU-ERN-33 are applied, updating the DESCRIPTION, APPLICATION USAGE, and RATIONALE sections.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied.

The *nice* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

NAME

nl — line numbering filter

SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
nl [–p] [–b type] [–d delim] [–f type] [–h type] [–i incr] [–l num]
    [–n format] [–s sep] [–v startnum] [–w width] [file]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *nl* utility shall read lines from the named *file* or the standard input if no *file* is named and shall reproduce the lines to standard output. Lines shall be numbered on the left. Additional functionality may be provided in accordance with the command options in effect.

The *nl* utility views the text it reads in terms of logical pages. Line numbering shall be reset at the start of each logical page. A logical page consists of a header, a body, and a footer section. Empty sections are valid. Different line numbering options are independently available for header, body, and footer (for example, no numbering of header and footer lines while numbering blank lines only in the body).

The starts of logical page sections shall be signaled by input lines containing nothing but the following delimiter characters:

Line	Start of
`\:\:\:`	Header
`\:\:`	Body
`\:`	Footer

Unless otherwise specified, *nl* shall assume the text being read is in a single logical page body.

OPTIONS

The *nl* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines. Only one file can be named.

The following options shall be supported:

–b *type* Specify which logical page body lines shall be numbered. Recognized *types* and their meaning are:

- **a** Number all lines.
- **t** Number only non-empty lines.
- **n** No line numbering.
- **p***string* Number only lines that contain the basic regular expression specified in *string*.

The default *type* for logical page body shall be **t** (text lines numbered).

–d *delim* Specify the delimiter characters that indicate the start of a logical page section. These can be changed from the default characters `"\:"` to two user-specified characters. If only one character is entered, the second character shall remain the default character `':'`.

–f *type* Specify the same as **b** *type* except for footer. The default for logical page footer shall be **n** (no lines numbered).

–h *type* Specify the same as **b** *type* except for header. The default *type* for logical page header shall be **n** (no lines numbered).

26292 **–i** *incr* Specify the increment value used to number logical page lines. The default shall be
26293 1.

26294 **–l** *num* Specify the number of blank lines to be considered as one. For example, **–l 2** results
26295 in only the second adjacent blank line being numbered (if the appropriate **–h a**,
26296 **–b a**, or **–f a** option is set). The default shall be 1.

26297 **–n** *format* Specify the line numbering format. Recognized values are: **ln**, left justified, leading
26298 zeros suppressed; **rn**, right justified, leading zeros suppressed; **rz**, right justified,
26299 leading zeros kept. The default *format* shall be **rn** (right justified).

26300 **–p** Specify that numbering should not be restarted at logical page delimiters.

26301 **–s** *sep* Specify the characters used in separating the line number and the corresponding
26302 text line. The default *sep* shall be a <tab>.

26303 **–v** *startnum* Specify the initial value used to number logical page lines. The default shall be 1.

26304 **–w** *width* Specify the number of characters to be used for the line number. The default *width*
26305 shall be 6.

26306 **OPERANDS**

26307 The following operand shall be supported:

26308 *file* A pathname of a text file to be line-numbered.

26309 **STDIN**

26310 The standard input is a text file that is used if no *file* operand is given.

26311 **INPUT FILES**

26312 The input file named by the *file* operand is a text file.

26313 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

26314 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *nl*:

26315 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
26316 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
26317 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
26318 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

26319 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
26320 internationalization variables.

26321 *LC_COLLATE*
26322 Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-
26323 character collating elements within regular expressions.

26324 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
26325 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
26326 arguments and input files), the behavior of character classes within regular
26327 expressions, and for deciding which characters are in character class **graph** (for the
26328 **–b t**, **–f t**, and **–h t** options).

26329 *LC_MESSAGES*
26330 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
26331 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

26332 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

26333 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
26334 Default.

26335 **STDOUT**
26336 The standard output shall be a text file in the following format:

26337 `"%s%s%s", <line number>, <separator>, <input line>`

26338 where <*line number*> is one of the following numeric formats:

26339 `%6d` When the **rn** format is used (the default; see –**n**).

26340 `%06d` When the **rz** format is used.

26341 `%–6d` When the **ln** format is used.

26342 <empty> When line numbers are suppressed for a portion of the page; the <*separator*> is also
26343 suppressed.

26344 In the preceding list, the number 6 is the default width; the –**w** option can change this value.

26345 **STDERR**
26346 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

26347 **OUTPUT FILES**
26348 None.

26349 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
26350 None.

26351 **EXIT STATUS**
26352 The following exit values shall be returned:

26353 0 Successful completion.

26354 >0 An error occurred.

26355 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
26356 Default.

26357 **APPLICATION USAGE**
26358 In using the –**d** *delim* option, care should be taken to escape characters that have special meaning
26359 to the command interpreter.

26360 **EXAMPLES**
26361 The command:

26362 `nl –v 10 –i 10 –d \!+ file1`

26363 numbers *file1* starting at line number 10 with an increment of 10. The logical page delimiter is
26364 `"!+"`. Note that the `'!'` has to be escaped when using *csh* as a command interpreter because of
26365 its history substitution syntax. For *ksh* and *sh* the escape is not necessary, but does not do any
26366 harm.

26367 **RATIONALE**
26368 None.

26369 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
26370 None.

26371 **SEE ALSO**
26372 *pr*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The option [**–f** *type*] is added to the SYNOPSIS. The option descriptions are presented in alphabetic order. The description of **–bt** is changed to "Number only non-empty lines".

Issue 6

The obsolescent behavior allowing the options to be intermingled with the optional *file* operand is removed.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

nm — write the name list of an object file (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

SD
```
nm [–APv] [–g|–u] [–t format] file...
```
XSI
```
nm [–APv] [–efox] [–g|–u] [–t format] file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *nm* utility shall display symbolic information appearing in the object file, executable file, or object-file library named by *file*. If no symbolic information is available for a valid input file, the *nm* utility shall report that fact, but not consider it an error condition.

XSI The default base used when numeric values are written is unspecified. On XSI-conformant systems, it shall be decimal.

OPTIONS

The *nm* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–A Write the full pathname or library name of an object on each line.

XSI **–e** Write only external (global) and static symbol information.

XSI **–f** Produce full output. Write redundant symbols (**.text**, **.data**, and **.bss**), normally suppressed.

–g Write only external (global) symbol information.

XSI **–o** Write numeric values in octal (equivalent to **–t o**).

–P Write information in a portable output format, as specified in the STDOUT section.

–t *format* Write each numeric value in the specified format. The format shall be dependent on the single character used as the *format* option-argument:

XSI
- d The offset is written in decimal (default).
- o The offset is written in octal.
- x The offset is written in hexadecimal.

–u Write only undefined symbols.

–v Sort output by value instead of alphabetically.

XSI **–x** Write numeric values in hexadecimal (equivalent to **–t x**).

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of an object file, executable file, or object-file library.

STDIN

See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input file shall be an object file, an object-file library whose format is the same as those produced by the *ar* utility for link editing, or an executable file. The *nm* utility may accept additional implementation-defined object library formats for the input file.

26422 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

26423 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *nm*:

26424 26425 26426 26427 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

26428 26429 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

26430 26431 26432 *LC_COLLATE* Determine the locale for character collation information for the symbol-name and symbol-value collation sequences.

26433 26434 26435 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

26436 26437 26438 *LC_MESSAGES* Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

26439 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

26440 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

26441 Default.

26442 **STDOUT**

26443 26444 26445 If symbolic information is present in the input files, then for each file or for each member of an archive, the *nm* utility shall write the following information to standard output. By default, the format is unspecified, but the output shall be sorted alphabetically by symbol name:

26446 - Library or object name, if **–A** is specified
26447 - Symbol name
26448 26449 - Symbol type, which shall either be one of the following single characters or an implementation-defined type represented by a single character:

26450 `A` Global absolute symbol.

26451 `a` Local absolute symbol.

26452 `B` Global “bss” (that is, uninitialized data space) symbol.

26453 `b` Local bss symbol.

26454 `D` Global data symbol.

26455 `d` Local data symbol.

26456 `T` Global text symbol.

26457 `t` Local text symbol.

26458 `U` Undefined symbol.

26459 - Value of the symbol
26460 - The size associated with the symbol, if applicable

26461 26462 This information may be supplemented by additional information specific to the implementation.

26463 If the **–P** option is specified, the previous information shall be displayed using the following

26464 portable format. The three versions differ depending on whether **–t d**, **–t o**, or **–t x** was specified,
26465 respectively:

26466 `"%s%s %s %d %d\n", <library/object name>, <name>, <type>,`
26467 `<value>, <size>`

26468 `"%s%s %s %o %o\n", <library/object name>, <name>, <type>,`
26469 `<value>, <size>`

26470 `"%s%s %s %x %x\n", <library/object name>, <name>, <type>,`
26471 `<value>, <size>`

26472 where <*library/object name*> shall be formatted as follows:

26473 • If **–A** is not specified, <*library/object name*> shall be an empty string.

26474 • If **–A** is specified and the corresponding *file* operand does not name a library:

26475 `"%s: ", <file>`

26476 • If **–A** is specified and the corresponding *file* operand names a library. In this case,
26477 <*object file*> shall name the object file in the library containing the symbol being described:

26478 `"%s[%s]: ", <file>, <object file>`

26479 If **–A** is not specified, then if more than one *file* operand is specified or if only one *file* operand is
26480 specified and it names a library, *nm* shall write a line identifying the object containing the
26481 following symbols before the lines containing those symbols, in the form:

26482 • If the corresponding *file* operand does not name a library:

26483 `"%s:\n", <file>`

26484 • If the corresponding *file* operand names a library; in this case, <*object file*> shall be the
26485 name of the file in the library containing the following symbols:

26486 `"%s[%s]:\n", <file>, <object file>`

26487 If **–P** is specified, but **–t** is not, the format shall be as if **–t x** had been specified.

26488 **STDERR**

26489 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

26490 **OUTPUT FILES**

26491 None.

26492 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

26493 None.

26494 **EXIT STATUS**

26495 The following exit values shall be returned:

26496 0 Successful completion.

26497 >0 An error occurred.

26498 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

26499 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Mechanisms for dynamic linking make this utility less meaningful when applied to an executable file because a dynamically linked executable may omit numerous library routines that would be found in a statically linked executable.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

Historical implementations of *nm* have used different bases for numeric output and supplied different default types of symbols that were reported. The **–t** *format* option, similar to that used in *od* and *strings*, can be used to specify the numeric base; **–g** and **–u** can be used to restrict the amount of output or the types of symbols included in the output.

The compromise of using **–t** *format versus* using **–d**, **–o**, and other similar options was necessary because of differences in the meaning of **–o** between implementations. The **–o** option from BSD has been provided here as **–A** to avoid confusion with the **–o** from System V (which has been provided here as **–t** and as **–o** on XSI-conformant systems).

The option list was significantly reduced from that provided by historical implementations.

The *nm* description is a subset of both the System V and BSD *nm* utilities with no specified default output.

It was recognized that mechanisms for dynamic linking make this utility less meaningful when applied to an executable file (because a dynamically linked executable file may omit numerous library routines that would be found in a statically linked executable file), but the value of *nm* during software development was judged to outweigh other limitations.

The default output format of *nm* is not specified because of differences in historical implementations. The **–P** option was added to allow some type of portable output format. After a comparison of the different formats used in SunOS, BSD, SVR3, and SVR4, it was decided to create one that did not match the current format of any of these four systems. The format devised is easy to parse by humans, easy to parse in shell scripts, and does not need to vary depending on locale (because no English descriptions are included). All of the systems currently have the information available to use this format.

The format given in *nm* STDOUT uses spaces between the fields, which may be any number of <blank>s required to align the columns. The single-character types were selected to match historical practice, and the requirement that implementation additions also be single characters made parsing the information easier for shell scripts.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

ar, *c99*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as supported when both the User Portability Utilities option and the Software Development Utilities option are supported.

Issue 7

The *nm* utility is removed from the User Portability Utilities option. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

nohup — invoke a utility immune to hangups

SYNOPSIS

```
nohup utility [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *nohup* utility shall invoke the utility named by the *utility* operand with arguments supplied as the *argument* operands. At the time the named *utility* is invoked, the SIGHUP signal shall be set to be ignored.

If standard input is associated with a terminal, the *nohup* utility may redirect standard input from an unspecified file.

If the standard output is a terminal, all output written by the named *utility* to its standard output shall be appended to the end of the file **nohup.out** in the current directory. If **nohup.out** cannot be created or opened for appending, the output shall be appended to the end of the file **nohup.out** in the directory specified by the *HOME* environment variable. If neither file can be created or opened for appending, *utility* shall not be invoked. If a file is created, the file's permission bits shall be set to S_IRUSR | S_IWUSR.

If standard error is a terminal and standard output is open but is not a terminal, all output written by the named utility to its standard error shall be redirected to the same open file description as the standard output. If standard error is a terminal and standard output either is a terminal or is closed, the same output shall instead be appended to the end of the **nohup.out** file as described above.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

utility The name of a utility that is to be invoked. If the *utility* operand names any of the special built-in utilities in Section 2.14 (on page 64), the results are undefined.

argument Any string to be supplied as an argument when invoking the utility named by the *utility* operand.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *nohup*:

HOME Determine the pathname of the user's home directory: if the output file **nohup.out** cannot be created in the current directory, the *nohup* utility shall use the directory named by *HOME* to create the file.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PATH Determine the search path that is used to locate the utility to be invoked. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

The *nohup* utility shall take the standard action for all signals except that SIGHUP shall be ignored.

STDOUT

If the standard output is not a terminal, the standard output of *nohup* shall be the standard output generated by the execution of the *utility* specified by the operands. Otherwise, nothing shall be written to the standard output.

STDERR

If the standard output is a terminal, a message shall be written to the standard error, indicating the name of the file to which the output is being appended. The name of the file shall be either **nohup.out** or **$HOME/nohup.out**.

OUTPUT FILES

Output written by the named utility is appended to the file **nohup.out** (or **$HOME/nohup.out**), if the conditions hold as described in the DESCRIPTION.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

126 The utility specified by *utility* was found but could not be invoked.

127 An error occurred in the *nohup* utility or the utility specified by *utility* could not be found.

Otherwise, the exit status of *nohup* shall be that of the utility specified by the *utility* operand.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *command*, *env*, *nice*, *nohup*, *time*, and *xargs* utilities have been specified to use exit code 127 if an error occurs so that applications can distinguish "failure to find a utility" from "invoked utility exited with an error indication". The value 127 was chosen because it is not commonly used for other meanings; most utilities use small values for "normal error conditions" and the values above 128 can be confused with termination due to receipt of a signal. The value 126 was chosen in a similar manner to indicate that the utility could be found, but not invoked. Some scripts produce meaningful error messages differentiating the 126 and 127 cases. The distinction between exit codes 126 and 127 is based on KornShell practice that uses 127 when all attempts to *exec* the utility fail with [ENOENT], and uses 126 when any attempt to *exec* the utility fails for any other reason.

EXAMPLES

It is frequently desirable to apply *nohup* to pipelines or lists of commands. This can be done by placing pipelines and command lists in a single file; this file can then be invoked as a utility, and the *nohup* applies to everything in the file.

Alternatively, the following command can be used to apply *nohup* to a complex command:

```
nohup sh –c 'complex-command-line' </dev/null
```

RATIONALE

The 4.3 BSD version ignores SIGTERM and SIGHUP, and if **./nohup.out** cannot be used, it fails instead of trying to use **$HOME/nohup.out**.

The *csh* utility has a built-in version of *nohup* that acts differently from the *nohup* defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The term *utility* is used, rather than *command*, to highlight the fact that shell compound commands, pipelines, special built-ins, and so on, cannot be used directly. However, *utility* includes user application programs and shell scripts, not just the standard utilities.

Historical versions of the *nohup* utility use default file creation semantics. Some more recent versions use the permissions specified here as an added security precaution.

Some historical implementations ignore SIGQUIT in addition to SIGHUP; others ignore SIGTERM. An early proposal allowed, but did not require, SIGQUIT to be ignored. Several reviewers objected that *nohup* should only modify the handling of SIGHUP as required by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Historical versions of *nohup* did not affect standard input, but that causes problems in the common scenario where the user logs into a system, types the command:

```
nohup make &
```

at the prompt, and then logs out. If standard input is not affected by *nohup*, the login session may not terminate for quite some time, since standard input remains open until *make* exits. To avoid this problem, this standard allows implementations to redirect standard input if it is a terminal. Since the behavior is implementation-defined, portable applications that may run into the problem should redirect standard input themselves. For example, instead of:

```
nohup make &
```

an application can invoke:

```
nohup make </dev/null &
```

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *sh*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *signal*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretations 1003.1-2001 #104, #105, and #106 are applied.

NAME

od — dump files in various formats

SYNOPSIS

```
od [–v] [–A address_base] [–j skip] [–N count] [–t type_string]...
    [file...]
```

XSI

```
od [–bcdosx] [file] [[+]offset[.][b]]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *od* utility shall write the contents of its input files to standard output in a user-specified format.

OPTIONS

The *od* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the order of presentation of the **–t** options and the **–bcdosx** options is significant.

The following options shall be supported:

–A *address_base*
: Specify the input offset base. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section. The application shall ensure that the *address_base* option-argument is a character. The characters `'d'`, `'o'`, and `'x'` specify that the offset base shall be written in decimal, octal, or hexadecimal, respectively. The character `'n'` specifies that the offset shall not be written.

XSI **–b**
: Interpret bytes in octal. This shall be equivalent to **–t o1**.

XSI **–c**
: Interpret bytes as characters specified by the current setting of the *LC_CTYPE* category. Certain non-graphic characters appear as C escapes: `"NUL=\0"`, `"BS=\b"`, `"FF=\f"`, `"NL=\n"`, `"CR=\r"`, `"HT=\t"`; others appear as 3-digit octal numbers.

XSI **–d**
: Interpret *word*s (two-byte units) in unsigned decimal. This shall be equivalent to **–t u2**.

–j *skip*
: Jump over *skip* bytes from the beginning of the input. The *od* utility shall read or seek past the first *skip* bytes in the concatenated input files. If the combined input is not at least *skip* bytes long, the *od* utility shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and exit with a non-zero exit status.

  By default, the *skip* option-argument shall be interpreted as a decimal number. With a leading 0x or 0X, the offset shall be interpreted as a hexadecimal number; otherwise, with a leading `'0'`, the offset shall be interpreted as an octal number. Appending the character `'b'`, `'k'`, or `'m'` to offset shall cause it to be interpreted as a multiple of 512, 1 024, or 1 048 576 bytes, respectively. If the *skip* number is hexadecimal, any appended `'b'` shall be considered to be the final hexadecimal digit.

–N *count*
: Format no more than *count* bytes of input. By default, *count* shall be interpreted as a decimal number. With a leading 0x or 0X, *count* shall be interpreted as a hexadecimal number; otherwise, with a leading `'0'`, it shall be interpreted as an octal number. If *count* bytes of input (after successfully skipping, if **–j** *skip* is specified) are not available, it shall not be considered an error; the *od* utility shall format the input that is available.

26718 XSI **–o** Interpret *word*s (two-byte units) in octal. This shall be equivalent to **–t o2**.

26719 XSI **–s** Interpret *word*s (two-byte units) in signed decimal. This shall be equivalent to
26720 **–t d2**.

26721 **–t** *type_string*
26722 Specify one or more output types. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section. The
26723 application shall ensure that the *type_string* option-argument is a string specifying
26724 the types to be used when writing the input data. The string shall consist of the
26725 type specification characters `a`, `c`, `d`, `f`, `o`, `u`, and `x`, specifying named character,
26726 character, signed decimal, floating point, octal, unsigned decimal, and
26727 hexadecimal, respectively. The type specification characters `d`, `f`, `o`, `u`, and `x` can be
26728 followed by an optional unsigned decimal integer that specifies the number of
26729 bytes to be transformed by each instance of the output type. The type specification
26730 character `f` can be followed by an optional `F`, `D`, or `L` indicating that the conversion
26731 should be applied to an item of type **float**, **double**, or **long double**, respectively.
26732 The type specification characters `d`, `o`, `u`, and `x` can be followed by an optional `C`, `S`,
26733 `I`, or `L` indicating that the conversion should be applied to an item of type **char**,
26734 **short**, **int**, or **long**, respectively. Multiple types can be concatenated within the
26735 same *type_string* and multiple **–t** options can be specified. Output lines shall be
26736 written for each type specified in the order in which the type specification
26737 characters are specified.

26738 **–v** Write all input data. Without the **–v** option, any number of groups of output lines,
26739 which would be identical to the immediately preceding group of output lines
26740 (except for the byte offsets), shall be replaced with a line containing only an
26741 asterisk (`'*'`).

26742 XSI **–x** Interpret *word*s (two-byte units) in hexadecimal. This shall be equivalent to **–t x2**.

26743 XSI Multiple types can be specified by using multiple **–bcdostx** options. Output lines are written for
26744 each type specified in the order in which the types are specified.

26745 **OPERANDS**

26746 The following operands shall be supported:

26747 *file* A pathname of a file to be read. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input
26748 shall be used.

26749 If there are no more than two operands, none of the **–A**, **–j**, **–N**, **–t**, or **–v** options is
26750 specified, and either of the following is true: the first character of the last operand
26751 is a plus sign (`'+'`), or there are two operands and the first character of the last
26752 XSI operand is numeric; the last operand shall be interpreted as an offset operand on
26753 XSI-conformant systems. Under these conditions, the results are unspecified on
26754 systems that are not XSI-conformant systems.

26755 XSI **[+]***offset***[.][b]** The *offset* operand specifies the offset in the file where dumping is to commence.
26756 This operand is normally interpreted as octal bytes. If `'.'` is appended, the offset
26757 shall be interpreted in decimal. If `'b'` is appended, the offset shall be interpreted
26758 in units of 512 bytes.

26759 **STDIN**

26760 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES
26761 section.

26762 **INPUT FILES**

26763 The input files can be any file type.

26764 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

26765 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *od*:

26766 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
26767 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
26768 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
26769 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

26770 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
26771 internationalization variables.

26772 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
26773 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
26774 arguments and input files).

26775 *LC_MESSAGES*
26776 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
26777 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

26778 *LC_NUMERIC*
26779 Determine the locale for selecting the radix character used when writing floating-
26780 point formatted output.

26781 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

26782 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

26783 Default.

26784 **STDOUT**

26785 See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

26786 **STDERR**

26787 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

26788 **OUTPUT FILES**

26789 None.

26790 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

26791 The *od* utility shall copy sequentially each input file to standard output, transforming the input
26792 XSI data according to the output types specified by the **–t** option or the **–bcdosx** options. If no
26793 output type is specified, the default output shall be as if **–t oS** had been specified.

26794 The number of bytes transformed by the output type specifier `c` may be variable depending on
26795 the *LC_CTYPE* category.

26796 The default number of bytes transformed by output type specifiers `d`, `f`, `o`, `u`, and `x` corresponds
26797 to the various C-language types as follows. If the *c99* compiler is present on the system, these
26798 specifiers shall correspond to the sizes used by default in that compiler. Otherwise, these sizes
26799 may vary among systems that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

26800 • For the type specifier characters `d`, `o`, `u`, and `x`, the default number of bytes shall
26801 correspond to the size of the underlying implementation's basic integer type. For these
26802 specifier characters, the implementation shall support values of the optional number of
26803 bytes to be converted corresponding to the number of bytes in the C-language types **char**,
26804 **short**, **int**, and **long**. These numbers can also be specified by an application as the
26805 characters `'C'`, `'S'`, `'I'`, and `'L'`, respectively. The implementation shall also support
26806 the values 1, 2, 4, and 8, even if it provides no C-Language types of those sizes. The
26807 implementation shall support the decimal value corresponding to the C-language type
26808 **long long**. The byte order used when interpreting numeric values is implementation-
26809 defined, but shall correspond to the order in which a constant of the corresponding type is
26810 stored in memory on the system.

- For the type specifier character `f`, the default number of bytes shall correspond to the number of bytes in the underlying implementation's basic double precision floating-point data type. The implementation shall support values of the optional number of bytes to be converted corresponding to the number of bytes in the C-language types **float, double**, and **long double**. These numbers can also be specified by an application as the characters `'F'`, `'D'`, and `'L'`, respectively.

The type specifier character `a` specifies that bytes shall be interpreted as named characters from the International Reference Version (IRV) of the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard. Only the least significant seven bits of each byte shall be used for this type specification. Bytes with the values listed in the following table shall be written using the corresponding names for those characters.

Table 4-12 Named Characters in *od*

Value	Name	Value	Name	Value	Name	Value	Name
\000	**nul**	\001	**soh**	\002	**stx**	\003	**etx**
\004	**eot**	\005	**enq**	\006	**ack**	\007	**bel**
\010	**bs**	\011	**ht**	\012	**lf** or **nl***	\013	**vt**
\014	**ff**	\015	**cr**	\016	**so**	\017	**si**
\020	**dle**	\021	**dc1**	\022	**dc2**	\023	**dc3**
\024	**dc4**	\025	**nak**	\026	**syn**	\027	**etb**
\030	**can**	\031	**em**	\032	**sub**	\033	**esc**
\034	**fs**	\035	**gs**	\036	**rs**	\037	**us**
\040	**sp**	\177	**del**				

Note: The `"\012"` value may be written either as **lf** or **nl**.

The type specifier character `c` specifies that bytes shall be interpreted as characters specified by the current setting of the *LC_CTYPE* locale category. Characters listed in the table in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`) shall be written as the corresponding escape sequences, except that backslash shall be written as a single backslash and a NUL shall be written as `'\0'`. Other non-printable characters shall be written as one three-digit octal number for each byte in the character. Printable multi-byte characters shall be written in the area corresponding to the first byte of the character; the two-character sequence `"**"` shall be written in the area corresponding to each remaining byte in the character, as an indication that the character is continued. When either the **–j** *skip* or **–N** *count* option is specified along with the `c` type specifier, and this results in an attempt to start or finish in the middle of a multi-byte character, the result is implementation-defined.

The input data shall be manipulated in blocks, where a block is defined as a multiple of the least common multiple of the number of bytes transformed by the specified output types. If the least common multiple is greater than 16, the results are unspecified. Each input block shall be written as transformed by each output type, one per written line, in the order that the output types were specified. If the input block size is larger than the number of bytes transformed by the output type, the output type shall sequentially transform the parts of the input block, and the output from each of the transformations shall be separated by one or more <blank>s.

If, as a result of the specification of the **–N** option or end-of-file being reached on the last input file, input data only partially satisfies an output type, the input shall be extended sufficiently with null bytes to write the last byte of the input.

Unless **–A n** is specified, the first output line produced for each input block shall be preceded by the input offset, cumulative across input files, of the next byte to be written. The format of the input offset is unspecified; however, it shall not contain any <blank>s, shall start at the first character of the output line, and shall be followed by one or more <blank>s. In addition, the offset of the byte following the last byte written shall be written after all the input data has been

processed, but shall not be followed by any <blank>s.

If no **–A** option is specified, the input offset base is unspecified.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were processed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

XSI-conformant applications are warned not to use filenames starting with '+' or a first operand starting with a numeric character so that the old functionality can be maintained by implementations, unless they specify one of the **–A**, **–j**, or **–N** options. To guarantee that one of these filenames is always interpreted as a filename, an application could always specify the address base format with the **–A** option.

EXAMPLES

If a file containing 128 bytes with decimal values zero to 127, in increasing order, is supplied as standard input to the command:

```
od –A d –t a
```

on an implementation using an input block size of 16 bytes, the standard output, independent of the current locale setting, would be similar to:

```
0000000 nul soh stx etx eot enq ack bel  bs  ht  nl  vt  ff  cr  so  si
0000016 dle dc1 dc2 dc3 dc4 nak syn etb can  em sub esc  fs  gs  rs  us
0000032  sp   !   "   #   $   %   &   ’   (   )   *   +   ,   –   .   /
0000048   0   1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9   :   ;   <   =   >   ?
0000064   @   A   B   C   D   E   F   G   H   I   J   K   L   M   N   O
0000080   P   Q   R   S   T   U   V   W   X   Y   Z   [   \   ]   ^   _
0000096   ‘   a   b   c   d   e   f   g   h   i   j   k   l   m   n   o
0000112   p   q   r   s   t   u   v   w   x   y   z   {   |   }   ~ del
0000128
```

Note that this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x allows **nl** or **lf** to be used as the name for the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV character with decimal value 10. The IRV names this character **lf** (line feed), but traditional implementations have referred to this character as newline (**nl**) and the POSIX locale character set symbolic name for the corresponding character is a <newline>.

The command:

```
od –A o –t o2x2x –N 18
```

on a system with 32-bit words and an implementation using an input block size of 16 bytes could write 18 bytes in approximately the following format:

```
0000000 032056 031440 041123 042040 052516 044530 020043 031464
          342e   3320   4253   4420   554e   4958   2023   3334
             342e3320       42534420       554e4958       20233334
0000020 032472
          353a
             353a0000
0000022
```

The command:

```
od –A d –t f –t o4 –t x4 –N 24 –j 0x15
```

on a system with 64-bit doubles (for example, IEEE Std 754-1985 double precision floating-point format) would skip 21 bytes of input data and then write 24 bytes in approximately the following format:

```
0000000    1.00000000000000e+00    1.57350000000000e+01
        07774000000 00000000000 10013674121 35341217270
           3ff00000    00000000    402f3851    eb851eb8
0000016    1.40668230000000e+02
        10030312542 04370303230
           40619562    23e18698
0000024
```

RATIONALE

The *od* utility went through several names in early proposals, including *hd*, *xd*, and most recently *hexdump*. There were several objections to all of these based on the following reasons:

- The *hd* and *xd* names conflicted with historical utilities that behaved differently.
- The *hexdump* description was much more complex than needed for a simple dump utility.
- The *od* utility has been available on all historical implementations and there was no need to create a new name for a utility so similar to the historical *od* utility.

The original reasons for not standardizing historical *od* were also fairly widespread. Those reasons are given below along with rationale explaining why the standard developers believe that this version does not suffer from the indicated problem:

- The BSD and System V versions of *od* have diverged, and the intersection of features provided by both does not meet the needs of the user community. In fact, the System V version only provides a mechanism for dumping octal bytes and **short**s, signed and unsigned decimal **short**s, hexadecimal **short**s, and ASCII characters. BSD added the ability to dump **float**s, **double**s, named ASCII characters, and octal, signed decimal, unsigned decimal, and hexadecimal **long**s. The version presented here provides more normalized forms for dumping bytes, **short**s, **int**s, and **long**s in octal, signed decimal, unsigned decimal, and hexadecimal; **float**, **double**, and **long double**; and named ASCII as well as current locale characters.
- It would not be possible to come up with a compatible superset of the BSD and System V flags that met the requirements of the standard developers. The historical default *od* output is the specified default output of this utility. None of the option letters chosen for this version of *od* conflict with any of the options to historical versions of *od*.
- On systems with different sizes for **short**, **int**, and **long**, there was no way to ask for dumps of **int**s, even in the BSD version. Because of the way options are named, the name space could not be extended to solve these problems. This is why the **–t** option was added (with type specifiers more closely matched to the *printf*( ) formats used in the rest of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x) and the optional field sizes were added to the `d`, `f`, `o`, `u`, and `x` type specifiers. It is also one of the reasons why the historical practice was not mandated as a required obsolescent form of *od*. (Although the old versions of *od* are not listed as an obsolescent form, implementations are urged to continue to recognize the older forms for several more years.) The `a`, `c`, `f`, `o`, and `x` types match the meaning of the corresponding format characters in the historical implementations of *od* except for the default sizes of the fields converted. The `d` format is signed in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to match the *printf*( ) notation. (Historical versions of *od* used `d` as a synonym for `u` in this version. The System V implementation uses `s` for signed decimal; BSD uses `i` for signed decimal and `s` for null-terminated strings.) Other than `d` and `u`, all of the type specifiers match format characters in the historical BSD version of **od**.

  The sizes of the C-language types **char**, **short**, **int**, **long**, **float**, **double**, and **long double** are

used even though it is recognized that there may be zero or more than one compiler for the C language on an implementation and that they may use different sizes for some of these types. (For example, one compiler might use 2 bytes **short**s, 2 bytes **int**s, and 4 bytes **long**s, while another compiler (or an option to the same compiler) uses 2 bytes **short**s, 4 bytes **int**s, and 4 bytes **long**s.) Nonetheless, there has to be a basic size known by the implementation for these types, corresponding to the values reported by invocations of the *getconf* utility when called with *system_var* operands {UCHAR_MAX}, {USHORT_MAX}, {UINT_MAX}, and {ULONG_MAX} for the types **char**, **short**, **int**, and **long**, respectively. There are similar constants required by the ISO C standard, but not required by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x or this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. They are {FLT_MANT_DIG}, {DBL_MANT_DIG}, and {LDBL_MANT_DIG} for the types **float**, **double**, and **long double**, respectively. If the optional *c99* utility is provided by the implementation and used as specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, these are the sizes that would be provided. If an option is used that specifies different sizes for these types, there is no guarantee that the *od* utility is able to interpret binary data output by such a program correctly.

This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the numeric values of these lengths be recognized by the *od* utility and that symbolic forms also be recognized. Thus, a conforming application can always look at an array of **unsigned long** data elements using *od* **–t** *uL*.

- The method of specifying the format for the address field based on specifying a starting offset in a file unnecessarily tied the two together. The **–A** option now specifies the address base and the **–S** option specifies a starting offset.
- It would be difficult to break the dependence on U.S. ASCII to achieve an internationalized utility. It does not seem to be any harder for *od* to dump characters in the current locale than it is for the *ed* or *sed* **l** commands. The `c` type specifier does this without difficulty and is completely compatible with the historical implementations of the **c** format character when the current locale uses a superset of the ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard as a codeset. The `a` type specifier (from the BSD **a** format character) was left as a portable means to dump ASCII (or more correctly ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard (IRV)) so that headers produced by *pax* could be deciphered even on systems that do not use the ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard as a subset of their base codeset.

The use of "**" as an indication of continuation of a multi-byte character in `c` specifier output was chosen based on seeing an implementation that uses this method. The continuation bytes have to be marked in a way that is not ambiguous with another single-byte or multi-byte character.

An early proposal used **–S** and **–n**, respectively, for the **–j** and **–N** options eventually selected. These were changed to avoid conflicts with historical implementations.

The original standard specified **–t o2** as the default when no output type was given. This was changed to **–t oS** (the length of a **short**) to accommodate a supercomputer implementation that historically used 64 bits as its default (and that defined shorts as 64 bits). This change should not affect conforming applications. The requirement to support lengths of 1, 2, and 4 was added at the same time to address an historical implementation that had no two-byte data types in its C compiler.

The use of a basic integer data type is intended to allow the implementation to choose a word size commonly used by applications on that architecture.

Previous versions of this standard allowed for implementations with bytes other than eight bits, but this has been modified in this version.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

All option and operand interfaces marked as extensions may be withdrawn in a future version.

SEE ALSO

c99, *sed*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

In the description of the **–c** option, the phrase "This is equivalent to **–t c**." is deleted.

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is modified.

Issue 6

The *od* utility is changed to remove the assumption that **short** was a two-byte entity, as per the revisions in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/33 is applied, correcting the examples which used an undefined **–n** option, which should have been **–N**.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/19 is applied, removing text describing behavior on systems with bytes consisting of more than eight bits.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-37 is applied, updating the OPERANDS section.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

paste — merge corresponding or subsequent lines of files

SYNOPSIS

```
paste [–s] [–d list] file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *paste* utility shall concatenate the corresponding lines of the given input files, and write the resulting lines to standard output.

The default operation of *paste* shall concatenate the corresponding lines of the input files. The <newline> of every line except the line from the last input file shall be replaced with a <tab>.

If an end-of-file condition is detected on one or more input files, but not all input files, *paste* shall behave as though empty lines were read from the files on which end-of-file was detected, unless the –**s** option is specified.

OPTIONS

The *paste* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–**d** *list* Unless a backslash character appears in *list*, each character in *list* is an element specifying a delimiter character. If a backslash character appears in *list*, the backslash character and one or more characters following it are an element specifying a delimiter character as described below. These elements specify one or more delimiters to use, instead of the default <tab>, to replace the <newline> of the input lines. The elements in *list* shall be used circularly; that is, when the list is exhausted the first element from the list is reused. When the –**s** option is specified:

- The last <newline> in a file shall not be modified.
- The delimiter shall be reset to the first element of *list* after each *file* operand is processed.

When the –**s** option is not specified:

- The <newline>s in the file specified by the last *file* operand shall not be modified.
- The delimiter shall be reset to the first element of list each time a line is processed from each file.

If a backslash character appears in *list*, it and the character following it shall be used to represent the following delimiter characters:

`\n` <newline>.

`\t` <tab>.

`\\` Backslash character.

`\0`

27064 **–s** Concatenate all of the lines of each separate input file in command line order. The
27065 <newline> of every line except the last line in each input file shall be replaced with
27066 the <tab>, unless otherwise specified by the **–d** option.

27067 **OPERANDS**

27068 The following operand shall be supported:

27069 *file* A pathname of an input file. If '–' is specified for one or more of the *file*s, the
27070 standard input shall be used; the standard input shall be read one line at a time,
27071 circularly, for each instance of '–'. Implementations shall support pasting of at
27072 least 12 *file* operands.

27073 **STDIN**

27074 The standard input shall be used only if one or more *file* operands is '–'. See the INPUT FILES
27075 section.

27076 **INPUT FILES**

27077 The input files shall be text files, except that line lengths shall be unlimited.

27078 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

27079 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *paste*:

27080 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
27081 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
27082 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
27083 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

27084 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
27085 internationalization variables.

27086 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
27087 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
27088 arguments and input files).

27089 *LC_MESSAGES*
27090 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
27091 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

27092 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

27093 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

27094 Default.

27095 **STDOUT**

27096 Concatenated lines of input files shall be separated by the <tab> (or other characters under the
27097 control of the **–d** option) and terminated by a <newline>.

27098 **STDERR**

27099 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

27100 **OUTPUT FILES**

27101 None.

27102 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

27103 None.

27104 **EXIT STATUS**

27105 The following exit values shall be returned:

27106 0 Successful completion.

27107 >0 An error occurred.

27108 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

27109 If one or more input files cannot be opened when the **–s** option is not specified, a diagnostic
27110 message shall be written to standard error, but no output is written to standard output. If the **–s**
27111 option is specified, the *paste* utility shall provide the default behavior described in Section 1.11
27112 (on page 18).

27113 **APPLICATION USAGE**

27114 When the escape sequences of the *list* option-argument are used in a shell script, they must be
27115 quoted; otherwise, the shell treats the `'\'` as a special character.

27116 Conforming applications should only use the specific backslash escaped delimiters presented in
27117 this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Historical implementations treat `'\x'`, where `'x'` is not in
27118 this list, as `'x'`, but future implementations are free to expand this list to recognize other
27119 common escapes similar to those accepted by *printf* and other standard utilities.

27120 Most of the standard utilities work on text files. The *cut* utility can be used to turn files with
27121 arbitrary line lengths into a set of text files containing the same data. The *paste* utility can be used
27122 to create (or recreate) files with arbitrary line lengths. For example, if *file* contains long lines:

27123 ```
cut –b 1–500 –n file > file1
```
27124 ```
cut –b 501– –n file > file2
```

27125 creates **file1** (a text file) with lines no longer than 500 bytes (plus the <newline>) and **file2** that
27126 contains the remainder of the data from *file*. Note that **file2** is not a text file if there are lines in
27127 *file* that are longer than 500 + {LINE_MAX} bytes. The original file can be recreated from **file1**
27128 and **file2** using the command:

27129 ```
paste –d "\0" file1 file2 > file
```

27130 The commands:

27131 ```
paste –d "\0" ...
```
27132 ```
paste –d "" ...
```

27133 are not necessarily equivalent; the latter is not specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x
27134 and may result in an error. The construct `'\0'` is used to mean "no separator" because historical
27135 versions of *paste* did not follow the syntax guidelines, and the command:

27136 ```
paste –d"" ...
```

27137 could not be handled properly by *getopt*( ).

27138 **EXAMPLES**

27139 1. Write out a directory in four columns:

27140 ```
   ls | paste – – – –
```

27141 2. Combine pairs of lines from a file into single lines:

27142 ```
   paste –s –d "\t\n" file
```

27143 **RATIONALE**

27144 None.

27145 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

27146 None.

27147 **SEE ALSO**

27148 Section 1.11 (on page 18), *cut*, *grep*, *pr*

27149 **CHANGE HISTORY**

27150 First released in Issue 2.

27151 **Issue 6**

27152 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

27153 **Issue 7**

27154 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

patch — apply changes to files

SYNOPSIS

```
patch [–blNR] [–c|–e|–n|–u] [–d dir] [–D define] [–i patchfile]
    [–o outfile] [–p num] [–r rejectfile] [file]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *patch* utility shall read a source (patch) file containing any of four forms of difference (diff) listings produced by the *diff* utility (normal, copied context, unified context, or in the style of *ed*) and apply those differences to a file. By default, *patch* shall read from the standard input.

The *patch* utility shall attempt to determine the type of the *diff* listing, unless overruled by a **–c**, **–e**, **–n**, or **–u** option.

If the patch file contains more than one patch, *patch* shall attempt to apply each of them as if they came from separate patch files. (In this case, the application shall ensure that the name of the patch file is determinable for each *diff* listing.)

OPTIONS

The *patch* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–b Save a copy of the original contents of each modified file, before the differences are applied, in a file of the same name with the suffix **.orig** appended to it. If the file already exists, it shall be overwritten; if multiple patches are applied to the same file, the **.orig** file shall be written only for the first patch. When the **–o** *outfile* option is also specified, *file***.orig** shall not be created but, if *outfile* already exists, *outfile***.orig** shall be created.

–c Interpret the patch file as a copied context difference (the output of the utility *diff* when the **–c** or **–C** options are specified).

–d *dir* Change the current directory to *dir* before processing as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

–D *define* Mark changes with one of the following C preprocessor constructs:

```
#ifdef define
...
#endif

#ifndef define
...
#endif
```

optionally combined with the C preprocessor construct **#else**. If the patched file is processed with the C preprocessor, where the macro *define* is defined, the output shall contain the changes from the patch file; otherwise, the output shall not contain the patches specified in the patch file.

–e Interpret the patch file as an *ed* script, rather than a *diff* script.

–i *patchfile* Read the patch information from the file named by the pathname *patchfile*, rather than the standard input.

27197 **–l** (The letter ell.) Cause any sequence of <blank>s in the difference script to match
27198 any sequence of <blank>s in the input file. Other characters shall be matched
27199 exactly.

27200 **–n** Interpret the script as a normal difference.

27201 **–N** Ignore patches where the differences have already been applied to the file; by
27202 default, already-applied patches shall be rejected.

27203 **–o** *outfile* Instead of modifying the files (specified by the *file* operand or the difference
27204 listings) directly, write a copy of the file referenced by each patch, with the
27205 appropriate differences applied, to *outfile*. Multiple patches for a single file shall be
27206 applied to the intermediate versions of the file created by any previous patches,
27207 and shall result in multiple, concatenated versions of the file being written to
27208 *outfile*.

27209 **–p** *num* For all pathnames in the patch file that indicate the names of files to be patched,
27210 delete *num* pathname components from the beginning of each pathname. If the
27211 pathname in the patch file is absolute, any leading slashes shall be considered the
27212 first component (that is, **–p 1** shall remove the leading slashes). Specifying **–p 0**
27213 shall cause the full pathname to be used. If **–p** is not specified, only the basename
27214 (the final pathname component) shall be used.

27215 **–R** Reverse the sense of the patch script; that is, assume that the difference script was
27216 created from the new version to the old version. The **–R** option cannot be used
27217 with *ed* scripts. The *patch* utility shall attempt to reverse each portion of the script
27218 before applying it. Rejected differences shall be saved in swapped format. If this
27219 option is not specified, and until a portion of the patch file is successfully applied,
27220 *patch* attempts to apply each portion in its reversed sense as well as in its normal
27221 sense. If the attempt is successful, the user shall be prompted to determine whether
27222 the **–R** option should be set.

27223 **–r** *rejectfile* Override the default reject filename. In the default case, the reject file shall have the
27224 same name as the output file, with the suffix **.rej** appended to it; see Patch
27225 Application (on page 695).

27226 **–u** Interpret the patch file as a unified context difference (the output of the *diff* utility
27227 when the **–u** or **–U** options are specified).

27228 **OPERANDS**

27229 The following operand shall be supported:

27230 *file* A pathname of a file to patch.

27231 **STDIN**

27232 See the INPUT FILES section.

27233 **INPUT FILES**

27234 Input files shall be text files.

27235 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

27236 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *patch*:

27237 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
27238 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
27239 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
27240 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

27241 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
27242 internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

LC_TIME Determine the locale for recognizing the format of file timestamps written by the *diff* utility in a context-difference input file.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used for diagnostic and informational messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The output of the *patch* utility, the save files (**.orig** suffixes), and the reject files (**.rej** suffixes) shall be text files.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

A patch file may contain patching instructions for more than one file; filenames shall be determined as specified in Filename Determination (on page 695). When the **–b** option is specified, for each patched file, the original shall be saved in a file of the same name with the suffix **.orig** appended to it.

For each patched file, a reject file may also be created as noted in Patch Application (on page 695). In the absence of a **–r** option, the name of this file shall be formed by appending the suffix **.rej** to the original filename.

Patch File Format

The patch file shall contain zero or more lines of header information followed by one or more patches. Each patch shall contain zero or more lines of filename identification in the format produced by the **–c**, **–C**, **–u**, or **–U** options of the *diff* utility, and one or more sets of *diff* output, which are customarily called *hunks*.

The *patch* utility shall recognize the following expression in the header information:

Index: *pathname*
The file to be patched is named *pathname*.

If all lines (including headers) within a patch begin with the same leading sequence of <blank>s, the *patch* utility shall remove this sequence before proceeding. Within each patch, if the type of difference is common context, the *patch* utility shall recognize the following expressions:

*** *filename timestamp*
The patches arose from *filename*.

––– *filename timestamp*
The patches should be applied to *filename*.

If the type of difference is unified context, the *patch* utility shall recognize the following expressions:

27287 ***−−− filename timestamp***
27288 The patches arose from *filename*.

27289 ***+++ filename timestamp***
27290 The patches should be applied to *filename*.

27291 Each hunk within a patch shall be the *diff* output to change a line range within the original file.
27292 The line numbers for successive hunks within a patch shall occur in ascending order.

27293 **Filename Determination**

27294 If no *file* operand is specified, *patch* shall perform the following steps to determine the filename
27295 to use:

27296 1. If the type of *diff* is context, the *patch* utility shall delete pathname components (as
27297 specified by the **−p** option) from the filename on the line beginning with "***" (if copied
27298 context) or "−−−" (if unified context), then test for the existence of this file relative to the
27299 current directory (or the directory specified with the **−d** option). If the file exists, the *patch*
27300 utility shall use this filename.

27301 2. If the type of *diff* is context, the *patch* utility shall delete the pathname components (as
27302 specified by the **−p** option) from the filename on the line beginning with "−−−" (if copied
27303 context) or "+++" (if unified context), then test for the existence of this file relative to the
27304 current directory (or the directory specified with the **−d** option). If the file exists, the *patch*
27305 utility shall use this filename.

27306 3. If the header information contains a line beginning with the string **Index:**, the *patch* utility
27307 shall delete pathname components (as specified by the **−p** option) from this line, then test
27308 for the existence of this file relative to the current directory (or the directory specified
27309 with the **−d** option). If the file exists, the *patch* utility shall use this filename.

27310 XSI 4. If an **SCCS** directory exists in the current directory, *patch* shall attempt to perform a *get* **−e**
27311 **SCCS/s.***filename* command to retrieve an editable version of the file. If the file exists, the
27312 *patch* utility shall use this filename.

27313 5. The *patch* utility shall write a prompt to standard output and request a filename
27314 interactively from the controlling terminal (for example, **/dev/tty**).

27315 **Patch Application**

27316 If the **−c**, **−e**, **−n**, or **−u** option is present, the *patch* utility shall interpret information within each
27317 hunk as a copied context difference, an *ed* difference, a normal difference, or a unified context
27318 difference, respectively. In the absence of any of these options, the *patch* utility shall determine
27319 the type of difference based on the format of information within the hunk.

27320 For each hunk, the *patch* utility shall begin to search for the place to apply the patch at the line
27321 number at the beginning of the hunk, plus or minus any offset used in applying the previous
27322 hunk. If lines matching the hunk context are not found, *patch* shall scan both forwards and
27323 backwards at least 1 000 bytes for a set of lines that match the hunk context.

27324 If no such place is found and it is a context difference, then another scan shall take place,
27325 ignoring the first and last line of context. If that fails, the first two and last two lines of context
27326 shall be ignored and another scan shall be made. Implementations may search more extensively
27327 for installation locations.

27328 If no location can be found, the *patch* utility shall append the hunk to the reject file. A rejected
27329 hunk that is a copied context difference, an *ed* difference, or a normal difference shall be written
27330 in copied-context-difference format regardless of the format of the patch file. It is
27331 implementation-defined whether a rejected hunk that is a unified context difference is written in
27332 copied-context-difference format or in unified-context-difference format. If the input was a

normal or *ed*-style difference, the reject file may contain differences with zero lines of context. The line numbers on the hunks in the reject file may be different from the line numbers in the patch file since they shall reflect the approximate locations for the failed hunks in the new file rather than the old one.

If the type of patch is an *ed* diff, the implementation may accomplish the patching by invoking the *ed* utility.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

1 One or more lines were written to a reject file.

>1 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Patches that cannot be correctly placed in the file shall be written to a reject file.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **–R** option does not work with *ed* scripts because there is too little information to reconstruct the reverse operation.

The **–p** option makes it possible to customize a patch file to local user directory structures without manually editing the patch file. For example, if the filename in the patch file was:

```
/curds/whey/src/blurfl/blurfl.c
```

Setting **–p 0** gives the entire pathname unmodified; **–p 1** gives:

```
curds/whey/src/blurfl/blurfl.c
```

without the leading slash, **–p 4** gives:

```
blurfl/blurfl.c
```

and not specifying **–p** at all gives:

```
blurfl.c
```

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

Some of the functionality in historical *patch* implementations was not specified. The following documents those features present in historical implementations that have not been specified.

A deleted piece of functionality was the `'+'` pseudo-option allowing an additional set of options and a patch file operand to be given. This was seen as being insufficiently useful to standardize.

In historical implementations, if the string `"Prereq:"` appeared in the header, the *patch* utility would search for the corresponding version information (the string specified in the header, delimited by <blank>s or the beginning or end of a line or the file) anywhere in the original file. This was deleted as too simplistic and insufficiently trustworthy a mechanism to standardize. For example, if:

```
Prereq: 1.2
```

were in the header, the presence of a delimited 1.2 anywhere in the file would satisfy the prerequisite.

The following options were dropped from historical implementations of *patch* as insufficiently useful to standardize:

–b The **–b** option historically provided a method for changing the name extension of the backup file from the default **.orig**. This option has been modified and retained in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

–F The **–F** option specified the number of lines of a context diff to ignore when searching for a place to install a patch.

–f The **–f** option historically caused *patch* not to request additional information from the user.

–r The **–r** option historically provided a method of overriding the extension of the reject file from the default **.rej**.

–s The **–s** option historically caused *patch* to work silently unless an error occurred.

–x The **–x** option historically set internal debugging flags.

In some file system implementations, the saving of a **.orig** file may produce unwanted results. In the case of 12, 13, or 14-character filenames (on file systems supporting 14-character maximum filenames), the **.orig** file overwrites the new file. The reject file may also exceed this filename limit. It was suggested, due to some historical practice, that a tilde (′~′) suffix be used instead of **.orig** and some other character instead of the **.rej** suffix. This was rejected because it is not obvious to the user which file is which. The suffixes **.orig** and **.rej** are clearer and more understandable.

The **–b** option has the opposite sense in some historical implementations—do not save the **.orig** file. The default case here is not to save the files, making *patch* behave more consistently with the other standard utilities.

The **–w** option in early proposals was changed to **–l** to match historical practice.

The **–N** option was included because without it, a non-interactive application cannot reject previously applied patches. For example, if a user is piping the output of *diff* into the *patch* utility, and the user only wants to patch a file to a newer version non-interactively, the **–N** option is required.

Changes to the **–l** option description were proposed to allow matching across <newline>s in addition to just <blank>s. Since this is not historical practice, and since some ambiguities could result, it is suggested that future developments in this area utilize another option letter, such as **–L**.

The **–u** option of GNU *patch* has been added, along with support for unified context formats.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

ed, *diff*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The description of the **–D** option and the steps in Filename Determination are changed to match historical practice as defined in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/34 is applied, clarifying the way that the

patch utility performs **ifdef** selection for the –**D** option.

Issue 7

The *patch* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-103 and SD5-XCU-ERN-120 are applied, adding the –**u** option.

NAME

pathchk — check pathnames

SYNOPSIS

```
pathchk [–p] [–P] pathname...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *pathchk* utility shall check that one or more pathnames are valid (that is, they could be used to access or create a file without causing syntax errors) and portable (that is, no filename truncation results). More extensive portability checks are provided by the **–p** and **–P** options.

By default, the *pathchk* utility shall check each component of each *pathname* operand based on the underlying file system. A diagnostic shall be written for each *pathname* operand that:

- Is longer than {PATH_MAX} bytes (see **Pathname Variable Values** in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers, **<limits.h>**)
- Contains any component longer than {NAME_MAX} bytes in its containing directory
- Contains any component in a directory that is not searchable
- Contains any character in any component that is not valid in its containing directory

The format of the diagnostic message is not specified, but shall indicate the error detected and the corresponding *pathname* operand.

It shall not be considered an error if one or more components of a *pathname* operand do not exist as long as a file matching the pathname specified by the missing components could be created that does not violate any of the checks specified above.

OPTIONS

The *pathchk* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–p Instead of performing checks based on the underlying file system, write a diagnostic for each *pathname* operand that:

- Is longer than {_POSIX_PATH_MAX} bytes (see **Minimum Values** in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers, **<limits.h>**)
- Contains any component longer than {_POSIX_NAME_MAX} bytes
- Contains any character in any component that is not in the portable filename character set

–P Write a diagnostic for each *pathname* operand that:

- Contains a component whose first character is the hyphen character
- Is empty

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

pathname A pathname to be checked.

27464 **STDIN**

27465 Not used.

27466 **INPUT FILES**

27467 None.

27468 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

27469 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *pathchk*:

27470 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
27471 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
27472 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
27473 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

27474 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
27475 internationalization variables.

27476 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
27477 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
27478 arguments).

27479 *LC_MESSAGES*
27480 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
27481 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

27482 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

27483 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

27484 Default.

27485 **STDOUT**

27486 Not used.

27487 **STDERR**

27488 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

27489 **OUTPUT FILES**

27490 None.

27491 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

27492 None.

27493 **EXIT STATUS**

27494 The following exit values shall be returned:

27495 0 All *pathname* operands passed all of the checks.

27496 >0 An error occurred.

27497 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

27498 Default.

27499 **APPLICATION USAGE**

27500 The *test* utility can be used to determine whether a given pathname names an existing file; it
27501 does not, however, give any indication of whether or not any component of the pathname was
27502 truncated in a directory where the _POSIX_NO_TRUNC feature is not in effect. The *pathchk*
27503 utility does not check for file existence; it performs checks to determine whether a pathname
27504 does exist or could be created with no pathname component truncation.

27505 The *noclobber* option in the shell (see the *set* special built-in) can be used to atomically create a
27506 file. As with all file creation semantics in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
27507 it guarantees atomic creation, but still depends on applications to agree on conventions and
27508 cooperate on the use of files after they have been created.

To verify that a pathname meets the requirements of filename portability, applications should use both the **–p** and **–P** options together.

EXAMPLES

To verify that all pathnames in an imported data interchange archive are legitimate and unambiguous on the current system:

```
# This example assumes that no pathnames in the archive
# contain <newline> characters.
pax –f archive | sed –e 's/[^[:alnum:]]/\\&/g' | xargs pathchk
if [ $? –eq 0 ]
then
    pax –r –f archive
else
    echo Investigate problems before importing files.
    exit 1
fi
```

To verify that all files in the current directory hierarchy could be moved to any system conforming to the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that also supports the *pax* utility:

```
find . –exec pathchk –p –P {} +
if [ $? –eq 0 ]
then
    pax –w –f ../archive .
else
    echo Portable archive cannot be created.
    exit 1
fi
```

To verify that a user-supplied pathname names a readable file and that the application can create a file extending the given path without truncation and without overwriting any existing file:

```
case $– in
    *C*)    reset="";;
    *)      reset="set +C"
            set –C;;
esac
test –r "$path" && pathchk "$path.out" &&
    rm "$path.out" > "$path.out"
if [ $? –ne 0 ]; then
    printf "%s: %s not found or %s.out fails \
creation checks.\n" $0 "$path" "$path"
    $reset    # Reset the noclobber option in case a trap
              # on EXIT depends on it.
    exit 1
fi
$reset
PROCESSING < "$path" > "$path.out"
```

The following assumptions are made in this example:

1. **PROCESSING** represents the code that is used by the application to use **$path** once it is verified that **$path.out** works as intended.
2. The state of the *noclobber* option is unknown when this code is invoked and should be set on exit to the state it was in when this code was invoked. (The **reset** variable is used in this example to restore the initial state.)

3. Note the usage of:

   ```
   rm "$path.out" > "$path.out"
   ```

   a. The *pathchk* command has already verified, at this point, that **$path.out** is not truncated.

   b. With the *noclobber* option set, the shell verifies that **$path.out** does not already exist before invoking *rm*.

   c. If the shell succeeded in creating **$path.out**, *rm* removes it so that the application can create the file again in the **PROCESSING** step.

   d. If the **PROCESSING** step wants the file to exist already when it is invoked, the:

      ```
      rm "$path.out" > "$path.out"
      ```

      should be replaced with:

      ```
      > "$path.out"
      ```

      which verifies that the file did not already exist, but leaves **$path.out** in place for use by **PROCESSING**.

RATIONALE

The *pathchk* utility was new for the ISO POSIX-2:1993 standard. It, along with the *set* **–C**(*noclobber*) option added to the shell, replaces the *mktemp*, *validfnam*, and *create* utilities that appeared in early proposals. All of these utilities were attempts to solve several common problems:

- Verify the validity (for several different definitions of "valid") of a pathname supplied by a user, generated by an application, or imported from an external source.
- Atomically create a file.
- Perform various string handling functions to generate a temporary filename.

The *create* utility, included in an early proposal, provided checking and atomic creation in a single invocation of the utility; these are orthogonal issues and need not be grouped into a single utility. Note that the *noclobber* option also provides a way of creating a lock for process synchronization; since it provides an atomic *create*, there is no race between a test for existence and the following creation if it did not exist.

Having a function like *tmpnam*( ) in the ISO C standard is important in many high-level languages. The shell programming language, however, has built-in string manipulation facilities, making it very easy to construct temporary filenames. The names needed obviously depend on the application, but are frequently of a form similar to:

**$TMPDIR**/*application_abbreviation*$$.*suffix*

In cases where there is likely to be contention for a given suffix, a simple shell **for** or **while** loop can be used with the shell *noclobber* option to create a file without risk of collisions, as long as applications trying to use the same filename name space are cooperating on the use of files after they have been created.

For historical purposes, **–p** does not check for the use of the hyphen character as the first character in a component of the pathname, or for an empty *pathname* operand.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 2.7 (on page 43), *set* (on page 86), *test*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretations 1003.1-2001 #039, #040, and #094 are applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-121 is applied, updating the EXAMPLES section.

NAME

pax — portable archive interchange

SYNOPSIS

```
pax [–dv] [–c|–n] [–H|–L] [–o options] [–f archive] [–s replstr]...
    [pattern...]

pax –r[–c|–n] [–dikuv] [–H|–L] [–f archive] [–o options]... [–p string]...
    [–s replstr]... [pattern...]

pax –w[–dituvX] [–H|–L] [–b blocksize] [[–a][–f archive]] [–o options]...
    [–s replstr]... [–x format] [file...]

pax –r –w[–diklntuvX] [–H|–L] [–o options]... [–p string]...
    [–s replstr]... [file...] directory
```

DESCRIPTION

The *pax* utility shall read, write, and write lists of the members of archive files and copy directory hierarchies. A variety of archive formats shall be supported; see the **–x** *format* option.

The action to be taken depends on the presence of the **–r** and **–w** options. The four combinations of **–r** and **–w** are referred to as the four modes of operation: **list**, **read**, **write**, and **copy** modes, corresponding respectively to the four forms shown in the SYNOPSIS section.

list In **list** mode (when neither **–r** nor **–w** are specified), *pax* shall write the names of the members of the archive file read from the standard input, with pathnames matching the specified patterns, to standard output. If a named file is of type directory, the file hierarchy rooted at that file shall be listed as well.

read In **read** mode (when **–r** is specified, but **–w** is not), *pax* shall extract the members of the archive file read from the standard input, with pathnames matching the specified patterns. If an extracted file is of type directory, the file hierarchy rooted at that file shall be extracted as well. The extracted files shall be created performing pathname resolution with the directory in which *pax* was invoked as the current working directory.

If an attempt is made to extract a directory when the directory already exists, this shall not be considered an error. If an attempt is made to extract a FIFO when the FIFO already exists, this shall not be considered an error.

The ownership, access, and modification times, and file mode of the restored files are discussed under the **–p** option.

write In **write** mode (when **–w** is specified, but **–r** is not), *pax* shall write the contents of the *file* operands to the standard output in an archive format. If no *file* operands are specified, a list of files to copy, one per line, shall be read from the standard input and each entry in this list shall be processed as if it had been a *file* operand on the command line. A file of type directory shall include all of the files in the file hierarchy rooted at the file.

copy In **copy** mode (when both **–r** and **–w** are specified), *pax* shall copy the *file* operands to the destination directory.

If no *file* operands are specified, a list of files to copy, one per line, shall be read from the standard input. A file of type directory shall include all of the files in the file hierarchy rooted at the file.

The effect of the **copy** shall be as if the copied files were written to a *pax* format archive file and then subsequently extracted, except that there may be hard links

between the original and the copied files. If the destination directory is a subdirectory of one of the files to be copied, the results are unspecified. If the destination directory is a file of a type not defined by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the results are implementation-defined; otherwise, it shall be an error for the file named by the *directory* operand not to exist, not be writable by the user, or not be a file of type directory.

In **read** or **copy** modes, if intermediate directories are necessary to extract an archive member, *pax* shall perform actions equivalent to the *mkdir*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, called with the following arguments:

- The intermediate directory used as the *path* argument
- The value of the bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IRWXU, S_IRWXG, and S_IRWXO as the *mode* argument

If any specified *pattern* or *file* operands are not matched by at least one file or archive member, *pax* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error for each one that did not match and exit with a non-zero exit status.

The archive formats described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section shall be automatically detected on input. The default output archive format shall be implementation-defined.

A single archive can span multiple files. The *pax* utility shall determine, in an implementation-defined manner, what file to read or write as the next file.

If the selected archive format supports the specification of linked files, it shall be an error if these files cannot be linked when the archive is extracted, except that if the files to be linked are symbolic links and the system is not capable of making hard links to symbolic links, then separate copies of the symbolic link shall be created instead. For archive formats that do not store file contents with each name that causes a hard link, if the file that contains the data is not extracted during this *pax* session, either the data shall be restored from the original file, or a diagnostic message shall be displayed with the name of a file that can be used to extract the data. In traversing directories, *pax* shall detect infinite loops; that is, entering a previously visited directory that is an ancestor of the last file visited. When it detects an infinite loop, *pax* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and shall terminate.

OPTIONS

The *pax* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the order of presentation of the **–o**, **–p**, and **–s** options is significant.

The following options shall be supported:

–r Read an archive file from standard input.

–w Write files to the standard output in the specified archive format.

–a Append files to the end of the archive. It is implementation-defined which devices on the system support appending. Additional file formats unspecified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x may impose restrictions on appending.

–b *blocksize* Block the output at a positive decimal integer number of bytes per write to the archive file. Devices and archive formats may impose restrictions on blocking. Blocking shall be automatically determined on input. Conforming applications shall not specify a *blocksize* value larger than 32 256. Default blocking when creating archives depends on the archive format. (See the **–x** option below.)

–c Match all file or archive members except those specified by the *pattern* or *file* operands.

27698 **–d** Cause files of type directory being copied or archived or archive members of type
27699 directory being extracted or listed to match only the file or archive member itself
27700 and not the file hierarchy rooted at the file.

27701 **–f** *archive* Specify the pathname of the input or output archive, overriding the default
27702 standard input (in **list** or **read** modes) or standard output (**write** mode).

27703 **–H** If a symbolic link referencing a file of type directory is specified on the command
27704 line, *pax* shall archive the file hierarchy rooted in the file referenced by the link,
27705 using the name of the link as the root of the file hierarchy. Otherwise, if a symbolic
27706 link referencing a file of any other file type which *pax* can normally archive is
27707 specified on the command line, then *pax* shall archive the file referenced by the
27708 link, using the name of the link. The default behavior, when neither **–H** or **–L** are
27709 specified, shall be to archive the symbolic link itself.

27710 **–i** Interactively rename files or archive members. For each archive member matching
27711 a *pattern* operand or file matching a *file* operand, a prompt shall be written to the
27712 file **/dev/tty**. The prompt shall contain the name of the file or archive member, but
27713 the format is otherwise unspecified. A line shall then be read from **/dev/tty**. If this
27714 line is blank, the file or archive member shall be skipped. If this line consists of a
27715 single period, the file or archive member shall be processed with no modification
27716 to its name. Otherwise, its name shall be replaced with the contents of the line. The
27717 *pax* utility shall immediately exit with a non-zero exit status if end-of-file is
27718 encountered when reading a response or if **/dev/tty** cannot be opened for reading
27719 and writing.

27720 The results of extracting a hard link to a file that has been renamed during
27721 extraction are unspecified.

27722 **–k** Prevent the overwriting of existing files.

27723 **–l** (The letter ell.) In **copy** mode, hard links shall be made between the source and
27724 destination file hierarchies whenever possible. If specified in conjunction with **–H**
27725 or **–L**, when a symbolic link is encountered, the hard link created in the destination
27726 file hierarchy shall be to the file referenced by the symbolic link. If specified when
27727 neither **–H** nor **–L** is specified, when a symbolic link is encountered, the
27728 implementation shall create a hard link to the symbolic link in the source file
27729 hierarchy or copy the symbolic link to the destination.

27730 **–L** If a symbolic link referencing a file of type directory is specified on the command
27731 line or encountered during the traversal of a file hierarchy, *pax* shall archive the file
27732 hierarchy rooted in the file referenced by the link, using the name of the link as the
27733 root of the file hierarchy. Otherwise, if a symbolic link referencing a file of any
27734 other file type which *pax* can normally archive is specified on the command line or
27735 encountered during the traversal of a file hierarchy, *pax* shall archive the file
27736 referenced by the link, using the name of the link. The default behavior, when
27737 neither **–H** or **–L** are specified, shall be to archive the symbolic link itself.

27738 **–n** Select the first archive member that matches each *pattern* operand. No more than
27739 one archive member shall be matched for each pattern (although members of type
27740 directory shall still match the file hierarchy rooted at that file).

27741 **–o** *options* Provide information to the implementation to modify the algorithm for extracting
27742 or writing files. The value of *options* shall consist of one or more comma-separated
27743 keywords of the form:

27744 *keyword*`[[:]=`*value*`][,`*keyword*`[[:]=`*value*`], ...]`

27745 Some keywords apply only to certain file formats, as indicated with each
27746 description. Use of keywords that are inapplicable to the file format being

processed produces undefined results.

Keywords in the *options* argument shall be a string that would be a valid portable filename as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.276, Portable Filename Character Set.

Note: Keywords are not expected to be filenames, merely to follow the same character composition rules as portable filenames.

Keywords can be preceded with white space. The *value* field shall consist of zero or more characters; within *value*, the application shall precede any literal comma with a backslash, which shall be ignored, but preserves the comma as part of *value*. A comma as the final character, or a comma followed solely by white space as the final characters, in *options* shall be ignored. Multiple **–o** options can be specified; if keywords given to these multiple **–o** options conflict, the keywords and values appearing later in command line sequence shall take precedence and the earlier shall be silently ignored. The following keyword values of *options* shall be supported for the file formats as indicated:

delete=*pattern*
(Applicable only to the **–x pax** format.) When used in **write** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall omit from extended header records that it produces any keywords matching the string pattern. When used in **read** or **list** mode, *pax* shall ignore any keywords matching the string pattern in the extended header records. In both cases, matching shall be performed using the pattern matching notation described in Section 2.13.1 and Section 2.13.2 (on page 63). For example:

```
–o delete=security.*
```

would suppress security-related information. See pax Extended Header for extended header record keyword usage.

When multiple **–odelete=pattern** options are specified, the patterns shall be additive; all keywords matching the specified string patterns shall be omitted from extended header records that *pax* produces.

exthdr.name=*string*
(Applicable only to the **–x pax** format.) This keyword allows user control over the name that is written into the **ustar** header blocks for the extended header produced under the circumstances described in pax Header Block (on page 716). The name shall be the contents of *string*, after the following character substitutions have been made:

string **Includes:**	**Replaced By:**
`%d`	The directory name of the file, equivalent to the result of the *dirname* utility on the translated pathname.
`%f`	The filename of the file, equivalent to the result of the *basename* utility on the translated pathname.
`%p`	The process ID of the *pax* process.
`%%`	A `'%'` character.

Any other `'%'` characters in *string* produce undefined results.

If no **–o exthdr.name=string** is specified, *pax* shall use the following default value:

```
%d/PaxHeaders.%p/%f
```


27793 **globexthdr.name**=*string*

27794 (Applicable only to the **–x pax** format.) When used in **write** or **copy** mode
27795 with the appropriate options, *pax* shall create global extended header records
27796 with **ustar** header blocks that will be treated as regular files by previous
27797 versions of *pax*. This keyword allows user control over the name that is
27798 written into the **ustar** header blocks for global extended header records. The
27799 name shall be the contents of string, after the following character substitutions
27800 have been made:

27801 27802 27803 27804 27805 27806

string **Includes:**	**Replaced By:**
%n	An integer that represents the sequence number of the global extended header record in the archive, starting at 1.
%p	The process ID of the *pax* process.
%%	A '%' character.

27807 Any other '%' characters in *string* produce undefined results.

27808 27809 If no **–o globexthdr.name=string** is specified, *pax* shall use the following
default value:

27810
```
$TMPDIR/GlobalHead.%p.%n
```

27811 27812 where $*TMPDIR* represents the value of the *TMPDIR* environment variable. If
TMPDIR is not set, *pax* shall use **/tmp**.

27813 **invalid**=*action*

27814 27815 27816 27817 27818 27819 (Applicable only to the **–x pax** format.) This keyword allows user control over the action *pax* takes upon encountering values in an extended header record that, in **read** or **copy** mode, are invalid in the destination hierarchy or, in **list** mode, cannot be written in the codeset and current locale of the implementation. The following are invalid values that shall be recognized by *pax*:

27820 27821 27822 — In **read** or **copy** mode, a filename or link name that contains character encodings invalid in the destination hierarchy. (For example, the name may contain embedded NULs.)

27823 27824 27825 — In **read** or **copy** mode, a filename or link name that is longer than the maximum allowed in the destination hierarchy (for either a pathname component or the entire pathname).

27826 27827 27828 — In **list** mode, any character string value (filename, link name, user name, and so on) that cannot be written in the codeset and current locale of the implementation.

27829 The following mutually-exclusive values of the *action* argument are supported:

27830 27831 27832 27833 27834 27835 27836 27837 27838 27839 **binary** In **write** mode, *pax* shall generate a **hdrcharset**=**BINARY** extended header record for each file with a filename, link name, group name, owner name, or any other field in an extended header record that cannot be translated to the UTF-8 codeset, allowing the archive to contain the files with unencoded extended header record values. In **read** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall use the values specified in the header without translation, regardless of whether this may overwrite an existing file with a valid name. In **list** mode, *pax* shall behave identically to the **bypass** action.

bypass In **read** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall bypass the file, causing no change to the destination hierarchy. In **list** mode, *pax* shall write all requested valid values for the file, but its method for writing invalid values is unspecified.

rename In **read** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall act as if the **–i** option were in effect for each file with invalid filename or link name values, allowing the user to provide a replacement name interactively. In **list** mode, *pax* shall behave identically to the **bypass** action.

UTF-8 When used in **read**, **copy**, or **list** mode and a filename, link name, owner name, or any other field in an extended header record cannot be translated from the **pax** UTF-8 codeset format to the codeset and current locale of the implementation, *pax* shall use the actual UTF-8 encoding for the name. If a **hdrcharset** extended header record is in effect for this file, the character set specified by that record shall be used instead of UTF-8. If a **hdrcharset**=**BINARY** extended header record is in effect for this file, no translation shall be performed.

write In **read** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall write the file, translating the name, regardless of whether this may overwrite an existing file with a valid name. In **list** mode, *pax* shall behave identically to the **bypass** action.

If no **–o invalid=option** is specified, *pax* shall act as if **–oinvalid=bypass** were specified. Any overwriting of existing files that may be allowed by the **–oinvalid=** actions shall be subject to permission (**–p**) and modification time (**–u**) restrictions, and shall be suppressed if the **–k** option is also specified.

linkdata
(Applicable only to the **–x pax** format.) In **write** mode, *pax* shall write the contents of a file to the archive even when that file is merely a hard link to a file whose contents have already been written to the archive.

listopt=*format*
This keyword specifies the output format of the table of contents produced when the **–v** option is specified in **list** mode. See List Mode Format Specifications (on page 712). To avoid ambiguity, the **listopt=format** shall be the only or final **keyword=value** pair in a **–o** option-argument; all characters in the remainder of the option-argument shall be considered part of the format string. When multiple **–olistopt=format** options are specified, the format strings shall be considered a single, concatenated string, evaluated in command line order.

times
(Applicable only to the **–x** *pax* format.) When used in **write** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall include **atime** and **mtime** extended header records for each file. See pax Extended Header File Times (on page 720).

In addition to these keywords, if the **–x** *pax* format is specified, any of the keywords and values defined in pax Extended Header (on page 717), including implementation extensions, can be used in **–o** option-arguments, in either of two modes:

keyword=*value*
When used in **write** or **copy** mode, these keyword/value pairs shall be included at the beginning of the archive as **typeflag g** global extended header records. When used in **read** or **list** mode, these keyword/value pairs shall act

as if they had been at the beginning of the archive as **typeflag g** global extended header records.

keyword:=*value*
When used in **write** or **copy** mode, these keyword/value pairs shall be included as records at the beginning of a **typeflag x** extended header for each file. (This shall be equivalent to the equal-sign form except that it creates no **typeflag g** global extended header records.) When used in **read** or **list** mode, these keyword/value pairs shall act as if they were included as records at the end of each extended header; thus, they shall override any global or file-specific extended header record keywords of the same names. For example, in the command:

```
pax –r –o "
gname:=mygroup,
" <archive
```

the group name will be forced to a new value for all files read from the archive.

The precedence of –**o** keywords over various fields in the archive is described in pax Extended Header Keyword Precedence (on page 720).

–**p** *string* Specify one or more file characteristic options (privileges). The *string* option-argument shall be a string specifying file characteristics to be retained or discarded on extraction. The string shall consist of the specification characters `a`, `e`, `m`, `o`, and `p`. Other implementation-defined characters can be included. Multiple characteristics can be concatenated within the same string and multiple –**p** options can be specified. The meaning of the specification characters are as follows:

`a` Do not preserve file access times.

`e` Preserve the user ID, group ID, file mode bits (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.168, File Mode Bits), access time, modification time, and any other implementation-defined file characteristics.

`m` Do not preserve file modification times.

`o` Preserve the user ID and group ID.

`p` Preserve the file mode bits. Other implementation-defined file mode attributes may be preserved.

In the preceding list, "preserve" indicates that an attribute stored in the archive shall be given to the extracted file, subject to the permissions of the invoking process. The access and modification times of the file shall be preserved unless otherwise specified with the –**p** option or not stored in the archive. All attributes that are not preserved shall be determined as part of the normal file creation action (see Section 1.7.1.4 (on page 4)).

If neither the `e` nor the `o` specification character is specified, or the user ID and group ID are not preserved for any reason, *pax* shall not set the S_ISUID and S_ISGID bits of the file mode.

If the preservation of any of these items fails for any reason, *pax* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error. Failure to preserve these items shall affect the final exit status, but shall not cause the extracted file to be deleted.

If file characteristic letters in any of the *string* option-arguments are duplicated or conflict with each other, the ones given last shall take precedence. For example, if –**p** `eme` is specified, file modification times are preserved.

27937 –**s** *replstr* Modify file or archive member names named by *pattern* or *file* operands according
27938 to the substitution expression *replstr*, using the syntax of the *ed* utility. The concepts
27939 of "address" and "line" are meaningless in the context of the *pax* utility, and shall
27940 not be supplied. The format shall be:

27941 `–s /old/new/[gp]`

27942 where as in *ed*, *old* is a basic regular expression and *new* can contain an ampersand,
27943 `'\n'` (where *n* is a digit) back-references, or subexpression matching. The *old*
27944 string shall also be permitted to contain <newline>s.

27945 Any non-null character can be used as a delimiter (`'/'` shown here). Multiple –**s**
27946 expressions can be specified; the expressions shall be applied in the order
27947 specified, terminating with the first successful substitution. The optional trailing
27948 `'g'` is as defined in the *ed* utility. The optional trailing `'p'` shall cause successful
27949 substitutions to be written to standard error. File or archive member names that
27950 substitute to the empty string shall be ignored when reading and writing archives.

27951 –**t** When reading files from the file system, and if the user has the permissions
27952 required by *utime*() to do so, set the access time of each file read to the access time
27953 that it had before being read by *pax*.

27954 –**u** Ignore files that are older (having a less recent file modification time) than a pre-
27955 existing file or archive member with the same name. In **read** mode, an archive
27956 member with the same name as a file in the file system shall be extracted if the
27957 archive member is newer than the file. In **write** mode, an archive file member with
27958 the same name as a file in the file system shall be superseded if the file is newer
27959 than the archive member. If –**a** is also specified, this is accomplished by appending
27960 to the archive; otherwise, it is unspecified whether this is accomplished by actual
27961 replacement in the archive or by appending to the archive. In **copy** mode, the file
27962 in the destination hierarchy shall be replaced by the file in the source hierarchy or
27963 by a link to the file in the source hierarchy if the file in the source hierarchy is
27964 newer.

27965 –**v** In **list** mode, produce a verbose table of contents (see the STDOUT section).
27966 Otherwise, write archive member pathnames to standard error (see the STDERR
27967 section).

27968 –**x** *format* Specify the output archive format. The *pax* utility shall support the following
27969 formats:

27970 **cpio** The **cpio** interchange format; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
27971 section. The default *blocksize* for this format for character special
27972 archive files shall be 5 120. Implementations shall support all
27973 *blocksize* values less than or equal to 32 256 that are multiples of 512.

27974 **pax** The **pax** interchange format; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
27975 section. The default *blocksize* for this format for character special
27976 archive files shall be 5 120. Implementations shall support all
27977 *blocksize* values less than or equal to 32 256 that are multiples of 512.

27978 **ustar** The **tar** interchange format; see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
27979 section. The default *blocksize* for this format for character special
27980 archive files shall be 10 240. Implementations shall support all
27981 *blocksize* values less than or equal to 32 256 that are multiples of 512.

27982 Implementation-defined formats shall specify a default block size as well as any
27983 other block sizes supported for character special archive files.

27984 Any attempt to append to an archive file in a format different from the existing

archive format shall cause *pax* to exit immediately with a non-zero exit status.

–X When traversing the file hierarchy specified by a pathname, *pax* shall not descend into directories that have a different device ID (*st_dev*; see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *stat*( )).

Specifying more than one of the mutually-exclusive options **–H** and **–L** shall not be considered an error and the last option specified shall determine the behavior of the utility.

The options that operate on the names of files or archive members (**–c**, **–i**, **–n**, **–s**, **–u**, and **–v**) shall interact as follows. In **read** mode, the archive members shall be selected based on the user-specified *pattern* operands as modified by the **–c**, **–n**, and **–u** options. Then, any **–s** and **–i** options shall modify, in that order, the names of the selected files. The **–v** option shall write names resulting from these modifications.

In **write** mode, the files shall be selected based on the user-specified pathnames as modified by the **–n** and **–u** options. Then, any **–s** and **–i** options shall modify, in that order, the names of these selected files. The **–v** option shall write names resulting from these modifications.

If both the **–u** and **–n** options are specified, *pax* shall not consider a file selected unless it is newer than the file to which it is compared.

List Mode Format Specifications

In **list** mode with the **–o listopt=format** option, the *format* argument shall be applied for each selected file. The *pax* utility shall append a <newline> to the **listopt** output for each selected file. The *format* argument shall be used as the *format* string described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation, with the exceptions 1. through 5. defined in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section of *printf*, plus the following exceptions:

6. The sequence (*keyword*) can occur before a format conversion specifier. The conversion argument is defined by the value of *keyword*. The implementation shall support the following keywords:

   — Any of the Field Name entries in Table 4-13 and Table 4-15 (on page 724). The implementation may support the *cpio* keywords without the leading **c_** in addition to the form required by Table 4-15 (on page 724).

   — Any keyword defined for the extended header in pax Extended Header (on page 717).

   — Any keyword provided as an implementation-defined extension within the extended header defined in pax Extended Header (on page 717).

   For example, the sequence `"%(charset)s"` is the string value of the name of the character set in the extended header.

   The result of the keyword conversion argument shall be the value from the applicable header field or extended header, without any trailing NULs.

   All keyword values used as conversion arguments shall be translated from the UTF-8 encoding (or alternative encoding specified by any **hdrcharset** extended header record) to the character set appropriate for the local file system, user database, and so on, as applicable.

7. An additional conversion specifier character, `T`, shall be used to specify time formats. The `T` conversion specifier character can be preceded by the sequence (*keyword=subformat*), where *subformat* is a date format as defined by *date* operands. The default *keyword* shall be **mtime** and the default subformat shall be:

   ```
   %b %e %H:%M %Y
   ```


8. An additional conversion specifier character, `M`, shall be used to specify the file mode string as defined in *ls* Standard Output. If (*keyword*) is omitted, the **mode** keyword shall be used. For example, `%.1M` writes the single character corresponding to the <*entry type*> field of the *ls* **–l** command.

9. An additional conversion specifier character, `D`, shall be used to specify the device for block or special files, if applicable, in an implementation-defined format. If not applicable, and (*keyword*) is specified, then this conversion shall be equivalent to `%(`*keyword*`)u`. If not applicable, and (*keyword*) is omitted, then this conversion shall be equivalent to <space>.

10. An additional conversion specifier character, `F`, shall be used to specify a pathname. The `F` conversion character can be preceded by a sequence of comma-separated keywords:

    `(`*keyword*`[,`*keyword*`] ... )`

    The values for all the keywords that are non-null shall be concatenated together, each separated by a `'/'`. The default shall be (**path**) if the keyword **path** is defined; otherwise, the default shall be (**prefix**,**name**).

11. An additional conversion specifier character, `L`, shall be used to specify a symbolic link expansion. If the current file is a symbolic link, then `%L` shall expand to:

    `"%s –> %s", <`*value of keyword*`>, <`*contents of link*`>`

    Otherwise, the `%L` conversion specification shall be the equivalent of `%F`.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

directory The destination directory pathname for **copy** mode.

file A pathname of a file to be copied or archived.

pattern A pattern matching one or more pathnames of archive members. A pattern must be given in the name-generating notation of the pattern matching notation in Section 2.13 (on page 62), including the filename expansion rules in Section 2.13.3 (on page 63). The default, if no *pattern* is specified, is to select all members in the archive.

STDIN

In **write** mode, the standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. It shall be a text file containing a list of pathnames, one per line, without leading or trailing <blank>s.

In **list** and **read** modes, if **–f** is not specified, the standard input shall be an archive file.

Otherwise, the standard input shall not be used.

INPUT FILES

The input file named by the *archive* option-argument, or standard input when the archive is read from there, shall be a file formatted according to one of the specifications in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section or some other implementation-defined format.

The file **/dev/tty** shall be used to write prompts and read responses.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *pax*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

28072 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
28073 internationalization variables.

28074 *LC_COLLATE*
28075 Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-
28076 character collating elements used in the pattern matching expressions for the
28077 *pattern* operand, the basic regular expression for the –**s** option, and the extended
28078 regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES*
28079 category.

28080 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
28081 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
28082 arguments and input files), the behavior of character classes used in the extended
28083 regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES*
28084 category, and pattern matching.

28085 *LC_MESSAGES*
28086 Determine the locale for the processing of affirmative responses that should be
28087 used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard
28088 error.

28089 *LC_TIME* Determine the format and contents of date and time strings when the –**v** option is
28090 specified.

28091 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

28092 *TMPDIR* Determine the pathname that provides part of the default global extended header
28093 record file, as described for the –**o globexthdr=** keyword in the OPTIONS section.

28094 *TZ* Determine the timezone used to calculate date and time strings when the –**v** option
28095 is specified. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

28096 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
28097 Default.

28098 **STDOUT**
28099 In **write** mode, if –**f** is not specified, the standard output shall be the archive formatted
28100 according to one of the specifications in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section, or some other
28101 implementation-defined format (see –**x** *format*).

28102 In **list** mode, when the –**olistopt**=*format* has been specified, the selected archive members shall
28103 be written to standard output using the format described under List Mode Format Specifications
28104 (on page 712). In **list** mode without the –**olistopt**=*format* option, the table of contents of the
28105 selected archive members shall be written to standard output using the following format:

28106 `"%s\n", <pathname>`

28107 If the –**v** option is specified in **list** mode, the table of contents of the selected archive members
28108 shall be written to standard output using the following formats.

28109 For pathnames representing hard links to previous members of the archive:

28110 `"%sΔ==Δ%s\n", <ls –l listing>, <linkname>`

28111 For all other pathnames:

28112 `"%s\n", <ls –l listing>`

28113 where <*ls* –l *listing*> shall be the format specified by the *ls* utility with the –**l** option. When
28114 writing pathnames in this format, it is unspecified what is written for fields for which the
28115 underlying archive format does not have the correct information, although the correct number of
28116 <blank>-separated fields shall be written.

In **list** mode, standard output shall not be buffered more than a line at a time.

STDERR

If –**v** is specified in **read**, **write**, or **copy** modes, *pax* shall write the pathnames it processes to the standard error output using the following format:

`"%s\n", <pathname>`

These pathnames shall be written as soon as processing is begun on the file or archive member, and shall be flushed to standard error. The trailing <newline>, which shall not be buffered, is written when the file has been read or written.

If the –**s** option is specified, and the replacement string has a trailing `'p'`, substitutions shall be written to standard error in the following format:

`"%sΔ>>Δ%s\n", <original pathname>, <new pathname>`

In all operating modes of *pax*, optional messages of unspecified format concerning the input archive format and volume number, the number of files, blocks, volumes, and media parts as well as other diagnostic messages may be written to standard error.

In all formats, for both standard output and standard error, it is unspecified how non-printable characters in pathnames or link names are written.

When using the –**xpax** archive format, if a filename, link name, group name, owner name, or any other field in an extended header record cannot be translated between the codeset in use for that extended header record and the character set of the current locale, *pax* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, shall process the file as described for the –**o invalid=** option, and then shall continue processing with the next file.

OUTPUT FILES

In **read** mode, the extracted output files shall be of the archived file type. In **copy** mode, the copied output files shall be the type of the file being copied. In either mode, existing files in the destination hierarchy shall be overwritten only when all permission (–**p**), modification time (–**u**), and invalid-value (–**oinvalid=**) tests allow it.

In **write** mode, the output file named by the –**f** option-argument shall be a file formatted according to one of the specifications in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section, or some other implementation-defined format.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

pax Interchange Format

A *pax* archive tape or file produced in the –**xpax** format shall contain a series of blocks. The physical layout of the archive shall be identical to the **ustar** format described in ustar Interchange Format (on page 721). Each file archived shall be represented by the following sequence:

- An optional header block with extended header records. This header block is of the form described in pax Header Block (on page 716), with a *typeflag* value of **x** or **g**. The extended header records, described in pax Extended Header (on page 717), shall be included as the data for this header block.
- A header block that describes the file. Any fields in the preceding optional extended header shall override the associated fields in this header block for this file.
- Zero or more blocks that contain the contents of the file.

At the end of the archive file there shall be two 512-byte blocks filled with binary zeros, interpreted as an end-of-archive indicator.

A schematic of an example archive with global extended header records and two actual files is

shown in Figure 4-1 (on page 716). In the example, the second file in the archive has no extended header preceding it, presumably because it has no need for extended attributes.

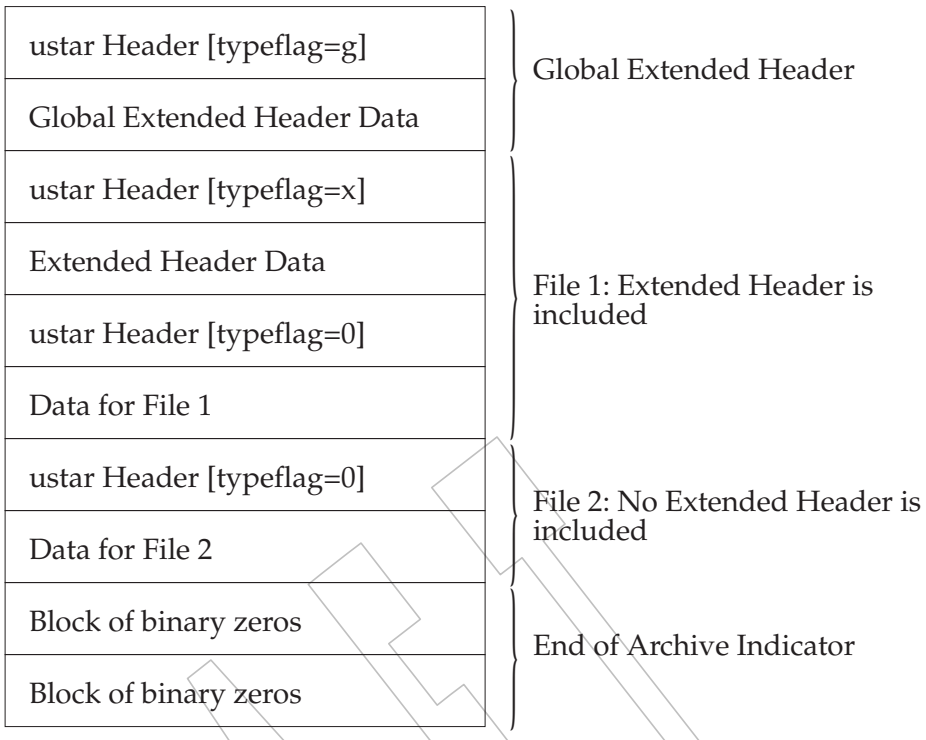


Figure 4-1 pax Format Archive Example

pax Header Block

The **pax** header block shall be identical to the **ustar** header block described in ustar Interchange Format (on page 721), except that two additional *typeflag* values are defined:

x Represents extended header records for the following file in the archive (which shall have its own **ustar** header block). The format of these extended header records shall be as described in pax Extended Header (on page 717).

g Represents global extended header records for the following files in the archive. The format of these extended header records shall be as described in pax Extended Header (on page 717). Each value shall affect all subsequent files that do not override that value in their own extended header record and until another global extended header record is reached that provides another value for the same field. The *typeflag* **g** global headers should not be used with interchange media that could suffer partial data loss in transporting the archive.

For both of these types, the *size* field shall be the size of the extended header records in octets. The other fields in the header block are not meaningful to this version of the *pax* utility. However, if this archive is read by a *pax* utility conforming to the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard, the header block fields are used to create a regular file that contains the extended header records as data. Therefore, header block field values should be selected to provide reasonable file access to this regular file.

A further difference from the **ustar** header block is that data blocks for files of *typeflag* 1 (the digit one) (hard link) may be included, which means that the size field may be greater than zero. Archives created by *pax* **–o linkdata** shall include these data blocks with the hard links.

28186 **pax Extended Header**

28187 A **pax** extended header contains values that are inappropriate for the **ustar** header block because
28188 of limitations in that format: fields requiring a character encoding other than that described in
28189 the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard, fields representing file attributes not described in the **ustar**
28190 header, and fields whose format or length do not fit the requirements of the **ustar** header. The
28191 values in an extended header add attributes to the following file (or files; see the description of
28192 the *typeflag* **g** header block) or override values in the following header block(s), as indicated in
28193 the following list of keywords.

28194 An extended header shall consist of one or more records, each constructed as follows:

28195 `"%d %s=%s\n", <length>, <keyword>, <value>`

28196 The extended header records shall be encoded according to the ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000 standard
28197 UTF-8 encoding. The <*length*> field, <blank>, equals sign, and <newline> shown shall be limited
28198 to the portable character set, as encoded in UTF-8. The <*keyword*> fields can be any UTF-8
28199 characters. The <*length*> field shall be the decimal length of the extended header record in
28200 octets, including the trailing <newline>. If there is a **hdrcharset** extended header in effect for a
28201 file, the *value* field for any **gname**, **linkpath**, **path**, and **uname** extended header records shall be
28202 encoded using the character set specified by the **hdrcharset** extended header record; otherwise,
28203 the *value* field shall be encoded using UTF-8. The *value* field for all other keywords specified by
28204 this standard shall be encoded using UTF-8.

28205 The <*keyword*> field shall be one of the entries from the following list or a keyword provided as
28206 an implementation extension. Keywords consisting entirely of lowercase letters, digits, and
28207 periods are reserved for future standardization. A keyword shall not include an equals sign. (In
28208 the following list, the notations "file(s)" or "block(s)" is used to acknowledge that a keyword
28209 affects the following single file after a *typeflag* **x** extended header, but possibly multiple files after
28210 *typeflag* **g**. Any requirements in the list for *pax* to include a record when in **write** or **copy** mode
28211 shall apply only when such a record has not already been provided through the use of the **–o**
28212 option. When used in **copy** mode, *pax* shall behave as if an archive had been created with
28213 applicable extended header records and then extracted.)

28214 **atime** The file access time for the following file(s), equivalent to the value of the *st_atime*
28215 member of the **stat** structure for a file, as described by the *stat*( ) function. The
28216 access time shall be restored if the process has the appropriate privilege required to
28217 do so. The format of the <*value*> shall be as described in pax Extended Header File
28218 Times (on page 720).

28219 **charset** The name of the character set used to encode the data in the following file(s). The
28220 entries in the following table are defined to refer to known standards; additional
28221 names may be agreed on between the originator and recipient.

<value>	Formal Standard
ISO-IRΔ646Δ1990	ISO/IEC 646: 1990
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ1Δ1998	ISO/IEC 8859-1: 1998
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ2Δ1999	ISO/IEC 8859-2: 1999
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ3Δ1999	ISO/IEC 8859-3: 1999
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ4Δ1998	ISO/IEC 8859-4: 1998
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ5Δ1999	ISO/IEC 8859-5: 1999
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ6Δ1999	ISO/IEC 8859-6: 1999
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ7Δ1987	ISO/IEC 8859-7: 1987
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ8Δ1999	ISO/IEC 8859-8: 1999
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ9Δ1999	ISO/IEC 8859-9: 1999
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ10Δ1998	ISO/IEC 8859-10: 1998
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ13Δ1998	ISO/IEC 8859-13: 1998
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ14Δ1998	ISO/IEC 8859-14: 1998
ISO-IRΔ8859Δ15Δ1999	ISO/IEC 8859-15: 1999
ISO-IRΔ10646Δ2000	ISO/IEC 10646: 2000
ISO-IRΔ10646Δ2000ΔUTF-8	ISO/IEC 10646, UTF-8 encoding
BINARY	None.

The encoding is included in an extended header for information only; when *pax* is used as described in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, it shall not translate the file data into any other encoding. The **BINARY** entry indicates unencoded binary data.

When used in **write** or **copy** mode, it is implementation-defined whether *pax* includes a **charset** extended header record for a file.

comment A series of characters used as a comment. All characters in the <*value*> field shall be ignored by *pax*.

gid The group ID of the group that owns the file, expressed as a decimal number using digits from the ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard. This record shall override the *gid* field in the following header block(s). When used in **write** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall include a *gid* extended header record for each file whose group ID is greater than 2 097 151 (octal 7 777 777).

gname The group of the file(s), formatted as a group name in the group database. This record shall override the *gid* and *gname* fields in the following header block(s), and any *gid* extended header record. When used in **read**, **copy**, or **list** mode, *pax* shall translate the name from the encoding in the header record to the character set appropriate for the group database on the receiving system. If any of the characters cannot be translated, and if neither the **–oinvalid=UTF-8** option nor the **–oinvalid=binary** option is specified, the results are implementation-defined. When used in **write** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall include a **gname** extended header record for each file whose group name cannot be represented entirely with the letters and digits of the portable character set.

hdrcharset The name of the character set used to encode the value field of the **gname**, **linkpath**, **path**, and **uname** *pax* extended header records. The entries in the following table are defined to refer to known standards; additional names may be agreed between the originator and the recipient.

<value>	Formal Standard
ISO-IRΔ10646Δ2000ΔUTF-8	ISO/IEC 10646, UTF-8 encoding
BINARY	None.

If no **hdrcharset** extended header record is specified, the default character set used to encode all values in extended header records shall be the ISO/IEC 10646-1: 2000

standard UTF-8 encoding.

The **BINARY** entry indicates that all values recorded in extended headers for affected files are unencoded binary data from the underlying system.

linkpath The pathname of a link being created to another file, of any type, previously archived. This record shall override the *linkname* field in the following **ustar** header block(s). The following **ustar** header block shall determine the type of link created. If *typeflag* of the following header block is 1, it shall be a hard link. If *typeflag* is 2, it shall be a symbolic link and the **linkpath** value shall be the contents of the symbolic link. The *pax* utility shall translate the name of the link (contents of the symbolic link) from the encoding in the header to the character set appropriate for the local file system. When used in **write** or **copy** mode, *pax* shall include a **linkpath** extended header record for each link whose pathname cannot be represented entirely with the members of the portable character set other than NUL.

mtime The file modification time of the following file(s), equivalent to the value of the *st_mtime* member of the **stat** structure for a file, as described in the *stat*( ) function. This record shall override the *mtime* field in the following header block(s). The modification time shall be restored if the process has the appropriate privilege required to do so. The format of the <*value*> shall be as described in pax Extended Header File Times (on page 720).

path The pathname of the following file(s). This record shall override the *name* and *prefix* fields in the following header block(s). The *pax* utility shall translate the pathname of the file fr

If the <*value*> field is zero length, it shall delete any header block field, previously entered extended header value, or global extended header value of the same name.

If a keyword in an extended header record (or in a **–o** option-argument) overrides or deletes a corresponding field in the **ustar** header block, *pax* shall ignore the contents of that header block field.

Unlike the **ustar** header block fields, NULs shall not delimit <*value*>s; all characters within the <*value*> field shall be considered data for the field. None of the length limitations of the **ustar** header block fields in Table 4-13 shall apply to the extended header records.

pax Extended Header Keyword Precedence

This section describes the precedence in which the various header records and fields and command line options are selected to apply to a file in the archive. When *pax* is used in **read** or **list** modes, it shall determine a file attribute in the following sequence:

1. If **–odelete=keyword-prefix** is used, the affected attributes shall be determined from step 7., if applicable, or ignored otherwise.
2. If **–o***keyword*:= is used, the affected attributes shall be ignored.
3. If **–okeyword:=value** is used, the affected attribute shall be assigned the value.
4. If there is a *typeflag* **x** extended header record, the affected attribute shall be assigned the <*value*>. When extended header records conflict, the last one given in the header shall take precedence.
5. If **–okeyword=value** is used, the affected attribute shall be assigned the value.
6. If there is a *typeflag* **g** global extended header record, the affected attribute shall be assigned the <*value*>. When global extended header records conflict, the last one given in the global header shall take precedence.
7. Otherwise, the attribute shall be determined from the **ustar** header block.

pax Extended Header File Times

The *pax* utility shall write an **mtime** record for each file in **write** or **copy** modes if the file's modification time cannot be represented exactly in the **ustar** header logical record described in ustar Interchange Format (on page 721). This can occur if the time is out of **ustar** range, or if the file system of the underlying implementation supports non-integer time granularities and the time is not an integer. All of these time records shall be formatted as a decimal representation of the time in seconds since the Epoch. If a period (`'.'`) decimal point character is present, the digits to the right of the point shall represent the units of a subsecond timing granularity, where the first digit is tenths of a second and each subsequent digit is a tenth of the previous digit. In **read** or **copy** mode, the *pax* utility shall truncate the time of a file to the greatest value that is not greater than the input header file time. In **write** or **copy** mode, the *pax* utility shall output a time exactly if it can be represented exactly as a decimal number, and otherwise shall generate only enough digits so that the same time shall be recovered if the file is extracted on a system whose underlying implementation supports the same time granularity.

28358 **ustar Interchange Format**

28359 A **ustar** archive tape or file shall contain a series of logical records. Each logical record shall be a
28360 fixed-size logical record of 512 octets (see below). Although this format may be thought of as
28361 being stored on 9-track industry-standard 12.7 mm (0.5 in) magnetic tape, other types of
28362 transportable media are not excluded. Each file archived shall be represented by a header logical
28363 record that describes the file, followed by zero or more logical records that give the contents of
28364 the file. At the end of the archive file there shall be two 512-octet logical records filled with
28365 binary zeros, interpreted as an end-of-archive indicator.

28366 The logical records may be grouped for physical I/O operations, as described under the
28367 **–b***blocksize* and **–x ustar** options. Each group of logical records may be written with a single
28368 operation equivalent to the *write*( ) function. On magnetic tape, the result of this write shall be a
28369 single tape physical block. The last physical block shall always be the full size, so logical records
28370 after the two zero logical records may contain undefined data.

28371 The header logical record shall be structured as shown in the following table. All lengths and
28372 offsets are in decimal.

28373 **Table 4-13** ustar Header Block

28374

Field Name	Octet Offset	Length (in Octets)
name	0	100
mode	100	8
uid	108	8
gid	116	8
size	124	12
mtime	136	12
chksum	148	8
typeflag	156	1
linkname	157	100
magic	257	6
version	263	2
uname	265	32
gname	297	32
devmajor	329	8
devminor	337	8
prefix	345	155

28391 All characters in the header logical record shall be represented in the coded character set of the
28392 ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard. For maximum portability between implementations, names should
28393 be selected from characters represented by the portable filename character set as octets with the
28394 most significant bit zero. If an implementation supports the use of characters outside of slash
28395 and the portable filename character set in names for files, users, and groups, one or more
28396 implementation-defined encodings of these characters shall be provided for interchange
28397 purposes.

28398 However, the *pax* utility shall never create filenames on the local system that cannot be accessed
28399 via the procedures described in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If a filename is found on the medium that
28400 would create an invalid filename, it is implementation-defined whether the data from the file is
28401 stored on the file hierarchy and under what name it is stored. The *pax* utility may choose to
28402 ignore these files as long as it produces an error indicating that the file is being ignored.

28403 Each field within the header logical record is contiguous; that is, there is no padding used. Each
28404 character on the archive medium shall be stored contiguously.

The fields *magic*, *uname*, and *gname* are character strings each terminated by a NUL character. The fields *name*, *linkname*, and *prefix* are NUL-terminated character strings except when all characters in the array contain non-NUL characters including the last character. The *version* field is two octets containing the characters `"00"` (zero-zero). The *typeflag* contains a single character. All other fields are leading zero-filled octal numbers using digits from the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV. Each numeric field is terminated by one or more <space> or NUL characters.

The *name* and the *prefix* fields shall produce the pathname of the file. A new pathname shall be formed, if *prefix* is not an empty string (its first character is not NUL), by concatenating *prefix* (up to the first NUL character), a slash character, and *name*; otherwise, *name* is used alone. In either case, *name* is terminated at the first NUL character. If *prefix* begins with a NUL character, it shall be ignored. In this manner, pathnames of at most 256 characters can be supported. If a pathname does not fit in the space provided, *pax* shall notify the user of the error, and shall not store any part of the file—header or data—on the medium.

The *linkname* field, described below, shall not use the *prefix* to produce a pathname. As such, a *linkname* is limited to 100 characters. If the name does not fit in the space provided, *pax* shall notify the user of the error, and shall not attempt to store the link on the medium.

The *mode* field provides 12 bits encoded in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard octal digit representation. The encoded bits shall represent the following values:

Table 4-14 ustar *mode* Field

Bit Value	IEEE Std 1003.1-200x Bit	Description
04 000	S_ISUID	Set UID on execution.
02 000	S_ISGID	Set GID on execution.
01 000	<reserved>	Reserved for future standardization.
00 400	S_IRUSR	Read permission for file owner class.
00 200	S_IWUSR	Write permission for file owner class.
00 100	S_IXUSR	Execute/search permission for file owner class.
00 040	S_IRGRP	Read permission for file group class.
00 020	S_IWGRP	Write permission for file group class.
00 010	S_IXGRP	Execute/search permission for file group class.
00 004	S_IROTH	Read permission for file other class.
00 002	S_IWOTH	Write permission for file other class.
00 001	S_IXOTH	Execute/search permission for file other class.

When appropriate privilege is required to set one of these mode bits, and the user restoring the files from the archive does not have the appropriate privilege, the mode bits for which the user does not have appropriate privilege shall be ignored. Some of the mode bits in the archive format are not mentioned elsewhere in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If the implementation does not support those bits, they may be ignored.

The *uid* and *gid* fields are the user and group ID of the owner and group of the file, respectively.

The *size* field is the size of the file in octets. If the *typeflag* field is set to specify a file to be of type 1 (a link) or 2 (a symbolic link), the *size* field shall be specified as zero. If the *typeflag* field is set to specify a file of type 5 (directory), the *size* field shall be interpreted as described under the definition of that record type. No data logical records are stored for types 1, 2, or 5. If the *typeflag* field is set to 3 (character special file), 4 (block special file), or 6 (FIFO), the meaning of the *size* field is unspecified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, and no data logical records shall be stored on the medium. Additionally, for type 6, the *size* field shall be ignored when reading. If the *typeflag* field is set to any other value, the number of logical records written following the header shall be (*size*+511)/512, ignoring any fraction in the result of the division.

The *mtime* field shall be the modification time of the file at the time it was archived. It is the

ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard representation of the octal value of the modification time obtained from the *stat*( ) function.

The *chksum* field shall be the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV representation of the octal value of the simple sum of all octets in the header logical record. Each octet in the header shall be treated as an unsigned value. These values shall be added to an unsigned integer, initialized to zero, the precision of which is not less than 17 bits. When calculating the checksum, the *chksum* field is treated as if it were all spaces.

The *typeflag* field specifies the type of file archived. If a particular implementation does not recognize the type, or the user does not have appropriate privilege to create that type, the file shall be extracted as if it were a regular file if the file type is defined to have a meaning for the *size* field that could cause data logical records to be written on the medium (see the previous description for *size*). If conversion to a regular file occurs, the *pax* utility shall produce an error indicating that the conversion took place. All of the *typeflag* fields shall be coded in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV:

`0` Represents a regular file. For backwards-compatibility, a *typeflag* value of binary zero (`'\0'`) should be recognized as meaning a regular file when extracting files from the archive. Archives written with this version of the archive file format create regular files with a *typeflag* value of the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV `'0'`.

`1` Represents a file linked to another file, of any type, previously archived. Such files are identified by having the same device and file serial numbers, and pathnames that refer to different directory entries. All such files shall be archived as linked files. The linked-to name is specified in the *linkname* field with a NUL-character terminator if it is less than 100 octets in length.

`2` Represents a symbolic link. The contents of the symbolic link shall be stored in the *linkname* field.

`3,4` Represent character special files and block special files respectively. In this case the *devmajor* and *devminor* fields shall contain information defining the device, the format of which is unspecified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Implementations may map the device specifications to their own local specification or may ignore the entry.

`5` Specifies a directory or subdirectory. On systems where disk allocation is performed on a directory basis, the *size* field shall contain the maximum number of octets (which may be rounded to the nearest disk block allocation unit) that the directory may hold. A *size* field of zero indicates no such limiting. Systems that do not support limiting in this manner should ignore the *size* field.

`6` Specifies a FIFO special file. Note that the archiving of a FIFO file archives the existence of this file and not its contents.

`7` Reserved to represent a file to which an implementation has associated some high-performance attribute. Implementations without such extensions should treat this file as a regular file (type 0).

`A-Z` The letters `'A'` to `'Z'`, inclusive, are reserved for custom implementations. All other values are reserved for future versions of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

It is unspecified whether files with pathnames that refer to the same directory entry are archived as linked files or as separate files. If they are archived as linked files, this means that attempting to extract both pathnames from the resulting archive will always cause an error (unless the **–u** option is used) because the link cannot be created.

It is unspecified whether files with the same device and file serial numbers being appended to an archive are treated as linked files to members that were in the archive before the append.

Attempts to archive a socket using **ustar** interchange format shall produce a diagnostic message.

Handling of other file types is implementation-defined.

The *magic* field is the specification that this archive was output in this archive format. If this field contains **ustar** (the five characters from the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV shown followed by NUL), the *uname* and *gname* fields shall contain the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV representation of the owner and group of the file, respectively (truncated to fit, if necessary). When the file is restored by a privileged, protection-preserving version of the utility, the user and group databases shall be scanned for these names. If found, the user and group IDs contained within these files shall be used rather than the values contained within the *uid* and *gid* fields.

cpio Interchange Format

The octet-oriented **cpio** archive format shall be a series of entries, each comprising a header that describes the file, the name of the file, and then the contents of the file.

An archive may be recorded as a series of fixed-size blocks of octets. This blocking shall be used only to make physical I/O more efficient. The last group of blocks shall always be at the full size.

For the octet-oriented **cpio** archive format, the individual entry information shall be in the order indicated and described by the following table; see also the **<cpio.h>** header.

Table 4-15 Octet-Oriented cpio Archive Entry

Header Field Name	Length (in Octets)	Interpreted as
c_magic	6	Octal number
c_dev	6	Octal number
c_ino	6	Octal number
c_mode	6	Octal number
c_uid	6	Octal number
c_gid	6	Octal number
c_nlink	6	Octal number
c_rdev	6	Octal number
c_mtime	11	Octal number
c_namesize	6	Octal number
c_filesize	11	Octal number
Filename Field Name	**Length**	**Interpreted as**
c_name	*c_namesize*	Pathname string
File Data Field Name	**Length**	**Interpreted as**
c_filedata	*c_filesize*	Data

cpio Header

For each file in the archive, a header as defined previously shall be written. The information in the header fields is written as streams of the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard characters interpreted as octal numbers. The octal numbers shall be extended to the necessary length by appending the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV zeros at the most-significant-digit end of the number; the result is written to the most-significant digit of the stream of octets first. The fields shall be interpreted as follows:

c_magic Identify the archive as being a transportable archive by containing the identifying value `"070707"`.

c_dev, *c_ino* Contains values that uniquely identify the file within the archive (that is, no files contain the same pair of *c_dev* and *c_ino* values unless they are links to the same file). The values shall be determined in an unspecified manner.

c_mode Contains the file type and access permissions as defined in the following table.

Table 4-16 Values for cpio c_mode Field

File Permissions Name	Value	Indicates
C_IRUSR	000 400	Read by owner
C_IWUSR	000 200	Write by owner
C_IXUSR	000 100	Execute by owner
C_IRGRP	000 040	Read by group
C_IWGRP	000 020	Write by group
C_IXGRP	000 010	Execute by group
C_IROTH	000 004	Read by others
C_IWOTH	000 002	Write by others
C_IXOTH	000 001	Execute by others
C_ISUID	004 000	Set *uid*
C_ISGID	002 000	Set *gid*
C_ISVTX	001 000	Reserved
File Type Name	**Value**	**Indicates**
C_ISDIR	040 000	Directory
C_ISFIFO	010 000	FIFO
C_ISREG	0100 000	Regular file
C_ISLNK	0120 000	Symbolic link
C_ISBLK	060 000	Block special file
C_ISCHR	020 000	Character special file
C_ISSOCK	0140 000	Socket
C_ISCTG	0110 000	Reserved

Directories, FIFOs, symbolic links, and regular files shall be supported on a system conforming to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; additional values defined previously are reserved for compatibility with existing systems. Additional file types may be supported; however, such files should not be written to archives intended to be transported to other systems.

c_uid Contains the user ID of the owner.

c_gid Contains the group ID of the group.

c_nlink Contains a number greater than or equal to the number of links in the archive referencing the file. If the **–a** option is used to append to a *cpio* archive, then the *pax* utility need not account for the files in the existing part of the archive when calculating the *c_nlink* values for the appended part of the archive, and need not alter the *c_nlink* values in the existing part of the archive if additional files with the same *c_dev* and *c_ino* values are appended to the archive.

c_rdev Contains implementation-defined information for character or block special files.

c_mtime Contains the latest time of modification of the file at the time the archive was created.

28587 *c_namesize* Contains the length of the pathname, including the terminating NUL character.

28588 *c_filesize* Contains the length in octets of the data section following the header structure.

28589 **cpio Filename**

28590 The *c_name* field shall contain the pathname of the file. The length of this field in octets is the
28591 value of *c_namesize*.

28592 If a filename is found on the medium that would create an invalid pathname, it is
28593 implementation-defined whether the data from the file is stored on the file hierarchy and under
28594 what name it is stored.

28595 All characters shall be represented in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard IRV. For maximum
28596 portability between implementations, names should be selected from characters represented by
28597 the portable filename character set as octets with the most significant bit zero. If an
28598 implementation supports the use of characters outside the portable filename character set in
28599 names for files, users, and groups, one or more implementation-defined encodings of these
28600 characters shall be provided for interchange purposes. However, the *pax* utility shall never create
28601 filenames on the local system that cannot be accessed via the procedures described previously in
28602 this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If a filename is found on the medium that would create an
28603 invalid filename, it is implementation-defined whether the data from the file is stored on the
28604 local file system and under what name it is stored. The *pax* utility may choose to ignore these
28605 files as long as it produces an error indicating that the file is being ignored.

28606 **cpio File Data**

28607 Following *c_name*, there shall be *c_filesize* octets of data. Interpretation of such data occurs in a
28608 manner dependent on the file. For regular files, the data shall consist of the contents of the file.
28609 For symblic links, the data shall consist of the contents of the symbolic link. If *c_filesize* is zero,
28610 no data shall be contained in *c_filedata*.

28611 When restoring from an archive:

28612 • If the user does not have the appropriate privilege to create a file of the specified type, *pax*
28613 shall ignore the entry and write an error message to standard error.

28614 • Only regular files and symbolic links have data to be restored. Presuming a regular file
28615 meets any selection criteria that might be imposed on the format-reading utility by the
28616 user, such data shall be restored.

28617 • If a user does not have appropriate privilege to set a particular mode flag, the flag shall be
28618 ignored. Some of the mode flags in the archive format are not mentioned elsewhere in this
28619 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If the implementation does not support those flags, they
28620 may be ignored.

28621 **cpio Special Entries**

28622 FIFO special files, directories, and the trailer shall be recorded with *c_filesize* equal to zero.
28623 Symbolic links shall be recorded with *c_filesize* equal to the length of the contents of the symbolic
28624 link. For other special files, *c_filesize* is unspecified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The
28625 header for the next file entry in the archive shall be written directly after the last octet of the file
28626 entry preceding it. A header denoting the filename **TRAILER!!!** shall indicate the end of the
28627 archive; the contents of octets in the last block of the archive following such a header are
28628 undefined.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All files were processed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If

In **read** mode, implementations are permitted to overwrite files when the archive has multiple members with the same name. This may fail if permissions on the first version of the file do not permit it to be overwritten.

The **cpio** and **ustar** formats can only support files up to 8 589 934 592 bytes (8 * 2^30) in size.

When archives containing binary header information are listed , the filenames printed may cause strange behavior on some terminals.

EXAMPLES

The following command:

```
pax –w –f /dev/rmt/1m .
```

copies the contents of the current directory to tape drive 1, medium density (assuming historical System V device naming procedures—the historical BSD device name would be **/dev/rmt9**).

The following commands:

```
mkdir newdir
pax –rw olddir newdir
```

copy the *olddir* directory hierarchy to *newdir*.

```
pax –r –s ',^//*usr//*,,' –f a.pax
```

reads the archive **a.pax**, with all files rooted in **/usr** in the archive extracted relative to the current directory.

Using the option:

```
–o listopt="%M %(atime)T %(size)D %(name)s"
```

overrides the default output description in Standard Output and instead writes:

```
–rw–rw––– Jan 12 15:53 2003 1492 /usr/foo/bar
```

Using the options:

```
–o listopt='%L\t%(size)D\n%.7' \
–o listopt='(name)s\n%(atime)T\n%T'
```

overrides the default output description in Standard Output and instead writes:

```
/usr/foo/bar –> /tmp   1492
/usr/fo
Jan 12 15:53 1991
Jan 31 15:53 2003
```

RATIONALE

The *pax* utility was new for the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard. It represents a peaceful compromise between advocates of the historical *tar* and *cpio* utilities.

A fundamental difference between *cpio* and *tar* was in the way directories were treated. The *cpio* utility did not treat directories differently from other files, and to select a directory and its contents required that each file in the hierarchy be explicitly specified. For *tar*, a directory matched every file in the file hierarchy it rooted.

The *pax* utility offers both interfaces; by default, directories map into the file hierarchy they root. The **–d** option causes *pax* to skip any file not explicitly referenced, as *cpio* historically did. The *tar –style* behavior was chosen as the default because it was believed that this was the more common usage and because *tar* is the more commonly available interface, as it was historically provided on both System V and BSD implementations.

The data interchange format specification in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that

processes with "appropriate privileges" shall always restore the ownership and permissions of extracted files exactly as archived. If viewed from the historic equivalence between superuser and "appropriate privileges", there are two problems with this requirement. First, users running as superusers may unknowingly set dangerous permissions on extracted files. Second, it is needlessly limiting, in that superusers cannot extract files and own them as superuser unless the archive was created by the superuser. (It should be noted that restoration of ownerships and permissions for the superuser, by default, is historical practice in *cpio*, but not in *tar*.) In order to avoid these two problems, the *pax* specification has an additional "privilege" mechanism, the **–p** option. Only a *pax* invocation with the privileges needed, and which has the **–p** option set using the e specification character, has the "appropriate privilege" to restore full ownership and permission information.

Note also that this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the file ownership and access permissions shall be set, on extraction, in the same fashion as the *creat*( ) function when provided with the mode stored in the archive. This means that the file creation mask of the user is applied to the file permissions.

Users should note that directories may be created by *pax* while extracting files with permissions that are different from those that existed at the time the archive was created. When extracting sensitive information into a directory hierarchy that no longer exists, users are encouraged to set their file creation mask appropriately to protect these files during extraction.

The table of contents output is written to standard output to facilitate pipeline processing.

An early proposal had hard links displaying for all pathnames. This was removed because it

28771 significant performance advantages over historical implementations. The –**n** option in early
28772 proposals had three effects; the first was to cause special characters in patterns to not be treated
28773 specially. The second was to cause only the first file that matched a pattern to be extracted. The
28774 third was to cause *pax* to write a diagnostic message to standard error when no file was found
28775 matching a specified pattern. Only the second behavior is retained by this volume of
28776 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, for many reasons. First, it is in general not acceptable for a single option to
28777 have multiple effects. Second, the ability to make pattern matching characters act as normal
28778 characters is useful for parts of *pax* other than file extraction. Third, a finer degree of control over
28779 the special characters is useful because users may wish to normalize only a single special
28780 character in a single filename. Fourth, given a more general escape mechanism, the previous
28781 behavior of the –**n** option can be easily obtained using the –**s** option or a *sed* script. Finally,
28782 writing a diagnostic message when a pattern specified by the user is unmatched by any file is
28783 useful behavior in all cases.

28784 In this version, the –**n** was removed from the **copy** mode synopsis of *pax*; it is inapplicable
28785 because there are no pattern operands specified in this mode.

28786 There is another method than *pax* for copying subtrees in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x described as part
28787 of the *cp* utility. Both methods are historical practice: *cp* provides a simpler, more intuitive
28788 interface, while *pax* offers a finer granularity of control. Each provides additional functionality to
28789 the other; in particular, *pax* maintains the hard-link structure of the hierarchy while *cp* does not.
28790 It is the intention of the standard developers that the results be similar (using appropriate option
28791 combinations in both utilities). The results are not required to be identical; there seemed
28792 insufficient gain to applications to balance the difficulty of implementations having to guarantee
28793 that the results would be exactly identical.

28794 A single archive may span more than one file. It is suggested that implementations provide
28795 informative messages to the user on standard error whenever the archive file is changed.

28796 The –**d** option (do not create intermediate directories not listed in the archive) found in early
28797 proposals was originally provided as a complement to the historic –**d** option of *cpio*. It has been
28798 deleted.

28799 The –**s** option in early proposals specified a subset of the substitution command from the *ed*
28800 utility. As there was no reason for only a subset to be supported, the –**s** option is now compatible
28801 with the current *ed* specification. Since the delimiter can be any non-null character, the following
28802 usage with single spaces is valid:

28803 ```
pax –s " foo bar " ...
```

28804 The –**t** description is worded so as to note that this may cause the access time update caused by
28805 some other activity (which occurs while the file is being read) to be overwritten.

28806 The default behavior of *pax* with regard to file modification times is the same as historical
28807 implementations of *tar*. It is not the historical behavior of *cpio*.

28808 Because the –**i** option uses **/dev/tty**, utilities without a controlling terminal are not able to use
28809 this option.

28810 The –**y** option, found in early proposals, has been deleted because a line containing a single
28811 period for the –**i** option has equivalent functionality. The special lines for the –**i** option (a single
28812 period and the empty line) are historical practice in *cpio*.

28813 In early drafts, a –**e***charmap* option was included to increase portability of files between systems
28814 using different coded character sets. This option was omitted because it was apparent that
28815 consensus could not be formed for it. In this version, the use of UTF-8 should be an adequate
28816 substitute.

28817 The ISO POSIX-2:1993 standard and ISO POSIX-1 standard requirements for *pax*, however,
28818 made it very difficult to create a single archive containing files created using extended characters
```

provided by different locales. This revision adds the **hdrcharset** keyword to make it possible to archive files in these cases without dropping files due to translation errors.

Translating filenames and other attributes from a locale's encoding to UTF-8 and then back again can lose information, as the resulting filename might not be byte-for-byte equivalent to the original. To avoid this problem, users can specify the **–o hdrcharset=binary** option, which will cause the resulting archive to use binary format for all names and attributes. Such archives are not portable among hosts that use different native encodings (e.g., EBCDIC *versus* ASCII-based encodings), but they will allow interchange among the vast majority of POSIX file systems in practical use. Also, the **–o hdrcharset=binary** option will cause *pax* in **copy** mode to behave more like other standard utilities such as *cp*.

If the values specified by the **–o exthdr.name=value**, **–o globexthdr.name=value**, or by **$TMPDIR** (if **–o globexthdr.name** is not specified) require a character encoding other than that described in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard, a **path** extended header record will have to be created for the file. If a **hdrcharset** extended header record is active for such headers, it will determine the codeset used for the value field in these extended **path** header records. These **path** extended header records always need to be created when writing an archive even if **hdrcharset=binary** has been specified and would contain the same (binary) data that appears in the **ustar** header record prefix and *name* fields. (In other words, an extended header **path** record is always required to be generated if the *prefix* or *name* fields contain non-ASCII characters even when **hdrcharset=binary** is also in effect for that file.)

The **–k** option was added to address international concerns about the dangers involved in the character set transformations of **–e** (if the target character set were different from the source, the filenames might be transformed into names matching existing files) and also was made more general to protect files transferred between file systems with different {NAME_MAX} values (truncating a filename on a smaller system might also inadvertently overwrite existing files). As stated, it prevents any overwriting, even if the target file is older than the source. This version adds more granularity of options to solve this problem by introducing the **–oinvalid=option**—specifically the **UTF-8** and **binary** actions. (Note that an existing file is still subject to overwriting in this case. The **–k** option closes that loophole.)

Some of the file characteristics referenced in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x might not be supported by some archive formats. For example, neither the **tar** nor **cpio** formats contain the file access time. For this reason, the `e` specification character has been provided, intended to cause all file characteristics specified in the archive to be retained.

It is required that extracted directories, by default, have their access and modification times and permissions set to the values specified in the archive. This has obvious problems in that the directories are almost certainly modified after being extracted and that directory permissions may not permit file creation. One possible solution is to create directories with the mode specified in the archive, as modified by the *umask* of the user, with sufficient permissions to allow file creation. After all files have been extracted, *pax* would then reset the access and modification times and permissions as necessary.

The list-mode formatting description borrows heavily from the one defined by the *printf* utility. However, since there is no separate operand list to get conversion arguments, the format was extended to allow specifying the name of the conversion argument as part of the conversion specification.

The `T` conversion specifier allows time fields to be displayed in any of the date formats. Unlike the *ls* utility, *pax* does not adjust the format when the date is less than six months in the past. This makes parsing the output more predictable.

The `D` conversion specifier handles the ability to display the major/minor or file size, as with *ls*, by using `%–8(`*`size`*`)D`.

The `L` conversion specifier handles the *ls* display for symbolic links.

Conversion specifiers were added to generate existing known types used for *ls*.

pax Interchange Format

The new POSIX data interchange format was developed primarily to satisfy international concerns that the **ustar** and **cpio** formats did not provide for file, user, and group names encoded in characters outside a subset of the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard. The standard developers realized that this new POSIX data interchange format should be very extensible because there were other requirements they foresaw in the near future:

- Support international character encodings and locale information
- Support security information (ACLs, and so on)
- Support future file types, such as realtime or contiguous files
- Include data areas for implementation use
- Support systems with words larger than 32 bits and timers with subsecond granularity

The following were not goals for this format because these are better handled by separate utilities or are inappropriate for a portable format:

- Encryption
- Compression
- Data translation between locales and codesets
- *inode* storage

The format chosen to support the goals is an extension of the **ustar** format. Of the two formats previously available, only the **ustar** format was selected for extensions because:

- It was easier to extend in an upwards-compatible way. It offered version flags and header block type fields with room for future standardization. The **cpio** format, while possessing a more flexible file naming methodology, could not be extended without breaking some theoretical implementation or using a dummy filename that could be a legitimate filename.
- Industry experience since the original "*tar* wars" fought in developing the ISO POSIX-1 standard has clearly been in favor of the **ustar** format, which is generally the default output format selected for *pax* implementations on new systems.

The new format was designed with one additional goal in mind: reasonable behavior when an older *tar* or *pax* utility happened to read an archive. Since the POSIX.1-1990 standard mandated that a "format-reading utility" had to treat unrecognized *typeflag* values as regular files, this allowed the format to include all the extended information in a pseudo-regular file that preceded each real file. An option is given that allows the archive creator to set up reasonable names for these files on the older systems. Also, the normative text suggests that reasonable file access values be used for this **ustar** header block. Making these header files inaccessible for convenient reading and deleting would not be reasonable. File permissions of 600 or 700 are suggested.

The **ustar** *typeflag* field was used to accommodate the additional functionality of the new format rather than magic or version because the POSIX.1-1990 standard (and, by reference, the previous version of *pax*), mandated the behavior of the format-reading utility when it encountered an unknown *typeflag*, but was silent about the other two fields.

Early proposals of the first revision to IEEE Std 1003.1-200x contained a proposed archive format that was based on compatibility with the standard for tape files (ISO 1001, similar to the format used historically on many mainframes and minicomputers). This format was overly complex and required considerable overhead in volume and header records. Furthermore, the standard developers felt that it would not be acceptable to the community of POSIX developers, so it was

later changed to be a format more closely related to historical practice on POSIX systems.

The prefix and name split of pathnames in **ustar** was replaced by the single path extended header record for simplicity.

The concept of a global extended header (*typeflag* **g**) was controversial. If this were applied to an archive being recorded on magnetic tape, a few unreadable blocks at the beginning of the tape could be a serious problem; a utility attempting to extract as many files as possible from a damaged archive could lose a large percentage of file header information in this case. However, if the archive were on a reliable medium, such as a CD-ROM, the global extended header offers considerable potential size reductions by eliminating redundant information. Thus, the text warns against using the global method for unreliable media and provides a method for implanting global information in the extended header for each file, rather than in the *typeflag* **g** records.

No facility for data translation or filtering on a per-file basis is included because the standard developers could not invent an interface that would allow this in an efficient manner. If a filter, such as encryption or compression, is to be applied to all the files, it is more efficient to apply the filter to the entire archive as a single file. The standard developers considered interfaces that would invoke a shell script for each file going into or out of the archive, but the system overhead in this approach was considered to be too high.

One such approach would be to have **filter=** records that give a pathname for an executable. When the program is invoked, the file and archive would be open for standard input/output and all the header fields would be available as environment variables or command-line arguments. The standard developers did discuss such schemes, but they were omitted from IEEE Std 1003.1-200x due to concerns about excessive overhead. Also, the program itself would need to be in the archive if it were to be used portably.

There is currently no portable means of identifying the character set(s) used for a file in the file system. Therefore, *pax* has not been given a mechanism to generate charset records automatically. The only portable means of doing this is for the user to write the archive using the **–ocharset=string** command line option. This assumes that all of the files in the archive use the same encoding. The "implementation-defined" text is included to allow for a system that can identify the encodings used for each of its files.

The table of standards that accompanies the charset record description is acknowledged to be very limited. Only a limited number of character set standards is reasonable for maximal interchange. Any character set is, of course, possible by prior agreement. It was suggested that EBCDIC be listed, but it was omitted because it is not defined by a formal standard. Formal standards, and then only those with reasonably large followings, can be included here, simply as a matter of practicality. The <*value*>s represent names of officially registered character sets in the format required by the ISO 2375: 1985 standard.

The normal comma or <blank>-separated list rules are not followed in the case of keyword options to allow ease of argument parsing for *getopts*.

Further information on character encodings is in pax Archive Character Set Encoding/Decoding (on page 735).

The standard developers have reserved keyword name space for vendor extensions. It is suggested that the format to be used is:

```
VENDOR.keyword
```

where *VENDOR* is the name of the vendor or organization in all uppercase letters. It is further suggested that the keyword following the period be named differently than any of the standard keywords so that it could be used for future standardization, if appropriate, by omitting the *VENDOR* prefix.

The <*length*> field in the extended header record was included to make it simpler to step through the records, even if a record contains an unknown format (to a particular *pax*) with complex interactions of special characters. It also provides a minor integrity checkpoint within the records to aid a program attempting to recover files from a damaged archive.

There are no extended header versions of the *devmajor* and *devminor* fields because the unspecified format **ustar** header field should be sufficient. If they are not, vendor-specific extended keywords (such as *VENDOR.devmajor*) should be used.

Device and *i*-number labeling of files was not adopted from *cpio*; files are interchanged strictly on a symbolic name basis, as in **ustar**.

Just as with the **ustar** format descriptions, the new format makes no special arrangements for multi-volume archives. Each of the *pax* archive types is assumed to be inside a single POSIX file and splitting that file over multiple volumes (diskettes, tape cartridges, and so on), processing their labels, and mounting each in the proper sequence are considered to be implementation details that cannot be described portably.

The **pax** format is intended for interchange, not only for backup on a single (family of) systems. It is not as densely packed as might be possible for backup:

- It contains information as coded characters that could be coded in binary.
- It identifies extended records with name fields that could be omitted in favor of a fixed-field layout.
- It translates names into a portable character set and identifies locale-related information, both of which are probably unnecessary for backup.

The requirements on restoring from an archive are slightly different from the historical wording, allowing for non-monolithic privilege to bring forward as much as possible. In particular, attributes such as "high performance file" might be broadly but not universally granted while set-user-ID or *chown*() might be much more restricted. There is no implication in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that the security information be honored after it is restored to the file hierarchy, in spite of what might be improperly inferred by the silence on that topic. That is a topic for another standard.

Links are recorded in the fashion described here because a link can be to any file type. It is desirable in general to be able to restore part of an archive selectively and restore all of those files completely. If the data is not associated with each link, it is not possible to do this. However, the data associated with a file can be large, and when selective restoration is not needed, this can be a significant burden. The archive is structured so that files that have no associated data can always be restored by the name of any link name of any link, and the user may choose whether data is recorded with each instance of a file that contains data. The format permits mixing of both types of links in a single archive; this can be done for special needs, and *pax* is expected to interpret such archives on input properly, despite the fact that there is no *pax* option that would force this mixed case on output. (When **−o linkdata** is used, the output must contain the duplicate data, but the implementation is free to include it or omit it when **−o linkdata** is not used.)

The time values are included as extended header records for those implementations needing more than the eleven octal digits allowed by the **ustar** format. Portable file timestamps cannot be negative. If *pax* encounters a file with a negative timestamp in **copy** or **write** mode, it can reject the file, substitute a non-negative timestamp, or generate a non-portable timestamp with a leading `'-'`. Even though some implementations can support finer file-time granularities than seconds, the normative text requires support only for seconds since the Epoch because the ISO POSIX-1 standard states them that way. The **ustar** format includes only *mtime*; the new format adds *atime* and *ctime* for symmetry. The *atime* access time restored to the file system will be affected by the **−p a** and **−p e** options. The *ctime* creation time (actually *inode* modification

time) is described with "appropriate privilege" so that it can be ignored when writing to the file system. POSIX does not provide a portable means to change file creation time. Nothing is intended to prevent a non-portable implementation of *pax* from restoring the value.

The *gid*, *size*, and *uid* extended header records were included to allow expansion beyond the sizes specified in the regular *tar* header. New file system architectures are emerging that will exhaust the 12-digit size field. There are probably not many systems requiring more than 8 digits for user and group IDs, but the extended header values were included for completeness, allowing overrides for all of the decimal values in the *tar* header.

The standard developers intended to describe the effective results of *pax* with regard to file ownerships and permissions; implementations are not restricted in timing or sequencing the restoration of such, provided the results are as specified.

Much of the text describing the extended headers refers to use in "**write** or **copy** modes". The **copy** mode references are due to the normative text: "The effect of the copy shall be as if the copied files were written to an archive file and then subsequently extracted ...". There is certainly no way to test whether *pax* is actually generating the extended headers in **copy** mode, but the effects must be as if it had.

pax Archive Character Set Encoding/Decoding

There is a need to exchange archives of files between systems of different native codesets. Filenames, group names, and user names must be preserved to the fullest extent possible when an archive is read on the receiving platform. Translation of the contents of files is not within the scope of the *pax* utility.

There will also be the need to represent characters that are not available on the receiving platform. These unsupported characters cannot be automatically folded to the local set of characters due to the chance of collisions. This could result in overwriting previous extracted files from the archive or pre-existing files on the system.

For these reasons, the codeset used to represent characters within the extended header records of the *pax* archive must be sufficiently rich to handle all commonly used character sets. The fields requiring translation include, at a minimum, filenames, user names, group names, and link pathnames. Implementations may wish to have localized extended keywords that use non-portable characters.

The standard developers considered the following options:

- The archive creator specifies the well-defined name of the source codeset. The receiver must then recognize the codeset name and perform the appropriate translations to the destination codeset.
- The archive creator includes within the archive the character mapping table for the source codeset used to encode extended header records. The receiver must then read the character mapping table and perform the appropriate translations to the destination codeset.
- The archive creator translates the extended header records in the source codeset into a canonical form. The receiver must then perform the appropriate translations to the destination codeset.

The approach that incorporates the name of the source codeset poses the problem of codeset name registration, and makes the archive useless to *pax* archive decoders that do not recognize that codeset.

Because parts of an archive may be corrupted, the standard developers felt that including the character map of the source codeset was too fragile. The loss of this one key component could result in making the entire archive useless. (The difference between this and the global extended

header decision was the latter has a workaround—duplicating extended header records on unreliable media—but this would be too burdensome for large character set maps.)

Both of the above approaches also put an undue burden on the *pax* archive receiver to handle the cross-product of all source and destination codesets.

To simplify the translation from the source codeset to the canonical form and from the canonical form to the destination codeset, the standard developers decided that the internal representation should be a stateless encoding. A stateless encoding is one where each codepoint has the same meaning, without regard to the decoder being in a specific state. An example of a stateful encoding would be the Japanese Shift-JIS; an example of a stateless encoding would be the ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard (equivalent to 7-bit ASCII).

For these reasons, the standard developers decided to adopt a canonical format for the representation of file information strings. The obvious, well-endorsed candidate is the ISO/IEC 10646-1: 2000 standard (based in part on Unicode), which can be used to represent the characters of virtually all standardized character sets. The standard developers initially agreed upon using UCS2 (16-bit Unicode) as the internal representation. This repertoire of characters provides a sufficiently rich set to represent all commonly-used codesets.

However, the standard developers found that the 16-bit Unicode representation had some problems. It forced the issue of standardizing byte ordering. The 2-byte length of each character made the extended header records twice as long for the case of strings coded entirely from historical 7-bit ASCII. For these reasons, the standard developers chose the UTF-8 defined in the ISO/IEC 10646-1: 2000 standard. This multi-byte representation encodes UCS2 or UCS4 characters reliably and deterministically, eliminating the need for a canonical byte ordering. In addition, NUL octets and other characters possibly confusing to POSIX file systems do not appear, except to represent themselves. It was realized that certain national codesets take up more space after the encoding, due to their placement within the UCS range; it was felt that the usefulness of the encoding of the names outweighs the disadvantage of size increase for file, user, and group names.

The encoding of UTF-8 is as follows:

```
UCS4 Hex Encoding  UTF-8 Binary Encoding

00000000-0000007F  0xxxxxxx
00000080-000007FF  110xxxxx 10xxxxxx
00000800-0000FFFF  1110xxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx
00010000-001FFFFF  11110xxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx
00200000-03FFFFFF  111110xx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx
04000000-7FFFFFFF  1111110x 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx
```

where each `'x'` represents a bit value from the character being translated.

ustar Interchange Format

The description of the **ustar** format reflects numerous enhancements over pre-1988 versions of the historical *tar* utility. The goal of these changes was not only to provide the functional enhancements desired, but also to retain compatibility between new and old versions. This compatibility has been retained. Archives written using the old archive format are compatible with the new format.

Implementors should be aware that the previous file format did not include a mechanism to archive directory type files. For this reason, the convention of using a filename ending with slash was adopted to specify a directory on the archive.

The total size of the *name* and *prefix* fields have been set to meet the minimum requirements for {PATH_MAX}. If a pathname will fit within the *name* field, it is recommended that the pathname be stored there without the use of the *prefix* field. Although the name field is known to be too

small to contain {PATH_MAX} characters, the value was not changed in this version of the archive file format to retain backwards-compatibility, and instead the prefix was introduced. Also, because of the earlier version of the format, there is no way to remove the restriction on the *linkname* field being limited in size to just that of the *name* field.

The *size* field is required to be meaningful in all implementation extensions, although it could be zero. This is required so that the data blocks can always be properly counted.

It is suggested that if device special files need to be represented that cannot be represented in the standard format, that one of the extension types (**A**-**Z**) be used, and that the additional information for the special file be represented as data and be reflected in the *size* field.

Attempting to restore a special file type, where it is converted to ordinary data and conflicts with an existing filename, need not be specially detected by the utility. If run as an ordinary user, *pax* should not be able to overwrite the entries in, for example, **/dev** in any case (whether the file is converted to another type or not). If run as a privileged user, it should be able to do so, and it would be considered a bug if it did not. The same is true of ordinary data files and similarly named special files; it is impossible to anticipate the needs of the user (who could really intend to overwrite the file), so the behavior should be predictable (and thus regular) and rely on the protection system as required.

The value 7 in the *typeflag* field is intended to define how contiguous files can be stored in a **ustar** archive. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require the contiguous file extension, but does define a standard way of archiving such files so that all conforming systems can interpret these file types in a meaningful and consistent manner. On a system that does not support extended file types, the *pax* utility should do the best it can with the file and go on to the next.

The file protection modes are those conventionally used by the *ls* utility. This is extended beyond the usage in the ISO POSIX-2 standard to support the "shared text" or "sticky" bit. It is intended that the conformance document should not document anything beyond the existence of and support of such a mode. Further extensions are expected to these bits, particularly with overloading the set-user-ID and set-group-ID flags.

cpio Interchange Format

The reference to appropriate privilege in the **cpio** format refers to an error on standard output; the **ustar** format does not make comparable statements.

The model for this format was the historical System V *cpio*–**c** data interchange format. This model documents the portable version of the **cpio** format and not the binary version. It has the flexibility to transfer data of any type described within IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, yet is extensible to transfer data types specific to extensions beyond IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (for example, contiguous files). Because it describes existing practice, there is no question of maintaining upwards-compatibility.

cpio Header

There has been some concern that the size of the *c_ino* field of the header is too small to handle those systems that have very large *inode* numbers. However, the *c_ino* field in the header is used strictly as a hard-link resolution mechanism for archives. It is not necessarily the same value as the *inode* number of the file in the location from which that file is extracted.

The name *c_magic* is based on historical usage.

29148 **cpio Filename**

29149 For most historical implementations of the *cpio* utility, {PATH_MAX} octets can be used to
29150 describe the pathname without the addition of any other header fields (the NUL character
29151 would be included in this count). {PATH_MAX} is the minimum value for pathname size,
29152 documented as 256 bytes. However, an implementation may use *c_namesize* to determine the
29153 exact length of the pathname. With the current description of the **<cpio.h>** header, this
29154 pathname size can be as large as a number that is described in six octal digits.

29155 Two values are documented under the *c_mode* field values to provide for extensibility for known
29156 file types:

29157 **0110 000** Reserved for contiguous files. The implementation may treat the rest of the
29158 information for this archive like a regular file. If this file type is undefined, the
29159 implementation may create the file as a regular file.

29160 This provides for extensibility of the **cpio** format while allowing for the ability to read old
29161 archives. Files of an unknown type may be read as "regular files" on some implementations. On
29162 a system that does not support extended file types, the *pax* utility should do the best it can with
29163 the file and go on to the next.

29164 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

29165 None.

29166 **SEE ALSO**

29167 Chapter 2 (on page 29), *cp*, *ed*, *getopts*, *ls*, *printf*, the Base Definitions volume of
29168 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, **<cpio.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *chown*( ),
29169 *creat*( ), *mkdir*( ), *mkfifo*( ), *stat*( ), *utime*( ), *write*( )

29170 **CHANGE HISTORY**

29171 First released in Issue 4.

29172 **Issue 5**

29173 A note is added to the APPLICATION USAGE indicating that the **cpio** and **tar** formats can only
29174 support files up to 8 gigabytes in size.

29175 **Issue 6**

29176 The *pax* utility is aligned with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard:

29177 • Support has been added for symbolic links in the options and interchange formats.

29178 • A new format has been devised, based on extensions to **ustar**.

29179 • References to the "extended" **tar** and **cpio** formats derived from the POSIX.1-1990
29180 standard have been changed to remove the "extended" adjective because this could cause
29181 confusion with the extended *tar* header added in this revision. (All references to *tar* are
29182 actually to **ustar**.)

29183 The *TZ* entry is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

29184 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #168 is applied, clarifying that *mkdir*( ) and *mkfifo*( ) calls can
29185 ignore an [EEXIST] error when extracting an archive.

29186 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #180 is applied, clarifying how extracted files are created when
29187 in **read** mode.

29188 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #181 is applied, clarifying the description of the **–t** option.

29189 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #195 is applied.

29190 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #206 is applied, clarifying the handling of links for the **–H**, **–L**,
29191 and **–l** options.

29192 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/35 is applied, adding the process ID of

the *pax* process into certain fields. This change provides a method for the implementation to ensure that different instances of *pax* extracting a file named **/a/b/foo** will not collide when processing the extended header information associated with **foo**.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/36 is applied, changing **–x B** to **–x** *pax* in the OPTIONS section.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/20 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS to be consistent with the normative text.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/21 is applied, updating the DESCRIPTION to describe the behavior when files to be linked are symbolic links and the system is not capable of making hard links to symbolic links.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/22 is applied, updating the OPTIONS section to describe the behavior for how multiple **–odelete=pattern** options are to be handled.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/23 is applied, updating the **write** option within the OPTIONS section.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/24 is applied, adding a paragraph into the OPTIONS section that states that specifying more than one of the mutually-exclusive options (**–H** and **–L**) is not considered an error and that the last option specified will determine the behavior of the utility.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/25 is applied, removing the *ctime* paragraph within the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION. There is a contradiction in the definition of the *ctime* keyword for the *pax* extended header, in that the *st_ctime* member of the **stat** structure does not refer to a file creation time. No field in the standard **stat** structure from **<sys/stat.h>** includes a file creation time.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/26 is applied, making it clear that *typeflag* 1 (**ustar** Interchange Format) applies not only to files that are hard-linked, but also to files that are aliased via symlinks.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/27 is applied, clarifying the *cpio c_nlink* field.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-2 is applied, making **–c** and **–n** mutually-exclusive in the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-3 is applied, revising the default behavior of **–H** and **–L**.

SD5-XCU-ERN-5, SD5-XCU-ERN-6, SD5-XCU-ERN-7, SD5-XCU-ERN-60 are applied.

Austin Group Interpretations 1003.1-2001 #011, #036, #086, and #109 are applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

29227 **NAME**

29228 pr — print files

29229 **SYNOPSIS**

29230 `pr [+`*page*`] [–`*column*`] [–adFmrt] [–e[`*char*`][`*gap*`]] [–h` *header*`] [–i[`*char*`][`*gap*`]]`

29231 XSI `[–l` *lines*`] [–n[`*char*`][`*width*`]] [–o` *offset*`] [–s[`*char*`]] [–w` *width*`] [ –fp]`

29232 `[`*file*`...]`

29233 **DESCRIPTION**

29234 The *pr* utility is a printing and pagination filter. If multiple input files are specified, each shall be
29235 read, formatted, and written to standard output. By default, the input shall be separated into
29236 66-line pages, each with:

29237 • A 5-line header that includes the page number, date, time, and the pathname of the file

29238 • A 5-line trailer consisting of blank lines

29239 If standard output is associated with a terminal, diagnostic messages shall be deferred until the
29240 *pr* utility has completed processing.

29241 When options specifying multi-column output are specified, output text columns shall be of
29242 equal width; input lines that do not fit into a text column shall be truncated. By default, text
29243 columns shall be separated with at least one <blank>.

29244 **OPTIONS**

29245 The *pr* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
29246 Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that: the *page* option has a `'+'` delimiter; *page* and *column* can
29247 be multi-digit numbers; some of the option-arguments are optional; and some of the option-
29248 arguments cannot be specified as separate arguments from the preceding option letter. In
29249 particular, the **–s** option does not allow the option letter to be separated from its argument, and
29250 the options **–e**, **–i**, and **–n** require that both arguments, if present, not be separated from the
29251 option letter.

29252 The following options shall be supported. In the following option descriptions, *column*, *lines*,
29253 *offset*, *page*, and *width* are positive decimal integers; *gap* is a non-negative decimal integer.

29254 **+***page* Begin output at page number *page* of the formatted input.

29255 **–***column* Produce multi-column output that is arranged in *column* columns (the default shall
29256 be 1) and is written down each column in the order in which the text is received
29257 from the input file. This option should not be used with **–m**. The options **–e** and **–i**
29258 shall be assumed for multiple text-column output. Whether or not text columns are
29259 produced with identical vertical lengths is unspecified, but a text column shall
29260 never exceed the length of the page (see the **–l** option). When used with **–t**, use the
29261 minimum number of lines to write the output.

29262 **–a** Modify the effect of the *–column* option so that the columns are filled across the
29263 page in a round-robin order (for example, when *column* is 2, the first input line
29264 heads column 1, the second heads column 2, the third is the second line in column
29265 1, and so on).

29266 **–d** Produce output that is double-spaced; append an extra <newline> following every
29267 <newline> found in the input.

29268 **–e**[*char*][*gap*]

29269 Expand each input <tab> to the next greater column position specified by the
29270 formula *n***gap*+1, where *n* is an integer > 0. If *gap* is zero or is omitted, it shall
29271 default to 8. All <tab>s in the input shall be expanded into the appropriate number

of <space>s. If any non-digit character, *char*, is specified, it shall be used as the input <tab>. If the first character of the **–e** option-argument is a digit, the entire option-argument shall be assumed to be *gap*.

XSI **–f** Use a <form-feed> for new pages, instead of the default behavior that uses a sequence of <newline>s. Pause before beginning the first page if the standard output is associated with a terminal.

–F Use a <form-feed> for new pages, instead of the default behavior that uses a sequence of <newline>s.

–h *header* Use the string *header* to replace the contents of the *file* operand in the page header.

–i[*char*][*gap*] In output, replace <space>s with <tab>s wherever one or more adjacent <space>s reach column positions *gap*+1, 2* *gap*+1, 3* *gap*+1, and so on. If *gap* is zero or is omitted, default tab settings at every eighth column position shall be assumed. If any non-digit character, *char*, is specified, it shall be used as the output <tab>. If the first character of the **–i** option-argument is a digit, the entire option-argument shall be assumed to be *gap*.

–l *lines* Override the 66-line default and reset the page length to *lines*. If *lines* is not greater than the sum of both the header and trailer depths (in lines), the *pr* utility shall suppress both the header and trailer, as if the **–t** option were in effect.

–m Merge files. Standard output shall be formatted so the *pr* utility writes one line from each file specified by a *file* operand, side by side into text columns of equal fixed widths, in terms of the number of column positions. Implementations shall support merging of at least nine *file* operands.

–n[*char*][*width*]
Provide *width*-digit line numbering (default for *width* shall be 5). The number shall occupy the first *width* column positions of each text column of default output or each line of **–m** output. If *char* (any non-digit character) is given, it shall be appended to the line number to separate it from whatever follows (default for *char* is a <tab>).

–o *offset* Each line of output shall be preceded by offset <space>s. If the **–o** option is not specified, the default offset shall be zero. The space taken is in addition to the output line width (see the **–w** option below).

–p Pause before beginning each page if the standard output is directed to a terminal (*pr* shall write an <alert> to standard error and wait for a <carriage-return> to be read on **/dev/tty**).

–r Write no diagnostic reports on failure to open files.

–s[*char*] Separate text columns by the single character *char* instead of by the appropriate number of <space>s (default for *char* shall be <tab>).

–t Write neither the five-line identifying header nor the five-line trailer usually supplied for each page. Quit writing after the last line of each file without spacing to the end of the page.

–w *width* Set the width of the line to *width* column positions for multiple text-column output only. If the **–w** option is not specified and the **–s** option is not specified, the default width shall be 72. If the **–w** option is not specified and the **–s** option is specified, the default width shall be 512.

For single column output, input lines shall not be truncated.

29317 **OPERANDS**

29318 The following operand shall be supported:

29319 *file* A pathname of a file to be written. If no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file*
29320 operand is `'-'`, the standard input shall be used.

29321 **STDIN**

29322 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'-'`.
29323 See the INPUT FILES section.

29324 **INPUT FILES**

29325 The input files shall be text files.

29326 The file **/dev/tty** shall be used to read responses required by the **-p** option.

29327 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

29328 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *pr*:

29329 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
29330 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
29331 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
29332 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

29333 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
29334 internationalization variables.

29335 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
29336 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
29337 arguments and input files) and which characters are defined as printable (character
29338 class **print**). Non-printable characters are still written to standard output, but are
29339 not counted for the purpose for column-width and line-length calculations.

29340 *LC_MESSAGES*
29341 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
29342 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

29343 *LC_TIME* Determine the format of the date and time for use in writing header lines.

29344 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

29345 *TZ* Determine the timezone used to calculate date and time strings written in header
29346 lines. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

29347 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

29348 If *pr* receives an interrupt while writing to a terminal, it shall flush all accumulated error
29349 messages to the screen before terminating.

29350 **STDOUT**

29351 The *pr* utility output shall be a paginated version of the original file (or files). This pagination
29352 shall be accomplished using either <form-feed>s or a sequence of <newline>s, as controlled by
29353 XSI the **-F** or **-f** option. Page headers shall be generated unless the **-t** option is specified. The page
29354 headers shall be of the form:

29355 `"\n\n%s %s Page %d\n\n\n", <output of date>, <file>, <page number>`

29356 In the POSIX locale, the <*output of date*> field, representing the date and time of last modification
29357 of the input file (or the current date and time if the input file is standard input), shall be
29358 equivalent to the output of the following command as it would appear if executed at the given
29359 time:

29360 `date "+%b %e %H:%M %Y"`

29361 without the trailing <newline>, if the page being written is from standard input. If the page

being written is not from standard input, in the POSIX locale, the same format shall be used, but the time used shall be the modification time of the file corresponding to *file* instead of the current time. When the *LC_TIME* locale category is not set to the POSIX locale, a different format and order of presentation of this field may be used.

If the standard input is used instead of a *file* operand, the <*file*> field shall be replaced by a null string.

If the –**h** option is specified, the <*file*> field shall be replaced by the *header* argument.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used for diagnostic messages and for alerting the terminal when –**p** is specified.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

A conforming application must protect its first operand, if it starts with a plus sign, by preceding it with the "––" argument that denotes the end of the options. For example, *pr+x* could be interpreted as an invalid page number or a *file* operand.

EXAMPLES

1. Print a numbered list of all files in the current directory:

```
ls –a | pr –n –h "Files in $(pwd)."
```

2. Print **file1** and **file2** as a double-spaced, three-column listing headed by "file list":

```
pr –3d –h "file list" file1 file2
```

3. Write **file1** on **file2**, expanding tabs to columns 10, 19, 28, . . .:

```
pr –e9 –t <file1 >file2
```

RATIONALE

This utility is one of those that does not follow the Utility Syntax Guidelines because of its historical origins. The standard developers could have added new options that obeyed the guidelines (and marked the old options obsolescent) or devised an entirely new utility; there are examples of both actions in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Because of its widespread use by historical applications, the standard developers decided to exempt this version of *pr* from many of the guidelines.

Implementations are required to accept option-arguments to the –**h**, –**l**, –**o**, and –**w** options whether presented as part of the same argument or as a separate argument to *pr*, as suggested by the Utility Syntax Guidelines. The –**n** and –**s** options, however, are specified as in historical practice because they are frequently specified without their optional arguments. If a <blank> were allowed before the option-argument in these cases, a *file* operand could mistakenly be interpreted as an option-argument in historical applications.

The text about the minimum number of lines in multi-column output was included to ensure that a best effort is made in balancing the length of the columns. There are known historical implementations in which, for example, 60-line files are listed by *pr* –2 as one column of 56 lines and a second of 4. Although this is not a problem when a full page with headers and trailers is produced, it would be relatively useless when used with –**t**.

Historical implementations of the *pr* utility have differed in the action taken for the –**f** option. BSD uses it as described here for the –**F** option; System V uses it to change trailing <newline>s on each page to a <form-feed> and, if standard output is a TTY device, sends an <alert> to standard error and reads a line from **/dev/tty** before the first page. There were strong arguments from both sides of this issue concerning historical practice and as a result the –**F** option was added. XSI-conformant systems support the System V historical actions for the –**f** option.

The <*output of date*> field in the –**l** format is specified only for the POSIX locale. As noted, the format can be different in other locales. No mechanism for defining this is present in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, as the appropriate vehicle is a message catalog; that is, the format should be specified as a "message".

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

expand, *lp*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The –**p** option is added.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

PASC Interpretation 1003.2-92 #151 (SD5-XCU-ERN-44) is applied.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #093 is applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

printf — write formatted output

SYNOPSIS

```
printf format [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *printf* utility shall write formatted operands to the standard output. The *argument* operands shall be formatted under control of the *format* operand.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

format A string describing the format to use to write the remaining operands. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

argument The strings to be written to standard output, under the control of *format*. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *printf*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LC_NUMERIC
Determine the locale for numeric formatting. It shall affect the format of numbers written using the `e`, `E`, `f`, `g`, and `G` conversion specifier characters (if supported).

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

The *format* operand shall be used as the *format* string described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation with the following exceptions:

1. A <space> in the format string, in any context other than a flag of a conversion specification, shall be treated as an ordinary character that is copied to the output.
2. A `'Δ'` character in the format string shall be treated as a `'Δ'` character, not as a <space>.
3. In addition to the escape sequences shown in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`), `"\ddd"`, where *ddd* is a one, two, or three-digit octal number, shall be written as a byte with the numeric value specified by the octal number.
4. The implementation shall not precede or follow output from the `d` or `u` conversion specifiers with <blank>s not specified by the *format* operand.
5. The implementation shall not precede output from the `o` conversion specifier with zeros not specified by the *format* operand.
6. The `e`, `E`, `f`, `g`, and `G` conversion specifiers need not be supported.
7. An additional conversion specifier character, `b`, shall be supported as follows. The argument shall be taken to be a string that may contain backslash-escape sequences. The following backslash-escape sequences shall be supported:

   — The escape sequences listed in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\n'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`), which shall be converted to the characters they represent

   — `"\0ddd"`, where *ddd* is a zero, one, two, or three-digit octal number that shall be converted to a byte with the numeric value specified by the octal number

   — `'\c'`, which shall not be written and shall cause *printf* to ignore any remaining characters in the string operand containing it, any remaining string operands, and any additional characters in the *format* operand

   The interpretation of a backslash followed by any other sequence of characters is unspecified.

   Bytes from the converted string shall be written until the end of the string or the number of bytes indicated by the precision specification is reached. If the precision is omitted, it shall be taken to be infinite, so all bytes up to the end of the converted string shall be written.
8. For each conversion specification that consumes an argument, the next argument operand shall be evaluated and converted to the appropriate type for the conversion as specified below.
9. The *format* operand shall be reused as often as necessary to satisfy the argument operands. Any extra `c` or `s` conversion specifiers shall be evaluated as if a null string argument were supplied; other extra conversion specifications shall be evaluated as if a zero argument were supplied. If the *format* operand contains no conversion specifications and *argument* operands are present, the results are unspecified.

10. If a character sequence in the *format* operand begins with a '%' character, but does not form a valid conversion specification, the behavior is unspecified.

The *argument* operands shall be treated as strings if the corresponding conversion specifier is b, c, or s; otherwise, it shall be evaluated as a C constant, as described by the ISO C standard, with the following extensions:

- A leading plus or minus sign shall be allowed.
- If the leading character is a single-quote or double-quote, the value shall be the numeric value in the underlying codeset of the character following the single-quote or double-quote.

If an argument operand cannot be completely converted into an internal value appropriate to the corresponding conversion specification, a diagnostic message shall be written to standard error and the utility shall not exit with a zero exit status, but shall continue processing any remaining operands and shall write the value accumulated at the time the error was detected to standard output.

It is not considered an error if an argument operand is not completely used for a c or s conversion or if a string operand's first or second character is used to get the numeric value of a character.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The floating-point formatting conversion specifications of *printf*( ) are not required because all arithmetic in the shell is integer arithmetic. The *awk* utility performs floating-point calculations and provides its own **printf** function. The *bc* utility can perform arbitrary-precision floating-point arithmetic, but does not provide extensive formatting capabilities. (This *printf* utility cannot really be used to format *bc* output; it does not support arbitrary precision.) Implementations are encouraged to support the floating-point conversions as an extension.

Note that this *printf* utility, like the *printf*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x on which it is based, makes no special provision for dealing with multi-byte characters when using the %c conversion specification or when a precision is specified in a %b or %s conversion specification. Applications should be extremely cautious using either of these features when there are multi-byte characters in the character set.

No provision is made in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x which allows field widths and precisions to be specified as '*' since the '*' can be replaced directly in the *format* operand using shell variable substitution. Implementations can also provide this feature as an extension if they so choose.

Hexadecimal character constants as defined in the ISO C standard are not recognized in the *format* operand because there is no consistent way to detect the end of the constant. Octal character constants are limited to, at most, three octal digits, but hexadecimal character constants are only terminated by a non-hex-digit character. In the ISO C standard, the "##" concatenation operator can be used to terminate a constant and follow it with a hexadecimal character to be written. In the shell, concatenation occurs before the *printf* utility has a chance to parse the end of the hexadecimal constant.

The %b conversion specification is not part of the ISO C standard; it has been added here as a

29568 portable way to process backslash escapes expanded in string operands as provided by the *echo*
29569 utility. See also the APPLICATION USAGE section of *echo* for ways to use *printf* as a
29570 replacement for all of the traditional versions of the *echo* utility.

29571 If an argument cannot be parsed correctly for the corresponding conversion specification, the
29572 *printf* utility is required to report an error. Thus, overflow and extraneous characters at the end
29573 of an argument being used for a numeric conversion shall be reported as errors.

29574 **EXAMPLES**

29575 To alert the user and then print and read a series of prompts:

```
29576 printf "\aPlease fill in the following: \nName: "
29577 read name
29578 printf "Phone number: "
29579 read phone
```

29580 To read out a list of right and wrong answers from a file, calculate the percentage correctly, and
29581 print them out. The numbers are right-justified and separated by a single <tab>. The percentage
29582 is written to one decimal place of accuracy:

```
29583 while read right wrong ; do
29584     percent=$(echo "scale=1;($right*100)/($right+$wrong)" | bc)
29585     printf "%2d right\t%2d wrong\t(%s%%)\n" \
29586         $right $wrong $percent
29587 done < database_file
```

29588 The command:

```
29589 printf "%5d%4d\n" 1 21 321 4321 54321
```

29590 produces:

```
29591     1  21
29592   3214321
29593 54321   0
```

29594 Note that the *format* operand is used three times to print all of the given strings and that a `'0'`
29595 was supplied by *printf* to satisfy the last `%4d` conversion specification.

29596 The *printf* utility is required to notify the user when conversion errors are detected while
29597 producing numeric output; thus, the following results would be expected on an implementation
29598 with 32-bit twos-complement integers when `%d` is specified as the *format* operand:

29599 29600 29601 29602 29603 29604

Argument	Standard Output	Diagnostic Output
5a	5	**printf: "5a" not completely converted**
9999999999	2147483647	**printf: "9999999999" arithmetic overflow**
−9999999999	−2147483648	**printf: "−9999999999" arithmetic overflow**
ABC	0	**printf: "ABC" expected numeric value**

29605 The diagnostic message format is not specified, but these examples convey the type of
29606 information that should be reported. Note that the value shown on standard output is what
29607 would be expected as the return value from the *strtol*() function as defined in the System
29608 Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. A similar correspondence exists between `%u` and
29609 *strtoul*() and `%e`, `%f`, and `%g` (if the implementation supports floating-point conversions) and
29610 *strtod*().

29611 In a locale using the ISO/IEC 646: 1991 standard as the underlying codeset, the command:

```
29612 printf "%d\n" 3 +3 −3 \'3 \"+3 "'−3"
```

29613 produces:

3 Numeric value of constant 3

3 Numeric value of constant 3

–3 Numeric value of constant –3

51 Numeric value of the character `'3'` in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard codeset

43 Numeric value of the character `'+'` in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard codeset

45 Numeric value of the character `'–'` in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard codeset

Note that in a locale with multi-byte characters, the value of a character is intended to be the value of the equivalent of the **wchar_t** representation of the character as described in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

RATIONALE

The *printf* utility was added to provide functionality that has historically been provided by *echo*. However, due to irreconcilable differences in the various versions of *echo* extant, the version has few special features, leaving those to this new *printf* utility, which is based on one in the Ninth Edition system.

The EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section almost exactly matches the *printf*( ) function in the ISO C standard, although it is described in terms of the file format notation in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 5, File Format Notation.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

awk, *bc*, *echo*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *printf*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

29639 **NAME**

29640 prs — print an SCCS file (**DEVELOPMENT**)

29641 **SYNOPSIS**

29642 XSI
```
prs [–a] [–d dataspec] [–r[SID]] file...
prs [–e|–l] –c cutoff [–d dataspec] file...
prs [–e|–l] –r[SID] [–d dataspec] file...
```

29645 **DESCRIPTION**

29646 The *prs* utility shall write to standard output parts or all of an SCCS file in a user-supplied
29647 format.

29648 **OPTIONS**

29649 The *prs* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
29650 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the **–r** option has an optional option-argument. This
29651 optional option-argument cannot be presented as a separate argument. The following options
29652 shall be supported:

29653 **–d** *dataspec* Specify the output data specification. The *dataspec* shall be a string consisting of
29654 SCCS file *data keywords* (see Data Keywords (on page 751)) interspersed with
29655 optional user-supplied text.

29656 **–r**[*SID*] Specify the SCCS identification string (SID) of a delta for which information is
29657 desired. If no *SID* option-argument is specified, the SID of the most recently
29658 created delta shall be assumed.

29659 **–e** Request information for all deltas created earlier than and including the delta
29660 designated via the **–r** option or the date-time given by the **–c** option.

29661 **–l** Request information for all deltas created later than and including the delta
29662 designated via the **–r** option or the date-time given by the **–c** option.

29663 **–c** *cutoff* Indicate the *cutoff* date-time, in the form:

29664 *YY*[*MM*[*DD*[*HH*[*MM*[*SS*]]]]]

29665 For the *YY* component, values in the range [69,99] shall refer to years 1969 to 1999
29666 inclusive, and values in the range [00,68] shall refer to years 2000 to 2068 inclusive.

29667 **Note:** It is expected that in a future version of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x the default century
29668 inferred from a 2-digit year will change. (This would apply to all commands
29669 accepting a 2-digit year as input.)

29670 No changes (deltas) to the SCCS file that were created after the specified *cutoff*
29671 date-time shall be included in the output. Units omitted from the date-time default
29672 to their maximum possible values; for example, **–c 7502** is equivalent to
29673 **–c 750228235959**.

29674 **–a** Request writing of information for both removed—that is, *delta type=R* (see
29675 *rmdel*)—and existing—that is, *delta type=D*,—deltas. If the **–a** option is not
29676 specified, information for existing deltas only shall be provided.

29677 **OPERANDS**

29678 The following operand shall be supported:

29679 *file* A pathname of an existing SCCS file or a directory. If *file* is a directory, the *prs*
29680 utility shall behave as though each file in the directory were specified as a named
29681 file, except that non-SCCS files (last component of the pathname does not begin

with **s.**) and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

If exactly one *file* operand appears, and it is `'-'`, the standard input shall be read; each line of the standard input shall be taken to be the name of an SCCS file to be processed. Non-SCCS files and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file used only when the *file* operand is specified as `'-'`. Each line of the text file shall be interpreted as an SCCS pathname.

INPUT FILES

Any SCCS files displayed are files of an unspecified format.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *prs*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall be a text file whose format is dependent on the data keywords specified with the **–d** option.

Data Keywords

Data keywords specify which parts of an SCCS file shall be retrieved and output. All parts of an SCCS file have an associated data keyword. A data keyword may appear in a *dataspec* multiple times.

The information written by *prs* shall consist of:

1. The user-supplied text
2. Appropriate values (extracted from the SCCS file) substituted for the recognized data keywords in the order of appearance in the *dataspec*

The format of a data keyword value shall either be simple (`'S'`), in which keyword substitution is direct, or multi-line (`'M'`).

User-supplied text shall be any text other than recognized data keywords. A <tab> shall be specified by `'\t'` and <newline> by `'\n'`. When the **–r** option is not specified, the default *dataspec* shall be:

```
:PN::\n\n
```

and the following *dataspec* shall be used for each selected delta:

29726 `:Dt:\t:DL:\nMRs:\n:MR:COMMENTS:\n:C:`

29727 **SCCS File Data Keywords**

29728 Keyword	Data Item	File Section	Value	Format
29729 **:Dt:**	Delta information	Delta Table	See below*	S
29730 **:DL:**	Delta line statistics	"	**:Li:/:Ld:/:Lu:**	S
29731 **:Li:**	Lines inserted by Delta	"	*nnnnn***	S
29732 **:Ld:**	Lines deleted by Delta	"	*nnnnn***	S
29733 **:Lu:**	Lines unchanged by Delta	"	*nnnnn***	S
29734 **:DT:**	Delta type	"	**D or R**	S
29735 **:I:**	SCCS ID string (SID)	"	See below**	S
29736 **:R:**	Release number	"	*nnnn*	S
29737 **:L:**	Level number	"	*nnnn*	S
29738 **:B:**	Branch number	"	*nnnn*	S
29739 **:S:**	Sequence number	"	*nnnn*	S
29740 **:D:**	Date delta created	"	**:Dy:/:Dm:/:Dd:**	S
29741 **:Dy:**	Year delta created	"	*nn*	S
29742 **:Dm:**	Month delta created	"	*nn*	S
29743 **:Dd:**	Day delta created	"	*nn*	S
29744 **:T:**	Time delta created	"	**:Th::Tm::Ts:**	S
29745 **:Th:**	Hour delta created	"	*nn*	S
29746 **:Tm:**	Minutes delta created	"	*nn*	S
29747 **:Ts:**	Seconds delta created	"	*nn*	S
29748 **:P:**	Programmer who created Delta	"	*logname*	S
29749 **:DS:**	Delta sequence number	"	*nnnn*	S
29750 **:DP:**	Predecessor Delta sequence number	"	*nnnn*	S
29752 **:DI:**	Sequence number of deltas included, excluded, or ignored	"	**:Dn:/:Dx:/:Dg:**	S
29754 **:Dn:**	Deltas included (sequence #)	"	**:DS: :DS: . . .**	S
29755 **:Dx:**	Deltas excluded (sequence #)	"	**:DS: :DS: . . .**	S
29756 **:Dg:**	Deltas ignored (sequence #)	"	**:DS: :DS: . . .**	S
29757 **:MR:**	MR numbers for delta	"	*text*	M
29758 **:C:**	Comments for delta	"	*text*	M
29759 **:UN:**	User names	User Names	*text*	M
29760 **:FL:**	Flag list	Flags	*text*	M
29761 **:Y:**	Module type flag	"	*text*	S
29762 **:MF:**	MR validation flag	"	**yes** or **no**	S
29763 **:MP:**	MR validation program name	"	*text*	S
29764 **:KF:**	Keyword error, warning flag	"	**yes** or **no**	S
29765 **:KV:**	Keyword validation string	"	*text*	S
29766 **:BF:**	Branch flag	"	**yes** or **no**	S
29767 **:J:**	Joint edit flag	"	**yes** or **no**	S
29768 **:LK:**	Locked releases	"	**:R: . . .**	S
29769 **:Q:**	User-defined keyword	"	*text*	S
29770 **:M:**	Module name	"	*text*	S
29771 **:FB:**	Floor boundary	"	**:R:**	S
29772 **:CB:**	Ceiling boundary	"	**:R:**	S
29773 **:Ds:**	Default SID	"	**:I:**	S
29774 **:ND:**	Null delta flag	"	**yes** or **no**	S
29775 **:FD:**	File descriptive text	Comments	*text*	M
29776 **:BD:**	Body	Body	*text*	M
29777 **:GB:**	Gotten body	"	*text*	M

SCCS File Data Keywords				
Keyword	**Data Item**	**File Section**	**Value**	**Format**
:W:	A form of *what* string	N/A	**:Z::M:\t:I:**	S
:A:	A form of *what* string	N/A	**:Z::Y: :M: :I::Z:**	S
:Z:	*what* string delimiter	N/A	@(#)	S
:F:	SCCS filename	N/A	*text*	S
:PN:	SCCS file pathname	N/A	*text*	S

* **:Dt:=:DT: :I: :D: :T: :P: :DS: :DP:**

** **:R::L::B::S:** if the delta is a branch delta (**:BF:**= =**yes**)
:R::L: if the delta is not a branch delta (**:BF:**= =**no**)

*** The line statistics are capped at 99 999. For example, if 100 000 lines were unchanged in a certain revision, **:Lu:** shall produce the value 99 999.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

1. The following example:

   ```
   prs –d "User Names for :F: are:\n:UN:" s.file
   ```

   might write to standard output:

   ```
   User Names for s.file are:
   xyz
   131
   abc
   ```

2. The following example:

   ```
   prs –d "Delta for pgm :M:: :I: – :D: By :P:" –r s.file
   ```

   might write to standard output:

   ```
   Delta for pgm main.c: 3.7 – 77/12/01 By cas
   ```

3. As a special case:

   ```
   prs s.file
   ```

   might write to standard output:

   ```
   s.file:
   ```



```
<blank line>
D 1.1 77/12/01 00:00:00 cas 1 000000/00000/00000
MRs:
bl78-12345
bl79-54321
COMMENTS:
this is the comment line for s.file initial delta
<blank line>
```

for each delta table entry of the **D** type. The only option allowed to be used with this special case is the –**a** option.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

admin, *delta*, *get*, *what*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The phrase "in which keyword substitution is followed by a <newline>" is deleted from the end of the second paragraph of Data Keywords (on page 751).

The interpretation of the *YY* component of the –**c** *cutoff* argument is noted.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to emphasize the term "shall" for implementation requirements.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-007 is applied, updating the table in STDOUT with a note that line statistics are capped at 99 999 for the **:Li:**, **:Ld:**, **:Lu:**, and **:DL:** keywords.

The Open Group Interpretation PIN4C.00009 is applied.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

ps — report process status

SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
ps [–aA] [–defl] [–g grouplist] [–n namelist] [–u userlist]
    [–G grouplist] [–o format]... [–p proclist] [–t termlist]
    [–U userlist]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *ps* utility shall write information about processes, subject to having the appropriate privileges to obtain information about those processes.

By default, *ps* shall select all processes with the same effective user ID as the current user and the same controlling terminal as the invoker.

OPTIONS

The *ps* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–a Write information for all processes associated with terminals. Implementations may omit session leaders from this list.

–A Write information for all processes.

XSI **–d** Write information for all processes, except session leaders.

XSI **–e** Write information for all processes. (Equivalent to **–A**.)

XSI **–f** Generate a **full** listing. (See the STDOUT section for the contents of a **full** listing.)

XSI **–g** *grouplist* Write information for processes whose session leaders are given in *grouplist*. The application shall ensure that the *grouplist* is a single argument in the form of a <blank> or comma-separated list.

–G *grouplist* Write information for processes whose real group ID numbers are given in *grouplist*. The application shall ensure that the *grouplist* is a single argument in the form of a <blank> or comma-separated list.

XSI **–l** Generate a **long** listing. (See STDOUT for the contents of a **long** listing.)

XSI **–n** *namelist* Specify the name of an alternative system *namelist* file in place of the default. The name of the default file and the format of a *namelist* file are unspecified.

–o *format* Write information according to the format specification given in *format*. This is fully described in the STDOUT section. Multiple **–o** options can be specified; the format specification shall be interpreted as the <space>-separated concatenation of all the *format* option-arguments.

–p *proclist* Write information for processes whose process ID numbers are given in *proclist*. The application shall ensure that the *proclist* is a single argument in the form of a <blank> or comma-separated list.

–t *termlist* Write information for processes associated with terminals given in *termlist*. The application shall ensure that the *termlist* is a single argument in the form of a <blank> or comma-separated list. Terminal identifiers shall be given in an XSI implementation-defined format. On XSI-conformant systems, they shall be given in one of two forms: the device's filename (for example, **tty04**) or, if the device's filename starts with **tty**, just the identifier following the characters **tty** (for example,

"04").

XSI **–u** *userlist* Write information for processes whose user ID numbers or login names are given in *userlist*. The application shall ensure that the *userlist* is a single argument in the form of a <blank> or comma-separated list. In the listing, the numerical user ID shall be written unless the **–f** option is used, in which case the login name shall be written.

–U *userlist* Write information for processes whose real user ID numbers or login names are given in *userlist*. The application shall ensure that the *userlist* is a single argument in the form of a <blank> or comma-separated list.

With the exception of **–o** *format*, all of the options shown are used to select processes. If any are specified, the default list shall be ignored and *ps* shall select the processes represented by the inclusive OR of all the selection-criteria options.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ps*:

COLUMNS Override the system-selected horizontal display line size, used to determine the number of text columns to display. See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables for valid values and results when it is unset or null.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

LC_TIME Determine the format and contents of the date and time strings displayed.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

TZ Determine the timezone used to calculate date and time strings displayed. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

29935 **STDOUT**

29936 When the **–o** option is not specified, the standard output format is unspecified.

29937 XSI On XSI-conformant systems, the output format shall be as follows. The column headings and
29938 descriptions of the columns in a *ps* listing are given below. The precise meanings of these fields
29939 are implementation-defined. The letters `'f'` and `'l'` (below) indicate the option (**full** or **long**)
29940 that shall cause the corresponding heading to appear; **all** means that the heading always
29941 appears. Note that these two options determine only what information is provided for a process;
29942 they do not determine which processes are listed.

29943 **F** (l) Flags (octal and additive) associated with the process.
29944 **S** (l) The state of the process.
29945 **UID** (f,l) The user ID number of the process owner; the login name is printed
29946 under the **–f** option.
29947 **PID** (all) The process ID of the process; it is possible to kill a process if this
29948 datum is known.
29949 **PPID** (f,l) The process ID of the parent process.
29950 **C** (f,l) Processor utilization for scheduling.
29951 **PRI** (l) The priority of the process; higher numbers mean lower priority.
29952 **NI** (l) Nice value; used in priority computation.
29953 **ADDR** (l) The address of the process.
29954 **SZ** (l) The size in blocks of the core image of the process.
29955 **WCHAN** (l) The event for which the process is waiting or sleeping; if blank, the
29956 process is running.
29957 **STIME** (f) Starting time of the process.
29958 **TTY** (all) The controlling terminal for the process.
29959 **TIME** (all) The cumulative execution time for the process.
29960 **CMD** (all) The command name; the full command name and its arguments are
29961 written under the **–f** option.

29962 A process that has exited and has a parent, but has not yet been waited for by the parent, shall be
29963 marked **defunct**.

29964 Under the option **–f**, *ps* tries to determine the command name and arguments given when the
29965 process was created by examining memory or the swap area. Failing this, the command name, as
29966 it would appear without the option **–f**, is written in square brackets.

29967 The **–o** option allows the output format to be specified under user control.

29968 The application shall ensure that the format specification is a list of names presented as a single
29969 argument, <blank> or comma-separated. Each variable has a default header. The default header
29970 can be overridden by appending an equals sign and the new text of the header. The rest of the
29971 characters in the argument shall be used as the header text. The fields specified shall be written
29972 in the order specified on the command line, and should be arranged in columns in the output.
29973 The field widths shall be selected by the system to be at least as wide as the header text (default
29974 or overridden value). If the header text is null, such as **–o** *user*=, the field width shall be at least
29975 as wide as the default header text. If all header text fields are null, no header line shall be
29976 written.

29977 The following names are recognized in the POSIX locale:

29978 **ruser** The real user ID of the process. This shall be the textual user ID, if it can be obtained
29979 and the field width permits, or a decimal representation otherwise.

29980 **user** The effective user ID of the process. This shall be the textual user ID, if it can be
29981 obtained and the field width permits, or a decimal representation otherwise.

rgroup The real group ID of the process. This shall be the textual group ID, if it can be obtained and the field width permits, or a decimal representation otherwise.

group The effective group ID of the process. This shall be the textual group ID, if it can be obtained and the field width permits, or a decimal representation otherwise.

pid The decimal value of the process ID.

ppid The decimal value of the parent process ID.

pgid The decimal value of the process group ID.

pcpu The ratio of CPU time used recently to CPU time available in the same period, expressed as a percentage. The meaning of "recently" in this context is unspecified. The CPU time available is determined in an unspecified manner.

vsz The size of the process in (virtual) memory in 1 024 byte units as a decimal integer.

nice The decimal value of the nice value of the process; see *nice*.

etime In the POSIX locale, the elapsed time since the process was started, in the form:

`[[`*dd*`-]`*hh*`:]`*mm*`:`*ss*

where *dd* shall represent the number of days, *hh* the number of hours, *mm* the number of minutes, and *ss* the number of seconds. The *dd* field shall be a decimal integer. The *hh*, *mm*, and *ss* fields shall be two-digit decimal integers padded on the left with zeros.

time In the POSIX locale, the cumulative CPU time of the process in the form:

`[`*dd*`-]`*hh*`:`*mm*`:`*ss*

The *dd*, *hh*, *mm*, and *ss* fields shall be as described in the **etime** specifier.

tty The name of the controlling terminal of the process (if any) in the same format used by the *who* utility.

comm The name of the command being executed (*argv*[0] value) as a string.

args The command with all its arguments as a string. The implementation may truncate this value to the field width; it is implementation-defined whether any further truncation occurs. It is unspecified whether the string represented is a version of the argument list as it was passed to the command when it started, or is a version of the arguments as they may have been modified by the application. Applications cannot depend on being able to modify their argument list and having that modification be reflected in the output of *ps*.

Any field need not be meaningful in all implementations. In such a case a hyphen (`'-'`) should be output in place of the field value.

Only **comm** and **args** shall be allowed to contain <blank>s; all others shall not. Any implementation-defined variables shall be specified in the system documentation along with the default header and indicating whether the field may contain <blank>s.

The following table specifies the default header to be used in the POSIX locale corresponding to each format specifier.

Table 4-17 Variable Names and Default Headers in *ps*

Format Specifier	Default Header	Format Specifier	Default Header
args	**COMMAND**	**ppid**	**PPID**
comm	**COMMAND**	**rgroup**	**RGROUP**
etime	**ELAPSED**	**ruser**	**RUSER**
group	**GROUP**	**time**	**TIME**
nice	**NI**	**tty**	**TT**
pcpu	**%CPU**	**user**	**USER**
pgid	**PGID**	**vsz**	**VSZ**
pid	**PID**		

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Things can change while *ps* is running; the snapshot it gives is only true for an instant, and might not be accurate by the time it is displayed.

The **args** format specifier is allowed to produce a truncated version of the command arguments. In some implementations, this information is no longer available when the *ps* utility is executed.

If the field width is too narrow to display a textual ID, the system may use a numeric version. Normally, the system would be expected to choose large enough field widths, but if a large number of fields were selected to write, it might squeeze fields to their minimum sizes to fit on one line. One way to ensure adequate width for the textual IDs is to override the default header for a field to make it larger than most or all user or group names.

There is no special quoting mechanism for header text. The header text is the rest of the argument. If multiple header changes are needed, multiple **–o** options can be used, such as:

```
ps –o "user=User Name" –o pid=Process\ ID
```

On some implementations, especially multi-level secure systems, *ps* may be severely restricted and produce information only about child processes owned by the user.

EXAMPLES

The command:

```
ps –o user,pid,ppid=MOM –o args
```

writes at least the following in the POSIX locale:

```
  USER   PID   MOM   COMMAND
helene    34    12   ps –o uid,pid,ppid=MOM –o args
```

The contents of the **COMMAND** field need not be the same in all implementations, due to

30063 possible truncation.

30064 **RATIONALE**

30065 There is very little commonality between BSD and System V implementations of *ps*. Many
30066 options conflict or have subtly different usages. The standard developers attempted to select a
30067 set of options for the base standard that were useful on a wide range of systems and selected
30068 options that either can be implemented on both BSD and System V-based systems without
30069 breaking the current implementations or where the options are sufficiently similar that any
30070 changes would not be unduly problematic for users or implementors.

30071 It is recognized that on some implementations, especially multi-level secure systems, *ps* may be
30072 nearly useless. The default output has therefore been chosen such that it does not break
30073 historical implementations and also is likely to provide at least some useful information on most
30074 systems.

30075 The major change is the addition of the format specification capability. The motivation for this
30076 invention is to provide a mechanism for users to access a wider range of system information, if
30077 the system permits it, in a portable manner. The fields chosen to appear in this volume of
30078 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x were arrived at after considering what concepts were likely to be both
30079 reasonably useful to the "average" user and had a reasonable chance of being implemented on a
30080 wide range of systems. Again it is recognized that not all systems are able to provide all the
30081 information and, conversely, some may wish to provide more. It is hoped that the approach
30082 adopted will be sufficiently flexible and extensible to accommodate most systems.
30083 Implementations may be expected to introduce new format specifiers.

30084 The default output should consist of a short listing containing the process ID, terminal name,
30085 cumulative execution time, and command name of each process.

30086 The preference of the standard developers would have been to make the format specification an
30087 operand of the *ps* command. Unfortunately, BSD usage precluded this.

30088 At one time a format was included to display the environment array of the process. This was
30089 deleted because there is no portable way to display it.

30090 The **–A** option is equivalent to the BSD **–g** and the SVID **–e**. Because the two systems differed, a
30091 mnemonic compromise was selected.

30092 The **–a** option is described with some optional behavior because the SVID omits session leaders,
30093 but BSD does not.

30094 In an early proposal, format specifiers appeared for priority and start time. The former was not
30095 defined adequately in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and was removed in deference to the
30096 defined nice value; the latter because elapsed time was considered to be more useful.

30097 In a new BSD version of *ps*, a **–O** option can be used to write all of the default information,
30098 followed by additional format specifiers. This was not adopted because the default output is
30099 implementation-defined. Nevertheless, this is a useful option that should be reserved for that
30100 purpose. In the **–o** option for the POSIX Shell and Utilities *ps*, the format is the concatenation of
30101 each **–o**. Therefore, the user can have an alias or function that defines the beginning of their
30102 desired format and add more fields to the end of the output in certain cases where that would be
30103 useful.

30104 The format of the terminal name is unspecified, but the descriptions of *ps*, *talk*, *who*, and *write*
30105 require that they all use the same format.

30106 The **pcpu** field indicates that the CPU time available is determined in an unspecified manner.
30107 This is because it is difficult to express an algorithm that is useful across all possible machine
30108 architectures. Historical counterparts to this value have attempted to show percentage of use in
30109 the recent past, such as the preceding minute. Frequently, these values for all processes did not
30110 add up to 100%. Implementations are encouraged to provide data in this field to users that will

help them identify processes currently affecting the performance of the system.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

kill, *nice*, *renice*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The *TZ* entry is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

pwd — return working directory name

SYNOPSIS

```
pwd [–L|–P]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *pwd* utility shall write to standard output an absolute pathname of the current working directory, which does not contain the filenames dot or dot-dot.

OPTIONS

The *pwd* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–L If the *PWD* environment variable contains an absolute pathname of the current directory that does not contain the filenames dot or dot-dot, *pwd* shall write this pathname to standard output. Otherwise, the **–L** option shall behave as the **–P** option.

–P The absolute pathname written shall not contain filenames that, in the context of the pathname, refer to files of type symbolic link.

If both **–L** and **–P** are specified, the last one shall apply. If neither **–L** nor **–P** is specified, the *pwd* utility shall behave as if **–L** had been specified.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *pwd*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PWD An absolute pathname of the current working directory. If an application sets or unsets the value of *PWD*, the behavior of *pwd* is unspecified.

30163 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
30164 Default.

30165 **STDOUT**
30166 The *pwd* utility output is an absolute pathname of the current working directory:

30167 `"%s\n", <directory pathname>`

30168 **STDERR**
30169 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

30170 **OUTPUT FILES**
30171 None.

30172 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
30173 None.

30174 **EXIT STATUS**
30175 The following exit values shall be returned:

30176 0 Successful completion.

30177 >0 An error occurred.

30178 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
30179 If an error is detected, output shall not be written to standard output, a diagnostic message shall
30180 be written to standard error, and the exit status is not zero.

30181 **APPLICATION USAGE**
30182 None.

30183 **EXAMPLES**
30184 None.

30185 **RATIONALE**
30186 Some implementations have historically provided *pwd* as a shell special built-in command.

30187 In most utilities, if an error occurs, partial output may be written to standard output. This does
30188 not happen in historical implementations of *pwd*. Because *pwd* is frequently used in historical
30189 shell scripts without checking the exit status, it is important that the historical behavior is
30190 required here; therefore, the CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS section specifically disallows any
30191 partial output being written to standard output.

30192 A previous version of this standard stated that the *PWD* environment variable was affected
30193 when the **–P** option was in effect. This was incorrect; conforming implementations do not do
30194 this.

30195 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
30196 None.

30197 **SEE ALSO**
30198 *cd*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *getcwd*( )

30199 **CHANGE HISTORY**
30200 First released in Issue 2.

30201 **Issue 6**
30202 The **–P** and **–L** options are added to describe actions relating to symbolic links as specified in the
30203 IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #097 is applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qalter — alter batch job

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qalter [–a date_time] [–A account_string] [–c interval] [–e path_name]
    [–h hold_list] [–j join_list] [–k keep_list] [–l resource_list]
    [–m mail_options] [–M mail_list] [–N name] [–o path_name]
    [–p priority] [–r y|n] [–S path_name_list] [–u user_list]
    job_identifier...
```

DESCRIPTION

The attributes of a batch job are altered by a request to the batch server that manages the batch job. The *qalter* utility is a user-accessible batch client that requests the alteration of the attributes of one or more batch jobs.

The *qalter* utility shall alter the attributes of those batch jobs, and only those batch jobs, for which a batch *job_identifier* is presented to the utility.

The *qalter* utility shall alter the attributes of batch jobs in the order in which the batch *job_identifier*s are presented to the utility.

If the *qalter* utility fails to process a batch *job_identifier* successfully, the utility shall proceed to process the remaining batch *job_identifier*s, if any.

For each batch *job_identifier* for which the *qalter* utility succeeds, each attribute of the identified batch job shall be altered as indicated by all the options presented to the utility.

For each identified batch job for which the *qalter* utility fails, the utility shall not alter any attribute of the batch job.

For each batch job that the *qalter* utility processes, the utility shall not modify any attribute other than those required by the options and option-arguments presented to the utility.

The *qalter* utility shall alter batch jobs by sending a *Modify Job Request* to the batch server that manages each batch job. At the time the *qalter* utility exits, it shall have modified the batch job corresponding to each successfully processed batch *job_identifier*. An attempt to alter the attributes of a batch job in the RUNNING state is implementation-defined.

OPTIONS

The *qalter* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–a *date_time* Redefine the time at which the batch job becomes eligible for execution.

The *date_time* argument shall be in the same form and represent the same time as for the *touch* utility. The time so represented shall be set into the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch job. If the time specified is earlier than the current time, the **–a** option shall have no effect.

–A *account_string*

Redefine the account to which the resource consumption of the batch job should be charged.

The syntax of the *account_string* option-argument is unspecified.

The *qalter* utility shall set the *Account_Name* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *account_string* option-argument.

30250 –**c** *interval* Redefine whether the batch job should be checkpointed, and if so, how often.

30251 The *qalter* utility shall accept a value for the interval option-argument that is one of
30252 the following:

30253 `n` No checkpointing is to be performed on the batch job
30254 (NO_CHECKPOINT).

30255 `s` Checkpointing is to be performed only when the batch server is shut
30256 down (CHECKPOINT_AT_SHUTDOWN).

30257 `c` Automatic periodic checkpointing is to be performed at the
30258 *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* attribute of the batch queue, in units of CPU
30259 minutes (CHECKPOINT_AT_MIN_CPU_INTERVAL).

30260 `c=`*minutes* Automatic periodic checkpointing is to be performed every *minutes*
30261 of CPU time, or every *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* minutes, whichever is
30262 greater. The *minutes* argument shall conform to the syntax for
30263 unsigned integers and shall be greater than zero.

30264 An implementation may define other checkpoint intervals. The conformance
30265 document for an implementation shall describe any alternative checkpoint
30266 intervals, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the
30267 behavior of the utility.

30268 The *qalter* utility shall set the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job to the value of the
30269 *interval* option-argument.

30270 –**e** *path_name*

30271 Redefine the path to be used for the standard error stream of the batch job.

30272 The *qalter* utility shall accept a *path_name* option-argument that conforms to the
30273 syntax of the *path_name* element defined in the System Interfaces volume of
30274 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, which can be preceded by a host name element of the form
30275 *hostname*:.

30276 If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes an absolute pathname, the *qalter*
30277 utility shall set the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job to the value of the
30278 *path_name* option-argument, including the host name element, if present.

30279 If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and no host
30280 name element is specified, the *qalter* utility shall set the *Error_Path* attribute of the
30281 batch job to the value of the absolute pathname derived by expanding the
30282 *path_name* option-argument relative to the current directory of the process that
30283 executes the *qalter* utility.

30284 If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and a host name
30285 element is specified, the *qalter* utility shall set the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch
30286 job to the value of the option-argument without expansion.

30287 If the *path_name* option-argument does not include a host name element, the *qalter*
30288 utility shall prefix the pathname in the *Error_Path* attribute with *hostname*:, where
30289 *hostname* is the name of the host upon which the *qalter* utility is being executed.

30290 –**h** *hold_list* Redefine the types of holds, if any, on the batch job. The *qalter* –**h** option shall
30291 accept a value for the *hold_list* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric
30292 characters in the portable character set.

30293 The *qalter* utility shall accept a value for the *hold_list* option-argument that is a
30294 string of one or more of the characters `'u'`, `'s'`, or `'o'`, or the single character
30295 `'n'`. For each unique character in the *hold_list* option-argument, the *qalter* utility
30296 shall add a value to the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job as follows, each

representing a different hold type:

u USER

s SYSTEM

o OPERATOR

If any of these characters are duplicated in the *hold_list* option-argument, the duplicates shall be ignored. An existing *Hold_Types* attribute can be cleared by the hold type:

n NO_HOLD

The *qalter* utility shall consider it an error if any hold type other than `'n'` is combined with hold type `'n'`. Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'u'`, `'s'`, `'o'`, or `'n'` within the *hold_list* option-argument. The *qalter* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated characters. An implementation may define other hold types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional hold types, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

–j *join_list* Redefine which streams of the batch job are to be merged. The *qalter* **–j** option shall accept a value for the *join_list* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set.

The *qalter* utility shall accept a *join_list* option-argument that consists of one or more of the characters `'e'` and `'o'`, or the single character `'n'`.

All of the other batch job output streams specified shall be merged into the output stream represented by the character listed first in the *join_list* option-argument.

For each unique character in the *join_list* option-argument, the *qalter* utility shall add a value to the *Join_Path* attribute of the batch job as follows, each representing a different batch job stream to join:

e The standard error of the batch job (JOIN_STD_ERROR).

o The standard output of the batch job (JOIN_STD_OUTPUT).

An existing *Join_Path* attribute can be cleared by the join type:

n NO_JOIN

If `'n'` is specified, then no files are joined. The *qalter* utility shall consider it an error if any join type other than `'n'` is combined with join type `'n'`.

Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'e'`, `'o'`, or `'n'` within the *join_list* option-argument. The *qalter* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated characters.

An implementation may define other join types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional batch job streams, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

–k *keep_list* Redefine which output of the batch job to retain on the execution host.

The *qalter* **–k** option shall accept a value for the *keep_list* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set.

The *qalter* utility shall accept a *keep_list* option-argument that consists of one or more of the characters `'e'` and `'o'`, or the single character `'n'`.

For each unique character in the *keep_list* option-argument, the *qalter* utility shall add a value to the *Keep_Files* attribute of the batch job as follows, each representing a different batch job stream to keep:

`e` The standard error of the batch job (KEEP_STD_ERROR).

`o` The standard output of the batch job (KEEP_STD_OUTPUT).

If both `'e'` and `'o'` are specified, then both files are retained. An existing *Keep_Files* attribute can be cleared by the keep type:

`n` NO_KEEP

If `'n'` is specified, then no files are retained. The *qalter* utility shall consider it an error if any keep type other than `'n'` is combined with keep type `'n'`.

Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'e'`, `'o'`, or `'n'` within the *keep_list* option-argument. The *qalter* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated characters. An implementation may define other keep types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional keep types, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

–l *resource_list*

Redefine the resources that are allowed or required by the batch job.

The *qalter* utility shall accept a *resource_list* option-argument that conforms to the following syntax:

```
resource=value[,,resource=value,,...]
```

The *qalter* utility shall set one entry in the value of the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job for each resource listed in the *resource_list* option-argument.

Because the list of supported resource names might vary by batch server, the *qalter* utility shall rely on the batch server to validate the resource names and associated values. See Section 3.3.3 for a means of removing *keyword=value* (and *value@keyword*) pairs and other general rules for list-oriented batch job attributes.

–m *mail_options*

Redefine the points in the execution of the batch job at which the batch server is to send mail about a change in the state of the batch job.

The *qalter* **–m** option shall accept a value for the *mail_options* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set.

The *qalter* utility shall accept a value for the *mail_options* option-argument that is a string of one or more of the characters `'e'`, `'b'`, and `'a'`, or the single character `'n'`. For each unique character in the *mail_options* option-argument, the *qalter* utility shall add a value to the *Mail_Users* attribute of the batch job as follows, each representing a different time during the life of a batch job at which to send mail:

`e` MAIL_AT_EXIT

`b` MAIL_AT_BEGINNING

`a` MAIL_AT_ABORT

If any of these characters are duplicated in the *mail_options* option-argument, the duplicates shall be ignored.

30384 An existing *Mail_Points* attribute can be cleared by the mail type:

30385 `n` NO_MAIL

30386 If `'n'` is specified, then mail is not sent. The *qalter* utility shall consider it an error
30387 if any mail type other than `'n'` is combined with mail type `'n'`. Strictly
30388 conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'e'`, `'b'`, `'a'`, or
30389 `'n'` within the *mail_options* option-argument. The *qalter* utility shall permit the
30390 repetition of characters but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated
30391 characters.

30392 An implementation may define other mail types. The conformance document for
30393 an implementation shall describe any additional mail types, how they are
30394 specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

30395 **–M** *mail_list* Redefine the list of users to which the batch server that executes the batch job is to
30396 send mail, if the batch server sends mail about the batch job.

30397 The syntax of the *mail_list* option-argument is unspecified. If the implementation
30398 of the *qalter* utility uses a name service to locate users, the utility shall accept the
30399 syntax used by the name service.

30400 If the implementation of the *qalter* utility does not use a name service to locate
30401 users, the implementation shall accept the following syntax for user names:

30402 `mail_address[,,mail_address,,...]`

30403 The interpretation of *mail_address* is implementation-defined.

30404 The *qalter* utility shall set the *Mail_Users* attribute of the batch job to the value of
30405 the *mail_list* option-argument.

30406 **–N** *name* Redefine the name of the batch job.

30407 The *qalter* **–N** option shall accept a value for the *name* option-argument that is a
30408 string of up to 15 alphanumeric characters in the portable character set where the
30409 first character is alphabetic.

30410 The syntax of the *name* option-argument is unspecified.

30411 The *qalter* utility shall set the *Job_Name* attribute of the batch job to the value of the
30412 *name* option-argument.

30413 **–o** *path_name*
30414 Redefine the path for the standard output of the batch job.

30415 The *qalter* utility shall accept a *path_name* option-argument that conforms to the
30416 syntax of the *path_name* element defined in the System Interfaces volume of
30417 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, which can be preceded by a host name element of the form
30418 *hostname*:.

30419 If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes an absolute pathname, the *qalter*
30420 utility shall set the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job to the value of the
30421 *path_name* option-argument.

30422 If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and no host
30423 name element is specified, the *qalter* utility shall set the *Output_Path* attribute of the
30424 batch job to the absolute pathname derived by expanding the *path_name* option-
30425 argument relative to the current directory of the process that executes the *qalter*
30426 utility.

30427 If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and a host name
30428 element is specified, the *qalter* utility shall set the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch

job to the value of the *path_name* option-argument without any expansion of the pathname.

If the *path_name* option-argument does not include a host name element, the *qalter* utility shall prefix the pathname in the *Output_Path* attribute with *hostname*:, where *hostname* is the name of the host upon which the *qalter* utility is being executed.

–**p** *priority* Redefine the priority of the batch job.

The *qalter* utility shall accept a value for the priority option-argument that conforms to the syntax for signed decimal integers, and which is not less than –1 024 and not greater than 1 023.

The *qalter* utility shall set the *Priority* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *priority* option-argument.

–**r** `y | n` Redefine whether the batch job is rerunnable.

If the value of the option-argument is `'y'`, the *qalter* utility shall set the *Rerunable* attribute of the batch job to TRUE.

If the value of the option-argument is `'n'`, the *qalter* utility shall set the *Rerunable* attribute of the batch job to FALSE.

The *qalter* utility shall consider it an error if any character other than `'y'` or `'n'` is specified in the option-argument.

–**S** *path_name_list*
Redefine the shell that interprets the script at the destination system.

The *qalter* utility shall accept a *path_name_list* option-argument that conforms to the following syntax:

```
pathname[@host][,pathname[@host],...]
```

The *qalter* utility shall accept only one pathname that is missing a corresponding host name. The *qalter* utility shall allow only one pathname per named host.

The *qalter* utility shall add a value to the *Shell_Path_List* attribute of the batch job for each entry in the *path_name_list* option-argument. See Section 3.3.3 for a means of removing *keyword=value* (and *value@keyword*) pairs and other general rules for list-oriented batch job attributes.

–**u** *user_list* Redefine the user name under which the batch job is to run at the destination system.

The *qalter* utility shall accept a *user_list* option-argument that conforms to the following syntax:

```
username[@host][,,username[@host],,...]
```

The *qalter* utility shall accept only one user name that is missing a corresponding host name. The *qalter* utility shall accept only one user name per named host.

The *qalter* utility shall add a value to the *User_List* attribute of the batch job for each entry in the *user_list* option-argument. See Section 3.3.3 for a means of removing *keyword=value* (and *value@keyword*) pairs and other general rules for list-oriented batch job attributes.

OPERANDS

The *qalter* utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

30472 **STDIN**

30473 Not used.

30474 **INPUT FILES**

30475 None.

30476 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

30477 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qalter*:

30478 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
30479 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
30480 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
30481 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

30482 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
30483 internationalization variables.

30484 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
30485 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
30486 arguments).

30487 *LC_MESSAGES*
30488 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
30489 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

30490 *LOGNAME* Determine the login name of the user.

30491 *TZ* Determine the timezone used to interpret the *date-time* option-argument. If *TZ* is
30492 unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

30493 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

30494 Default.

30495 **STDOUT**

30496 None.

30497 **STDERR**

30498 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

30499 **OUTPUT FILES**

30500 None.

30501 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

30502 None.

30503 **EXIT STATUS**

30504 The following exit values shall be returned:

30505 0 Successful completion.

30506 >0 An error occurred.

30507 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

30508 In addition to the default behavior, the *qalter* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic
30509 message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the
30510 batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qalter* utility attempts to locate
30511 the batch job on other batch servers is implementation-defined.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *qalter* utility allows users to change the attributes of a batch job.

As a means of altering a queued job, the *qalter* utility is superior to deleting and requeuing the batch job insofar as an altered job retains its place in the queue with some traditional selection algorithms. In addition, the *qalter* utility is both shorter and simpler than a sequence of *qdel* and *qsub* utilities.

The result of an attempt on the part of a user to alter a batch job in a RUNNING state is implementation-defined because a batch job in the RUNNING state will already have opened its output files and otherwise performed any actions indicated by the options in effect at the time the batch job began execution.

The options processed by the *qalter* utility are identical to those of the *qsub* utility, with a few exceptions: **–V**, **–v**, and **–q**. The **–V** and **–v** are inappropriate for the *qalter* utility, since they capture potentially transient environment information from the submitting process. The **–q** option would specify a new queue, which would largely negate the previously stated advantage of using *qalter*; furthermore, the *qmove* utility provides a superior means of moving jobs.

Each of the following paragraphs provides the rationale for a *qalter* option.

Additional rationale concerning these options can be found in the rationale for the *qsub* utility.

The **–a** option allows users to alter the date and time at which a batch job becomes eligible to run.

The **–A** option allows users to change the account that will be charged for the resources consumed by the batch job. Support for the **–A** option is mandatory for conforming implementations of *qalter*, even though support of accounting is optional for servers. Whether or not to support accounting is left to the implementor of the server, but mandatory support of the **–A** option assures users of a consistent interface and allows them to control accounting on servers that support accounting.

The **–c** option allows users to alter the checkpointing interval of a batch job. A checkpointing system, which is not defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, allows recovery of a batch job at the most recent checkpoint in the event of a crash. Checkpointing is typically used for jobs that consume expensive computing time or must meet a critical schedule. Users should be allowed to make the tradeoff between the overhead of checkpointing and the risk to the timely completion of the batch job; therefore, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x provides the checkpointing interval option. Support for checkpointing is optional for servers.

The **–e** option allows users to alter the name and location of the standard error stream written by a batch job. However, the path of the standard error stream is meaningless if the value of the *Join_Path* attribute of the batch job is TRUE.

The **–h** option allows users to set the hold type in the *Hold_Types* attribute of a batch job. The *qhold* and *qrls* utilities add or remove hold types to the *Hold_Types* attribute, respectively. The **–h** option has been modified to allow for implementation-defined hold types.

The **–j** option allows users to alter the decision to join (merge) the standard error stream of the batch job with the standard output stream of the batch job.

The **–l** option allows users to change the resource limits imposed on a batch job.

The **–m** option allows users to modify the list of points in the life of a batch job at which the designated users will receive mail notification.

The **–M** option allows users to alter the list of users who will receive notification about events in the life of a batch job.

The **–N** option allows users to change the name of a batch job.

The **–o** option allows users to alter the name and path to which the standard output stream of the batch job will be written.

The **–P** option allows users to modify the priority of a batch job. Support for priority is optional for batch servers.

The **–r** option allows users to alter the rerunability status of a batch job.

The **–S** option allows users to change the name and location of the shell image that will be invoked to interpret the script of the batch job. This option has been modified to allow a list of shell name and locations associated with different hosts.

The **–u** option allows users to change the user identifier under which the batch job will execute.

The *job_identifier* operand syntax is provided so that the user can differentiate between the originating and destination (or executing) batch server. These may or may not be the same. The *.server_name* portion identifies the originating batch server, while the *@server* portion identifies the destination batch server.

Historically, the *qalter* utility has been a component of the Network Queuing System (NQS), the existing practice from which this utility has been derived.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qalter* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3 (on page 101), *qdel*, *qhold*, *qmove*, *qrls*, *qsub*, *touch*

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

The *TZ* entry is added to the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #182 is applied, clarifying the description of the **–a** option.

Issue 7

The *qalter* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

30589 **NAME**

30590 qdel — delete batch jobs

30591 **SYNOPSIS**

30592 OB BE

```
qdel job_identifier...
```

30593 **DESCRIPTION**

30594 A batch job is deleted by sending a request to the batch server that manages the batch job. A
30595 batch job that has been deleted is no longer subject to management by batch services.

30596 The *qdel* utility is a user-accessible client of batch services that requests the deletion of one or
30597 more batch jobs.

30598 The *qdel* utility shall request a batch server to delete those batch jobs for which a batch
30599 *job_identifier* is presented to the utility.

30600 The *qdel* utility shall delete batch jobs in the order in which their batch *job_identifier*s are
30601 presented to the utility.

30602 If the *qdel* utility fails to process any batch *job_identifier* successfully, the utility shall proceed to
30603 process the remaining batch *job_identifier*s, if any.

30604 The *qdel* utility shall delete each batch job by sending a *Delete Job Request* to the batch server that
30605 manages the batch job.

30606 The *qdel* utility shall not exit until the batch job corresponding to each successfully processed
30607 batch *job_identifier* has been deleted.

30608 **OPTIONS**

30609 None.

30610 **OPERANDS**

30611 The *qdel* utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch
30612 *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

30613 **STDIN**

30614 Not used.

30615 **INPUT FILES**

30616 None.

30617 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

30618 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qdel*:

30619 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
30620 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
30621 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
30622 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

30623 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
30624 internationalization variables.

30625 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
30626 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
30627 arguments).

30628 *LC_MESSAGES*

30629 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
30630 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LOGNAME Determine the login name of the user.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

An implementation of the *qdel* utility may write informative messages to standard output.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

In addition to the default behavior, the *qdel* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qdel* utility waits to output the diagnostic message while attempting to locate the job on other servers is implementation-defined.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *qdel* utility allows users and administrators to delete jobs.

The *qdel* utility provides functionality that is not otherwise available. For example, the *kill* utility of the operating system does not suffice. First, to use the *kill* utility, the user might have to log in on a remote node, because the *kill* utility does not operate across the network. Second, unlike *qdel*, *kill* cannot remove jobs from queues. Lastly, the arguments of the *qdel* utility are job identifiers rather than process identifiers, and so this utility can be passed the output of the *qselect* utility, thus providing users with a means of deleting a list of jobs.

Because a set of jobs can be selected using the *qselect* utility, the *qdel* utility has not been complicated with options that provide for selection of jobs. Instead, the batch jobs to be deleted are identified individually by their job identifiers.

Historically, the *qdel* utility has been a component of NQS, the existing practice on which it is based. However, the *qdel* utility defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not provide an option for specifying a signal number to send to the batch job prior to the killing of the process; that capability has been subsumed by the *qsig* utility.

A discussion was held about the delays of networking and the possibility that the batch server may never respond, due to a down router, down batch server, or other network mishap. The DESCRIPTION records this under the words "fails to process any job identifier". In the broad sense, the network problem is also an error, which causes the failure to process the batch job identifier.

30676 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

30677 The *qdel* utility may be removed in a future version.

30678 **SEE ALSO**

30679 Chapter 3 (on page 101), *kill*, *qselect*, *qsig*

30680 **CHANGE HISTORY**

30681 Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

30682 **Issue 6**

30683 The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

30684 **Issue 7**

30685 The *qdel* utility is marked obsolescent.

30686 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qhold — hold batch jobs

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qhold [–h hold_list] job_identifier...
```

DESCRIPTION

A hold is placed on a batch job by a request to the batch server that manages the batch job. A batch job that has one or more holds is not eligible for execution. The *qhold* utility is a user-accessible client of batch services that requests one or more types of hold to be placed on one or more batch jobs.

The *qhold* utility shall place holds on those batch jobs for which a batch *job_identifier* is presented to the utility.

The *qhold* utility shall place holds on batch jobs in the order in which their batch *job_identifier*s are presented to the utility. If the *qhold* utility fails to process any batch *job_identifier* successfully, the utility shall proceed to process the remaining batch *job_identifier*s, if any.

The *qhold* utility shall place holds on each batch job by sending a *Hold Job Request* to the batch server that manages the batch job.

The *qhold* utility shall not exit until holds have been placed on the batch job corresponding to each successfully processed batch *job_identifier*.

OPTIONS

The *qhold* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported by the implementation:

–h *hold_list* Define the types of holds to be placed on the batch job.

The *qhold* **–h** option shall accept a value for the *hold_list* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set).

The *qhold* utility shall accept a value for the *hold_list* option-argument that is a string of one or more of the characters `'u'`, `'s'`, or `'o'`, or the single character `'n'`.

For each unique character in the *hold_list* option-argument, the *qhold* utility shall add a value to the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job as follows, each representing a different hold type:

`u` USER

`s` SYSTEM

`o` OPERATOR

If any of these characters are duplicated in the *hold_list* option-argument, the duplicates shall be ignored.

An existing *Hold_Types* attribute can be cleared by the following hold type:

`n` NO_HOLD

The *qhold* utility shall consider it an error if any hold type other than `'n'` is combined with hold type `'n'`.

Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'u'`, `'s'`, `'o'`, or `'n'` within the *hold_list* option-argument. The *qhold* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated characters.

An implementation may define other hold types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional hold types, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

If the **–h** option is not presented to the *qhold* utility, the implementation shall set the *Hold_Types* attribute to USER.

OPERANDS

The *qhold* utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qhold*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES

30771 0 Successful completion.

30772 >0 An error occurred.

30773 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

30774 In addition to the default behavior, the *qhold* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic
30775 message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the
30776 batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qhold* utility waits to output
30777 the diagnostic message while attempting to locate the job on other servers is implementation-
30778 defined.

30779 **APPLICATION USAGE**

30780 None.

30781 **EXAMPLES**

30782 None.

30783 **RATIONALE**

30784 The *qhold* utility allows users to place a hold on one or more jobs. A hold makes a batch job
30785 ineligible for execution.

30786 The *qhold* utility has options that allow the user to specify the type of hold. Should the user wish
30787 to place a hold on a set of jobs that meet a selection criteria, such a list of jobs can be acquired
30788 using the *qselect* utility.

30789 The **–h** option allows the user to specify the type of hold that is to be placed on the job. This
30790 option allows for USER, SYSTEM, OPERATOR, and implementation-defined hold types. The
30791 USER and OPERATOR holds are distinct. The batch server that manages the batch job will verify
30792 that the user is authorized to set the specified hold for the batch job.

30793 Mail is not required on hold because the administrator has the tools and libraries to build this
30794 option if he or she wishes.

30795 Historically, the *qhold* utility has been a part of some existing batch systems, although it has not
30796 traditionally been a part of the NQS.

30797 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

30798 The *qhold* utility may be removed in a future version.

30799 **SEE ALSO**

30800 Chapter 3 (on page 101), *qselect*

30801 **CHANGE HISTORY**

30802 Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

30803 **Issue 6**

30804 The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

30805 **Issue 7**

30806 The *qhold* utility is marked obsolescent.

30807 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

30808 **NAME**

30809 qmove — move batch jobs

30810 **SYNOPSIS**

30811 OB BE
```
qmove destination job_identifier...
```

30812 **DESCRIPTION**

30813 To move a batch job is to remove the batch job from the batch queue in which it resides and
30814 instantiate the batch job in another batch queue. A batch job is moved by a request to the batch
30815 server that manages the batch job. The *qmove* utility is a user-accessible batch client that requests
30816 the movement of one or more batch jobs.

30817 The *qmove* utility shall move those batch jobs, and only those batch jobs, for which a batch
30818 *job_identifier* is presented to the utility.

30819 The *qmove* utility shall move batch jobs in the order in which the corresponding batch
30820 *job_identifier*s are presented to the utility.

30821 If the *qmove* utility fails to process a batch *job_identifier* successfully, the utility shall proceed to
30822 process the remaining batch *job_identifier*s, if any.

30823 The *qmove* utility shall move batch jobs by sending a *Move Job Request* to the batch server that
30824 manages each batch job. The *qmove* utility shall not exit before the batch jobs corresponding to all
30825 successfully processed batch *job_identifier*s have been moved.

30826 **OPTIONS**

30827 None.

30828 **OPERANDS**

30829 The *qmove* utility shall accept one operand that conforms to the syntax for a destination (see
30830 Section 3.3.2 (on page 123)).

30831 The *qmove* utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch
30832 *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

30833 **STDIN**

30834 Not used.

30835 **INPUT FILES**

30836 None.

30837 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

30838 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qmove*:

30839 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
30840 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
30841 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
30842 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

30843 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
30844 internationalization variables.

30845 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
30846 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
30847 arguments).

30848 *LC_MESSAGES*
30849 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
30850 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LOGNAME Determine the login name of the user.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

None.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

In addition to the default behavior, the *qmove* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qmove* utility waits to output the diagnostic message while attempting to locate the job on other servers is implementation-defined.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *qmove* utility allows users to move jobs between queues.

The alternative to using the *qmove* utility—deleting the batch job and requeuing it—entails considerably more typing.

Since the means of selecting jobs based on attributes has been encapsulated in the *qselect* utility, the only option of the *qmove* utility concerns authorization. The **–u** option provides the user with the convenience of changing the user identifier under which the batch job will execute. Minimalism and consistency have taken precedence over convenience; the **–u** option has been deleted because the equivalent capability exists with the **–u** option of the *qalter* utility.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qmove* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3 (on page 101), *qalter*, *qselect*

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

The *qmove* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qmsg — send message to batch jobs

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qmsg [–E] [–O] message_string job_identifier...
```

DESCRIPTION

To send a message to a batch job is to request that a server write a message string into one or more output files of the batch job. A message is sent to a batch job by a request to the batch server that manages the batch job. The *qmsg* utility is a user-accessible batch client that requests the sending of messages to one or more batch jobs.

The *qmsg* utility shall write messages into the files of batch jobs by sending a *Job Message Request* to the batch server that manages the batch job. The *qmsg* utility shall not directly write the message into the files of the batch job.

The *qmsg* utility shall send a *Job Message Request* for those batch jobs, and only those batch jobs, for which a batch *job_identifier* is presented to the utility.

The *qmsg* utility shall send *Job Message Request*s for batch jobs in the order in which their batch *job_identifier*s are presented to the utility.

If the *qmsg* utility fails to process any batch *job_identifier* successfully, the utility shall proceed to process the remaining batch *job_identifier*s, if any.

The *qmsg* utility shall not exit before a *Job Message Request* has been sent to the server that manages the batch job that corresponds to each successfully processed batch *job_identifier*.

OPTIONS

The *qmsg* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–E Specify that the message is written to the standard error of each batch job.

The *qmsg* utility shall write the message into the standard error of the batch job.

–O Specify that the message is written to the standard output of each batch job.

The *qmsg* utility shall write the message into the standard output of the batch job.

If neither the **–O** nor the **–E** option is presented to the *qmsg* utility, the utility shall write the message into an implementation-defined file. The conformance document for the implementation shall describe the name and location of the implementation-defined file. If both the **–O** and the **–E** options are presented to the *qmsg* utility, then the utility shall write the messages to both standard output and standard error.

OPERANDS

The *qmsg* utility shall accept a minimum of two operands, *message_string* and one or more batch *job_identifier*s.

The *message_string* operand shall be the string to be written to one or more output files of the batch job followed by a <newline>. If the string contains <blank>s, then the application shall ensure that the string is quoted. The *message_string* shall be encoded in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set).

All remaining operands are batch *job_identifier*s that conform to the syntax for a batch *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

30938 **STDIN**

30939 Not used.

30940 **INPUT FILES**

30941 None.

30942 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

30943 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qmsg*:

30944 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
30945 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
30946 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
30947 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

30948 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
30949 internationalization variables.

30950 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
30951 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
30952 arguments).

30953 *LC_MESSAGES*
30954 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
30955 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

30956 *LOGNAME* Determine the login name of the user.

30957 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

30958 Default.

30959 **STDOUT**

30960 None.

30961 **STDERR**

30962 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

30963 **OUTPUT FILES**

30964 None.

30965 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

30966 None.

30967 **EXIT STATUS**

30968 The following exit values shall be returned:

30969 0 Successful completion.

30970 >0 An error occurred.

30971 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

30972 In addition to the default behavior, the *qmsg* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic
30973 message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the
30974 batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qmsg* utility waits to output
30975 the diagnostic message while attempting to locate the job on other servers is implementation-
30976 defined.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *qmsg* utility allows users to write messages into the output files of running jobs. Users, including operators and administrators, have a number of occasions when they want to place messages in the output files of a batch job. For example, if a disk that is being used by a batch job is showing errors, the operator might note this in the standard error stream of the batch job.

The options of the *qmsg* utility provide users with the means of placing the message in the output stream of their choice. The default output stream for the message—if the user does not designate an output stream—is implementation-defined, since many implementations will provide, as an extension to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, a log file that shows the history of utility execution.

If users wish to send a message to a set of jobs that meet a selection criteria, the *qselect* utility can be used to acquire the appropriate list of job identifiers.

The **–E** option allows users to place the message in the standard error stream of the batch job.

The **–O** option allows users to place the message in the standard output stream of the batch job.

Historically, the *qmsg* utility is an existing practice in the offerings of one or more implementors of an NQS-derived batch system. The utility has been found to be useful enough that it deserves to be included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qmsg* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3 (on page 101), *qselect*

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

The *qmsg* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qrerun — rerun batch jobs

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qrerun job_identifier...
```

DESCRIPTION

To rerun a batch job is to terminate the session leader of the batch job, delete any associated checkpoint files, and return the batch job to the batch queued state. A batch job is rerun by a request to the batch server that manages the batch job. The *qrerun* utility is a user-accessible batch client that requests the rerunning of one or more batch jobs.

The *qrerun* utility shall rerun those batch jobs for which a batch *job_identifier* is presented to the utility.

The *qrerun* utility shall rerun batch jobs in the order in which their batch *job_identifier*s are presented to the utility.

If the *qrerun* utility fails to process any batch *job_identifier* successfully, the utility shall proceed to process the remaining batch *job_identifier*s, if any.

The *qrerun* utility shall rerun batch jobs by sending a *Rerun Job Request* to the batch server that manages each batch job.

For each successfully processed batch *job_identifier*, the *qrerun* utility shall have rerun the corresponding batch job at the time the utility exits.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The *qrerun* utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qrerun*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LOGNAME Determine the login name of the user.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

None.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

In addition to the default behavior, the *qrerun* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qrerun* utility waits to output the diagnostic message while attempting to locate the job on other servers is implementation-defined.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *qrerun* utility allows users to cause jobs in the running state to exit and rerun.

The *qrerun* utility is a new utility, *vis-a-vis* existing practice, that has been defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to correct user-perceived deficiencies in the existing practice.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qrerun* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

The *qrerun* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qrls — release batch jobs

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qrls [–h hold_list] job_identifier...
```

DESCRIPTION

A batch job might have one or mor

31130 n NO_HOLD

31131 The *qrls* utility shall consider it an error if any hold type other than `'n'` is
31132 combined with hold type `'n'`.

31133 Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'u'`, `'s'`,
31134 `'o'`, or `'n'` within the *hold_list* option-argument. The *qrls* utility shall permit the
31135 repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated
31136 characters.

31137 An implementation may define other hold types. The conformance document for
31138 an implementation shall describe any additional hold types, how they are
31139 specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

31140 If the **–h** option is not presented to the *qrls* utility, the implementation shall remove
31141 the USER hold in the *Hold_Types* attribute.

31142 **OPERANDS**

31143 The *qrls* utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch
31144 *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

31145 **STDIN**

31146 Not used.

31147 **INPUT FILES**

31148 None.

31149 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

31150 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qrls*:

31151 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
31152 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
31153 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
31154 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

31155 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
31156 internationalization variables.

31157 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
31158 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
31159 arguments).

31160 *LC_MESSAGES*
31161 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
31162 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

31163 *LOGNAME* Determine the login name of the user.

31164 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

31165 Default.

31166 **STDOUT**

31167 None.

31168 **STDERR**

31169 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

31170 **OUTPUT FILES**

31171 None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

In addition to the default behavior, the *qrls* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qrls* utility waits to output the diagnostic message while attempting to locate the job on other servers is implementation-defined.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *qrls* utility allows users, operators, and administrators to remove holds from jobs.

The *qrls* utility does not support any job selection options or wildcard arguments. Users may acquire a list of jobs selected by attributes using the *qselect* utility. For example, a user could select all of their held jobs.

The **–h** option allows the user to specify the type of hold that is to be removed. This option allows for USER, SYSTEM, OPERATOR, and implementation-defined hold types. The batch server that manages the batch job will verify whether the user is authorized to remove the specified hold for the batch job. If more than one type of hold has been placed on the batch job, a user may wish to remove only some of them.

Mail is not required on release because the administrator has the tools and libraries to build this option if required.

The *qrls* utility is a new utility *vis-a-vis* existing practice; it has been defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x as the natural complement to the *qhold* utility.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qrls* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3 (on page 101), *qhold*, *qselect*

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

The *qrls* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qselect — select batch jobs

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qselect [–a [op]date_time] [–A account_string] [–c [op]interval]
    [–h hold_list] [–l resource_list] [–N name] [–p [op]priority]
    [–q destination] [–r y|n] [–s states] [–u user_list]
```

DESCRIPTION

To select a set of batch jobs is to return the batch *job_identifier*s for each batch job that meets a list of selection criteria. A set of batch jobs is selected by a request to a batch server. The *qselect* utility is a user-accessible batch client that requests the selection of batch jobs.

Upon successful completion, the *qselect* utility shall have returned a list of zero or more batch *job_identifier*s that meet the criteria specified by the options and option-arguments presented to the utility.

The *qselect* utility shall select batch jobs by sending a *Select Jobs Request* to a batch server. The *qselect* utility shall not exit until the server replies to each request generated.

For each option presented to the *qselect* utility, the utility shall restrict the set of selected batch jobs as described in the OPTIONS section.

The *qselect* utility shall not restrict selection of batch jobs except by authorization and as required by the options presented to the utility.

When an option is specified with a mandatory or optional *op* component to the option-argument, then *op* shall specify a relation between the value of a certain batch job attribute and the *value* component of the option-argument. If an *op* is allowable on an option, then the description of the option letter indicates the *op* as either mandatory or optional. Acceptable strings for the *op* component, and the relation the string indicates, are shown in the following list:

`.eq.` The value represented by the attribute of the batch job is equal to the value represented by the option-argument.

`.ge.` The value represented by the attribute of the batch job is greater than or equal to the value represented by the option-argument.

`.gt.` The value represented by the attribute of the batch job is greater than the value represented by the option-argument.

`.lt.` The value represented by the attribute of the batch job is less than the value represented by the option-argument.

`.le.` The value represented by the attribute of the batch job is less than or equal to the value represented by the option-argument.

`.ne.` The value represented by the attribute of the batch job is not equal to the value represented by the option-argument.

OPTIONS

The *qselect* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

31254 **–a [***op***]***date_time*

31255 Restrict selection to a specific time, or a range of times.

31256 The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the value of the
31257 *Execution_Time* attribute is related to the Epoch equivalent of the local time
31258 expressed by the value of the *date_time* component of the option-argument in the
31259 manner indicated by the value of the *op* component of the option-argument.

31260 The *qselect* utility shall accept a *date_time* component of the option-argument that
31261 conforms to the syntax of the *time* operand of the *touch* utility.

31262 If the *op* component of the option-argument is not presented to the *qselect* utility,
31263 the utility shall select batch jobs for which the *Execution_Time* attribute is equal to
31264 the *date_time* component of the option-argument.

31265 When comparing times, the *qselect* utility shall use the following definitions for the
31266 *op* component of the option-argument:

31267 `.eq.` The time represented by value of the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch
31268 job is equal to the time represented by the *date_time* component of the
31269 option-argument.

31270 `.ge.` The time represented by value of the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch
31271 job is after or equal to the time represented by the *date_time* component of
31272 the option-argument.

31273 `.gt.` The time represented by value of the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch
31274 job is after the time represented by the *date_time* component of the option-
31275 argument.

31276 `.lt.` The time represented by value of the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch
31277 job is before the time represented by the *date_time* component of the
31278 option-argument.

31279 `.le.` The time represented by value of the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch
31280 job is before or equal to the time represented by the *date_time* component
31281 of the option-argument.

31282 `.ne.` The time represented by value of the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch
31283 job is not equal to the time represented by the *date_time* component of the
31284 option-argument.

31285 The *qselect* utility shall accept the defined character strings for the *op* component of
31286 the option-argument.

31287 **–A** *account_string*

31288 Restrict selection to the batch jobs charging a specified account.

31289 The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the value of the
31290 *Account_Name* attribute of the batch job matchs the value of the *account_string*
31291 option-argument.

31292 The syntax of the *account_string* option-argument is unspecified.

31293 **–c [***op***]***interval*

31294 Restrict selection to batch jobs within a range of checkpoint intervals.

31295 The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the value of the *Checkpoint*
31296 attribute relates to the value of the *interval* component of the option-argument in
31297 the manner indicated by the value of the *op* component of the option-argument.

31298 If the *op* component of the option-argument is omitted, the *qselect* utility shall select
31299 batch jobs for which the value of the *Checkpoint* attribute is equal to the value of the

interval component of the option-argument.

When comparing checkpoint intervals, the *qselect* utility shall use the following definitions for the *op* component of the option-argument:

`.eq.` The value of the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job equals the value of the *interval* component of the option-argument.

`.ge.` The value of the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job is greater than or equal to the value of the *interval* component option-argument.

`.gt.` The value of the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job is greater than the value of the *interval* component option-argument.

`.lt.` The value of the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job is less than the value of the *interval* component option-argument.

`.le.` The value of the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job is less than or equal to the value of the *interval* component option-argument.

`.ne.` The value of the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job does not equal the value of the *interval* component option-argument.

The *qselect* utility shall accept the defined character strings for the *op* component of the option-argument.

The ordering relationship for the values of the interval option-argument is defined to be:

`'n' .gt. 's' .gt. 'c=`*minutes*`' .ge. 'c'`

When comparing *Checkpoint* attributes with an interval having the value of the single character `'u'`, only equality or inequality are valid comparisons.

–**h** *hold_list* Restrict selection to batch jobs that have a specific type of hold.

The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the value of the *Hold_Types* attribute matches the value of the *hold_list* option-argument.

The *qselect* –**h** option shall accept a value for the *hold_list* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set).

The *qselect* utility shall accept a value for the *hold_list* option-argument that is a string of one or more of the characters `'u'`, `'s'`, or `'o'`, or the single character `'n'`.

Each unique character in the *hold_list* option-argument of the *qselect* utility is defined as follows, each representing a different hold type:

`u` USER

`s` SYSTEM

`o` OPERATOR

If any of these characters are duplicated in the *hold_list* option-argument, the duplicates shall be ignored.

The *qselect* utility shall consider it an error if any hold type other than `'n'` is combined with hold type `'n'`.

Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'u'`, `'s'`, `'o'`, or `'n'` within the *hold_list* option-argument. The *qselect* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated

characters.

An implementation may define other hold types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional hold types, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

–l *resource_list*

Restrict selection to batch jobs with specified resource limits and attributes.

The *qselect* utility shall accept a *resource_list* option-argument with the following syntax:

```
resource_name op value [,,resource_name op value,, ...]
```

When comparing resource values, the *qselect* utility shall use the following definitions for the *op* component of the option-argument:

`.eq.` The value of the resource of the same name in the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job equals the value of the value component of the option-argument.

`.ge.` The value of the resource of the same name in the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job is greater than or equal to the value of the *value* component of the option-argument.

`.gt.` The value of the resource of the same name in the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job is greater than the value of the value component of the option-argument.

`.lt.` The value of the resource of the same name in the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job is less than the value of the value component of the option-argument.

`.ne.` The value of the resource of the same name in the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job does not equal the value of the value component of the option-argument.

`.le.` The value of the resource of the same name in the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job is less than or equal to the value of the *value* component of the option-argument.

When comparing the limit of a *Resource_List* attribute with the *value* component of the option-argument, if the limit, the value, or both are non-numeric, only equality or inequality are valid comparisons.

The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the values of the *resource_name*s listed in the *resource_list* option-argument match the corresponding limits of the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job.

Limits of *resource_name*s present in the *Resource_List* attribute of the batch job that have no corresponding values in the *resource_list* option-argument shall not be considered when selecting batch jobs.

–N *name* Restrict selection to batch jobs with a specified name.

The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the value of the *Job_Name* attribute matches the value of the *name* option-argument. The string specified in the *name* option-argument shall be passed, uninterpreted, to the server. This allows an implementation to match "wildcard" patterns against batch job names.

An implementation shall describe in the conformance document the format it supports for matching against the *Job_Name* attribute.

31388 –**p** [*op*]*priority*

31389 Restrict selection to batch jobs of the specified priority or range of priorities.

31390 The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the value of the *Priority*
31391 attribute of the batch job relates to the value of the *priority* component of the
31392 option-argument in the manner indicated by the value of the *op* component of the
31393 option-argument.

31394 If the *op* component of the option-argument is omitted, the *qselect* utility shall select
31395 batch jobs for which the value of the *Priority* attribute of the batch job is equal to
31396 the value of the *priority* component of the option-argument.

31397 When comparing priority values, the *qselect* utility shall use the following
31398 definitions for the *op* component of the option-argument:

31399 `.eq.` The value of the *Priority* attribute of the batch job equals the value of the
31400 *priority* component of the option-argument.

31401 `.ge.` The value of the *Priority* attribute of the batch job is greater than or equal
31402 to the value of the *priority* component option-argument.

31403 `.gt.` The value of the *Priority* attribute of the batch job is greater than the value
31404 of the *priority* component option-argument.

31405 `.lt.` The value of the *Priority* attribute of the batch job is less than the value of
31406 the *priority* component option-argument.

31407 `.lt.` The value of the *Priority* attribute of the batch job is less than or equal to
31408 the value of the *priority* component option-argument.

31409 `.ne.` The value of the *Priority* attribute of the batch job does not equal the value
31410 of the *priority* component option-argument.

31411 –**q** *destination*

31412 Restrict selection to the specified batch queue or server, or both.

31413 The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs that are located at the destination
31414 indicated by the value of the *destination* option-argument.

31415 The destination defines a batch queue, a server, or a batch queue at a server.

31416 The *qselect* utility shall accept an option-argument for the –**q** option that conforms
31417 to the syntax for a destination. If the –**q** option is not presented to the *qselect* utility,
31418 the utility shall select batch jobs from all batch queues at the default batch server.

31419 If the option-argument describes only a batch queue, the *qselect* utility shall select
31420 only batch jobs from the batch queue of the specified name at the default batch
31421 server. The means by which *qselect* determines the default server is
31422 implementation-defined.

31423 If the option-argument describes only a batch server, the *qselect* utility shall select
31424 batch jobs from all the batch queues at that batch server.

31425 If the option-argument describes both a batch queue and a batch server, the *qselect*
31426 utility shall select only batch jobs from the specified batch queue at the specified
31427 server.

31428 –**r** `y` | `n` Restrict selection to batch jobs with the specified rerunability status.

31429 The *qselect* utility shall select only batch jobs for which the value of the *Rerunable*
31430 attribute of the batch job matches the value of the option-argument.

31431 The *qselect* utility shall accept a value for the option-argument that consists of
31432 either the single character `'y'` or the single character `'n'`. The character `'y'`

31433 represents the value TRUE, and the character 'n' represents the value FALSE.

31434 –**s** *states* Restrict selection to batch jobs in the specified states.

31435 The *qselect* utility shall accept an option-argument that consists of any combination
31436 of the characters 'e', 'q', 'r', 'w', 'h', and 't'.

31437 Conforming applications shall not repeat any character in the option-argument.
31438 The *qselect* utility shall permit the repetition of characters in the option-argument,
31439 but shall not assign additional meaning to repeated characters.

31440 The *qselect* utility shall interpret the characters in the *states* option-argument as
31441 follows:

31442 e Represents the EXITING state.

31443 q Represents the QUEUED state.

31444 r Represents the RUNNING state.

31445 t Represents the TRANSITING state.

31446 h Represents the HELD state.

31447 w Represents the WAITING state.

31448 For each character in the *states* option-argument, the *qselect* utility shall select batch
31449 jobs in the corresponding state.

31450 –**u** *user_list* Restrict selection to batch jobs owned by the specified user names.

31451 The *qselect* utility shall select only the batch jobs of those users specified in the
31452 *user_list* option-argument.

31453 The *qselect* utility shall accept a *user_list* option-argument that conforms to the
31454 following syntax:

31455 *username*[@*host*][,,*username*[@*host*],, ...]

31456 The *qselect* utility shall accept only one user name that is missing a corresponding
31457 host name. The *qselect* utility shall accept only one user name per named host.

31458 **OPERANDS**

31459 None.

31460 **STDIN**

31461 Not used.

31462 **INPUT FILES**

31463 None.

31464 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

31465 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qselect*:

31466 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
31467 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
31468 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
31469 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

31470 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
31471 internationalization variables.

31472 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
31473 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
31474 arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LOGNAME Determine the login name of the user.

TZ Determine the timezone used to interpret the *date-time* option-argument. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The *qselect* utility shall write zero or more batch *job_identifier*s to standard output.

The *qselect* utility shall separate the batch *job_identifier*s written to standard output by white space.

The *qselect* utility shall write batch *job_identifier*s in the following format:

```
sequence_number.server_name@server
```

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
None.

EXAMPLES
The following example shows how a user might use the *qselect* utility in conjunction with the *qdel* utility to delete all of his or her jobs in the queued state without affecting any jobs that are already running:

```
qdel $(qselect –s q)
```

or:

```
qselect –s q || xargs qdel
```

RATIONALE
The *qselect* utility allows users to acquire a list of job identifiers that match user-specified selection criteria. The list of identifiers returned by the *qselect* utility conforms to the syntax of the batch job identifier list processed by a utility such as *qmove*, *qdel*, and *qrls*. The *qselect* utility is thus a powerful tool for causing another batch system utility to act upon a set of jobs that match a list of selection criteria.

The options of the *qselect* utility let the user apply a number of useful filters for selecting jobs. Each option further restricts the selection of jobs. Many of the selection options allow the specification of a relational operator. The FORTRAN-like syntax of the operator—that is,

`".lt."`—was chosen rather than the C-like `"<="` meta-characters.

The **–a** option allows users to restrict the selected jobs to those that have been submitted (or altered) to wait until a particular time. The time period is determined by the argument of this option, which includes both a time and an operator—it is thus possible to select jobs waiting until a specific time, jobs waiting until after a certain time, or those waiting for a time before the specified time.

The **–A** option allows users to restrict the selected jobs to those that have been submitted (or altered) to charge a particular account.

The **–c** option allows users to restrict the selected jobs to those whose checkpointing interval falls within the specified range.

The **–l** option allows users to select those jobs whose resource limits fall within the range indicated by the value of the option. For example, a user could select those jobs for which the CPU time limit is greater than two hours.

The **–N** option allows users to select jobs by job name. For instance, all the parts of a task that have been divided in parallel jobs might be given the same name, and thus manipulated as a group by means of this option.

The **–q** option allows users to select jobs in a specified queue.

The **–r** option allows users to select only those jobs with a specified rerun criteria. For instance, a user might select only those jobs that can be rerun for use with the *qrerun* utility.

The **–s** option allows users to select only those jobs that are in a certain state.

The **–u**

NAME

qsig — signal batch jobs

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qsig [–s signal] job_identifier...
```

DESCRIPTION

To signal a batch job is to send a signal to the session leader of the batch job. A batch job is signaled by sending a request to the batch server that manages the batch job. The *qsig* utility is a user-accessible batch client that requests the signaling of a batch job.

The *qsig* utility shall signal those batch jobs for which a batch *job_identifier* is presented to the utility. The *qsig* utility shall not signal any batch jobs whose batch *job_identifier*s are not presented to the utility.

The *qsig* utility shall signal batch jobs in the order in which the corresponding batch *job_identifier*s are presented to the utility. If the *qsig* utility fails to process a batch *job_identifier* successfully, the utility shall proceed to process the remaining batch *job_identifier*s, if any.

The *qsig* utility shall signal batch jobs by sending a *Signal Job Request* to the batch server that manages the batch job.

For each successfully processed batch *job_identifier*, the *qsig* utility shall have received a completion reply to each *Signal Job Request* sent to a batch server at the time the utility exits.

OPTIONS

The *qsig* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported by the implementation:

–s *signal* Define the signal to be sent to the batch job.

The *qsig* utility shall accept a *signal* option-argument that is either a symbolic signal name or an unsigned integer signal number (see the POSIX.1-1990 standard, Section 3.3.1.1). The *qsig* utility shall accept signal names for which the SIG prefix has been omitted.

If the *signal* option-argument is a signal name, the *qsig* utility shall send that name.

If the *signal* option-argument is a number, the *qsig* utility shall send the signal value represented by the number.

If the **–s** option is not presented to the *qsig* utility, the utility shall send the signal SIGTERM to each signaled batch job.

OPERANDS

The *qsig* utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

31593 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

31594 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qsig*:

31595 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
31596 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
31597 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
31598 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

31599 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
31600 internationalization variables.

31601 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
31602 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
31603 arguments).

31604 *LC_MESSAGES*
31605 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
31606 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

31607 *LOGNAME* Determine the login name of the user.

31608 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

31609 Default.

31610 **STDOUT**

31611 An implementation of the *qsig* utility may write informative messages to standard output.

31612 **STDERR**

31613 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

31614 **OUTPUT FILES**

31615 None.

31616 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

31617 None.

31618 **EXIT STATUS**

31619 The following exit values shall be returned:

31620 0 Successful completion.

31621 >0 An error occurred.

31622 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

31623 In addition to the default behavior, the *qsig* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic
31624 message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the
31625 batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qsig* utility waits to output the
31626 diagnostic message while attempting to locate the batch job on other servers is implementation-
31627 defined.

31628 **APPLICATION USAGE**

31629 None.

31630 **EXAMPLES**

31631 None.

31632 **RATIONALE**

31633 The *qsig* utility allows users to signal batch jobs.

31634 A user may be unable to signal a batch job with the *kill* utility of the operating system for a
31635 number of reasons. First, the process ID of the batch job may be unknown to the user. Second,
31636 the processes of the batch job may be on a remote node. However, by virtue of communication
31637 between batch nodes, the *qsig* utility can arrange for the signaling of a process.

Because a batch job that is not running cannot be signaled, and because the signal may not terminate the batch job, the *qsig* utility is not a substitute for the *qdel* utility.

The options of the *qsig* utility allow the user to specify the signal that is to be sent to the batch job.

The **−s** option allows users to specify a signal by name or by number, and thus override the default signal. The POSIX.1-1990 standard defines signals by both name and number.

The *qsig* utility is a new utility, *vis-a-vis* existing practice; it has been defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x in response to user-perceived shortcomings in existing practice.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qsig* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3 (on page 101), *kill*, *qdel*

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

The *qsig* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qstat — show status of batch jobs

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qstat [–f] job_identifier...
qstat –Q [–f] destination...
qstat –B [–f] server_name...
```

DESCRIPTION

The status of a batch job, batch queue, or batch server is obtained by a request to the server. The *qstat* utility is a user-accessible batch client that requests the status of one or more batch jobs, batch queues, or servers, and writes the status information to standard output.

For each successfully processed batch *job_identifier*, the *qstat* utility shall display information about the corresponding batch job.

For each successfully processed destination, the *qstat* utility shall display information about the corresponding batch queue.

For each successfully processed server name, the *qstat* utility shall display information about the corresponding server.

The *qstat* utility shall acquire batch job status information by sending a *Job Status Request* to a batch server. The *qstat* utility shall acquire batch queue status information by sending a *Queue Status Request* to a batch server. The *qstat* utility shall acquire server status information by sending a *Server Status Request* to a batch server.

OPTIONS

The *qstat* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–f Specify that a full display is produced.

The minimum contents of a full display are specified in the STDOUT section.

Additional contents and format of a full display are implementation-defined.

–Q Specify that the operand is a destination.

The *qstat* utility shall display information about each batch queue at each destination identified as an operand.

–B Specify that the operand is a server name.

The *qstat* utility shall display information about each server identified as an operand.

OPERANDS

If the **–Q** option is presented to the *qstat* utility, the utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a destination (see Section 3.3.2 (on page 123)).

If the **–B** option is presented to the *qstat* utility, the utility shall accept one or more *server_name* operands.

If neither the **–B** nor the **–Q** option is presented to the *qstat* utility, the utility shall accept one or more operands that conform to the syntax for a batch *job_identifier* (see Section 3.3.1 (on page 122)).

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qstat*:

HOME Determine the pathname of the user's home directory.

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LC_NUMERIC
Determine the locale for selecting the radix character used when writing floating-point formatted output.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

If an operand presented to the *qstat* utility is a batch *job_identifier* and the **–f** option is not specified, the *qstat* utility shall display the following items on a single line, in the stated order, with white space between each item, for each successfully processed operand:

- The batch *job_identifier*
- The batch job name
- The *Job_Owner* attribute
- The CPU time used by the batch job
- The batch job state
- The batch job location

If an operand presented to the *qstat* utility is a batch *job_identifier* and the **–f** option is specified, the *qstat* utility shall display the following items for each success fully processed operand:

- The batch *job_identifier*
- The batch job name
- The *Job_Owner* attribute

- The execution user ID
- The CPU time used by the batch job
- The batch job state
- The batch job location
- Additional implementation-defined information, if any, about the batch job or batch queue

If an operand presented to the *qstat* utility is a destination, the **−Q** option is specified, and the **−f** option is not specified, the *qstat* utility shall display the following items on a single line, in the stated order, with white space between each item, for each successfully processed operand:

- The batch queue name
- The maximum number of batch jobs that shall be run in the batch queue concurrently
- The total number of batch jobs in the batch queue
- The status of the batch queue
- For each state, the number of batch jobs in that state in the batch queue and the name of the state
- The type of batch queue (execution or routing)

If the operands presented to the *qstat* utility are destinations, the **−Q** option is specified, and the **−f** option is specified, the *qstat* utility shall display the following items for each successfully processed operand:

- The batch queue name
- The maximum number of batch jobs that shall be run in the batch queue concurrently
- The total number of batch jobs in the batch queue
- The status of the batch queue
- For each state, the number of batch jobs in that state in the batch queue and the name of the state
- The type of batch queue (execution or routing)
- Additional implementation-defined information, if any, about the batch queue

If the operands presented to the *qstat* utility are batch server names, the **−B** option is specified, and the **−f** option is not specified, the *qstat* utility shall display the following items on a single line, in the stated order, with white space between each item, for each successfully processed operand:

- The batch server name
- The maximum number of batch jobs that shall be run in the batch queue concurrently
- The total number of batch jobs managed by the batch server
- The status of the batch server
- For each state, the number of batch jobs in that state and the name of the state

If the operands presented to the *qstat* utility are server names, the **−B** option is specified, and the **−f** option is specified, the *qstat* utility shall display the following items for each successfully processed operand:

- The server name

- The maximum number of batch jobs that shall be run in the batch queue concurrently
- The total number of batch jobs managed by the server
- The status of the server
- For each state, the number of batch jobs in that state and the name of the state
- Additional implementation-defined information, if any, about the server

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

In addition to the default behavior, the *qstat* utility shall not be required to write a diagnostic message to standard error when the error reply received from a batch server indicates that the batch *job_identifier* does not exist on the server. Whether or not the *qstat* utility waits to output the diagnostic message while attempting to locate the batch job on other servers is implementation-defined.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *qstat* utility allows users to display the status of jobs and list the batch jobs in queues.

The operands of the *qstat* utility may be either job identifiers, queues (specified as destination identifiers), or batch server names. The **–Q** and **–B** options, or absence thereof, indicate the nature of the operands.

The other options of the *qstat* utility allow the user to control the amount of information displayed and the format in which it is displayed. Should a user wish to display the status of a set of jobs that match a selection criteria, the *qselect* utility may be used to acquire such a list.

The **–f** option allows users to request a "full" display in an implementation-defined format.

Historically, the *qstat* utility has been a part of the NQS and its derivatives, the existing practice on which it is based.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qstat* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3 (on page 101), *qselect*

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #191 is applied, removing the following ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES listed as affecting *qstat*: *COLUMNS*, *LINES*, *LOGNAME*, *TERM*, and *TZ*.

The *LC_TIME* entry is also removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

Issue 7

The *qstat* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

qsub — submit a script

SYNOPSIS

OB BE

```
qsub [–a date_time] [–A account_string] [–c interval]
    [–C directive_prefix] [–e path_name] [–h] [–j join_list]
    [–k keep_list] [–m mail_options] [–M mail_list] [–N name]
    [–o path_name] [–p priority] [–q destination] [–r y|n]
    [–S path_name_list] [–u user_list] [–v variable_list] [–V]
    [–z] [script]
```

DESCRIPTION

To submit a script is to create a batch job that executes the script. A script is submitted by a request to a batch server. The *qsub* utility is a user-accessible batch client that submits a script.

Upon successful completion, the *qsub* utility shall have created a batch job that will execute the submitted script.

The *qsub* utility shall submit a script by sending a *Queue Job Request* to a batch server.

The *qsub* utility shall place the value of the following environment variables in the *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job: *HOME*, *LANG*, *LOGNAME*, *PATH*, *MAIL*, *SHELL*, and *TZ*. The name of the environment variable shall be the current name prefixed with the string PBS_O_.

Note: If the current value of the *HOME* variable in the environment space of the *qsub* utility is **/aa/bb/cc**, then *qsub* shall place *PBS_O_HOME*=**/aa/bb/cc** in the *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job.

In addition to the variables described above, the *qsub* utility shall add the following variables with the indicated values to the variable list:

PBS_O_WORKDIR The absolute path of the current working directory of the *qsub* utility process.

PBS_O_HOST The name of the host on which the *qsub* utility is running.

OPTIONS

The *qsub* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported by the implementation:

–a *date_time* Define the time at which a batch job becomes eligible for execution.

The *qsub* utility shall accept an option-argument that conforms to the syntax of the *time* operand of the *touch* utility.

Table 4-18 Environment Variable Values (Utilities)

Variable Name	Value at qsub Time
PBS_O_HOME	*HOME*
PBS_O_HOST	Client host name
PBS_O_LANG	*LANG*
PBS_O_LOGNAME	*LOGNAME*
PBS_O_PATH	*PATH*
PBS_O_MAIL	*MAIL*
PBS_O_SHELL	*SHELL*
PBS_O_TZ	*TZ*
PBS_O_WORKDIR	Current working directory

Note: The server that initiates execution of the batch job will add other variables to the batch job's environment; see Section 3.2.2.1 (on page 106).

The *qsub* utility shall set the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch job to the number of seconds since the Epoch that is equivalent to the local time expressed by the value of the *date_time* option-argument. The Epoch is defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.149, Epoch.

If the **–a** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Execution_Time* attribute of the batch job to a time (number of seconds since the Epoch) that is earlier than the time at which the utility exits.

–A *account_string*

Define the account to which the resource consumption of the batch job should be charged.

The syntax of the *account_string* option-argument is unspecified.

The *qsub* utility shall set the *Account_Name* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *account_string* option-argument.

If the **–A** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall omit the *Account_Name* attribute from the attributes of the batch job.

–c *interval* Define whether the batch job should be checkpointed, and if so, how often.

The *qsub* utility shall accept a value for the interval option-argument that is one of the following:

`n` No checkpointing shall be performed on the batch job (NO_CHECKPOINT).

`s` Checkpointing shall be performed only when the batch server is shut down (CHECKPOINT_AT_SHUTDOWN).

`c` Automatic periodic checkpointing shall be performed at the *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* attribute of the batch queue, in units of CPU minutes (CHECKPOINT_AT_MIN_CPU_INTERVAL).

`c=`*minutes* Automatic periodic checkpointing shall be performed every *minutes* of CPU time, or every *Minimum_Cpu_Interval* minutes, whichever is greater. The *minutes* argument shall conform to the syntax for unsigned integers and shall be greater than zero.

The *qsub* utility shall set the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *interval* option-argument.

If the **–c** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Checkpoint* attribute of the batch job to the single character 'u' (CHECKPOINT_UNSPECIFIED).

–C *directive_prefix*

Define the prefix that declares a directive to the *qsub* utility within the script.

The *directive_prefix* is not a batch job attribute; it affects the behavior of the *qsub* utility.

If the **–C** option is presented to the *qsub* utility, and the value of the *directive_prefix* option-argument is the null string, the utility shall not scan the script file for directives. If the **–C** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, then the value of the *PBS_DPREFIX* environment variable is used. If the environment variable is not defined, then #PBS encoded in the portable character set is the default.

–e *path_name*

Define the path to be used for the standard error stream of the batch job.

The *qsub* utility shall accept a *path_name* option-argument which can be preceded by a host name element of the form *hostname*:.

If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes an absolute pathname, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *path_name* option-argument.

If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and no host name element is specified, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job to the value of the absolute pathname derived by expanding the *path_name* option-argument relative to the current directory of the process executing *qsub*.

If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and a host name element is specified, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *path_name* option-argument without expansion. The host name element shall be included.

If the *path_name* option-argument does not include a host name element, the *qsub* utility shall prefix the pathname with *hostname*:, where *hostname* is the name of the host upon which the *qsub* utility is being executed.

If the **–e** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Error_Path* attribute of the batch job to the host name and path of the current directory of the submitting process and the default filename.

The default filename for standard error has the following format:

job_name`.e`*sequence_number*

–h Specify that a USER hold is applied to the batch job.

The *qsub* utility shall set the value of the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job to the value USER.

If the **–h** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Hold_Types* attribute of the batch job to the value NO_HOLD.

–j *join_list* Define which streams of the batch job are to be merged. The *qsub* **–j** option shall accept a value for the *join_list* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set).

The *qsub* utility shall accept a *join_list* option-argument that consists of one or more

of the characters 'e' and 'o', or the single character 'n'.

All of the other batch job output streams specified will be merged into the output stream represented by the character listed first in the *join_list* option-argument.

For each unique character in the *join_list* option-argument, the *qsub* utility shall add a value to the *Join_Path* attribute of the batch job as follows, each representing a different batch job stream to join:

e The standard error of the batch job (JOIN_STD_ERROR).

o The standard output of the batch job (JOIN_STD_OUTPUT).

An existing *Join_Path* attribute can be cleared by the following join type:

n NO_JOIN

If 'n' is specified, then no files are joined. The *qsub* utility shall consider it an error if any join type other than 'n' is combined with join type 'n'.

Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters 'e', 'o', or 'n' within the *join_list* option-argument. The *qsub* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated characters.

An implementation may define other join types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional batch job streams, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

If the **–j** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the value of the *Join_Path* attribute of the batch job to NO_JOIN.

–k *keep_list* Define which output of the batch job to retain on the execution host.

The *qsub* **–k** option shall accept a value for the *keep_list* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set).

The *qsub* utility shall accept a *keep_list* option-argument that consists of one or more of the characters 'e' and 'o', or the single character 'n'.

For each unique character in the *keep_list* option-argument, the *qsub* utility shall add a value to the *Keep_Files* attribute of the batch job as follows, each representing a different batch job stream to keep:

e The standard error of the batch job (KEEP_STD_ERROR).

o The standard output of the batch job (KEEP_STD_OUTPUT).

If both 'e' and 'o' are specified, then both files are retained. An existing *Keep_Files* attribute can be cleared by the following keep type:

n NO_KEEP

If 'n' is specified, then no files are retained. The *qsub* utility shall consider it an error if any keep type other than 'n' is combined with keep type 'n'.

Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters 'e', 'o', or 'n' within the *keep_list* option-argument. The *qsub* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated characters.

An implementation may define other keep types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional keep types, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility. If

the –**k** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Keep_Files* attribute of the batch job to the value NO_KEEP.

–**m** *mail_options*

Define the points in the execution of the batch job at which the batch server that manages the batch job shall send mail about a change in the state of the batch job.

The *qsub* –**m** option shall accept a value for the *mail_options* option-argument that is a string of alphanumeric characters in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set).

The *qsub* utility shall accept a value for the *mail_options* option-argument that is a string of one or more of the characters `'e'`, `'b'`, and `'a'`, or the single character `'n'`.

For each unique character in the *mail_options* option-argument, the *qsub* utility shall add a value to the *Mail_Users* attribute of the batch job as follows, each representing a different time during the life of a batch job at which to send mail:

`e` MAIL_AT_EXIT

`b` MAIL_AT_BEGINNING

`a` MAIL_AT_ABORT

If any of these characters are duplicated in the *mail_options* option-argument, the duplicates shall be ignored.

An existing *Mail_Points* attribute can be cleared by the following mail type:

`n` NO_MAIL

If `'n'` is specified, then mail is not sent. The *qsub* utility shall consider it an error if any mail type other than `'n'` is combined with mail type `'n'`.

Strictly conforming applications shall not repeat any of the characters `'e'`, `'b'`, `'a'`, or `'n'` within the *mail_options* option-argument.

The *qsub* utility shall permit the repetition of characters, but shall not assign additional meaning to the repeated characters. An implementation may define other mail types. The conformance document for an implementation shall describe any additional mail types, how they are specified, their internal behavior, and how they affect the behavior of the utility.

If the –**m** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Mail_Points* attribute to the value MAIL_AT_ABORT.

–**M** *mail_list* Define the list of users to which a batch server that executes the batch job shall send mail, if the server sends mail about the batch job.

The syntax of the *mail_list* option-argument is unspecified.

If the implementation of the *qsub* utility uses a name service to locate users, the utility should accept the syntax used by the name service.

If the implementation of the *qsub* utility does not use a name service to locate users, the implementation should accept the following syntax for user names:

***mail_address*[,,*mail_address*,, ...]**

The interpretation of *mail_address* is implementation-defined.

The *qsub* utility shall set the *Mail_Users* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *mail_list* option-argument.

If the **–M** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall place only the user name and host name for the current process in the *Mail_Users* attribute of the batch job.

–N *name* Define the name of the batch job.

The *qsub* **–N** option shall accept a value for the *name* option-argument that is a string of up to 15 alphanumeric characters in the portable character set (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 6.1, Portable Character Set) where the first character is alphabetic.

The *qsub* utility shall set the value of the *Job_Name* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *name* option-argument.

If the **–N** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Job_Name* attribute of the batch job to the name of the *script* argument from which the directory specification if any, has been removed.

If the **–N** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, and the script is read from standard input, the utility shall set the *Job_Name* attribute of the batch job to the value STDIN.

–o *path_name*

Define the path for the standard output of the batch job.

The *qsub* utility shall accept a *path_name* option-argument that conforms to the syntax of the *path_name* element defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, which can be preceded by a host name element of the form *hostname*:.

If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes an absolute pathname, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *path_name* option-argument without expansion.

If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and no host name element is specified, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job to the pathname derived by expanding the value of the *path_name* option-argument relative to the current directory of the process executing the *qsub*.

If the *path_name* option-argument constitutes a relative pathname and a host name element is specified, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *path_name* option-argument without expansion.

If the *path_name* option-argument does not specify a host name element, the *qsub* utility shall prefix the pathname with *hostname*:, where *hostname* is the name of the host upon which the *qsub* utility is executing.

If the **–o** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Output_Path* attribute of the batch job to the host name and path of the current directory of the submitting process and the default filename.

The default filename for standard output has the following format:

job_name`.o`*sequence_number*

–p *priority* Define the priority the batch job should have relative to other batch jobs owned by the batch server.

The *qsub* utility shall set the *Priority* attribute of the batch job to the value of the *priority* option-argument.

If the **–p** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the value of the *Priority* attribute is implementation-defined.

The *qsub* utility shall accept a value for the *priority* option-argument that conforms to the syntax for signed decimal integers, and which is not less than –1 024 and not greater than 1 023.

–q *destination*

Define the destination of the batch job.

The destination is not a batch job attribute; it determines the batch server, and possibly the batch queue, to which the *qsub* utility batch queues the batch job.

The *qsub* utility shall submit the script to the batch server named by the *destination* option-argument or the server that owns the batch queue named in the *destination* option-argument.

The *qsub* utility shall accept an option-argument for the **–q** option that conforms to the syntax for a destination (see Section 3.3.2 (on page 123)).

If the **–q** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the *qsub* utility shall submit the batch job to the default destination. The mechanism for determining the default destination is implementation-defined.

–r *y* | *n* Define whether the batch job is rerunnable.

If the value of the option-argument is *y*, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Rerunable* attribute of the batch job to TRUE.

If the value of the option-argument is *n*, the *qsub* utility shall set the *Rerunable* attribute of the batch job to FALSE.

If the **–r** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Rerunable* attribute of the batch job to TRUE.

–S *path_name_list*

Define the pathname to the shell under which the batch job is to execute.

The *qsub* utility shall accept a *path_name_list* option-argument that conforms to the following syntax:

```
pathname[@host][,,pathname[@host],, ...]
```

The *qsub* utility shall allow only one pathname for a given host name. The *qsub* utility shall allow only one pathname that is missing a corresponding host name.

The *qsub* utility shall add a value to the *Shell_Path_List* attribute of the batch job for each entry in the *path_name_list* option-argument.

If the **–S** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *Shell_Path_List* attribute of the batch job to the null string.

The conformance document for an implementation shall describe the mechanism used to set the default shell and determine the current value of the default shell. An implementation shall provide a means for the installation to set the default shell to the login shell of the user under which the batch job is to execute. See Section 3.3.3 for a means of removing *keyword=value* (and *value@keyword*) pairs and other general rules for list-oriented batch job attributes.

–u *user_list* Define the user name under which the batch job is to execute.

The *qsub* utility shall accept a *user_list* option-argument that conforms to the following syntax:

```
username[@host][,,username[@host],, ...]
```

The *qsub* utility shall accept only one user name that is missing a corresponding

host name. The *qsub* utility shall accept only one user name per named host.

The *qsub* utility shall add a value to the *User_List* attribute of the batch job for each entry in the *user_list* option-argument.

If the **–u** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall set the *User_List* attribute of the batch job to the user name from which the utility is executing. See Section 3.3.3 for a means of removing *keyword=value* (and *value@keyword*) pairs and other general rules for list-oriented batch job attributes.

–v *variable_list*

Add to the list of variables that are exported to the session leader of the batch job.

A *variable_list* is a set of strings of either the form <*variable*> or <*variable=value*>, delimited by commas.

If the **–v** option is presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall also add, to the environment *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job, every variable named in the environment *variable_list* option-argument and, optionally, values of specified variables.

If a value is not provided on the command line, the *qsub* utility shall set the value of each variable in the environment *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job to the value of the corresponding environment variable for the process in which the utility is executing; see Table 4-18 (on page 808).

A conforming application shall not repeat a variable in the environment *variable_list* option-argument.

The *qsub* utility shall not repeat a variable in the environment *Variable_List* attribute of the batch job. See Section 3.3.3 for a means of removing *keyword=value* (and *value@keyword*) pairs and other general rules for list-oriented batch job attributes.

–V Specify that all of the environment variables of the process are exported to the context of the batch job.

The *qsub* utility shall place every environment variable in the process in which the utility is executing in the list and shall set the value of each variable in the attribute to the value of that variable in the process.

–z Specify that the utility does not write the batch *job_identifier* of the created batch job to standard output.

If the **–z** option is presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall not write the batch *job_identifier* of the created batch job to standard output.

If the **–z** option is not presented to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall write the identifier of the created batch job to standard output.

OPERANDS

The *qsub* utility shall accept a *script* operand that indicates the path to the script of the batch job.

If the *script* operand is not presented to the *qsub* utility, or if the operand is the single-character string `'–'`, the utility shall read the script from standard input.

If the script represents a partial path, the *qsub* utility shall expand the path relative to the current directory of the process executing the utility.

STDIN

The *qsub* utility reads the script of the batch job from standard input if the script operand is omitted or is the single character `'–'`.

INPUT FILES

In addition to binding the file indicated by the *script* operand to the batch job, the *qsub* utility reads the script file and acts on directives in the script.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *qsub*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

LOGNAME Determine the login name of the user.

PBS_DPREFIX
Determine the default prefix for directives within the script.

SHELL Determine the pathname of the preferred command language interpreter of the user.

TZ Determine the timezone used to interpret the *date-time* option-argument. If *TZ* is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Once created, a batch job exists until it exits, aborts, or is deleted.

After a batch job is created by the *qsub* utility, batch servers might route, execute, modify, or delete the batch job.

STDOUT

The *qsub* utility writes the batch *job_identifier* assigned to the batch job to standard output, unless the **–z** option is specified.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

Script Preservation

The *qsub* utility shall make the script available to the server executing the batch job in such a way that the server executes the script as it exists at the time of submission.

The *qsub* utility can send a copy of the script to the server with the *Queue Job Request* or store a temporary copy of the script in a location specified to the server.

32213 **Option Specification**

32214 A script can contain directives to the *qsub* utility.

32215 The *qsub* utility shall scan the lines of the script for directives, skipping blank lines, until the first
32216 line that begins with a string other than the directive string; if directives occur on subsequent
32217 lines, the utility shall ignore those directives.

32218 Lines are separated by a <newline>. If the first line of the script begins with "#!" or a colon
32219 (':'), then it is skipped. The *qsub* utility shall process a line in the script as a directive if and
32220 only if the string of characters from the first non-white-space character on the line until the first
32221 <space> or <tab> on the line match the directive prefix. If a line in the script contains a directive
32222 and the final characters of the line are backslash ('\') and <newline>, then the next line shall be
32223 interpreted as a continuation of that directive.

32224 The *qsub* utility shall process the options and option-arguments contained on the directive prefix
32225 line using the same syntax as if the options were input on the *qsub* utility.

32226 The *qsub* utility shall continue to process a directive prefix line until after a <newline> is
32227 encountered. An implementation may ignore lines which, according to the syntax of the shell
32228 that will interpret the script, are comments. An implementation shall describe in the
32229 conformance document the format of any shell comments that it will recognize.

32230 If an option is present in both a directive and the arguments to the *qsub* utility, the utility shall
32231 ignore the option and the corresponding option-argument, if any, in the directive.

32232 If an option that is present in the directive is not present in the arguments to the *qsub* utility, the
32233 utility shall process the option and the option-argument, if any.

32234 In order of preference, the *qsub* utility shall select the directive prefix from one of the following
32235 sources:

32236 • If the **–C** option is presented to the utility, the value of the *directive_prefix* option-argument

32237 • If the environment variable *PBS_DPREFIX* is defined, the value of that variable

32238 • The four-character string "#PBS" encoded in the portable character set

32239 If the **–C** option is present in the script file it shall be ignored.

32240 **EXIT STATUS**

32241 The following exit values shall be returned:

32242 0 Successful completion.

32243 >0 An error occurred.

32244 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

32245 Default.

32246 **APPLICATION USAGE**

32247 None.

32248 **EXAMPLES**

32249 None.

32250 **RATIONALE**

32251 The *qsub* utility allows users to create a batch job that will process the script specified as the
32252 operand of the utility.

32253 The options of the *qsub* utility allow users to control many aspects of the queuing and execution
32254 of a batch job.

32255 The **–a** option allows users to designate the time after which the batch job will become eligible to
32256 run. By specifying an execution time, users can take advantage of resources at off-peak hours,

synchronize jobs with chronologically predictable events, and perhaps take advantage of off-peak pricing of computing time. For these reasons and others, a timing option is existing practice on the part of almost every batch system, including NQS.

The **–A** option allows users to specify the account that will be charged for the batch job. Support for account is not mandatory for conforming batch servers.

The **–C** option allows users to prescribe the prefix for directives within the script file. The default prefix `"#PBS"` may be inappropriate if the script will be interpreted with an alternate shell, as specified by the **–S** option.

The **–c** option allows users to establish the checkpointing interval for their jobs. A checkpointing system, which is not defined by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, allows recovery of a batch job at the most recent checkpoint in the event of a crash. Checkpointing is typically used for jobs that consume expensive computing time or must meet a critical schedule. Users should be allowed to make the tradeoff between the overhead of checkpointing and the risk to the timely completion of the batch job; therefore, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x provides the checkpointing interval option. Support for checkpointing is optional for batch servers.

The **–e** option allows users to redirect the standard error streams of their jobs to a non-default path. For example, if the submitted script generally produces a great deal of useless error output, a user might redirect the standard error output to the null device. Or, if the file system holding the default location (the home directory of the user) has too little free space, the user might redirect the standard error stream to a file in another file system.

The **–h** option allows users to create a batch job that is held until explicitly released. The ability to create a held job is useful when some external event must complete before the batch job can execute. For example, the user might submit a held job and release it when the system load has dropped.

The **–j** option allows users to merge the standard error of a batch job into its standard output stream, which has the advantage of showing the sequential relationship between output and error messages.

The **–m** option allows users to designate those points in the execution of a batch job at which mail will be sent to the submitting user, or to the account(s) indicated by the **–M** option. By requesting mail notification at points of interest in the life of a job, the submitting user, or other designated users, can track the progress of a batch job.

The **–N** option allows users to associate a name with the batch job. The job name in no way affects the processing of the batch job, but rather serves as a mnemonic handle for users. For example, the batch job name can help the user distinguish between multiple jobs listed by the *qstat* utility.

The **–o** option allows users to redirect the standard output stream. A user might, for example, wish to redirect to the null device the standard output stream of a job that produces copious yet superfluous output.

The **–P** option allows users to designate the relative priority of a batch job for selection from a queue.

The **–q** option allows users to specify an initial queue for the batch job. If the user specifies a routing queue, the batch server routes the batch job to another queue for execution or further routing. If the user specifies a non-routing queue, the batch server of the queue eventually executes the batch job.

The **–r** option allows users to control whether the submitted job will be rerun if the controlling batch node fails during execution of the batch job. The **–r** option likewise allows users to indicate whether or not the batch job is eligible to be rerun by the *qrerun* utility. Some jobs cannot be correctly rerun because of changes they make in the state of databases or other aspects of

their environment. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies that the default, if the **–r** option is not presented to the utility, will be that the batch job cannot be rerun, since the result of rerunning a non-rerunnable job might be catastrophic.

The **–S** option allows users to specify the program (usually a shell) that will be invoked to process the script of the batch job. This option has been modified to allow a list of shell names and locations associated with different hosts.

The **–u** option is useful when the submitting user is authorized to use more than one account on a given host, in which case the **–u** option allows the user to select from among those accounts. The option-argument is a list of user-host pairs, so that the submitting user can provide different user identifiers for different nodes in the event the batch job is routed. The **–u** option provides a lot of flexibility to accommodate sites with complex account structures. Users that have the same user identifier on all the hosts they are authorized to use will not need to use the **–u** option.

The **–V** option allows users to export all their current environment variables, as of the time the batch job is submitted, to the context of the processes of the batch job.

The **–v** option allows users to export specific environment variables from their current process to the processes of the batch job.

The **–z** option allows users to suppress the writing of the batch job identifier to standard output. The **–z** option is an existing NQS practice that has been standardized.

Historically, the *qsub* utility has served the batch job-submission function in the NQS system, the existing practice on which it is based. Some changes and additions have been made to the *qsub* utility in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *vis-a-vis* NQS, as a result of the growing pool of experience with distributed batch systems.

The set of features of the *qsub* utility as defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x appears to incorporate all the common existing practice on potentially conforming platforms.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The *qsub* utility may be removed in a future version.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 3 (on page 101), *qrerun*, *qstat*, *touch*

CHANGE HISTORY

Derived from IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994.

Issue 6

The **–l** option has been removed as there is no portable description of the resources that are allowed or required by the batch job.

Issue 7

The *qsub* utility is marked obsolescent.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

32341 **NAME**

32342 read — read a line from standard input

32343 **SYNOPSIS**

32344 `read [–r] var...`

32345 **DESCRIPTION**

32346 The *read* utility shall read a single line from standard input.

32347 By default, unless the **–r** option is specified, backslash (`'\'`) shall act as an escape character, as
32348 described in Section 2.2.1 (on page 30). If standard input is a terminal device and the invoking
32349 shell is interactive, *read* shall prompt for a continuation line when:

32350 • The shell reads an input line ending with a backslash <newline>, unless the **–r** option is
32351 specified.

32352 • A here-document is not terminated after a <newline> is entered.

32353 The terminating <newline> (if any) shall be removed from the input and the results shall be split
32354 into fields as in the shell for the results of parameter expansion (see Section 2.6.5 (on page 42));
32355 the first field shall be assigned to the first variable *var*, the second field to the second variable
32356 *var*, and so on. If there are fewer fields than there are *var* operands, the remaining *var*s shall be
32357 set to empty strings. If there are fewer *var*s than fields, the last *var* shall be set to a value
32358 comprising the following elements:

32359 • The field that corresponds to the last *var* in the normal assignment sequence described
32360 above

32361 • The delimiter(s) that follow the field corresponding to the last *var*

32362 • The remaining fields and their delimiters, with trailing *IFS* white space ignored

32363 The setting of variables specified by the *var* operands shall affect the current shell execution
32364 environment; see Section 2.12 (on page 61). If it is called in a subshell or separate utility
32365 execution environment, such as one of the following:

32366 ```
(read foo)
32367 nohup read ...
32368 find . –exec read ... \;
```

32369 it shall not affect the shell variables in the caller's environment.

32370 **OPTIONS**

32371 The *read* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
32372 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

32373 The following option is supported:

32374 **–r** Do not treat a backslash character in any special way. Consider each backslash to
32375 be part of the input line.

32376 **OPERANDS**

32377 The following operand shall be supported:

32378 *var* The name of an existing or nonexisting shell variable.

32379 **STDIN**

32380 The standard input shall be a text file.

  
```

32381 **INPUT FILES**
32382 None.

32383 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**
32384 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *read*:

32385 32386 *IFS* Determine the internal field separators used to delimit fields; see Section 2.5.3 (on page 34).

32387 32388 32389 32390 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

32391 32392 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

32393 32394 32395 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

32396 32397 32398 *LC_MESSAGES*
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

32399 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

32400 32401 32402 *PS2* Provide the prompt string that an interactive shell shall write to standard error when a line ending with a backslash <newline> is read and the **−r** option was not specified, or if a here-document is not terminated after a <newline> is entered.

32403 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
32404 Default.

32405 **STDOUT**
32406 Not used.

32407 **STDERR**
32408 The standard error shall be used for diagnostic messages and prompts for continued input.

32409 **OUTPUT FILES**
32410 None.

32411 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
32412 None.

32413 **EXIT STATUS**
32414 The following exit values shall be returned:

32415 0 Successful completion.

32416 >0 End-of-file was detected or an error occurred.

32417 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
32418 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **−r** option is included to enable *read* to subsume the purpose of the *line* utility, which is not included in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

EXAMPLES

The following command:

```
while read −r xx yy
do
    printf "%s %s\n" "$yy" "$xx"
done < input_file
```

prints a file with the first field of each line moved to the end of the line.

RATIONALE

The *read* utility historically has been a shell built-in. It was separated off into its own utility to take advantage of the richer description of functionality introduced by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Since *read* affects the current shell execution environment, it is generally provided as a shell regular built-in. If it is called in a subshell or separate utility execution environment, such as one of the following:

```
(read foo)
nohup read ...
find . −exec read ... \;
```

it does not affect the shell variables in the environment of the caller.

Although the standard input is required to be a text file, and therefore will always end with a <newline> (unless it is an empty file), the processing of continuation lines when the **−r** option is not used can result in the input not ending with a <newline>. This occurs if the last line of the input file ends with backslash <newline>. It is for this reason that "if any" is used in "The terminating <newline> (if any) shall be removed from the input" in the description. It is not a relaxation of the requirement for standard input to be a text file.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-126 is applied, clarifying that input lines end with a <newline>.

NAME

renice — set nice values of running processes

SYNOPSIS

```
renice –n increment [–g|–p|–u] ID...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *renice* utility shall request that the nice values (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.239, Nice Value) of one or more running processes be changed. By default, the applicable processes are specified by their process IDs. When a process group is specified (see **–g**), the request shall apply to all processes in the process group.

The nice value shall be bounded in an implementation-defined manner. If the requested *increment* would raise or lower the nice value of the executed utility beyond implementation-defined limits, then the limit whose value was exceeded shall be used.

When a user is *renice*d, the request applies to all processes whose saved set-user-ID matches the user ID corresponding to the user.

Regardless of which options are supplied or any other factor, *renice* shall not alter the nice values of any process unless the user requesting such a change has appropriate privileges to do so for the specified process. If the user lacks appropriate privileges to perform the requested action, the utility shall return an error status.

The saved set-user-ID of the user's process shall be checked instead of its effective user ID when *renice* attempts to determine the user ID of the process in order to determine whether the user has appropriate privileges.

OPTIONS

The *renice* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for Guideline 9.

The following options shall be supported:

–g Interpret the following operands as unsigned decimal integer process group IDs.

–n *increment* Specify how the nice value of the specified process or processes is to be adjusted. The *increment* option-argument is a positive or negative decimal integer that shall be used to modify the nice value of the specified process or processes.

Positive *increment* values shall cause a lower nice value. Negative *increment* values may require appropriate privileges and shall cause a higher nice value.

–p Interpret the following operands as unsigned decimal integer process IDs. The **–p** option is the default if no options are specified.

–u Interpret the following operands as users. If a user exists with a user name equal to the operand, then the user ID of that user is used in further processing. Otherwise, if the operand represents an unsigned decimal integer, it shall be used as the numeric user ID of the user.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

ID A process ID, process group ID, or user name/user ID, depending on the option selected.

32495 **STDIN**

32496 Not used.

32497 **INPUT FILES**

32498 None.

32499 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

32500 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *renice*:

32501 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
32502 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
32503 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
32504 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

32505 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
32506 internationalization variables.

32507 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
32508 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
32509 arguments).

32510 *LC_MESSAGES*
32511 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
32512 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

32513 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

32514 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

32515 Default.

32516 **STDOUT**

32517 Not used.

32518 **STDERR**

32519 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

32520 **OUTPUT FILES**

32521 None.

32522 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

32523 None.

32524 **EXIT STATUS**

32525 The following exit values shall be returned:

32526 0 Successful completion.

32527 >0 An error occurred.

32528 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

32529 Default.

32530 **APPLICATION USAGE**

32531 None.

32532 **EXAMPLES**

32533 1. Adjust the nice value so that process IDs 987 and 32 would have a lower nice value:

32534 `renice –n 5 –p 987 32`

32535 2. Adjust the nice value so that group IDs 324 and 76 would have a higher nice value, if the
32536 user has the appropriate privileges to do so:

32537 `renice –n –4 –g 324 76`

3. Adjust the nice value so that numeric user ID 8 and user **sas** would have a lower nice value:

```
renice –n 4 –u 8 sas
```

Useful nice value increments on historical systems include 19 or 20 (the affected processes run only when nothing else in the system attempts to run) and any negative number (to make processes run faster).

RATIONALE

The *gid*, *pid*, and *user* specifications do not fit either the definition of operand or option-argument. However, for clarity, they have been included in the OPTIONS section, rather than the OPERANDS section.

The definition of nice value is not intended to suggest that all processes in a system have priorities that are comparable. Scheduling policy extensions such as the realtime priorities in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x make the notion of a single underlying priority for all scheduling policies problematic. Some implementations may implement the *nice*-related features to affect all processes on the system, others to affect just the general time-sharing activities implied by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, and others may have no effect at all. Because of the use of "implementation-defined" in *nice* and *renice*, a wide range of implementation strategies are possible.

Originally, this utility was written in the historical manner, using the term "nice value". This was always a point of concern with users because it was never intuitively obvious what this meant. With a newer version of *renice*, which used the term "system scheduling priority", it was hoped that novice users could better understand what this utility was meant to do. Also, it would be easier to document what the utility was meant to do. Unfortunately, the addition of the POSIX realtime scheduling capabilities introduced the concepts of process and thread scheduling priorities that were totally unaffected by the *nice*/*renice* utilities or the *nice*()/*setpriority*() functions. Continuing to use the term "system scheduling priority" would have incorrectly suggested that these utilities and functions were indeed affecting these realtime priorities. It was decided to revert to the historical term "nice value" to reference this unrelated process attribute.

Although this utility has use by system administrators (and in fact appears in the system administration portion of the BSD documentation), the standard developers considered that it was very useful for individual end users to control their own processes.

Earlier versions of this standard allowed the following forms in the SYNOPSIS:

```
renice nice_value[–p] pid...[–g gid...][–p pid...][–u user...]
renice nice_value –g gid...[–g gid...]–p pid...][–u user...]
renice nice_value –u user...[–g gid...]–p pid...][–u user...]
```

These forma are no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

nice

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 5

In the SYNOPSIS, an ellipsis is added to the **–u** option in all three obsolescent forms.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

The obsolescent forms of the SYNOPSIS are removed.

Text previously conditional on POSIX_SAVED_IDS is mandatory in this issue. This is a FIPS requirement.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply.

The *renice* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

rm — remove directory entries

SYNOPSIS

```
rm [–fiRr] file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *rm* utility shall remove the directory entry specified by each *file* argument.

If either of the files dot or dot-dot are specified as the basename portion of an operand (that is, the final pathname component) or if an operand resolves to the root directory, *rm* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error and do nothing more with such operands.

For each *file* the following steps shall be taken:

1. If the *file* does not exist:
   a. If the **–f** option is not specified, *rm* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error.
   b. Go on to any remaining *files*.
2. If *file* is of type directory, the following steps shall be taken:
   a. If neither the **–R** option nor the **–r** option is specified, *rm* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with *file*, and go on to any remaining files.
   b. If the **–f** option is not specified, and either the permissions of *file* do not permit writing and the standard input is a terminal or the **–i** option is specified, *rm* shall write a prompt to standard error and read a line from the standard input. If the response is not affirmative, *rm* shall do nothing more with the current file and go on to any remaining files.
   c. For each entry contained in *file*, other than dot or dot-dot, the four steps listed here (1 to 4) shall be taken with the entry as if it were a *file* operand. The *rm* utility shall not traverse directories by following symbolic links into other parts of the hierarchy, but shall remove the links themselves.
   d. If the **–i** option is specified, *rm* shall write a prompt to standard error and read a line from the standard input. If the response is not affirmative, *rm* shall do nothing more with the current file, and go on to any remaining files.
3. If *file* is not of type directory, the **–f** option is not specified, and either the permissions of *file* do not permit writing and the standard input is a terminal or the **–i** option is specified, *rm* shall write a prompt to the standard error and read a line from the standard input. If the response is not affirmative, *rm* shall do nothing more with the current file and go on to any remaining files.
4. If the current file is a directory, *rm* shall perform actions equivalent to the *rmdir*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x called with a pathname of the current file used as the *path* argument. If the current file is not a directory, *rm* shall perform actions equivalent to the *unlink*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x called with a pathname of the current file used as the *path* argument.

   If this fails for any reason, *rm* shall write a diagnostic message to standard error, do nothing more with the current file, and go on to any remaining files.

The *rm* utility shall be able to descend to arbitrary depths in a file hierarchy, and shall not fail

due to path length limitations (unless an operand specified by the user exceeds system limitations).

OPTIONS

The *rm* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–f Do not prompt for confirmation. Do not write diagnostic messages or modify the exit status in the case of nonexistent operands. Any previous occurrences of the **–i** option shall be ignored.

–i Prompt for confirmation as described previously. Any previous occurrences of the **–f** option shall be ignored.

–R Remove file hierarchies. See the DESCRIPTION.

–r Equivalent to **–R**.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a directory entry to be removed.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used to read an input line in response to each prompt specified in the STDOUT section. Otherwise, the standard input shall not be used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *rm*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements used in the extended regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments) and the behavior of character classes within regular expressions used in the extended regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale for the processing of affirmative responses that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

32683 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

32684 Default.

32685 **STDOUT**

32686 Not used.

32687 **STDERR**

32688 Prompts shall be written to standard error under the conditions specified in the DESCRIPTION
32689 and OPTIONS sections. The prompts shall contain the *file* pathname, but their format is
32690 otherwise unspecified. The standard error also shall be used for diagnostic messages.

32691 **OUTPUT FILES**

32692 None.

32693 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

32694 None.

32695 **EXIT STATUS**

32696 The following exit values shall be returned:

32697 0 Each directory entry was successfully removed, unless its removal was canceled by a non-
32698 affirmative response to a prompt for confirmation.

32699 >0 An error occurred.

32700 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

32701 Default.

32702 **APPLICATION USAGE**

32703 The *rm* utility is forbidden to remove the names dot and dot-dot in order to avoid the
32704 consequences of inadvertently doing something like:

32705 ```
rm –r .*
```

32706 Some implementations do not permit the removal of the last link to an executable binary file that
32707 is being executed; see the [EBUSY] error in the *unlink*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces
32708 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Thus, the *rm* utility can fail to remove such files.

32709 The **–i** option causes *rm* to prompt and read the standard input even if the standard input is not
32710 a terminal, but in the absence of **–i** the mode prompting is not done when the standard input is
32711 not a terminal.

32712 **EXAMPLES**

32713 1. The following command:

32714 ```
rm a.out core
```

32715 removes the directory entries: **a.out** and **core**.

32716 2. The following command:

32717 ```
rm –Rf junk
```

32718 removes the directory **junk** and all its contents, without prompting.

32719 **RATIONALE**

32720 For absolute clarity, paragraphs (2b) and (3) in the DESCRIPTION of *rm* describing the behavior
32721 when prompting for confirmation, should be interpreted in the following manner:

32722 ```
if ((NOT f_option) AND
32723     ((not_writable AND input_is_terminal) OR i_option))
```

32724 The exact format of the interactive prompts is unspecified. Only the general nature of the
32725 contents of prompts are specified because implementations may desire more descriptive

prompts than those used on historical implementations. Therefore, an application not using the **–f** option, or using the **–i** option, relies on the system to provide the most suitable dialog directly with the user, based on the behavior specified.

The **–r** option is historical practice on all known systems. The synonym **–R** option is provided for consistency with the other utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that provide options requesting recursive descent through the file hierarchy.

The behavior of the **–f** option in historical versions of *rm* is inconsistent. In general, along with "forcing" the unlink without prompting for permission, it always causes diagnostic messages to be suppressed and the exit status to be unmodified for nonexistent operands and files that cannot be unlinked. In some versions, however, the **–f** option suppresses usage messages and system errors as well. Suppressing such messages is not a service to either shell scripts or users.

It is less clear that error messages regarding files that cannot be unlinked (removed) should be suppressed. Although this is historical practice, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit the **–f** option to suppress such messages.

When given the **–r** and **–i** options, historical versions of *rm* prompt the user twice for each directory, once before removing its contents and once before actually attempting to delete the directory entry that names it. This allows the user to "prune" the file hierarchy walk. Historical versions of *rm* were inconsistent in that some did not do the former prompt for directories named on the command line and others had obscure prompting behavior when the **–i** option was specified and the permissions of the file did not permit writing. The POSIX Shell and Utilities *rm* differs little from historic practice, but does require that prompts be consistent. Historical versions of *rm* were also inconsistent in that prompts were done to both standard output and standard error. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that prompts be done to standard error, for consistency with *cp* and *mv*, and to allow historical extensions to *rm* that provide an option to list deleted files on standard output.

The *rm* utility is required to descend to arbitrary depths so that any file hierarchy may be deleted. This means, for example, that the *rm* utility cannot run out of file descriptors during its descent (that is, if the number of file descriptors is limited, *rm* cannot be implemented in the historical fashion where one file descriptor is used per directory level). Also, *rm* is not permitted to fail because of path length restrictions, unless an operand specified by the user is longer than {PATH_MAX}.

The *rm* utility removes symbolic links themselves, not the files they refer to, as a consequence of the dependence on the *unlink*( ) functionality, per the DESCRIPTION. When removing hierarchies with **–r** or **–R**, the prohibition on following symbolic links has to be made explicit.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

rmdir, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *remove*( ), *rmdir*( ), *unlink*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

Text is added to clarify actions relating to symbolic links as specified in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretations 1003.1-2001 #019 and #091 are applied.

NAME

rmdel — remove a delta from an SCCS file (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
rmdel –r SID file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *rmdel* utility shall remove the delta specified by the SID from each named SCCS file. The delta to be removed shall be the most recent delta in its branch in the delta chain of each named SCCS file. In addition, the application shall ensure that the SID specified is not that of a version being edited for the purpose of making a delta; that is, if a *p-file* (see *get*) exists for the named SCCS file, the SID specified shall not appear in any entry of the *p-file*.

Removal of a delta shall be restricted to:

1. The user who made the delta
2. The owner of the SCCS file
3. The owner of the directory containing the SCCS file

OPTIONS

The *rmdel* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–r *SID* Specify the SCCS identification string (*SID*) of the delta to be deleted.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of an existing SCCS file or a directory. If *file* is a directory, the *rmdel* utility shall behave as though each file in the directory were specified as a named file, except that non-SCCS files (last component of the pathname does not begin with **s.**) and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

If exactly one *file* operand appears, and it is `'–'`, the standard input shall be read; each line of the standard input is taken to be the name of an SCCS file to be processed. Non-SCCS files and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file used only when the *file* operand is specified as `'–'`. Each line of the text file shall be interpreted as an SCCS pathname.

INPUT FILES

The SCCS files shall be files of unspecified format.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *rmdel*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
Not used.

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
The SCCS files shall be files of unspecified format. During processing of a *file*, a temporary *x-file*, as described in *admin*, may be created and deleted; a locking *z-file*, as described in *get*, may be created and deleted.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
None.

EXAMPLES
None.

RATIONALE
None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS
None.

SEE ALSO
admin, *delta*, *get*, *prs*

CHANGE HISTORY
First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6
The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

NAME

rmdir — remove directories

SYNOPSIS

```
rmdir [–p] dir...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *rmdir* utility shall remove the directory entry specified by each *dir* operand.

For each *dir* operand, the *rmdir* utility shall perform actions equivalent to the *rmdir*( ) function called with the *dir* operand as its only argument.

Directories shall be processed in the order specified. If a directory and a subdirectory of that directory are specified in a single invocation of the *rmdir* utility, the application shall specify the subdirectory before the parent directory so that the parent directory will be empty when the *rmdir* utility tries to remove it.

OPTIONS

The *rmdir* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–p Remove all directories in a pathname. For each *dir* operand:

1. The directory entry it names shall be removed.
2. If the *dir* operand includes more than one pathname component, effects equivalent to the following command shall occur:

```
rmdir –p $(dirname dir)
```

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

dir A pathname of an empty directory to be removed.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *rmdir*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Each directory entry specified by a *dir* operand was removed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The definition of an empty directory is one that contains, at most, directory entries for dot and dot-dot.

EXAMPLES

If a directory **a** in the current directory is empty except it contains a directory **b** and **a/b** is empty except it contains a directory **c**:

```
rmdir –p a/b/c
```

removes all three directories.

RATIONALE

On historical System V systems, the **–p** option also caused a message to be written to the standard output. The message indicated whether the whole path was removed or whether part of the path remained for some reason. The STDERR section requires this diagnostic when the entire path specified by a *dir* operand is not removed, but does not allow the status message reporting success to be written as a diagnostic.

The *rmdir* utility on System V also included a **–s** option that suppressed the informational message output by the **–p** option. This option has been omitted because the informational message is not specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

rm, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *remove*( ), *rmdir*( ), *unlink*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

NAME

sact — print current SCCS file-editing activity (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI

```
sact file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *sact* utility shall inform the user of any impending deltas to a named SCCS file by writing a list to standard output. This situation occurs when *get* **–e** has been executed previously without a subsequent execution of *delta*, *unget*, or *sccs* **unedit**.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of an existing SCCS file or a directory. If *file* is a directory, the *sact* utility shall behave as though each file in the directory were specified as a named file, except that non-SCCS files (last component of the pathname does not begin with **s.**) and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

If exactly one *file* operand appears, and it is `'–'`, the standard input shall be read; each line of the standard input shall be taken to be the name of an SCCS file to be processed. Non-SCCS files and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file used only when the *file* operand is specified as `'–'`. Each line of the text file shall be interpreted as an SCCS pathname.

INPUT FILES

Any SCCS files interrogated are files of an unspecified format.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *sact*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

32976 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

32977 Default.

32978 **STDOUT**

32979 The output for each named file shall consist of a line in the following format:

32980 `"%sΔ%sΔ%sΔ%sΔ%s\n", <SID>, <new SID>, <login>, <date>, <time>`

32981 *<SID>* Specifies the SID of a delta that currently exists in the SCCS file to which changes
32982 are made to make the new delta.

32983 *<new SID>* Specifies the SID for the new delta to be created.

32984 *<login>* Contains the login name of the user who makes the delta (that is, who executed a
32985 *get* for editing).

32986 *<date>* Contains the date that *get* **−e** was executed, in the format used by the *prs* **:D:** data
32987 keyword.

32988 *<time>* Contains the time that *get* **−e** was executed, in the format used by the *prs* **:T:** data
32989 keyword.

32990 If there is more than one named file or if a directory or standard input is named, each pathname
32991 shall be written before each of the preceding lines:

32992 `"\n%s:\n", <pathname>`

32993 **STDERR**

32994 The standard error shall be used only for optional informative messages concerning SCCS files
32995 with no impending deltas, and for diagnostic messages.

32996 **OUTPUT FILES**

32997 None.

32998 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

32999 None.

33000 **EXIT STATUS**

33001 The following exit values shall be returned:

33002 0 Successful completion.

33003 >0 An error occurred.

33004 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

33005 Default.

33006 **APPLICATION USAGE**

33007 None.

33008 **EXAMPLES**

33009 None.

33010 **RATIONALE**

33011 None.

33012 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

33013 None.

33014 **SEE ALSO**

33015 *delta*, *get*, *sccs*, *unget*

33016 **CHANGE HISTORY**
33017 First released in Issue 2.

NAME

sccs — front end for the SCCS subsystem (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI

```
sccs [–r] [–d path] [–p path] command [options...] [operands...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *sccs* utility is a front end to the SCCS programs. It also includes the capability to run set-user-id to another user to provide additional protection.

The *sccs* utility shall invoke the specified *command* with the specified *options* and *operands*. By default, each of the *operands* shall be modified by prefixing it with the string `"SCCS/s."`.

The *command* can be the name of one of the SCCS utilities in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x (*admin*, *delta*, *get*, *prs*, *rmdel*, *sact*, *unget*, *val*, or *what*) or one of the pseudo-utilities listed in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

OPTIONS

The *sccs* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that *options* operands are actually options to be passed to the utility named by *command*. When the portion of the command:

```
command [options ... ] [operands ... ]
```

is considered, all of the pseudo-utilities used as *command* shall support the Utility Syntax Guidelines. Any of the other SCCS utilities that can be invoked in this manner support the Guidelines to the extent indicated by their individual OPTIONS sections.

The following options shall be supported preceding the *command* operand:

–d *path* A pathname of a directory to be used as a root directory for the SCCS files. The default shall be the current directory. The **–d** option shall take precedence over the *PROJECTDIR* variable. See **–p**.

–p *path* A pathname of a directory in which the SCCS files are located. The default shall be the **SCCS** directory.

The **–p** option differs from the **–d** option in that the **–d** option-argument shall be prefixed to the entire pathname and the **–p** option-argument shall be inserted before the final component of the pathname. For example:

```
sccs –d /x –p y get a/b
```

converts to:

```
get /x/a/y/s.b
```

This allows the creation of aliases such as:

```
alias syssccs="sccs –d /usr/src"
```

which is used as:

```
syssccs get cmd/who.c
```

–r Invoke *command* with the real user ID of the process, not any effective user ID that the *sccs* utility is set to. Certain commands (*admin*, **check**, **clean**, **diffs**, **info**, *rmdel*, and **tell**) cannot be run set-user-ID by all users, since this would allow anyone to change the authorizations. These commands are always run as the real user.

33058 **OPERANDS**

33059 The following operands shall be supported:

33060 33061 *command* An SCCS utility name or the name of one of the pseudo-utilities listed in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

33062 *options* An option or option-argument to be passed to *command*.

33063 *operands* An operand to be passed to *command*.

33064 **STDIN**

33065 See the utility description for the specified *command*.

33066 **INPUT FILES**

33067 See the utility description for the specified *command*.

33068 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

33069 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *sccs*:

33070 33071 33072 33073 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

33074 33075 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

33076 33077 33078 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

33079 33080 33081 *LC_MESSAGES* Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

33082 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

33083 33084 33085 33086 33087 33088 *PROJECTDIR* Provide a default value for the **−d** *path* option. If the value of *PROJECTDIR* begins with a slash, it shall be considered an absolute pathname; otherwise, the value of *PROJECTDIR* is treated as a user name and that user's initial working directory shall be examined for a subdirectory **src** or **source**. If such a directory is found, it shall be used. Otherwise, the value shall be used as a relative pathname.

33089 33090 Additional environment variable effects may be found in the utility description for the specified *command*.

33091 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

33092 Default.

33093 **STDOUT**

33094 See the utility description for the specified *command*.

33095 **STDERR**

33096 See the utility description for the specified *command*.

33097 **OUTPUT FILES**

33098 See the utility description for the specified *command*.

33099 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

33100 33101 The following pseudo-utilities shall be supported as *command* operands. All options referred to in the following list are values given in the *options* operands following *command*.

check Equivalent to **info**, except that nothing shall be printed if nothing is being edited, and a non-zero exit status shall be returned if anything is being edited. The intent is to have this included in an "install" entry in a makefile to ensure that everything is included into the SCCS file before a version is installed.

clean Remove everything from the current directory that can be recreated from SCCS files, but do not remove any files being edited. If the **–b** option is given, branches shall be ignored in the determination of whether they are being edited; this is dangerous if branches are kept in the same directory.

create Create an SCCS file, taking the initial contents from the file of the same name. Any options to *admin* are accepted. If the creation is successful, the original files shall be renamed by prefixing the basenames with a comma. These renamed files should be removed after it has been verified that the SCCS files have been created successfully.

delget Perform a *delta* on the named files and then *get* new versions. The new versions shall have ID keywords expanded and shall not be editable. Any **–m**, **–p**, **–r**, **–s**, and **–y** options shall be passed to *delta*, and any **–b**, **–c**, **–e**, **–i**, **–k**, **–l**, **–s**, and **–x** options shall be passed to *get*.

deledit Equivalent to **delget**, except that the *get* phase shall include the **–e** option. This option is useful for making a checkpoint of the current editing phase. The same options shall be passed to *delta* as described above, and all the options listed for *get* above except **–e** shall be passed to **edit**.

diffs Write a difference listing between the current version of the files checked out for editing and the versions in SCCS format. Any **–r**, **–c**, **–i**, **–x**, and **–t** options shall be passed to *get*; any **–l**, **–s**, **–e**, **–f**, **–h**, and **–b** options shall be passed to *diff*. A **–C** option shall be passed to *diff* as **–c**.

edit Equivalent to *get* **–e**.

fix Remove the named delta, but leave a copy of the delta with the changes that were in it. It is useful for fixing small compiler bugs, and so on. The application shall ensure that it is followed by a **–r** *SID* option. Since **fix** does not leave audit trails, it should be used carefully.

info Write a listing of all files being edited. If the **–b** option is given, branches (that is, SIDs with two or fewer components) shall be ignored. If a **–u** *user* option is given, then only files being edited by the named user shall be listed. A **–U** option shall be equivalent to **–u**<*current user*>.

print Write out verbose information about the named files, equivalent to *sccs prs*.

tell Write a <newline>-separated list of the files being edited to standard output. Takes the **–b**, **–u**, and **–U** options like **info** and **check**.

unedit This is the opposite of an **edit** or a *get* **–e**. It should be used with caution, since any changes made since the *get* are lost.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Many of the SCCS utilities take directory names as operands as well as specific filenames. The pseudo-utilities supported by *sccs* are not described as having this capability, but are not prohibited from doing so.

EXAMPLES

1. To get a file for editing, edit it and produce a new delta:

```
sccs get –e file.c
ex file.c
sccs delta file.c
```

2. To get a file from another directory:

```
sccs –p /usr/src/sccs/s. get cc.c
```

or:

```
sccs get /usr/src/sccs/s.cc.c
```

3. To make a delta of a large number of files in the current directory:

```
sccs delta *.c
```

4. To get a list of files being edited that are not on branches:

```
sccs info –b
```

5. To delta everything being edited by the current user:

```
sccs delta $(sccs tell –U)
```

6. In a makefile, to get source files from an SCCS file if it does not already exist:

```
SRCS = <list of source files>
$(SRCS):
    sccs get $(REL) $@
```

RATIONALE

sccs and its associated utilities are part of the XSI Development Utilities option within the XSI option.

SCCS is an abbreviation for Source Code Control System. It is a maintenance and enhancement tracking tool. When a file is put under SCCS, the source code control system maintains the file and, when changes are made, identifies and stores them in the file with the original source code and/or documentation. As other changes are made, they too are identified and retained in the file.

Retrieval of the original and any set of changes is possible. Any version of the file as it develops can be reconstructed for inspection or additional modification. History data can be stored with each version, documenting why the changes were made, who made them, and when they were made.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

admin, *delta*, *get*, *make*, *prs*, *rmdel*, *sact*, *unget*, *val*, *what*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

In the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section, the *PROJECTDIR* description is updated from "otherwise, the home directory of a user of that name is examined" to "otherwise, the value of *PROJECTDIR* is treated as a user name and that user's initial working directory is examined".

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

sed — stream editor

SYNOPSIS

```
sed [–n] script [file...]
sed –e script [–e script]... [–f script_file]... [–n] [file...]
sed [–e script]... –f script_file [–f script_file]... [–n] [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *sed* utility is a stream editor that shall read one or more text files, make editing changes according to a script of editing commands, and write the results to standard output. The script shall be obtained from either the *script* operand string or a combination of the option-arguments from the **–e** *script* and **–f** *script_file* options.

OPTIONS

The *sed* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the order of presentation of the **–e** and **–f** options is significant.

The following options shall be supported:

–e *script* Add the editing commands specified by the *script* option-argument to the end of the script of editing commands. The *script* option-argument shall have the same properties as the *script* operand, described in the OPERANDS section.

–f *script_file* Add the editing commands in the file *script_file* to the end of the script.

–n Suppress the default output (in which each line, after it is examined for editing, is written to standard output). Only lines explicitly selected for output are written.

Multiple **–e** and **–f** options may be specified. All commands shall be added to the script in the order specified, regardless of their origin.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file A pathname of a file whose contents are read and edited. If multiple *file* operands are specified, the named files shall be read in the order specified and the concatenation shall be edited. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input shall be used.

script A string to be used as the script of editing commands. The application shall not present a *script* that violates the restrictions of a text file except that the final character need not be a <newline>.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES section.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be text files. The *script_file*s named by the **–f** option shall consist of editing commands.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *sed*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements within regular expressions.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files), and the behavior of character classes within regular expressions.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The input files shall be written to standard output, with the editing commands specified in the script applied. If the **–n** option is specified, only those input lines selected by the script shall be written to standard output.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The output files shall be text files whose formats are dependent on the editing commands given.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

The *script* shall consist of editing commands of the following form:

[*address***[,***address***]]***function*

where *function* represents a single-character command verb from the list in Editing Commands in sed (on page 845), followed by any applicable arguments.

The command can be preceded by <blank>s and/or semicolons. The function can be preceded by <blank>s. These optional characters shall have no effect.

In default operation, *sed* cyclically shall append a line of input, less its terminating <newline>, into the pattern space. Normally the pattern space will be empty, unless a **D** command terminated the last cycle. The *sed* utility shall then apply in sequence all commands whose addresses select that pattern space, and at the end of the script copy the pattern space to standard output (except when **–n** is specified) and delete the pattern space. Whenever the pattern space is written to standard output or a named file, *sed* shall immediately follow it with a <newline>.

Some of the editing commands use a hold space to save all or part of the pattern space for subsequent retrieval. The pattern and hold spaces shall each be able to hold at least 8 192 bytes.

Addresses in sed

An address is either a decimal number that counts input lines cumulatively across files, a `'$'` character that addresses the last line of input, or a context address (which consists of a BRE, as described in Regular Expressions in sed (on page 845), preceded and followed by a delimiter, usually a slash).

An editing command with no addresses shall select every pattern space.

An editing command with one address shall select each pattern space that matches the address.

An editing command with two addresses shall select the inclusive range from the first pattern space that matches the first address through the next pattern space that matches the second. (If the second address is a number less than or equal to the line number first selected, only one line shall be selected.) Starting at the first line following the selected range, *sed* shall look again for the first address. Thereafter, the process shall be repeated. Omitting either or both of the address components in the following form produces undefined results:

[*address***[,***address***]]**

Regular Expressions in sed

The *sed* utility shall support the BREs described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 9.3, Basic Regular Expressions, with the following additions:

- In a context address, the construction `"\cBREc"`, where *c* is any character other than backslash or <newline>, shall be identical to `"/BRE/"`. If the character designated by *c* appears following a backslash, then it shall be considered to be that literal character, which shall not terminate the BRE. For example, in the context address `"\xabc\xdefx"`, the second *x* stands for itself, so that the BRE is `"abcxdef"`.
- The escape sequence `'\n'` shall match a <newline> embedded in the pattern space. A literal <newline> shall not be used in the BRE of a context address or in the substitute function.
- If an RE is empty (that is, no pattern is specified) *sed* shall behave as if the last RE used in the last command applied (either as an address or as part of a substitute command) was specified.

Editing Commands in sed

In the following list of editing commands, the maximum number of permissible addresses for each function is indicated by [*0addr*], [*1addr*], or [*2addr*], representing zero, one, or two addresses.

The argument *text* shall consist of one or more lines. Each embedded <newline> in the text shall be preceded by a backslash. Other backslashes in text shall be removed, and the following character shall be treated literally.

The **r** and **w** command verbs, and the *w* flag to the **s** command, take an *rfile* (or *wfile*) parameter, separated from the command verb letter or flag by one or more <blank>s; implementations may allow zero separation as an extension.

The argument *rfile* or the argument *wfile* shall terminate the editing command. Each *wfile* shall be created before processing begins. Implementations shall support at least ten *wfile* arguments in the script; the actual number (greater than or equal to 10) that is supported by the implementation is unspecified. The use of the *wfile* parameter shall cause that file to be initially created, if it does not exist, or shall replace the contents of an existing file.

The **b**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **w**, **y**, and **:** command verbs shall accept additional arguments. The following synopses indicate which arguments shall be separated from the command verbs by a single

33323 <space>.

33324 The **a** and **r** commands schedule text for later output. The text specified for the **a** command, and
33325 the contents of the file specified for the **r** command, shall be written to standard output just
33326 before the next attempt to fetch a line of input when executing the **N** or **n** commands, or when
33327 reaching the end of the script. If written when reaching the end of the script, and the –**n** option
33328 was not specified, the text shall be written after copying the pattern space to standard output.
33329 The contents of the file specified for the **r** command shall be as of the time the output is written,
33330 not the time the **r** command is applied. The text shall be output in the order in which the **a** and **r**
33331 commands were applied to the input.

33332 Command verbs other than **{**, **a**, **b**, **c**, **i**, **r**, **t**, **w**, **:**, and **#** can be followed by a semicolon, optional
33333 <blank>s, and another command verb. However, when the **s** command verb is used with the *w*
33334 flag, following it with another command in this manner produces undefined results.

33335 A function can be preceded by one or more '**!**' characters, in which case the function shall be
33336 applied if the addresses do not select the pattern space. Zero or more <blank>s shall be accepted
33337 before the first '**!**' character. It is unspecified whether <blank>s can follow a '**!**' character, and
33338 conforming applications shall not follow a '**!**' character with <blank>s.

33339 [*2addr*] **{***function*
33340 *function*
33341 ...
33342 **}** Execute a list of *sed* functions only when the pattern space is selected. The list of *sed*
33343 functions shall be surrounded by braces and separated by <newline>s, and
33344 conform to the following rules. The braces can be preceded or followed by
33345 <blank>s. The functions can be preceded by <blank>s, but shall not be followed
33346 by <blank>s. The <right-brace> shall be preceded by a <newline> and can be
33347 preceded or followed by <blank>s.

33348 [*1addr*]**a**
33349 *text* Write text to standard output as described previously.

33350 [*2addr*]**b** [*label*]
33351 Branch to the **:** function bearing the *label*. If *label* is not specified, branch to the end
33352 of the script. The implementation shall support *label*s recognized as unique up to at
33353 least 8 characters; the actual length (greater than or equal to 8) that shall be
33354 supported by the implementation is unspecified. It is unspecified whether
33355 exceeding a label length causes an error or a silent truncation.

33356 [*2addr*]**c**
33357 *text* Delete the pattern space. With a 0 or 1 address or at the end of a 2-address range,
33358 place *text* on the output and start the next cycle.

33359 [*2addr*]**d** Delete the pattern space and start the next cycle.

33360 [*2addr*]**D** Delete the initial segment of the pattern space through the first <newline> and
33361 start the next cycle.

33362 [*2addr*]**g** Replace the contents of the pattern space by the contents of the hold space.

33363 [*2addr*]**G** Append to the pattern space a <newline> followed by the contents of the hold
33364 space.

33365 [*2addr*]**h** Replace the contents of the hold space with the contents of the pattern space.

33366 [*2addr*]**H** Append to the hold space a <newline> followed by the contents of the pattern
33367 space.

[_1addr_**]i**
text Write _text_ to standard output.

[_2addr_**]l** (The letter ell.) Write the pattern space to standard output in a visually unambiguous form. The characters listed in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Table 5-1, Escape Sequences and Associated Actions (`'\\'`, `'\a'`, `'\b'`, `'\f'`, `'\r'`, `'\t'`, `'\v'`) shall be written as the corresponding escape sequence; the `'\n'` in that table is not applicable. Non-printable characters not in that table shall be written as one three-digit octal number (with a preceding backslash) for each byte in the character (most significant byte first).

Long lines shall be folded, with the point of folding indicated by writing a backslash followed by a <newline>; the length at which folding occurs is unspecified, but should be appropriate for the output device. The end of each line shall be marked with a `'$'`.

[_2addr_**]n** Write the pattern space to standard output if the default output has not been suppressed, and replace the pattern space with the next line of input, less its terminating <newline>.

If no next line of input is available, the **n** command verb shall branch to the end of the script and quit without starting a new cycle.

[_2addr_**]N** Append the next line of input, less its terminating <newline>, to the pattern space, using an embedded <newline> to separate the appended material from the original material. Note that the current line number changes.

If no next line of input is available, the **N** command verb shall branch to the end of the script and quit without starting a new cycle or copying the pattern space to standard output.

[_2addr_**]p** Write the pattern space to standard output.

[_2addr_**]P** Write the pattern space, up to the first <newline>, to standard output.

[_1addr_**]q** Branch to the end of the script and quit without starting a new cycle.

[_1addr_**]r** _rfile_ Copy the contents of _rfile_ to standard output as described previously. If _rfile_ does not exist or cannot be read, it shall be treated as if it were an empty file, causing no error condition.

[_2addr_**]s/**_BRE_**/**_replacement_**/**_flags_
Substitute the replacement string for instances of the BRE in the pattern space. Any character other than backslash or <newline> can be used instead of a slash to delimit the BRE and the replacement. Within the BRE and the replacement, the BRE delimiter itself can be used as a literal character if it is preceded by a backslash.

The replacement string shall be scanned from beginning to end. An ampersand (`'&'`) appearing in the replacement shall be replaced by the string matching the BRE. The special meaning of `'&'` in this context can be suppressed by preceding it by a backslash. The characters `"\n"`, where _n_ is a digit, shall be replaced by the text matched by the corresponding back-reference expression. If the corresponding back-reference expression does not match, then the characters `"\n"` shall be replaced by the empty string. The special meaning of `"\n"` where _n_ is a digit in this context, can be suppressed by preceding it by a backslash. For each other backslash (`'\'`) encountered, the following character shall lose its special meaning (if any). The meaning of a `'\'` immediately followed by any character other than `'&'`, `'\'`, a digit, or the delimiter character used for this command, is unspecified.

A line can be split by substituting a <newline> into it. The application shall escape

the <newline> in the replacement by preceding it by a backslash. A substitution shall be considered to have been performed even if the replacement string is identical to the string that it replaces. Any backslash used to alter the default meaning of a subsequent character shall be discarded from the BRE or the replacement before evaluating the BRE or using the replacement.

The value of *flags* shall be zero or more of:

n Substitute for the *n*th occurrence only of the BRE found within the pattern space.

g Globally substitute for all non-overlapping instances of the BRE rather than just the first one. If both **g** and *n* are specified, the results are unspecified.

p Write the pattern space to standard output if a replacement was made.

w *wfile* Write. Append the pattern space to *wfile* if a replacement was made. A conforming application shall precede the *wfile* argument with one or more <blank>s. If the **w** flag is not the last flag value given in a concatenation of multiple flag values, the results are undefined.

[*2addr*]**t** [*label*]

Test. Branch to the **:** command verb bearing the *label* if any substitutions have been made since the most recent reading of an input line or execution of a **t**. If *label* is not specified, branch to the end of the script.

[*2addr*]**w** *wfile*

Append (write) the pattern space to *wfile*.

[*2addr*]**x** Exchange the contents of the pattern and hold spaces.

[*2addr*]**y**/*string1*/*string2*/

Replace all occurrences of characters in *string1* with the corresponding characters in *string2*. If a backslash followed by an `'n'` appear in *string1* or *string2*, the two characters shall be handled as a single <newline>. If the number of characters in *string1* and *string2* are not equal, or if any of the characters in *string1* appear more than once, the results are undefined. Any character other than backslash or <newline> can be used instead of slash to delimit the strings. If the delimiter is not `'n'`, within *string1* and *string2*, the delimiter itself can be used as a literal character if it is preceded by a backslash. If a backslash character is immediately followed by a backslash character in *string1* or *string2*, the two backslash characters shall be counted as a single literal backslash character. The meaning of a backslash followed by any character that is not `'n'`, a backslash, or the delimiter character is undefined.

[*0addr*]**:***label* Do nothing. This command bears a *label* to which the **b** and **t** commands branch.

[*1addr*]**=** Write the following to standard output:

`"%d\n", <current line number>`

[*0addr*] Ignore this empty command.

[*0addr*]**#** Ignore the `'#'` and the remainder of the line (treat them as a comment), with the single exception that if the first two characters in the script are `"#n"`, the default output shall be suppressed; this shall be the equivalent of specifying **–n** on the command line.

33461 **EXIT STATUS**

33462 The following exit values shall be returned:

33463 0 Successful completion.

33464 >0 An error occurred.

33465 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

33466 Default.

33467 **APPLICATION USAGE**

33468 Regular expressions match entire strings, not just individual lines, but a <newline> is matched
33469 by '\n' in a *sed* RE; a <newline> is not allowed by the general definition of regular expression
33470 in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Also note that '\n' cannot be used to match a <newline> at the end of
33471 an arbitrary input line; <newline>s appear in the pattern space as a result of the **N** editing
33472 command.

33473 **EXAMPLES**

33474 This *sed* script simulates the BSD *cat* **–s** command, squeezing excess blank lines from standard
33475 input.

33476
```
sed –n '
# Write non-empty lines.
/./ {
    p
    d
    }
# Write a single empty line, then look for more empty lines.
/^$/    p
# Get next line, discard the held <newline> (empty line),
# and look for more empty lines.
:Empty
/^$/    {
    N
    s/.//
    b Empty
    }
# Write the non-empty line before going back to search
# for the first in a set of empty lines.
    p
'
```
33495

33496 **RATIONALE**

33497 This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires implementations to support at least ten distinct
33498 *wfile*s, matching historical practice on many implementations. Implementations are encouraged
33499 to support more, but conforming applications should not exceed this limit.

33500 The exit status codes specified here are different from those in System V. System V returns 2 for
33501 garbled *sed* commands, but returns zero with its usage message or if the input file could not be
33502 opened. The standard developers considered this to be a bug.

33503 The manner in which the **l** command writes non-printable characters was changed to avoid the
33504 historical backspace-overstrike method, and other requirements to achieve unambiguous output
33505 were added. See the RATIONALE for *ed* for details of the format chosen, which is the same as
33506 that chosen for *sed*.

33507 This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires implementations to provide pattern and hold
33508 spaces of at least 8 192 bytes, larger than the 4 000 bytes spaces used by some historical
33509 implementations, but less than the 20 480 bytes limit used in an early proposal. Implementations

33510 are encouraged to allocate dynamically larger pattern and hold spaces as needed.

33511 The requirements for acceptance of <blank>s and <space>s in command lines has been made
33512 more explicit than in early proposals to describe clearly the historical practice and to remove
33513 confusion about the phrase "protect initial blanks [*sic*] and tabs from the stripping that is done
33514 on every script line" that appears in much of the historical documentation of the *sed* utility
33515 description of text. (Not all implementations are known to have stripped <blank>s from text
33516 lines, although they all have allowed leading <blank>s preceding the address on a command
33517 line.)

33518 The treatment of `'#'` comments differs from the SVID which only allows a comment as the first
33519 line of the script, but matches BSD-derived implementations. The comment character is treated
33520 as a command, and it has the same properties in terms of being accepted with leading <blank>s;
33521 the BSD implementation has historically supported this.

33522 Early proposals required that a *script_file* have at least one non-comment line. Some historical
33523 implementations have behaved in unexpected ways if this were not the case. The standard
33524 developers considered that this was incorrect behavior and that application developers should
33525 not have to avoid this feature. A correct implementation of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x
33526 shall permit *script_file*s that consist only of comment lines.

33527 Early proposals indicated that if **–e** and **–f** options were intermixed, all **–e** options were
33528 processed before any **–f** options. This has been changed to process them in the order presented
33529 because it matches historical practice and is more intuitive.

33530 The treatment of the **p** flag to the **s** command differs between System V and BSD-based systems
33531 when the default output is suppressed. In the two examples:

33532 ```
echo a | sed   's/a/A/p'
```
33533 ```
echo a | sed –n 's/a/A/p'
```

33534 this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, BSD, System V documentation, and the SVID indicate that
33535 the first example should write two lines with **A**, whereas the second should write one. Some
33536 System V systems write the **A** only once in both examples because the **p** flag is ignored if the **–n**
33537 option is not specified.

33538 This is a case of a diametrical difference between systems that could not be reconciled through
33539 the compromise of declaring the behavior to be unspecified. The SVID/BSD/System V
33540 documentation behavior was adopted for this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because:

33541 • No known documentation for any historic system describes the interaction between the **p**
33542 flag and the **–n** option.

33543 • The selected behavior is more correct as there is no technical justification for any
33544 interaction between the **p** flag and the **–n** option. A relationship between **–n** and the **p** flag
33545 might imply that they are only used together, but this ignores valid scripts that interrupt
33546 the cyclical nature of the processing through the use of the **D**, **d**, **q**, or branching
33547 commands. Such scripts rely on the **p** suffix to write the pattern space because they do not
33548 make use of the default output at the "bottom" of the script.

33549 • Because the **–n** option makes the **p** flag unnecessary, any interaction would only be useful
33550 if *sed* scripts were written to run both with and without the **–n** option. This is believed to
33551 be unlikely. It is even more unlikely that programmers have coded the **p** flag expecting it to
33552 be unnecessary. Because the interaction was not documented, the likelihood of a
33553 programmer discovering the interaction and depending on it is further decreased.

33554 • Finally, scripts that break under the specified behavior produce too much output instead of
33555 too little, which is easier to diagnose and correct.

33556 The form of the substitute command that uses the **n** suffix was limited to the first 512 matches in
33557 an early proposal. This limit has been removed because there is no reason an editor processing

lines of {LINE_MAX} length should have this restriction. The command **s/a/A/2047** should be able to substitute the 2 047th occurrence of **a** on a line.

The **b**, **t**, and **:** commands are documented to ignore leading white space, but no mention is made of trailing white space. Historical implementations of *sed* assigned different locations to the labels `'x'` and `"x "`. This is not useful, and leads to subtle programming errors, but it is historical practice, and changing it could theoretically break working scripts. Implementors are encouraged to provide warning messages about labels that are never used or jumps to labels that do not exist.

Historically, the *sed* **!** and **}** editing commands did not permit multiple commands on a single line using a semicolon as a command delimiter. Implementations are permitted, but not required, to support this extension.

Previous versions of this standard allowed for implementations with bytes other than eight bits, but this has been modified in this version.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

awk, *ed*, *grep*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- Implementations are required to support at least ten *wfile* arguments in an editing command.

The EXTENDED DESCRIPTION is changed to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #190 is applied.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #203 is applied, clarifying the meaning of the backslash escape sequences in a replacement string for a BRE.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/28 is applied, removing text describing behavior on systems with bytes consisting of more than eight bits.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/29 is applied, making an editorial correction within the Editing Commands in *sed* section.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretations 1003.1-2001 #006 and #036 are applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 and SD5-XCU-ERN-123 are applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

sh — shell, the standard command language interpreter

SYNOPSIS

```
sh [–abCefhimnuvx] [–o option]... [+abCefhimnuvx] [+o option]...
    [command_file [argument...]]

sh –c [–abCefhimnuvx] [–o option]... [+abCefhimnuvx] [+o option]...
    command_string [command_name [argument...]]

sh –s [–abCefhimnuvx] [–o option]... [+abCefhimnuvx] [+o option]...
    [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *sh* utility is a command language interpreter that shall execute commands read from a command line string, the standard input, or a specified file. The application shall ensure that the commands to be executed are expressed in the language described in Chapter 2 (on page 29).

Pathname expansion shall not fail due to the size of a file.

Shell input and output redirections have an implementation-defined offset maximum that is established in the open file description.

OPTIONS

The *sh* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, with an extension for support of a leading plus sign (’+’) as noted below.

The **–a**, **–b**, **–C**, **–e**, **–f**, **–m**, **–n**, **–o** *option*, **–u**, **–v**, and **–x** options are described as part of the *set* utility in Section 2.14 (on page 64). The option letters derived from the *set* special built-in shall also be accepted with a leading plus sign (’+’) instead of a leading hyphen (meaning the reverse case of the option as described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x).

The following additional options shall be supported:

–c Read commands from the *command_string* operand. Set the value of special parameter 0 (see Section 2.5.2 (on page 34)) from the value of the *command_name* operand and the positional parameters ($1, $2, and so on) in sequence from the remaining *argument* operands. No commands shall be read from the standard input.

–i Specify that the shell is *interactive*; see below. An implementation may treat specifying the **–i** option as an error if the real user ID of the calling process does not equal the effective user ID or if the real group ID does not equal the effective group ID.

–s Read commands from the standard input.

If there are no operands and the **–c** option is not specified, the **–s** option shall be assumed.

If the **–i** option is present, or if there are no operands and the shell’s standard input and standard error are attached to a terminal, the shell is considered to be *interactive*.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

– A single hyphen shall be treated as the first operand and then ignored. If both ’–’ and "––" are given as arguments, or if other operands precede the single hyphen, the results are undefined.

33638 *argument* The positional parameters ($1, $2, and so on) shall be set to *arguments*, if any.

33639 *command_file* The pathname of a file containing commands. If the pathname contains one or
33640 more slash characters, the implementation attempts to read that file; the file need
33641 not be executable. If the pathname does not contain a slash character:

33642 • The implementation shall attempt to read that file from the current working
33643 directory; the file need not be executable.

33644 • If the file is not in the current working directory, the implementation may
33645 perform a search for an executable file using the value of *PATH*, as described
33646 in Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48).

33647 Special parameter 0 (see Section 2.5.2 (on page 34)) shall be set to the value of
33648 *command_file*. If *sh* is called using a synopsis form that omits *command_file*, special
33649 parameter 0 shall be set to the value of the first argument passed to *sh* from its
33650 parent (for example, *argv*[0] for a C program), which is normally a pathname used
33651 to execute the *sh* utility.

33652 *command_name*
33653 A string assigned to special parameter 0 when executing the commands in
33654 *command_string*. If *command_name* is not specified, special parameter 0 shall be set
33655 to the value of the first argument passed to *sh* from its parent (for example, *argv*[0]
33656 for a C program), which is normally a pathname used to execute the *sh* utility.

33657 *command_string*
33658 A string that shall be interpreted by the shell as one or more commands, as if the
33659 string were the argument to the *system*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces
33660 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If the *command_string* operand is an empty string,
33661 *sh* shall exit with a zero exit status.

33662 **STDIN**

33663 The standard input shall be used only if one of the following is true:

33664 • The **–s** option is specified.

33665 • The **–c** option is not specified and no operands are specified.

33666 • The script executes one or more commands that require input from standard input (such as
33667 a *read* command that does not redirect its input).

33668 See the INPUT FILES section.

33669 When the shell is using standard input and it invokes a command that also uses standard input,
33670 the shell shall ensure that the standard input file pointer points directly after the command it has
33671 read when the command begins execution. It shall not read ahead in such a manner that any
33672 characters intended to be read by the invoked command are consumed by the shell (whether
33673 interpreted by the shell or not) or that characters that are not read by the invoked command are
33674 not seen by the shell. When the command expecting to read standard input is started
33675 asynchronously by an interactive shell, it is unspecified whether characters are read by the
33676 command or interpreted by the shell.

33677 If the standard input to *sh* is a FIFO or terminal device and is set to non-blocking reads, then *sh*
33678 shall enable blocking reads on standard input. This shall remain in effect when the command
33679 completes.

33680 **INPUT FILES**

33681 The input file shall be a text file, except that line lengths shall be unlimited. If the input file is
33682 empty or consists solely of blank lines or comments, or both, *sh* shall exit with a zero exit status.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *sh*:

ENV This variable, when and only when an interactive shell is invoked, shall be subjected to parameter expansion (see Section 2.6.2 (on page 38)) by the shell, and the r

33733 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
33734 internationalization variables.

33735 *LC_COLLATE*
33736 Determine the behavior of range expressions, equivalence classes, and multi-
33737 character collating elements within pattern matching.

33738 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
33739 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
33740 arguments and input files), which characters are defined as letters (character class
33741 **alpha**), and the behavior of character classes within pattern matching.

33742 *LC_MESSAGES*
33743 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
33744 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

33745 UP *MAIL* Determine a pathname of the user's mailbox file for purposes of incoming mail
33746 notification. If this variable is set, the shell shall inform the user if the file named
33747 by the variable is created or if its modification time has changed. Informing the
33748 user shall be accomplished by writing a string of unspecified format to standard
33749 error prior to the writing of the next primary prompt string. Such check shall be
33750 performed only after the completion of the interval defined by the *MAILCHECK*
33751 variable after the last such check. The user shall be informed only if *MAIL* is set
33752 and *MAILPATH* is not set.

33753 UP *MAILCHECK*
33754 Establish a decimal integer value that specifies how often (in seconds) the shell
33755 shall check for the arrival of mail in the files specified by the *MAILPATH* or *MAIL*
33756 variables. The default value shall be 600 seconds. If set to zero, the shell shall check
33757 before issuing each primary prompt.

33758 UP *MAILPATH* Provide a list of pathnames and optional messages separated by colons. If this
33759 variable is set, the shell shall inform the user if any of the files named by the
33760 variable are created or if any of their modification times change. (See the preceding
33761 entry for *MAIL* for descriptions of mail arrival and user informing.) Each
33762 pathname can be followed by '%' and a string that shall be subjected to parameter
33763 expansion and written to standard error when the modification time changes. If a
33764 '%' character in the pathname is preceded by a backslash, it shall be treated as a
33765 literal '%' in the pathname. The default message is unspecified.

33766 The *MAILPATH* environment variable takes precedence over the *MAIL* variable.

33767 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

33768 *PATH* Establish a string formatted as described in the Base Definitions volume of
33769 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables, used to effect command
33770 interpretation; see Section 2.9.1.1 (on page 48).

33771 *PWD* This variable shall represent an absolute pathname of the current working
33772 directory. Assignments to this variable may be ignored unless the value is an
33773 absolute pathname of the current working directory and there are no filename
33774 components of dot or dot-dot.

33775 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
33776 Default.

33777 **STDOUT**

33778 See the STDERR section.

33779 **STDERR**

33780 Except as otherwise stated (by the descriptions of any invoked utilities or in interactive mode),
33781 standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

33782 **OUTPUT FILES**

33783 None.

33784 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

33785 UP See Chapter 2. The functionality described in the rest of the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section
33786 shall be provided on implementations that support the User Portability Utilities option (and the
33787 rest of this section is not further shaded for this option).

33788 **Command History List**

33789 When the *sh* utility is being used interactively, it shall maintain a list of commands previously
33790 entered from the terminal in the file named by the *HISTFILE* environment variable. The type,
33791 size, and internal format of this file are unspecified. Multiple *sh* processes can share access to the
33792 file for a user, if file access permissions allow this; see the description of the *HISTFILE*
33793 environment variable.

33794 **Command Line Editing**

33795 When *sh* is being used interactively from a terminal, the current command and the command
33796 history (see *fc*) can be edited using *vi*-mode command line editing. This mode uses commands,
33797 described below, similar to a subset of those described in the *vi* utility. Implementations may
33798 offer other command line editing modes corresponding to other editing utilities.

33799 The command *set* **−o** *vi* shall enable *vi*-mode editing and place *sh* into *vi* insert mode (see
33800 Command Line Editing (vi-mode) (on page 856)). This command also shall disable any other
33801 editing mode that the implementation may provide. The command *set* **+o** *vi* disables *vi*-mode
33802 editing.

33803 Certain block-mode terminals may be unable to support shell command line editing. If a
33804 terminal is unable to provide either edit mode, it need not be possible to *set* **−o** *vi* when using the
33805 shell on this terminal.

33806 In the following sections, the characters *erase*, *interrupt*, *kill*, and *end-of-file* are those set by the
33807 *stty* utility.

33808 **Command Line Editing (vi-mode)**

33809 In *vi* editing mode, there shall be a distinguished line, the edit line. All the editing operations
33810 which modify a line affect the edit line. The edit line is always the newest line in the command
33811 history buffer.

33812 With *vi*-mode enabled, *sh* can be switched between insert mode and command mode.

33813 When in insert mode, an entered character shall be inserted into the command line, except as
33814 noted in vi Line Editing Insert Mode (on page 857). Upon entering *sh* and after termination of
33815 the previous command, *sh* shall be in insert mode.

33816 Typing an escape character shall switch *sh* into command mode (see vi Line Editing Command
33817 Mode (on page 857)). In command mode, an entered character shall either invoke a defined
33818 operation, be used as part of a multi-character operation, or be treated as an error. A character
33819 that is not recognized as part of an editing command shall terminate any specific editing
33820 command and shall alert the terminal. Typing the *interrupt* character in command mode shall
33821 cause *sh* to terminate command line editing on the current command line, reissue the prompt on

the next line of the terminal, and reset the command history (see *fc*) so that the most recently executed command is the previous command (that is, the command that was being edited when it was interrupted is not reentered into the history).

In the following sections, the phrase "move the cursor to the beginning of the word" shall mean "move the cursor to the first character of the current word" and the phrase "move the cursor to the end of the word" shall mean "move the cursor to the last character of the current word". The phrase "beginning of the command line" indicates the point between the end of the prompt string issued by the shell (or the beginning of the terminal line, if there is no prompt string) and the first character of the command text.

vi Line Editing Insert Mode

While in insert mode, any character typed shall be inserted in the current command line, unless it is from the following set.

<newline> Execute the current command line. If the current command line is not empty, this line shall be entered into the command history (see *fc*).

erase Delete the character previous to the current cursor position and move the current cursor position back one character. In insert mode, characters shall be erased from both the screen and the buffer when backspacing.

interrupt Terminate command line editing with the same effects as described for interrupting command mode; see Command Line Editing (vi-mode) (on page 856).

kill Clear all the characters from the input line.

<control>-V Insert the next character input, even if the character is otherwise a special insert mode character.

<control>-W Delete the characters from the one preceding the cursor to the preceding word boundary. The word boundary in this case is the closer to the cursor of either the beginning of the line or a character that is in neither the **blank** nor **punct** character classification of the current locale.

end-of-file Interpreted as the end of input in *sh*. This interpretation shall occur only at the beginning of an input line. If *end-of-file* is entered other than at the beginning of the line, the results are unspecified.

<ESC> Place *sh* into command mode.

vi Line Editing Command Mode

In command mode for the command line editing feature, decimal digits not beginning with 0 that precede a command letter shall be remembered. Some commands use these decimal digits as a count number that affects the operation.

The term *motion command* represents one of the commands:

```
<space>  0  b  F  l  W  ^  $  ;  E  f  T  w  |  ,  B  e  h  t
```

If the current line is not the edit line, any command that modifies the current line shall cause the content of the current line to replace the content of the edit line, and the current line shall become the edit line. This replacement cannot be undone (see the **u** and **U** commands below). The modification requested shall then be performed to the edit line. When the current line is the edit line, the modification shall be done directly to the edit line.

Any command that is preceded by *count* shall take a count (the numeric value of any preceding decimal digits). Unless otherwise noted, this count shall cause the specified operation to repeat by the number of times specified by the count. Also unless otherwise noted, a *count* that is out of range is considered an error condition and shall alert the terminal, but neither the cursor

33867 position, nor the command line, shall change.

33868 The terms *word* and *bigword* are used as defined in the *vi* description. The term *save buffer*
33869 corresponds to the term *unnamed buffer* in *vi*.

33870 The following commands shall be recognized in command mode:

33871 <newline> Execute the current command line. If the current command line is not empty, this
33872 line shall be entered into the command history (see *fc*).

33873 <control>-L Redraw the current command line. Position the cursor at the same location on the
33874 redrawn line.

33875 **#** Insert the character '#' at the beginning of the current command line and treat the
33876 resulting edit line as a comment. This line shall be entered into the command
33877 history; see *fc*.

33878 **=** Display the possible shell word expansions (see Section 2.6 (on page 37)) of the
33879 bigword at the current command line position.

33880 **Note:** This does not modify the content of the current line, and therefore does not cause
33881 the current line to become the edit line.

33882 These expansions shall be displayed on subsequent terminal lines. If the bigword
33883 contains none of the characters '?', '*', or '[', an asterisk ('*') shall be
33884 implicitly assumed at the end. If any directories are matched, these expansions
33885 shall have a '/' character appended. After the expansion, the line shall be
33886 redrawn, the cursor repositioned at the current cursor position, and *sh* shall be
33887 placed in command mode.

33888 \ Perform pathname expansion (see Section 2.6.6 (on page 43)) on the current
33889 bigword, up to the largest set of characters that can be matched uniquely. If the
33890 bigword contains none of the characters '?', '*', or '[', an asterisk ('*') shall
33891 be implicitly assumed at the end. This maximal expansion then shall replace the
33892 original bigword in the command line, and the cursor shall be placed after this
33893 expansion. If the resulting bigword completely and uniquely matches a directory, a
33894 '/' character shall be inserted directly after the bigword. If some other file is
33895 completely matched, a single <space> shall be inserted after the bigword. After
33896 this operation, *sh* shall be placed in insert mode.

33897 * Perform pathname expansion on the current bigword and insert all expansions
33898 into the command to replace the current bigword, with each expansion separated
33899 by a single <space>. If at the end of the line, the current cursor position shall be
33900 moved to the first column position following the expansions and *sh* shall be placed
33901 in insert mode. Otherwise, the current cursor position shall be the last column
33902 position of the first character after the expansions and *sh* shall be placed in insert
33903 mode. If the current bigword contains none of the characters '?', '*', or '[',
33904 before the operation, an asterisk shall be implicitly assumed at the end.

33905 @*letter* Insert the value of the alias named *_letter*. The symbol *letter* represents a single
33906 alphabetic character from the portable character set; implementations may support
33907 additional characters as an extension. If the alias *_letter* contains other editing
33908 commands, these commands shall be performed as part of the insertion. If no alias
33909 *_letter* is enabled, this command shall have no effect.

33910 [*count*]~ Convert, if the current character is a lowercase letter, to the equivalent uppercase
33911 letter and *vice versa*, as prescribed by the current locale. The current cursor position
33912 then shall be advanced by one character. If the cursor was positioned on the last
33913 character of the line, the case conversion shall occur, but the cursor shall not
33914 advance. If the '~' command is preceded by a *count*, that number of characters
33915 shall be converted, and the cursor shall be advanced to the character position after

the last character converted. If the *count* is larger than the number of characters after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall advance to the last character on the line.

[*count***].** Repeat the most recent non-motion command, even if it was executed on an earlier command line. If the previous command was preceded by a *count*, and no count is given on the '.' command, the count from the previous command shall be included as part of the repeated command. If the '.' command is preceded by a *count*, this shall override any *count* argument to the previous command. The *count* specified in the '.' command shall become the count for subsequent '.' commands issued without a count.

[*number***]v** Invoke the *vi* editor to edit the current command line in a temporary file. When the editor exits, the commands in the temporary file shall be executed and placed in the command history. If a *number* is included, it specifies the command number in the command history to be edited, rather than the current command line.

[*count***]l** (ell)
[*count***]**<space>
Move the current cursor position to the next character position. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be advanced. If the *count* is larger than the number of characters after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall advance to the last character on the line.

[*count***]h** Move the current cursor position to the *count*th (default 1) previous character position. If the cursor was positioned on the first character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved. If the count is larger than the number of characters before the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall move to the first character on the line.

[*count***]w** Move to the start of the next word. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be advanced. If the *count* is larger than the number of words after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall advance to the last character on the line.

[*count***]W** Move to the start of the next bigword. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be advanced. If the *count* is larger than the number of bigwords after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall advance to the last character on the line.

[*count***]e** Move to the end of the current word. If at the end of a word, move to the end of the next word. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be advanced. If the *count* is larger than the number of words after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall advance to the last character on the line.

[*count***]E** Move to the end of the current bigword. If at the end of a bigword, move to the end of the next bigword. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be advanced. If the *count* is larger than the number of bigwords after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall advance to the last character on the line.

[*count***]b** Move to the beginning of the current word. If at the beginning of a word, move to the beginning of the previous word. If the cursor was positioned on the first character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved. If the *count* is larger than the number of words preceding the cursor, this

33966 33967 shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall return to the first character on the line.

33968 33969 33970 33971 33972 33973 **[***count***]B** Move to the beginning of the current bigword. If at the beginning of a bigword, move to the beginning of the previous bigword. If the cursor was positioned on the first character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved. If the *count* is larger than the number of bigwords preceding the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall return to the first character on the line.

33974 33975 **^** Move the current cursor position to the first character on the input line that is not a <blank>.

33976 **$** Move to the last character position on the current command line.

33977 **0** (Zero.) Move to the first character position on the current command line.

33978 33979 33980 33981 33982 **[***count***] |** Move to the *count*th character position on the current command line. If no number is specified, move to the first position. The first character position shall be numbered 1. If the count is larger than the number of characters on the line, this shall not be considered an error; the cursor shall be placed on the last character on the line.

33983 33984 33985 33986 33987 **[***count***]f***c* Move to the first occurrence of the character `'c'` that occurs after the current cursor position. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be advanced. If the character `'c'` does not occur in the line after the current cursor position, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved.

33988 33989 33990 33991 33992 **[***count***]F***c* Move to the first occurrence of the character `'c'` that occurs before the current cursor position. If the cursor was positioned on the first character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved. If the character `'c'` does not occur in the line before the current cursor position, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved.

33993 33994 33995 33996 33997 **[***count***]t***c* Move to the character before the first occurrence of the character `'c'` that occurs after the current cursor position. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be advanced. If the character `'c'` does not occur in the line after the current cursor position, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved.

33998 33999 34000 34001 34002 **[***count***]T***c* Move to the character after the first occurrence of the character `'c'` that occurs before the current cursor position. If the cursor was positioned on the first character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved. If the character `'c'` does not occur in the line before the current cursor position, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved.

34003 34004 34005 **[***count***];** Repeat the most recent **f**, **F**, **t**, or **T** command. Any number argument on that previous command shall be ignored. Errors are those described for the repeated command.

34006 34007 34008 **[***count***],** Repeat the most recent **f**, **F**, **t**, or **T** command. Any number argument on that previous command shall be ignored. However, reverse the direction of that command.

34009 34010 **a** Enter insert mode after the current cursor position. Characters that are entered shall be inserted before the next character.

34011 **A** Enter insert mode after the end of the current command line.

i Enter insert mode at the current cursor position. Characters that are entered shall be inserted before the current character.

I Enter insert mode at the beginning of the current command line.

R Enter insert mode, replacing characters from the command line beginning at the current cursor position.

[*count*]**c***motion*

Delete the characters between the current cursor position and the cursor position that would result from the specified motion command. Then enter insert mode before the first character following any deleted characters. If *count* is specified, it shall be applied to the motion command. A *count* shall be ignored for the following motion commands:

```
0     ^     $     c
```

If the motion command is the character `'c'`, the current command line shall be cleared and insert mode shall be entered. If the motion command would move the current cursor position toward the beginning of the command line, the character under the current cursor position shall not be deleted. If the motion command would move the current cursor position toward the end of the command line, the character under the current cursor position shall be deleted. If the *count* is larger than the number of characters between the current cursor position and the end of the command line toward which the motion command would move the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; all of the remaining characters in the aforementioned range shall be deleted and insert mode shall be entered. If the motion command is invalid, the terminal shall be alerted, the cursor shall not be moved, and no text shall be deleted.

C Delete from the current character to the end of the line and enter insert mode at the new end-of-line.

S Clear the entire edit line and enter insert mode.

[*count*]**r***c* Replace the current character with the character `'c'`. With a number *count*, replace the current and the following *count*–1 characters. After this command, the current cursor position shall be on the last character that was changed. If the *count* is larger than the number of characters after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; all of the remaining characters shall be changed.

[*count*]_ Append a <space> after the current character position and then append the last bigword in the previous input line after the <space>. Then enter insert mode after the last character just appended. With a number *count*, append the *count*th bigword in the previous line.

[*count*]**x** Delete the character at the current cursor position and place the deleted characters in the save buffer. If the cursor was positioned on the last character of the line, the character shall be deleted and the cursor position shall be moved to the previous character (the new last character). If the *count* is larger than the number of characters after the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; all the characters from the cursor to the end of the line shall be deleted.

[*count*]**X** Delete the character before the current cursor position and place the deleted characters in the save buffer. The character under the current cursor position shall not change. If the cursor was positioned on the first character of the line, the terminal shall be alerted, and the **X** command shall have no effect. If the line contained a single character, the **X** command shall have no effect. If the line contained no characters, the terminal shall be alerted and the cursor shall not be moved. If the *count* is larger than the number of characters before the cursor, this

shall not be considered an error; all the characters from before the cursor to the beginning of the line shall be deleted.

[*count*]**d***motion*

Delete the characters between the current cursor position and the character position that would result from the motion command. A number *count* repeats the motion command *count* times. If the motion command would move toward the beginning of the command line, the character under the current cursor position shall not be deleted. If the motion command is **d**, the entire current command line shall be cleared. If the *count* is larger than the number of characters between the current cursor position and the end of the command line toward which the motion command would move the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; all of the remaining characters in the aforementioned range shall be deleted. The deleted characters shall be placed in the save buffer.

D Delete all characters from the current cursor position to the end of the line. The deleted characters shall be placed in the save buffer.

[*count*]**y***motion*

Yank (that is, copy) the characters from the current cursor position to the position resulting from the motion command into the save buffer. A number *count* shall be applied to the motion command. If the motion command would move toward the beginning of the command line, the character under the current cursor position shall not be included in the set of yanked characters. If the motion command is **y**, the entire current command line shall be yanked into the save buffer. The current cursor position shall be unchanged. If the *count* is larger than the number of characters between the current cursor position and the end of the command line toward which the motion command would move the cursor, this shall not be considered an error; all of the remaining characters in the aforementioned range shall be yanked.

Y Yank the characters from the current cursor position to the end of the line into the save buffer. The current character position shall be unchanged.

[*count*]**p** Put a copy of the current contents of the save buffer after the current cursor position. The current cursor position shall be advanced to the last character put from the save buffer. A *count* shall indicate how many copies of the save buffer shall be put.

[*count*]**P** Put a copy of the current contents of the save buffer before the current cursor position. The current cursor position shall be moved to the last character put from the save buffer. A *count* shall indicate how many copies of the save buffer shall be put.

u Undo the last command that changed the edit line. This operation shall not undo the copy of any command line to the edit line.

U Undo all changes made to the edit line. This operation shall not undo the copy of any command line to the edit line.

[*count*]**k**
[*count*]– Set the current command line to be the *count*th previous command line in the shell command history. If *count* is not specified, it shall default to 1. The cursor shall be positioned on the first character of the new command. If a **k** or – command would retreat past the maximum number of commands in effect for this shell (affected by the *HISTSIZE* environment variable), the terminal shall be alerted, and the command shall have no effect.

34109 **[***count***]j**

34110 **[***count***]+** Set the current command line to be the *count*th next command line in the shell
34111 command history. If *count* is not specified, it shall default to 1. The cursor shall be
34112 positioned on the first character of the new command. If a **j** or **+** command
34113 advances past the edit line, the current command line shall be restored to the edit
34114 line and the terminal shall be alerted.

34115 **[***number***]G** Set the current command line to be the oldest command line stored in the shell
34116 command history. With a number *number*, set the current command line to be the
34117 command line *number* in the history. If command line *number* does not exist, the
34118 terminal shall be alerted and the command line shall not be changed.

34119 **/***pattern*<newline>
34120 Move backwards through the command history, searching for the specified
34121 pattern, beginning with the previous command line. Patterns use the pattern
34122 matching notation described in Section 2.13 (on page 62), except that the '^'
34123 character shall have special meaning when it appears as the first character of
34124 *pattern*. In this case, the '^' is discarded and the characters after the '^' shall be
34125 matched only at the beginning of a line. Commands in the command history shall
34126 be treated as strings, not as filenames. If the pattern is not found, the current
34127 command line shall be unchanged and the terminal is alerted. If it is found in a
34128 previous line, the current command line shall be set to that line and the cursor
34129 shall be set to the first character of the new command line.

34130 If *pattern* is empty, the last non-empty pattern provided to **/** or **?** shall be used. If
34131 there is no previous non-empty pattern, the terminal shall be alerted and the
34132 current command line shall remain unchanged.

34133 **?***pattern*<newline>
34134 Move forwards through the command history, searching for the specified pattern,
34135 beginning with the next command line. Patterns use the pattern matching notation
34136 described in Section 2.13 (on page 62), except that the '^' character shall have
34137 special meaning when it appears as the first character of *pattern*. In this case, the
34138 '^' is discarded and the characters after the '^' shall be matched only at the
34139 beginning of a line. Commands in the command history shall be treated as strings,
34140 not as filenames. If the pattern is not found, the current command line shall be
34141 unchanged and the terminal alerted. If it is found in a following line, the current
34142 command line shall be set to that line and the cursor shall be set to the fist
34143 character of the new command line.

34144 If *pattern* is empty, the last non-empty pattern provided to **/** or **?** shall be used. If
34145 there is no previous non-empty pattern, the terminal shall be alerted and the
34146 current command line shall remain unchanged.

34147 **n** Repeat the most recent **/** or **?** command. If there is no previous **/** or **?**, the terminal
34148 shall be alerted and the current command line shall remain unchanged.

34149 **N** Repeat the most recent **/** or **?** command, reversing the direction of the search. If
34150 there is no previous **/** or **?**, the terminal shall be alerted and the current command
34151 line shall remain unchanged.

34152 **EXIT STATUS**
34153 The following exit values shall be returned:

34154 0 The script to be executed consisted solely of zero or more blank lines or comments, or
34155 both.

1-125 A non-interactive shell detected a syntax, redirection, or variable assignment error.

127 A specified *command_file* could not be found by a non-interactive shell.

Otherwise, the shell shall return the exit status of the last command it invoked or attempted to invoke (see also the *exit* utility in Section 2.14 (on page 64)).

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

See Section 2.8.1 (on page 46).

APPLICATION USAGE

Standard input and standard error are the files that determine whether a shell is interactive when **–i** is not specified. For example:

```
sh > file
```

and:

```
sh 2> file
```

create interactive and non-interactive shells, respectively. Although both accept terminal input, the results of error conditions are different, as described in Section 2.8.1 (on page 46); in the second example a redirection error encountered by a special built-in utility aborts the shell.

A conforming application must protect its first operand, if it starts with a plus sign, by preceding it with the "––" argument that denotes the end of the options.

Applications should note that the standard *PATH* to the shell cannot be assumed to be either **/bin/sh** or **/usr/bin/sh**, and should be determined by interrogation of the *PATH* returned by *getconf PATH*, ensuring that the returned pathname is an absolute pathname and not a shell built-in.

For example, to determine the location of the standard *sh* utility:

```
command –v sh
```

On some implementations this might return:

```
/usr/xpg4/bin/sh
```

Furthermore, on systems that support executable scripts (the "#!" construct), it is recommended that applications using executable scripts install them using *getconf* **–v** to determine the shell pathname and update the "#!" script appropriately as it is being installed (for example, with *sed*). For example:

```
#
# Installation time script to install correct POSIX shell pathname
#
# Get list of paths to check
#
Sifs=$IFS
IFS=:
set $(getconf PATH)
IFS=$Sifs
#
# Check each path for 'sh'
#
for i in $@
do
    if [ –f ${i}/sh ];
    then
        Pshell=${i}/sh
```



```
    fi
done
#
# This is the list of scripts to update. They should be of the
# form '${name}.source' and will be transformed to '${name}'.
# Each script should begin:
#
# !INSTALLSHELLPATH -p
#
scripts="a b c"
#
# Transform each script
#
for i in ${scripts}
do
    sed -e "s|INSTALLSHELLPATH|${Pshell}|" < ${i}.source > ${i}
done
```

EXAMPLES

1. Execute a shell command from a string:

   ```
   sh -c "cat myfile"
   ```

2. Execute a shell script from a file in the current directory:

   ```
   sh my_shell_cmds
   ```

RATIONALE

The *sh* utility and the *set* special built-in utility share a common set of options.

The name *IFS* was originally an abbreviation of "Input Field Separators"; however, this name is misleading as the *IFS* characters are actually used as field terminators. The KornShell ignores the contents of *IFS* upon entry to the script. A conforming application cannot rely on importing *IFS*. One justification for this, beyond security considerations, is to assist possible future shell compilers. Allowing *IFS* to be imported from the environment prevents many optimizations that might otherwise be performed via dataflow analysis of the script itself.

The text in the STDIN section about non-blocking reads concerns an instance of *sh* that has been invoked, probably by a C-language program, with standard input that has been opened using the O_NONBLOCK flag; see *open*( ) in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. If the shell did not reset this flag, it would immediately terminate because no input data would be available yet and that would be considered the same as end-of-file.

The options associated with a *restricted shell* (command name *rsh* and the **-r** option) were excluded because the standard developers considered that the implied level of security could not be achieved and they did not want to raise false expectations.

On systems that support set-user-ID scripts, a historical trapdoor has been to link a script to the name **-i**. When it is called by a sequence such as:

```
sh -
```

or by:

```
#! usr/bin/sh -
```

the historical systems have assumed that no option letters follow. Thus, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x allows the single hyphen to mark the end of the options, in addition to the use of the regular "--" argument, because it was considered that the older practice was so pervasive. An alternative approach is taken by the KornShell, where real and effective

34249 user/group IDs must match for an interactive shell; this behavior is specifically allowed by this
34250 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

34251 **Note:** There are other problems with set-user-ID scripts that the two approaches described here do not
34252 resolve.

34253 The initialization process for the history file can be dependent on the system start-up files, in
34254 that they may contain commands that effectively preempt the user's settings of *HISTFILE* and
34255 *HISTSIZE*. For example, function definition commands are recorded in the history file, unless
34256 the *set* **–o** *nolog* option is set. If the system administrator includes function definitions in some
34257 system start-up file called before the *ENV* file, the history file is initialized before the user gets a
34258 chance to influence its characteristics. In some historical shells, the history file is initialized just
34259 after the *ENV* file has been processed. Therefore, it is implementation-defined whether changes
34260 made to *HISTFILE* after the history file has been initialized are effective.

34261 The default messages for the various *MAIL*-related messages are unspecified because they vary
34262 across implementations. Typical messages are:

34263 `"you have mail\n"`

34264 or:

34265 `"you have new mail\n"`

34266 It is important that the descriptions of command line editing refer to the same shell as that in
34267 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x so that interactive users can also be application programmers without
34268 having to deal with programmatic differences in their two environments. It is also essential that
34269 the utility name *sh* be specified because this explicit utility name is too firmly rooted in historical
34270 practice of application programs for it to change.

34271 Consideration was given to mandating a diagnostic message when attempting to set *vi*-mode on
34272 terminals that do not support command line editing. However, it is not historical practice for the
34273 shell to be cognizant of all terminal types and thus be able to detect inappropriate terminals in
34274 all cases. Implementations are encouraged to supply diagnostics in this case whenever possible,
34275 rather than leaving the user in a state where editing commands work incorrectly.

34276 In early proposals, the KornShell-derived *emacs* mode of command line editing was included,
34277 even though the *emacs* editor itself was not. The community of *emacs* proponents was adamant
34278 that the full *emacs* editor not be standardized because they were concerned that an attempt to
34279 standardize this very powerful environment would encourage vendors to ship strictly
34280 conforming versions lacking the extensibility required by the community. The author of the
34281 original *emacs* program also expressed his desire to omit the program. Furthermore, there were a
34282 number of historical systems that did not include *emacs*, or included it without supporting it, but
34283 there were very few that did not include and support *vi*. The shell *emacs* command line editing
34284 mode was finally omitted because it became apparent that the KornShell version and the editor
34285 being distributed with the GNU system had diverged in some respects. The author of *emacs*
34286 requested that the POSIX *emacs* mode either be deleted or have a significant number of
34287 unspecified conditions. Although the KornShell author agreed to consider changes to bring the
34288 shell into alignment, the standard developers decided to defer specification at that time. At the
34289 time, it was assumed that convergence on an acceptable definition would occur for a subsequent
34290 draft, but that has not happened, and there appears to be no impetus to do so. In any case,
34291 implementations are free to offer additional command line editing modes based on the exact
34292 models of editors their users are most comfortable with.

34293 Early proposals had the following list entry in vi Line Editing Insert Mode (on page 857):

34294 \ If followed by the *erase* or *kill* character, that character shall be inserted into the input line.
34295 Otherwise, the backslash itself shall be inserted into the input line.

34296 However, this is not actually a feature of *sh* command line editing insert mode, but one of some
34297 historical terminal line drivers. Some conforming implementations continue to do this when the

34298 *stty* **iexten** flag is set.

34299 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

34300 None.

34301 **SEE ALSO**

34302 Chapter 2 (on page 29), *cd*, *echo*, *exit*, *fc*, *pwd*, *read*, *set*, *stty*, *test*, *umask*, *vi*, the System Interfaces
34303 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *dup*(), *exec*, *exit*(), *fork*(), *open*(), *pipe*(), *signal*(), *system*(),
34304 *ulimit*(), *umask*(), *wait*()

34305 **CHANGE HISTORY**

34306 First released in Issue 2.

34307 **Issue 5**

34308 The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

34309 Text is added to the DESCRIPTION for the Large File Summit proposal.

34310 **Issue 6**

34311 The Open Group Corrigendum U029/2 is applied, correcting the second SYNOPSIS.

34312 The Open Group Corrigendum U027/3 is applied, correcting a typographical error.

34313 The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the
34314 Single UNIX Specification:

34315 • The option letters derived from the *set* special built-in are also accepted with a leading plus
34316 sign ('+').

34317 • Large file extensions are added:

34318 — Pathname expansion does not fail due to the size of a file.

34319 — Shell input and output redirections have an implementation-defined offset maximum
34320 that is established in the open file description.

34321 In the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section, the text "user's home directory" is updated to
34322 "directory referred to by the *HOME* environment variable".

34323 Descriptions for the *ENV* and *PWD* environment variables are included to align with the
34324 IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

34325 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

34326 **Issue 7**

34327 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #098 is applied, changing the definition of *IFS*.

34328 Minor editorial changes are made to the User Portability Utilities option shading. No normative
34329 changes are implied.

34330 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

34331 **NAME**

34332 sleep — suspend execution for an interval

34333 **SYNOPSIS**

34334 `sleep` *time*

34335 **DESCRIPTION**

34336 The *sleep* utility shall suspend execution for at least the integral number of seconds specified by
34337 the *time* operand.

34338 **OPTIONS**

34339 None.

34340 **OPERANDS**

34341 The following operand shall be supported:

34342 *time* A non-negative decimal integer specifying the number of seconds for which to
34343 suspend execution.

34344 **STDIN**

34345 Not used.

34346 **INPUT FILES**

34347 None.

34348 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

34349 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *sleep*:

34350 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
34351 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
34352 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
34353 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

34354 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
34355 internationalization variables.

34356 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
34357 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
34358 arguments).

34359 *LC_MESSAGES*
34360 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
34361 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

34362 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

34363 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

34364 If the *sleep* utility receives a SIGALRM signal, one of the following actions shall be taken:

34365 1. Terminate normally with a zero exit status.

34366 2. Effectively ignore the signal.

34367 3. Provide the default behavior for signals described in the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
34368 section of Section 1.11 (on page 18). This could include terminating with a non-zero exit
34369 status.

34370 The *sleep* utility shall take the standard action for all other signals.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 The execution was successfully suspended for at least *time* seconds, or a SIGALRM signal was received. See the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

The *sleep* utility can be used to execute a command after a certain amount of time, as in:

```
(sleep 105; command) &
```

or to execute a command every so often, as in:

```
while true
do
    command
    sleep 37
done
```

RATIONALE

The exit status is allowed to be zero when *sleep* is interrupted by the SIGALRM signal because most implementations of this utility rely on the arrival of that signal to notify them that the requested finishing time has been successfully attained. Such implementations thus do not distinguish this situation from the successful completion case. Other implementations are allowed to catch the signal and go back to sleep until the requested time expires or to provide the normal signal termination procedures.

As with all other utilities that take integral operands and do not specify subranges of allowed values, *sleep* is required by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to deal with *time* requests of up to 2 147 483 647 seconds. This may mean that some implementations have to make multiple calls to the delay mechanism of the underlying operating system if its argument range is less than this.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

wait, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *alarm*( ), *sleep*( )

34413 **CHANGE HISTORY**
34414 First released in Issue 2.

NAME

sort — sort, merge, or sequence check text files

SYNOPSIS

```
sort [–m] [–o output] [–bdfinru] [–t char] [–k keydef]... [file...]
sort –c [–bdfinru] [–t char] [–k keydef] [file]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *sort* utility shall perform one of the following functions:

1. Sort lines of all the named files together and write the result to the specified output.
2. Merge lines of all the named (presorted) files together and write the result to the specified output.
3. Check that a single input file is correctly presorted.

Comparisons shall be based on one or more sort keys extracted from each line of input (or, if no sort keys are specified, the entire line up to, but not including, the terminating <newline>), and shall be performed using the collating sequence of the current locale.

OPTIONS

The *sort* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for Guideline 9, and the **–k** *keydef* option should follow the **–b**, **–d**, **–f**, **–i**, **–n**, and **–r** options. In addition, `'+'` may be recognized as an option delimiter as well as `'–'`.

The following options shall be supported:

–c Check that the single input file is ordered as specified by the arguments and the collating sequence of the current locale. No output shall be produced; only the exit code shall be affected.

–m Merge only; the input file shall be assumed to be already sorted.

–o *output* Specify the name of an output file to be used instead of the standard output. This file can be the same as one of the input *files*.

–u Unique: suppress all but one in each set of lines having equal keys. If used with the **–c** option, check that there are no lines with duplicate keys, in addition to checking that the input file is sorted.

The following options shall override the default ordering rules. When ordering options appear independent of any key field specifications, the requested field ordering rules shall be applied globally to all sort keys. When attached to a specific key (see **–k**), the specified ordering options shall override all global ordering options for that key.

–d Specify that only <blank>s and alphanumeric characters, according to the current setting of *LC_CTYPE*, shall be significant in comparisons. The behavior is undefined for a sort key to which **–i** or **–n** also applies.

–f Consider all lowercase characters that have uppercase equivalents, according to the current setting of *LC_CTYPE*, to be the uppercase equivalent for the purposes of comparison.

–i Ignore all characters that are non-printable, according to the current setting of *LC_CTYPE*. The behavior is undefined for a sort key for which **–n** also applies.

34456 **–n** Restrict the sort key to an initial numeric string, consisting of optional <blank>s,
34457 optional minus sign, and zero or more digits with an optional radix character and
34458 thousands separators (as defined in the current locale), which shall be sorted by
34459 arithmetic value. An empty digit string shall be treated as zero. Leading zeros and
34460 signs on zeros shall not affect ordering.

34461 **–r** Reverse the sense of comparisons.

34462 The treatment of field separators can be altered using the options:

34463 **–b** Ignore leading <blank>s when determining the starting and ending positions of a
34464 restricted sort key. If the **–b** option is specified before the first **–k** option, it shall be
34465 applied to all **–k** options. Otherwise, the **–b** option can be attached independently
34466 to each **–k** *field_start* or *field_end* option-argument (see below).

34467 **–t** *char* Use *char* as the field separator character; *char* shall not be considered to be part of a
34468 field (although it can be included in a sort key). Each occurrence of *char* shall be
34469 significant (for example, <*char*><*char*> delimits an empty field). If **–t** is not
34470 specified, <blank>s shall be used as default field separators; each maximal non-
34471 empty sequence of <blank>s that follows a non-<blank> shall be a field separator.

34472 Sort keys can be specified using the options:

34473 **–k** *keydef* The *keydef* argument is a restricted sort key field definition. The format of this
34474 definition is:

34475 ***field_start*[*type*][,*field_end*[*type*]]**

34476 where *field_start* and *field_end* define a key field restricted to a portion of the line
34477 (see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section), and *type* is a modifier from the list of
34478 characters `'b'`, `'d'`, `'f'`, `'i'`, `'n'`, `'r'`. The `'b'` modifier shall behave like the
34479 **–b** option, but shall apply only to the *field_start* or *field_end* to which it is attached.
34480 The other modifiers shall behave like the corresponding options, but shall apply
34481 only to the key field to which they are attached; they shall have this effect if
34482 specified with *field_start*, *field_end*, or both. If any modifier is attached to a
34483 *field_start* or to a *field_end*, no option shall apply to either. Implementations shall
34484 support at least nine occurrences of the **–k** option, which shall be significant in
34485 command line order. If no **–k** option is specified, a default sort key of the entire
34486 line shall be used.

34487 When there are multiple key fields, later keys shall be compared only after all
34488 earlier keys compare equal. Except when the **–u** option is specified, lines that
34489 otherwise compare equal shall be ordered as if none of the options **–d**, **–f**, **–i**, **–n**, or
34490 **–k** were present (but with **–r** still in effect, if it was specified) and with all bytes in
34491 the lines significant to the comparison. The order in which lines that still compare
34492 equal are written is unspecified.

34493 **OPERANDS**

34494 The following operand shall be supported:

34495 *file* A pathname of a file to be sorted, merged, or checked. If no *file* operands are
34496 specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

34497 **STDIN**

34498 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`.
34499 See the INPUT FILES section.

34500 **INPUT FILES**

34501 The input files shall be text files, except that the *sort* utility shall add a <newline> to the end of a
34502 file ending with an incomplete last line.

34503 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

34504 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *sort*:

34505 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
34506 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
34507 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
34508 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

34509 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
34510 internationalization variables.

34511 *LC_COLLATE*
34512 Determine the locale for ordering rules.

34513 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
34514 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
34515 arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classification for the **–b**,
34516 **–d**, **–f**, **–i**, and **–n** options.

34517 *LC_MESSAGES*
34518 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
34519 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

34520 *LC_NUMERIC*
34521 Determine the locale for the definition of the radix character and thousands
34522 separator for the **–n** option.

34523 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

34524 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

34525 Default.

34526 **STDOUT**

34527 Unless the **–o** or **–c** options are in effect, the standard output shall contain the sorted input.

34528 **STDERR**

34529 The standard error shall be used for diagnostic messages. A warning message about correcting
34530 an incomplete last line of an input file may be generated, but need not affect the final exit status.

34531 **OUTPUT FILES**

34532 If the **–o** option is in effect, the sorted input shall be written to the file *output*.

34533 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

34534 The notation:

34535 **–k** *field_start*[*type*][**,***field_end*[*type*]]

34536 shall define a key field that begins at *field_start* and ends at *field_end* inclusive, unless *field_start*
34537 falls beyond the end of the line or after *field_end*, in which case the key field is empty. A missing
34538 *field_end* shall mean the last character of the line.

34539 A field comprises a maximal sequence of non-separating characters and, in the absence of option
34540 **–t**, any preceding field separator.

34541 The *field_start* portion of the *keydef* option-argument shall have the form:

34542 *field_number*[**.***first_character*]

34543 Fields and characters within fields shall be numbered starting with 1. The *field_number* and
34544 *first_character* pieces, interpreted as positive decimal integers, shall specify the first character to

be used as part of a sort key. If *.first_character* is omitted, it shall refer to the first character of the field.

The *field_end* portion of the *keydef* option-argument shall have the form:

```
field_number[.last_character]
```

The *field_number* shall be as described above for *field_start*. The *last_character* piece, interpreted as a non-negative decimal integer, shall specify the last character to be used as part of the sort key. If *last_character* evaluates to zero or *.last_character* is omitted, it shall refer to the last character of the field specified by *field_number*.

If the **–b** option or **b** type modifier is in effect, characters within a field shall be counted from the first non-<blank> in the field. (This shall apply separately to *first_character* and *last_character*.)

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input files were output successfully, or **–c** was specified and the input file was correctly sorted.

1 Under the **–c** option, the file was not ordered as specified, or if the **–c** and **–u** options were both specified, two input lines were found with equal keys.

>1 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The default value for **–t**, <blank>, has different properties from, for example, **–t**"<space>". If a line contains:

```
<space><space>foo
```

the following treatment would occur with default separation as opposed to specifically selecting a <space>:

Field	Default	–t "<space>"
1	<space><space>foo	*empty*
2	*empty*	*empty*
3	*empty*	foo

The leading field separator itself is included in a field when **–t** is not used. For example, this command returns an exit status of zero, meaning the input was already sorted:

```
sort –c –k 2 <<eof
y<tab>b
x<space>a
eof
```

(assuming that a <tab> precedes the <space> in the current collating sequence). The field separator is not included in a field when it is explicitly set via **–t**. This is historical practice and allows usage such as:

```
sort –t "|" –k 2n <<eof
Atlanta|425022|Georgia
Birmingham|284413|Alabama
Columbia|100385|South Carolina
eof
```

where the second field can be correctly sorted numerically without regard to the non-numeric field separator.

The wording in the OPTIONS section clarifies that the –**b**, –**d**, –**f**, –**i**, –**n**, and –**r** options have to come before the first sort key specified if they are intended to apply to all specified keys. The way it is described in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x matches historical practice, not historical documentation. The results are unspecified if these options are specified after a –**k** option.

The –**f** option might not work as expected in locales where there is not a one-to-one mapping between an uppercase and a lowercase letter.

EXAMPLES

1. The following command sorts the contents of **infile** with the second field as the sort key:

   ```
   sort –k 2,2 infile
   ```

2. The following command sorts, in reverse order, the contents of **infile1** and **infile2**, placing the output in **outfile** and using the second character of the second field as the sort key (assuming that the first character of the second field is the field separator):

   ```
   sort –r –o outfile –k 2.2,2.2 infile1 infile2
   ```

3. The following command sorts the contents of **infile1** and **infile2** using the second non-<blank> of the second field as the sort key:

   ```
   sort –k 2.2b,2.2b infile1 infile2
   ```

4. The following command prints the System V password file (user database) sorted by the numeric user ID (the third colon-separated field):

   ```
   sort –t : –k 3,3n /etc/passwd
   ```

5. The following command prints the lines of the already sorted file **infile**, suppressing all but one occurrence of lines having the same third field:

   ```
   sort –um –k 3.1,3.0 infile
   ```

RATIONALE

Examples in some historical documentation state that options –**um** with one input file keep the first in each set of lines with equal keys. This behavior was deemed to be an implementation artifact and was not standardized.

The –**z** option was omitted; it is not standard practice on most systems and is inconsistent with using *sort* to sort several files individually and then merge them together. The text concerning –**z** in historical documentation appeared to require implementations to determine the proper buffer length during the sort phase of operation, but not during the merge.

The –**y** option was omitted because of non-portability. The –**M** option, present in System V, was omitted because of non-portability in international usage.

An undocumented –**T** option exists in some implementations. It is used to specify a directory for intermediate files. Implementations are encouraged to support the use of the *TMPDIR* environment variable instead of adding an option to support this functionality.

The –**k** option was added to satisfy two objections. First, the zero-based counting used by *sort* is not consistent with other utility conventions. Second, it did not meet syntax guideline requirements.

Historical documentation indicates that "setting –**n** implies –**b**". The description of –**n** already states that optional leading <blank>s are tolerated in doing the comparison. If –**b** is enabled, rather than implied, by –**n**, this has unusual side effects. When a character offset is used in a column of numbers (for example, to sort modulo 100), that offset is measured relative to the most significant digit, not to the column. Based upon a recommendation from the author of the original *sort* utility, the –**b** implication has been omitted from this volume of

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, and an application wishing to achieve the previously mentioned side effects has to code the **–b** flag explicitly.

Earlier versions of this standard allowed the **–o** option to appear after operands. Historical practice allowed all options to be interspersed with operands. This version of the standard allows implementations to accept options after operands but conforming applications should not use this form.

Earlier versions of this standard also allowed the *–number* and *+number* options. These options are no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

comm, *join*, *uniq*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *toupper*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #174 is applied, updating the DESCRIPTION of comparisons.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #168 is applied.

Issue 7

XCU-ERN-81 is applied, modifying the description of the **–i** option.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply and noting that '+' may be recognized as an option delimiter.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

split — split files into pieces

SYNOPSIS

```
split [–l line_count] [–a suffix_length] [file[name]]
split –b n[k|m] [–a suffix_length] [file[name]]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *split* utility shall read an input file and write one or more output files. The default size of each output file shall be 1 000 lines. The size of the output files can be modified by specification of the **–b** or **–l** options. Each output file shall be created with a unique suffix. The suffix shall consist of exactly *suffix_length* lowercase letters from the POSIX locale. The letters of the suffix shall be used as if they were a base-26 digit system, with the first suffix to be created consisting of all `'a'` characters, the second with a `'b'` replacing the last `'a'`, and so on, until a name of all `'z'` characters is created. By default, the names of the output files shall be `'x'`, followed by a two-character suffix from the character set as described above, starting with `"aa"`, `"ab"`, `"ac"`, and so on, and continuing until the suffix `"zz"`, for a maximum of 676 files.

If the number of files required exceeds the maximum allowed by the suffix length provided, such that the last allowable file would be larger than the requested size, the *split* utility shall fail after creating the last file with a valid suffix; *split* shall not delete the files it created with valid suffixes. If the file limit is not exceeded, the last file created shall contain the remainder of the input file, and may be smaller than the requested size.

OPTIONS

The *split* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–a *suffix_length*
: Use *suffix_length* letters to form the suffix portion of the filenames of the split file. If **–a** is not specified, the default suffix length shall be two. If the sum of the *name* operand and the *suffix_length* option-argument would create a filename exceeding {NAME_MAX} bytes, an error shall result; *split* shall exit with a diagnostic message and no files shall be created.

–b *n*
: Split a file into pieces *n* bytes in size.

–b *n***k**
: Split a file into pieces *n**1 024 bytes in size.

–b *n***m**
: Split a file into pieces *n**1 048 576 bytes in size.

–l *line_count*
: Specify the number of lines in each resulting file piece. The *line_count* argument is an unsigned decimal integer. The default is 1 000. If the input does not end with a <newline>, the partial line shall be included in the last output file.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file
: The pathname of the ordinary file to be split. If no input file is given or *file* is `'–'`, the standard input shall be used.

name
: The prefix to be used for each of the files resulting from the split operation. If no *name* argument is given, `'x'` shall be used as the prefix of the output files. The combined length of the basename of *prefix* and *suffix_length* cannot exceed {NAME_MAX} bytes. See the OPTIONS section.

34701 **STDIN**

34702 See the INPUT FILES section.

34703 **INPUT FILES**

34704 Any file can be used as input.

34705 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

34706 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *split*:

34707 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
34708 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
34709 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
34710 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

34711 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
34712 internationalization variables.

34713 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
34714 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
34715 arguments and input files).

34716 *LC_MESSAGES*
34717 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
34718 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

34719 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

34720 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

34721 Default.

34722 **STDOUT**

34723 Not used.

34724 **STDERR**

34725 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

34726 **OUTPUT FILES**

34727 The output files contain portions of the original input file; otherwise, unchanged.

34728 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

34729 None.

34730 **EXIT STATUS**

34731 The following exit values shall be returned:

34732 0 Successful completion.

34733 >0 An error occurred.

34734 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

34735 Default.

34736 **APPLICATION USAGE**

34737 None.

34738 **EXAMPLES**

34739 In the following examples **foo** is a text file that contains 5 000 lines.

34740 1. Create five files, **xaa**, **xab**, **xac**, **xad**, and **xae**:

34741 ```
split foo
```

34742 2. Create five files, but the suffixed portion of the created files consists of three letters, **xaaa**,
34743 **xaab**, **xaac**, **xaad**, and **xaae**:

 
```

```
split –a 3 foo
```

3. Create three files with four-letter suffixes and a supplied prefix, **bar_aaaa**, **bar_aaab**, and **bar_aaac**:

```
split –a 4 –l 2000 foo bar_
```

4. Create as many files as are necessary to contain at most 20*1 024 bytes, each with the default prefix of **x** and a five-letter suffix:

```
split –a 5 –b 20k foo
```

RATIONALE

The –**b** option was added to provide a mechanism for splitting files other than by lines. While most uses of the –**b** option are for transmitting files over networks, some believed it would have additional uses.

The –**a** option was added to overcome the limitation of being able to create only 676 files.

Consideration was given to deleting this utility, using the rationale that the functionality provided by this utility is available via the *csplit* utility (see *csplit*). Upon reconsideration of the purpose of the User Portability Utilities option, it was decided to retain both this utility and the *csplit* utility because users use both utilities and have historical expectations of their behavior. Furthermore, the splitting on byte boundaries in *split* cannot be duplicated with the historical *csplit*.

The text "*split* shall not delete the files it created with valid suffixes" would normally be assumed, but since the related utility, *csplit*, does delete files under some circumstances, the historical behavior of *split* is made explicit to avoid misinterpretation.

Earlier versions of this standard allowed a *–line_count* option. This form is no longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

csplit

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied.

The *split* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

34782 **NAME**

34783 strings — find printable strings in files

34784 **SYNOPSIS**

34785 `strings [–a] [–t format] [–n number] [file...]`

34786 **DESCRIPTION**

34787 The *strings* utility shall look for printable strings in regular files and shall write those strings to
34788 standard output. A printable string is any sequence of four (by default) or more printable
34789 characters terminated by a <newline> or NUL character. Additional implementation-defined
34790 strings may be written; see *localedef*.

34791 If the first argument is `'–'`, the results are unspecified.

34792 **OPTIONS**

34793 The *strings* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
34794 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for the unspecified usage of `'–'`.

34795 The following options shall be supported:

34796 **–a** Scan files in their entirety. If **–a** is not specified, it is implementation-defined what
34797 portion of each file is scanned for strings.

34798 **–n** *number* Specify the minimum string length, where the *number* argument is a positive
34799 decimal integer. The default shall be 4.

34800 **–t** *format* Write each string preceded by its byte offset from the start of the file. The format
34801 shall be dependent on the single character used as the *format* option-argument:

34802 `d` The offset shall be written in decimal.

34803 `o` The offset shall be written in octal.

34804 `x` The offset shall be written in hexadecimal.

34805 **OPERANDS**

34806 The following operand shall be supported:

34807 *file* A pathname of a regular file to be used as input. If no *file* operand is specified, the
34808 *strings* utility shall read from the standard input.

34809 **STDIN**

34810 See the INPUT FILES section.

34811 **INPUT FILES**

34812 The input files named by the utility arguments or the standard input shall be regular files of any
34813 format.

34814 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

34815 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *strings*:

34816 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
34817 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
34818 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
34819 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

34820 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
34821 internationalization variables.

34822 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
34823 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
34824 arguments and input files) and to identify printable strings.

34825 *LC_MESSAGES*
34826 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
34827 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

34828 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

34829 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
34830 Default.

34831 **STDOUT**
34832 Strings found shall be written to the standard output, one per line.

34833 When the **–t** option is not specified, the format of the output shall be:

34834 `"%s", <string>`

34835 With the **–t o** option, the format of the output shall be:

34836 `"%o %s", <byte offset>, <string>`

34837 With the **–t x** option, the format of the output shall be:

34838 `"%x %s", <byte offset>, <string>`

34839 With the **–t d** option, the format of the output shall be:

34840 `"%d %s", <byte offset>, <string>`

34841 **STDERR**
34842 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

34843 **OUTPUT FILES**
34844 None.

34845 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
34846 None.

34847 **EXIT STATUS**
34848 The following exit values shall be returned:

34849 0 Successful completion.

34850 >0 An error occurred.

34851 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
34852 Default.

34853 **APPLICATION USAGE**
34854 By default the data area (as opposed to the text, "bss", or header areas) of a binary executable
34855 file is scanned. Implementations document which areas are scanned.

34856 Some historical implementations do not require NUL or <newline> terminators for strings to
34857 permit those languages that do not use NUL as a string terminator to have their strings written.

34858 **EXAMPLES**
34859 None.

34860 **RATIONALE**
34861 Apart from rationalizing the option syntax and slight difficulties with object and executable
34862 binary files, *strings* is specified to match historical practice closely. The **–a** and **–n** options were
34863 introduced to replace the non-conforming – and *–number* options. These options are no longer
34864 specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

The **–o** option historically means different things on different implementations. Some use it to mean "*offset* in decimal", while others use it as "*offset* in octal". Instead of trying to decide which way would be least objectionable, the **–t** option was added. It was originally named **–O** to mean "offset", but was changed to **–t** to be consistent with *od*.

The ISO C standard function *isprint*( ) is restricted to a domain of **unsigned char**. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires implementations to write strings as defined by the current locale.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

localedef, *nm*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying the behavior if the first argument is `'–'`.

The *strings* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

strip — remove unnecessary information from strippable files (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

SD

```
strip file...
```

DESCRIPTION

XSI A strippable file is defined as a relocatable, object, or executable file. On XSI-conformant systems, a strippable file can also be an archive of object or relocatable files.

The *strip* utility shall remove from strippable files named by the *file* operands any information the implementor deems unnecessary for execution of those files. The nature of that information is unspecified. The effect of *strip* on object and executable files shall be similar to the use of the

XSI –**s** option to *c99* or *fort77*. The effect of *strip* on an archive of object files shall be similar to the use of the –**s** option to *c99* or *fort77* for each object file in the archive.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname referring to a strippable file.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

The input files shall be in the form of strippable files successfully produced by any compiler

XSI defined by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x or produced by creating or updating an archive of such files using the *ar* utility.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *strip*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The *strip* utility shall produce strippable files of unspecified format.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

Historically, this utility has been used to remove the symbol table from a strippable file. It was included since it is known that the amount of symbolic information can amount to several megabytes; the ability to remove it in a portable manner was deemed important, especially for smaller systems.

The behavior of *strip* on object and executable files is said to be the same as the **–s** option to a compiler. While the end result is essentially the same, it is not required to be identical.

XSI-conformant systems support use of *strip* on archive files containing object files or relocatable files.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

ar, *c99*, *fort77*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the Software Development Utilities option.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #103 is applied.

NAME

stty — set the options for a terminal

SYNOPSIS

```
stty [-a|-g]
stty operands
```

DESCRIPTION

The *stty* utility shall set or report on terminal I/O characteristics for the device that is its standard input. Without options or operands specified, it shall report the settings of certain characteristics, usually those that differ from implementation-defined defaults. Otherwise, it shall modify the terminal state according to the specified operands. Detailed information about the modes listed in the first five groups below are described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface. Operands in the Combination Modes group (see Combination Modes (on page 890)) are implemented using operands in the previous groups. Some combinations of operands are mutually-exclusive on some terminal types; the results of using such combinations are unspecified.

Typical implementations of this utility require a communications line configured to use the **termios** interface defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. On systems where none of these lines are available, and on lines not currently configured to support the **termios** interface, some of the operands need not affect terminal characteristics.

OPTIONS

The *stty* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

-a Write to standard output all the current settings for the terminal.

-g Write to standard output all the current settings in an unspecified form that can be used as arguments to another invocation of the *stty* utility on the same system. The form used shall not contain any characters that would require quoting to avoid word expansion by the shell; see Section 2.6 (on page 37).

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported to set the terminal characteristics.

Control Modes

parenb (**-parenb**) Enable (disable) parity generation and detection. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) PARENB in the **termios** *c_cflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

parodd (**-parodd**)
Select odd (even) parity. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) PARODD in the **termios** *c_cflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

cs5 cs6 cs7 cs8 Select character size, if possible. This shall have the effect of setting CS5, CS6, CS7, and CS8, respectively, in the **termios** *c_cflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35007 *number* Set terminal baud rate to the number given, if possible. If the baud rate is set
35008 to zero, the modem control lines shall no longer be asserted. This shall have
35009 the effect of setting the input and output **termios** baud rate values as defined
35010 in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General
35011 Terminal Interface.

35012 **ispeed** *number* Set terminal input baud rate to the number given, if possible. If the input baud
35013 rate is set to zero, the input baud rate shall be specified by the value of the
35014 output baud rate. This shall have the effect of setting the input **termios** baud
35015 rate values as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
35016 Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35017 **ospeed** *number* Set terminal output baud rate to the number given, if possible. If the output
35018 baud rate is set to zero, the modem control lines shall no longer be asserted.
35019 This shall have the effect of setting the output **termios** baud rate values as
35020 defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11,
35021 General Terminal Interface.

35022 **hupcl** (**–hupcl**) Stop asserting modem control lines (do not stop asserting modem control
35023 lines) on last close. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) HUPCL in
35024 the **termios** *c_cflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of
35025 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35026 **hup** (**–hup**) Equivalent to **hupcl**(**–hupcl**).

35027 **cstopb** (**–cstopb**) Use two (one) stop bits per character. This shall have the effect of setting (not
35028 setting) CSTOPB in the **termios** *c_cflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions
35029 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35030 **cread** (**–cread**) Enable (disable) the receiver. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting)
35031 CREAD in the **termios** *c_cflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume
35032 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35033 **clocal** (**–clocal**) Assume a line without (with) modem control. This shall have the effect of
35034 setting (not setting) CLOCAL in the **termios** *c_cflag* field, as defined in the
35035 Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General
35036 Terminal Interface.

35037 It is unspecified whether *stty* shall report an error if an attempt to set a Control Mode fails.

35038 **Input Modes**

35039 **ignbrk** (**–ignbrk**) Ignore (do not ignore) break on input. This shall have the effect of setting (not
35040 setting) IGNBRK in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions
35041 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35042 **brkint** (**–brkint**) Signal (do not signal) INTR on break. This shall have the effect of setting (not
35043 setting) BRKINT in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions
35044 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35045 **ignpar** (**–ignpar**) Ignore (do not ignore) bytes with parity errors. This shall have the effect of
35046 setting (not setting) IGNPAR in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base
35047 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal
35048 Interface.

35049 **parmrk** (**–parmrk**)
35050 Mark (do not mark) parity errors. This shall have the effect of setting (not
35051 setting) PARMRK in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions
35052 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

inpck (**–inpck**) Enable (disable) input parity checking. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) INPCK in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

istrip (**–istrip**) Strip (do not strip) input characters to seven bits. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ISTRIP in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

inlcr (**–inlcr**) Map (do not map) NL to CR on input. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) INLCR in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

igncr (–igncr) Ignore (do not ignore) CR on input. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) IGNCR in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

icrnl (**–icrnl**) Map (do not map) CR to NL on input. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ICRNL in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

ixon (**–ixon**) Enable (disable) START/STOP output control. Output from the system is stopped when the system receives STOP and started when the system receives START. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) IXON in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

XSI **ixany** (**–ixany**) Allow any character to restart output. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) IXANY in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

ixoff (**–ixoff**) Request that the system send (not send) STOP characters when the input queue is nearly full and START characters to resume data transmission. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) IXOFF in the **termios** *c_iflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

Output Modes

opost (**–opost**) Post-process output (do not post-process output; ignore all other output modes). This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) OPOST in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

XSI **ocrnl** (**–ocrnl**) Map (do not map) CR to NL on output This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) OCRNL in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

onocr (**–onocr**) Do not (do) output CR at column zero. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ONOCR in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

onlret (**–onlret**) The terminal newline key performs (does not perform) the CR function. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ONLRET in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

ofill (**–ofill**) Use fill characters (use timing) for delays. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) OFILL in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal

Interface.

ofdel (**–ofdel**) Fill characters are DELs (NULs). This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) OFDEL in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

cr0 cr1 cr2 cr3 Select the style of delay for CRs. This shall have the effect of setting CRDLY to CR0, CR1, CR2, or CR3, respectively, in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

nl0 nl1 Select the style of delay for NL. This shall have the effect of setting NLDLY to NL0 or NL1, respectively, in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

tab0 tab1 tab2 tab3

Select the style of delay for horizontal tabs. This shall have the effect of setting TABDLY to TAB0, TAB1, TAB2, or TAB3, respectively, in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface. Note that TAB3 has the effect of expanding <tab>s to <space>s.

tabs (**–tabs**) Synonym for **tab0** (**tab3**).

bs0 bs1 Select the style of delay for backspaces. This shall have the effect of setting BSDLY to BS0 or BS1, respectively, in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

ff0 ff1 Select the style of delay for form-feeds. This shall have the effect of setting FFDLY to FF0 or FF1, respectively, in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

vt0 vt1 Select the style of delay for vertical-tabs. This shall have the effect of setting VTDLY to VT0 or VT1, respectively, in the **termios** *c_oflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

Local Modes

isig (**–isig**) Enable (disable) the checking of characters against the special control characters INTR, QUIT, and SUSP. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ISIG in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

icanon (**–icanon**) Enable (disable) canonical input (ERASE and KILL processing). This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ICANON in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

iexten (**–iexten**) Enable (disable) any implementation-defined special control characters not currently controlled by **icanon**, **isig**, **ixon**, or **ixoff**. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) IEXTEN in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

echo (**–echo**) Echo back (do not echo back) every character typed. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ECHO in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

echoe (**–echoe**) The ERASE character visually erases (does not erase) the last character in the current line from the display, if possible. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ECHOE in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

echok (**–echok**) Echo (do not echo) NL after KILL character. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ECHOK in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

echonl (**–echonl**) Echo (do not echo) NL, even if **echo** is disabled. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) ECHONL in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

noflsh (**–noflsh**) Disable (enable) flush after INTR, QUIT, SUSP. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) NOFLSH in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

tostop (**–tostop**) Send SIGTTOU for background output. This shall have the effect of setting (not setting) TOSTOP in the **termios** *c_lflag* field, as defined in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

Special Control Character Assignments

<control>-character string

Set *<control>-character* to *string*. If *<control>-character* is one of the character sequences in the first column of the following table, the corresponding Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface control character from the second column shall be recognized. This has the effect of setting the corresponding element of the **termios** *c_cc* array (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 13, Headers, **<termios.h>**).

Table 4-19 Control Character Names in *stty*

Control Character	c_cc Subscript	Description
eof	VEOF	EOF character
eol	VEOL	EOL character
erase	VERASE	ERASE character
intr	VINTR	INTR character
kill	VKILL	KILL character
quit	VQUIT	QUIT character
susp	VSUSP	SUSP character
start	VSTART	START character
stop	VSTOP	STOP character

If *string* is a single character, the control character shall be set to that character. If *string* is the two-character sequence "^–" or the string *undef*, the control character shall be set to _POSIX_VDISABLE , if it is in effect for the device; if _POSIX_VDISABLE is not in effect for

the device, it shall be treated as an error. In the POSIX locale, if *string* is a two-character sequence beginning with circumflex (`'^'`), and the second character is one of those listed in the `"^c"` column of the following table, the control character shall be set to the corresponding character value in the Value column of the table.

Table 4-20 Circumflex Control Characters in *stty*

^c	Value	^c	Value	^c	Value
a, A	<SOH>	l, L	<FF>	w, W	<ETB>
b, B	<STX>	m, M	<CR>	x, X	<CAN>
c, C	<ETX>	n, N	<SO>	y, Y	<EM>
d, D	<EOT>	o, O	<SI>	z, Z	<SUB>
e, E	<ENQ>	p, P	<DLE>	[	<ESC>
f, F	<ACK>	q, Q	<DC1>	\	<FS>
g, G	<BEL>	r, R	<DC2>	]	<GS>
h, H	<BS>	s, S	<DC3>	^	<RS>
i, I	<HT>	t, T	<DC4>	_	<US>
j, J	<LF>	u, U	<NAK>	?	<DEL>
k, K	<VT>	v, V	<SYN>		

min *number*
Set the value of MIN to *number*. MIN is used in non-canonical mode input processing (**icanon**).

time *number*
Set the value of TIME to *number*. TIME is used in non-canonical mode input processing (**icanon**).

Combination Modes

saved settings
Set the current terminal characteristics to the saved settings produced by the **–g** option.

evenp or **parity**
Enable **parenb** and **cs7**; disable **parodd**.

oddp
Enable **parenb**, **cs7**, and **parodd**.

–parity, **–evenp**, or **–oddp**
Disable **parenb**, and set **cs8**.

XSI **raw** (**–raw** or **cooked**)
Enable (disable) raw input and output. Raw mode shall be equivalent to setting:

```
stty cs8 erase ^- kill ^- intr ^- \
    quit ^- eof ^- eol ^- -post -inpck
```

nl (**–nl**)
Disable (enable) **icrnl**. In addition, **–nl** unsets **inlcr** and **igncr**.

ek Reset ERASE and KILL characters back to system defaults.

sane
Reset all modes to some reasonable, unspecified, values.

35233 **STDIN**

35234 Although no input is read from standard input, standard input shall be used to get the current
35235 terminal I/O characteristics and to set new terminal I/O characteristics.

35236 **INPUT FILES**

35237 None.

35238 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

35239 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *stty*:

35240 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
35241 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
35242 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
35243 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

35244 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
35245 internationalization variables.

35246 *LC_CTYPE* This variable determines the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of
35247 text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte
35248 characters in arguments) and which characters are in the class **print**.

35249 *LC_MESSAGES*

35250 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
35251 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

35252 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

35253 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

35254 Default.

35255 **STDOUT**

35256 If operands are specified, no output shall be produced.

35257 If the **–g** option is specified, *stty* shall write to standard output the current settings in a form that
35258 can be used as arguments to another instance of *stty* on the same system.

35259 If the **–a** option is specified, all of the information as described in the OPERANDS section shall
35260 be written to standard output. Unless otherwise specified, this information shall be written as
35261 <space>-separated tokens in an unspecified format, on one or more lines, with an unspecified
35262 number of tokens per line. Additional information may be written.

35263 If no options or operands are specified, an unspecified subset of the information written for the
35264 **–a** option shall be written.

35265 If speed information is written as part of the default output, or if the **–a** option is specified and if
35266 the terminal input speed and output speed are the same, the speed information shall be written
35267 as follows:

35268 `"speed %d baud;", <speed>`

35269 Otherwise, speeds shall be written as:

35270 `"ispeed %d baud; ospeed %d baud;", <ispeed>, <ospeed>`

35271 In locales other than the POSIX locale, the word **baud** may be changed to something more
35272 appropriate in those locales.

35273 If control characters are written as part of the default output, or if the **–a** option is specified,
35274 control characters shall be written as:

35275 `"%s = %s;", <control-character name>, <value>`

35276 where *<value>* is either the character, or some visual representation of the character if it is non-

35277 printable, or the string *undef* if the character is disabled.

35278 **STDERR**

35279 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

35280 **OUTPUT FILES**

35281 None.

35282 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

35283 None.

35284 **EXIT STATUS**

35285 The following exit values shall be returned:

35286 0 The terminal options were read or set successfully.

35287 >0 An error occurred.

35288 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

35289 Default.

35290 **APPLICATION USAGE**

35291 The **–g** flag is designed to facilitate the saving and restoring of terminal state from the shell level.
35292 For example, a program may:

```
35293 saveterm="$(stty –g)"       # save terminal state
35294 stty (new settings)         # set new state
35295 ...                         # ...
35296 stty $saveterm              # restore terminal state
```

35297 Since the format is unspecified, the saved value is not portable across systems.

35298 Since the **–a** format is so loosely specified, scripts that save and restore terminal settings should
35299 use the **–g** option.

35300 **EXAMPLES**

35301 None.

35302 **RATIONALE**

35303 The original *stty* description was taken directly from System V and reflected the System V
35304 terminal driver **termio**. It has been modified to correspond to the terminal driver **termios**.

35305 Output modes are specified only for XSI-conformant systems. All implementations are expected
35306 to provide *stty* operands corresponding to all of the output modes they support.

35307 The *stty* utility is primarily used to tailor the user interface of the terminal, such as selecting the
35308 preferred ERASE and KILL characters. As an application programming utility, *stty* can be used
35309 within shell scripts to alter the terminal settings for the duration of the script.

35310 The **termios** section states that individual disabling of control characters is possible through the
35311 option _POSIX_VDISABLE. If enabled, two conventions currently exist for specifying this:
35312 System V uses `"^–"`, and BSD uses *undef*. Both are accepted by *stty* in this volume of
35313 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The other BSD convention of using the letter `'u'` was rejected because it
35314 conflicts with the actual letter `'u'`, which is an acceptable value for a control character.

35315 Early proposals did not specify the mapping of `"^c"` to control characters because the control
35316 characters were not specified in the POSIX locale character set description file requirements. The
35317 control character set is now specified in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
35318 Chapter 3, Definitions so the historical mapping is specified. Note that although the mapping
35319 corresponds to control-character key assignments on many terminals that use the
35320 ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard (or ASCII) character encodings, the mapping specified here is to the
35321 control characters, not their keyboard encodings.

Since **termios** supports separate speeds for input and output, two new options were added to specify each distinctly.

Some historical implementations use standard input to get and set terminal characteristics; others use standard output. Since input from a login TTY is usually restricted to the owner while output to a TTY is frequently open to anyone, using standard input provides fewer chances of accidentally (or maliciously) altering the terminal settings of other users. Using standard input also allows *stty* –**a** and *stty* –**g** output to be redirected for later use. Therefore, usage of standard input is required by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface, **<termios.h>**

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The description of **tabs** is clarified.

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The LEGACY items **iuclc**(–**iuclc**), **xcase**, **olcuc**(–**olcuc**), **lcase**(–**lcase**), and **LCASE**(–**LCASE**) are removed.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/37 is applied, applying IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #133, fixing an error in the OPERANDS section for the Combination Modes **nl**(–**nl**).

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

tabs — set terminal tabs

SYNOPSIS

XSI `tabs [–`*n*`|–a|–a2|–c|–c2|–c3|–f|–p|–s|–u] [+m[`*n*`]] [–T` *type*`]`

`tabs [–T` *type*`] [+[`*n*`]]` *n1*`[,`*n2*`,...]`

DESCRIPTION

The *tabs* utility shall display a series of characters that first clears the hardware terminal tab
XSI settings and then initializes the tab stops at the specified positions and optionally adjusts the margin.

The phrase "tab-stop position *N*" shall be taken to mean that, from the start of a line of output, tabbing to position *N* shall cause the next character output to be in the (*N*+1)th column position on that line. The maximum number of tab stops allowed is terminal-dependent.

It need not be possible to implement *tabs* on certain terminals. If the terminal type obtained from the *TERM* environment variable or **–T** option represents such a terminal, an appropriate diagnostic message shall be written to standard error and *tabs* shall exit with a status greater than zero.

OPTIONS

The *tabs* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
XSI 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for various extensions: the options **–a2**, **–c2**, and **–c3** are multi-character.

The following options shall be supported:

–n Specify repetitive tab stops separated by a uniform number of column positions, *n*, where *n* is a single-digit decimal number. The default usage of *tabs* with no arguments shall be equivalent to **tabs**–8. When **–0** is used, the tab stops shall be cleared and no new ones set.

XSI **–a** 1,10,16,36,72
Assembler, applicable to some mainframes.

XSI **–a2** 1,10,16,40,72
Assembler, applicable to some mainframes.

XSI **–c** 1,8,12,16,20,55

XSI **–u** 1,12,20,44
Assembler, applicable to some mainframes.

–T *type* Indicate the type of terminal. If this option is not supplied and the *TERM* variable is unset or null, an unspecified default terminal type shall be used. The setting of *type* shall take precedence over the value in *TERM*.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

n1[,*n2*,...] A single command line argument that consists of tab-stop values separated using either commas or <blank>s. The application shall ensure that the tab-stop values are positive decimal integers in strictly ascending order. If any number (except the first one) is preceded by a plus sign, it is taken as an increment to be added to the previous value. For example, the tab lists 1,10,20,30 and 1,10,+10,+10 are considered to be identical.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *tabs*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

TERM Determine the terminal type. If this variable is unset or null, and if the **–T** option is not specified, an unspecified default terminal type shall be used.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

If standard output is a terminal, the appropriate sequence to clear and set the tab stops may be written to standard output in an unspecified format. If standard output is not a terminal, undefined results occur.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

35431 **OUTPUT FILES**

35432 None.

35433 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

35434 None.

35435 **EXIT STATUS**

35436 The following exit values shall be returned:

35437 0 Successful completion.

35438 >0 An error occurred.

35439 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

35440 Default.

35441 **APPLICATION USAGE**

35442 This utility makes use of the terminal's hardware tabs and the *stty tabs* option.

35443 This utility is not recommended for application use.

35444 Some integrated display units might not have escape sequences to set tab stops, but may be set
35445 by internal system calls. On these terminals, *tabs* works if standard output is directed to the
35446 terminal; if output is directed to another file, however, *tabs* fails.

35447 **EXAMPLES**

35448 None.

35449 **RATIONALE**

35450 Consideration was given to having the *tput* utility handle all of the functions described in *tabs*.
35451 However, the separate *tabs* utility was retained because it seems more intuitive to use a
35452 command named *tabs* than *tput* with a new option. The *tput* utility does not support setting or
35453 clearing tabs, and no known historical version of *tabs* supports the capability of setting arbitrary
35454 tab stops.

35455 The System V *tabs* interface is very complex; the version in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x
35456 has a reduced feature list, but many of the features omitted were restored as part of the XSI
35457 option even though the supported languages and coding styles are primarily historical.

35458 There was considerable sentiment for specifying only a means of resetting the tabs back to a
35459 known state—presumably the "standard" of tabs every eight positions. The following features
35460 were omitted:

35461 • Setting tab stops via the first line in a file, using *−−file*. Since even the SVID has no
35462 complete explanation of this feature, it is doubtful that it is in widespread use.

35463 In an early proposal, a **−t** *tablist* option was added for consistency with *expand*; this was later
35464 removed when inconsistencies with the historical list of tabs were identified.

35465 Consideration was given to adding a **−p** option that would output the current tab settings so
35466 that they could be saved and then later restored. This was not accepted because querying the tab
35467 stops of the terminal is not a capability in historical *terminfo* or *termcap* facilities and might not be
35468 supported on a wide range of terminals.

35469 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

35470 None.

35471 **SEE ALSO**

35472 *expand*, *stty*, *tput*, *unexpand*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

The *tabs* utility is removed from the User Portability Utilities option. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

35482 **NAME**

35483 tail — copy the last part of a file

35484 **SYNOPSIS**

35485 `tail [–f] [–c number|–n number] [file]`

35486 **DESCRIPTION**

35487 The *tail* utility shall copy its input file to the standard output beginning at a designated place.

35488 Copying shall begin at the point in the file indicated by the **–c** *number* or **–n** *number* options. The
35489 option-argument *number* shall be counted in units of lines or bytes, according to the options **–n**
35490 and **–c**. Both line and byte counts start from 1.

35491 Tails relative to the end of the file may be saved in an internal buffer, and thus may be limited in
35492 length. Such a buffer, if any, shall be no smaller than {LINE_MAX}*10 bytes.

35493 **OPTIONS**

35494 The *tail* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
35495 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that `'+'` may be recognized as an option delimiter as well
35496 as `'–'`.

35497 The following options shall be supported:

35498 **–c** *number* The application shall ensure that the *number* option-argument is a decimal integer
35499 whose sign affects the location in the file, measured in bytes, to begin the copying:

35500

Sign	Copying Starts
+	Relative to the beginning of the file.
–	Relative to the end of the file.
none	Relative to the end of the file.

35501
35502
35503

35504 The application shall ensure that if the sign of the *number* option-argument is `'+'`,
35505 the *number* option-argument is a positive decimal integer.

35506 The origin for counting shall be 1; that is, **–c** +1 represents the first byte of the file,
35507 **–c** –1 the last.

35508 **–f** If the input file is a regular file or if the *file* operand specifies a FIFO, do not
35509 terminate after the last line of the input file has been copied, but read and copy
35510 further bytes from the input file when they become available. If no *file* operand is
35511 specified and standard input is a pipe or FIFO, the **–f** option shall be ignored. If the
35512 input file is not a FIFO, pipe, or regular file, it is unspecified whether or not the **–f**
35513 option shall be ignored.

35514 **–n** *number* This option shall be equivalent to **–c** *number*, except the starting location in the file
35515 shall be measured in lines instead of bytes. The origin for counting shall be 1; that
35516 is, **–n** +1 represents the first line of the file, **–n** –1 the last.

35517 If neither **–c** nor **–n** is specified, **–n** 10 shall be assumed.

35518 **OPERANDS**

35519 The following operand shall be supported:

35520 *file* A pathname of an input file. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input
35521 shall be used.

35522 **STDIN**

35523 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES
35524 section.

35525 **INPUT FILES**

35526 If the **–c** option is specified, the input file can contain arbitrary data; otherwise, the input file
35527 shall be a text file.

35528 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

35529 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *tail*:

35530 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
35531 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
35532 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
35533 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

35534 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
35535 internationalization variables.

35536 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
35537 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
35538 arguments and input files).

35539 *LC_MESSAGES*
35540 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
35541 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

35542 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

35543 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

35544 Default.

35545 **STDOUT**

35546 The designated portion of the input file shall be written to standard output.

35547 **STDERR**

35548 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

35549 **OUTPUT FILES**

35550 None.

35551 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

35552 None.

35553 **EXIT STATUS**

35554 The following exit values shall be returned:

35555 0 Successful completion.

35556 >0 An error occurred.

35557 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

35558 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **–c** option should be used with caution when the input is a text file containing multi-byte characters; it may produce output that does not start on a character boundary.

Although the input file to *tail* can be any type, the results might not be what would be expected on some character special device files or on file types not described by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Since this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify the block size used when doing input, *tail* need not read all of the data from devices that only perform block transfers.

EXAMPLES

The **–f** option can be used to monitor the growth of a file that is being written by some other process. For example, the command:

```
tail –f fred
```

prints the last ten lines of the file **fred**, followed by any lines that are appended to **fred** between the time *tail* is initiated and killed. As another example, the command:

```
tail –f –c 15 fred
```

prints the last 15 bytes of the file **fred**, followed by any bytes that are appended to **fred** between the time *tail* is initiated and killed.

RATIONALE

This version of *tail* was created to allow conformance to the Utility Syntax Guidelines. The historical **–b** option was omitted because of the general non-portability of block-sized units of text. The **–c** option historically meant "characters", but this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x indicates that it means "bytes". This was selected to allow reasonable implementations when multi-byte characters are possible; it was not named **–b** to avoid confusion with the historical **–b**.

The origin of counting both lines and bytes is 1, matching all widespread historical implementations. Hence *tail* **–n** +0 is not conforming usage because it attempts to output line zero; but note that *tail* **–n** 0 does conform, and outputs nothing.

Earlier versions of this standard allowed the following forms in the SYNOPSIS:

```
tail –[number][b|c|l][f] [file]
tail +[number][b|c|l][f] [file]
```

These forms are no longer specified by this standard, but may be present in some implementations.

The restriction on the internal buffer is a compromise between the historical System V implementation of 4 096 bytes and the BSD 32 768 bytes.

The **–f** option has been implemented as a loop that sleeps for 1 second and copies any bytes that are available. This is sufficient, but if more efficient methods of determining when new data are available are developed, implementations are encouraged to use them.

Historical documentation indicates that *tail* ignores the **–f** option if the input file is a pipe (pipe and FIFO on systems that support FIFOs). On BSD-based systems, this has been true; on System V-based systems, this was true when input was taken from standard input, but it did not ignore the **–f** flag if a FIFO was named as the *file* operand. Since the **–f** option is not useful on pipes and all historical implementations ignore **–f** if no *file* operand is specified and standard input is a pipe, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires this behavior. However, since the **–f** option is useful on a FIFO, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x also requires that if a FIFO is named, the **–f** option shall not be ignored. Earlier versions of the standard did not state any requirement for the case where no *file* operand is specified and standard input is a FIFO. The standard has been updated to reflect current practice which is to treat this case the same as a pipe on standard

input. Although historical behavior does not ignore the **–f** option for other file types, this is unspecified so that implementations are allowed to ignore the **–f** option if it is known that the file cannot be extended.

This was changed to the current form based on comments noting that **–c** was almost never used without specifying a number and that there was no need to specify **–l** if **–n** *number* was given.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

head

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS lines and associated text are removed.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying that `'+'` may be recognized as an option delimiter in the OPTIONS section.

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #100 is applied, adding the requirement on applications that if the sign of the option-argument *number* is `'+'`, the *number* option-argument is a positive decimal integer.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-114 is applied, updating the OPTIONS section (the **–f** option).

35628 **NAME**

35629 talk — talk to another user

35630 **SYNOPSIS**

35631 UP

```
talk address [terminal]
```

35632 **DESCRIPTION**

35633 The *talk* utility is a two-way, screen-oriented communication program.

35634 When first invoked, *talk* shall send a message similar to:

35635 `Message from <unspecified string>`
35636 `talk: connection requested by your_address`
35637 `talk: respond with: talk your_address`

35638 to the specified *address*. At this point, the recipient of the message can reply by typing:

35639 `talk your_address`

35640 Once communication is established, the two parties can type simultaneously, with their output
35641 displayed in separate regions of the screen. Characters shall be processed as follows:

35642 • Typing the alert character shall alert the recipient's terminal.

35643 • Typing <control>-L shall cause the sender's screen regions to be refreshed.

35644 • Typing the erase and kill characters shall affect the sender's terminal in the manner
35645 described by the **termios** interface in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
35646 Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

35647 • Typing the interrupt or end-of-file characters shall terminate the local *talk* utility. Once the
35648 *talk* session has been terminated on one side, the other side of the *talk* session shall be
35649 notified that the *talk* session has been terminated and shall be able to do nothing except
35650 exit.

35651 • Typing characters from *LC_CTYPE* classifications **print** or **space** shall cause those
35652 characters to be sent to the recipient's terminal.

35653 • When and only when the *stty* **iexten** local mode is enabled, the existence and processing of
35654 additional special control characters and multi-byte or single-byte functions shall be
35655 implementation-defined.

35656 • Typing other non-printable characters shall cause implementation-defined sequences of
35657 printable characters to be sent to the recipient's terminal.

35658 Permission to be a recipient of a *talk* message can be denied or granted by use of the *mesg* utility.
35659 However, a user's privilege may further constrain the domain of accessibility of other users'
35660 terminals. The *talk* utility shall fail when the user lacks the appropriate privileges to perform the
35661 requested action.

35662 Certain block-mode terminals do not have all the capabilities necessary to support the
35663 simultaneous exchange of messages required for *talk*. When this type of exchange cannot be
35664 supported on such terminals, the implementation may support an exchange with reduced levels
35665 of simultaneous interaction or it may report an error describing the terminal-related deficiency.

35666 **OPTIONS**

35667 None.

35668 **OPERANDS**

35669 The following operands shall be supported:

35670 *address* The recipient of the *talk* session. One form of *address* is the <*user name*>, as returned
35671 by the *who* utility. Other address formats and how they are handled are
35672 unspecified.

35673 *terminal* If the recipient is logged in more than once, the *terminal* argument can be used to
35674 indicate the appropriate terminal name. If *terminal* is not specified, the *talk* message
35675 shall be displayed on one or more accessible terminals in use by the recipient. The
35676 format of *terminal* shall be the same as that returned by the *who* utility.

35677 **STDIN**

35678 Characters read from standard input shall be copied to the recipient's terminal in an unspecified
35679 manner. If standard input is not a terminal, talk shall write a diagnostic message and exit with a
35680 non-zero status.

35681 **INPUT FILES**

35682 None.

35683 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

35684 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *talk*:

35685 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
35686 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
35687 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
35688 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

35689 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
35690 internationalization variables.

35691 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
35692 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
35693 arguments and input files). If the recipient's locale does not use an *LC_CTYPE*
35694 equivalent to the sender's, the results are undefined.

35695 *LC_MESSAGES*
35696 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
35697 diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to
35698 standard output.

35699 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

35700 *TERM* Determine the name of the invoker's terminal type. If this variable is unset or null,
35701 an unspecified default terminal type shall be used.

35702 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

35703 When the *talk* utility receives a SIGINT signal, the utility shall terminate and exit with a zero
35704 status. It shall take the standard action for all other signals.

35705 **STDOUT**

35706 If standard output is a terminal, characters copied from the recipient's standard input may be
35707 written to standard output. Standard output also may be used for diagnostic messages. If
35708 standard output is not a terminal, *talk* shall exit with a non-zero status.

35709 **STDERR**
35710 None.

35711 **OUTPUT FILES**
35712 None.

35713 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
35714 None.

35715 **EXIT STATUS**
35716 The following exit values shall be returned:

35717 0 Successful completion.

35718 >0 An error occurred or *talk* was invoked on a terminal incapable of supporting it.

35719 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
35720 Default.

35721 **APPLICATION USAGE**
35722 Because the handling of non-printable, non-<space>s is tied to the *stty* description of **iexten**,
35723 implementation extensions within the terminal driver can be accessed. For example, some
35724 implementations provide line editing functions with certain control character sequences.

35725 **EXAMPLES**
35726 None.

35727 **RATIONALE**
35728 The *write* utility was included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x since it can be
35729 implemented on all terminal types. The *talk* utility, which cannot be implemented on certain
35730 terminals, was considered to be a "better" communications interface. Both of these programs are
35731 in widespread use on historical implementations. Therefore, both utilities have been specified.

35732 All references to networking abilities (*talk*ing to a user on another system) were removed as
35733 being outside the scope of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

35734 Historical BSD and System V versions of *talk* terminate both of the conversations when either
35735 user breaks out of the session. This can lead to adverse consequences if a user unwittingly
35736 continues to enter text that is interpreted by the shell when the other terminates the session.
35737 Therefore, the version of *talk* specified by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires both
35738 users to terminate their end of the session explicitly.

35739 Only messages sent to the terminal of the invoking user can be internationalized in any way:

35740 • The original "Message from <*unspecified string*> ..." message sent to the terminal of the
35741 recipient cannot be internationalized because the environment of the recipient is as yet
35742 inaccessible to the *talk* utility. The environment of the invoking party is irrelevant.

35743 • Subsequent communication between the two parties cannot be internationalized because
35744 the two parties may specify different languages in their environment (and non-portable
35745 characters cannot be mapped from one language to another).

35746 • Neither party can be required to communicate in a language other than C and/or the one
35747 specified by their environment because unavailable terminal hardware support (for
35748 example, fonts) may be required.

35749 The text in the STDOUT section reflects the usage of the verb "display" in this section; some *talk*
35750 implementations actually use standard output to write to the terminal, but this volume of
35751 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not require that to be the case.

35752 The format of the terminal name is unspecified, but the descriptions of *ps*, *talk*, *who*, and *write*
35753 require that they all use or accept the same format.

The handling of non-printable characters is partially implementation-defined because the details of mapping them to printable sequences is not needed by the user. Historical implementations, for security reasons, disallow the transmission of non-printable characters that may send commands to the other terminal.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

mesg, *stty*, *who*, *write*, the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

35767 **NAME**

35768 tee — duplicate standard input

35769 **SYNOPSIS**

35770 `tee [–ai] [file...]`

35771 **DESCRIPTION**

35772 The *tee* utility shall copy standard input to standard output, making a copy in zero or more files.
35773 The *tee* utility shall not buffer output.

35774 If the –**a** option is not specified, output files shall be written (see Section 1.7.1.4 (on page 4).

35775 **OPTIONS**

35776 The *tee* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
35777 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

35778 The following options shall be supported:

35779 –**a** Append the output to the files.

35780 –**i** Ignore the SIGINT signal.

35781 **OPERANDS**

35782 The following operands shall be supported:

35783 *file* A pathname of an output file. Processing of at least 13 *file* operands shall be
35784 supported.

35785 **STDIN**

35786 The standard input can be of any type.

35787 **INPUT FILES**

35788 None.

35789 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

35790 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *tee*:

35791 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
35792 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
35793 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
35794 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

35795 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
35796 internationalization variables.

35797 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
35798 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
35799 arguments).

35800 *LC_MESSAGES*
35801 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
35802 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

35803 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

35804 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

35805 Default, except that if the –**i** option was specified, SIGINT shall be ignored.

35806 **STDOUT**
35807 The standard output shall be a copy of the standard input.

35808 **STDERR**
35809 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

35810 **OUTPUT FILES**
35811 If any *file* operands are specified, the standard input shall be copied to each named file.

35812 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
35813 None.

35814 **EXIT STATUS**
35815 The following exit values shall be returned:

35816 0 The standard input was successfully copied to all output files.

35817 >0 An error occurred.

35818 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
35819 If a write to any successfully opened *file* operand fails, writes to other successfully opened *file*
35820 operands and standard output shall continue, but the exit status shall be non-zero. Otherwise,
35821 the default actions specified in Section 1.11 apply.

35822 **APPLICATION USAGE**
35823 The *tee* utility is usually used in a pipeline, to make a copy of the output of some utility.

35824 The *file* operand is technically optional, but *tee* is no more useful than *cat* when none is specified.

35825 **EXAMPLES**
35826 Save an unsorted intermediate form of the data in a pipeline:

35827 ```
... | tee unsorted | sort > sorted
```

35828 **RATIONALE**
35829 The buffering requirement means that *tee* is not allowed to use ISO C standard fully buffered or
35830 line-buffered writes. It does not mean that *tee* has to do 1-byte reads followed by 1-byte writes.

35831 It should be noted that early versions of BSD ignore any invalid options and accept a single `'-'`
35832 as an alternative to **-i**. They also print a message if unable to open a file:

35833 ```
"tee: cannot access %s\n", <pathname>
```

35834 Historical implementations ignore write errors. This is explicitly not permitted by this volume of
35835 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

35836 Some historical implementations use O_APPEND when providing append mode; others use the
35837 *lseek*( ) function to seek to the end-of-file after opening the file without O_APPEND. This volume
35838 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires functionality equivalent to using O_APPEND; see Section
35839 1.7.1.4 (on page 4).

35840 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
35841 None.

35842 **SEE ALSO**
35843 Chapter 1 (on page 1), *cat*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *lseek*( )

35844 **CHANGE HISTORY**
35845 First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #168 is applied.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

test — evaluate expression

SYNOPSIS

```
test [expression]
[ [expression] ]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *test* utility shall evaluate the *expression* and indicate the result of the evaluation by its exit status. An exit status of zero indicates that the expression evaluated as true and an exit status of 1 indicates that the expression evaluated as false.

In the second form of the utility, which uses `"[]"` rather than *test*, the application shall ensure that the square brackets are separate arguments.

OPTIONS

The *test* utility shall not recognize the `"--"` argument in the manner specified by Guideline 10 in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

No options shall be supported.

OPERANDS

The application shall ensure that all operators and elements of primaries are presented as separate arguments to the *test* utility.

The following primaries can be used to construct *expression*:

–b *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a block special file. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a block special file.

–c *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a character special file. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a character special file.

–d *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a directory. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a directory.

–e *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved.

–f *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a regular file. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a regular file.

–g *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and has its set-group-ID flag set. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but does not have its set-group-ID flag set.

–h *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a symbolic link. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a symbolic link. If the final component of *pathname* is a symlink, that symlink is not followed.

–L *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a symbolic link. False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a symbolic link. If the final component of *pathname* is a symlink, that symlink is not followed.

35892 **–n** *string* True if the length of *string* is non-zero; otherwise, false.

35893 **–p** *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a FIFO. False if *pathname* cannot
35894 be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a FIFO.

35895 **–r** *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and for which permission to read from
35896 the file will be granted, as defined in Section 1.7.1.4 (on page 4). False if *pathname*
35897 cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file for which permission to read
35898 from the file will not be granted.

35899 **–S** *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and is a socket. False if *pathname*
35900 cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but is not a socket.

35901 **–s** *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and has a size greater than zero. False
35902 if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but does
35903 not have a size greater than zero.

35904 **–t** *file_descriptor*
35905 True if file descriptor number *file_descriptor* is open and is associated with a
35906 terminal. False if *file_descriptor* is not a valid file descriptor number, or if file
35907 descriptor number *file_descriptor* is not open, or if it is open but is not associated
35908 with a terminal.

35909 **–u** *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and has its set-user-ID flag set. False if
35910 *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists but does
35911 not have its set-user-ID flag set.

35912 **–w** *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and for which permission to write to
35913 the file will be granted, as defined in Section 1.7.1.4 (on page 4). False if *pathname*
35914 cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file for which permission to write to
35915 the file will not be granted.

35916 **–x** *pathname* True if *pathname* resolves to a file that exists and for which permission to execute
35917 the file (or search it, if it is a directory) will be granted, as defined in Section 1.7.1.4
35918 (on page 4). False if *pathname* cannot be resolved, or if *pathname* resolves to a file
35919 for which permission to execute (or search) the file will not be granted.

35920 **–z** *string* True if the length of string *string* is zero; otherwise, false.

35921 *string* True if the string *string* is not the null string; otherwise, false.

35922 *s1* **=** *s2* True if the strings *s1* and *s2* are identical; otherwise, false.

35923 *s1* **!=** *s2* True if the strings *s1* and *s2* are not identical; otherwise, false.

35924 *n1* **–eq** *n2* True if the integers *n1* and *n2* are algebraically equal; otherwise, false.

35925 *n1* **–ne** *n2* True if the integers *n1* and *n2* are not algebraically equal; otherwise, false.

35926 *n1* **–gt** *n2* True if the integer *n1* is algebraically greater than the integer *n2*; otherwise, false.

35927 *n1* **–ge** *n2* True if the integer *n1* is algebraically greater than or equal to the integer *n2*;
35928 otherwise, false.

35929 *n1* **–lt** *n2* True if the integer *n1* is algebraically less than the integer *n2*; otherwise, false.

35930 *n1* **–le** *n2* True if the integer *n1* is algebraically less than or equal to the integer *n2*; otherwise,
35931 false.

35932 OB XSI *expression1* **–a** *expression2*
35933 True if both *expression1* and *expression2* are true; otherwise, false. The **–a** binary
35934 primary is left associative. It has a higher precedence than **–o**.

35935 OB XSI *expression1* **–o** *expression2*

35936 35937 True if either *expression1* or *expression2* is true; otherwise, false. The **–o** binary primary is left associative.

35938 35939 35940 With the exception of the **–h** *file* and **–L** *file* primaries, if a *file* argument is a symbolic link, *test* shall evaluate the expression by resolving the symbolic link and using the file referenced by the link.

35941 These primaries can be combined with the following operators:

35942 **!** *expression* True if *expression* is false. False if *expression* is true.

35943 35944 OB XSI **(** *expression* **)** True if *expression* is true. False if *expression* is false. The parentheses can be used to alter the normal precedence and associativity.

35945 OB XSI The primaries with two elements of the form:

35946 *–primary_operator primary_operand*

35947 are known as *unary primaries*. The primaries with three elements in either of the two forms:

35948 *primary_operand –primary_operator primary_operand*

35949 *primary_operand primary_operator primary_operand*

35950 35951 35952 are known as *binary primaries*. Additional implementation-defined operators and *primary_operator*s may be provided by implementations. They shall be of the form *–operator* where the first character of *operator* is not a digit.

35953 35954 35955 The algorithm for determining the precedence of the operators and the return value that shall be generated is based on the number of arguments presented to *test*. (However, when using the "`[...]`" form, the right-bracket final argument shall not be counted in this algorithm.)

35956 In the following list, $1, $2, $3, and $4 represent the arguments presented to *test*:

35957 0 arguments: Exit false (1).

35958 1 argument: Exit true (0) if $1 is not null; otherwise, exit false.

35959 2 arguments:

- If $1 is `'!'`, exit true if $2 is null, false if $2 is not null.

35960 35961
- If $1 is a unary primary, exit true if the unary test is true, false if the unary test is false.

35962
- Otherwise, produce unspecified results.

35963 3 arguments:

- If $2 is a binary primary, perform the binary test of $1 and $3.

35964
- If $1 is `'!'`, negate the two-argument test of $2 and $3.

35965 XSI
- If $1 is `'('` and $3 is `')'`, perform the unary test of $2. On systems that do not support the XSI option, the results are unspecified if $1 is `'('` and $3 is `')'`.

35968
- Otherwise, produce unspecified results.

35969 4 arguments:

- If $1 is `'!'`, negate the three-argument test of $2, $3, and $4.

35970 XSI
- If $1 is `'('` and $4 is `')'`, perform the two-argument test of $2 and $3. On systems that do not support the XSI option, the results are unspecified if $1 is `'('` and $4 is `')'`.

35973
- Otherwise, the results are unspecified.

>4 arguments: The results are unspecified.

OB XSI On XSI-conformant systems, combinations of primaries and operators shall be evaluated using the precedence and associativity rules described previously. In addition, the string comparison binary primaries `'='` and `"!="` shall have a higher precedence than any unary primary.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *test*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 *expression* evaluated to true.

1 *expression* evaluated to false or *expression* was missing.

>1 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The XSI extensions specifying the **–a** and **–o** binary primaries and the '(' and ')' operators have been marked obsolescent. (Many expressions using them are ambiguously defined by the grammar depending on the specific expressions being evaluated.) Scripts using these expressions should be converted to the forms given below. Even though many implementations will continue to support these obsolescent forms, scripts should be extremely careful when dealing with user-supplied input that could be confused with these and other primaries and operators. Unless the application writer knows all the cases that produce input to the script, invocations like:

```
test "$1" –a "$2"
```

should be written as:

```
test "$1" && test "$2"
```

to avoid problems if a user supplied values such as $1 set to '!' and $2 set to the null string. That is, in cases where maximal portability is of concern, replace:

```
test expr1 –a expr2
```

with:

```
test expr1 && test expr2
```

and replace:

```
test expr1 –o expr2
```

with:

```
test expr1 || test expr2
```

but note that, in *test*, **–a** has higher precedence than **–o** while "&&" and "||" have equal precedence in the shell.

Parentheses or braces can be used in the shell command language to effect grouping.

Parentheses must be escaped when using *sh*; for example:

```
test \( expr1 –a expr2 \) –o expr3
```

This command is not always portable even on XSI-conformant systems depending on the expressions specified by *expr*1, *expr*2, and *expr*3. The following form can be used instead:

```
( test expr1 && test expr2 ) || test expr3
```

The two commands:

```
test "$1"
test ! "$1"
```

could not be used reliably on some historical systems. Unexpected results would occur if such a *string* expression were used and $1 expanded to '!', '(', or a known unary primary. Better constructs are:

```
test –n "$1"
test –z "$1"
```

respectively.

Historical systems have also been unreliable given the common construct:

```
test "$response" = "expected string"
```

One of the following is a more reliable form:


```
test "X$response" = "Xexpected string"
test "expected string" = "$response"
```

Note that the second form assumes that *expected string* could not be confused with any unary primary. If *expected string* starts with '–', '(', '!', or even '=', the first form should be used instead. Using the preceding rules without the XSI marked extensions, any of the three comparison forms is reliable, given any input. (However, note that the strings are quoted in all cases.)

Because the string comparison binary primaries, '=' and "!=", have a higher precedence than any unary primary in the greater than 4 argument case, unexpected results can occur if arguments are not properly prepared. For example, in:

```
test –d $1 –o –d $2
```

If $1 evaluates to a possible directory name of '=', the first three arguments are considered a string comparison, which shall cause a syntax error when the second **–d** is encountered. One of the following forms prevents this; the second is preferred:

```
test \( –d "$1" \) –o \( –d "$2" \)
test –d "$1" || test –d "$2"
```

Also in the greater than 4 argument case:

```
test "$1" = "bat" –a "$2" = "ball"
```

syntax errors occur if $1 evaluates to '(' or '!'. One of the following forms prevents this; the third is preferred:

```
test "X$1" = "Xbat" –a "X$2" = "Xball"
test "$1" = "bat" && test "$2" = "ball"
test "X$1" = "Xbat" && test "X$2" = "Xball"
```

EXAMPLES

1. Exit if there are not two or three arguments (two variations):

   ```
   if [ $# –ne 2 –a $# –ne 3 ]; then exit 1; fi
   if [ $# –lt 2 –o $# –gt 3 ]; then exit 1; fi
   ```

2. Perform a *mkdir* if a directory does not exist:

   ```
   test ! –d tempdir && mkdir tempdir
   ```

3. Wait for a file to become non-readable:

   ```
   while test –r thefile
   do
       sleep 30
   done
   echo '"thefile" is no longer readable'
   ```

4. Perform a command if the argument is one of three strings (two variations):

   ```
   if [ "$1" = "pear" ] || [ "$1" = "grape" ] || [ "$1" = "apple" ]
   then
       command
   fi
   ```

   ```
   case "$1" in
       pear|grape|apple) command ;;
   esac
   ```

RATIONALE

The KornShell-derived conditional command (double bracket **[[ ]]**) was removed from the shell command language description in an early proposal. Objections were raised that the real problem is misuse of the *test* command ([), and putting it into the shell is the wrong way to fix the problem. Instead, proper documentation and a new shell reserved word (**!**) are sufficient.

Tests that require multiple *test* operations can be done at the shell level using individual invocations of the *test* command and shell logicals, rather than using the error-prone **–o** flag of *test*.

XSI-conformant systems support more than four arguments.

XSI-conformant systems support the combining of primaries with the following constructs:

expression1 **–a** *expression2*
True if both *expression1* and *expression2* are true.

expression1 **–o** *expression2*
True if at least one of *expression1* and *expression2* are true.

(*expression* **)**
True if *expression* is true.

In evaluating these more complex combined expressions, the following precedence rules are used:

- The unary primaries have higher precedence than the algebraic binary primaries.
- The unary primaries have lower precedence than the string binary primaries.
- The unary and binary primaries have higher precedence than the unary *string* primary.
- The **!** operator has higher precedence than the **–a** operator, and the **–a** operator has higher precedence than the **–o** operator.
- The **–a** and **–o** operators are left associative.
- The parentheses can be used to alter the normal precedence and associativity.

The BSD and System V versions of **–f** are not the same. The BSD definition was:

–f *file* True if *file* exists and is not a directory.

The SVID version (true if the file exists and is a regular file) was chosen for this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because its use is consistent with the **–b**, **–c**, **–d**, and **–p** operands (*file* exists and is a specific file type).

The **–e** primary, possessing similar functionality to that provided by the C shell, was added because it provides the only way for a shell script to find out if a file exists without trying to open the file. Since implementations are allowed to add additional file types, a portable script cannot use:

```
test –b foo –o –c foo –o –d foo –o –f foo –o –p foo
```

to find out if **foo** is an existing file. On historical BSD systems, the existence of a file could be determined by:

```
test –f foo –o –d foo
```

but there was no easy way to determine that an existing file was a regular file. An early proposal used the KornShell **–a** primary (with the same meaning), but this was changed to **–e** because there were concerns about the high probability of humans confusing the **–a** primary with the **–a** binary operator.

The following options were not included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, although they

are provided by some implementations. These operands should not be used by new implementations for other purposes:

–k *file* True if *file* exists and its sticky bit is set.

–C *file* True if *file* is a contiguous file.

–V *file* True if *file* is a version file.

The following option was not included because it was undocumented in most implementations, has been removed from some implementations (including System V), and the functionality is provided by the shell (see Section 2.6.2 (on page 38).

–l *string* The length of the string *string*.

The **–b**, **–c**, **–g**, **–p**, **–u**, and **–x** operands are derived from the SVID; historical BSD does not provide them. The **–k** operand is derived from System V; historical BSD does not provide it.

On historical BSD systems, *test* **–w** *directory* always returned false because *test* tried to open the directory for writing, which always fails.

Some additional primaries newly invented or from the KornShell appeared in an early proposal as part of the conditional command ([[ ]]): *s1* **>** *s2*, *s1* **<** *s2*, *str* **=** *pattern*, *str* **!=** *pattern*, *f1* **–nt** *f2*, *f1* **–ot** *f2*, and *f1* **–ef** *f2*. They were not carried forward into the *test* utility when the conditional command was removed from the shell because they have not been included in the *test* utility built into historical implementations of the *sh* utility.

The **–t** *file_descriptor* primary is shown with a mandatory argument because the grammar is ambiguous if it can be omitted. Historical implementations have allowed it to be omitted, providing a default of 1.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Section 1.7.1.4 (on page 4), *find*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

The **–h** operand is added for symbolic links, and access permission requirements are clarified for the **–r**, **–w**, and **–x** operands to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The **–L** and **–S** operands are added for symbolic links and sockets.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/38 is applied, adding XSI margin marking and shading to a line in the OPERANDS section referring to the use of parentheses as arguments to the *test* utility.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/30 is applied, rewording the existence primaries for the *test* utility.

Issue 7

Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #107 is applied.

NAME

time — time a simple command

SYNOPSIS

```
time [-p] utility [argument...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *time* utility shall invoke the utility named by the *utility* operand with arguments supplied as the *argument* operands and write a message to standard error that lists timing statistics for the utility. The message shall include the following information:

- The elapsed (real) time between invocation of *utility* and its termination.
- The User CPU time, equivalent to the sum of the *tms_utime* and *tms_cutime* fields returned by the *times*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x for the process in which *utility* is executed.
- The System CPU time, equivalent to the sum of the *tms_stime* and *tms_cstime* fields returned by the *times*( ) function for the process in which *utility* is executed.

The precision of the timing shall be no less than the granularity defined for the size of the clock tick unit on the system, but the results shall be reported in terms of standard time units (for example, 0.02 seconds, 00:00:00.02, 1m33.75s, 365.21 seconds), not numbers of clock ticks.

When *time* is used as part of a pipeline, the times reported are unspecified, except when it is the sole command within a grouping command (see Section 2.9.4.1 (on page 52)) in that pipeline. For example, the commands on the left are unspecified; those on the right report on utilities **a** and **c**, respectively:

```
time a | b | c     { time a; } | b | c
a | b | time c     a | b | (time c)
```

OPTIONS

The *time* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

-p Write the timing output to standard error in the format shown in the STDERR section.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

utility The name of a utility that is to be invoked. If the *utility* operand names any of the special built-in utilities in Section 2.14 (on page 64), the results are undefined.

argument Any string to be supplied as an argument when invoking the utility named by the *utility* operand.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

36222 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

36223 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *time*:

36224 36225 36226 36227 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

36228 36229 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

36230 36231 36232 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

36233 36234 36235 *LC_MESSAGES*
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic and informative messages written to standard error.

36236 36237 *LC_NUMERIC*
Determine the locale for numeric formatting.

36238 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

36239 36240 36241 *PATH* Determine the search path that shall be used to locate the utility to be invoked; see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

36242 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

36243 Default.

36244 **STDOUT**

36245 Not used.

36246 **STDERR**

36247 36248 The standard error shall be used to write the timing statistics. If **−p** is specified, the following format shall be used in the POSIX locale:

36249 36250
```
"real %f\nuser %f\nsys %f\n", <real seconds>, <user seconds>,
    <system seconds>
```

36251 36252 36253 36254 36255 36256 where each floating-point number shall be expressed in seconds. The precision used may be less than the default six digits of `%f`, but shall be sufficiently precise to accommodate the size of the clock tick on the system (for example, if there were 60 clock ticks per second, at least two digits shall follow the radix character). The number of digits following the radix character shall be no less than one, even if this always results in a trailing zero. The implementation may append white space and additional information following the format shown here.

36257 **OUTPUT FILES**

36258 None.

36259 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

36260 None.

36261 **EXIT STATUS**

36262 36263 If the *utility* utility is invoked, the exit status of *time* shall be the exit status of *utility*; otherwise, the *time* utility shall exit with one of the following values:

36264 1-125 An error occurred in the *time* utility.

36265 126 The utility specified by *utility* was found but could not be invoked.

127 The utility specified by *utility* could not be found.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *command*, *env*, *nice*, *nohup*, *time*, and *xargs* utilities have been specified to use exit code 127 if an error occurs so that applications can distinguish "failure to find a utility" from "invoked utility exited with an error indication". The value 127 was chosen because it is not commonly used for other meanings; most utilities use small values for "normal error conditions" and the values above 128 can be confused with termination due to receipt of a signal. The value 126 was chosen in a similar manner to indicate that the utility could be found, but not invoked. Some scripts produce meaningful error messages differentiating the 126 and 127 cases. The distinction between exit codes 126 and 127 is based on KornShell practice that uses 127 when all attempts to *exec* the utility fail with [ENOENT], and uses 126 when any attempt to *exec* the utility fails for any other reason.

EXAMPLES

It is frequently desirable to apply *time* to pipelines or lists of commands. This can be done by placing pipelines and command lists in a single file; this file can then be invoked as a utility, and the *time* applies to everything in the file.

Alternatively, the following command can be used to apply *time* to a complex command:

```
time sh -c 'complex-command-line'
```

RATIONALE

When the *time* utility was originally proposed to be included in the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard, questions were raised about its suitability for inclusion on the grounds that it was not useful for conforming applications, specifically:

- The underlying CPU definitions from the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are vague, so the numeric output could not be compared accurately between systems or even between invocations.
- The creation of portable benchmark programs was outside the scope this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

However, *time* does fit in the scope of user portability. Human judgement can be applied to the analysis of the output, and it could be very useful in hands-on debugging of applications or in providing subjective measures of system performance. Hence it has been included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

The default output format has been left unspecified because historical implementations differ greatly in their style of depicting this numeric output. The **-p** option was invented to provide scripts with a common means of obtaining this information.

In the KornShell, *time* is a shell reserved word that can be used to time an entire pipeline, rather than just a simple command. The POSIX definition has been worded to allow this implementation. Consideration was given to invalidating this approach because of the historical model from the C shell and System V shell. However, since the System V *time* utility historically has not produced accurate results in pipeline timing (because the constituent processes are not all owned by the same parent process, as allowed by POSIX), it did not seem worthwhile to break historical KornShell usage.

The term *utility* is used, rather than *command*, to highlight the fact that shell compound commands, pipelines, special built-ins, and so on, cannot be used directly. However, *utility* includes user application programs and shell scripts, not just the standard utilities.

36312 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

36313 None.

36314 **SEE ALSO**

36315 Chapter 2 (on page 29), *sh*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *times*( )

36316 **CHANGE HISTORY**

36317 First released in Issue 2.

36318 **Issue 6**

36319 This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

36320 **Issue 7**

36321 The *time* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability
36322 Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

36323 SD5-XCU-ERN-115 is applied, updating the example in the DESCRIPTION.

NAME

touch — change file access and modification times

SYNOPSIS

```
touch [–acm] [–r ref_file|–t time] file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *touch* utility shall change the modification times, access times, or both of files. The modification time shall be equivalent to the value of the *st_mtime* member of the **stat** structure for a file, as described in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; the access time shall be equivalent to the value of *st_atime*.

The time used can be specified by the **–t** *time* option-argument, the corresponding time fields of the file referenced by the **–r** *ref_file* option-argument, or the *date_time* operand, as specified in the following sections. If none of these are specified, *touch* shall use the current time (the value returned by the equivalent of the *time*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x).

For each *file* operand, *touch* shall perform actions equivalent to the following functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x:

1. If *file* does not exist, a *creat*( ) function call is made with the *file* operand used as the *path* argument and the value of the bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IRUSR, S_IWUSR, S_IRGRP, S_IWGRP, S_IROTH, and S_IWOTH used as the *mode* argument.
2. The *utime*( ) function is called with the following arguments:
   a. The *file* operand is used as the *path* argument.
   b. The **utimbuf** structure members *actime* and *modtime* are determined as described in the OPTIONS section.

OPTIONS

The *touch* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–a Change the access time of *file*. Do not change the modification time unless **–m** is also specified.

–c Do not create a specified *file* if it does not exist. Do not write any diagnostic messages concerning this condition.

–m Change the modification time of *file*. Do not change the access time unless **–a** is also specified.

–r *ref_file* Use the corresponding time of the file named by the pathname *ref_file* instead of the current time.

–t *time* Use the specified *time* instead of the current time. The option-argument shall be a decimal number of the form:

[[*CC***]***YY***]***MMDDhhmm***[.***SS***]**

where each two digits represents the following:

MM The month of the year [01,12].

DD The day of the month [01,31].

hh The hour of the day [00,23].

mm The minute of the hour [00,59].

CC The first two digits of the year (the century).

YY The second two digits of the year.

SS The second of the minute [00,60].

Both *CC* and *YY* shall be optional. If neither is given, the current year shall be assumed. If *YY* is specified, but *CC* is not, *CC* shall be derived as follows:

If *YY* is:	***CC* becomes:**
[69,99]	19
[00,68]	20

Note: It is expected that in a future version of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x the default century inferred from a 2-digit year will change. (This would apply to all commands accepting a 2-digit year as input.)

The resulting time shall be affected by the value of the *TZ* environment variable. If the resulting time value precedes the Epoch, the behavior is implementation-defined. If the time is out of range for the file's timestamp, *touch* shall exit immediately with an error status. The range of valid times past the Epoch is implementation-defined, but it shall extend to at least the time 0 hours, 0 minutes, 0 seconds, January 1, 2038, Coordinated Universal Time. Some implementations may not be able to represent dates beyond January 18, 2038, because they use **signed int** as a time holder.

The range for *SS* is [00,60] rather than [00,59] because of leap seconds. If *SS* is 60, and the resulting time, as affected by the *TZ* environment variable, does not refer to a leap second, the resulting time shall be one second after a time where *SS* is 59. If *SS* is not given a value, it is assumed to be zero.

If neither the **–a** nor **–m** options were specified, *touch* shall behave as if both the **–a** and **–m** options were specified.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file A pathname of a file whose times shall be modified.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *touch*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

36407 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
36408 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
36409 arguments).

36410 *LC_MESSAGES*
36411 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
36412 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

36413 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

36414 *TZ* Determine the timezone to be used for interpreting the *time* option-argument. If *TZ*
36415 is unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

36416 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
36417 Default.

36418 **STDOUT**
36419 Not used.

36420 **STDERR**
36421 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

36422 **OUTPUT FILES**
36423 None.

36424 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
36425 None.

36426 **EXIT STATUS**
36427 The following exit values shall be returned:

36428 0 The utility executed successfully and all requested changes were made.

36429 >0 An error occurred.

36430 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
36431 Default.

36432 **APPLICATION USAGE**
36433 The interpretation of time is taken to be *seconds since the Epoch* (see the Base Definitions volume
36434 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 4.14, Seconds Since the Epoch). It should be noted that
36435 implementations conforming to the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x do not
36436 take leap seconds into account when computing seconds since the Epoch. When *SS*=60 is used,
36437 the resulting time always refers to 1 plus *seconds since the Epoch* for a time when *SS*=59.

36438 Although the **–t** *time* option-argument specifies values in 1969, the access time and modification
36439 time fields are defined in terms of seconds since the Epoch (00:00:00 on 1 January 1970 UTC).
36440 Therefore, depending on the value of *TZ* when *touch* is run, there is never more than a few valid
36441 hours in 1969 and there need not be any valid times in 1969.

36442 One ambiguous situation occurs if **–t** *time* is not specified, **–r** *ref_file* is not specified, and the first
36443 operand is an eight or ten-digit decimal number. A portable script can avoid this problem by
36444 using:

36445 ```
touch -- file
```

36446 or:

36447 ```
touch ./file
```

36448 in this case.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The functionality of *touch* is described almost entirely through references to functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. In this way, there is no duplication of effort required for describing such side effects as the relationship of user IDs to the user database, permissions, and so on.

There are some significant differences between the *touch* utility in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x and those in System V and BSD systems. They are upwards-compatible for historical applications from both implementations:

1. In System V, an ambiguity exists when a pathname that is a decimal number leads the operands; it is treated as a time value. In BSD, no *time* value is allowed; files may only be *touch*ed to the current time. The **–t** *time* construct solves these problems for future conforming applications (note that the **–t** option is not historical practice).
2. The inclusion of the century digits, *CC*, is also new. Note that a ten-digit *time* value is treated as if *YY*, and not *CC*, were specified. The caveat about the range of dates following the Epoch was included as recognition that some implementations are not able to represent dates beyond 18 January 2038 because they use **signed int** as a time holder.

The **–r** option was added because several comments requested this capability. This option was named **–f** in an early proposal, but was changed because the **–f** option is used in the BSD version of *touch* with a different meaning.

At least one historical implementation of *touch* incremented the exit code if **–c** was specified and the file did not exist. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires exit status zero if no errors occur.

In previous editions of the standard, if at least two operands are specified, and the first operand is an eight or ten-digit decimal integer, the first operand was assumed to be a *date_time* operand. This usage was removed in this edition of the standard since it had been marked obsolescent previously.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Applications should use the **–r** or **–t** options.

SEE ALSO

date, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *creat*( ), *time*( ), *utime*( ), the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, **<sys/stat.h>**

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The obsolescent *date_time* operand is removed.

The Open Group Corrigendum U027/1 is applied. This extends the range of valid time past the Epoch to at least the time 0 hours, 0 minutes, 0 seconds, January 1, 2038, Coordinated Universal Time. This is a new requirement on POSIX implementations.

The range for seconds is changed from [00,61] to [00,60] to align with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard, and to allow for positive leap seconds.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-45 is applied, adding a new paragraph to the RATIONALE.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-110 is applied, updating the OPTIONS section.

NAME

tput — change terminal characteristics

SYNOPSIS

```
tput [–T type] operand...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *tput* utility shall display terminal-dependent information. The manner in which this information is retrieved is unspecified. The information displayed shall clear the terminal screen, initialize the user's terminal, or reset the user's terminal, depending on the operand given. The exact consequences of displaying this information are unspecified.

OPTIONS

The *tput* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–T *type* Indicate the type of terminal. If this option is not supplied and the *TERM* variable is unset or null, an unspecified default terminal type shall be used. The setting of *type* shall take precedence over the value in *TERM*.

OPERANDS

The following strings shall be supported as operands by the implementation in the POSIX locale:

clear Display the clear-screen sequence.

init Display the sequence that initializes the user's terminal in an implementation-defined manner.

reset Display the sequence that resets the user's terminal in an implementation-defined manner.

If a terminal does not support any of the operations described by these operands, this shall not be considered an error condition.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *tput*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

36538 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

36539 36540 *TERM* Determine the terminal type. If this variable is unset or null, and if the **–T** option is not specified, an unspecified default terminal type shall be used.

36541 36542 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

Default.

36543 36544 36545 36546 **STDOUT**

If standard output is a terminal device, it may be used for writing the appropriate sequence to clear the screen or reset or initialize the terminal. If standard output is not a terminal device, undefined results occur.

36547 36548 **STDERR**

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

36549 36550 **OUTPUT FILES**

None.

36551 36552 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

None.

36553 36554 **EXIT STATUS**

The following exit values shall be returned:

36555 0 The requested string was written successfully.

36556 1 Unspecified.

36557 2 Usage error.

36558 3 No information is available about the specified terminal type.

36559 4 The specified operand is invalid.

36560 >4 An error occurred.

36561 36562 36563 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

If one of the operands is not available for the terminal, *tput* continues processing the remaining operands.

36564 36565 36566 36567 36568 36569 36570 36571 36572 36573 **APPLICATION USAGE**

The difference between resetting and initializing a terminal is left unspecified, as they vary greatly based on hardware types. In general, resetting is a more severe action.

Some terminals use control characters to perform the stated functions, and on such terminals it might make sense to use *tput* to store the initialization strings in a file or environment variable for later use. However, because other terminals might rely on system calls to do this work, the standard output cannot be used in a portable manner, such as the following non-portable constructs:

```
ClearVar=‘tput clear‘
tput reset | mailx –s "Wake Up" ddg
```

36574 **EXAMPLES**

36575 36576 1. Initialize the terminal according to the type of terminal in the environmental variable *TERM*. This command can be included in a **.profile** file.

36577 ```
   tput init
   ```

36578 2. Reset a 450 terminal.

36579 ```
   tput –T 450 reset
   ```

RATIONALE

The list of operands was reduced to a minimum for the following reasons:

- The only features chosen were those that were likely to be used by human users interacting with a terminal.
- Specifying the full *terminfo* set was not considered desirable, but the standard developers did not want to select among operands.
- This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not attempt to provide applications with sophisticated terminal handling capabilities, as that falls outside of its assigned scope and intersects with the responsibilities of other standards bodies.

The difference between resetting and initializing a terminal is left unspecified as this varies greatly based on hardware types. In general, resetting is a more severe action.

The exit status of 1 is historically reserved for finding out if a Boolean operand is not set. Although the operands were reduced to a minimum, the exit status of 1 should still be reserved for the Boolean operands, for those sites that wish to support them.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

stty, *tabs*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

Issue 7

The *tput* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

NAME

tr — translate characters

SYNOPSIS

```
tr [-c|-C] [-s] string1 string2
tr -s [-c|-C] string1
tr -d [-c|-C] string1
tr -ds [-c|-C] string1 string2
```

DESCRIPTION

The *tr* utility shall copy the standard input to the standard output with substitution or deletion of selected characters. The options specified and the *string1* and *string2* operands shall control translations that occur while copying characters and single-character collating elements.

OPTIONS

The *tr* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

-c Complement the set of values specified by *string1*. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

-C Complement the set of characters specified by *string1*. See the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

-d Delete all occurrences of input characters that are specified by *string1*.

-s Replace instances of repeated characters with a single character, as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

string1, *string2*
Translation control strings. Each string shall represent a set of characters to be converted into an array of characters used for the translation. For a detailed description of how the strings are interpreted, see the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

STDIN

The standard input can be any type of file.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *tr*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_COLLATE
Determine the locale for the behavior of range expressions and equivalence classes.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments) and the behavior of character classes.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The *tr* output shall be identical to the input, with the exception of the specified transformations.

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
The operands *string1* and *string2* (if specified) define two arrays of characters. The constructs in the following list can be used to specify characters or single-character collating elements. If any of the constructs result in multi-character collating elements, *tr* shall exclude, without a diagnostic, those multi-character elements from the resulting array.

character Any character not described by one of the conventions below shall represent itself.

\octal Octal sequences can be used to represent characters with specific coded values. An octal sequence shall consist of a backslash followed by the longest sequence of one, two, or three-octal-digit characters (01234567). The sequence shall cause the value whose encoding is represented by the one, two, or three-digit octal integer to be placed into the array. Multi-byte characters require multiple, concatenated escape sequences of this type, including the leading `'\'` for each byte.

\character The backslash-escape sequences in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Table 5-1, Escape Sequences and Associated Actions (`'\\'`,

[:*class*:] Represents all characters belonging to the defined character class, as defined by the current setting of the *LC_CTYPE* locale category. The following character class names shall be accepted when specified in *string1*:

alnum **blank** **digit** **lower** **punct** **upper**
alpha **cntrl** **graph** **print** **space** **xdigit**

XSI In addition, character class expressions of the form [:*name*:] shall be recognized in those locales where the *name* keyword has been given a **charclass** definition in the *LC_CTYPE* category.

When both the **−d** and **−s** options are specified, any of the character class names shall be accepted in *string2*. Otherwise, only character class names **lower** or **upper** are valid in *string2* and then only if the corresponding character class (**upper** and **lower**, respectively) is specified in the same relative position in *string1*. Such a specification shall be interpreted as a request for case conversion. When [:*lower*:] appears in *string1* and [:*upper*:] appears in *string2*, the arrays shall contain the characters from the **toupper** mapping in the *LC_CTYPE* category of the current locale. When [:*upper*:] appears in *string1* and [:*lower*:] appears in *string2*, the arrays shall contain the characters from the **tolower** mapping in the *LC_CTYPE* category of the current locale. The first character from each mapping pair shall be in the array for *string1* and the second character from each mapping pair shall be in the array for *string2* in the same relative position.

Except for case conversion, the characters specified by a character class expression shall be placed in the array in an unspecified order.

If the name specified for *class* does not define a valid character class in the current locale, the behavior is undefined.

[=*equiv*=] Represents all characters or collating elements belonging to the same equivalence class as *equiv*, as defined by the current setting of the *LC_COLLATE* locale category. An equivalence class expression shall be allowed only in *string1*, or in *string2* when it is being used by the combined **−d** and **−s** options. The characters belonging to the equivalence class shall be placed in the array in an unspecified order.

[*x***n*] Represents *n* repeated occurrences of the character *x*. Because this expression is used to map multiple characters to one, it is only valid when it occurs in *string2*. If *n* is omitted or is zero, it shall be interpreted as large enough to extend the *string2*-based sequence to the length of the *string1*-based sequence. If *n* has a leading zero, it shall be interpreted as an octal value. Otherwise, it shall be interpreted as a decimal value.

When the **−d** option is not specified:

- Each input character found in the array specified by *string1* shall be replaced by the character in the same relative position in the array specified by *string2*. When the array specified by *string2* is shorter that the one specified by *string1*, the results are unspecified.
- If the **−C** option is specified, the complements of the characters specified by *string1* (the set of all characters in the current character set, as defined by the current setting of *LC_CTYPE*, except for those actually specified in the *string1* operand) shall be placed in the array in ascending collation sequence, as defined by the current setting of *LC_COLLATE*.
- If the **−c** option is specified, the complement of the values specified by *string1* shall be placed in the array in ascending order by binary value.
- Because the order in which characters specified by character class expressions or equivalence class expressions is undefined, such expressions should only be used if the intent is to map several characters into one. An exception is case conversion, as described

previously.

When the **–d** option is specified:

- Input characters found in the array specified by *string1* shall be deleted.
- When the **–C** option is specified with **–d**, all characters except those specified by *string1* shall be deleted. The contents of *string2* are ignored, unless the **–s** option is also specified.
- When the **–c** option is specified with **–d**, all values except those specified by *string1* shall be deleted. The contents of *string2* shall be ignored, unless the **–s** option is also specified.
- The same string cannot be used for both the **–d** and the **–s** option; when both options are specified, both *string1* (used for deletion) and *string2* (used for squeezing) shall be required.

When the **–s** option is specified, after any deletions or translations have taken place, repeated sequences of the same character shall be replaced by one occurrence of the same character, if the character is found in the array specified by the last operand. If the last operand contains a character class, such as the following example:

```
tr –s '[:space:]'
```

the last operand's array shall contain all of the characters in that character class. However, in a case conversion, as described previously, such as:

```
tr –s '[:upper:]' '[:lower:]'
```

the last operand's array shall contain only those characters defined as the second characters in each of the **toupper** or **tolower** character pairs, as appropriate.

An empty string used for *string1* or *string2* produces undefined results.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 All input was processed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

If necessary, *string1* and *string2* can be quoted to avoid pattern matching by the shell.

If an ordinary digit (representing itself) is to follow an octal sequence, the octal sequence must use the full three digits to avoid ambiguity.

When *string2* is shorter than *string1*, a difference results between historical System V and BSD systems. A BSD system pads *string2* with the last character found in *string2*. Thus, it is possible to do the following:

```
tr 0123456789 d
```

which would translate all digits to the letter `'d'`. Since this area is specifically unspecified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, both the BSD and System V behaviors are allowed, but a conforming application cannot rely on the BSD behavior. It would have to code the example in the following way:

```
tr 0123456789 '[d*]'
```

It should be noted that, despite similarities in appearance, the string operands used by *tr* are not regular expressions.

Unlike some historical implementations, this definition of the *tr* utility correctly processes NUL

characters in its input stream. NUL characters can be stripped by using:

```
tr –d '\000'
```

EXAMPLES

1. The following example creates a list of all words in **file1** one per line in **file2**, where a word is taken to be a maximal string of letters.

   ```
   tr –cs "[:alpha:]" "[\n*]" <file1 >file2
   ```

2. The next example translates all lowercase characters in **file1** to uppercase and writes the results to standard output.

   ```
   tr "[:lower:]" "[:upper:]" <file1
   ```

3. This example uses an equivalence class to identify accented variants of the base character `'e'` in **file1**, which are stripped of diacritical marks and written to **file2**.

   ```
   tr "[=e=]" "[e*]" <file1 >file2
   ```

RATIONALE

In some early proposals, an explicit option **–n** was added to disable the historical behavior of stripping NUL characters from the input. It was considered that automatically stripping NUL characters from the input was not correct functionality. However, the removal of **–n** in a later proposal does not remove the requirement that *tr* correctly process NUL characters in its input stream. NUL characters can be stripped by using *tr* **–d** '\000'.

Historical implementations of *tr* differ widely in syntax and behavior. For example, the BSD version has not needed the bracket characters for the repetition sequence. The *tr* utility syntax is based more closely on the System V and XPG3 model while attempting to accommodate historical BSD implementations. In the case of the short *string2* padding, the decision was to unspecify the behavior and preserve System V and XPG3 scripts, which might find difficulty with the BSD method. The assumption was made that BSD users of *tr* have to make accommodations to meet the syntax defined here. Since it is possible to use the repetition sequence to duplicate the desired behavior, whereas there is no simple way to achieve the System V method, this was the correct, if not desirable, approach.

The use of octal values to specify control characters, while having historical precedents, is not portable. The introduction of escape sequences for control characters should provide the necessary portability. It is recognized that this may cause some historical scripts to break.

An early proposal included support for multi-character collating elements. It was pointed out that, while *tr* does employ some syntactical elements from REs, the aim of *tr* is quite different; ranges, for example, do not have a similar meaning ("any of the chars in the range matches", *versus* "translate each character in the range to the output counterpart"). As a result, the previously included support for multi-character collating elements has been removed. What remains are ranges in current collation order (to support, for example, accented characters), character classes, and equivalence classes.

In XPG3 the [:*class*:] and [=*equiv*=] conventions are shown with double brackets, as in RE syntax. However, *tr* does not implement RE principles; it just borrows part of the syntax. Consequently, [:*class*:] and [=*equiv*=] should be regarded as syntactical elements on a par with [*x***n*], which is not an RE bracket expression.

The standard developers will consider changes to *tr* that allow it to translate characters between different character encodings, or they will consider providing a new utility to accomplish this.

On historical System V systems, a range expression requires enclosing square-brackets, such as:

```
tr '[a-z]' '[A-Z]'
```

However, BSD-based systems did not require the brackets, and this convention is used here to

avoid breaking large numbers of BSD scripts:

```
tr a-z A-Z
```

The preceding System V script will continue to work because the brackets, treated as regular characters, are translated to themselves. However, any System V script that relied on `"a-z"` representing the three characters `'a'`, `'-'`, and `'z'` have to be rewritten as `"az-"`.

The ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard had a **–c** option that behaved similarly to the **–C** option, but did not supply functionality equivalent to the **–c** option specified in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. This meant that historical practice of being able to specify *tr* **–cd**\000–\177 (which would delete all bytes with the top bit set) would have no effect because, in the C locale, bytes with the values octal 200 to octal 377 are not characters.

The earlier version also said that octal sequences referred to collating elements and could be placed adjacent to each other to specify multi-byte characters. However, it was noted that this caused ambiguities because *tr* would not be able to tell whether adjacent octal sequences were intending to specify multi-byte characters or multiple single byte characters. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x specifies that octal sequences always refer to single byte binary values when used to specify an endpoint of a range of collating elements.

Previous versions of this standard allowed for implementations with bytes other than eight bits, but this has been modified in this version.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

sed

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The **–C** operand is added, and the description of the **–c** operand is changed to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/31 is applied, removing text describing behavior on systems with bytes consisting of more than eight bits.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/32 is applied, updating an example in the EXAMPLES section to avoid using unspecified behavior.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/33 is applied, making a correction to the RATIONALE.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-30 is applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

true — return true value

SYNOPSIS

```
true
```

DESCRIPTION

The *true* utility shall return with exit code zero.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

None.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

Not used.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

Zero.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

None.

APPLICATION USAGE

This utility is typically used in shell scripts, as shown in the EXAMPLES section. The special built-in utility **:** is sometimes more efficient than *true*.

EXAMPLES

This command is executed forever:

```
while true
do
    command
done
```


36904 **RATIONALE**

36905 The *true* utility has been retained in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, even though the shell
36906 special built-in **:** provides similar functionality, because *true* is widely used in historical scripts
36907 and is less cryptic to novice script readers.

36908 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

36909 None.

36910 **SEE ALSO**

36911 *false*, Section 2.9

36912 **CHANGE HISTORY**

36913 First released in Issue 2.

36914 **Issue 6**

36915 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/39 is applied, replacing the terms "None"
36916 and "Default" from the STDERR and EXIT STATUS sections, respectively, with terms as defined
36917 in Section 1.11 (on page 18).

NAME

tsort — topological sort

SYNOPSIS

```
tsort [file]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *tsort* utility shall write to standard output a totally ordered list of items consistent with a partial ordering of items contained in the input.

The application shall ensure that the input consists of pairs of items (non-empty strings) separated by <blank>s. Pairs of different items indicate ordering. Pairs of identical items indicate presence, but not ordering.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a text file to order. If no *file* operand is given, the standard input shall be used.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file that is used if no *file* operand is given.

INPUT FILES

The input file named by the *file* operand is a text file.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *tsort*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall be a text file consisting of the order list produced from the partially ordered input.

36958 **STDERR**

36959 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

36960 **OUTPUT FILES**

36961 None.

36962 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

36963 None.

36964 **EXIT STATUS**

36965 The following exit values shall be returned:

36966 0 Successful completion.

36967 >0 An error occurred.

36968 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

36969 Default.

36970 **APPLICATION USAGE**

36971 The *LC_COLLATE* variable need not affect the actions of *tsort*. The output ordering is not
36972 lexicographic, but depends on the pairs of items given as input.

36973 **EXAMPLES**

36974 The command:

36975 ```
tsort <<EOF
36976 a b c c d e
36977 g g
36978 f g e f
36979 h h
36980 EOF
```

36981 produces the output:

36982 **a**
36983 **b**
36984 **c**
36985 **d**
36986 **e**
36987 **f**
36988 **g**
36989 **h**

36990 **RATIONALE**

36991 None.

36992 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

36993 None.

36994 **SEE ALSO**

36995 None.

36996 **CHANGE HISTORY**

36997 First released in Issue 2.

36998 **Issue 6**

36999 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.
```

37000 **Issue 7**

37001 The *tsort* utility is moved from the XSI option to the Base.

37002 **NAME**

37003 tty — return user's terminal name

37004 **SYNOPSIS**

37005 `tty`

37006 **DESCRIPTION**

37007 The *tty* utility shall write to the standard output the name of the terminal that is open as
37008 standard input. The name that is used shall be equivalent to the string that would be returned by
37009 the *ttyname*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

37010 **OPTIONS**

37011 The *tty* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
37012 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

37013 **OPERANDS**

37014 None.

37015 **STDIN**

37016 While no input is read from standard input, standard input shall be examined to determine
37017 whether or not it is a terminal, and, if so, to determine the name of the terminal.

37018 **INPUT FILES**

37019 None.

37020 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

37021 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *tty*:

37022 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
37023 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
37024 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
37025 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

37026 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
37027 internationalization variables.

37028 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
37029 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
37030 arguments).

37031 *LC_MESSAGES*
37032 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
37033 diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to
37034 standard output.

37035 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

37036 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

37037 Default.

37038 **STDOUT**

37039 If standard input is a terminal device, a pathname of the terminal as specified by the *ttyname*( )
37040 function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x shall be written in the
37041 following format:

37042 `"%s\n", <terminal name>`

37043 Otherwise, a message shall be written indicating that standard input is not connected to a
37044 terminal. In the POSIX locale, the *tty* utility shall use the format:


```
"not a tty\n"
```

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Standard input is a terminal.

1 Standard input is not a terminal.

>1 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

This utility checks the status of the file open as standard input against that of an implementation-defined set of files. It is possible that no match can be found, or that the match found need not be the same file as that which was opened for standard input (although they are the same device).

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *isatty*( ), *ttyname*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The SYNOPSIS is changed to indicate two forms of the command, with the second form marked as obsolete. This is a clarification and does not change the functionality published in previous issues.

Issue 6

The obsolescent **–s** option is removed.

NAME

type — write a description of command type

SYNOPSIS

XSI

```
type name...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *type* utility shall indicate how each argument would be interpreted if used as a command name.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

name A name to be interpreted.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *type*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

PATH Determine the location of *name*, as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

The standard output of *type* contains information about each operand in an unspecified format. The information provided typically identifies the operand as a shell built-in, function, alias, or keyword, and where applicable, may display the operand's pathname.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Since *type* must be aware of the contents of the current shell execution environment (such as the lists of commands, functions, and built-ins processed by *hash*), it is always provided as a shell regular built-in. If it is called in a separate utility execution environment, such as one of the following:

```
nohup type writer
find . –type f | xargs type
```

it might not produce accurate results.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

command, *hash*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

37149 **NAME**

37150 ulimit — set or report file size limit

37151 **SYNOPSIS**

37152 XSI
```
ulimit [–f] [blocks]
```

37153 **DESCRIPTION**

37154 The *ulimit* utility shall set or report the file-size writing limit imposed on files written by the
37155 shell and its child processes (files of any size may be read). Only a process with appropriate
37156 privileges can increase the limit.

37157 **OPTIONS**

37158 The *ulimit* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
37159 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

37160 The following option shall be supported:

37161 **–f** Set (or report, if no *blocks* operand is present), the file size limit in blocks. The **–f**
37162 option shall also be the default case.

37163 **OPERANDS**

37164 The following operand shall be supported:

37165 *blocks* The number of 512-byte blocks to use as the new file size limit.

37166 **STDIN**

37167 Not used.

37168 **INPUT FILES**

37169 None.

37170 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

37171 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *ulimit*:

37172 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
37173 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
37174 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
37175 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

37176 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
37177 internationalization variables.

37178 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
37179 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
37180 arguments).

37181 *LC_MESSAGES*
37182 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
37183 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

37184 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

37185 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

37186 Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall be used when no *blocks* operand is present. If the current number of blocks is limited, the number of blocks in the current limit shall be written in the following format:

```
"%d\n", <number of 512-byte blocks>
```

If there is no current limit on the number of blocks, in the POSIX locale the following format shall be used:

```
"unlimited\n"
```

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 A request for a higher limit was rejected or an error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Since *ulimit* affects the current shell execution environment, it is always provided as a shell regular built-in. If it is called in a separate utility execution environment, such as one of the following:

```
nohup ulimit -f 10000
env ulimit 10000
```

it does not affect the file size limit of the caller's environment.

Once a limit has been decreased by a process, it cannot be increased (unless appropriate privileges are involved), even back to the original system limit.

EXAMPLES

Set the file size limit to 51 200 bytes:

```
ulimit -f 100
```

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *ulimit*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

umask — get or set the file mode creation mask

SYNOPSIS

```
umask [–S] [mask]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *umask* utility shall set the file mode creation mask of the current shell execution environment (see Section 2.12 (on page 61)) to the value specified by the *mask* operand. This mask shall affect the initial value of the file permission bits of subsequently created files. If *umask* is called in a subshell or separate utility execution environment, such as one of the following:

```
(umask 002)
nohup umask ...
find . –exec umask ... \;
```

it shall not affect the file mode creation mask of the caller's environment.

If the *mask* operand is not specified, the *umask* utility shall write to standard output the value of the file mode creation mask of the invoking process.

OPTIONS

The *umask* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–S Produce symbolic output.

The default output style is unspecified, but shall be recognized on a subsequent invocation of *umask* on the same system as a *mask* operand to restore the previous file mode creation mask.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

mask A string specifying the new file mode creation mask. The string is treated in the same way as the *mode* operand described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section for *chmod*.

For a *symbolic_mode* value, the new value of the file mode creation mask shall be the logical complement of the file permission bits portion of the file mode specified by the *symbolic_mode* string.

In a *symbolic_mode* value, the permissions *op* characters `'+'` and `'–'` shall be interpreted relative to the current file mode creation mask; `'+'` shall cause the bits for the indicated permissions to be cleared in the mask; `'–'` shall cause the bits for the indicated permissions to be set in the mask.

The interpretation of *mode* values that specify file mode bits other than the file permission bits is unspecified.

In the octal integer form of *mode*, the specified bits are set in the file mode creation mask.

The file mode creation mask shall be set to the resulting numeric value.

The default output of a prior invocation of *umask* on the same system with no operand also shall be recognized as a *mask* operand.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *umask*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

When the *mask* operand is not specified, the *umask* utility shall write a message to standard output that can later be used as a *umask mask* operand.

If **–S** is specified, the message shall be in the following format:

```
"u=%s,g=%s,o=%s\n", <owner permissions>, <group permissions>,
    <other permissions>
```

where the three values shall be combinations of letters from the set {*r*, *w*, *x*}; the presence of a letter shall indicate that the corrt of letTJ- shal Tdia4orr2OcRH of, of a

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

Since *umask* affects the current shell execution environment, it is generally provided as a shell regular built-in.

In contrast to the negative permission logic provided by the file mode creation mask and the octal number form of the *mask* argument, the symbolic form of the *mask* argument specifies those permissions that are left alone.

EXAMPLES

Either of the commands:

```
umask a=rx,ug+w
```

```
umask 002
```

sets the mode mask so that subsequently created files have their S_IWOTH bit cleared.

After setting the mode mask with either of the above commands, the *umask* command can be used to write out the current value of the mode mask:

```
$ umask
0002
```

(The output format is unspecified, but historical implementations use the octal integer mode format.)

```
$ umask -S
u=rwx,g=rwx,o=rx
```

Either of these outputs can be used as the mask operand to a subsequent invocation of the *umask* utility.

Assuming the mode mask is set as above, the command:

```
umask g-w
```

sets the mode mask so that subsequently created files have their S_IWGRP and S_IWOTH bits cleared.

The command:

```
umask -- -w
```

sets the mode mask so that subsequently created files have all their write bits cleared. Note that *mask* operands **-r**, **-w**, **-x** or anything beginning with a hyphen, must be preceded by "--" to keep it from being interpreted as an option.

RATIONALE

Since *umask* affects the current shell execution environment, it is generally provided as a shell regular built-in. If it is called in a subshell or separate utility execution environment, such as one of the following:

```
(umask 002)
nohup umask ...
find . -exec umask ... \;
```

it does not affect the file mode creation mask of the environment of the caller.

The description of the historical utility was modified to allow it to use the symbolic modes of *chmod*. The **-s** option used in early proposals was changed to **-S** because **-s** could be confused with a *symbolic_mode* form of mask referring to the S_ISUID and S_ISGID bits.

The default output style is unspecified to permit implementors to provide migration to the new

symbolic style at the time most appropriate to their users. A **–o** flag to force octal mode output was omitted because the octal mode may not be sufficient to specify all of the information that may be present in the file mode creation mask when more secure file access permission checks are implemented.

It has been suggested that trusted systems developers might appreciate ameliorating the requirement that the mode mask "affects" the file access permissions, since it seems access control lists might replace the mode mask to some degree. The wording has been changed to say that it affects the file permission bits, and it leaves the details of the behavior of how they affect the file access permissions to the description in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *chmod*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *umask*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The octal mode is supported.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/34 is applied, making a correction to the RATIONALE.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

unalias — remove alias definitions

SYNOPSIS

```
unalias alias-name...
unalias –a
```

DESCRIPTION

The *unalias* utility shall remove the definition for each alias name specified. See Section 2.3.1 (on page 32). The aliases shall be removed from the current shell execution environment; see Section 2.12 (on page 61).

OPTIONS

The *unalias* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following option shall be supported:

–a Remove all alias definitions from the current shell execution environment.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

alias-name The name of an alias to be removed.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *unalias*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

37418 **STDERR**
37419 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

37420 **OUTPUT FILES**
37421 None.

37422 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
37423 None.

37424 **EXIT STATUS**
37425 The following exit values shall be returned:

37426 0 Successful completion.

37427 >0 One of the *alias-name* operands specified did not represent a valid alias definition, or an
37428 error occurred.

37429 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
37430 Default.

37431 **APPLICATION USAGE**
37432 Since *unalias* affects the current shell execution environment, it is generally provided as a shell
37433 regular built-in.

37434 **EXAMPLES**
37435 None.

37436 **RATIONALE**
37437 The *unalias* description is based on that from historical KornShell implementations. Known
37438 differences exist between that and the C shell. The KornShell version was adopted to be
37439 consistent with all the other KornShell features in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, such as
37440 command line editing.

37441 The **–a** option is the equivalent of the *unalias* * form of the C shell and is provided to address
37442 security concerns about unknown aliases entering the environment of a user (or application)
37443 through the allowable implementation-defined predefined alias route or as a result of an *ENV*
37444 file. (Although *unalias* could be used to simplify the "secure" shell script shown in the *command*
37445 rationale, it does not obviate the need to quote all command names. An initial call to *unalias* **–a**
37446 would have to be quoted in case there was an alias for *unalias*.)

37447 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**
37448 None.

37449 **SEE ALSO**
37450 Chapter 2 (on page 29), *alias*

37451 **CHANGE HISTORY**
37452 First released in Issue 4.

37453 **Issue 6**
37454 This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

37455 **Issue 7**
37456 The *unalias* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User
37457 Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

NAME

uname — return system name

SYNOPSIS

```
uname [–snrvma]
```

DESCRIPTION

By default, the *uname* utility shall write the operating system name to standard output. When options are specified, symbols representing one or more system characteristics shall be written to the standard output. The format and contents of the symbols are implementation-defined. On systems conforming to the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, the symbols written shall be those supported by the *uname*( ) function as defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

OPTIONS

The *uname* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–a Behave as though all of the options **–mnrsv** were specified.

–m Write the name of the hardware type on which the system is running to standard output.

–n Write the name of this node within an implementation-defined communications network.

–r Write the current release level of the operating system implementation.

–s Write the name of the implementation of the operating system.

–v Write the current version level of this release of the operating system implementation.

If no options are specified, the *uname* utility shall write the operating system name, as if the **–s** option had been specified.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *uname*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

37501 *LC_MESSAGES*
37502 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
37503 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

37504 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

37505 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
37506 Default.

37507 **STDOUT**
37508 By default, the output shall be a single line of the following form:

37509 `"%s\n", <sysname>`

37510 If the **–a** option is specified, the output shall be a single line of the following form:

37511 `"%s %s %s %s %s\n", <sysname>, <nodename>, <release>,`
37512 `<version>, <machine>`

37513 Additional implementation-defined symbols may be written; all such symbols shall be written at
37514 the end of the line of output before the <newline>.

37515 If options are specified to select different combinations of the symbols, only those symbols shall
37516 be written, in the order shown above for the **–a** option. If a symbol is not selected for writing, its
37517 corresponding trailing <blank>s also shall not be written.

37518 **STDERR**
37519 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

37520 **OUTPUT FILES**
37521 None.

37522 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
37523 None.

37524 **EXIT STATUS**
37525 The following exit values shall be returned:

37526 0 The requested information was successfully written.

37527 >0 An error occurred.

37528 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
37529 Default.

37530 **APPLICATION USAGE**
37531 Note that any of the symbols could include embedded <space>s, which may affect parsing
37532 algorithms if multiple options are selected for output.

37533 The node name is typically a name that the system uses to identify itself for inter-system
37534 communication addressing.

37535 **EXAMPLES**
37536 The following command:

37537 `uname –sr`

37538 writes the operating system name and release level, separated by one or more <blank>s.

37539 **RATIONALE**
37540 It was suggested that this utility cannot be used portably since the format of the symbols is
37541 implementation-defined. The POSIX.1 working group could not achieve consensus on defining
37542 these formats in the underlying *uname*( ) function, and there was no expectation that this volume
37543 of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x would be any more successful. Some applications may still find this
37544 historical utility of value. For example, the symbols could be used for system log entries or for

comparison with operator or user input.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *uname*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

uncompress

NAME

uncompress — expand compressed data

SYNOPSIS

XSI

```
uncompress [–cfv] [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *uncompress* utility shall restor

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

When there are no *file* operands or the **–c** option is specified, the uncompressed output is written to standard output.

STDERR

Prompts shall be written to the standard error output under the conditions specified in the DESCRIPTION and OPTIONS sections. The prompts shall contain the *file* pathname, but their format is otherwise unspecified. Otherwise, the standard error output shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

Output files are the same as the respective input files to *compress*.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

The input file remains unmodified.

APPLICATION USAGE

The limit of 14 on the *compress* **–b** *bits* argument is to achieve portability to all systems (within the restrictions imposed by the lack of an explicit published file format). Some implementations based on 16-bit architectures cannot support 15 or 16-bit uncompression.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

compress, *zcat*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-26 is applied, clarifying that this utility is allowed to break the Utility Syntax Guidelines by having ten letters in its name.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

unexpand — convert spaces to tabs

SYNOPSIS

```
unexpand [–a|–t tablist] [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *unexpand* utility shall copy files or standard input to standard output, converting <blank>s at the beginning of each line into the maximum number of <tab>s followed by the minimum number of <space>s needed to fill the same column positions originally filled by the translated <blank>s. By default, tabstops shall be set at every eighth column position. Each <backspace> shall be copied to the output, and shall cause the column position count for tab calculations to be decremented; the count shall never be decremented to a value less than one.

OPTIONS

The *unexpand* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–a In addition to translating <blank>s at the beginning of each line, translate all sequences of two or more <blank>s immediately preceding a tab stop to the maximum number of <tab>s followed by the minimum number of <space>s needed to fill the same column positions originally filled by the translated <blank>s.

–t *tablist* Specify the tab stops. The application shall ensure that the *tablist* option-argument is a single argument consisting of a single positive decimal integer or multiple positive decimal integers, separated by <blank>s or commas, in ascending order. If a single number is given, tabs shall be set *tablist* column positions apart instead of the default 8. If multiple numbers are given, the tabs shall be set at those specific column positions.

The application shall ensure that each tab-stop position *N* is an integer value greater than zero, and the list shall be in strictly ascending order. This is taken to mean that, from the start of a line of output, tabbing to position *N* shall cause the next character output to be in the (*N*+1)th column position on that line. When the **–t** option is not specified, the default shall be the equivalent of specifying **–t 8** (except for the interaction with **–a**, described below).

No <space>-to-<tab> conversions shall occur for characters at positions beyond the last of those specified in a multiple tab-stop list.

When **–t** is specified, the presence or absence of the **–a** option shall be ignored; conversion shall not be limited to the processing of leading <blank>s.

OPERANDS

The following operand shall be supported:

file A pathname of a text file to be used as input.

STDIN

See the INPUT FILES section.

37683 **INPUT FILES**

37684 The input files shall be text files.

37685 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

37686 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *unexpand*:

37687 37688 37689 37690 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

37691 37692 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

37693 37694 37695 37696 37697 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files), the processing of <tab>s and <space>s, and for the determination of the width in column positions each character would occupy on an output device.

37698 37699 37700 *LC_MESSAGES*
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

37701 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

37702 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

37703 Default.

37704 **STDOUT**

37705 37706 The standard output shall be equivalent to the input files with the specified <space>-to-<tab> conversions.

37707 **STDERR**

37708 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

37709 **OUTPUT FILES**

37710 None.

37711 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

37712 None.

37713 **EXIT STATUS**

37714 The following exit values shall be returned:

37715 0 Successful completion.

37716 >0 An error occurred.

37717 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

37718 Default.

37719 **APPLICATION USAGE**

37720 37721 37722 One non-intuitive aspect of *unexpand* is its restriction to leading spaces when neither **−a** nor **−t** is specified. Users who always want to convert all spaces in a file can easily alias *unexpand* to use the **−a** or **−t 8** option.

37723 **EXAMPLES**

37724 None.

RATIONALE

On several occasions, consideration was given to adding a **–t** option to the *unexpand* utility to complement the **–t** in *expand* (see *expand*). The historical intent of *unexpand* was to translate multiple <blank>s into tab stops, where tab stops were a multiple of eight column positions on most UNIX systems. An early proposal omitted **–t** because it seemed outside the scope of the User Portability Utilities option; it was not described in any of the base documents. However, hard-coding tab stops every eight columns was not suitable for the international community and broke historical precedents for some vendors in the FORTRAN community, so **–t** was restored in conjunction with the list of valid extension categories considered by the standard developers. Thus, *unexpand* is now the logical converse of *expand*.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

expand, *tabs*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The definition of the *LC_CTYPE* environment variable is changed to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

The *unexpand* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

unget — undo a previous get of an SCCS file (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI

```
unget [–ns] [–r SID] file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *unget* utility shall reverse the effect of a *get* **–e** done prior to creating the intended new delta.

OPTIONS

The *unget* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–r *SID* Uniquely identify which delta is no longer intended. (This would have been specified by *get* as the new delta.) The use of this option is necessary only if two or more outstanding *get* commands for editing on the same SCCS file were done by the same person (login name).

–s Suppress the writing to standard output of the intended delta's SID.

–n Retain the file that was obtained by *get*, which would normally be removed from the current directory.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file A pathname of an existing SCCS file or a directory. If *file* is a directory, the *unget* utility shall behave as though each file in the directory were specified as a named file, except that non-SCCS files (last component of the pathname does not begin with **s.**) and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

If exactly one *file* operand appears, and it is `'–'`, the standard input shall be read; each line of the standard input shall be taken to be the name of an SCCS file to be processed. Non-SCCS files and unreadable files shall be silently ignored.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file used only when the *file* operand is specified as `'–'`. Each line of the text file shall be interpreted as an SCCS pathname.

INPUT FILES

Any SCCS files processed shall be files of an unspecified format.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *unget*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The standard output shall consist of a line for each file, in the following format:

`"%s\n", <SID removed from file>`

If there is more than one named file or if a directory or standard input is named, each pathname shall be written before each of the preceding lines:

`"\n%s:\n", <pathname>`

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
Any SCCS files updated shall be files of an unspecified format. During processing of a *file*, a locking *z-file*, as described in *get*, and a *q-file* (a working copy of the *p-file*), may be created and deleted. The *p-file* and *g-file*, as described in *get*, shall be deleted.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
None.

EXAMPLES
None.

RATIONALE
None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS
None.

SEE ALSO
delta, *get*, *sact*

CHANGE HISTORY
First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6
The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

37832 **Issue 7**

37833 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

uniq — report or filter out repeated lines in a file

SYNOPSIS

```
uniq [-c|-d|-u] [-f fields] [-s char] [input_file [output_file]]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *uniq* utility shall read an input file comparing adjacent lines, and write one copy of each input line on the output. The second and succeeding copies of repeated adjacent input lines shall not be written.

Repeated lines in the input shall not be detected if they are not adjacent.

OPTIONS

The *uniq* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that `'+'` may be recognized as an option delimiter as well as `'-'`.

The following options shall be supported:

-c Precede each output line with a count of the number of times the line occurred in the input.

-d Suppress the writing of lines that are not repeated in the input.

-f *fields* Ignore the first *fields* fields on each input line when doing comparisons, where *fields* is a positive decimal integer. A field is the maximal string matched by the basic regular expression:

```
[[:blank:]]*[^[:blank:]]*
```

If the *fields* option-argument specifies more fields than appear on an input line, a null string shall be used for comparison.

-s *chars* Ignore the first *chars* characters when doing comparisons, where *chars* shall be a positive decimal integer. If specified in conjunction with the **-f** option, the first *chars* characters after the first *fields* fields shall be ignored. If the *chars* option-argument specifies more characters than remain on an input line, a null string shall be used for comparison.

-u Suppress the writing of lines that are repeated in the input.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

input_file A pathname of the input file. If the *input_file* operand is not specified, or if the *input_file* is `'-'`, the standard input shall be used.

output_file A pathname of the output file. If the *output_file* operand is not specified, the standard output shall be used. The results are unspecified if the file named by *output_file* is the file named by *input_file*.

STDIN

The standard input shall be used only if no *input_file* operand is specified or if *input_file* is `'-'`. See the INPUT FILES section.

37873 **INPUT FILES**

37874 The input file shall be a text file.

37875 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

37876 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *uniq*:

37877 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
37878 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
37879 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
37880 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

37881 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
37882 internationalization variables.

37883 *LC_COLLATE*
37884 Determine the locale for ordering rules.

37885 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
37886 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
37887 arguments and input files) and which characters constitute a <blank> in the
37888 current locale.

37889 *LC_MESSAGES*
37890 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
37891 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

37892 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

37893 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

37894 Default.

37895 **STDOUT**

37896 The standard output shall be used only if no *output_file* operand is specified. See the OUTPUT
37897 FILES section.

37898 **STDERR**

37899 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

37900 **OUTPUT FILES**

37901 If the **−c** option is specified, the output file shall be empty or each line shall be of the form:

37902 `"%d %s", <number of duplicates>, <line>`

37903 otherwise, the output file shall be empty or each line shall be of the form:

37904 `"%s", <line>`

37905 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

37906 None.

37907 **EXIT STATUS**

37908 The following exit values shall be returned:

37909 0 The utility executed successfully.

37910 >0 An error occurred.

37911 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

37912 Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *sort* utility can be used to cause repeated lines to be adjacent in the input file.

EXAMPLES

The following input file data (but flushed left) was used for a test series on *uniq*:

```
#01 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
#02 bar0 foo1 bar1 foo1
#03 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
#04
#05 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
#06 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
#07 bar0 foo1 bar1 foo0
```

What follows is a series of test invocations of the *uniq* utility that use a mixture of *uniq* options against the input file data. These tests verify the meaning of *adjacent*. The *uniq* utility views the input data as a sequence of strings delimited by `'\n'`. Accordingly, for the *fields*th member of the sequence, *uniq* interprets unique or repeated adjacent lines strictly relative to the *fields*+1th member.

1. This first example tests the line counting option, comparing each line of the input file data starting from the second field:

   ```
   uniq –c –f 1 uniq_0I.t
       1 #01 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
       1 #02 bar0 foo1 bar1 foo0
       1 #03 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
       1 #04
       2 #05 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
       1 #07 bar0 foo1 bar1 foo0
   ```

   The number `'2'`, prefixing the fifth line of output, signifies that the *uniq* utility detected a pair of repeated lines. Given the input data, this can only be true when *uniq* is run using the **–f 1** option (which shall cause *uniq* to ignore the first field on each input line).

2. The second example tests the option to suppress unique lines, comparing each line of the input file data starting from the second field:

   ```
   uniq –d –f 1 uniq_0I.t
   #05 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
   ```

3. This test suppresses repeated lines, comparing each line of the input file data starting from the second field:

   ```
   uniq –u –f 1 uniq_0I.t
   #01 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
   #02 bar0 foo1 bar1 foo1
   #03 foo0 bar0 foo1 bar1
   #04
   #07 bar0 foo1 bar1 foo0
   ```

4. This suppresses unique lines, comparing each line of the input file data starting from the third character:

   ```
   uniq –d –s 2 uniq_0I.t
   ```

   In the last example, the *uniq* utility found no input matching the above criteria.

37957 **RATIONALE**

37958 Some historical implementations have limited lines to be 1 080 bytes in length, which does not
37959 meet the implied {LINE_MAX} limit.

37960 Earlier versions of this standard allowed the *–number* and *+number* options. These options are no
37961 longer specified by this standard but may be present in some implementations.

37962 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

37963 None.

37964 **SEE ALSO**

37965 *comm*, *sort*

37966 **CHANGE HISTORY**

37967 First released in Issue 2.

37968 **Issue 6**

37969 The obsolescent SYNOPSIS and associated text are removed.

37970 The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

37971 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/40 is applied, adding *LC_COLLATE* to the
37972 ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section, and changing "the application shall ensure that" in the
37973 OUTPUT FILES section.

37974 **Issue 7**

37975 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying that '+' may be recognized
37976 as an option delimiter in the OPTIONS section.

37977 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

unlink — call the *unlink*( ) function

SYNOPSIS

XSI

```
unlink file
```

DESCRIPTION

The *unlink* utility shall perform the function call:

```
unlink(file);
```

A user may need appropriate privilege to invoke the *unlink* utility.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file The pathname of an existing file.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

Not used.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *unlink*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

None.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

38016 **OUTPUT FILES**

38017 None.

38018 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

38019 None.

38020 **EXIT STATUS**

38021 The following exit values shall be returned:

38022 0 Successful completion.

38023 >0 An error occurred.

38024 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

38025 Default.

38026 **APPLICATION USAGE**

38027 None.

38028 **EXAMPLES**

38029 None.

38030 **RATIONALE**

38031 None.

38032 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

38033 None.

38034 **SEE ALSO**

38035 *link*, *rm*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *unlink*( )

38036 **CHANGE HISTORY**

38037 First released in Issue 5.

38038 **NAME**

38039 uucp — system-to-system copy

38040 **SYNOPSIS**

38041 UU
```
uucp [–cCdfjmr] [–n user] source-file... destination-file
```

38042 **DESCRIPTION**

38043 The *uucp* utility shall copy files named by the *source-file* argument to the *destination-file* argument.
38044 The files named can be on local or remote systems.

38045 The *uucp* utility cannot guarantee support for all character encodings in all circumstances. For
38046 example, transmission data may be restricted to 7 bits by the underlying network, 8-bit data and
38047 filenames need not be portable to non-internationalized systems, and so on. Under these
38048 circumstances, it is recommended that only characters defined in the ISO/IEC 646:1991
38049 standard International Reference Version (equivalent to ASCII) 7-bit range of characters be used,
38050 and that only characters defined in the portable filename character set be used for naming files.
38051 The protocol for transfer of files is unspecified by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

38052 Typical implementations of this utility require a communications line configured to use the Base
38053 Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface, but other
38054 communications means may be used. On systems where there are no available communications
38055 means (either temporarily or permanently), this utility shall write an error message describing
38056 the problem and exit with a non-zero exit status.

38057 **OPTIONS**

38058 The *uucp* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
38059 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

38060 The following options shall be supported:

38061 **–c** Do not copy local file to the spool directory for transfer to the remote machine
38062 (default).

38063 **–C** Force the copy of local files to the spool directory for transfer.

38064 **–d** Make all necessary directories for the file copy (default).

38065 **–f** Do not make intermediate directories for the file copy.

38066 **–j** Write the job identification string to standard output. This job identification can be
38067 used by *uustat* to obtain the status or terminate a job.

38068 **–m** Send mail to the requester when the copy is completed.

38069 **–n** *user* Notify *user* on the remote system that a file was sent.

38070 **–r** Do not start the file transfer; just queue the job.

38071 **OPERANDS**

38072 The following operands shall be supported:

38073 *destination-file*, *source-file*
38074 A pathname of a file to be copied to, or from, respectively. Either name can be a
38075 pathname on the local machine, or can have the form:

38076 *system-name*!*pathname*

38077 where *system-name* is taken from a list of system names that *uucp* knows about.
38078 The destination *system-name* can also be a list of names such as:

38079 *system-name*!*system-name*!...!*system-name*!*pathname*

38080 in which case, an attempt is made to send the file via the specified route to the
38081 destination. Care should be taken to ensure that intermediate nodes in the route
38082 are willing to forward information.

38083 The shell pattern matching notation characters '?', '*', and "[...]" appearing
38084 in *pathname* shall be expanded on the appropriate system.

38085 Pathnames can be one of:

38086 1. An absolute pathname.

38087 2. A pathname preceded by ~*user* where *user* is a login name on the specified
38088 system and is replaced by that user's login directory. Note that if an invalid
38089 login is specified, the default is to the public directory (called *PUBDIR*; the
38090 actual location of *PUBDIR* is implementation-defined).

38091 3. A pathname preceded by ~/*destination* where *destination* is appended to
38092 *PUBDIR*.

38093 **Note:** This destination is treated as a filename unless more than one file is being
38094 transferred by this request or the destination is already a directory. To
38095 ensure that it is a directory, follow the destination with a '/'. For
38096 example, **~/dan/** as the destination makes the directory **PUBDIR/dan** if it
38097 does not exist and puts the requested files in that directory.

38098 4. Anything else shall be prefixed by the current directory.

38099 If the result is an erroneous pathname for the remote system, the copy shall fail. If
38100 the *destination-file* is a directory, the last part of the *source-file* name shall be used.

38101 The read, write, and execute permissions given by *uucp* are implementation-
38102 defined.

38103 **STDIN**

38104 Not used.

38105 **INPUT FILES**

38106 The files to be copied are regular files.

38107 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

38108 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *uucp*:

38109 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
38110 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
38111 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
38112 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

38113 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
38114 internationalization variables.

38115 *LC_COLLATE*

38116 Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-
38117 character collating elements within bracketed filename patterns.

38118 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
38119 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
38120 arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classes within bracketed
38121 filename patterns (for example, "'[[:lower:]]*'").

38122 *LC_MESSAGES*

38123 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
38124 diagnostic messages written to standard error, and informative messages written

to standard output.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

Not used.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The output files (which may be on other systems) are copies of the input files.

If **–m** is used, mail files are modified.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

This utility is part of the UUCP Utilities option and need not be supported by all implementations.

The domain of remotely accessible files can (and for obvious security reasons usually should) be severely restricted.

Note that the '!' character in addresses has to be escaped when using *csh* as a command interpreter because of its history substitution syntax. For *ksh* and *sh* the escape is not necessary, but may be used.

As noted above, shell metacharacters appearing in pathnames are expanded on the appropriate system. On an internationalized system, this is done under the control of local settings of *LC_COLLATE* and *LC_CTYPE*. Thus, care should be taken when using bracketed filename patterns, as collation and typing rules may vary from one system to another. Also be aware that certain types of expression (that is, equivalence classes, character classes, and collating symbols) need not be supported on non-internationalized systems.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

mailx, *uuencode*, *uustat*, *uux*

38166 **CHANGE HISTORY**

38167 First released in Issue 2.

38168 **Issue 6**

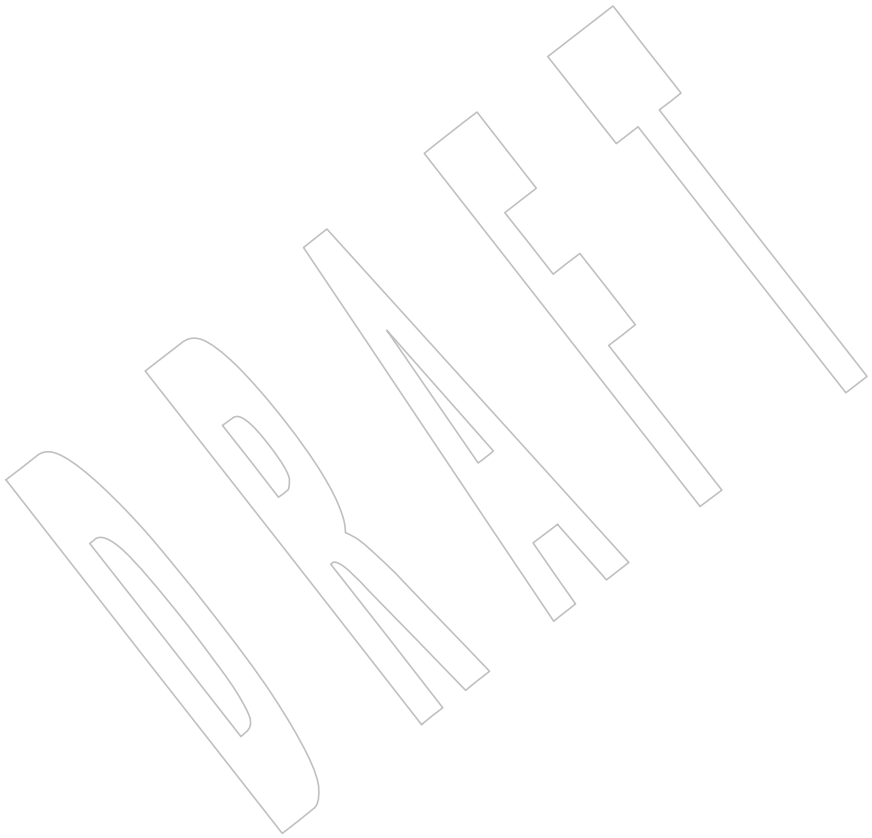
38169 The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

38170 The UN margin codes and associated shading are removed from the **−C**, **−f**, **−j**, **−n**, and **−r**
38171 options in response to The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-003.

38172 **Issue 7**

38173 SD5-XCU-ERN-46 is applied, moving this utility to the UUCP Utilities Option Group.

38174 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.



38175 **NAME**

38176 uudecode — decode a binary file

38177 **SYNOPSIS**

38178 `uudecode [–o outfile] [file]`

38179 **DESCRIPTION**

38180 The *uudecode* utility shall read a file, or standard input if no file is specified, that includes data
38181 created by the *uuencode* utility. The *uudecode* utility shall scan the input file, searching for data
38182 compatible with one of the formats specified in *uuencode*, and attempt to create or overwrite the
38183 file described by the data (or overridden by the **–o** option). The pathname shall be contained in
38184 the data or specified by the **–o** option. The file access permission bits and contents for the file to
38185 be produced shall be contained in that data. The mode bits of the created file (other than
38186 standard output) shall be set from the file access permission bits contained in the data; that is,
38187 other attributes of the mode, including the file mode creation mask (see *umask*), shall not affect
38188 the file being produced. If either of the *op* characters `'+'` and `'–'` (see *chmod*) are specified in
38189 symbolic mode, the initial mode on which those operations are based is unspecified.

38190 If the pathname of the file to be produced exists, and the user does not have write permission on
38191 that file, *uudecode* shall terminate with an error. If the pathname of the file to be produced exists,
38192 and the user has write permission on that file, the existing file shall be overwritten.

38193 If the input data was produced by *uuencode* on a system with a different number of bits per byte
38194 than on the target system, the results of *uudecode* are unspecified.

38195 **OPTIONS**

38196 The *uudecode* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
38197 Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

38198 The following option shall be supported by the implementation:

38199 **–o** *outfile* A pathname of a file that shall be used instead of any pathname contained in the
38200 input data. Specifying an *outfile* option-argument of **/dev/stdout** shall indicate
38201 standard output.

38202 **OPERANDS**

38203 The following operand shall be supported:

38204 *file* The pathname of a file containing the output of *uuencode*.

38205 **STDIN**

38206 See the INPUT FILES section.

38207 **INPUT FILES**

38208 The input files shall be files containing the output of *uuencode*.

38209 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

38210 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *uudecode*:

38211 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
38212 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
38213 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
38214 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

38215 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
38216 internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
If the file data header encoded by *uuencode* is – or **/dev/stdout**, or the –**o /dev/stdout** option overrides the file data, the standard output shall be in the same format as the file originally encoded by *uuencode*. Otherwise, the standard output shall not be used.

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
The output file shall be in the same format as the file originally encoded by *uuencode*.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
The user who is invoking *uudecode* must have write permission on any file being created.

The output of *uuencode* is essentially an encoded bit stream that is not cognizant of byte boundaries. It is possible that a 9-bit byte target machine can process input from an 8-bit source, if it is aware of the requirement, but the reverse is unlikely to be satisfying. Of course, the only data that is meaningful for such a transfer between architectures is generally character data.

EXAMPLES
None.

RATIONALE
Input files are not necessarily text files, as stated by an early proposal. Although the *uuencode* output is a text file, that output could have been wrapped within another file or mail message that is not a text file.

The –**o** option is not historical practice, but was added at the request of WG15 so that the user could override the target pathname without having to edit the input data itself.

In early drafts, the [–**o** *outfile*

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

chmod, *umask*, *uuencode*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

The **–o** *outfile* option is added, as specified in the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 2-2004, item XCU/TC2/D6/35 is applied, clarifying in the DESCRIPTION that the initial mode used if either of the *op* characters is '+' or '–' is unspecified.

Issue 7

The *uudecode* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

38278 **NAME**

38279 uuencode — encode a binary file

38280 **SYNOPSIS**

38281 `uuencode [-m] [file] decode_pathname`

38282 **DESCRIPTION**

38283 The *uuencode* utility shall write an encoded version of the named input file, or standard input if
38284 no *file* is specified, to standard output. The output shall be encoded using one of the algorithms
38285 described in the STDOUT section and shall include the file access permission bits (in *chmod* octal
38286 or symbolic notation) of the input file and the *decode_pathname*, for re-creation of the file on
38287 another system that conforms to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

38288 **OPTIONS**

38289 The *uuencode* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,
38290 Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

38291 The following option shall be supported by the implementation:

38292 **-m** Encode the output using the MIME Base64 algorithm described in STDOUT. If **-m**
38293 is not specified, the historical algorithm described in STDOUT shall be used.

38294 **OPERANDS**

38295 The following operands shall be supported:

38296 *decode_pathname*
38297 The pathname of the file into which the *uudecode* utility shall place the decoded
38298 file. Specifying a *decode_pathname* operand of **/dev/stdout** shall indicate that
38299 *uudecode* is to use standard output. If there are characters in *decode_pathname* that
38300 are not in the portable filename character set the results are unspecified.

38301 *file* A pathname of the file to be encoded.

38302 **STDIN**

38303 See the INPUT FILES section.

38304 **INPUT FILES**

38305 Input files can be files of any type.

38306 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

38307 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *uuencode*:

38308 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
38309 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
38310 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
38311 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

38312 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
38313 internationalization variables.

38314 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
38315 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
38316 arguments and input files).

38317 *LC_MESSAGES*
38318 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
38319 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Default.

STDOUT

uuencode Base64 Algorithm

The standard output shall be a text file (encoded in the character set of the current locale) that begins with the line:

`"begin-base64Δ%sΔ%s\n", <mode>, <decode_pathname>`

and ends with the line:

`"====\n"`

In both cases, the lines shall have no preceding or trailing <blank>s.

The encoding process represents 24-bit groups of input bits as output strings of four encoded characters. Proceeding from left to right, a 24-bit input group shall be formed by concatenating three 8-bit input groups. Each 24-bit input group then shall be treated as four concatenated 6-bit groups, each of which shall be translated into a single digit in the Base64 alphabet. When encoding a bit stream via the Base64 encoding, the bit stream shall be presumed to be ordered with the most-significant bit first. That is, the first bit in the stream shall be the high-order bit in the first byte, and the eighth bit shall be the low-order bit in the first byte, and so on. Each 6-bit group is used as an index into an array of 64 printable characters, as shown in Table 4-21 (on page 979).

Table 4-21 uuencode Base64 Values

Value	Encoding	Value	Encoding	Value	Encoding	Value	Encoding
0	A	17	R	34	i	51	z
1	B	18	S	35	j	52	0
2	C	19	T	36	k	53	1
3	D	20	U	37	l	54	2
4	E	21	V	38	m	55	3
5	F	22	W	39	n	56	4
6	G	23	X	40	o	57	5
7	H	24	Y	41	p	58	6
8	I	25	Z	42	q	59	7
9	J	26	a	43	r	60	8
10	K	27	b	44	s	61	9
11	L	28	c	45	t	62	+
12	M	29	d	46	u	63	/
13	N	30	e	47	v		
14	O	31	f	48	w	(pad)	=
15	P	32	g	49	x		
16	Q	33	h	50	y		

The character referenced by the index shall be placed in the output string.

The output stream (encoded bytes) shall be represented in lines of no more than 76 characters each. All line breaks or other characters not found in the table shall be ignored by decoding software (see *uudecode*).

Special processing shall be performed if fewer than 24 bits are available at the end of a message

or encapsulated part of a message. A full encoding quantum shall always be completed at the end of a message. When fewer than 24 input bits are available in an input group, zero bits shall be added (on the right) to form an integral number of 6-bit groups. Output character positions that are not required to represent actual input data shall be set to the character `'='`. Since all Base64 input is an integral number of octets, only the following cases can arise:

1. The final quantum of encoding input is an integral multiple of 24 bits; here, the final unit of encoded output shall be an integral multiple of 4 characters with no `'='` padding.
2. The final quantum of encoding input is exactly 16 bits; here, the final unit of encoded output shall be three characters followed by one `'='` padding character.
3. The final quantum of encoding input is exactly 8 bits; here, the final unit of encoded output shall be two characters followed by two `'='` padding characters.

A terminating `"===="` evaluates to nothing and denotes the end of the encoded data.

uuencode Historical Algorithm

The standard output shall be a text file (encoded in the character set of the current locale) that begins with the line:

`"begin␣%s␣%s\n"` *<mode>, <decode_pathname>*

and ends with the line:

`"end\n"`

In both cases, the lines shall have no preceding or trailing <blank>s.

The algorithm that shall be used for lines in between **begin** and **end** takes three octets as input and writes four characters of output by splitting the input at six-bit intervals into four octets, containing data in the lower six bits only. These octets shall be converted to characters by adding a value of 0x20 to each octet, so that each octet is in the range [0x20,0x5f], and then it shall be assumed to represent a printable character in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard encoded character set. It then shall be translated into the corresponding character codes for the codeset in use in the current locale. (For example, the octet 0x41, representing `'A'`, would be translated to `'A'` in the current codeset, such as 0xc1 if it were EBCDIC.)

Where the bits of two octets are combined, the least significant bits of the first octet shall be shifted left and combined with the most significant bits of the second octet shifted right. Thus the three octets *A*, *B*, *C* shall be converted into the four octets:

```
0x20 + (( A >> 2                    ) & 0x3F)
0x20 + (((A << 4) | ((B >> 4) & 0xF)) & 0x3F)
0x20 + (((B << 2) | ((C >> 6) & 0x3)) & 0x3F)
0x20 + (( C                         ) & 0x3F)
```

These octets then shall be translated into the local character set.

Each encoded line contains a length character, equal to the number of characters to be decoded plus 0x20 translated to the local character set as described above, followed by the encoded characters. The maximum number of octets to be encoded on each line shall be 45.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The file is expanded by 35 percent (each three octets become four, plus control information) causing it to take longer to transmit.

Since this utility is intended to create files to be used for data interchange between systems with possibly different codesets, and to represent binary data as a text file, the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard was chosen for a midpoint in the algorithm as a known reference point. The output from *uuencode* is a text file on the local system. If the output were in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard codeset, it might not be a text file (at least because the <newline>s might not match), and the goal of creating a text file would be defeated. If this text file was then carried to another machine with the same codeset, it would be perfectly compatible with that system's *uudecode*. If it was transmitted over a mail system or sent to a machine with a different codeset, it is assumed that, as for every other text file, some translation mechanism would convert it (by the time it reached a user on the other system) into an appropriate codeset. This translation only makes sense from the local codeset, not if the file has been put into a ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard representation first. Similarly, files processed by *uuencode* can be placed in *pax* archives, intermixed with other text files in the same codeset.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

A new algorithm was added at the request of the international community to parallel work in RFC 2045 (MIME). As with the historical *uuencode* format, the Base64 Content-Transfer-Encoding is designed to represent arbitrary sequences of octets in a form that is not humanly readable. A 65-character subset of the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard is used, enabling 6 bits to be represented per printable character. (The extra 65th character, `'='`, is used to signify a special processing function.)

This subset has the important property that it is represented identically in all versions of the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard, including US ASCII, and all characters in the subset are also represented identically in all versions of EBCDIC. The historical *uuencode* algorithm does not share this property, which is the reason that a second algorithm was added to the ISO POSIX-2 standard.

The string `"===="` was used for the termination instead of the end used in the original format because the latter is a string that could be valid encoded input.

In an early draft, the **–m** option was named **–b** (for Base64), but it was renamed to reflect its relationship to the RFC 2045. A **–u** was also present to invoke the default algorithm, but since this was not historical practice, it was omitted as being unnecessary.

See the RATIONALE section in *uudecode* for the derivation of the **/dev/stdout** symbol.

38450 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

38451 None.

38452 **SEE ALSO**

38453 *chmod*, *mailx*, *uudecode*

38454 **CHANGE HISTORY**

38455 First released in Issue 4.

38456 **Issue 6**

38457 This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

38458 The Base64 algorithm and the ability to output to **/dev/stdout** are added as specified in the
38459 IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

38460 **Issue 7**

38461 The *uuencode* utility is moved from the User Portability Utilities option to the Base. User
38462 Portability Utilities is now an option for interactive utilities.

38463 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

uustat — uucp status inquiry and job control

SYNOPSIS

UU

```
uustat [–q|–k jobid|–r jobid]
uustat [–s system] [–u user]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *uustat* utility shall display the status of, or cancel, previously specified *uucp* requests, or provide general status on *uucp* connections to other systems.

When no options are given, *uustat* shall write to standard output the status of all *uucp* requests issued by the current user.

Typical implementations of this utility require a communications line configured to use the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface, but other communications means may be used. On systems where there are no available communications means (either temporarily or permanently), this utility shall write an error message describing the problem and exit with a non-zero exit status.

OPTIONS

The *uustat* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported:

–q Write the jobs queued for each machine.

–k *jobid* Kill the *uucp* request whose job identification is *jobid*. The application shall ensure that the killed *uucp* request belongs to the person invoking *uustat* unless that user has appropriate privileges.

–r *jobid* Rejuvenate *jobid*. The files associated with *jobid* are touched so that their modification time is set to the current time. This prevents the cleanup program from deleting the job until the jobs modification time reaches the limit imposed by the program.

–s *system* Write the status of all *uucp* requests for remote system *system*.

–u *user* Write the status of all *uucp* requests issued by *user*.

OPERANDS

None.

STDIN

Not used.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *uustat*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error, and informative messages written to standard output.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The standard output shall consist of information about each job selected, in an unspecified format. The information shall include at least the job ID, the user ID or name, and the remote system name.

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE
This utility is part of the UUCP Utilities option and need not be supported by all implementations.

EXAMPLES
None.

RATIONALE
None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS
None.

SEE ALSO
uucp

CHANGE HISTORY
First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The *LC_TIME* and *TZ* entries are removed from the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section.

The UN margin code and associated shading are removed from the **–q** option in response to The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-003.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-46 is applied, moving this utility to the UUCP Utilities Option Group.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

NAME

uux — remote command execution

SYNOPSIS

UU

```
uux [–np] command–string
uux [–jnp] command–string
```

DESCRIPTION

The *uux* utility shall gather zero or more files from various systems, execute a shell pipeline (see Section 2.9 (on page 47)) on a specified system, and then send the standard output of the command to a file on a specified system. Only the first command of a pipeline can have a *system-name*! prefix. All other commands in the pipeline shall be executed on the system of the first command.

The following restrictions are applicable to the shell pipeline processed by *uux*:

- In gathering files from different systems, pathname expansion shall not be performed by *uux*. Thus, a request such as:

  ```
  uux "c99 remsys!~/*.c"
  ```

  would attempt to copy the file named literally ***.c** to the local system.

- The redirection operators `">>"`, `"<<"`, `">|"`, and `">&"` shall not be accepted. Any use of these redirection operators shall cause this utility to write an error message describing the problem and exit with a non-zero exit status.

- The reserved word **!** cannot be used at the head of the pipeline to modify the exit status. (See the *command-string* operand description below.)

- Alias substitution shall not be performed.

A filename can be specified as for *uucp*; it can be an absolute pathname, a pathname preceded by *~name* (which is replaced by the corresponding login directory), a pathname specified as *~/dest* (*dest* is prefixed by the public directory called *PUBDIR*; the actual location of *PUBDIR* is implementation-defined), or a simple filename (which is prefixed by *uux* with the current directory). See *uucp* for the details.

The execution of commands on remote systems shall take place in an execution directory known to the *uucp* system. All files required for the execution shall be put into this directory unless they already reside on that machine. Therefore, the application shall ensure that non-local filenames (without path or machine reference) are unique within the *uux* request.

The *uux* utility shall attempt to get all files to the execution system. For files that are output files, the application shall ensure that the filename is escaped using parentheses.

The remote system shall notify the user by mail if the requested command on the remote system was disallowed or the files were not accessible. This notification can be turned off by the **–n** option.

Typical implementations of this utility require a communications line configured to use the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface, but other communications means may be used. On systems where there are no available communications means (either temporarily or permanently), this utility shall write an error message describing the problem and exit with a non-zero exit status.

The *uux* utility cannot guarantee support for all character encodings in all circumstances. For example, transmission data may be restricted to 7 bits by the underlying network, 8-bit data and

filenames need not be portable to non-internationalized systems, and so on. Under these circumstances, it is recommended that only characters defined in the ISO/IEC 646:1991 standard International Reference Version (equivalent to ASCII) 7-bit range of characters be used

38641 **STDERR**

38642 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

38643 **OUTPUT FILES**

38644 Output files shall be created or written, or both, according to the contents of *command-string*.

38645 If **–n** is not used, mail files shall be modified following any command or file-access failures on
38646 the remote system.

38647 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

38648 None.

38649 **EXIT STATUS**

38650 The following exit values shall be returned:

38651 0 Successful completion.

38652 >0 An error occurred.

38653 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

38654 Default.

38655 **APPLICATION USAGE**

38656 This utility is part of the UUCP Utilities option and need not be supported by all
38657 implementations.

38658 Note that, for security reasons, many installations limit the list of commands executable on
38659 behalf of an incoming request from *uux*. Many sites permit little more than the receipt of mail
38660 via *uux*.

38661 Any characters special to the command interpreter should be quoted either by quoting the entire
38662 *command-string* or quoting the special characters as individual arguments.

38663 As noted in *uucp*, shell pattern matching notation characters appearing in pathnames are
38664 expanded on the appropriate local system. This is done under the control of local settings of
38665 *LC_COLLATE* and *LC_CTYPE*. Thus, care should be taken when using bracketed filename
38666 patterns, as collation and typing rules may vary from one system to another. Also be aware that
38667 certain types of expression (that is, equivalence classes, character classes, and collating symbols)
38668 need not be supported on non-internationalized systems.

38669 **EXAMPLES**

38670 1. The following command gets **file1** from system **a** and **file2** from system **b**, executes *diff* on
38671 the local system, and puts the results in **file.diff** in the local *PUBDIR* directory. (*PUBDIR*
38672 is the *uucp* public directory on the local system.)

38673 ```
uux "!diff a!/usr/file1 b!/a4/file2 >!~/file.diff"
```

38674 2. The following command fails because *uux* places all files copied to a system in the same
38675 working directory. Although the files **xyz** are from two different systems, their filenames
38676 are the same and conflict.

38677 ```
uux "!diff a!/usr1/xyz b!/usr2/xyz >!~/xyz.diff"
```

38678 3. The following command succeeds (assuming *diff* is permitted on system **a**) because the
38679 file local to system **a** is not copied to the working directory, and hence does not conflict
38680 with the file from system **c**.

38681 ```
uux "a!diff a!/usr/xyz c!/usr/xyz >!~/xyz.diff"
```

 
```

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *uucp*, *uuencode*, *uustat*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 6

The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

The UN margin code and associated shading are removed from the **–j** option in response to The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-003.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-46 is applied, moving this utility to the UUCP Utilities Option Group.

NAME

val — validate SCCS files (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
val -
val [-s] [-m name] [-r SID] [-y type] file...
```

DESCRIPTION

The *val* utility shall determine whether the specified *file* is an SCCS file meeting the characteristics specified by the options.

OPTIONS

The *val* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that the usage of the '-' operand is not strictly as intended by the guidelines (that is, reading options and operands from standard input).

The following options shall be supported:

-m *name* Specify a *name*, which is compared with the SCCS %**M**% keyword in *file*; see *get*.

-r *SID* Specify a *SID* (SCCS Identification String), an SCCS delta number. A check shall be made to determine whether the *SID* is ambiguous (for example, **-r 1** is ambiguous because it physically does not exist but implies 1.1, 1.2, and so on, which may exist) or invalid (for example, **-r 1.0** or **-r 1.1.0** are invalid because neither case can exist as a valid delta number). If the *SID* is valid and not ambiguous, a check shall be made to determine whether it actually exists.

-s Silence the diagnostic message normally written to standard output for any error that is detected while processing each named file on a given command line.

-y *type* Specify a *type*, which shall be compared with the SCCS %**Y**% keyword in *file*; see *get*.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

file A pathname of an existing SCCS file. If exactly one *file* operand appears, and it is '-', the standard input shall be read: each line shall be independently processed as if it were a command line argument list. (However, the line is not subjected to any of the shell word expansions, such as parameter expansion or quote removal.)

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file used only when the *file* operand is specified as '-'.

INPUT FILES

Any SCCS files processed shall be files of an unspecified format.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *val*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files).

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error, and informative messages written to standard output.

NLSPATH Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
The standard output shall consist of informative messages about either:

1. Each file processed
2. Each command line read from standard input

If the standard input is not used, for each *file* operand yielding a discrepancy, the output line shall have the following format:

`"%s: %s\n", <pathname>, <unspecified string>`

If standard input is used, a line of input shall be written before each of the preceding lines for files containing discrepancies:

`"%s:\n", <input line>`

STDERR
Not used.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The 8-bit code returned by *val* shall be a disjunction of the possible errors; that is, it can be interpreted as a bit string where set bits are interpreted as follows:

0x80 = Missing file argument.
0x40 = Unknown or duplicate option.
0x20 = Corrupted SCCS file.
0x10 = Cannot open file or file not SCCS.
0x08 = *SID* is invalid or ambiguous.
0x04 = *SID* does not exist.
0x02 = %**Y**%, –**y** mismatch.
0x01 = %**M**%, –**m** mismatch.

Note that *val* can process two or more files on a given command line and can process multiple command lines (when reading the standard input). In these cases an aggregate code shall be returned: a logical OR of the codes generated for each command line and file processed.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

38781 **APPLICATION USAGE**

38782 Since the *val* exit status sets the 0x80 bit, shell applications checking `"$?"` cannot tell if it
38783 terminated due to a missing file argument or receipt of a signal.

38784 **EXAMPLES**

38785 In a directory with three SCCS files—**s.x** (of **t** type "text"), **s.y**, and **s.z** (a corrupted file)—the
38786 following command could produce the output shown:

38787 ```
38788 val – <<EOF
38789 –y source s.x
38790 –m y s.y
38791 s.z
38792 EOF
38793 –y source s.x
38794   s.x: %Y%, –y mismatch
38795 s.z
38796   s.z: corrupted SCCS file
```

38797 **RATIONALE**

38798 None.

38799 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

38800 None.

38801 **SEE ALSO**

38802 *admin*, *delta*, *get*, *prs*

38803 **CHANGE HISTORY**

38804 First released in Issue 2.

38805 **Issue 6**

38806 The Open Group Corrigendum U025/4 is applied, correcting a typographical error in the EXIT
38807 STATUS.

38808 **Issue 7**

38809 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.
```

NAME

vi — screen-oriented (visual) display editor

SYNOPSIS

UP

```
vi [–rR] [–c command] [–t tagstring] [–w size] [file...]
```

DESCRIPTION

This utility shall be provided on systems that both support the User Portability Utilities option and define the POSIX2_CHAR_TERM symbol. On other systems it is optional.

The *vi* (visual) utility is a screen-oriented text editor. Only the open and visual modes of the editor are described in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x; see the line editor *ex* for additional editing capabilities used in *vi*. The user can switch back and forth between *vi* and *ex* and execute *ex* commands from within *vi*.

This reference page uses the term *edit buffer* to describe the current working text. No specific implementation is implied by this term. All editing changes are performed on the edit buffer, and no changes to it shall affect any file until an editor command writes the file.

When using *vi*, the terminal screen acts as a window into the editing buffer. Changes made to the editing buffer shall be reflected in the screen display; the position of the cursor on the screen shall indicate the position within the editing buffer.

Certain terminals do not have all the capabilities necessary to support the complete *vi* definition. When these commands cannot be supported on such terminals, this condition shall not produce an error message such as "not an editor command" or report a syntax error. The implementation may either accept the commands and produce results on the screen that are the result of an unsuccessful attempt to meet the requirements of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x or report an error describing the terminal-related deficiency.

OPTIONS

The *vi* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except that `'+'` may be recognized as an option delimiter as well as `'–'`.

The following options shall be supported:

–c *command* See the *ex* command description of the **–c** option.

–r See the *ex* command description of the **–r** option.

–R See the *ex* command description of the **–R** option.

–t *tagstring* See the *ex* command description of the **–t** option.

–w *size* See the *ex* command description of the **–w** option.

OPERANDS

See the OPERANDS section of the *ex* command for a description of the operands supported by the *vi* command.

STDIN

If standard input is not a terminal device, the results are undefined. The standard input consists of a series of commands and input text, as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

If a read from the standard input returns an error, or if the editor detects an end-of-file condition from the standard input, it shall be equivalent to a SIGHUP asynchronous event.

38850 **INPUT FILES**

38851 See the INPUT FILES section of the *ex* command for a description of the input files supported by
38852 the *vi* command.

38853 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

38854 See the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section of the *ex* command for the environment variables
38855 that affect the execution of the *vi* command.

38856 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

38857 See the ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS section of the *ex* for the asynchronous events that affect the
38858 execution of the *vi* command.

38859 **STDOUT**

38860 If standard output is not a terminal device, undefined results occur.

38861 Standard output may be used for writing prompts to the user, for informational messages, and
38862 for writing lines from the file.

38863 **STDERR**

38864 If standard output is not a terminal device, undefined results occur.

38865 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

38866 **OUTPUT FILES**

38867 See the OUTPUT FILES section of the *ex* command for a description of the output files
38868 supported by the *vi* command.

38869 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

38870 If the terminal does not have the capabilities necessary to support an unspecified portion of the
38871 *vi* definition, implementations shall start initially in *ex* mode or open mode. Otherwise, after
38872 initialization, *vi* shall be in command mode; text input mode can be entered by one of several
38873 commands used to insert or change text. In text input mode, <ESC> can be used to return to
38874 command mode; other uses of <ESC> are described later in this section; see Terminate
38875 Command or Input Mode (on page 1002).

38876 **Initialization in ex and vi**

38877 See Initialization in ex and vi for a description of *ex* and *vi* initialization for the *vi* utility.

38878 **Command Descriptions in vi**

38879 The following symbols are used in this reference page to represent arguments to commands.

38880 *buffer* See the description of *buffer* in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section of the *ex* utility;
38881 see Command Descriptions in ex (on page 370).

38882 In open and visual mode, when a command synopsis shows both [*buffer*] and [*count*]
38883 preceding the command name, they can be specified in either order.

38884 *count* A positive integer used as an optional argument to most commands, either to give a
38885 repeat count or as a size. This argument is optional and shall default to 1 unless
38886 otherwise specified.

38887 The Synopsis lines for the *vi* commands <control>-G, <control>-L, <control>-R,
38888 <control>-], **%**, **&**, **^**, **D**, **m**, **M**, **Q**, **u**, **U**, and **ZZ** do not have *count* as an optional
38889 argument. Regardless, it shall not be an error to specify a *count* to these commands, and
38890 any specified *count* shall be ignored.

38891 *motion* An optional trailing argument used by the **!**, **<**, **>**, **c**, **d**, and **y** commands, which is used
38892 to indicate the region of text that shall be affected by the command. The motion can be
38893 either one of the command characters repeated or one of several other *vi* commands
38894 (listed in the following table). Each of the applicable commands specifies the region of

text matched by repeating the command; each command that can be used as a motion command specifies the region of text it affects.

Commands that take *motion* arguments operate on either lines or characters, depending on the circumstances. When operating on lines, all lines that fall partially or wholly within the text region specified for the command shall be affected. When operating on characters, only the exact characters in the specified text region shall be affected. Each motion command specifies this individually.

When commands that may be motion commands are not used as motion commands, they shall set the current position to the current line and column as specified.

The following commands shall be valid cursor motion commands:

```
<apostrophe>        (     -     j     H
<carriage-return>   )     $     k     L
<comma>             [[    %     l     M
<control>-H         ]]    _     n     N
<control>-N         {     ;     t     T
<control>-P         }     ?     w     W
<grave accent>      ^     b     B
<newline>           +     e     E
<space>             |     f     F
<zero>              /     h     G
```

Any *count* that is specified to a command that has an associated motion command shall be applied to the motion command. If a *count* is applied to both the command and its associated motion command, the effect shall be multiplicative.

The following symbols are used in this section to specify locations in the edit buffer:

current character
: The character that is currently indicated by the cursor.

end of a line
: The point located between the last non-<newline> (if any) and the terminating <newline> of a line. For an empty line, this location coincides with the beginning of the line.

end of the edit buffer
: The location corresponding to the end of the last line in the edit buffer.

The following symbols are used in this section to specify command actions:

bigword In the POSIX locale, *vi* shall recognize four kinds of *bigwords*:

1. A maximal sequence of non-<blank>s preceded and followed by <blank>s or the beginning or end of a line or the edit buffer
2. One or more sequential blank lines
3. The first character in the edit buffer
4. The last non-<newline> in the edit buffer

word In the POSIX locale, *vi* shall recognize five kinds of words:

1. A maximal sequence of letters, digits, and underscores, delimited at both ends by:
   — Characters other than letters, digits, or underscores

38938 — The beginning or end of a line

38939 — The beginning or end of the edit buffer

38940 2. A maximal sequence of characters other than letters, digits, underscores, or
38941 <blank>s, delimited at both ends by:

38942 — A letter, digit, underscore

38943 — <blank>s

38944 — The beginning or end of a line

38945 — The beginning or end of the edit buffer

38946 3. One or more sequential blank lines

38947 4. The first character in the edit buffer

38948 5. The last non-<newline> in the edit buffer

38949 *section boundary*

38950 A *section boundary* is one of the following:

38951 1. A line whose first character is a <form-feed>

38952 2. A line whose first character is an open curly brace (`'{'`)

38953 3. A line whose first character is a period and whose second and third characters
38954 match a two-character pair in the **sections** edit option (see *ed*)

38955 4. A line whose first character is a period and whose only other character matches
38956 the first character of a two-character pair in the **sections** edit option, where the
38957 second character of the two-character pair is a <space>

38958 5. The first line of the edit buffer

38959 6. The last line of the edit buffer if the last line of the edit buffer is empty or if it is a
38960]] or } command; otherwise, the last non-<newline> of the last line of the edit
38961 buffer

38962 *paragraph boundary*

38963 A *paragraph boundary* is one of the following:

38964 1. A section boundary

38965 2. A line whose first character is a period and whose second and third characters
38966 match a two-character pair in the **paragraphs** edit option (see *ed*)

38967 3. A line whose first character is a period and whose only other character matches
38968 the first character of a two-character pair in the *paragraphs* edit option, where the
38969 second character of the two-character pair is a <space>

38970 4. One or more sequential blank lines

38971 *remembered search direction*

38972 See the description of *remembered search direction* in *ed*.

38973 *sentence boundary*

38974 A *sentence boundary* is one of the following:

38975 1. A paragraph boundary

38976 2. The first non-<blank> that occurs after a paragraph boundary

3. The first non-<blank> that occurs after a period (`'.'`), exclamation mark (`'!'`), or question mark (`'?'`), followed by two <space>s or the end of a line; any number of closing parenthesis (`')'`), closing brackets (`']'`), double quote (`'"'`), or single quote (`''''`) characters can appear between the punctuation mark and the two <space>s or end-of-line

In the remainder of the description of the *vi* utility, the term "buffer line" refers to a line in the edit buffer and the term "display line" refers to the line or lines on the display screen used to display one buffer line. The term "current line" refers to a specific "buffer line".

If there are display lines on the screen for which there are no corresponding buffer lines because they correspond to lines that would be after the end of the file, they shall be displayed as a single tilde (`'~'`) character, plus the terminating <newline>.

The last line of the screen shall be used to report errors or display informational messages. It shall also be used to display the input for "line-oriented commands" (**/**, **?**, **:**, and **!**). When a line-oriented command is executed, the editor shall enter text input mode on the last line on the screen, using the respective command characters as prompt characters. (In the case of the **!** command, the associated motion shall be entered by the user before the editor enters text input mode.) The line entered by the user shall be terminated by a <newline>, a non-<control>-V-escaped <carriage-return>, or unescaped <ESC>. It is unspecified if more characters than require a display width minus one column number of screen columns can be entered.

If any command is executed that overwrites a portion of the screen other than the last line of the screen (for example, the *ex* **suspend** or **!** commands), other than the *ex* **shell** command, the user shall be prompted for a character before the screen is refreshed and the edit session continued.

<tab>s shall take up the number of columns on the screen set by the **tabstop** edit option (see *ed*), unless there are less than that number of columns before the display margin that will cause the displayed line to be folded; in this case, they shall only take up the number of columns up to that boundary.

The cursor shall be placed on the current line and relative to the current column as specified by each command described in the following sections.

In open mode, if the current line is not already displayed, then it shall be displayed.

In visual mode, if the current line is not displayed, then the lines that are displayed shall be expanded, scrolled, or redrawn to cause an unspecified portion of the current line to be displayed. If the screen is redrawn, no more than the number of display lines specified by the value of the **window** edit option shall be displayed (unless the current line cannot be completely displayed in the number of display lines specified by the **window** edit option) and the current line shall be positioned as close to the center of the displayed lines as possible (within the constraints imposed by the distance of the line from the beginning or end of the edit buffer). If the current line is before the first line in the display and the screen is scrolled, an unspecified portion of the current line shall be placed on the first line of the display. If the current line is after the last line in the display and the screen is scrolled, an unspecified portion of the current line shall be placed on the last line of the display.

In visual mode, if a line from the edit buffer (other than the current line) does not entirely fit into the lines at the bottom of the display that are available for its presentation, the editor may choose not to display any portion of the line. The lines of the display that do not contain text from the edit buffer for this reason shall each consist of a single `'@'` character.

In visual mode, the editor may choose for unspecified reasons to not update lines in the display to correspond to the underlying edit buffer text. The lines of the display that do not correctly correspond to text from the edit buffer for this reason shall consist of a single `'@'` character (plus the terminating <newline>), and the <control>-R command shall cause the editor to update the

screen to correctly represent the edit buffer.

Open and visual mode commands that set the current column set it to a column position in the display, and not a character position in the line. In this case, however, the column position in the display shall be calculated for an infinite width display; for example, the column related to a character that is part of a line that has been folded onto additional screen lines will be offset from the display line column where the buffer line begins, not from the beginning of a particular display line.

The display cursor column in the display is based on the value of the current column, as follows, with each rule applied in turn:

1. If the current column is after the last display line column used by the displayed line, the display cursor column shall be set to the last display line column occupied by the last non-<newline> in the current line; otherwise, the display cursor column shall be set to the current column.
2. If the character of which some portion is displayed in the display line column specified by the display cursor column requires more than a single display line column:
   a. If in text input mode, the display cursor column shall be adjusted to the first display line column in which any portion of that character is displayed.
   b. Otherwise, the display cursor column shall be adjusted to the last display line column in which any portion of that character is displayed.

The current column shall not be changed by these adjustments to the display cursor column.

If an error occurs during the parsing or execution of a *vi* command:

- The terminal shall be alerted. Execution of the *vi* command shall stop, and the cursor (for example, the current line and column) shall not be further modified.
- Unless otherwise specified by the following command sections, it is unspecified whether an informational message shall be displayed.
- Any partially entered *vi* command shall be discarded.
- If the *vi* command resulted from a **map** expansion, all characters from that **map** expansion shall be discarded, except as otherwise specified by the **map** command (see *ed*).
- If the *vi* command resulted from the execution of a buffer, no further commands caused by the execution of the buffer shall be executed.

Page Backwards

Synopsis: `[count] <control>-B`

If in open mode, the <control>-B command shall behave identically to the **z** command. Otherwise, if the current line is the first line of the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

If the **window** edit option is less than 3, display a screen where the last line of the display shall be some portion of:

`(current first line) –1`

otherwise, display a screen where the first line of the display shall be some portion of:

`(current first line) – count x ((window edit option) –2)`

If this calculation would result in a line that is before the first line of the edit buffer, the first line of the display shall display some portion of the first line of the edit buffer.

Current line: If no lines from the previous display remain on the screen, set to the last line of the display; otherwise, set to (*line* – the number of new lines displayed on this screen).

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Scroll Forward

Synopsis: **[***count***]** <control>-D

If the current line is the last line of the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

If no *count* is specified, *count* shall default to the *count* associated with the previous <control>-D or <control>-U command. If there was no previous <control>-D or <control>-U command, *count* shall default to the value of the **scroll** edit option.

If in open mode, write lines starting with the line after the current line, until *count* lines or the last line of the file have been written.

Current line: If the current line + *count* is past the last line of the edit buffer, set to the last line of the edit buffer; otherwise, set to the current line + *count*.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Scroll Forward by Line

Synopsis: **[***count***]** <control>-E

Display the line count lines after the last line currently displayed.

If the last line of the edit buffer is displayed, it shall be an error. If there is no line *count* lines after the last line currently displayed, the last line of the display shall display some portion of the last line of the edit buffer.

Current line: Unchanged if the previous current character is displayed; otherwise, set to the first line displayed.

Current column: Unchanged.

Page Forward

Synopsis: **[***count***]** <control>-F

If in open mode, the <control>-F command shall behave identically to the **z** command. Otherwise, if the current line is the last line of the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

If the **window** edit option is less than 3, display a screen where the first line of the display shall be some portion of:

(*current last line*) +1

otherwise, display a screen where the first line of the display shall be some portion of:

(*current first line*) + *count* x ((window edit option) –2)

If this calculation would result in a line that is after the last line of the edit buffer, the last line of the display shall display some portion of the last line of the edit buffer.

Current line: If no lines from the previous display remain on the screen, set to the first line of the display; otherwise, set to (*line* + the number of new lines displayed on this screen).

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

39104 **Display Information**

39105 *Synopsis*: `<control>-G`

39106 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **file** command.

39107 **Move Cursor Backwards**

39108 *Synopsis*: `[count] <control>-H`
39109 `[count] h`
39110 `the current erase character (see stty)`

39111 If there are no characters before the current character on the current line, it shall be an error. If
39112 there are less than *count* previous characters on the current line, *count* shall be adjusted to the
39113 number of previous characters on the line.

39114 If used as a motion command:

39115 1. The text region shall be from the character before the starting cursor up to and including
39116 the *count*th character before the starting cursor.

39117 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39118 If not used as a motion command:

39119 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39120 *Current column*: Set to (*column* – the number of columns occupied by *count* characters ending
39121 with the previous current column).

39122 **Move Down**

39123 *Synopsis*: `[count] <newline>`
39124 `[count] <control>-J`
39125 `[count] <control>-M`
39126 `[count] <control>-N`
39127 `[count] j`
39128 `[count] <carriage-return>`
39129 `[count] +`

39130 If there are less than *count* lines after the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

39131 If used as a motion command:

39132 1. The text region shall include the starting line and the next *count* – 1 lines.

39133 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

39134 If not used as a motion command:

39135 *Current line*: Set to *current line*+ *count*.

39136 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank> for the <carriage-return>, <control>-M, and **+** commands;
39137 otherwise, unchanged.

39138 **Clear and Redisplay**

39139 *Synopsis*: `<control>-L`

39140 If in open mode, clear the screen and redisplay the current line. Otherwise, clear and redisplay
39141 the screen.

39142 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39143 *Current column*: Unchanged.

39144 **Move Up**

39145 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** `<control>-P`
39146 **[***count***]** `k`
39147 **[***count***]** `–`

39148 If there are less than *count* lines before the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

39149 If used as a motion command:

39150 1. The text region shall include the starting line and the previous *count* lines.

39151 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

39152 If not used as a motion command:

39153 *Current line*: Set to *current line* – *count*.

39154 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank> for the – command; otherwise, unchanged.

39155 **Redraw Screen**

39156 *Synopsis*: `<control>-R`

39157 If any lines have been deleted from the display screen and flagged as deleted on the terminal
39158 using the @ convention (see the beginning of the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section), they shall
39159 be redisplayed to match the contents of the edit buffer.

39160 It is unspecified whether lines flagged with @ because they do not fit on the terminal display
39161 shall be affected.

39162 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39163 *Current column*: Unchanged.

39164 **Scroll Backward**

39165 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** `<control>-U`

39166 If the current line is the first line of the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

39167 If no *count* is specified, *count* shall default to the *count* associated with the previous <control>-D
39168 or <control>-U command. If there was no previous <control>-D or <control>-U command, *count*
39169 shall default to the value of the **scroll** edit option.

39170 *Current line*: If *count* is greater than the current line, set to 1; otherwise, set to the current line –
39171 *count*.

39172 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

39173 **Scroll Backward by Line**

39174 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** <control>-Y

39175 Display the line *count* lines before the first line currently displayed.

39176 If the current line is the first line of the edit buffer, it shall be an error. If this calculation would
39177 result in a line that is before the first line of the edit buffer, the first line of the display shall
39178 display some portion of the first line of the edit buffer.

39179 *Current line*: Unchanged if the previous current character is displayed; otherwise, set to the first
39180 line displayed.

39181 *Current column*: Unchanged.

39182 **Edit the Alternate File**

39183 *Synopsis*: <control>-^

39184 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **edit** command, with the alternate pathname as its
39185 argument.

39186 **Terminate Command or Input Mode**

39187 *Synopsis*: <ESC>

39188 If a partial *vi* command (as defined by at least one, non-*count* character) has been entered,
39189 discard the *count* and the command character(s).

39190 Otherwise, if no command characters have been entered, and the <ESC> was the result of a map
39191 expansion, the terminal shall be alerted and the <ESC> character shall be discarded, but it shall
39192 not be an error.

39193 Otherwise, it shall be an error.

39194 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39195 *Current column*: Unchanged.

39196 **Search for tagstring**

39197 *Synopsis*: <control>-]

39198 If the current character is not a word or <blank>, it shall be an error.

39199 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **tag** command, with the argument to that command
39200 defined as follows:

39201 If the current character is a <blank>:

39202 1. Skip all <blank>s after the cursor up to the end of the line.

39203 2. If the end of the line is reached, it shall be an error.

39204 Then, the argument to the *ex* **tag** command shall be the current character and all subsequent
39205 characters, up to the first non-word character or the end of the line.

39206 **Move Cursor Forward**

39207 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** <space>
39208 **[***count***]** `l` (ell)

39209 If there are less than *count* non-<newline>s after the cursor on the current line, *count* shall be
39210 adjusted to the number of non-<newline>s after the cursor on the line.

39211 If used as a motion command:

39212 1. If the current or *count*th character after the cursor is the last non-<newline> in the line, the
39213 text region shall be comprised of the current character up to and including the last
39214 non-<newline> in the line. Otherwise, the text region shall be from the current character
39215 up to, but not including, the *count*th character after the cursor.

39216 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39217 If not used as a motion command:

39218 If there are no non-<newline>s after the current character on the current line, it shall be an error.

39219 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39220 *Current column*: Set to the last column that displays any portion of the *count*th character after the
39221 current character.

39222 **Replace Text with Results from Shell Command**

39223 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** `!` *motion shell-commands* <newline>

39224 If the motion command is the **!** command repeated:

39225 1. If the edit buffer is empty and no *count* was supplied, the command shall be the
39226 equivalent of the *ex* **:read !** command, with the text input, and no text shall be copied to
39227 any buffer.

39228 2. Otherwise:

39229 a. If there are less than *count* –1 lines after the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be
39230 an error.

39231 b. The text region shall be from the current line up to and including the next *count* –1
39232 lines.

39233 Otherwise, the text region shall be the lines in which any character of the text region specified by
39234 the motion command appear.

39235 Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

39236 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **!** command for the specified lines.

39237 **Move Cursor to End-of-Line**

39238 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** `$`

39239 It shall be an error if there are less than (*count* –1) lines after the current line in the edit buffer.

39240 If used as a motion command:

39241 1. If *count* is 1:

39242 a. It shall be an error if the line is empty.

39243 b. Otherwise, the text region shall consist of all characters from the starting cursor to
39244 the last non-<newline> in the line, inclusive, and any text copied to a buffer shall
39245 be in character mode.

2. Otherwise, if the starting cursor position is at or before the first non-<blank> in the line, the text region shall consist of the current and the next *count* –1 lines, and any text saved to a buffer shall be in line mode.
3. Otherwise, the text region shall consist of all characters from the starting cursor to the last non-<newline> in the line that is *count* –1 lines forward from the current line, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to the *current line* + *count*–1.

Current column: The current column is set to the last display line column of the last non-<newline> in the line, or column position 1 if the line is empty.

The current column shall be adjusted to be on the last display line column of the last non-<newline> of the current line as subsequent commands change the current line, until a command changes the current column.

Move to Matching Character

Synopsis: %

If the character at the current position is not a parenthesis, bracket, or curly brace, search forward in the line to the first one of those characters. If no such character is found, it shall be an error.

The matching character shall be the parenthesis, bracket, or curly brace matching the parenthesis, bracket, or curly brace, respectively, that was at the current position or that was found on the current line.

Matching shall be determined as follows, for an open parenthesis:

1. Set a counter to 1.
2. Search forwards until a parenthesis is found or the end of the edit buffer is reached.
3. If the end of the edit buffer is reached, it shall be an error.
4. If an open parenthesis is found, increment the counter by 1.
5. If a close parenthesis is found, decrement the counter by 1.
6. If the counter is zero, the current character is the matching character.

Matching for a close parenthesis shall be equivalent, except that the search shall be backwards, from the starting character to the beginning of the buffer, a c

the matching line, the text region shall consist of the current line to the matching line, inclusive, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

3. Otherwise, the text region shall consist of the starting character to the matching character, inclusive, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to the line where the matching character is located.

Current column: Set to the last column where any portion of the matching character is displayed.

Repeat Substitution

Synopsis: `&`

Repeat the previous substitution command. This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **&** command with the current line as its addresses, and without *options*, *count*, or *flags*.

Return to Previous Context at Beginning of Line

Synopsis: `' character`

It shall be an error if there is no line in the edit buffer marked by *character*.

If used as a motion command:

1. If the starting cursor is after the marked cursor, then the locations of the starting cursor and the marked cursor in the edit buffer shall be logically swapped.
2. The text region shall consist of the starting line up to and including the marked line, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to the line referenced by the mark.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Return to Previous Context

Synopsis: `` ` character ``

It shall be an error if the marked line is no longer in the edit buffer. If the marked line no longer contains a character in the saved numbered character position, it shall be as if the marked position is the first non-<blank>.

If used as a motion command:

1. It shall be an error if the marked cursor references the same character in the edit buffer as the starting cursor.
2. If the starting cursor is after the marked cursor, then the locations of the starting cursor and the marked cursor in the edit buffer shall be logically swapped.
3. If the starting line is empty or the starting cursor is at or before the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the starting line, and the marked cursor line is empty or the marked cursor references the first character of the marked cursor line, the text region shall consist of all lines containing characters from the starting cursor to the line before the marked cursor line, inclusive, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.
4. Otherwise, if the marked cursor line is empty or the marked cursor references a character at or before the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the marked cursor line, the region of text shall be from the starting cursor to the last non-<newline> of the line before the marked cursor line, inclusive, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

5. Otherwise, the region of text shall be from the starting cursor (inclusive), to the marked cursor (exclusive), and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to the line referenced by the mark.

Current column: Set to the last column in which any portion of the character referenced by the mark is displayed.

Return to Previous Section

Synopsis: **[***count***] [[**

Move the cursor backward through the edit buffer to the first character of the previous section boundary, *count* times.

If used as a motion command:

1. If the starting cursor was at the first character of the starting line or the starting line was empty, and the first character of the boundary was the first character of the boundary line, the text region shall consist of the current line up to and including the line where the *count*th next boundary starts, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.
2. If the boundary was the last line of the edit buffer or the last non-<newline> of the last line of the edit buffer, the text region shall consist of the last character in the edit buffer up to and including the starting character, and any text saved to a buffer shall be in character mode.
3. Otherwise, the text region shall consist of the starting character up to but not including the first character in the *count*th next boundary, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to the line where the *count*th next boundary in the edit buffer starts.

Current column: Set to the last column in which any portion of the first character of the *count*th next boundary is displayed, or column position 1 if the line is empty.

Move to Next Section

Synopsis: **[***count***]]]**

Move the cursor forward through the edit buffer to the first character of the next section boundary, *count* times.

If used as a motion command:

1. If the starting cursor was at the first character of the starting line or the starting line was empty, and the first character of the boundary was the first character of the boundary line, the text region shall consist of the current line up to and including the line where the *count*th previous boundary starts, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.
2. If the boundary was the first line of the edit buffer, the text region shall consist of the first character in the edit buffer up to but not including the starting character, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.
3. Otherwise, the text region shall consist of the first character in the *count*th previous section boundary up to but not including the starting character, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to the line where the *count*th previous boundary in the edit buffer starts.

Current column: Set to the last column in which any portion of the first character of the *count*th previous boundary is displayed, or column position 1 if the line is empty.

Move to First Non-<blank> Position on Current Line

Synopsis: ^

If used as a motion command:

1. If the line has no non-<blank> non-<newline>s, or if the cursor is at the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the line, it shall be an error.
2. If the cursor is before the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the line, the text region shall be comprised of the current character, up to, but not including, the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the line.
3. If the cursor is after the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the line, the text region shall be from the character before the starting cursor up to and including the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the line.
4. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Current and Line Above

Synopsis: **[***count***]** _

If there are less than *count* –1 lines after the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

If used as a motion command:

1. If *count* is less than 2, the text region shall be the current line.
2. Otherwise, the text region shall include the starting line and the next *count* –1 lines.
3. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to current line + *count* –1.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Move Back to Beginning of Sentence

Synopsis: **[***count***]** (

Move backward to the beginning of a sentence. This command shall be equivalent to the [[command, with the exception that sentence boundaries shall be used instead of section boundaries.

39405 **Move Forward to Beginning of Sentence**

39406 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]**)

39407 Move forward to the beginning of a sentence. This command shall be equivalent to the]]
39408 command, with the exception that sentence boundaries shall be used instead of section
39409 boundaries.

39410 **Move Back to Preceding Paragraph**

39411 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** {

39412 Move back to the beginning of the preceding paragraph. This command shall be equivalent to
39413 the [[command, with the exception that paragraph boundaries shall be used instead of section
39414 boundaries.

39415 **Move Forward to Next Paragraph**

39416 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** }

39417 Move forward to the beginning of the next paragraph. This command shall be equivalent to the
39418]] command, with the exception that paragraph boundaries shall be used instead of section
39419 boundaries.

39420 **Move to Specific Column Position**

39421 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** |

39422 For the purposes of this command, lines that are too long for the current display and that have
39423 been folded shall be treated as having a single, 1–based, number of columns.

39424 If there are less than *count* columns in which characters from the current line are displayed on
39425 the screen, *count* shall be adjusted to be the last column in which any portion of the line is
39426 displayed on the screen.

39427 If used as a motion command:

39428 1. If the line is empty, or the cursor character is the same as the character on the *count*th
39429 column of the line, it shall be an error.

39430 2. If the cursor is before the *count*th column of the line, the text region shall be comprised of
39431 the current character, up to but not including the character on the *count*th column of the
39432 line.

39433 3. If the cursor is after the *count*th column of the line, the text region shall be from the
39434 character before the starting cursor up to and including the character on the *count*th
39435 column of the line.

39436 4. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39437 If not used as a motion command:

39438 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39439 *Current column*: Set to the last column in which any portion of the character that is displayed in
39440 the *count* column of the line is displayed.

39441 **Reverse Find Character**

39442 *Synopsis*: **[***count***] ,**

39443 If the last **F**, **f**, **T**, or **t** command was **F**, **f**, **T**, or **t**, this command shall be equivalent to an **f**, **F**, **t**, or
39444 **T** command, respectively, with the specified *count* and the same search character.

39445 If there was no previous **F**, **f**, **T**, or **t** command, it shall be an error.

39446 **Repeat**

39447 *Synopsis*: **[***count***] .**

39448 Repeat the last **!**, **<**, **>**, **A**, **C**, **D**, **I**, **J**, **O**, **P**, **R**, **S**, **X**, **Y**, **a**, **c**, **d**, **i**, **o**, **p**, **r**, **s**, **x**, **y**, or ~ command. It shall
39449 be an error if none of these commands have been executed. Commands (other than commands
39450 that enter text input mode) executed as a result of map expansions, shall not change the value of
39451 the last repeatable command.

39452 Repeated commands with associated motion commands shall repeat the motion command as
39453 well; however, any specified *count* shall replace the *count*(s) that were originally specified to the
39454 repeated command or its associated motion command.

39455 If the motion component of the repeated command is **f**, **F**, **t**, or **T**, the repeated command shall
39456 not set the remembered search character for the **;** and **,** commands.

39457 If the repeated command is **p** or **P**, and the buffer associated with that command was a numeric
39458 buffer named with a number less than 9, the buffer associated with the repeated command shall
39459 be set to be the buffer named by the name of the previous buffer logically incremented by 1.

39460 If the repeated character is a text input command, the input text associated with that command
39461 is repeated literally:

39462 - Input characters are neither macro or abbreviation-expanded.
39463 - Input characters are not interpreted in any special way with the exception that <newline>,
39464 <carriage-return>, and <control>-T behave as described in Input Mode Commands in vi
39465 (on page 1026).

39466 *Current line*: Set as described for the repeated command.

39467 *Current column*: Set as described for the repeated command.

39468 **Find Regular Expression**

39469 *Synopsis*: **/**

39470 If the input line contains no non-<newline>s, it shall be equivalent to a line containing only the
39471 last regular expression encountered. The enhanced regular expressions supported by *vi* are
39472 described in Regular Expressions in ex (on page 392).

39473 Otherwise, the line shall be interpreted as one or more regular expressions, optionally followed
39474 by an address offset or a *vi* **z** command.

39475 If the regular expression is not the last regular expression on the line, or if a line offset or **z**
39476 command is specified, the regular expression shall be terminated by an unescaped **'/'**
39477 character, which shall not be used as part of the regular expression. If the regular expression is
39478 not the first regular expression on the line, it shall be preceded by zero or more <blank>s, a
39479 semicolon, zero or more <blank>s, and a leading **'/'** character, which shall not be interpreted as
39480 part of the regular expression. It shall be an error to precede any regular expression with any
39481 characters other than these.

39482 Each search shall begin from the character after the first character of the last match (or, if it is the
39483 first search, after the cursor). If the **wrapscan** edit option is set, the search shall continue to the

39484 character before the starting cursor character; otherwise, to the end of the edit buffer. It shall be
39485 an error if any search fails to find a match, and an informational message to this effect shall be
39486 displayed.

39487 An optional address offset (see Addressing in ex (on page 363)) can be specified after the last
39488 regular expression by including a trailing '//' character after the regular expression and
39489 specifying the address offset. This offset will be from the line containing the match for the last
39490 regular expression specified. It shall be an error if the line offset would indicate a line address
39491 less than 1 or greater than the last line in the edit buffer. An address offset of zero shall be
39492 supported. It shall be an error to follow the address offset with any other characters than
39493 <blank>s.

39494 If not used as a motion command, an optional **z** command (see Redraw Window (on page 1025))
39495 can be specified after the last regular expression by including a trailing '//' character after the
39496 regular expression, zero or more <blank>s, a 'z', zero or more <blank>s, an optional new
39497 **window** edit option value, zero or more <blank>s, and a location character. The effect shall be as
39498 if the **z** command was executed after the **/** command. It shall be an error to follow the **z**
39499 command with any other characters than <blank>s.

39500 The remembered search direction shall be set to forward.

39501 If used as a motion command:

39502 1. It shall be an error if the last match references the same character in the edit buffer as the
39503 starting cursor.

39504 2. If any address offset is specified, the last match shall be adjusted by the specified offset as
39505 described previously.

39506 3. If the starting cursor is after the last match, then the locations of the starting cursor and
39507 the last match in the edit buffer shall be logically swapped.

39508 4. If any address offset is specified, the text region shall consist of all lines containing
39509 characters from the starting cursor to the last match line, inclusive, and any text copied to
39510 a buffer shall be in line mode.

39511 5. Otherwise, if the starting line is empty or the starting cursor is at or before the first
39512 non-<blank> non-<newline> of the starting line, and the last match line is empty or the
39513 last match starts at the first character of the last match line, the text region shall consist of
39514 all lines containing characters from the starting cursor to the line before the last match
39515 line, inclusive, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

39516 6. Otherwise, if the last match line is empty or the last match begins at a character at or
39517 before the first non-<blank> non-<newline> of the last match line, the region of text shall
39518 be from the current cursor to the last non-<newline> of the line before the last match line,
39519 inclusive, and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39520 7. Otherwise, the region of text shall be from the current cursor (inclusive), to the first
39521 character of the last match (exclusive), and any text copied to a buffer shall be in character
39522 mode.

39523 If not used as a motion command:

39524 *Current line*: If a match is found, set to the last matched line plus the address offset, if any;
39525 otherwise, unchanged.

39526 *Current column*: Set to the last column on which any portion of the first character in the last
39527 matched string is displayed, if a match is found; otherwise, unchanged.

Move to First Character in Line

Synopsis: `0` (zero)

Move to the first character on the current line. The character

specified by the motion command.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Shift Right

Synopsis: `[count] > motion`

If the motion command is the **>** command repeated:

1. If there are less than *count* –1 lines after the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be an error.
2. The text region shall be from the current line, up to and including the next *count* –1 lines.

Shift any line with characters in the text region specified by the *count* and motion command one shiftwidth (see the *ex* **shiftwidth** option) away from the start of the line, as described by the *ex* **>** command. The unshifted lines shall be copied into the unnamed buffer in line mode.

Current line: If the motion was from the current cursor position toward the end of the edit buffer, unchanged. Otherwise, set to the first line in the edit buffer that is part of the text region specified by the motion command.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Scan Backwards for Regular Expression

Synopsis: `?`

Scan backwards; the **?** command shall be equivalent to the **/** command (see Find Regular Expression (on page 1009)) with the following exceptions:

1. The input prompt shall be a `'?'`.
2. Each search shall begin from the character before the first character of the last match (or, if it is the first search, the character before the cursor character).
3. The search direction shall be from the cursor toward the beginning of the edit buffer, and the **wrapscan** edit option shall affect whether the search wraps to the end of the edit buffer and continues.
4. The remembered search direction shall be set to backward.

Execute

Synopsis: `@buffer`

If the *buffer* is specified as **@**, the last buffer executed shall be used. If no previous buffer has been executed, it shall be an error.

Behave as if the contents of the named buffer were entered as standard input. After each line of a line-mode buffer, and all but the last line of a character mode buffer, behave as if a <newline> were entered as standard input.

If an error occurs during this process, an error message shall be written, and no more characters resulting from the execution of this command shall be processed.

If a *count* is specified, behave as if that count were entered as user input before the characters from the **@** buffer were entered.

Current line: As specified for the individual commands.

Current column: As specified for the individual commands.

39607 **Reverse Case**

39608 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** ~

39609 Reverse the case of the current character and the next *count* –1 characters, such that lowercase
39610 characters that have uppercase counterparts shall be changed to uppercase characters, and
39611 uppercase characters that have lowercase counterparts shall be changed to lowercase characters,
39612 as prescribed by the current locale. No other characters shall be affected by this command.

39613 If there are less than *count* –1 characters after the cursor in the edit buffer, *count* shall be adjusted
39614 to the number of characters after the cursor in the edit buffer minus 1.

39615 For the purposes of this command, the next character after the last non-<newline> on the line
39616 shall be the next character in the edit buffer.

39617 *Current line*: Set to the line including the (*count*–1)th character after the cursor.

39618 *Current column*: Set to the last column in which any portion of the (*count*–1)th character after the
39619 cursor is displayed.

39620 **Append**

39621 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** a

39622 Enter text input mode after the current cursor position. No characters already in the edit buffer
39623 shall be affected by this command. A *count* shall cause the input text to be appended *count* –1
39624 more times to the end of the input.

39625 *Current line/column*: As specified for the text input commands (see Input Mode Commands in vi
39626 (on page 1026)).

39627 **Append at End-of-Line**

39628 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** A

39629 This command shall be equivalent to the *vi* command:

39630 **$ [** *count* **]** a

39631 (see Append (on page 1013)).

39632 **Move Backward to Preceding Word**

39633 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** b
39634 With the exception that words are used as the delimiter instead of bigwords, this command shall
39635 be equivalent to the **B** command.

39636 **Move Backward to Preceding Bigword**

39637 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** B

39638 If the edit buffer is empty or the cursor is on the first character of the edit buffer, it shall be an
39639 error. If less than *count* bigwords begin between the cursor and the start of the edit buffer, *count*
39640 shall be adjusted to the number of bigword beginnings between the cursor and the start of the
39641 edit buffer.

39642 If used as a motion command:

39643 1. The text region shall be from the first character of the *count*th previous bigword beginning
39644 up to but not including the cursor character.

39645 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39646 If not used as a motion command:

Current line: Set to the line containing the *current column*.

Current column: Set to the last column upon which any part of the first character of the *count*th previous bigword is displayed.

Change

Synopsis: **[***buffer***][***count***]** c *motion*

If the motion command is the **c** command repeated:

1. The buffer text shall be in line mode.
2. If there are less than *count* –1 lines after the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be an error.
3. The text region shall be from the current line up to and including the next *count* –1 lines.

Otherwise, the buffer text mode and text region shall be as specified by the motion command.

The replaced text shall be copied into *buffer*, if specified, and into the unnamed buffer. If the text to be replaced contains characters from more than a single line, or the buffer text is in line mode, the replaced text shall be copied into the numeric buffers as well.

If the buffer text is in line mode:

1. Any lines that contain characters in the region shall be deleted, and the editor shall enter text input mode at the beginning of a new line which shall replace the first line deleted.
2. If the **autoindent** edit option is set, **autoindent** characters equal to the **autoindent** characters on the first line deleted shall be inserted as if entered by the user.

Otherwise, if characters from more than one line are in the region of text:

1. The text shall be deleted.
2. Any text remaining in the last line in the text region shall be appended to the first line in the region, and the last line in the region shall be deleted.
3. The editor shall enter text input mode after the last character not deleted from the first line in the text region, if any; otherwise, on the first column of the first line in the region.

Otherwise:

1. If the glyph for '$' is smaller than the region, the end of the region shall be marked with a '$'.
2. The editor shall enter text input mode, overwriting the region of text.

Current line/column: As specified for the text input commands (see Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026)).

Change to End-of-Line

Synopsis: **[***buffer***][***count***]** C

This command shall be equivalent to the *vi* command:

[*buffer***][***count***]** c$

See the **c** command.

39683 **Delete**

39684 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***][***count***]** d *motion*

39685 If the motion command is the **d** command repeated:

39686 1. The buffer text shall be in line mode.

39687 2. If there are less than *count* –1 lines after the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be an
39688 error.

39689 3. The text region shall be from the current line up to and including the next *count* –1 lines.

39690 Otherwise, the buffer text mode and text region shall be as specified by the motion command.

39691 If in open mode, and the current line is deleted, and the line remains on the display, an '@'
39692 character shall be displayed as the first glyph of that line.

39693 Delete the region of text into *buffer*, if specified, and into the unnamed buffer. If the text to be
39694 deleted contains characters from more than a single line, or the buffer text is in line mode, the
39695 deleted text shall be copied into the numeric buffers, as well.

39696 *Current line*: Set to the first text region line that appears in the edit buffer, unless that line has
39697 been deleted, in which case it shall be set to the last line in the edit buffer, or line 1 if the edit
39698 buffer is empty.

39699 *Current column*:

39700 1. If the line is empty, set to column position 1.

39701 2. Otherwise, if the buffer text is in line mode or the motion was from the cursor toward the
39702 end of the edit buffer:

39703 a. If a character from the current line is displayed in the current column, set to the
39704 last column that displays any portion of that character.

39705 b. Otherwise, set to the last column in which any portion of any character in the line
39706 is displayed.

39707 3. Otherwise, if a character is displayed in the column that began the text region, set to the
39708 last column that displays any portion of that character.

39709 4. Otherwise, set to the last column in which any portion of any character in the line is
39710 displayed.

39711 **Delete to End-of-Line**

39712 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***]** D

39713 Delete the text from the current position to the end of the current line; equivalent to the *vi*
39714 command:

39715 **[***buffer***]** d$

39716 **Move to End-of-Word**

39717 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** e

39718 With the exception that words are used instead of bigwords as the delimiter, this command shall
39719 be equivalent to the **E** command.

39720 **Move to End-of-Bigword**

39721 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** E

39722 If the edit buffer is empty it shall be an error. If less than *count* bigwords end between the cursor
39723 and the end of the edit buffer, *count* shall be adjusted to the number of bigword endings between
39724 the cursor and the end of the edit buffer.

39725 If used as a motion command:

39726 1. The text region shall be from the last character of the *count*th next bigword up to and
39727 including the cursor character.

39728 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39729 If not used as a motion command:

39730 *Current line*: Set to the line containing the current column.

39731 *Current column*: Set to the last column upon which any part of the last character of the *count*th
39732 next bigword is displayed.

39733 **Find Character in Current Line (Forward)**

39734 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** f *character*

39735 It shall be an error if *count* occurrences of the character do not occur after the cursor in the line.

39736 If used as a motion command:

39737 1. The text range shall be from the cursor character up to and including the *count*th
39738 occurrence of the specified character after the cursor.

39739 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39740 If not used as a motion command:

39741 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39742 *Current column*: Set to the last column in which any portion of the *count*th occurrence of the
39743 specified character after the cursor appears in the line.

39744 **Find Character in Current Line (Reverse)**

39745 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** F *character*

39746 It shall be an error if *count* occurrences of the character do not occur before the cursor in the line.

39747 If used as a motion command:

39748 1. The text region shall be from the *count*th occurrence of the specified character before the
39749 cursor, up to, but not including the cursor character.

39750 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39751 If not used as a motion command:

39752 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39753 *Current column*: Set to the last column in which any portion of the *count*th occurrence of the
39754 specified character before the cursor appears in the line.

39755 **Move to Line**

39756 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** G

39757 If *count* is not specified, it shall default to the last line of the edit buffer. If *count* is greater than
39758 the last line of the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

39759 If used as a motion command:

39760 1. The text region shall be from the cursor line up to and including the specified line.

39761 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

39762 If not used as a motion command:

39763 *Current line*: Set to *count* if *count* is specified; otherwise, the last line.

39764 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

39765 **Move to Top of Screen**

39766 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** H

39767 If the beginning of the line *count* greater than the first line of which any portion appears on the
39768 display does not exist, it shall be an error.

39769 If used as a motion command:

39770 1. If in open mode, the text region shall be the current line.

39771 2. Otherwise, the text region shall be from the starting line up to and including (the first line
39772 of the display + *count* –1).

39773 3. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

39774 If not used as a motion command:

39775 If in open mode, this command shall set the current column to non-<blank> and do nothing else.

39776 Otherwise, it shall set the current line and current column as follows.

39777 *Current line*: Set to (the first line of the display + *count* –1).

39778 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

39779 **Insert Before Cursor**

39780 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** i

39781 Enter text input mode before the current cursor position. No characters already in the edit buffer
39782 shall be affected by this command. A *count* shall cause the input text to be appended *count* –1
39783 more times to the end of the input.

39784 *Current line/column*: As specified for the text input commands (see Input Mode Commands in vi
39785 (on page 1026)).

39786 **Insert at Beginning of Line**

39787 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** I

39788 This command shall be equivalent to the *vi* command ^[*count*]**i**.

39789 **Join**

39790 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** J

39791 If the current line is the last line in the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

39792 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **join** command with no addresses, and an *ex*
39793 command *count* value of 1 if *count* was not specified or if a *count* of 1 was specified, and an *ex*
39794 command *count* value of *count* –1 for any other value of *count*, except that the current line and
39795 column shall be set as follows.

39796 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39797 *Current column*: The last column in which any portion of the character following the last
39798 character in the initial line is displayed, or the last non-<newline> in the line if no characters
39799 were appended.

39800 **Move to Bottom of Screen**

39801 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** L

39802 If the beginning of the line *count* less than the last line of which any portion appears on the
39803 display does not exist, it shall be an error.

39804 If used as a motion command:

39805 1. If in open mode, the text region shall be the current line.

39806 2. Otherwise, the text region shall include all lines from the starting cursor line to (the last
39807 line of the display –(*count* –1)).

39808 3. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

39809 If not used as a motion command:

39810 1. If in open mode, this command shall set the current column to non-<blank> and do
39811 nothing else.

39812 2. Otherwise, it shall set the current line and current column as follows.

39813 *Current line*: Set to (the last line of the display –(*count* –1)).

39814 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

39815 **Mark Position**

39816 *Synopsis*: m *letter*

39817 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **mark** command with the specified character as an
39818 argument.

39819 **Move to Middle of Screen**

39820 *Synopsis*: M

39821 The middle line of the display shall be calculated as follows:

39822 `(the top line of the display) + (((number of lines displayed) +1) /2) –1`

39823 If used as a motion command:

39824 1. If in open mode, the text region shall be the current line.

39825 2. Otherwise, the text region shall include all lines from the starting cursor line up to and
39826 including the middle line of the display.

3. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in line mode.

If not used as a motion command:

If in open mode, this command shall set the current column to non-<blank> and do nothing else.

Otherwise, it shall set the current line and current column as follows.

Current line: Set to the middle line of the display.

Current column: Set to non-<blank>.

Repeat Regular Expression Find (Forward)

Synopsis: `n`

If the remembered search direction was forward, the **n** command shall be equivalent to the *vi* **/** command with no characters entered by the user. Otherwise, it shall be equivalent to the *vi* **?** command with no characters entered by the user.

If the **n** command is used as a motion command for the **!** command, the editor shall not enter text input mode on the last line on the screen, and shall behave as if the user entered a single `'!'` character as the text input.

Repeat Regular Expression Find (Reverse)

Synopsis: `N`

Scan for the next match of the last pattern given to **/** or **?**, but in the reverse direction; this is the reverse of **n**.

If the remembered search direction was forward, the **N** command shall be equivalent to the *vi* **?** command with no characters entered by the user. Otherwise, it shall be equivalent to the *vi* **/** command with no characters entered by the user. If the **N** command is used as a motion command for the **!** command, the editor shall not enter text input mode on the last line on the screen, and shall behave as if the user entered a single **!** character as the text input.

Insert Empty Line Below

Synopsis: `o`

Enter text input mode in a new line appended after the current line. A *count* shall cause the input text to be appended *count* –1 more times to the end of the already added text, each time starting on a new, appended line.

Current line/column: As specified for the text input commands (see Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026)).

Insert Empty Line Above

Synopsis: `O`

Enter text input mode in a new line inserted before the current line. A *count* shall cause the input text to be appended *count* –1 more times to the end of the already added text, each time starting on a new, appended line.

Current line/column: As specified for the text input commands (see Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026)).

39864 **Put from Buffer Following**

39865 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***]** p

39866 If no *buffer* is specified, the unnamed buffer shall be used.

39867 If the buffer text is in line mode, the text shall be appended below the current line, and each line
39868 of the buffer shall become a new line in the edit buffer. A *count* shall cause the buffer text to be
39869 appended *count* –1 more times to the end of the already added text, each time starting on a new,
39870 appended line.

39871 If the buffer text is in character mode, the text shall be appended into the current line after the
39872 cursor, and each line of the buffer other than the first and last shall become a new line in the edit
39873 buffer. A *count* shall cause the buffer text to be appended *count* –1 more times to the end of the
39874 already added text, each time starting after the last added character.

39875 *Current line*: If the buffer text is in line mode, set the line to line +1; otherwise, unchanged.

39876 *Current column*: If the buffer text is in line mode:

39877 1. If there is a non-<blank> in the first line of the buffer, set to the last column on which any
39878 portion of the first non-<blank> in the line is displayed.

39879 2. If there is no non-<blank> in the first line of the buffer, set to the last column on which
39880 any portion of the last non-<newline> in the first line of the buffer is displayed.

39881 If the buffer text is in character mode:

39882 1. If the text in the buffer is from more than a single line, then set to the last column on
39883 which any portion of the first character from the buffer is displayed.

39884 2. Otherwise, if the buffer is the unnamed buffer, set to the last column on which any
39885 portion of the last character from the buffer is displayed.

39886 3. Otherwise, set to the first column on which any portion of the first character from the
39887 buffer is displayed.

39888 **Put from Buffer Before**

39889 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***]** P

39890 If no *buffer* is specified, the unnamed buffer shall be used.

39891 If the buffer text is in line mode, the text shall be inserted above the current line, and each line of
39892 the buffer shall become a new line in the edit buffer. A *count* shall cause the buffer text to be
39893 appended *count* –1 more times to the end of the already added text, each time starting on a new,
39894 appended line.

39895 If the buffer text is in character mode, the text shall be inserted into the current line before the
39896 cursor, and each line of the buffer other than the first and last shall become a new line in the edit
39897 buffer. A *count* shall cause the buffer text to be appended *count* –1 more times to the end of the
39898 already added text, each time starting after the last added character.

39899 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39900 *Current column*: If the buffer text is in line mode:

39901 1. If there is a non-<blank> in the first line of the buffer, set to the last column on which any
39902 portion of that character is displayed.

39903 2. If there is no non-<blank> in the first line of the buffer, set to the last column on which
39904 any portion of the last non-<newline> in the first line of the buffer is displayed.

39905 If the buffer text is in character mode:

1. If the text in the buffer is from more than a single line, then set to the last column on which any portion of the first character from the buffer is displayed.
2. Otherwise, if the buffer is the unnamed buffer, set to the last column on which any portion of the last character from the buffer is displayed.
3. Otherwise, set to the first column on which any portion of the first character from the buffer is displayed.

Enter ex Mode

Synopsis: `Q`

Leave visual or open mode and enter *ex* command mode.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

Replace Character

Synopsis: `[`*count*`] r` *character*

Replace the *count* characters at and after the cursor with the specified character. If there are less than *count* non-<newline>s at and after the cursor on the line, it shall be an error.

If character is <control>-V, any next character other than the <newline> shall be stripped of any special meaning and used as a literal character.

If character is <ESC>, no replacement shall be made and the current line and current column shall be unchanged.

If character is <carriage-return> or <newline>, *count* new lines shall be appended to the current line. All but the last of these lines shall be empty. *count* characters at and after the cursor shall be discarded, and any remaining characters after the cursor in the current line shall be moved to the last of the new lines. If the **autoindent** edit option is set, they shall be preceded by the same number of **autoindent** characters found on the line from which the command was executed.

Current line: Unchanged unless the replacement character is a <carriage-return> or <newline>, in which case it shall be set to line + *count*.

Current column: Set to the last column position on which a portion of the last replaced character is displayed, or if the replacement character caused new lines to be created, set to non-<blank>.

Replace Characters

Synopsis: `R`

Enter text input mode at the current cursor position possibly replacing text on the current line. A *count* shall cause the input text to be appended *count* –1 more times to the end of the input.

Current line/column: As specified for the text input commands (see Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026)).

39940 **Substitute Character**

39941 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***][***count***]** s

39942 This command shall be equivalent to the *vi* command:

39943 **[***buffer***][***count***]** c<space>

39944 **Substitute Lines**

39945 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***][***count***]** S

39946 This command shall be equivalent to the *vi* command:

39947 **[***buffer***][***count***]** c_

39948 **Move Cursor to Before Character (Forward)**

39949 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** t *character*

39950 It shall be an error if *count* occurrences of the character do not occur after the cursor in the line.

39951 If used as a motion command:

39952 1. The text region shall be from the cursor up to but not including the *count*th occurrence of
39953 the specified character after the cursor.

39954 2. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39955 If not used as a motion command:

39956 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39957 *Current column*: Set to the last column in which any portion of the character before the *count*th
39958 occurrence of the specified character after the cursor appears in the line.

39959 **Move Cursor to After Character (Reverse)**

39960 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** T *character*

39961 It shall be an error if *count* occurrences of the character do not occur before the cursor in the line.

39962 If used as a motion command:

39963 1. If the character before the cursor is the specified character, it shall be an error.

39964 2. The text region shall be from the character before the cursor up to but not including the
39965 *count*th occurrence of the specified character before the cursor.

39966 3. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

39967 If not used as a motion command:

39968 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39969 *Current column*: Set to the last column in which any portion of the character after the *count*th
39970 occurrence of the specified character before the cursor appears in the line.

39971 **Undo**

39972 *Synopsis*: `u`

39973 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **undo** command except that the current line and
39974 current column shall be set as follows:

39975 *Current line*: Set to the first line added or changed if any; otherwise, move to the line preceding
39976 any deleted text if one exists; otherwise, move to line 1.

39977 *Current column*: If undoing an *ex* command, set to the first non-<blank>.

39978 Otherwise, if undoing a text input command:

39979 1. If the command was a **C**, **c**, **O**, **o**, **R**, **S**, or **s** command, the current column shall be set to
39980 the value it held when the text input command was entered.

39981 2. Otherwise, set to the last column in which any portion of the first character after the
39982 deleted text is displayed, or, if no non-<newline>s follow the text deleted from this line,
39983 set to the last column in which any portion of the last non-<newline> in the line is
39984 displayed, or 1 if the line is empty.

39985 Otherwise, if a single line was modified (that is, not added or deleted) by the **u** command:

39986 1. If text was added or changed, set to the last column in which any portion of the first
39987 character added or changed is displayed.

39988 2. If text was deleted, set to the last column in which any portion of the first character after
39989 the deleted text is displayed, or, if no non-<newline>s follow the deleted text, set to the
39990 last column in which any portion of the last non-<newline> in the line is displayed, or 1 if
39991 the line is empty.

39992 Otherwise, set to non-<blank>.

39993 **Undo Current Line**

39994 *Synopsis*: `U`

39995 Restore the current line to its state immediately before the most recent time that it became the
39996 current line.

39997 *Current line*: Unchanged.

39998 *Current column*: Set to the first column in the line in which any portion of the first character in
39999 the line is displayed.

40000 **Move to Beginning of Word**

40001 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** `w`

40002 With the exception that words are used as the delimiter instead of bigwords, this command shall
40003 be equivalent to the **W** command.

40004 **Move to Beginning of Bigword**

40005 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** `W`

40006 If the edit buffer is empty, it shall be an error. If there are less than *count* bigwords between the
40007 cursor and the end of the edit buffer, *count* shall be adjusted to move the cursor to the last
40008 bigword in the edit buffer.

40009 If used as a motion command:

40010 1. If the associated command is **c**, *count* is 1, and the cursor is on a <blank>, the region of
40011 text shall be the current character and no further action shall be taken.

40012 2. If there are less than *count* bigwords between the cursor and the end of the edit buffer,
40013 then the command shall succeed, and the region of text shall include the last character of
40014 the edit buffer.

40015 3. If there are <blank>s or an end-of-line that precede the *count*th bigword, and the
40016 associated command is **c**, the region of text shall be up to and including the last character
40017 before the preceding <blank>s or end-of-line.

40018 4. If there are <blank>s or an end-of-line that precede the bigword, and the associated
40019 command is **d** or **y**, the region of text shall be up to and including the last <blank> before
40020 the start of the bigword or end-of-line.

40021 5. Any text copied to a buffer shall be in character mode.

40022 If not used as a motion command:

40023 1. If the cursor is on the last character of the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

40024 *Current line*: Set to the line containing the current column.

40025 *Current column*: Set to the last column in which any part of the first character of the *count*th next
40026 bigword is displayed.

40027 **Delete Character at Cursor**

40028 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***][***count***]** x

40029 Delete the *count* characters at and after the current character into *buffer*, if specified, and into the
40030 unnamed buffer.

40031 If the line is empty, it shall be an error. If there are less than *count* non-<newline>s at and after
40032 the cursor on the current line, *count* shall be adjusted to the number of non-<newline>s at and
40033 after the cursor.

40034 *Current line*: Unchanged.

40035 *Current column*: If the line is empty, set to column position 1. Otherwise, if there were *count* or
40036 less non-<newline>s at and after the cursor on the current line, set to the last column that
40037 displays any part of the last non-<newline> of the line. Otherwise, unchanged.

40038 **Delete Character Before Cursor**

40039 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***][***count***]** X

40040 Delete the *count* characters before the current character into *buffer*, if specified, and into the
40041 unnamed buffer.

40042 If there are no characters before the current character on the current line, it shall be an error. If
40043 there are less than *count* previous characters on the current line, *count* shall be adjusted to the
40044 number of previous characters on the line.

40045 *Current line*: Unchanged.

40046 *Current column*: Set to (current column – the width of the deleted characters).

40047 **Yank**

40048 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***][***count***]** y *motion*

40049 Copy (yank) the region of text into *buffer*, if specified, and into the unnamed buffer.

40050 If the motion command is the **y** command repeated:

40051 1. The buffer shall be in line mode.

40052 2. If there are less than *count* –1 lines after the current line in the edit buffer, it shall be an
40053 error.

40054 3. The text region shall be from the current line up to and including the next *count* –1 lines.

40055 Otherwise, the buffer text mode and text region shall be as specified by the motion command.

40056 *Current line*: If the motion was from the current cursor position toward the end of the edit buffer,
40057 unchanged. Otherwise, set to the first line in the edit buffer that is part of the text region
40058 specified by the motion command.

40059 *Current column*:

40060 1. If the motion was from the current cursor position toward the end of the edit buffer,
40061 unchanged.

40062 2. Otherwise, if the current line is empty, set to column position 1.

40063 3. Otherwise, set to the last column that displays any part of the first character in the file
40064 that is part of the text region specified by the motion command.

40065 **Yank Current Line**

40066 *Synopsis*: **[***buffer***][***count***]** Y

40067 This command shall be equivalent to the *vi* command:

40068 **[***buffer***][***count***]** y_

40069 **Redraw Window**

40070 If in open mode, the **z** command shall have the Synopsis:

40071 *Synopsis*: **[***count***]** z

40072 If *count* is not specified, it shall default to the **window** edit option –1. The **z** command shall be
40073 equivalent to the *ex* **z** command, with a type character of **=** and a *count* of *count* –2, except that
40074 the current line and current column shall be set as follows, and the **window** edit option shall not
40075 be affected. If the calculation for the *count* argument would result in a negative number, the
40076 *count* argument to the *ex* **z** command shall be zero. A blank line shall be written after the last line
40077 is written.

40078 *Current line*: Unchanged.

40079 *Current column*: Unchanged.

40080 If not in open mode, the **z** command shall have the following Synopsis:

40081 *Synopsis*: **[***line***]** z **[***count***]** *character*

40082 If *line* is not specified, it shall default to the current line. If *line* is specified, but is greater than the
40083 number of lines in the edit buffer, it shall default to the number of lines in the edit buffer.

40084 If *count* is specified, the value of the **window** edit option shall be set to *count* (as described in the
40085 *ex* **window** command), and the screen shall be redrawn.

40086 *line* shall be placed as specified by the following characters:

40087 <newline>, <carriage-return>
40088 Place the beginning of the line on the first line of the display.

40089 . Place the beginning of the line in the center of the display. The middle line of the display
40090 shall be calculated as described for the **M** command.

40091 – Place an unspecified portion of the line on the last line of the display.

40092 + If *line* was specified, equivalent to the <newline> case. If *line* was not specified, display a
40093 screen where the first line of the display shall be (current last line) +1. If there are no lines
40094 after the last line in the display, it shall be an error.

40095 ^ If *line* was specified, display a screen where the last line of the display shall contain an
40096 unspecified portion of the first line of a display that had an unspecified portion of the
40097 specified line on the last line of the display. If this calculation results in a line before the
40098 beginning of the edit buffer, display the first screen of the edit buffer.

40099 Otherwise, display a screen where the last line of the display shall contain an unspecified
40100 portion of (current first line –1). If this calculation results in a line before the beginning of
40101 the edit buffer, it shall be an error.

40102 *Current line*: If *line* and the '^' character were specified:

40103 1. If the first screen was displayed as a result of the command attempting to display lines
40104 before the beginning of the edit buffer: if the first screen was already displayed,
40105 unchanged; otherwise, set to (current first line –1).

40106 2. Otherwise, set to the last line of the display.

40107 If *line* and the '+' character were specified, set to the first line of the display.

40108 Otherwise, if *line* was specified, set to *line*.

40109 Otherwise, unchanged.

40110 *Current column*: Set to non-<blank>.

40111 **Exit**

40112 *Synopsis*: ZZ

40113 This command shall be equivalent to the *ex* **xit** command with no addresses, trailing **!**, or
40114 filename (see the *ex* **xit** command).

40115 **Input Mode Commands in vi**

40116 In text input mode, the current line shall consist of zero or more of the following categories, plus
40117 the terminating <newline>:

40118 1. Characters preceding the text input entry point

40119 Characters in this category shall not be modified during text input mode.

40120 2. **autoindent** characters

40121 **autoindent** characters shall be automatically inserted into each line that is created in text
40122 input mode, either as a result of entering a <newline> or <carriage-return> while in text
40123 input mode, or as an effect of the command itself; for example, **O** or **o** (see the *ex*
40124 **autoindent** command), as if entered by the user.

40125 It shall be possible to erase **autoindent** characters with the <control>-D command; it is
40126 unspecified whether they can be erased by <control>-H, <control>-U, and <control>-W
40127 characters. Erasing any **autoindent** character turns the glyph into erase-columns and

deletes the character from the edit buffer, but does not change its representation on the screen.

3. Text input characters

   Text input characters are the characters entered by the user. Erasing any text input character turns the glyph into erase-columns and deletes the character from the edit buffer, but does not change its representation on the screen.

   Each text input character entered by the user (that does not have a special meaning) shall be treated as follows:

   a. The text input character shall be appended to the last character in the edit buffer from the first, second, or third categories.

   b. If there are no erase-columns on the screen, the text input command was the **R** command, and characters in the fifth category from the original line follow the cursor, the next such character shall be deleted from the edit buffer. If the **slowopen** edit option is not set, the corresponding glyph on the screen shall become erase-columns.

   c. If there are erase-columns on the screen, as many columns as they occupy, or as are necessary, shall be overwritten to display the text input character. (If only part of a multi-column glyph is overwritten, the remainder shall be left on the screen, and continue to be treated as erase-columns; it is unspecified whether the remainder of the glyph is modified in any way.)

   d. If additional display line columns are needed to display the text input character:

      1. If the **slowopen** edit option is set, the text input characters shall be displayed on subsequent display line columns, overwriting any characters displayed in those columns.

      2. Otherwise, any characters currently displayed on or after the column on the display line where the text input character is to be displayed shall be pushed ahead the number of display line columns necessary to display the rest of the text input character.

4. Erase-columns

   Erase-columns are not logically part of the edit buffer, appearing only on the screen, and may be overwritten on the screen by subsequent text input characters. When text input mode ends, all erase-columns shall no longer appear on the screen.

   Erase-columns are initially the region of text specified by the **c** command (see Change (on page 1014)); however, erasing **autoindent** or text input characters causes the glyphs of the erased characters to be treated as erase-columns.

5. Characters following the text region for the **c** command, or the text input entry point for all other commands

   Characters in this category shall not be modified during text input mode, except as specified in category 3.b. for the **R** text input command, or as <blank>s deleted when a <newline> or <carriage-return> is entered.

It is unspecified whether it is an error to attempt to erase past the beginning of a line that was created by the entry of a <newline> or <carriage-return> during text input mode. If it is not an error, the editor shall behave as if the erasing character was entered immediately after the last text input character entered on the previous line, and all of the non-<newline>s on the current line shall be treated as erase-columns.

When text input mode is entered, or after a text input mode character is entered (except as

specified for the special characters below), the cursor shall be positioned as follows:

1. On the first column that displays any part of the first erase-column, if one exists
2. Otherwise, if the **slowopen** edit option is set, on the first display line column after the last character in the first, second, or third categories, if one exists
3. Otherwise, the first column that displays any part of the first character in the fifth category, if one exists
4. Otherwise, the display line column after the last character in the first, second, or third categories, if one exists
5. Otherwise, on column position 1

The characters that are updated on the screen during text input mode are unspecified, other than that the last text input character shall always be updated, and, if the **slowopen** edit option is not set, the current cursor character shall always be updated.

The following specifications are for command characters entered during text input mode.

NUL

Synopsis: `NUL`

If the first character of the text input is a NUL, the most recently input text shall be input as if entered by the user, and then text input mode shall be exited. The text shall be input literally; that is, characters are neither macro or abbreviation expanded, nor are any characters interpreted in any special manner. It is unspecified whether implementations shall support more than 256 bytes of remembered input text.

<control>-D

Synopsis: `<control>-D`

The <control>-D character shall have no special meaning when in text input mode for a line-oriented command (see Command Descriptions in vi (on page 994)).

This command need not be supported on block-mode terminals.

If the cursor does not follow an **autoindent** character, or an **autoindent** character and a `'0'` or `'^'` character:

1. If the cursor is in column position 1, the <control>-D character shall be discarded and no further action taken.
2. Otherwise, the <control>-D character shall have no special meaning.

If the last input character was a `'0'`, the cursor shall be moved to column position 1.

Otherwise, if the last input character was a `'^'`, the cursor shall be moved to column position 1. In addition, the **autoindent** level for the next input line shall be derived from the same line from which the **autoindent** level for the current input line was derived.

Otherwise, the cursor shall be moved back to the column after the previous shiftwidth (see the *ex* **shiftwidth** command) boundary.

All of the glyphs on columns between the starting cursor position and (inclusively) the ending cursor position shall become erase-columns as described in Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026).

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Set to 1 if the <control>-D was preceded by a `'^'` or `'0'`; otherwise, set to (column –1) –((column –2) % **shiftwidth**).

<control>-H

Synopsis: `<control>-H`

If in text input mode for a line-oriented command, and there are no characters to erase, text input mode shall be terminated, no further action shall be done for this command, and the current line and column shall be unchanged.

If there are characters other than **autoindent** characters that have been input on the current line before the cursor, the cursor shall move back one character.

Otherwise, if there are **autoindent** characters on the current line before the cursor, it is implementation-defined whether the <control>-H command is an error or if the cursor moves back one **autoindent** character.

Otherwise, if the cursor is in column position 1 and there are previous lines that have been input, it is implementation-defined whether the <control>-H command is an error or if it is equivalent to entering <control>-H after the last input character on the previous input line.

Otherwise, it shall be an error.

All of the glyphs on columns between the starting cursor position and (inclusively) the ending cursor position shall become erase-columns as described in Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026).

The current erase character (see *stty*) shall cause an equivalent action to the <control>-H command, unless the previously inserted character was a backslash, in which case it shall be as if the literal current erase character had been inserted instead of the backslash.

Current line: Unchanged, unless previously input lines are erased, in which case it shall be set to line –1.

Current column: Set to the first column that displays any portion of the character backed up over.

<newline>

Synopsis:
```
<newline>
<carriage-return>
<control>-J
<control>-M
```

If input was part of a line-oriented command, text input mode shall be terminated and the command shall continue execution with the input provided.

Otherwise, terminate the current line. If there are no characters other than **autoindent** characters on the line, all characters on the line shall be discarded. Otherwise, it is unspecified whether the **autoindent** characters in the line are modified by entering these characters.

Continue text input mode on a new line appended after the current line. If the **slowopen** edit option is set, the lines on the screen below the current line shall not be pushed down, but the first of them shall be cleared and shall appear to be overwritten. Otherwise, the lines of the screen below the current line shall be pushed down.

If the **autoindent** edit option is set, an appropriate number of **autoindent** characters shall be added as a prefix to the line as described by the *ex* **autoindent** edit option.

All columns after the cursor that are erase-columns (as described in Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026)) shall be discarded.

If the **autoindent** edit option is set, all <blank>s immediately following the cursor shall be discarded.

All remaining characters after the cursor shall be transferred to the new line, positioned after

40260 any **autoindent** characters.

40261 *Current line*: Set to current line +1.

40262 *Current column*: Set to the first column that displays any portion of the first character after the
40263 **autoindent** characters on the new line, if any, or the first column position after the last
40264 **autoindent** character, if any, or column position 1.

40265 **<control>-T**

40266 *Synopsis*: `<control>-T`

40267 The <control>-T character shall have no special meaning when in text input mode for a line-
40268 oriented command (see Command Descriptions in vi (on page 994)).

40269 This command need not be supported on block-mode terminals.

40270 Behave as if the user entered the minimum number of <blank>s necessary to move the cursor
40271 forward to the column position after the next **shiftwidth** (see the *ex* **shiftwidth** command)
40272 boundary.

40273 *Current line*: Unchanged.

40274 *Current column*: Set to *column* + **shiftwidth** – ((column –1) % **shiftwidth**).

40275 **<control>-U**

40276 *Synopsis*: `<control>-U`

40277 If there are characters other than **autoindent** characters that have been input on the current line
40278 before the cursor, the cursor shall move to the first character input after the **autoindent**
40279 characters.

40280 Otherwise, if there are **autoindent** characters on the current line before the cursor, it is
40281 implementation-defined whether the <control>-U command is an error or if the cursor moves to
40282 the first column position on the line.

40283 Otherwise, if the cursor is in column position 1 and there are previous lines that have been
40284 input, it is implementation-defined whether the <control>-U command is an error or if it is
40285 equivalent to entering <control>-U after the last input character on the previous input line.

40286 Otherwise, it shall be an error.

40287 All of the glyphs on columns between the starting cursor position and (inclusively) the ending
40288 cursor position shall become erase-columns as described in Input Mode Commands in vi (on
40289 page 1026).

40290 The current *kill* character (see *stty*) shall cause an equivalent action to the <control>-U command,
40291 unless the previously inserted character was a backslash, in which case it shall be as if the literal
40292 current *kill* character had been inserted instead of the backslash.

40293 *Current line*: Unchanged, unless previously input lines are erased, in which case it shall be set to
40294 line –1.

40295 *Current column*: Set to the first column that displays any portion of the last character backed up
40296 over.

<control>-V

Synopsis: `<control>-V`
`<control>-Q`

Allow the entry of any subsequent character, other than <control>-J or the <newline>, as a literal character, removing any special meaning that it may have to the editor in text input mode. If a <control>-V or <control>-Q is entered before a <control>-J or <newline>, the <control>-V or <control>-Q character shall be discarded, and the <control>-J or <newline> shall behave as described in the <newline> command character during input mode.

For purposes of the display only, the editor shall behave as if a `'^'` character was entered, and the cursor shall be positioned as if overwriting the `'^'` character. When a subsequent character is entered, the editor shall behave as if that character was entered instead of the original <control>-V or <control>-Q character.

Current line: Unchanged.

Current column: Unchanged.

<control>-W

Synopsis: `<control>-W`

If there are characters other than **autoindent** characters that have been input on the current line before the cursor, the cursor shall move back over the last word preceding the cursor (including any <blank>s between the end of the last word and the current cursor); the cursor shall not move to before the first character after the end of any **autoindent** characters.

Otherwise, if there are **autoindent** characters on the current line before the cursor, it is implementation-defined whether the <control>-W command is an error or if the cursor moves to the first column position on the line.

Otherwise, if the cursor is in column position 1 and there are previous lines that have been input, it is implementation-defined whether the <control>-W command is an error or if it is equivalent to entering <control>-W after the last input character on the previous input line.

Otherwise, it shall be an error.

All of the glyphs on columns between the starting cursor position and (inclusively) the ending cursor position shall become erase-columns as described in Input Mode Commands in vi (on page 1026).

Current line: Unchanged, unless previously input lines are erased, in which case it shall be set to line –1.

Current column: Set to the first column that displays any portion of the last character backed up over.

<ESC>

Synopsis: `<ESC>`

If input was part of a line-oriented command:

1. If *interrupt* was entered, text input mode shall be terminated and the editor shall return to command mode. The terminal shall be alerted.
2. If <ESC> was entered, text input mode shall be terminated and the command shall continue execution with the input provided.

Otherwise, terminate text input mode and return to command mode.

Any **autoindent** characters entered on newly created lines that have no other non-<newline>s

40340 shall be deleted.

40341 Any leading **autoindent** and <blank>s on newly created lines shall be rewritten to be the
40342 minimum number of <blank>s possible.

40343 The screen shall be redisplayed as necessary to match the contents of the edit buffer.

40344 *Current line*: Unchanged.

40345 *Current column*:

40346 1. If there are text input characters on the current line, the column shall be set to the last
40347 column where any portion of the last text input character is displayed.

40348 2. Otherwise, if a character is displayed in the current column, unchanged.

40349 3. Otherwise, set to column position 1.

40350 **EXIT STATUS**

40351 The following exit values shall be returned:

40352 0 Successful completion.

40353 >0 An error occurred.

40354 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

40355 When any error is encountered and the standard input is not a terminal device file, *vi* shall not
40356 write the file or return to command or text input mode, and shall terminate with a non-zero exit
40357 status.

40358 Otherwise, when an unrecoverable error is encountered it shall be equivalent to a SIGHUP
40359 asynchronous event.

40360 Otherwise, when an error is encountered, the editor shall behave as specified in Command
40361 Descriptions in vi (on page 994).

40362 **APPLICATION USAGE**

40363 None.

40364 **EXAMPLES**

40365 None.

40366 **RATIONALE**

40367 See the RATIONALE for *ex* for more information on *vi*. Major portions of the *vi* utility
40368 specification point to *ex* to avoid inadvertent divergence. While *ex* and *vi* have historically been
40369 implemented as a single utility, this is not required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

40370 It is recognized that portions of *vi* would be difficult, if not impossible, to implement
40371 satisfactorily on a block-mode terminal, or a terminal without any form of cursor addressing,
40372 thus it is not a mandatory requirement that such features should work on all terminals. It is the
40373 intention, however, that a *vi* implementation should provide the full set of capabilities on all
40374 terminals capable of supporting them.

40375 Historically, *vi* exited immediately if the standard input was not a terminal. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x
40376 permits, but does not require, this behavior. An end-of-file condition is not equivalent to an end-
40377 of-file character. A common end-of-file character, <control>-D, is historically a *vi* command.

40378 The text in the STDOUT section reflects the usage of the verb *display* in this section; some
40379 implementations of *vi* use standard output to write to the terminal, but IEEE Std 1003.1-200x
40380 does not require that to be the case.

40381 Historically, implementations reverted to open mode if the terminal was incapable of supporting
40382 full visual mode. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires this behavior. Historically, the open mode of *vi*
40383 behaved roughly equivalently to the visual mode, with the exception that only a single line from

the edit buffer (one "buffer line") was kept current at any time. This line was normally displayed on the next-to-last line of a terminal with cursor addressing (and the last line performed its normal visual functions for line-oriented commands and messages). In addition, some few commands behaved differently in open mode than in visual mode. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, *ex* and *vi* implementations have expected text to proceed in the usual European/Latin order of left to right, top to bottom. There is no requirement in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x that this be the case. The specification was deliberately written using words like "before", "after", "first", and "last" in order to permit implementations to support the natural text order of the language.

Historically, lines past the end of the edit buffer were marked with single tilde (`'~'`) characters; that is, if the one-based display was 20 lines in length, and the last line of the file was on line one, then lines 2-20 would contain only a single `'~'` character.

Historically, the *vi* editor attempted to display only complete lines at the bottom of the screen (it did display partial lines at the top of the screen). If a line was too long to fit in its entirety at the bottom of the screen, the screen lines where the line would have been displayed were displayed as single `'@'` characters, instead of displaying part of the line. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits, but does not require, this behavior. Implementations are encouraged to attempt always to display a complete line at the bottom of the screen when doing scrolling or screen positioning by buffer lines.

Historically, lines marked with `'@'` were also used to minimize output to dumb terminals over slow lines; that is, changes local to the cursor were updated, but changes to lines on the screen that were not close to the cursor were simply marked with an `'@'` sign instead of being updated to match the current text. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits, but does not require this feature because it is used ever less frequently as terminals become smarter and connections are faster.

Initialization in ex and vi

Historically, *vi* always had a line in the edit buffer, even if the edit buffer was "empty". For example:

1. The *ex* command **=** executed from visual mode wrote "1" when the buffer was empty.
2. Writes from visual mode of an empty edit buffer wrote files of a single character (a <newline>), while writes from *ex* mode of an empty edit buffer wrote empty files.
3. Put and read commands into an empty edit buffer left an empty line at the top of the edit buffer.

For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit any of these behaviors.

Historically, *vi* did not always return the terminal to its original modes; for example, ICRNL was modified if it was not originally set. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Command Descriptions in vi

Motion commands are among the most complicated aspects of *vi* to describe. With some exceptions, the text region and buffer type effect of a motion command on a *vi* command are described on a case-by-case basis. The descriptions of text regions in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x are not intended to imply direction; that is, an inclusive region from line *n* to line *n*+5 is identical to a region from line *n*+5 to line *n*. This is of more than academic interest—movements to marks can be in either direction, and, if the **wrapscan** option is set, so can movements to search points. Historically, lines are always stored into buffers in text order; that is, from the start of the edit buffer to the end. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, command counts were applied to any associated motion, and were multiplicative to

any supplied motion count. For example, **2cw** is the same as **c2w**, and **2c3w** is the same as **c6w**. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires this behavior. Historically, *vi* commands that used bigwords, words, paragraphs, and sentences as objects treated groups of empty lines, or lines that contained only <blank>s, inconsistently. Some commands treated them as a single entity, while others treated each line separately. For example, the **w**, **W**, and **B** commands treated groups of empty lines as individual words; that is, the command would move the cursor to each new empty line. The **e** and **E** commands treated groups of empty lines as a single word; that is, the first use would move past the group of lines. The **b** command would just beep at the user, or if done from the start of the line as a motion command, fail in unexpected ways. If the lines contained only (or ended with) <blank>s, the **w** and **W** commands would just beep at the user, the **E** and **e** commands would treat the group as a single word, and the **B** and **b** commands would treat the lines as individual words. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that all *vi* commands treat groups of empty or blank lines as a single entity, and that movement through lines ending with <blank>s be consistent with other movements.

Historically, *vi* documentation indicated that any number of double quotes were skipped after punctuation marks at sentence boundaries; however, implementations only skipped single quotes. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires both to be skipped.

Historically, the first and last characters in the edit buffer were word boundaries. This historical practice is required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Historically, *vi* attempted to update the minimum number of columns on the screen possible, which could lead to misleading information being displayed. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x makes no requirements other than that the current character being entered is displayed correctly, leaving all other decisions in this area up to the implementation.

Historically, lines were arbitrarily folded between columns of any characters that required multiple column positions on the screen, with the exception of tabs, which terminated at the right-hand margin. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits the former and requires the latter. Implementations that do not arbitrarily break lines between columns of characters that occupy multiple column positions should not permit the cursor to rest on a column that does not contain any part of a character.

The historical *vi* had a problem in that all movements were by buffer lines, not by display or screen lines. This is often the right thing to do; for example, single line movements, such as **j** or **k**, should work on buffer lines. Commands like **dj**, or **j.**, where **.** is a change command, only make sense for buffer lines. It is not, however, the right thing to do for screen motion or scrolling commands like <control>-D, <control>-F, and **H**. If the window is fairly small, using buffer lines in these cases can result in completely random motion; for example, **1**<control>**-D** can result in a completely changed screen, without any overlap. This is clearly not what the user wanted. The problem is even worse in the case of the **H**, **L**, and **M** commands—as they position the cursor at the first non-<blank> of the line, they may all refer to the same location in large lines, and will result in no movement at all.

In addition, if the line is larger than the screen, using buffer lines can make it impossible to display parts of the line—there are not any commands that do not display the beginning of the line in historical *vi*, and if both the beginning and end of the line cannot be on the screen at the same time, the user suffers. Finally, the page and half-page scrolling commands historically moved to the first non-<blank> in the new line. If the line is approximately the same size as the screen, this is inadequate because the cursor before and after a <control>-D command will refer to the same location on the screen.

Implementations of *ex* and *vi* exist that do not have these problems because the relevant commands (<control>-B, <control>-D, <control>-F, <control>-U, <control>-Y, <control>-E, **H**, **L**, and **M)** operate on display (screen) lines, not (edit) buffer lines.

IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior by default because the standard developers believed that users would find it too confusing. However, historical practice has been relaxed. For example, *ex* and *vi* historically attempted, albeit sometimes unsuccessfully, to never put part of a line on the last lines of a screen; for example, if a line would not fit in its entirety, no part of the line was displayed, and the screen lines corresponding to the line contained single `'@'` characters. This behavior is permitted, but not required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, so that it is possible for implementations to support long lines in small screens more reasonably without changing the commands to be oriented to the display (instead of oriented to the buffer). IEEE Std 1003.1-200x also permits implementations to refuse to edit any edit buffer containing a line that will not fit on the screen in its entirety.

The display area (for example, the value of the **window** edit option) has historically been "grown", or expanded, to display new text when local movements are done in displays where the number of lines displayed is less than the maximum possible. Expansion has historically been the first choice, when the target line is less than the maximum possible expansion value away. Scrolling has historically been the next choice, done when the target line is less than half a display away, and otherwise, the screen was redrawn. There were exceptions, however, in that *ex* commands generally always caused the screen to be redrawn. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not specify a standard behavior because there may be external issues, such as connection speed, the number of characters necessary to redraw as opposed to scroll, or terminal capabilities that implementations will have to accommodate.

The current line in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x maps one-to-one to a buffer line in the file. The current column does not. There are two different column values that are described by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. The first is the current column value as set by many of the *vi* commands. This value is remembered for the lifetime of the editor. The second column value is the actual position on the screen where the cursor rests. The two are not always the same. For example, when the cursor is backed by a multi-column character, the actual cursor position on the screen has historically been the last column of the character in command mode, and the first column of the character in input mode.

Commands that set the current line, but that do not set the current cursor value (for example, **j** and **k**) attempt to get as close as possible to the remembered column position, so that the cursor tends to restrict itself to a vertical column as the user moves around in the edit buffer. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice, requiring that the display location of the cursor on the display line be adjusted from the current column value as necessary to support this historical behavior.

Historically, only a single line (and for some terminals, a single line minus 1 column) of characters could be entered by the user for the line-oriented commands; that is, **:**, **!**, **/**, or **?**. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits, but does not require, this limitation.

Historically, "soft" errors in *vi* caused the terminal to be alerted, but no error message was displayed. As a general rule, no error message was displayed for errors in command execution in *vi*, when the error resulted from the user attempting an invalid or impossible action, or when a searched-for object was not found. Examples of soft errors included **h** at the left margin, <control>-B or **[[** at the beginning of the file, **2G** at the end of the file, and so on. In addition, errors such as **%**, **]]**, **}**, **)**, **N**, **n**, **f**, **F**, **t**, and **T** failing to find the searched-for object were soft as well. Less consistently, **/** and **?** displayed an error message if the pattern was not found, **/**, **?**, **N**, and **n** displayed an error message if no previous regular expression had been specified, and **;** did not display an error message if no previous **f**, **F**, **t**, or **T** command had occurred. Also, behavior in this area might reasonably be based on a runtime evaluation of the speed of a network connection. Finally, some implementations have provided error messages for soft errors in order to assist naive users, based on the value of a verbose edit option. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not list specific errors for which an error message shall be displayed. Implementations should conform to historical practice in the absence of any strong reason to diverge.

Page Backwards

The <control>-B and <control>-F commands historically considered it an error to attempt to page past the beginning or end of the file, whereas the <control>-D and <control>-U commands simply moved to the beginning or end of the file. For consistency, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires the latter behavior for all four commands. All four commands still consider it an error if the current line is at the beginning (<control>-B, <control>-U) or end (<control>-F, <control>-D) of the file. Historically, the <control>-B and <control>-F commands skip two lines in order to include overlapping lines when a single command is entered. This makes less sense in the presence of a *count*, as there will be, by definition, no overlapping lines. The actual calculation used by historical implementations of the *vi* editor for <control>-B was:

```
((current first line) – count x (window edit option)) +2
```

and for <control>-F was:

```
((current first line) + count x (window edit option)) –2
```

This calculation does not work well when intermixing commands with and without counts; for example, **3<control>-F is not equivalent to entering the <control>-F command three times, and is not reversible by entering the <control>-B command three times. For consistency with other *vi* commands that take counts, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires a different calculation.**

Scroll Forward

The 4BSD and System V implementations of *vi* differed on the initial value used by the **scroll** command. 4BSD used:

```
((window edit option) +1) /2
```

while System V used the value of the **scroll** edit option. The System V version is specified by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because the standard developers believed that it was more intuitive and permitted the user a method of setting the scroll value initially without also setting the number of lines that are displayed.

Scroll Forward by Line

Historically, the <control>-E and <control>-Y commands considered it an error if the last and first lines, respectively, were already on the screen. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. Historically, the <control>-E and <control>-Y commands had no effect in open mode. For simplicity and consistency of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that they behave as usual, albeit with a single line screen.

Clear and Redisplay

The historical <control>-L command refreshed the screen exactly as it was supposed to be currently displayed, replacing any `'@'` characters for lines that had been deleted but not updated on the screen with refreshed `'@'` characters. The intent of the <control>-L command is to refresh when the screen has been accidentally overwritten; for example, by a **write** command from another user, or modem noise.

40568 **Redraw Screen**

40569 The historical <control>-R command redisplayed only when necessary to update lines that had
40570 been deleted but not updated on the screen and that were flagged with `'@'` characters. There is
40571 no requirement that the screen be in any way refreshed if no lines of this form are currently
40572 displayed. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits implementations to extend this command to refresh
40573 lines on the screen flagged with `'@'` characters because they are too long to be displayed in the
40574 current framework; however, the current line and column need not be modified.

40575 **Search for tagstring**

40576 Historically, the first non-<blank> at or after the cursor was the first character, and all
40577 subsequent characters that were word characters, up to the end of the line, were included. For
40578 example, with the cursor on the leading space or on the `'#'` character in the text `"#bar@"`, the
40579 tag was `"#bar"`. On the character `'b'` it was `"bar"`, and on the `'a'` it was `"ar"`.
40580 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires this behavior.

40581 **Replace Text with Results from Shell Command**

40582 Historically, the **<**, **>**, and **!** commands considered most cursor motions other than line-oriented
40583 motions an error; for example, the command **>/foo<CR>** succeeded, while the command **>l**
40584 failed, even though the text region described by the two commands might be identical. For
40585 consistency, all three commands only consider entire lines and not partial lines, and the region is
40586 defined as any line that contains a character that was specified by the motion.

40587 **Move to Matching Character**

40588 Other matching characters have been left implementation-defined in order to allow extensions
40589 such as matching `'<'` and `'>'` for searching HTML, or **#ifdef**, **#else**, and **#endif** for searching C
40590 source.

40591 **Repeat Substitution**

40592 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that any **c** and **g** flags specified to the previous substitute
40593 command be ignored; however, the **r** flag may still apply, if supported by the implementation.

40594 **Return to Previous (Context or Section)**

40595 The **[[**, **]]**, **(**, **)**, **{**, and **}** commands are all affected by "section boundaries", but in some historical
40596 implementations not all of the commands recognize the same section boundaries. This is a bug,
40597 not a feature, and a unique section-boundary algorithm was not described for each command.
40598 One special case that is preserved is that the sentence command moves to the end of the last line
40599 of the edit buffer while the other commands go to the beginning, in order to preserve the
40600 traditional character cut semantics of the sentence command. Historically, *vi* section boundaries
40601 at the beginning and end of the edit buffer were the first non-<blank> on the first and last lines
40602 of the edit buffer if one exists; otherwise, the last character of the first and last lines of the edit
40603 buffer if one exists. To increase consistency with other section locations, this has been simplified
40604 by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x to the first character of the first and last lines of the edit buffer, or the
40605 first and the last lines of the edit buffer if they are empty.

40606 Sentence boundaries were problematic in the historical *vi*. They were not only the boundaries as
40607 defined for the section and paragraph commands, but they were the first non-<blank> that
40608 occurred after those boundaries, as well. Historically, the *vi* section commands were
40609 documented as taking an optional window size as a *count* preceding the command. This was not
40610 implemented in historical versions, so IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the *count* repeat the
40611 command, for consistency with other *vi* commands.

Repeat

Historically, mapped commands other than text input commands could not be repeated using the **period** command. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

The restrictions on the interpretation of special characters (for example, <control>-H) in the repetition of text input mode commands is intended to match historical practice. For example, given the input sequence:

```
iab<control>-H<control>-H<control>-Hdef<escape>
```

the user should be informed of an error when the sequence is first entered, but not during a command repetition. The character <control>-T is specifically exempted from this restriction. Historical implementations of *vi* ignored <control>-T characters that were input in the original command during command repetition. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x prohibits this behavior.

Find Regular Expression

Historically, commands did not affect the line searched to or from if the motion command was a search (**/**, **?**, **N**, **n**) and the final position was the start/end of the line. There were some special cases and *vi* was not consistent. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior, for consistency. Historical implementations permitted but were u

40658 **Shift Left (Right)**

40659 Refer to the Rationale for the **!** and **/** commands. Historically, the **<** and **>** commands sometimes
40660 moved the cursor to the first non-<blank> (for example if the command was repeated or with _
40661 as the motion command), and sometimes left it unchanged. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not
40662 permit this inconsistency, requiring instead that the cursor always move to the first
40663 non-<blank>. Historically, the **<** and **>** commands did not support buffer arguments, although
40664 some implementations allow the specification of an optional buffer. This behavior is neither
40665 required nor disallowed by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

40666 **Execute**

40667 Historically, buffers could execute other buffers, and loops, infinite and otherwise, were
40668 possible. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. The **buffer* syntax of
40669 *ex* is not required in *vi*, because it is not historical practice and has been used in some *vi*
40670 implementations to support additional scripting languages.

40671 **Reverse Case**

40672 Historically, the ~ command ignored any associated *count*, and acted only on the characters in the
40673 current line. For consistency with other *vi* commands, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that an
40674 associated *count* act on the next *count* characters, and that the command move to subsequent
40675 lines if warranted by *count*, to make it possible to modify large pieces of text in a reasonably
40676 efficient manner. There exist *vi* implementations that optionally require an associated motion
40677 command for the ~ command. Implementations supporting this functionality are encouraged to
40678 base it on the **tildedop** edit option and handle the text regions and cursor positioning identically
40679 to the **yank** command.

40680 **Append**

40681 Historically, *count*s specified to the **A**, **a**, **I**, and **i** commands repeated the input of the first line
40682 *count* times, and did not repeat the subsequent lines of the input text. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x
40683 requires that the entire text input be repeated *count* times.

40684 **Move Backward to Preceding Word**

40685 Historically, *vi* became confused if word commands were used as motion commands in empty
40686 files. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that this be an error. Historical implementations of *vi* had a
40687 large number of bugs in the word movement commands, and they varied greatly in behavior in
40688 the presence of empty lines, "words" made up of a single character, and lines containing only
40689 <blank>s. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit
40690 this behavior.

40691 **Change to End-of-Line**

40692 Some historical implementations of the **C** command did not behave as described by
40693 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x when the **$** key was remapped because they were implemented by pushing
40694 the **$** key onto the input queue and reprocessing it. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this
40695 behavior. Historically, the **C**, **S**, and **s** commands did not copy replaced text into the numeric
40696 buffers. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that they
40697 behave like their respective **c** commands in all respects.

Delete

Historically, lines in open mode that were deleted were scrolled up, and an @ glyph written over the beginning of the line. In the case of terminals that are incapable of the necessary cursor motions, the editor erased the deleted line from the screen. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice; that is, if the terminal cannot display the '@' character, the line cannot remain on the screen.

Delete to End-of-Line

Some historical implementations of the **D** command did not behave as described by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x when the **$** key was remapped because they were implemented by pushing the **$** key onto the input queue and reprocessing it. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Join

An historical oddity of *vi* is that the commands **J**, **1J**, and **2J** are all equivalent. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice. The *vi* **J** command is specified in terms of the *ex* **join** command with an *ex* command *count* value. The address correction for a *count* that is past the end of the edit buffer is necessary for historical compatibility for both *ex* and *vi*.

Mark Position

Historical practice is that only lowercase letters, plus '' and '', could be used to mark a cursor position. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice, but encourages implementations to support other characters as marks as well.

Repeat Regular Expression Find (Forward and Reverse)

Historically, the **N** and **n** commands could not be used as motion components for the **c** command. With the exception of the **cN** command, which worked if the search crossed a line boundary, the text region would be discarded, and the user would not be in text input mode. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Insert Empty Line (Below and Above)

Historically, counts to the **O** and **o** commands were used as the number of physical lines to open, if the terminal was dumb and the **slowopen** option was not set. This was intended to minimize traffic over slow connections and repainting for dumb terminals. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior, requiring that a *count* to the open command behave as for other text input commands. This change to historical practice was made for consistency, and because a superset of the functionality is provided by the **slowopen** edit option.

Put from Buffer (Following and Before)

Historically, *count*s to the **p** and **P** commands were ignored if the buffer was a line mode buffer, but were (mostly) implemented as described in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x if the buffer was a character mode buffer. Because implementations exist that do not have this limitation, and because pasting lines multiple times is generally useful, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that *count* be supported for all **p** and **P** commands.

Historical implementations of *vi* were widely known to have major problems in the **p** and **P** commands, particularly when unusual regions of text were copied into the edit buffer. The standard developers viewed these as bugs, and they are not permitted for consistency and simplicity of specification.

Historically, a **P** or **p** command (or an *ex* **put** command executed from open or visual mode)

executed in an empty file, left an empty line as the first line of the file. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Replace Character

Historically, the **r** command did not correctly handle the *erase* and *word erase* characters as arguments, nor did it handle an associated *count* greater than 1 with a <carriage-return> argument, for which it replaced *count* characters with a single <newline>. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit these inconsistencies.

Historically, the **r** command permitted the <control>-V escaping of entered characters, such as <ESC> and the <carriage-return>; however, it required two leading <control>-V characters instead of one. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that this be changed for consistency with the other text input commands of *vi*.

Historically, it is an error to enter the **r** command if there are less than *count* characters at or after the cursor in the line. While a reasonable and unambiguous extension would be to permit the **r** command on empty lines, it would require that too large a *count* be adjusted to match the number of characters at or after the cursor for consistency, which is sufficiently different from historical practice to be avoided. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Replace Characters

Historically, if there were **autoindent** characters in the line on which the **R** command was run, and **autoindent** was set, the first <newline> would be properly indented and no characters would be replaced by the <newline>. Each additional <newline> would replace *n* characters, where *n* was the number of characters that were needed to indent the rest of the line to the proper indentation level. This behavior is a bug and is not permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

Undo

Historical practice for cursor positioning after undoing commands was mixed. In most cases, when undoing commands that affected a single line, the cursor was moved to the start of added or changed text, or immediately after deleted text. However, if the user had moved from the line being changed, the column was either set to the first non-<blank>, returned to the origin of the command, or remained unchanged. When undoing commands that affected multiple lines or entire lines, the cursor was moved to the first character in the first line restored. As an example of how inconsistent this was, a search, followed by an **o** text input command, followed by an **undo** would return the cursor to the location where the **o** command was entered, but a **cw** command followed by an **o** command followed by an **undo** would return the cursor to the first non-<blank> of the line. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires the most useful of these behaviors, and discards the least useful, in the interest of consistency and simplicity of specification.

Yank

Historically, the **yank** command did not move to the end of the motion if the motion was in the forward direction. It moved to the end of the motion if the motion was in the backward direction, except for the _ command, or for the **G** and ' commands when the end of the motion was on the current line. This was further complicated by the fact that for a number of motion commands, the **yank** command moved the cursor but did not update the screen; for example, a subsequent command would move the cursor from the end of the motion, even though the cursor on the screen had not reflected the cursor movement for the **yank** command. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that all **yank** commands associated with backward motions move the cursor to the end of the motion for consistency, and specifically, to make ' commands as motions consistent with search patterns as motions.

Yank Current Line

Some historical implementations of the **Y** command did not behave as described by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x when the `'_'` key was remapped because they were implemented by pushing the `'_'` key onto the input queue and reprocessing it. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Redraw Window

Historically, the **z** command always redrew the screen. This is permitted but not required by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, because of the frequent use of the **z** command in macros such as **map n nz.** for screen positioning, instead of its use to change the screen size. The standard developers believed that expanding or scrolling the screen offered a better interface for users. The ability to redraw the screen is preserved if the optional new window size is specified, and in the <control>-L and <control>-R commands.

The semantics of **z^** are confusing at best. Historical practice is that the screen before the screen that ended with the specified line is displayed. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

Historically, the **z** command would not display a partial line at the top or bottom of the screen. If the partial line would normally have been displayed at the bottom of the screen, the command worked, but the partial line was replaced with `'@'` characters. If the partial line would normally have been displayed at the top of the screen, the command would fail. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Historically, the **z** command with a line specification of 1 ignored the command. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Historically, the **z** command did not set the cursor column to the first non-<blank> for the character if the first screen was to be displayed, and was already displayed. For consistency and simplicity of specification, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not permit this behavior.

Input Mode Commands in vi

Historical implementations of *vi* did not permit the user to erase more than a single line of input, or to use normal erase characters such as *line erase*, *worderase*, and *erase* to erase **autoindent** characters. As there exist implementations of *vi* that do not have these limitations, both behaviors are permitted, but only historical practice is required. In the case of these extensions, *vi* is required to pause at the **autoindent** and previous line boundaries.

Historical implementations of *vi* updated only the portion of the screen where the current cursor character was displayed. For example, consider the *vi* input keystrokes:

```
iabcd<escape>0C<tab>
```

Historically, the <tab> would overwrite the characters `"abcd"` when it was displayed. Other implementations replace only the `'a'` character with the <tab>, and then push the rest of the characters ahead of the cursor. Both implementations have problems. The historical implementation is probably visually nicer for the above example; however, for the keystrokes:

```
iabcd<ESC>0R<tab><ESC>
```

the historical implementation results in the string `"bcd"` disappearing and then magically reappearing when the <ESC> character is entered. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires the former behavior when overwriting erase-columns—that is, overwriting characters that are no longer logically part of the edit buffer—and the latter behavior otherwise.

Historical implementations of *vi* discarded the <control>-D and <control>-T characters when they were entered at places where their command functionality was not appropriate. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that the <control>-T functionality always be available, and that

<control>-D be treated as any other key when not operating on **autoindent** characters.

NUL

Some historical implementations of *vi* limited the number of characters entered using the NUL input character to 256 bytes. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x permits this limitation; however, implementations are encouraged to remove this limit.

<control>-D

See also Rationale for the input mode command <newline>. The hidden assumptions in the <control>-D command (and in the *vi* **autoindent** specification in general) is that <space>s take up a single column on the screen and that <tab>s are comprised of an integral number of <space>s.

<newline>

Implementations are permitted to rewrite **autoindent** characters in the line when <newline>, <carriage-return>, <control>-D, and <control>-T are entered, or when the **shift** commands are used, because historical implementations have both done so and found it necessary to do so. For example, a <control>-D when the cursor is preceded by a single <tab>, with **tabstop** set to 8, and **shiftwidth** set to 3, will result in the <tab> being replaced by several <space>s.

<control>-T

See also the Rationale for the input mode command <newline>. Historically, <control>-T only worked if no non-<blank>s had yet been input in the current input line. In addition, the characters inserted by <control>-T were treated as **autoindent** characters, and could not be erased using normal user erase characters. Because implementations exist that do not have these limitations, and as moving to a column boundary is generally useful, IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires that both limitations be removed.

<control>-V

Historically, *vi* used **^V**, regardless of the value of the literal-next character of the terminal. IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires conformance to historical practice.

The uses described for <control>-V can also be accomplished with <control>-Q, which is useful on terminals that use <control>-V for the down-arrow function. However, most historical implementations use <control>-Q for the *termios* START character, so the editor will generally not receive the <control>-Q unless **stty ixon** mode is set to off. (In addition, some historical implementations of *vi* explicitly set **ixon** mode to on, so it was difficult for the user to set it to off.) Any of the command characters described in IEEE Std 1003.1-200x can be made ineffective by their selection as *termios* control characters, using the *stty* utility or other methods described in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

<ESC>

Historically, SIGINT alerted the terminal when used to end input mode. This behavior is permitted, but not required, by IEEE Std 1003.1-200x.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

ed, *ex*, *stty*

40875 **CHANGE HISTORY**

40876 First released in Issue 2.

40877 **Issue 5**

40878 The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

40879 **Issue 6**

40880 This utility is marked as part of the User Portability Utilities option.

40881 The APPLICATION USAGE section is added.

40882 The obsolescent SYNOPSIS is removed.

40883 The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the
40884 Single UNIX Specification:

40885 • The **reindent** command description is added.

40886 The *vi* utility has been extensively rewritten for alignment with the IEEE P1003.2b draft
40887 standard.

40888 IEEE PASC Interpretations 1003.2 #57, #62, #63, #64, #78, and #188 are applied.

40889 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #207 is applied, clarifying the description of the **R** command in
40890 a manner similar to the descriptions of other text input mode commands such as **i**, **o**, and **O**.

40891 The **–l** option is removed.

40892 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/41 is applied, adding [*count*] to the
40893 Synopsis for **[[**.

40894 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XCU/TC1/D6/42 is applied, adding [*count*] to the
40895 Synopsis for **]]**.

40896 **Issue 7**

40897 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #027 is applied, clarifying that **'+'** may be recognized
40898 as an option delimiter in the OPTIONS section.

40899 Austin Group Interpretation 1003.1-2001 #087 is applied, updating the Put from Buffer Before (**P**)
40900 command description to address multi-line requirements.

40901 SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

40902 **NAME**

40903 wait — await process completion

40904 **SYNOPSIS**

40905 `wait [`*`pid`*`...]`

40906 **DESCRIPTION**

40907 When an asynchronous list (see Section 2.9.3.1 (on page 50)) is started by the shell, the process
40908 ID of the last command in each element of the asynchronous list shall become known in the
40909 current shell execution environment; see Section 2.12 (on page 61).

40910 If the *wait* utility is invoked with no operands, it shall wait until all process IDs known to the
40911 invoking shell have terminated and exit with a zero exit status.

40912 If one or more *pid* operands are specified that represent known process IDs, the *wait* utility shall
40913 wait until all of them have terminated. If one or more *pid* operands are specified that represent
40914 unknown process IDs, *wait* shall treat them as if they were known process IDs that exited with
40915 exit status 127. The exit status returned by the *wait* utility shall be the exit status of the process
40916 requested by the last *pid* operand.

40917 The known process IDs are applicable only for invocations of *wait* in the current shell execution
40918 environment.

40919 **OPTIONS**

40920 None.

40921 **OPERANDS**

40922 The following operand shall be supported:

40923 *pid* One of the following:

40924 1. The unsigned decimal integer process ID of a command, for which the
40925 utility is to wait for the termination.

40926 2. A job control job ID (see the Base Definitions volume of
40927 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 3.203, Job Control Job ID) that identifies a
40928 background process group to be waited for. The job control job ID notation
40929 is applicable only for invocations of *wait* in the current shell execution
40930 environment; see Section 2.12 (on page 61). The exit status of *wait* shall be
40931 determined by the last command in the pipeline.

40932 **Note:** The job control job ID type of *pid* is only available on systems supporting
40933 the User Portability Utilities option.

40934 **STDIN**

40935 Not used.

40936 **INPUT FILES**

40937 None.

40938 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

40939 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *wait*:

40940 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
40941 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
40942 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
40943 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

40944 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
40945 internationalization variables.

40946 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
40947 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
40948 arguments).

40949 *LC_MESSAGES*
40950 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
40951 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

40952 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

40953 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**
40954 Default.

40955 **STDOUT**
40956 Not used.

40957 **STDERR**
40958 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

40959 **OUTPUT FILES**
40960 None.

40961 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**
40962 None.

40963 **EXIT STATUS**
40964 If one or more operands were specified, all of them have terminated or were not known by the
40965 invoking shell, and the status of the last operand specified is known, then the exit status of *wait*
40966 shall be the exit status information of the command indicated by the last operand specified. If
40967 the process terminated abnormally due to the receipt of a signal, the exit status shall be greater
40968 than 128 and shall be distinct from the exit status generated by other signals, but the exact value
40969 is unspecified. (See the *kill* **–l** option.) Otherwise, the *wait* utility shall exit with one of the
40970 following values:

40971 0 The *wait* utility was invoked with no operands and all process IDs known by the
40972 invoking shell have terminated.

40973 1-126 The *wait* utility detected an error.

40974 127 The command identified by the last *pid* operand specified is unknown.

40975 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**
40976 Default.

40977 **APPLICATION USAGE**
40978 On most implementations, *wait* is a shell built-in. If it is called in a subshell or separate utility
40979 execution environment, such as one of the following:

40980 ```
(wait)
40981 nohup wait ...
40982 find . –exec wait ... \;
```

40983 it returns immediately because there are no known process IDs to wait for in those
40984 environments.

40985 Historical implementations of interactive shells have discarded the exit status of terminated
40986 background processes before each shell prompt. Therefore, the status of background processes
40987 was usually lost unless it terminated while *wait* was waiting for it. This could be a serious
40988 problem when a job that was expected to run for a long time actually terminated quickly with a
40989 syntax or initialization error because the exit status returned was usually zero if the requested
```

process ID was not found. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x requires the implementation to keep the status of terminated jobs available until the status is requested, so that scripts like:

```
j1&
p1=$!
j2&
wait $p1
echo Job 1 exited with status $?
wait $!
echo Job 2 exited with status $?
```

work without losing status on any of the jobs. The shell is allowed to discard the status of any process if it determines that the application cannot get the process ID for that process from the shell. It is also required to remember only {CHILD_MAX} number of processes in this way. Since the only way to get the process ID from the shell is by using the '!' shell parameter, the shell is allowed to discard the status of an asynchronous list if "$!" was not referenced before another asynchronous list was started. (This means that the shell only has to keep the status of the last asynchronous list started if the application did not reference "$!". If the implementation of the shell is smart enough to determine that a reference to "$!" was not saved anywhere that the application can retrieve it later, it can use this information to trim the list of saved information. Note also that a successful call to *wait* with no operands discards the exit status of all asynchronous lists.)

If the exit status of *wait* is greater than 128, there is no way for the application to know if the waited-for process exited with that value or was killed by a signal. Since most utilities exit with small values, there is seldom any ambiguity. Even in the ambiguous cases, most applications just need to know that the asynchronous job failed; it does not matter whether it detected an error and failed or was killed and did not complete its job normally.

EXAMPLES

Although the exact value used when a process is terminated by a signal is unspecified, if it is known that a signal terminated a process, a script can still reliably determine which signal by using *kill* as shown by the following script:

```
sleep 1000&
pid=$!
kill –kill $pid
wait $pid
echo $pid was terminated by a SIG$(kill –l $?) signal.
```

If the following sequence of commands is run in less than 31 seconds:

```
sleep 257 | sleep 31 &
jobs –l %%
```

either of the following commands returns the exit status of the second *sleep* in the pipeline:

```
wait <pid of sleep 31>
wait %%
```

RATIONALE

The description of *wait* does not refer to the *waitpid*() function from the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x because that would needlessly overspecify this interface. However, the wording means that *wait* is required to wait for an explicit process when it is given an argument so that the status information of other processes is not consumed. Historical implementations use the *wait*() function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x until *wait*() returns the requested process ID or finds that the requested process does not exist. Because this means that a shell script could not reliably get the status of all background children if a second background job was ever started before the first job finished,

it is recommended that the *wait* utility use a method such as the functionality provided by the *waitpid*( ) function.

The ability to wait for multiple *pid* operands was adopted from the KornShell.

This new functionality was added because it is needed to determine the exit status of any asynchronous list accurately. The only compatibility problem that this change creates is for a script like

```
while sleep 60 do
    job& echo Job started $(date) as $!  done
```

which causes the shell to monitor all of the jobs started until the script terminates or runs out of memory. This would not be a problem if the loop did not reference "$!" or if the script would occasionally *wait* for jobs it started.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *kill*, *sh*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *wait*( ), *waitpid*( )

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

41057 **NAME**

41058 wc — word, line, and byte or character count

41059 **SYNOPSIS**

41060 `wc [-c|-m] [-lw] [file...]`

41061 **DESCRIPTION**

41062 The *wc* utility shall read one or more input files and, by default, write the number of
41063 <newline>s, words, and bytes contained in each input file to the standard output.

41064 The utility also shall write a total count for all named files, if more than one input file is
41065 specified.

41066 The *wc* utility shall consider a *word* to be a non-zero-length string of characters delimited by
41067 white space.

41068 **OPTIONS**

41069 The *wc* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2,
41070 Utility Syntax Guidelines.

41071 The following options shall be supported:

41072 **-c** Write to the standard output the number of bytes in each input file.

41073 **-l** Write to the standard output the number of <newline>s in each input file.

41074 **-m** Write to the standard output the number of characters in each input file.

41075 **-w** Write to the standard output the number of words in each input file.

41076 When any option is specified, *wc* shall report only the information requested by the specified
41077 options.

41078 **OPERANDS**

41079 The following operand shall be supported:

41080 *file* A pathname of an input file. If no *file* operands are specified, the standard input
41081 shall be used.

41082 **STDIN**

41083 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified. See the INPUT FILES
41084 section.

41085 **INPUT FILES**

41086 The input files may be of any type.

41087 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

41088 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *wc*:

41089 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
41090 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
41091 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
41092 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

41093 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
41094 internationalization variables.

41095 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
41096 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
41097 arguments and input files) and which characters are defined as white space
41098 characters.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS
Default.

STDOUT
By default, the standard output shall contain an entry for each input file of the form:

`"%d %d %d %s\n", <newlines>, <words>, <bytes>, <file>`

If the **–m** option is specified, the number of characters shall replace the <*bytes*> field in this format.

If any options are specified and the **–l** option is not specified, the number of <newline>s shall not be written.

If any options are specified and the **–w** option is not specified, the number of words shall not be written.

If any options are specified and neither **–c** nor **–m** is specified, the number of bytes or characters shall not be written.

If no input *file* operands are specified, no name shall be written and no <blank>s preceding the pathname shall be written.

If more than one input *file* operand is specified, an additional line shall be written, of the same format as the other lines, except that the word **total** (in the POSIX locale) shall be written instead of a pathname and the total of each column shall be written as appropriate. Such an additional line, if any, is written at the end of the output.

STDERR
The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES
None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
None.

EXIT STATUS
The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS
Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The **–m** option is not a switch, but an option at the same level as **–c**. Thus, to produce the full default output with character counts instead of bytes, the command required is:

```
wc –mlw
```

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The output file format pseudo-*printf*( ) string differs from the System V version of *wc*:

```
"%7d%7d%7d %s\n"
```

which produces possibly ambiguous and unparsable results for very large files, as it assumes no number shall exceed six digits.

Some historical implementations use only <space>, <tab>, and <newline> as word separators. The equivalent of the ISO C standard *isspace*( ) function is more appropriate.

The **–c** option stands for "character" count, even though it counts bytes. This stems from the sometimes erroneous historical view that bytes and characters are the same size. Due to international requirements, the **–m** option (reminiscent of "multi-byte") was added to obtain actual character counts.

Early proposals only specified the results when input files were text files. The current specification more closely matches historical practice. (Bytes, words, and <newline>s are counted separately and the results are written when an end-of-file is detected.)

Historical implementations of the *wc* utility only accepted one argument to specify the options **–c**, **–l**, and **–w**. Some of them also had multiple occurrences of an option cause the corresponding count to be written multiple times and had the order of specification of the options affect the order of the fields on output, but did not document either of these. Because common usage either specifies no options or only one option, and because none of this was documented, the changes required by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x should not break many historical applications (and do not break any historical conforming applications).

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

cksum

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

41170 **NAME**

41171 what — identify SCCS files (**DEVELOPMENT**)

41172 **SYNOPSIS**

41173 XSI
```
what [-s] file...
```

41174 **DESCRIPTION**

41175 The *what* utility shall search the given files for all occurrences of the pattern that *get* (see *get*)
41176 substitutes for the %**Z**% keyword (`"@(#)"`) and shall write to standard output what follows
41177 until the first occurrence of one of the following:

41178 `"` `>` `newline` `\` `NUL`

41179 **OPTIONS**

41180 The *what* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
41181 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

41182 The following option shall be supported:

41183 **-s** Quit after finding the first occurrence of the pattern in each file.

41184 **OPERANDS**

41185 The following operands shall be supported:

41186 *file* A pathname of a file to search.

41187 **STDIN**

41188 Not used.

41189 **INPUT FILES**

41190 The input files shall be of any file type.

41191 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

41192 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *what*:

41193 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
41194 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
41195 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
41196 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

41197 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
41198 internationalization variables.

41199 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
41200 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
41201 arguments and input files).

41202 *LC_MESSAGES*
41203 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
41204 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

41205 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

41206 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

41207 Default.

STDOUT

The standard output shall consist of the following for each *file* operand:

```
"%s:\n\t%s\n", <pathname>, <identification string>
```

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Any matches were found.

1 Otherwise.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *what* utility is intended to be used in conjunction with the SCCS command *get*, which automatically inserts identifying information, but it can also be used where the information is inserted by any other means.

When the string `"@(#)"` is included in a library routine in a shared library, it might not be found in an **a.out** file using that library routine.

EXAMPLES

If the C-language program in file **f.c** contains:

```
char ident[] = "@(#)identification information";
```

and **f.c** is compiled to yield **f.o** and **a.out**, then the command:

```
what f.c f.o a.out
```

writes:

```
f.c:
    identification information
    ...
f.o:
    identification information
    ...
a.out:
    identification information
    ...
```

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

get

41250 **CHANGE HISTORY**
41251 First released in Issue 2.

NAME

who — display who is on the system

SYNOPSIS

```
who [–mTu]
```

XSI

```
who [–mu] –s [–bHlprt] [file]
who [–mTu] [–abdHlprt] [file]
who –q [file]
who am i
who am I
```

DESCRIPTION

The *who* utility shall list various pieces of information about accessible users. The domain of accessibility is implementation-defined.

XSI Based on the options given, *who* can also list the user's name, terminal line, login time, elapsed time since activity occurred on the line, and the process ID of the command interpreter for each current system user.

OPTIONS

The *who* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

The following options shall be supported. The metavariables, such as <

41291 XSI **–t** Indicate the last change to the system clock.

41292 **–T** Show the state of each terminal, as described in the STDOUT section.

41293 **–u** Write "idle time" for each displayed user in addition to any other information. The
41294 idle time is the time since any activity occurred on the user's terminal. The method
41295 XSI of determining this is unspecified. This option shall list only those users who are
41296 currently logged in. The <*name*> is the user's login name. The <*line*> is the name
41297 of the line as found in the directory **/dev**. The <*time*> is the time that the user
41298 logged in. The <*activity*> is the number of hours and minutes since activity last
41299 occurred on that particular line. A dot indicates that the terminal has seen activity
41300 in the last minute and is therefore "current". If more than twenty-four hours have
41301 elapsed or the line has not been used since boot time, the entry shall be marked
41302 <*old*>. This field is useful when trying to determine whether a person is working at
41303 the terminal or not. The <*pid*> is the process ID of the user's login process.

41304 **OPERANDS**

41305 XSI The following operands shall be supported:

41306 **am i**, **am I** In the POSIX locale, limit the output to describing the invoking user, equivalent to
41307 the **–m** option. The **am** and **i** or **I** must be separate arguments.

41308 *file* Specify a pathname of a file to substitute for the implementation-defined database
41309 of logged-on users that *who* uses by default.

41310 **STDIN**

41311 Not used.

41312 **INPUT FILES**

41313 None.

41314 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

41315 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *who*:

41316 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
41317 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
41318 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
41319 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

41320 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
41321 internationalization variables.

41322 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
41323 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
41324 arguments).

41325 *LC_MESSAGES*
41326 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
41327 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

41328 *LC_TIME* Determine the locale used for the format and contents of the date and time strings.

41329 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

41330 *TZ* Determine the timezone used when writing date and time information. If *TZ* is
41331 unset or null, an unspecified default timezone shall be used.

41332 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

41333 Default.

41334 **STDOUT**

41335 The *who* utility shall write its default format to the standard output in an implementation-
41336 defined format, subject only to the requirement of containing the information described above.

41337 XSI OF XSI-conformant systems shall write the default information to the standard output in the
41338 following general format:

41339 **"%s[%s]%c%s%s[%s][%s][%s][%s]"** *<name>, <state>, <line>, <time>, <activity>, <pid>, <comment>, <exit>*

41340 For the **–b** option, *<line>* shall be `"system boot"`. The *<name>* is unspecified.

41341 The following format shall be used for the **–T** option:

41342 **"%s %c %s %s\n"** *<name>, <terminal state>, <terminal name>,*
41343 *<time of login>*

41344 where *<terminal state>* is one of the following characters:

41345 + The terminal allows write access to other users.

41346 – The terminal denies write access to other users.

41347 ? The terminal write-access state cannot be determined.

41348 `<space>` This entry is not associated with a terminal.

41349 In the POSIX locale, the *<time of login>* shall be equivalent in format to the output of:

41350 **date +"%b %e %H:%M"**

41351 If the **–u** option is used with **–T**, the idle time shall be added to the end of the previous format in
41352 an unspecified format.

41353 **STDERR**

41354 The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

41355 **OUTPUT FILES**

41356 None.

41357 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

41358 None.

41359 **EXIT STATUS**

41360 The following exit values shall be returned:

41361 0 Successful completion.

41362 >0 An error occurred.

41363 **CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS**

41364 Default.

41365 **APPLICATION USAGE**

41366 The name *init* used for the system process is the most commonly used on historical systems, but
41367 it may vary.

41368 The "domain of accessibility" referred to is a broad concept that permits interpretation either on
41369 a very secure basis or even to allow a network-wide implementation like the historical *rwho*.

41370 **EXAMPLES**

41371 None.

RATIONALE

Due to differences between historical implementations, the base options provided were a compromise to allow users to work with those functions. The standard developers also considered removing all the options, but felt that these options offered users valuable functionality. Additional options to match historical systems are available on XSI-conformant systems.

It is recognized that the *who*

NAME

write — write to another user

SYNOPSIS

```
write user_name [terminal]
```

DESCRIPTION

The *write* utility shall read lines from the standard input and write them to the terminal of the specified user. When first invoked, it shall write the message:

```
Message from sender-login-id (sending-terminal) [date]...
```

to *user_name*. When it has successfully completed the connection, the sender's terminal shall be alerted twice to indicate that what the sender is typing is being written to the recipient's terminal.

If the recipient wants to reply, this can be accomplished by typing:

```
write sender-login-id [sending-terminal]
```

upon receipt of the initial message. Whenever a line of input as delimited by an NL, EOF, or EOL special character (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface) is accumulated while in canonical input mode, the accumulated data shall be written on the other user's terminal. Characters shall be processed as follows:

- Typing <alert> shall write the alert character to the recipient's terminal.
- Typing the erase and kill characters shall affect the sender's terminal in the manner described by the **termios** interface in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.
- Typing the interrupt or end-of-file characters shall cause *write* to write an appropriate message (`"EOT\n"` in the POSIX locale) to the recipient's terminal and exit.
- Typing characters from *LC_CTYPE* classifications **print** or **space** shall cause those characters to be sent to the recipient's terminal.
- When and only when the *stty* **iexten** local mode is enabled, the existence and processing of additional special control characters and multi-byte or single-byte functions is implementation-defined.
- Typing other non-printable characters shall cause implementation-defined sequences of printable characters to be written to the recipient's terminal.

To write to a user who is logged in more than once, the *terminal* argument can be used to indicate which terminal to write to; otherwise, the recipient's terminal is selected in an implementation-defined manner and an informational message is written to the sender's standard output, indicating which terminal was chosen.

Permission to be a recipient of a *write* message can be denied or granted by use of the *mesg* utility. However, a user's privilege may further constrain the domain of accessibility of other users' terminals. The *write* utility shall fail when the user lacks the appropriate privileges to perform the requested action.

OPTIONS

None.

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

user_name Login name of the person to whom the message shall be written. The application shall ensure that this operand is of the form returned by the *who* utility.

terminal Terminal identification in the same format provided by the *who* utility.

STDIN

Lines to be copied to the recipient's terminal are read from standard input.

INPUT FILES

None.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *write*:

LANG Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

LC_ALL If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

LC_CTYPE Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files). If the recipient's locale does not use an *LC_CTYPE* equivalent to the sender's, the results are undefined.

LC_MESSAGES
Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error and informative messages written to standard output.

XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

If an interrupt signal is received, *write* shall write an appropriate message on the recipient's terminal and exit with a status of zero. It shall take the standard action for all other signals.

STDOUT

An informational message shall be written to standard output if a recipient is logged in more than once.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

The recipient's terminal is used for output.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 The addressed user is not logged on or the addressed user denies permission.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

The *talk* utility is considered by some users to be a more usable utility on full-screen terminals.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

The *write* utility was included in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x since it can be implemented on all terminal types. The standard developers considered the *talk* utility, which cannot be implemented on certain terminals, to be a "better" communications interface. Both of these programs are in widespread use on historical implementations. Therefore, the standard developers decided that both utilities should be specified.

The format of the terminal name is unspecified, but the descriptions of *ps*, *talk*, *who*, and *write* require that they all use or accept the same format.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

mesg, *talk*, *who*, the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x,

41512 **NAME**

41513 xargs — construct argument lists and invoke utility

41514 **SYNOPSIS**

41515 XSI `xargs [–ptx] [–E eofstr] [–s size] [–I replstr] [–L number] [–n number]`
41516 `[utility [argument...]]`

41517 **DESCRIPTION**

41518 The *xargs* utility shall construct a command line consisting of the *utility* and *argument* operands
41519 specified followed by as many arguments read in sequence from standard input as fit in length
41520 and number constraints specified by the options. The *xargs* utility shall then invoke the
41521 constructed command line and wait for its completion. This sequence shall be repeated until one
41522 of the following occurs:

41523 • An end-of-file condition is detected on standard input.

41524 • An argument consisting of just the logical end-of-file string (see the **–E** *eofstr* option) is
41525 found on standard input after double-quote processing, apostrophe processing, and
41526 backslash escape processing (see next paragraph). All arguments up to but not including
41527 the argument consisting of just the logical end-of-file string shall be used as arguments in
41528 constructed command lines.

41529 • An invocation of a constructed command line returns an exit status of 255.

41530 The application shall ensure that arguments in the standard input are separated by unquoted
41531 <blank>s, unescaped <blank>s, or <newline>s. A string of zero or more non-double-quote
41532 (`'"'`) characters and non-<newline>s can be quoted by enclosing them in double-quotes. A
41533 string of zero or more non-apostrophe (`''`) characters and non-<newline>s can be quoted by
41534 enclosing them in apostrophes. Any unquoted character can be escaped by preceding it with a
41535 backslash. The utility named by *utility* shall be executed one or more times until the end-of-file is
41536 reached or the logical end-of file string is found. The results are unspecified if the utility named
41537 by *utility* attempts to read from its standard input.

41538 The generated command line length shall be the sum of the size in bytes of the utility name and
41539 each argument treated as strings, including a null byte terminator for each of these strings. The
41540 *xargs* utility shall limit the command line length such that when the command line is invoked,
41541 the combined argument and environment lists (see the *exec* family of functions in the System
41542 Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x) shall not exceed {ARG_MAX}–2 048 bytes. Within
41543 this constraint, if neither the **–n** nor the **–s** option is specified, the default command line length
41544 shall be at least {LINE_MAX}.

41545 **OPTIONS**

41546 The *xargs* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section
41547 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines.

41548 The following options shall be supported:

41549 **–E** *eofstr* Use *eofstr* as the logical end-of-file string. If **–E** is not specified, it is unspecified
41550 whether the logical end-of-file string is the underscore character (`'_'`) or the end-
41551 of-file string capability is disabled. When *eofstr* is the null string, the logical end-of-
41552 file string capability shall be disabled and underscore characters shall be taken
41553 literally.

41554 XSI **–I** *replstr* Insert mode: *utility* is executed for each line from standard input, taking the entire
41555 line as a single argument, inserting it in *argument*s for each occurrence of *replstr*. A
41556 maximum of five arguments in *argument*s can each contain one or more instances
41557 of *replstr*. Any <blank>s at the beginning of each line shall be ignored.

Constructed arguments cannot grow larger than 255 bytes. Option **–x** shall be forced on.

XSI **–L** *number* The *utility* shall be executed for each non-empty *number* lines of arguments from standard input. The last invocation of *utility* shall be with fewer lines of arguments if fewer than *number* remain. A line is considered to end with the first <newline> unless the last character of the line is a <blank>; a trailing <blank> signals continuation to the next non-empty line, inclusive.

–n *number* Invoke *utility* using as many standard input arguments as possible, up to *number* (a positive decimal integer) arguments maximum. Fewer arguments shall be used if:

- The command line length accumulated exceeds the size specified by the **–s** option (or {LINE_MAX} if there is no **–s** option).
- The last iteration has fewer than *number*, but not zero, operands remaining.

–p Prompt mode: the user is asked whether to execute *utility* at each invocation. Trace mode (**–t**) is turned on to write the command instance to be executed, followed by a prompt to standard error. An affirmative response read from **/dev/tty** shall execute the command; otherwise, that particular invocation of *utility* shall be skipped.

–s *size* Invoke *utility* using as many standard input arguments as possible yielding a command line length less than *size* (a positive decimal integer) bytes. Fewer arguments shall be used if:

- The total number of arguments exceeds that specified by the **–n** option.
- XSI The total number of lines exceeds that specified by the **–L** option.
- End-of-file is encountered on standard input before *size* bytes are accumulated.

Values of *size* up to at least {LINE_MAX} bytes shall be supported, provided that the constraints specified in the DESCRIPTION are met. It shall not be considered an error if a value larger than that supported by the implementation or exceeding the constraints specified in the DESCRIPTION is given; *xargs* shall use the largest value it supports within the constraints.

–t Enable trace mode. Each generated command line shall be written to standard error just prior to invocation.

–x Terminate if a constructed command line will not fit in the implied or specified size (see the **–s** option above).

OPERANDS

The following operands shall be supported:

utility The name of the utility to be invoked, found by search path using the *PATH* environment variable, described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables. If *utility* is omitted, the default shall be the *echo* utility. If the *utility* operand names any of the special built-in utilities in Section 2.14 (on page 64), the results are undefined.

argument An initial option or operand for the invocation of *utility*.

STDIN

The standard input shall be a text file. The results are unspecified if an end-of-file condition is detected immediately following an escaped <newline>.

41602 **INPUT FILES**

41603 The file **/dev/tty** shall be used to read responses required by the −**p** option.

41604 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

41605 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *xargs*:

41606 41607 41608 41609 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null. (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2, Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables used to determine the values of locale categories.)

41610 41611 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other internationalization variables.

41612 41613 41614 41615 *LC_COLLATE* Determine the locale for the behavior of ranges, equivalence classes, and multi-character collating elements used in the extended regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

41616 41617 41618 41619 41620 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in arguments and input files) and the behavior of character classes used in the extended regular expression defined for the **yesexpr** locale keyword in the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

41621 41622 41623 41624 *LC_MESSAGES* Determine the locale for the processing of affirmative responses and that should be used to affect the format and contents of diagnostic messages written to standard error.

41625 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

41626 41627 *PATH* Determine the location of *utility*, as described in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Chapter 8, Environment Variables.

41628 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

41629 Default.

41630 **STDOUT**

41631 Not used.

41632 **STDERR**

41633 41634 41635 41636 The standard error shall be used for diagnostic messages and the −**t** and −**p** options. If the −**t** option is specified, the *utility* and its constructed argument list shall be written to standard error, as it will be invoked, prior to invocation. If −**p** is specified, a prompt of the following format shall be written (in the POSIX locale):

41637 `"?..."`

41638 at the end of the line of the output from −**t**.

41639 **OUTPUT FILES**

41640 None.

41641 **EXTENDED DESCRIPTION**

41642 None.

41643 **EXIT STATUS**

41644 The following exit values shall be returned:

41645 0 All invocations of *utility* returned exit status zero.

1-125 A command line meeting the specified requirements could not be assembled, one or more of the invocations of *utility* returned a non-zero exit status, or some other error occurred.

126 The utility specified by *utility* was found but could not be invoked.

127 The utility specified by *utility* could not be found.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If a command line meeting the specified requirements cannot be assembled, the utility cannot be invoked, an invocation of the utility is terminated by a signal, or an invocation of the utility exits with exit status 255, the *xargs* utility shall write a diagnostic message and exit without processing any remaining input.

APPLICATION USAGE

The 255 exit status allows a utility being used by *xargs* to tell *xargs* to terminate if it knows no further invocations using the current data stream will succeed. Thus, *utility* should explicitly *exit* with an appropriate value to avoid accidentally returning with 255.

Note that input is parsed as lines; <blank>s separate arguments. If *xargs* is used to bundle output of commands like *find dir* **–print** or *ls* into commands to be executed, unexpected results are likely if any filenames contain any <blank>s or <newline>s. This can be fixed by using *find* to call a script that converts each file found into a quoted string that is then piped to *xargs*. Note that the quoting rules used by *xargs* are not the same as in the shell. They were not made consistent here because existing applications depend on the current rules and the shell syntax is not fully compatible with it. An easy rule that can be used to transform any string into a quoted form that *xargs* interprets correctly is to precede each character in the string with a backslash.

On implementations with a large value for {ARG_MAX}, *xargs* may produce command lines longer than {LINE_MAX}. For invocation of utilities, this is not a problem. If *xargs* is being used to create a text file, users should explicitly set the maximum command line length with the **–s** option.

The *command*, *env*, *nice*, *nohup*, *time*, and *xargs* utilities have been specified to use exit code 127 if an error occurs so that applications can distinguish "failure to find a utility" from "invoked utility exited with an error indication". The value 127 was chosen because it is not commonly used for other meanings; most utilities use small values for "normal error conditions" and the values above 128 can be confused with termination due to receipt of a signal. The value 126 was chosen in a similar manner to indicate that the utility could be found, but not invoked. Some scripts produce meaningful error messages differentiating the 126 and 127 cases. The distinction between exit codes 126 and 127 is based on KornShell practice that uses 127 when all attempts to *exec* the utility fail with [ENOENT], and uses 126 when any attempt to *exec* the utility fails for any other reason.

EXAMPLES

1. The following command combines the output of the parenthesised commands onto one line, which is then written to the end-of-file **log**:

   ```
   (logname; date; printf "%s\n" "$0 $*") | xargs >>log
   ```

2. The following command invokes *diff* with successive pairs of arguments originally typed as command line arguments (assuming there are no embedded <blank>s in the elements of the original argument list):

   ```
   printf "%s\n" "$*" | xargs –n 2 –x diff
   ```

3. In the following commands, the user is asked which files in the current directory are to be archived. The files are archived into **arch**; *a*, one at a time, or *b*, many at a time.

   ```
   a. ls | xargs –p –L 1 ar –r arch
   ```



```
b. ls | xargs –p –L 1 | xargs ar –r arch
```

4. The following executes with successive pairs of arguments originally typed as command line arguments:

   ```
   echo $* | xargs –n 2 diff
   ```

5. On XSI-conformant systems, the following moves all files from directory **$1** to directory **$2**, and echoes each move command just before doing it:

   ```
   ls $1 | xargs –I {} –t mv $1/{} $2/{}
   ```

RATIONALE

The *xargs* utility was usually found only in System V-based systems; BSD systems included an *apply* utility that provided functionality similar to *xargs* –**n** *number*. The SVID lists *xargs* as a software development extension. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x does not share the view that it is used only for development, and therefore it is not optional.

The classic application of the *xargs* utility is in conjunction with the *find* utility to reduce the number of processes launched by a simplistic use of the *find* –**exec** combination. The *xargs* utility is also used to enforce an upper limit on memory required to launch a process. With this basis in mind, this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x selected only the minimal features required.

Although the 255 exit status is mostly an accident of historical implementations, it allows a utility being used by *xargs* to tell *xargs* to terminate if it knows no further invocations using the current data stream shall succeed. Any non-zero exit status from a utility falls into the 1-125 range when *xargs* exits. There is no statement of how the various non-zero utility exit status codes are accumulated by *xargs*. The value could be the addition of all codes, their highest value, the last one received, or a single value such as 1. Since no algorithm is arguably better than the others, and since many of the standard utilities say little more (portably) than "pass/fail", no new algorithm was invented.

Several other *xargs* options were withdrawn because simple alternatives already exist within this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. For example, the –**i** *replstr* option can be just as efficiently performed using a shell **for** loop. Since *xargs* calls an *exec* function with each input line, the –**i** option does not usually exploit the grouping capabilities of *xargs*.

The requirement that *xargs* never produces command lines such that invocation of *utility* is within 2 048 bytes of hitting the POSIX *exec* {ARG_MAX} limitations is intended to guarantee that the invoked utility has room to modify its environment variables and command line arguments and still be able to invoke another utility. Note that the minimum {ARG_MAX} allowed by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is 4 096 bytes and the minimum value allowed by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is 2 048 bytes; therefore, the 2 048 bytes difference seems reasonable. Note, however, that *xargs* may never be able to invoke a utility if the environment passed in to *xargs* comes close to using {ARG_MAX} bytes.

The version of *xargs* required by this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x is required to wait for the completion of the invoked command before invoking another command. This was done because historical scripts using *xargs* assumed sequential execution. Implementations wanting to provide parallel operation of the invoked utilities are encouraged to add an option enabling parallel invocation, but should still wait for termination of all of the children before *xargs* terminates normally.

The –**e** option was omitted from the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard in the belief that the *eofstr* option-argument was recognized only when it was on a line by itself and before quote and escape processing were performed, and that the logical end-of-file processing was only enabled if a –**e** option was specified. In that case, a simple *sed* script could be used to duplicate the –**e** functionality. Further investigation revealed that:

- The logical end-of-file string was checked for after quote and escape processing, making a *sed* script that provided equivalent functionality much more difficult to write.
- The default was to perform logical end-of-file processing with an underscore as the logical end-of-file string.

To correct this misunderstanding, the **–E** *eofstr* option was adopted from the X/Open Portability Guide. Users should note that the description of the **–E** option matches historical documentation of the **–e** option (which was not adopted because it did not support the Utility Syntax Guidelines), by saying that if *eofstr* is the null string, logical end-of-file processing is disabled. Historical implementations of *xargs* actually did not disable logical end-of-file processing; they treated a null argument found in the input as a logical end-of-file string. (A null *string* argument could be generated using single or double quotes (`''` or `""`). Since this behavior was not documented historically, it is considered to be a bug.

The **–I**, **–L**, and **–n** options are mutually-exclusive. Some implementations use the last one specified if more than one is given on a command line; other implementations treat combinations of the options in different ways.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

Chapter 2 (on page 29), *echo*, *find*, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, *exec*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

A second FUTURE DIRECTION is added.

Issue 6

The obsolescent **–e**, **–i**, and **–l** options are removed.

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The **–p** option is added.
- In the INPUT FILES section, the file **/dev/tty** is used to read responses required by the **–p** option.
- The STDERR section is updated to describe the **–p** option.

The description of the **–E** option is aligned with the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-68 is applied.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

SD5-XCU-ERN-128 is applied, clarifying the DESCRIPTION of the logical end-of-file string.

NAME

yacc — yet another compiler compiler (**DEVELOPMENT**)

SYNOPSIS

CD

```
yacc [–dltv] [–b file_prefix] [–p sym_prefix] grammar
```

DESCRIPTION

The *yacc* utility shall read a description of a context-free grammar in *grammar* and write C source code, conforming to the ISO C standard, to a code file, and optionally header information into a header file, in the current directory. The C code shall define a function and related routines and macros for an automaton that executes a parsing algorithm meeting the requirements in Algorithms (on page 1079).

The form and meaning of the grammar are described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section.

The C source code and header file shall be produced in a form suitable as input for the C compiler (see *c99*).

OPTIONS

The *yacc* utility shall conform to the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 12.2, Utility Syntax Guidelines, except for Guideline 9.

The following options shall be supported:

–b *file_prefix* Use *file_prefix* instead of **y** as the prefix for all output filenames. The code file **y.tab.c**, the header file **y.tab.h** (created when **–d** is specified), and the description file **y.output** (created when **–v** is specified), shall be changed to *file_prefix***.tab.c**, *file_prefix***.tab.h**, and *file_prefix***.output**, respectively.

–d Write the header file; by default only the code file is written. The **#define** statements associate the token codes assigned by *yacc* with the user-declared token names. This allows source files other than **y.tab.c** to access the token codes.

–l Produce a code file that does not contain any **#line** constructs. If this option is not present, it is unspecified whether the code file or header file contains **#line** directives. This should only be used after the grammar and the associated actions are fully debugged.

–p *sym_prefix*
Use *sym_prefix* instead of **yy** as the prefix for all external names produced by *yacc*. The names affected shall include the functions *yyparse*(), *yylex*(), and *yyerror*(), and the variables *yylval*, *yychar*, and *yydebug*. (In the remainder of this section, the six symbols cited are referenced using their default names only as a notational convenience.) Local names may also be affected by the **–p** option; however, the **–p** option shall not affect **#define** symbols generated by *yacc*.

–t Modify conditional compilation directives to permit compilation of debugging code in the code file. Runtime debugging statements shall always be contained in the code file, but by default conditional compilation directives prevent their compilation.

–v Write a file containing a description of the parser and a report of conflicts generated by ambiguities in the grammar.

41818 **OPERANDS**

41819 The following operand is required:

41820 *grammar* A pathname of a file containing instructions, hereafter called *grammar*, for which a
41821 parser is to be created. The format for the grammar is described in the EXTENDED
41822 DESCRIPTION section.

41823 **STDIN**

41824 Not used.

41825 **INPUT FILES**

41826 The file *grammar* shall be a text file formatted as specified in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION
41827 section.

41828 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

41829 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *yacc*:

41830 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
41831 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
41832 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
41833 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

41834 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
41835 internationalization variables.

41836 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
41837 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
41838 arguments and input files).

41839 *LC_MESSAGES*
41840 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
41841 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

41842 XSI *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

41843 The *LANG* and *LC_** variables affect the execution of the *yacc* utility as stated. The *main*()
41844 function defined in Yacc Library shall call:

41845 `setlocale(LC_ALL, "")`

41846 and thus the program generated by *yacc* shall also be affected by the contents of these variables
41847 at runtime.

41848 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

41849 Default.

41850 **STDOUT**

41851 Not used.

41852 **STDERR**

41853 If shift/reduce or reduce/reduce conflicts are detected in *grammar*, *yacc* shall write a report of
41854 those conflicts to the standard error in an unspecified format.

41855 Standard error shall also be used for diagnostic messages.

41856 **OUTPUT FILES**

41857 The code file, the header file, and the description file shall be text files. All are described in the
41858 following sections.

Code File

This file shall contain the C source code for the *yyparse*() function. It shall contain code for the various semantic actions with macro substitution performed on them as described in the EXTENDED DESCRIPTION section. It also shall contain a copy of the **#define** statements in the header file. If a **%union** declaration is used, the declaration for YYSTYPE shall also be included in this file.

Header File

The header file shall contain **#define** statements that associate the token numbers with the token names. This allows source files other than the code file to access the token codes. If a **%union** declaration is used, the declaration for YYSTYPE and an *extern YYSTYPE yylval* declaration shall also be included in this file.

Description File

The description file shall be a text file containing a description of the state machine corresponding to the parser, using an unspecified format. Limits for internal tables (see Limits (on page 1079)) shall also be reported, in an implementation-defined manner. (Some implementations may use dynamic allocation techniques and have no specific limit values to report.)

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

The *yacc* command accepts a language that is used to define a grammar for a target language to be parsed by the tables and code generated by *yacc*. The language accepted by *yacc* as a grammar for the target language is described below using the *yacc* input language itself.

The input *grammar* includes rules describing the input structure of the target language and code to be invoked when these rules are recognized to provide the associated semantic action. The code to be executed shall appear as bodies of text that are intended to be C-language code. The C-language inclusions are presumed to form a correct function when processed by *yacc* into its output files. The code included in this way shall be executed during the recognition of the target language.

Given a grammar, the *yacc* utility generates the files described in the OUTPUT FILES section. The code file can be compiled and linked using *c99*. If the declaration and programs sections of the grammar file did not include definitions of *main*(), *yylex*(), and *yyerror*(), the compiled output requires linking with externally supplied versions of those functions. Default versions of *main*() and *yyerror*() are supplied in the *yacc* library and can be linked in by using the **–l y** operand to *c99*. The *yacc* library interfaces need not support interfaces with other than the default **yy** symbol prefix. The application provides the lexical analyzer function, *yylex*(); the *lex* utility is specifically designed to generate such a routine.

Input Language

The application shall ensure that every specification file consists of three sections in order: *declarations*, *grammar rules*, and *programs*, separated by double percent signs ("%%"). The declarations and programs sections can be empty. If the latter is empty, the preceding "%%" mark separating it from the rules section can be omitted.

The input is free form text following the structure of the grammar defined below.

41900 **Lexical Structure of the Grammar**

41901 The <blank>s, <newline>s, and <form-feed>s shall be ignored, except that the application shall
41902 ensure that they do not appear in names or multi-character reserved symbols. Comments shall
41903 be enclosed in `"/* ... */"`, and can appear wherever a name is valid.

41904 Names are of arbitrary length, made up of letters, periods (`'.'`), underscores (`'_'`), and non-
41905 initial digits. Uppercase and lowercase letters are distinct. Conforming applications shall not
41906 use names beginning in **yy** or **YY** since the *yacc* parser uses such names. Many of the names
41907 appear in the final output of *yacc*, and thus they should be chosen to conform with any
41908 additional rules created by the C compiler to be used. In particular they appear in **#define**
41909 statements.

41910 A literal shall consist of a single character enclosed in single-quotes (`''''`). All of the escape
41911 sequences supported for character constants by the ISO C standard shall be supported by *yacc*.

41912 The relationship with the lexical analyzer is discussed in detail below.

41913 The application shall ensure that the NUL character is not used in grammar rules or literals.

41914 **Declarations Section**

41915 The declarations section is used to define the symbols used to define the target language and
41916 their relationship with each other. In particular, much of the additional information required to
41917 resolve ambiguities in the context-free grammar for the target language is provided here.

41918 Usually *yacc* assigns the relationship between the symbolic names it generates and their
41919 underlying numeric value. The declarations section makes it possible to control the assignment
41920 of these values.

41921 It is also possible to keep semantic information associated with the tokens currently on the parse
41922 stack in a user-defined C-language **union**, if the members of the union are associated with the
41923 various names in the grammar. The declarations section provides for this as well.

41924 The first group of declarators below all take a list of names as arguments. That list can optionally
41925 be preceded by the name of a C union member (called a *tag* below) appearing within `'<'` and
41926 `'>'`. (As an exception to the typographical conventions of the rest of this volume of
41927 IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, in this case <*tag*> does not represent a metavariable, but the literal angle
41928 bracket characters surrounding a symbol.) The use of *tag* specifies that the tokens named on this
41929 line shall be of the same C type as the union member referenced by *tag*. This is discussed in
41930 more detail below.

41931 For lists used to define tokens, the first appearance of a given token can be followed by a
41932 positive integer (as a string of decimal digits). If this is done, the underlying value assigned to it
41933 for lexical purposes shall be taken to be that number.

41934 The following declares *name* to be a token:

41935 `%token [<`*tag*`>] `*name*` [`*number*`][`*name*` [`*number*`]]...`

41936 If *tag* is present, the C type for all tokens on this line shall be declared to be the type referenced
41937 by *tag*. If a positive integer, *number*, follows a *name*, that value shall be assigned to the token.

41938 The following declares *name* to be a token, and assigns precedence to it:

41939 `%left [<`*tag*`>] `*name*` [`*number*`][`*name*` [`*number*`]]...`
41940 `%right [<`*tag*`>] `*name*` [`*number*`][`*name*` [`*number*`]]...`

41941 One or more lines, each beginning with one of these symbols, can appear in this section. All
41942 tokens on the same line have the same precedence level and associativity; the lines are in order
41943 of increasing precedence or binding strength. **%left** denotes that the operators on that line are
41944 left associative, and **%right** similarly denotes right associative operators. If *tag* is present, it shall

41945 declare a C type for *name*s as described for **%token**.

41946 The following declares *name* to be a token, and indicates that this cannot be used associatively:

41947 `%nonassoc [<tag>] name [number][name [number]]...`

41948 If the parser encounters associative use of this token it reports an error. If *tag* is present, it shall
41949 declare a C type for *name*s as described for **%token**.

41950 The following declares that union member *name*s are non-terminals, and thus it is required to
41951 have a *tag* field at its beginning:

41952 `%type <tag> name...`

41953 Because it deals with non-terminals only, assigning a token number or using a literal is also
41954 prohibited. If this construct is present, *yacc* shall perform type checking; if this construct is not
41955 present, the parse stack shall hold only the **int** type.

41956 Every name used in *grammar* not defined by a **%token**, **%left**, **%right**, or **%nonassoc** declaration
41957 is assumed to represent a non-terminal symbol. The *yacc* utility shall report an error for any non-
41958 terminal symbol that does not appear on the left side of at least one grammar rule.

41959 Once the type, precedence, or token number of a name is specified, it shall not be changed. If the
41960 first declaration of a token does not assign a token number, *yacc* shall assign a token number.
41961 Once this assignment is made, the token number shall not be changed by explicit assignment.

41962 The following declarators do not follow the previous pattern.

41963 The following declares the non-terminal *name* to be the *start symbol*, which represents the largest,
41964 most general structure described by the grammar rules:

41965 `%start name`

41966 By default, it is the left-hand side of the first grammar rule; this default can be overridden with
41967 this declaration.

41968 The following declares the *yacc* value stack to be a union of the various types of values desired:

41969 `%union { body of union (in C) }`

41970 By default, the values returned by actions (see below) and the lexical analyzer shall be of type
41971 **int**. The *yacc* utility keeps track of types, and it shall insert corresponding union member names
41972 in order to perform strict type checking of the resulting parser.

41973 Alternatively, given that at least one <*tag*> construct is used, the union can be declared in a
41974 header file (which shall be included in the declarations section by using a **#include** construct
41975 within **%{** and **%}**), and a **typedef** used to define the symbol YYSTYPE to represent this union.
41976 The effect of **%union** is to provide the declaration of YYSTYPE directly from the *yacc* input.

41977 C-language declarations and definitions can appear in the declarations section, enclosed by the
41978 following marks:

41979 `%{ ... %}`

41980 These statements shall be copied into the code file, and have global scope within it so that they
41981 can be used in the rules and program sections.

41982 The application shall ensure that the declarations section is terminated by the token **%%**.

41983 **Grammar Rules in yacc**

41984 The rules section defines the context-free grammar to be accepted by the function *yacc* generates,
41985 and associates with those rules C-language actions and additional precedence information. The
41986 grammar is described below, and a formal definition follows.

41987 The rules section is comprised of one or more grammar rules. A grammar rule has the form:

41988 `A : BODY ;`

41989 The symbol **A** represents a non-terminal name, and **BODY** represents a sequence of zero or
41990 more *name*s, *literal*s, and *semantic action*s that can then be followed by optional *precedence rule*s.
41991 Only the names and literals participate in the formation of the grammar; the semantic actions
41992 and precedence rules are used in other ways. The colon and the semicolon are *yacc* punctuation.
41993 If there are several successive grammar rules with the same left-hand side, the vertical bar `'|'`
41994 can be used to avoid rewriting the left-hand side; in this case the semicolon appears only after
41995 the last rule. The BODY part can be empty (or empty of names and literals) to indicate that the
41996 non-terminal symbol matches the empty string.

41997 The *yacc* utility assigns a unique number to each rule. Rules using the vertical bar notation are
41998 distinct rules. The number assigned to the rule appears in the description file.

41999 The elements comprising a BODY are:

42000 *name*, *literal* These form the rules of the grammar: *name* is either a *token* or a *non-terminal*; *literal*
42001 stands for itself (less the lexically required quotation marks).

42002 *semantic action*

42003 With each grammar rule, the user can associate actions to be performed each time
42004 the rule is recognized in the input process. (Note that the word "action" can also
42005 refer to the actions of the parser—shift, reduce, and so on.)

42006 These actions can return values and can obtain the values returned by previous
42007 actions. These values are kept in objects of type YYSTYPE (see **%union**). The
42008 result value of the action shall be kept on the parse stack with the left-hand side of
42009 the rule, to be accessed by other reductions as part of their right-hand side. By
42010 using the <*tag*> information provided in the declarations section, the code
42011 generated by *yacc* can be strictly type checked and contain arbitrary information. In
42012 addition, the lexical analyzer can provide the same kinds of values for tokens, if
42013 desired.

42014 An action is an arbitrary C statement and as such can do input or output, call
42015 subprograms, and alter external variables. An action is one or more C statements
42016 enclosed in curly braces `'{'` and `'}'`.

42017 Certain pseudo-variables can be used in the action. These are macros for access to
42018 data structures known internally to *yacc*.

42019 $$ The value of the action can be set by assigning it to $$. If type
42020 checking is enabled and the type of the value to be assigned cannot
42021 be determined, a diagnostic message may be generated.

42022 $*number* This refers to the value returned by the component specified by the
42023 token *number* in the right side of a rule, reading from left to right;
42024 *number* can be zero or negative. If *number* is zero or negative, it refers
42025 to the data associated with the name on the parser's stack preceding
42026 the leftmost symbol of the current rule. (That is, `"$0"` refers to the
42027 name immediately preceding the leftmost name in the current rule to
42028 be found on the parser's stack and `"$-1"` refers to the symbol to *its*
42029 left.) If *number* refers to an element past the current point in the rule,
42030 or beyond the bottom of the stack, the result is undefined. If type

checking is enabled and the type of the value to be assigned cannot be determined, a diagnostic message may be generated.

$<*tag*>*number*
: These correspond exactly to the corresponding symbols without the *tag* inclusion, but allow for strict type checking (and preclude unwanted type conversions). The effect is that the macro is expanded to use *tag* to select an element from the YYSTYPE union (using *dataname.tag*). This is particularly useful if *number* is not positive.

$<*tag*>$
: This imposes on the reference the type of the union member referenced by *tag*. This construction is applicable when a reference to a left context value occurs in the grammar, and provides *yacc* with a means for selecting a type.

Actions can occur anywhere in a rule (not just at the end); an action can access values returned by actions to its left, and in turn the value it returns can be accessed by actions to its right. An action appearing in the middle of a rule shall be equivalent to replacing the action with a new non-terminal symbol and adding an empty rule with that non-terminal symbol on the left-hand side. The semantic action associated with the new rule shall be equivalent to the original action. The use of actions within rules might introduce conflicts that would not otherwise exist.

By default, the value of a rule shall be the value of the first element in it. If the first element does not have a type (particularly in the case of a literal) and type checking is turned on by **%type**, an error message shall result.

precedence
: The keyword **%prec** can be used to change the precedence level associated with a particular grammar rule. Examples of this are in cases where a unary and binary operator have the same symbolic representation, but need to be given different precedences, or where the handling of an ambiguous if-else construction is necessary. The reserved symbol **%prec** can appear immediately after the body of the grammar rule and can be followed by a token name or a literal. It shall cause the precedence of the grammar rule to become that of the following token name or literal. The action for the rule as a whole can follow **%prec**.

If a program section follows, the application shall ensure that the grammar rules are terminated by **%%**.

Programs Section

The *programs* section can include the definition of the lexical analyzer *yylex*(), and any other functions; for example, those used in the actions specified in the grammar rules. It is unspecified whether the programs section precedes or follows the semantic actions in the output file; therefore, if the application contains any macro definitions and declarations intended to apply to the code in the semantic actions, it shall place them within `"%{ ... %}"` in the declarations section.

Input Grammar

The following input to *yacc* yields a parser for the input to *yacc*. This formal syntax takes precedence over the preceding text syntax description.

The lexical structure is defined less precisely; Lexical Structure of the Grammar defines most terms. The correspondence between the previous terms and the tokens below is as follows.

IDENTIFIER This corresponds to the concept of *name*, given previously. It also includes literals as defined previously.

C_IDENTIFIER This is a name, and additionally it is known to be followed by a colon. A literal cannot yield this token.

NUMBER A string of digits (a non-negative decimal integer).

TYPE, **LEFT**, **MARK**, **LCURL**, **RCURL**
These correspond directly to **%type**, **%left**, %%, %{, and %}.

{...} This indicates C-language source code, with the possible inclusion of `'$'` macros as discussed previously.

```
/* Grammar for the input to yacc. */
/* Basic entries. */
/* The following are recognized by the lexical analyzer. */

%token    IDENTIFIER      /* Includes identifiers and literals */
%token    C_IDENTIFIER    /* identifier (but not literal)
                             followed by a :. */
%token    NUMBER          /* [0-9][0-9]* */

/* Reserved words : %type=>TYPE %left=>LEFT, and so on */

%token    LEFT RIGHT NONASSOC TOKEN PREC TYPE START UNION

%token    MARK            /* The %% mark. */
%token    LCURL           /* The %{ mark. */
%token    RCURL           /* The %} mark. */

/* 8-bit character literals stand for themselves; */
/* tokens have to be defined for multi-byte characters. */

%start    spec

%%

spec  : defs MARK rules tail
      ;
tail  : MARK
      {
        /* In this action, set up the rest of the file. */
      }
      | /* Empty; the second MARK is optional. */
      ;
defs  : /* Empty. */
      |    defs def
      ;
def   : START IDENTIFIER
      |    UNION
      {
        /* Copy union definition to output. */
      }
      |    LCURL
      {
        /* Copy C code to output file. */
      }
        RCURL
      |    rword tag nlist
      ;
```



```
rword : TOKEN
      | LEFT
      | RIGHT
      | NONASSOC
      | TYPE
      ;
tag   : /* Empty: union tag ID optional. */
      | '<' IDENTIFIER '>'
      ;
nlist : nmno
      | nlist nmno
      ;
nmno  : IDENTIFIER         /* Note: literal invalid with % type. */
      | IDENTIFIER NUMBER  /* Note: invalid with % type. */
      ;

/* Rule section */

rules : C_IDENTIFIER rbody prec
      | rules  rule
      ;
rule  : C_IDENTIFIER rbody prec
      | '|' rbody prec
      ;
rbody : /* empty */
      | rbody IDENTIFIER
      | rbody act
      ;
act   : '{'
        {
          /* Copy action, translate $$, and so on. */
        }
        '}'
      ;
prec  : /* Empty */
      | PREC IDENTIFIER
      | PREC IDENTIFIER act
      | prec ';'
      ;
```

Conflicts

The parser produced for an input grammar may contain states in which conflicts occur. The conflicts occur because the grammar is not LALR(1). An ambiguous grammar always contains at least one LALR(1) conflict. The *yacc* utility shall resolve all conflicts, using either default rules or user-specified precedence rules.

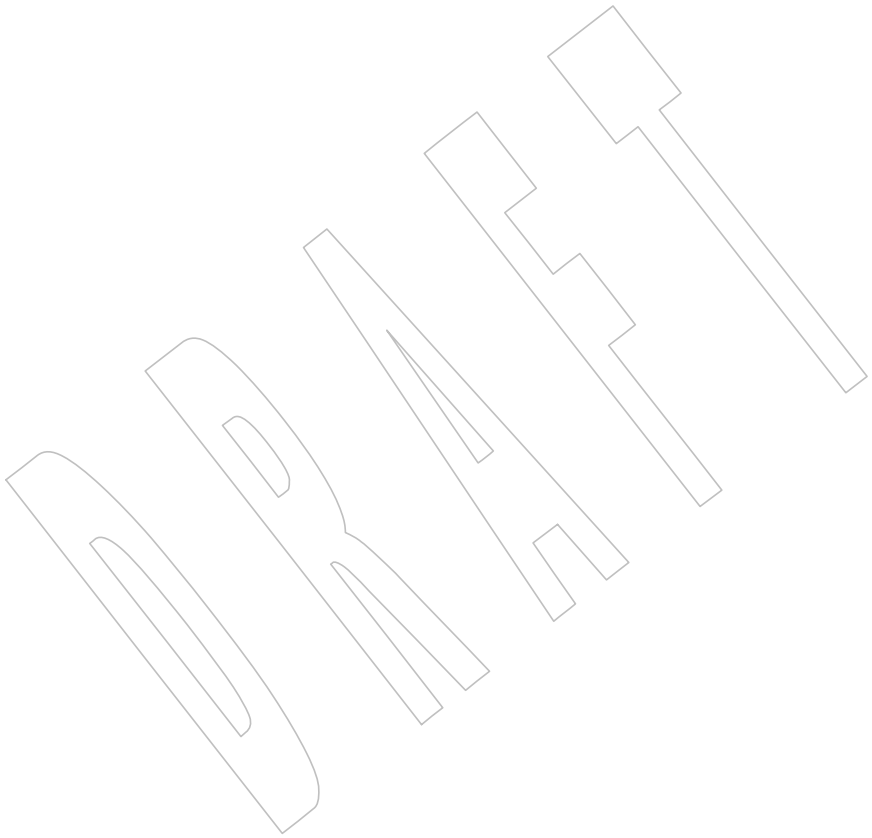
Conflicts are either shift/reduce conflicts or reduce/reduce conflicts. A shift/reduce conflict is where, for a given state and lookahead symbol, both a shift action and a reduce action are possible. A reduce/reduce conflict is where, for a given state and lookahead symbol, reductions by two different rules are possible.

The rules below describe how to specify what actions to take when a conflict occurs. Not all shift/reduce conflicts can be successfully resolved this way because the conflict may be due to something other than ambiguity, so incautious use of these facilities can cause the language

accepted by the parser to be much different from that which was intended. The description file shall contain sufficient information to understand the cause of the conflict. Where ambiguity is the reason either the default or explicit rules should be adequate to produce a working parser.

The declared precedences and associativities (see Declarations Section (on page 1071)) are used to resolve parsing conflicts as follows:

1. A precedence and associativity is associated with each grammar rule; it is the precedence and associativity of the last token or literal in the body of the rule. If the **%prec** keyword is used, it overrides this default. Some grammar rules might not have both precedence and associativity.
2. If there is a shift/reduce conflict, and both the grammar rule and the input symbol have precedence and associativity associated with them, then the conflict is resolved in favor of the action (shift or reduce) associated with the higher precedence. If the precedences are the same, then the associativity is used; left associative implies reduce, right associative



42220 detected, the parser shall pop back one state at a time until the parse stack is empty or the
42221 current state allows a shift over **error**. If the parser empties the parse stack, it shall return with a
42222 non-zero value. Otherwise, it shall shift over **error** and then resume normal parsing. If the parser
42223 reads a lookahead symbol before the error was detected, that symbol shall still be the lookahead
42224 symbol when parsing is resumed.

42225 The macro *yyerrok* in a semantic action shall cause the parser to act as if it has fully recovered
42226 from any previous errors. The macro *yyclearin* shall cause the parser to discard the current
42227 lookahead token. If the current lookahead token has not yet been read, *yyclearin* shall have no
42228 effect.

42229 The macro YYACCEPT shall cause the parser to return with the value zero. The macro
42230 YYABORT shall cause the parser to return with a non-zero value.

42231 **Interface to the Lexical Analyzer**

42232 The *yylex*() function is an integer-valued function that returns a *token number* representing the
42233 kind of token read. If there is a value associated with the token returned by *yylex*() (see the
42234 discussion of *tag* above), it shall be assigned to the external variable *yylval*.

42235 If the parser and *yylex*() do not agree on these token numbers, reliable communication between
42236 them cannot occur. For (single-byte character) literals, the token is simply the numeric value of
42237 the character in the current character set. The numbers for other tokens can either be chosen by
42238 *yacc*, or chosen by the user. In either case, the **#define** construct of C is used to allow *yylex*() to
42239 return these numbers symbolically. The **#define** statements are put into the code file, and the
42240 header file if that file is requested. The set of characters permitted by *yacc* in an identifier is
42241 larger than that permitted by C. Token names found to contain such characters shall not be
42242 included in the **#define** declarations.

42243 If the token numbers are chosen by *yacc*, the tokens other than literals shall be assigned numbers
42244 greater than 256, although no order is implied. A token can be explicitly assigned a number by
42245 following its first appearance in the declarations section with a number. Names and literals not
42246 defined this way retain their default definition. All token numbers assigned by *yacc* shall be
42247 unique and distinct from the token numbers used for literals and user-assigned tokens. If
42248 duplicate token numbers cause conflicts in parser generation, *yacc* shall report an error;
42249 otherwise, it is unspecified whether the token assignment is accepted or an error is reported.

42250 The end of the input is marked by a special token called the *endmarker*, which has a token
42251 number that is zero or negative. (These values are invalid for any other token.) All lexical
42252 analyzers shall return zero or negative as a token number upon reaching the end of their input.
42253 If the tokens up to, but excluding, the endmarker form a structure that matches the start symbol,
42254 the parser shall accept the input. If the endmarker is seen in any other context, it shall be
42255 considered an error.

42256 **Completing the Program**

42257 In addition to *yyparse*() and *yylex*(), the functions *yyerror*() and *main*() are required to make a
42258 complete program. The application can supply *main*() and *yyerror*(), or those routines can be
42259 obtained from the *yacc* library.

Yacc Library

The following functions shall appear only in the *yacc* library accessible through the **–l y** operand to *c99*; they can therefore be redefined by a conforming application:

int *main*(**void**)
This function shall call *yyparse*( ) and exit with an unspecified value. Other actions within this function are unspecified.

int *yyerror*(**const char** **s*)
This function shall write the NUL-terminated argument to standard error, followed by a <newline>.

The order of the **–l y** and **–l l** operands given to *c99* is significant; the application shall either provide its own *main*( ) function or ensure that **–l y** precedes **–l l**.

Debugging the Parser

The parser generated by *yacc* shall have diagnostic facilities in it that can be optionally enabled at either compile time or at runtime (if enabled at compile time). The compilation of the runtime debugging code is under the control of YYDEBUG, a preprocessor symbol. If YYDEBUG has a non-zero value, the debugging code shall be included. If its value is zero, the code shall not be included.

In parsers where the debugging code has been included, the external **int** *yydebug* can be used to turn debugging on (with a non-zero value) and off (zero value) at runtime. The initial value of *yydebug* shall be zero.

When **–t** is specified, the code file shall be built such that, if YYDEBUG is not already defined at compilation time (using the *c99* **–D** YYDEBUG option, for example), YYDEBUG shall be set explicitly to 1. When **–t** is not specified, the code file shall be built such that, if YYDEBUG is not already defined, it shall be set explicitly to zero.

The format of the debugging output is unspecified but includes at least enough information to determine the shift and reduce actions, and the input symbols. It also provides information about error recovery.

Algorithms

The parser constructed by *yacc* implements an LALR(1) parsing algorithm as documented in the literature. It is unspecified whether the parser is table-driven or direct-coded.

A parser generated by *yacc* shall never request an input symbol from *yylex*( ) while in a state where the only actions other than the error action are reductions by a single rule.

The literature of parsing theory defines these concepts.

Limits

The *yacc* utility may have several internal tables. The minimum maximums for these tables are shown in the following table. The exact meaning of these values is implementation-defined. The implementation shall define the relationship between these values and between them and any error messages that the implementation may generate should it run out of space for any internal structure. An implementation may combine groups of these resources into a single pool as long as the total available to the user does not fall below the sum of the sizes specified by this section.

Table 4-22 Internal Limits in *yacc*

Limit	Minimum Maximum	Description
{NTERMS}	126	Number of tokens.
{NNONTERM}	200	Number of non-terminals.
{NPROD}	300	Number of rules.
{NSTATES}	600	Number of states.
{MEMSIZE}	5 200	Length of rules. The total length, in names (tokens and non-terminals), of all the rules of the grammar. The left-hand side is counted for each rule, even if it is not explicitly repeated, as specified in Grammar Rules in yacc (on page 1073).
{ACTSIZE}	4 000	Number of actions. "Actions" here (and in the description file) refer to parser actions (shift, reduce, and so on) not to semantic actions defined in Grammar Rules in yacc (on page 1073).

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

If any errors are encountered, the run is aborted and *yacc* exits with a non-zero status. Partial code files and header files may be produced. The summary information in the description file shall always be produced if the **–v** flag is present.

APPLICATION USAGE

Historical implementations experience name conflicts on the names **yacc.tmp**, **yacc.acts**, **yacc.debug**, **y.tab.c**, **y.tab.h**, and **y.output** if more than one copy of *yacc* is running in a single directory at one time. The **–b** option was added to overcome this problem. The related problem of allowing multiple *yacc* parsers to be placed in the same file was addressed by adding a **–p** option to override the previously hard-coded **yy** variable prefix.

The description of the **–p** option specifies the minimal set of function and variable names that cause conflict when multiple parsers are linked together. YYSTYPE does not need to be changed. Instead, the programmer can use **–b** to give the header files for different parsers different names, and then the file with the *yylex*( ) for a given parser can include the header for that parser. Names such as *yyclearerr* do not need to be changed because they are used only in the actions; they do not have linkage. It is possible that an implementation has other names, either internal ones for implementing things such as *yyclearerr*, or providing non-standard features that it wants to change with **–p**.

Unary operators that are the same token as a binary operator in general need their precedence adjusted. This is handled by the **%prec** advisory symbol associated with the particular grammar rule defining that unary operator. (See Grammar Rules in yacc (on page 1073).) Applications are not required to use this operator for unary operators, but the grammars that do not require it are rare.

EXAMPLES

Access to the *yacc* library is obtained with library search operands to *c99*. To use the *yacc* library *main*():

```
c99 y.tab.c –l y
```

Both the *lex* library and the *yacc* library contain *main*(). To access the *yacc main*():

```
c99 y.tab.c lex.yy.c –l y –l l
```

This ensures that the *yacc* library is searched first, so that its *main*() is used.

The historical *yacc* libraries have contained two simple functions that are normally coded by the application programmer. These functions are similar to the following code:

```
#include <locale.h>
int main(void)
{
    extern int yyparse();

    setlocale(LC_ALL, "");

    /* If the following parser is one created by lex, the
       application must be careful to ensure that LC_CTYPE
       and LC_COLLATE are set to the POSIX locale. */
    (void) yyparse();
    return (0);
}

#include <stdio.h>

int yyerror(const char *msg)
{
    (void) fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", msg);
    return (0);
}
```

RATIONALE

The references in Referenced Documents may be helpful in constructing the parser generator. The referenced DeRemer and Pennello article (along with the works it references) describes a technique to generate parsers that conform to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x. Work in this area continues to be done, so implementors should consult current literature before doing any new implementations. The original Knuth article is the theoretical basis for this kind of parser, but the tables it generates are impractically large for reasonable grammars and should not be used. The "equivalent to" wording is intentional to assure that the best tables that are LALR(1) can be generated.

There has been confusion between the class of grammars, the algorithms needed to generate parsers, and the algorithms needed to parse the languages. They are all reasonably orthogonal. In particular, a parser generator that accepts the full range of LR(1) grammars need not generate a table any more complex than one that accepts SLR(1) (a relatively weak class of LR grammars) for a grammar that happens to be SLR(1). Such an implementation need not recognize the case, either; table compression can yield the SLR(1) table (or one even smaller than that) without recognizing that the grammar is SLR(1). The speed of an LR(1) parser for any class is dependent more upon the table representation and compression (or the code generation if a direct parser is generated) than upon the class of grammar that the table generator handles.

The speed of the parser generator is somewhat dependent upon the class of grammar it handles. However, the original Knuth article algorithms for constructing LR parsers were judged by its author to be impractically slow at that time. Although full LR is more complex than LALR(1), as computer speeds and algorithms improve, the difference (in terms of acceptable wall-clock

execution time) is becoming less significant.

Potential authors are cautioned that the referenced DeRemer and Pennello article previously cited identifies a bug (an over-simplification of the computation of LALR(1) lookahead sets) in some of the LALR(1) algorithm statements that preceded it to publication. They should take the time to seek out that paper, as well as current relevant work, particularly Aho's.

The **–b** option was added to provide a portable method for permitting *yacc* to work on multiple separate parsers in the same directory. If a directory contains more than one *yacc* grammar, and both grammars are constructed at the same time (by, for example, a parallel *make* program), conflict results. While the solution is not historical practice, it corrects a known deficiency in historical implementations. Corresponding changes were made to all sections that referenced the filenames **y.tab.c** (now "the code file"), **y.tab.h** (now "the header file"), and **y.output** (now "the description file").

The grammar for *yacc* input is based on System V documentation. The textual description shows there that the `';'` is required at the end of the rule. The grammar and the implementation do not require this. (The use of **C_IDENTIFIER** causes a reduce to occur in the right place.)

Also, in that implementation, the constructs such as **%token** can be terminated by a semicolon, but this is not permitted by the grammar. The keywords such as **%token** can also appear in uppercase, which is again not discussed. In most places where `'%'` is used, `'\'` can be substituted, and there are alternate spellings for some of the symbols (for example, **%LEFT** can be "%<" or even "\<").

Historically, <*tag*> can contain any characters except `'>'`, including white space, in the implementation. However, since the *tag* must reference an ISO C standard union member, in practice conforming implementations need to support only the set of characters for ISO C standard identifiers in this context.

Some historical implementations are known to accept actions that are terminated by a period. Historical implementations often allow `'$'` in names. A conforming implementation does not need to support either of these behaviors.

Deciding when to use **%prec** illustrates the difficulty in specifying the behavior of *yacc*. There may be situations in which the *grammar* is not, strictly speaking, in error, and yet *yacc* cannot interpret it unambiguously. The resolution of ambiguities in the grammar can in many instances be resolved by providing additional information, such as using **%type** or **%union** declarations. It is often easier and it usually yields a smaller parser to take this alternative when it is appropriate.

The size and execution time of a program produced without the runtime debugging code is usually smaller and slightly faster in historical implementations.

Statistics messages from several historical implementations include the following types of information:

```
n/512 terminals, n/300 non-terminals
n/600 grammar rules, n/1500 states
n shift/reduce, n reduce/reduce conflicts reported
n/350 working sets used
Memory: states, etc. n/15000, parser n/15000
n/600 distinct lookahead sets
n extra closures
n shift entries, n exceptions
n goto entries
n entries saved by goto default
Optimizer space used: input n/15000, output n/15000
n table entries, n zero
```

`Maximum spread: n, Maximum offset: n`

The report of internal tables in the description file is left implementation-defined because all aspects of these limits are also implementation-defined. Some implementations may use dynamic allocation techniques and have no specific limit values to report.

The format of the **y.output** file is not given because specification of the format was not seen to enhance applications portability. The listing is primarily intended to help human users understand and debug the parser; use of **y.output** by a conforming application script would be unusual. Furthermore, implementations have not produced consistent output and no popular format was apparent. The format selected by the implementation should be human-readable, in addition to the requirement that it be a text file.

Standard error reports are not specifically described because they are seldom of use to conforming applications and there was no reason to restrict implementations.

Some implementations recognize `"={"` as equivalent to `'{'` because it appears in historical documentation. This construction was recognized and documented as obsolete as long ago as 1978, in the referenced *Yacc: Yet Another Compiler-Compiler*. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x chose to leave it as obsolete and omit it.

Multi-byte characters should be recognized by the lexical analyzer and returned as tokens. They should not be returned as multi-byte character literals. The token **error** that is used for error recovery is normally assigned the value 256 in the historical implementation. Thus, the token value 256, which is used in many multi-byte character sets, is not available for use as the value of a user-defined token.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

c99, *lex*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

Issue 5

The FUTURE DIRECTIONS section is added.

Issue 6

This utility is marked as part of the C-Language Development Utilities option.

Minor changes have been added to align with the IEEE P1003.2b draft standard.

The normative text is reworded to avoid use of the term "must" for application requirements.

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.2 #177 is applied, changing the comment on **RCURL** from the }% token to the %}.

Issue 7

SD5-XCU-ERN-6 is applied, clarifying that Guideline 9 of the Utility Syntax Guidelines does not apply.

SD5-XCU-ERN-97 is applied, updating the SYNOPSIS.

42481 **NAME**

42482 zcat — expand and concatenate data

42483 **SYNOPSIS**

42484 XSI
```
zcat [file...]
```

42485 **DESCRIPTION**

42486 The *zcat* utility shall write to standard output the uncompressed form of files that have been
42487 compressed using the *compress* utility. It is the equivalent of *uncompress* **–c**. Input files are not
42488 affected.

42489 **OPTIONS**

42490 None.

42491 **OPERANDS**

42492 The following operand shall be supported:

42493 *file* The pathname of a file previously processed by the *compress* utility. If *file* already
42494 has the **.Z** suffix specified, it is used as submitted. Otherwise, the **.Z** suffix is
42495 appended to the filename prior to processing.

42496 **STDIN**

42497 The standard input shall be used only if no *file* operands are specified, or if a *file* operand is `'–'`.

42498 **INPUT FILES**

42499 Input files shall be compressed files that are in the format produced by the *compress* utility.

42500 **ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

42501 The following environment variables shall affect the execution of *zcat*:

42502 *LANG* Provide a default value for the internationalization variables that are unset or null.
42503 (See the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-200x, Section 8.2,
42504 Internationalization Variables for the precedence of internationalization variables
42505 used to determine the values of locale categories.)

42506 *LC_ALL* If set to a non-empty string value, override the values of all the other
42507 internationalization variables.

42508 *LC_CTYPE* Determine the locale for the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as
42509 characters (for example, single-byte as opposed to multi-byte characters in
42510 arguments).

42511 *LC_MESSAGES*
42512 Determine the locale that should be used to affect the format and contents of
42513 diagnostic messages written to standard error.

42514 *NLSPATH* Determine the location of message catalogs for the processing of *LC_MESSAGES*.

42515 **ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS**

42516 Default.

42517 **STDOUT**

42518 The compressed files given as input shall be written on standard output in their uncompressed
42519 form.

STDERR

The standard error shall be used only for diagnostic messages.

OUTPUT FILES

None.

EXTENDED DESCRIPTION

None.

EXIT STATUS

The following exit values shall be returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

CONSEQUENCES OF ERRORS

Default.

APPLICATION USAGE

None.

EXAMPLES

None.

RATIONALE

None.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

SEE ALSO

compress, *uncompress*

CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Index

Index

Index

Index

Index

Index